a type of radiation different from that close to the antenna. The source of this radiation is the continuous induction of an electric field by the time-varying magnetic field and the induction of a magnetic field by the time-varying electric field, predicted by Equations 34.6 and 34.7. The electric and magnetic fields produced in this manner are in phase with each other and vary as $1/r$. The result is an outward flow of energy at all times.

The angular dependence of the radiation intensity produced by a dipole antenna is shown in Figure 34.12. Notice that the intensity and the power radiated are a maximum in a plane that is perpendicular to the antenna and passing through its midpoint. Furthermore, the power radiated is zero along the antenna's axis. A mathematical solution to Maxwell's equations for the dipole antenna shows that the intensity of the radiation varies as $(\sin^2 \theta)/r^2$, where θ is measured from the axis of the antenna.

Electromagnetic waves can also induce currents in a receiving antenna. The response of a dipole receiving antenna at a given position is a maximum when the antenna axis is parallel to the electric field at that point and zero when the axis is perpendicular to the electric field.

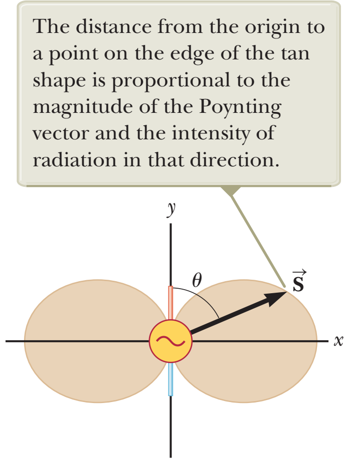


Figure 34.12 Angular dependence of the intensity of radiation produced by an oscillating electric dipole.

Quick Quiz 34.5 If the antenna in Figure 34.11 represents the source of a distant radio station, what would be the best orientation for your portable radio antenna located to the right of the figure? **(a)** up-down along the page **(b)** left-right along the page **(c)** perpendicular to the page

34.7 The Spectrum of Electromagnetic Waves

The various types of electromagnetic waves are listed in Figure 34.13 (page 1046), which shows the **electromagnetic spectrum.** Notice the wide ranges of frequencies and wavelengths. No sharp dividing point exists between one type of wave and the next. Remember that all forms of the various types of radiation are produced by the same phenomenon: acceleration of electric charges. The names given to the types of waves are simply a convenient way to describe the region of the spectrum in which they lie.

Radio waves, whose wavelengths range from more than 10^4 m to about 0.1 m, are the result of charges accelerating through conducting wires. They are generated by such electronic devices as *LC* oscillators and are used in radio and television communication systems.

Microwaves have wavelengths ranging from approximately 0.3 m to 10^{-4} m and are also generated by electronic devices. Because of their short wavelengths, they are well suited for radar systems and for studying the atomic and molecular properties of matter. Microwave ovens are an interesting domestic application of these waves. It has been suggested that solar energy could be harnessed by beaming microwaves to the Earth from a solar collector in space.

Infrared waves have wavelengths ranging from approximately 10^{-3} m to the longest wavelength of visible light, 7×10^{-7} m. These waves, produced by molecules and room-temperature objects, are readily absorbed by most materials. The infrared (IR) energy absorbed by a substance appears as internal energy because the energy agitates the object's atoms, increasing their vibrational or translational motion, which results in a temperature increase. Infrared radiation has practical and scientific applications in many areas, including physical therapy, IR photography, and vibrational spectroscopy.

Visible light, the most familiar form of electromagnetic waves, is the part of the electromagnetic spectrum the human eye can detect. Light is produced by the rearrangement of electrons in atoms and molecules. The various wavelengths of visible light, which correspond to different colors, range from red ($\lambda \approx 7 \times 10^{-7}$ m) to violet ($\lambda \approx 4 \times 10^{-7}$ m). The sensitivity of the human eye is a function of wavelength, being a maximum at a wavelength of about 5.5×10^{-7} m. With that in mind, why do you suppose tennis balls often have a yellow-green color? Table 34.1 provides

Pitfall Prevention 34.6

"Heat Rays" Infrared rays are often called "heat rays," but this terminology is a misnomer. Although infrared radiation is used to raise or maintain temperature as in the case of keeping food warm with "heat lamps" at a fast-food restaurant, all wavelengths of electromagnetic radiation carry energy that can cause the temperature of a system to increase. As an example, consider a potato baking in your microwave oven.

Table 34.1 Approximate Correspondence Between Wavelengths of Visible Light and Color

Wavelength Range (nm)	Color Description
400–430	Violet
430–485	Blue
485–560	Green
560–590	Yellow
590–625	Orange
625–700	Red

Note: The wavelength ranges here are approximate. Different people will describe colors differently.

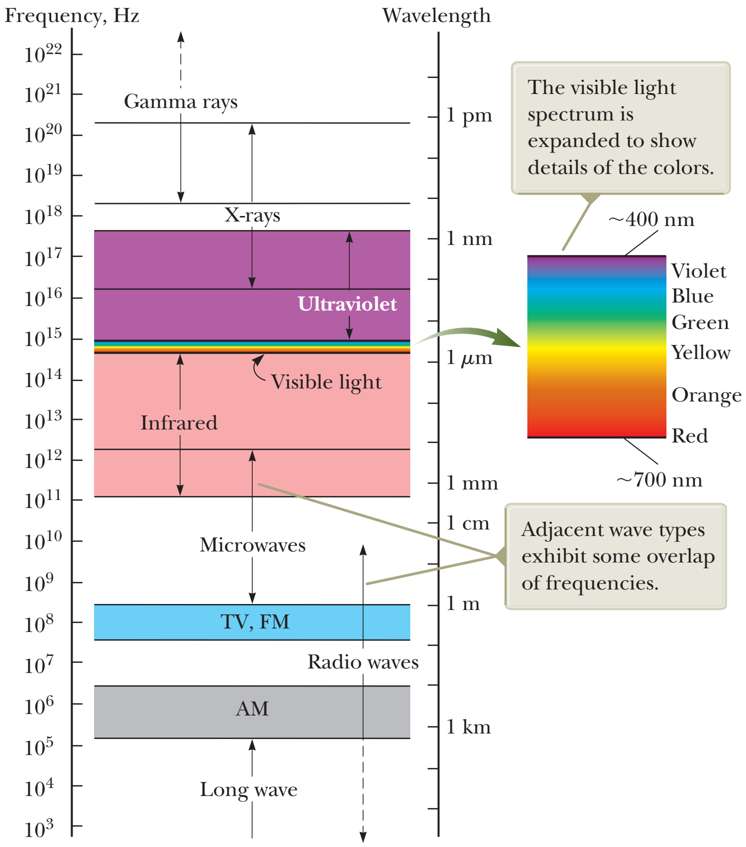


Figure 34.13 The electromagnetic spectrum.

approximate correspondences between the wavelength of visible light and the color assigned to it by humans. Light is the basis of the science of optics and optical instruments, to be discussed in Chapters 35 through 38.

Ultraviolet waves cover wavelengths ranging from approximately 4×10^{-7} m to 6×10^{-10} m. The Sun is an important source of ultraviolet (UV) light, which is the main cause of sunburn. Sunscreen lotions are transparent to visible light but absorb most UV light. The higher a sunscreen's solar protection factor, or SPF, the greater the percentage of UV light absorbed. Ultraviolet rays have also been implicated in the formation of cataracts, a clouding of the lens inside the eye.

Wearing sunglasses that do not block ultraviolet (UV) light is worse for your eyes than wearing no sunglasses at all. The lenses of any sunglasses absorb some visible light, thereby causing the wearer's pupils to dilate. If the glasses do not also block UV light, more damage may be done to the lens of the eye because of the dilated pupils. If you wear no sunglasses at all, your pupils are contracted, you squint, and much less UV light enters your eyes. High-quality sunglasses block nearly all the eye-damaging UV light.

Most of the UV light from the Sun is absorbed by ozone (O_3) molecules in the Earth's upper atmosphere, in a layer called the stratosphere. This ozone shield converts lethal high-energy UV radiation to IR radiation, which in turn warms the stratosphere.

X-rays have wavelengths in the range from approximately 10^{-8} m to 10^{-12} m. The most common source of x-rays is the stopping of high-energy electrons upon bombarding a metal target. X-rays are used as a diagnostic tool in medicine and as a treatment for certain forms of cancer. Because x-rays can damage or destroy living tissues and organisms, care must be taken to avoid unnecessary exposure or overexposure. X-rays are also used in the study of crystal structure because x-ray wavelengths are comparable to the atomic separation distances in solids (about 0.1 nm).

Gamma rays are electromagnetic waves emitted by radioactive nuclei and during certain nuclear reactions. High-energy gamma rays are a component of cosmic rays that enter the Earth's atmosphere from space. They have wavelengths ranging from approximately 10^{-10} m to less than 10^{-14} m. Gamma rays are highly penetrating and produce serious damage when absorbed by living tissues. Consequently, those working near such dangerous radiation must be protected with heavily absorbing materials such as thick layers of lead.

Quick Quiz 34.6 In many kitchens, a microwave oven is used to cook food. The frequency of the microwaves is on the order of 10^{10} Hz. Are the wavelengths of these microwaves on the order of **(a)** kilometers, **(b)** meters, **(c)** centimeters, or **(d)** micrometers?

Quick Quiz 34.7 A radio wave of frequency on the order of 10^5 Hz is used to carry a sound wave with a frequency on the order of 10^3 Hz. Is the wavelength of this radio wave on the order of **(a)** kilometers, **(b)** meters, **(c)** centimeters, or **(d)** micrometers?

Summary

Definitions

In a region of space in which there is a changing electric field, there is a **displacement current** defined as

$$I_d \equiv \epsilon_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(34.1)}$$

where ϵ_0 is the permittivity of free space (see Section 23.3) and $\Phi_E = \int \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}}$ is the electric flux.

The rate at which energy passes through a unit area by electromagnetic radiation is described by the **Poynting vector $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$,** where

$$\vec{\mathbf{S}} \equiv \frac{1}{\mu_0} \vec{\mathbf{E}} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}} \qquad \textbf{(34.22)}$$

Concepts and Principles

When used with the **Lorentz force law, $\vec{\mathbf{F}} = q\vec{\mathbf{E}} + q\vec{\mathbf{v}} \times \vec{\mathbf{B}}$, Maxwell's equations** describe all electromagnetic phenomena:

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} = \frac{q}{\epsilon_0} \qquad \textbf{(34.4)}$$

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{A}} = 0 \qquad \textbf{(34.5)}$$

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{E}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = -\frac{d\Phi_B}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(34.6)}$$

$$\oint \vec{\mathbf{B}} \cdot d\vec{\mathbf{s}} = \mu_0 I + \epsilon_0 \mu_0 \frac{d\Phi_E}{dt} \qquad \textbf{(34.7)}$$

Electromagnetic waves, which are predicted by Maxwell's equations, have the following properties and are described by the following mathematical representations of the traveling wave model for electromagnetic waves.

- The electric field and the magnetic field each satisfy a wave equation. These two wave equations, which can be obtained from Maxwell's third and fourth equations, are

$$\frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial x^2} = \mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{\partial^2 E}{\partial t^2} \qquad \textbf{(34.15)}$$

$$\frac{\partial^2 B}{\partial x^2} = \mu_0 \epsilon_0 \frac{\partial^2 B}{\partial t^2} \qquad \textbf{(34.16)}$$

- The waves travel through a vacuum with the speed of light c, where

$$c = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0 \epsilon_0}} \qquad \textbf{(34.17)}$$

- Numerically, the speed of electromagnetic waves in a vacuum is 3.00×10^8 m/s.
- The wavelength and frequency of electromagnetic waves are related by

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f} = \frac{3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}{f} \qquad \textbf{(34.20)}$$

- The electric and magnetic fields are perpendicular to each other and perpendicular to the direction of wave propagation.
- The instantaneous magnitudes of $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ and $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ in an electromagnetic wave are related by the expression

$$\frac{E}{B} = c \qquad \textbf{(34.21)}$$

- Electromagnetic waves carry energy.
- Electromagnetic waves carry momentum.

continued

Because electromagnetic waves carry momentum, they exert pressure on surfaces. If an electromagnetic wave whose Poynting vector is $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ is completely absorbed by a surface upon which it is normally incident, the radiation pressure on that surface is

$$P = \frac{S}{c} \quad \text{(complete absorption)} \tag{34.28}$$

If the surface totally reflects a normally incident wave, the pressure is doubled.

The electric and magnetic fields of a sinusoidal plane electromagnetic wave propagating in the positive x direction can be written as

$$E = E_{\max} \cos (kx - \omega t) \tag{34.18}$$

$$B = B_{\max} \cos (kx - \omega t) \tag{34.19}$$

where k is the angular wave number and ω is the angular frequency of the wave. These equations represent special solutions to the wave equations for E and B.

The average value of the Poynting vector for a plane electromagnetic wave has a magnitude

$$S_{\text{avg}} = \frac{E_{\max} B_{\max}}{2\mu_0} = \frac{E_{\max}^2}{2\mu_0 c} = \frac{cB_{\max}^2}{2\mu_0} \tag{34.24}$$

The intensity of a sinusoidal plane electromagnetic wave equals the average value of the Poynting vector taken over one or more cycles.

The electromagnetic spectrum includes waves covering a broad range of wavelengths, from long radio waves at more than 10^4 m to gamma rays at less than 10^{-14} m.

Objective Questions

$\boxed{1.}$ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. A spherical interplanetary grain of dust of radius 0.2 μm is at a distance r_1 from the Sun. The gravitational force exerted by the Sun on the grain just balances the force due to radiation pressure from the Sun's light. **(i)** Assume the grain is moved to a distance $2r_1$ from the Sun and released. At this location, what is the net force exerted on the grain? (a) toward the Sun (b) away from the Sun (c) zero (d) impossible to determine without knowing the mass of the grain **(ii)** Now assume the grain is moved back to its original location at r_1, compressed so that it crystallizes into a sphere with significantly higher density, and then released. In this situation, what is the net force exerted on the grain? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i).

2. A small source radiates an electromagnetic wave with a single frequency into vacuum, equally in all directions. **(i)** As the wave moves, does its frequency (a) increase, (b) decrease, or (c) stay constant? Using the same choices, answer the same question about **(ii)** its wavelength, **(iii)** its speed, **(iv)** its intensity, and **(v)** the amplitude of its electric field.

3. A typical microwave oven operates at a frequency of 2.45 GHz. What is the wavelength associated with the electromagnetic waves in the oven? (a) 8.20 m (b) 12.2 cm (c) 1.20×10^8 m (d) 8.20×10^{-9} m (e) none of those answers

4. A student working with a transmitting apparatus like Heinrich Hertz's wishes to adjust the electrodes to generate electromagnetic waves with a frequency half as large as before. **(i)** How large should she make the effective capacitance of the pair of electrodes? (a) four times larger than before (b) two times larger than before (c) one-half as large as before (d) one-fourth as large as before (e) none of those answers **(ii)** After she makes the required adjustment, what will the wavelength of the transmitted wave be? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i).

$\boxed{5.}$ Assume you charge a comb by running it through your hair and then hold the comb next to a bar magnet. Do the electric and magnetic fields produced constitute an electromagnetic wave? (a) Yes they do, necessarily. (b) Yes they do because charged particles are moving inside the bar magnet. (c) They can, but only if the electric field of the comb and the magnetic field of the magnet are perpendicular. (d) They can, but only if both the comb and the magnet are moving. (e) They can, if either the comb or the magnet or both are accelerating.

6. Which of the following statements are true regarding electromagnetic waves traveling through a vacuum? More than one statement may be correct. (a) All waves have the same wavelength. (b) All waves have the same frequency. (c) All waves travel at 3.00×10^8 m/s. (d) The electric and magnetic fields associated with the waves are perpendicular to each other and to the direction of wave propagation. (e) The speed of the waves depends on their frequency.

7. A plane electromagnetic wave with a single frequency moves in vacuum in the positive x direction. Its amplitude is uniform over the yz plane. **(i)** As the wave moves, does its frequency (a) increase, (b) decrease, or (c) stay constant? Using the same choices, answer the same question about **(ii)** its wavelength, **(iii)** its speed, **(iv)** its intensity, and **(v)** the amplitude of its magnetic field.

8. Assume the amplitude of the electric field in a plane electromagnetic wave is E_1 and the amplitude of the magnetic field is B_1. The source of the wave is then adjusted so that the amplitude of the electric field doubles to become $2E_1$. **(i)** What happens to the amplitude of the magnetic field in this process? (a) It becomes four times larger. (b) It becomes two times larger. (c) It can stay constant. (d) It becomes one-half as large. (e) It becomes one-fourth as large. **(ii)** What happens to the intensity of the wave? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i).

9. An electromagnetic wave with a peak magnetic field magnitude of 1.50×10^{-7} T has an associated peak electric field of what magnitude? (a) 0.500×10^{-15} N/C (b) 2.00×10^{-5} N/C (c) 2.20×10^{4} N/C (d) 45.0 N/C (e) 22.0 N/C

10. **(i)** Rank the following kinds of waves according to their wavelength ranges from those with the largest typical or average wavelength to the smallest, noting any cases of equality: (a) gamma rays (b) microwaves (c) radio waves (d) visible light (e) x-rays **(ii)** Rank the kinds of waves according to their frequencies from highest to lowest. **(iii)** Rank the kinds of waves according to their speeds in vacuum from fastest to slowest.

11. Consider an electromagnetic wave traveling in the positive y direction. The magnetic field associated with the wave at some location at some instant points in the negative x direction as shown in Figure OQ34.11. What is the direction of the electric field at this position and at this instant? (a) the positive x direction (b) the positive y direction (c) the positive z direction (d) the negative z direction (e) the negative y direction

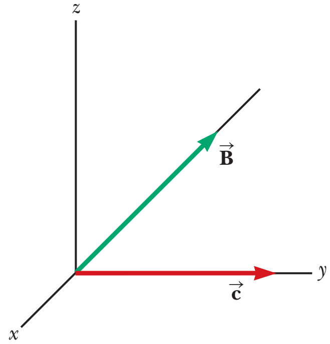


Figure OQ34.11

Conceptual Questions

$\boxed{1.}$ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

$\boxed{1.}$ Suppose a creature from another planet has eyes that are sensitive to infrared radiation. Describe what the alien would see if it looked around your library. In particular, what would appear bright and what would appear dim?

2. For a given incident energy of an electromagnetic wave, why is the radiation pressure on a perfectly reflecting surface twice as great as that on a perfectly absorbing surface?

$\boxed{3.}$ Radio stations often advertise "instant news." If that means you can hear the news the instant the radio announcer speaks it, is the claim true? What approximate time interval is required for a message to travel from Maine to California by radio waves? (Assume the waves can be detected at this range.)

4. List at least three differences between sound waves and light waves.

5. If a high-frequency current exists in a solenoid containing a metallic core, the core becomes warm due to induction. Explain why the material rises in temperature in this situation.

6. When light (or other electromagnetic radiation) travels across a given region, (a) what is it that oscillates? (b) What is it that is transported?

7. Why should an infrared photograph of a person look different from a photograph taken with visible light?

8. Do Maxwell's equations allow for the existence of magnetic monopoles? Explain.

9. Despite the advent of digital television, some viewers still use "rabbit ears" atop their sets (Fig. CQ34.9) instead of purchasing cable television service or satellite dishes. Certain orientations of the receiving antenna on a television set give better reception than others. Furthermore, the best orientation varies from station to station. Explain.

Figure CQ34.9 Conceptual Question 9 and Problem 78.

$\boxed{10.}$ What does a radio wave do to the charges in the receiving antenna to provide a signal for your car radio?

11. Describe the physical significance of the Poynting vector.

12. An empty plastic or glass dish being removed from a microwave oven can be cool to the touch, even when food on an adjoining dish is hot. How is this phenomenon possible?

13. What new concept did Maxwell's generalized form of Ampère's law include?

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 34.1 Displacement Current and the General Form of Ampère's Law

1. Consider the situation shown in Figure P34.1. An electric field of 300 V/m is confined to a circular area d = 10.0 cm in diameter and directed outward perpendicular to the plane of the figure. If the field is increasing at a rate of 20.0 V/m · s, what are (a) the direction and (b) the magnitude of the magnetic field at the point P, r = 15.0 cm from the center of the circle?

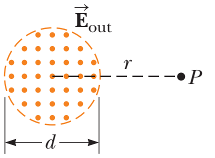


Figure P34.1

2. W A 0.200-A current is charging a capacitor that has circular plates 10.0 cm in radius. If the plate separation is 4.00 mm, (a) what is the time rate of increase of electric field between the plates? (b) What is the magnetic field between the plates 5.00 cm from the center?

3. M A 0.100-A current is charging a capacitor that has square plates 5.00 cm on each side. The plate separation is 4.00 mm. Find (a) the time rate of change of electric flux between the plates and (b) the displacement current between the plates.

Section 34.2 Maxwell's Equations and Hertz's Discoveries

4. AMT W An electron moves through a uniform electric field $\vec{\mathbf{E}} = (2.50\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 5.00\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ V/m and a uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = 0.400\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ T. Determine the acceleration of the electron when it has a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = 10.0\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s.

5. M A proton moves through a region containing a uniform electric field given by $\vec{\mathbf{E}} = 50.0\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ V/m and a uniform magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = (0.200\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 0.300\hat{\mathbf{j}} + 0.400\hat{\mathbf{k}})$ T. Determine the acceleration of the proton when it has a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = 200\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s.

6. A very long, thin rod carries electric charge with the linear density 35.0 nC/m. It lies along the x axis and moves in the x direction at a speed of 1.50×10^7 m/s. (a) Find the electric field the rod creates at the point (x = 0, y = 20.0 cm, z = 0). (b) Find the magnetic field it creates at the same point. (c) Find the force exerted on an electron at this point, moving with a velocity of $(2.40 \times 10^8)\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s.

Section 34.3 Plane Electromagnetic Waves

Note: Assume the medium is vacuum unless specified otherwise.

7. Suppose you are located 180 m from a radio transmitter. (a) How many wavelengths are you from the transmitter if the station calls itself 1150 AM? (The AM band frequencies are in kilohertz.) (b) What if this station is 98.1 FM? (The FM band frequencies are in megahertz.)

8. A diathermy machine, used in physiotherapy, generates electromagnetic radiation that gives the effect of "deep heat" when absorbed in tissue. One assigned frequency for diathermy is 27.33 MHz. What is the wavelength of this radiation?

9. The distance to the North Star, Polaris, is approximately 6.44×10^{18} m. (a) If Polaris were to burn out today, how many years from now would we see it disappear? (b) What time interval is required for sunlight to reach the Earth? (c) What time interval is required for a microwave signal to travel from the Earth to the Moon and back?

10. The red light emitted by a helium–neon laser has a wavelength of 632.8 nm. What is the frequency of the light waves?

11. **Review.** A standing-wave pattern is set up by radio waves between two metal sheets 2.00 m apart, which is the shortest distance between the plates that produces a standing-wave pattern. What is the frequency of the radio waves?

12. W An electromagnetic wave in vacuum has an electric field amplitude of 220 V/m. Calculate the amplitude of the corresponding magnetic field.

13. The speed of an electromagnetic wave traveling in a transparent nonmagnetic substance is $v = 1/\sqrt{\kappa\mu_0\epsilon_0}$, where κ is the dielectric constant of the substance. Determine the speed of light in water, which has a dielectric constant of 1.78 at optical frequencies.

14. A radar pulse returns to the transmitter–receiver after a total travel time of 4.00×10^{-4} s. How far away is the object that reflected the wave?

15. M Figure P34.15 shows a plane electromagnetic sinusoidal wave propagating in the x direction. Suppose the wavelength is 50.0 m and the electric field vibrates in the xy plane with an amplitude of 22.0 V/m. Calculate

(a) the frequency of the wave and (b) the magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ when the electric field has its maximum value in the negative y direction. (c) Write an expression for $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ with the correct unit vector, with numerical values for B_{max}, k, and ω, and with its magnitude in the form

$$B = B_{max} \cos (kx - \omega t)$$

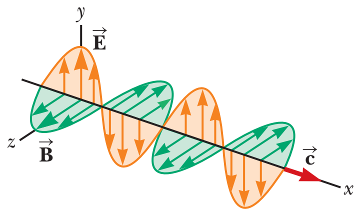


Figure P34.15 Problems 15 and 70.

16. Verify by substitution that the following equations are solutions to Equations 34.15 and 34.16, respectively:

$$E = E_{max} \cos (kx - \omega t)$$

$$B = B_{max} \cos (kx - \omega t)$$

17. AMT **Review.** A microwave oven is powered by a magnetron, an electronic device that generates electromagnetic waves of frequency 2.45 GHz. The microwaves enter the oven and are reflected by the walls. The standing-wave pattern produced in the oven can cook food unevenly, with hot spots in the food at antinodes and cool spots at nodes, so a turntable is often used to rotate the food and distribute the energy. If a microwave oven intended for use with a turntable is instead used with a cooking dish in a fixed position, the antinodes can appear as burn marks on foods such as carrot strips or cheese. The separation distance between the burns is measured to be 6 cm $\pm$ 5%. From these data, calculate the speed of the microwaves.

18. *Why is the following situation impossible?* An electromagnetic wave travels through empty space with electric and magnetic fields described by

$$E = 9.00 \times 10^3 \cos [(9.00 \times 10^6)x - (3.00 \times 10^{15})t]$$

$$B = 3.00 \times 10^{-5} \cos [(9.00 \times 10^6)x - (3.00 \times 10^{15})t]$$

where all numerical values and variables are in SI units.

19. M In SI units, the electric field in an electromagnetic wave is described by

$$E_y = 100 \sin (1.00 \times 10^7 x - \omega t)$$

Find (a) the amplitude of the corresponding magnetic field oscillations, (b) the wavelength λ, and (c) the frequency f.

Section 34.4 Energy Carried by Electromagnetic Waves

20. At what distance from the Sun is the intensity of sunlight three times the value at the Earth? (The average Earth–Sun separation is 1.496×10^{11} m.)

21. W If the intensity of sunlight at the Earth's surface under a fairly clear sky is 1 000 W/m^2, how much electromagnetic energy per cubic meter is contained in sunlight?

22. The power of sunlight reaching each square meter of the Earth's surface on a clear day in the tropics is close to 1 000 W. On a winter day in Manitoba, the power concentration of sunlight can be 100 W/m^2. Many human activities are described by a power per unit area on the order of 10^2 W/m^2 or less. (a) Consider, for example, a family of four paying \$66 to the electric company every 30 days for 600 kWh of energy carried by electrical transmission to their house, which has floor dimensions of 13.0 m by 9.50 m. Compute the power per unit area used by the family. (b) Consider a car 2.10 m wide and 4.90 m long traveling at 55.0 mi/h using gasoline having "heat of combustion" 44.0 MJ/kg with fuel economy 25.0 mi/gal. One gallon of gasoline has a mass of 2.54 kg. Find the power per unit area used by the car. (c) Explain why direct use of solar energy is not practical for running a conventional automobile. (d) What are some uses of solar energy that are more practical?

23. M A community plans to build a facility to convert solar radiation to electrical power. The community requires 1.00 MW of power, and the system to be installed has an efficiency of 30.0% (that is, 30.0% of the solar energy incident on the surface is converted to useful energy that can power the community). Assuming sunlight has a constant intensity of 1 000 W/m^2, what must be the effective area of a perfectly absorbing surface used in such an installation?

24. In a region of free space, the electric field at an instant of time is $\vec{\mathbf{E}} = (80.0\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 32.0\hat{\mathbf{j}} - 64.0\hat{\mathbf{k}})$ N/C and the magnetic field is $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = (0.200\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 0.080\,0\hat{\mathbf{j}} + 0.290\hat{\mathbf{k}})\,\mu$T. (a) Show that the two fields are perpendicular to each other. (b) Determine the Poynting vector for these fields.

25. When a high-power laser is used in the Earth's atmosphere, the electric field associated with the laser beam can ionize the air, turning it into a conducting plasma that reflects the laser light. In dry air at 0°C and 1 atm, electric breakdown occurs for fields with amplitudes above about 3.00 MV/m. (a) What laser beam intensity will produce such a field? (b) At this maximum intensity, what power can be delivered in a cylindrical beam of diameter 5.00 mm?

26. **Review.** Model the electromagnetic wave in a microwave oven as a plane traveling wave moving to the left, with an intensity of 25.0 kW/m^2. An oven contains two cubical containers of small mass, each full of water. One has an edge length of 6.00 cm, and the other, 12.0 cm. Energy falls perpendicularly on one face of each container. The water in the smaller container absorbs 70.0% of the energy that falls on it. The water in the larger container absorbs 91.0%. That is, the fraction 0.300 of the incoming microwave energy passes through a 6.00-cm thickness of water, and the fraction (0.300)(0.300) = 0.090 passes through a 12.0-cm thickness. Assume a negligible amount of energy leaves either container by heat. Find the temperature change of the water in each container over a time interval of 480 s.

27. High-power lasers in factories are used to cut through W cloth and metal (Fig. P34.27). One such laser has a beam diameter of 1.00 mm and generates an electric field having an amplitude of 0.700 MV/m at the target. Find (a) the amplitude of the magnetic field produced, (b) the intensity of the laser, and (c) the power delivered by the laser.

Figure P34.27

28. Consider a bright star in our night sky. Assume its distance from the Earth is 20.0 light-years (ly) and its power output is 4.00×10^{28} W, about 100 times that of the Sun. (a) Find the intensity of the starlight at the Earth. (b) Find the power of the starlight the Earth intercepts. One light-year is the distance traveled by light through a vacuum in one year.

29. M What is the average magnitude of the Poynting vector 5.00 mi from a radio transmitter broadcasting isotropically (equally in all directions) with an average power of 250 kW?

30. Assuming the antenna of a 10.0-kW radio station radiates spherical electromagnetic waves, (a) compute the maximum value of the magnetic field 5.00 km from the antenna and (b) state how this value compares with the surface magnetic field of the Earth.

31. W **Review.** An AM radio station broadcasts isotropically (equally in all directions) with an average power of 4.00 kW. A receiving antenna 65.0 cm long is at a location 4.00 mi from the transmitter. Compute the amplitude of the emf that is induced by this signal between the ends of the receiving antenna.

32. At what distance from a 100-W electromagnetic wave point source does $E_{\max} = 15.0$ V/m?

33. The filament of an incandescent lamp has a 150-Ω resistance and carries a direct current of 1.00 A. The filament is 8.00 cm long and 0.900 mm in radius. (a) Calculate the Poynting vector at the surface of the filament, associated with the static electric field producing the current and the current's static magnetic field. (b) Find the magnitude of the static electric and magnetic fields at the surface of the filament.

34. At one location on the Earth, the rms value of the magnetic field caused by solar radiation is 1.80 μT. From this value, calculate (a) the rms electric field due to solar radiation, (b) the average energy density of the solar component of electromagnetic radiation at this location, and (c) the average magnitude of the Poynting vector for the Sun's radiation.

Section 34.5 Momentum and Radiation Pressure

35. A 25.0-mW laser beam of diameter 2.00 mm is reflected at normal incidence by a perfectly reflecting mirror. Calculate the radiation pressure on the mirror.

36. A radio wave transmits 25.0 W/m^2 of power per unit area. A flat surface of area A is perpendicular to the direction of propagation of the wave. Assuming the surface is a perfect absorber, calculate the radiation pressure on it.

37. M A 15.0-mW helium–neon laser emits a beam of circular cross section with a diameter of 2.00 mm. (a) Find the maximum electric field in the beam. (b) What total energy is contained in a 1.00-m length of the beam? (c) Find the momentum carried by a 1.00-m length of the beam.

38. A helium–neon laser emits a beam of circular cross section with a radius r and a power P. (a) Find the maximum electric field in the beam. (b) What total energy is contained in a length ℓ of the beam? (c) Find the momentum carried by a length ℓ of the beam.

39. AMT A uniform circular disk of mass $m = 24.0$ g and radius $r = 40.0$ cm hangs vertically from a fixed, frictionless, horizontal hinge at a point on its circumference as shown in Figure P34.39a. A beam of electromagnetic radiation with intensity 10.0 MW/m^2 is incident on the disk in a direction perpendicular to its surface. The disk is perfectly absorbing, and the resulting radiation pressure makes the disk rotate. Assuming the radiation is *always* perpendicular to the surface of the disk, find the angle θ through which the disk rotates from the vertical as it reaches its new equilibrium position shown in Figure 34.39b.

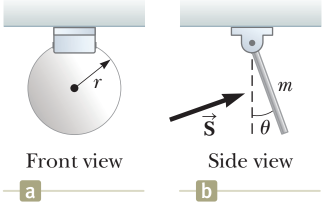


Figure P34.39

40. The intensity of sunlight at the Earth's distance from the Sun is 1 370 W/m^2. Assume the Earth absorbs all the sunlight incident upon it. (a) Find the total force the Sun exerts on the Earth due to radiation pressure. (b) Explain how this force compares with the Sun's gravitational attraction.

41. A plane electromagnetic wave of intensity 6.00 W/m^2, moving in the x direction, strikes a small perfectly reflecting pocket mirror, of area 40.0 cm^2, held in the yz plane. (a) What momentum does the wave transfer to the mirror each second? (b) Find the force the wave exerts on the mirror. (c) Explain the relationship between the answers to parts (a) and (b).

42. Assume the intensity of solar radiation incident on the upper atmosphere of the Earth is 1 370 W/m^2 and use data from Table 13.2 as necessary. Determine (a) the intensity of solar radiation incident on Mars, (b) the total power incident on Mars, and (c) the radiation force that acts on that planet if it absorbs nearly all the light. (d) State how this force compares with the gravitational attraction exerted by the Sun on Mars. (e) Compare the ratio of the gravitational force to the light-pressure force exerted on the Earth and the ratio of these forces exerted on Mars, found in part (d).

43. AMT W A possible means of space flight is to place a perfectly reflecting aluminized sheet into orbit around the Earth and then use the light from the Sun to push this "solar sail." Suppose a sail of area $A = 6.00 \times 10^5$ m^2 and mass $m = 6.00 \times 10^3$ kg is placed in orbit facing the Sun. Ignore all gravitational effects and assume a solar intensity of 1 370 W/m^2. (a) What force is exerted on the sail? (b) What is the sail's acceleration? (c) Assuming the acceleration calculated in part (b) remains constant, find the time interval required for the sail to reach the Moon, 3.84×10^8 m away, starting from rest at the Earth.

Section 34.6 Production of Electromagnetic Waves by an Antenna

44. Extremely low-frequency (ELF) waves that can penetrate the oceans are the only practical means of communicating with distant submarines. (a) Calculate the length of a quarter-wavelength antenna for a transmitter generating ELF waves of frequency 75.0 Hz into air. (b) How practical is this means of communication?

45. A Marconi antenna, used by most AM radio stations, consists of the top half of a Hertz antenna (also known as a half-wave antenna because its length is $\lambda/2$). The lower end of this Marconi (quarter-wave) antenna is connected to Earth ground, and the ground itself serves as the missing lower half. What are the heights of the Marconi antennas for radio stations broadcasting at (a) 560 kHz and (b) 1 600 kHz?

46. A large, flat sheet carries a uniformly distributed electric current with current per unit width J_s. This current creates a magnetic field on both sides of the sheet, parallel to the sheet and perpendicular to the current, with magnitude $B = \frac{1}{2}\mu_0 J_s$. If the current is in the y direction and oscillates in time according to

$$J_{\max}(\cos\omega t)\hat{\mathbf{j}} = J_{\max}[\cos(-\omega t)]\hat{\mathbf{j}}$$

the sheet radiates an electromagnetic wave. Figure P34.46 shows such a wave emitted from one point on the sheet chosen to be the origin. Such electromagnetic waves are emitted from all points on the sheet. The magnetic field of the wave to the right of the sheet is described by the wave function

$$\vec{\mathbf{B}} = \tfrac{1}{2}\mu_0 J_{\max}[\cos(kx - \omega t)]\hat{\mathbf{k}}$$

(a) Find the wave function for the electric field of the wave to the right of the sheet. (b) Find the Poynting vector as a function of x and t. (c) Find the intensity of the wave. (d) **What If?** If the sheet is to emit radiation in each direction (normal to the plane of the sheet) with intensity 570 W/m^2, what maximum value of sinusoidal current density is required?

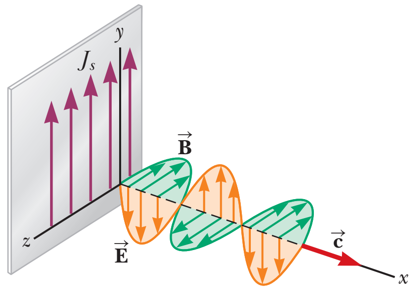


Figure P34.46

47. **Review.** Accelerating charges radiate electromagnetic waves. Calculate the wavelength of radiation produced by a proton in a cyclotron with a magnetic field of 0.350 T.

48. **Review.** Accelerating charges radiate electromagnetic waves. Calculate the wavelength of radiation produced by a proton of mass m_p moving in a circular path perpendicular to a magnetic field of magnitude B.

49. Two vertical radio-transmitting antennas are separated by half the broadcast wavelength and are driven in phase with each other. In what horizontal directions are (a) the strongest and (b) the weakest signals radiated?

Section 34.7 The Spectrum of Electromagnetic Waves

50. W Compute an order-of-magnitude estimate for the frequency of an electromagnetic wave with wavelength equal to (a) your height and (b) the thickness of a sheet of paper. How is each wave classified on the electromagnetic spectrum?

51. What are the wavelengths of electromagnetic waves in free space that have frequencies of (a) 5.00×10^{19} Hz and (b) 4.00×10^9 Hz?

52. An important news announcement is transmitted by radio waves to people sitting next to their radios 100 km from the station and by sound waves to people sitting across the newsroom 3.00 m from the newscaster. Taking the speed of sound in air to be 343 m/s, who receives the news first? Explain.

53. In addition to cable and satellite broadcasts, television stations still use VHF and UHF bands for digitally broadcasting their signals. Twelve VHF television channels (channels 2 through 13) lie in the range of frequencies between 54.0 MHz and 216 MHz. Each channel is assigned a width of 6.00 MHz, with the two ranges 72.0–76.0 MHz and 88.0–174 MHz reserved for non-TV purposes. (Channel 2, for example, lies between 54.0 and 60.0 MHz.) Calculate the broadcast wavelength range for (a) channel 4, (b) channel 6, and (c) channel 8.

Additional Problems

54. Classify waves with frequencies of 2 Hz, 2 kHz, 2 MHz, 2 GHz, 2 THz, 2 PHz, 2 EHz, 2 ZHz, and 2 YHz on the electromagnetic spectrum. Classify waves with wavelengths of 2 km, 2 m, 2 mm, 2 μm, 2 nm, 2 pm, 2 fm, and 2 am.

55. Assume the intensity of solar radiation incident on the cloud tops of the Earth is 1 370 W/m^2. (a) Taking the average Earth–Sun separation to be 1.496×10^{11} m, calculate the total power radiated by the Sun. Determine the maximum values of (b) the electric field and (c) the magnetic field in the sunlight at the Earth's location.

56. In 1965, Arno Penzias and Robert Wilson discovered the cosmic microwave radiation left over from the big bang expansion of the Universe. Suppose the energy density of this background radiation is 4.00×10^{-14} J/m^3. Determine the corresponding electric field amplitude.

57. The eye is most sensitive to light having a frequency of 5.45×10^{14} Hz, which is in the green-yellow region of the visible electromagnetic spectrum. What is the wavelength of this light?

58. Write expressions for the electric and magnetic fields of a sinusoidal plane electromagnetic wave having an electric field amplitude of 300 V/m and a frequency of 3.00 GHz and traveling in the positive x direction.

59. One goal of the Russian space program is to illuminate dark northern cities with sunlight reflected to the Earth from a 200-m diameter mirrored surface in orbit. Several smaller prototypes have already been constructed and put into orbit. (a) Assume that sunlight with intensity 1 370 W/m^2 falls on the mirror nearly perpendicularly and that the atmosphere of the Earth allows 74.6% of the energy of sunlight to pass though it in clear weather. What is the power received by a city when the space mirror is reflecting light to it? (b) The plan is for the reflected sunlight to cover a circle of diameter 8.00 km. What is the intensity of light (the average magnitude of the Poynting vector) received by the city? (c) This intensity is what percentage of the vertical component of sunlight at St. Petersburg in January, when the sun reaches an angle of 7.00° above the horizon at noon?

60. A microwave source produces pulses of 20.0-GHz radiation, with each pulse lasting 1.00 ns. A parabolic reflector with a face area of radius 6.00 cm is used to focus the microwaves into a parallel beam of radiation as shown in Figure P34.60. The average power during each pulse is 25.0 kW. (a) What is the wavelength of these microwaves? (b) What is the total energy contained in each pulse? (c) Compute the average energy density inside each pulse. (d) Determine the amplitude of the electric and magnetic fields in these microwaves. (e) Assuming that this pulsed beam strikes an absorbing surface, compute the force exerted on the surface during the 1.00-ns duration of each pulse.

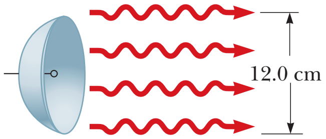


Figure P34.60

61. The intensity of solar radiation at the top of the Earth's atmosphere is 1 370 W/m^2. Assuming 60% of the incoming solar energy reaches the Earth's surface and you absorb 50% of the incident energy, make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the amount of solar energy you absorb if you sunbathe for 60 minutes.

62. Two handheld radio transceivers with dipole antennas are separated by a large, fixed distance. If the transmitting antenna is vertical, what fraction of the maximum received power will appear in the receiving antenna when it is inclined from the vertical (a) by 15.0°? (b) By 45.0°? (c) By 90.0°?

63. AMT Consider a small, spherical particle of radius r located in space a distance $R = 3.75 \times 10^{11}$ m from the Sun. Assume the particle has a perfectly absorbing surface and a mass density of $\rho = 1.50$ g/cm^3. Use $S = 214$ W/m^2 as the value of the solar intensity at the location of the particle. Calculate the value of r for which the particle is in equilibrium between the gravitational force and the force exerted by solar radiation.

64. Consider a small, spherical particle of radius r located in space a distance R from the Sun, of mass M_S. Assume the particle has a perfectly absorbing surface and a mass density ρ. The value of the solar intensity at the particle's location is S. Calculate the value of r for which the particle is in equilibrium between the gravitational force and the force exerted by solar radiation. Your answer should be in terms of S, R, ρ, and other constants.

65. M A dish antenna having a diameter of 20.0 m receives (at normal incidence) a radio signal from a distant source as shown in Figure P34.65. The radio signal is a continuous sinusoidal wave with amplitude $E_{max} = 0.200$ μV/m.

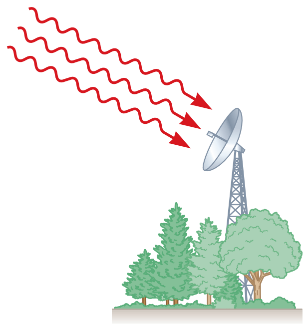


Figure P34.65

Assume the antenna absorbs all the radiation that falls on the dish. (a) What is the amplitude of the magnetic field in this wave? (b) What is the intensity of the radiation received by this antenna? (c) What is the power received by the antenna? (d) What force is exerted by the radio waves on the antenna?

66. The Earth reflects approximately 38.0% of the incident sunlight from its clouds and surface. (a) Given that the intensity of solar radiation at the top of the atmosphere is 1 370 W/m^2, find the radiation pressure on the Earth, in pascals, at the location where the Sun is straight overhead. (b) State how this quantity compares with normal atmospheric pressure at the Earth's surface, which is 101 kPa.

67. **Review.** A 1.00-m-diameter circular mirror focuses the Sun's rays onto a circular absorbing plate 2.00 cm in radius, which holds a can containing 1.00 L of water at 20.0°C. (a) If the solar intensity is 1.00 kW/m^2, what is the intensity on the absorbing plate? At the plate, what are the maximum magnitudes of the fields (b) $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ and (c) $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$? (d) If 40.0% of the energy is absorbed, what time interval is required to bring the water to its boiling point?

68. (a) A stationary charged particle at the origin creates an electric flux of 487 N · m^2/C through any closed surface surrounding the charge. Find the electric field it creates in the empty space around it as a function of radial distance r away from the particle. (b) A small source at the origin emits an electromagnetic wave with a single frequency into vacuum, equally in all directions, with power 25.0 W. Find the electric field amplitude as a function of radial distance away from the source. (c) At what distance is the amplitude of the electric field in the wave equal to 3.00 MV/m, representing the dielectric strength of air? (d) As the distance from the source doubles, what happens to the field amplitude? (e) State how the behavior shown in part (d) compares with the behavior of the field in part (a).

69. **Review.** (a) A homeowner has a solar water heater installed on the roof of his house (Fig. P34.69). The heater is a flat, closed box with excellent thermal insulation. Its interior is painted black, and its front face is made of insulating glass. Its emissivity for visible light is 0.900, and its emissivity for infrared light is 0.700. Light from the noontime Sun is incident perpendicular to the glass with an intensity of 1 000 W/m^2, and no water enters or leaves the box. Find the steady-state temperature of the box's interior. (b) **What If?** The homeowner builds an identical box with no water tubes. It lies flat on the ground in front of the house. He uses it as a cold frame, where he plants seeds in early spring. Assuming the same noontime Sun is at an elevation angle of 50.0°, find the steady-state temperature of the interior of the box when its ventilation slots are tightly closed.

easyshoot/Shutterstock.com

Figure P34.69

70. GP You may wish to review Sections 16.5 and 17.3 on the transport of energy by string waves and sound. Figure P34.15 is a graphical representation of an electromagnetic wave moving in the x direction. We wish to find an expression for the intensity of this wave by means of a different process from that by which Equation 34.24 was generated. (a) Sketch a graph of the electric field in this wave at the instant $t = 0$, letting your flat paper represent the xy plane. (b) Compute the energy density u_E in the electric field as a function of x at the instant $t = 0$. (c) Compute the energy density in the magnetic field u_B as a function of x at that instant. (d) Find the total energy density u as a function of x, expressed in terms of only the electric field amplitude. (e) The energy in a "shoebox" of length λ and frontal area A is $E_\lambda = \int_0^\lambda uA\,dx$. (The symbol E_λ for energy in a wavelength imitates the notation of Section 16.5.) Perform the integration to compute the amount of this energy in terms of A, λ, $E_{\max}$, and universal constants. (f) We may think of the energy transport by the whole wave as a series of these shoeboxes going past as if carried on a conveyor belt. Each shoebox passes by a point in a time interval defined as the period $T = 1/f$ of the wave. Find the power the wave carries through area A. (g) The intensity of the wave is the power per unit area through which the wave passes. Compute this intensity in terms of $E_{\max}$ and universal constants. (h) Explain how your result compares with that given in Equation 34.24.

71. Lasers have been used to suspend spherical glass beads in the Earth's gravitational field. (a) A black bead has a radius of 0.500 mm and a density of 0.200 g/cm^3. Determine the radiation intensity needed to support the bead. (b) What is the minimum power required for this laser?

72. Lasers have been used to suspend spherical glass beads in the Earth's gravitational field. (a) A black bead has radius r and density ρ. Determine the radiation intensity needed to support the bead. (b) What is the minimum power required for this laser?

73. **Review.** A 5.50-kg black cat and her four black kittens, each with mass 0.800 kg, sleep snuggled together on a mat on a cool night, with their bodies forming a hemisphere. Assume the hemisphere has a surface temperature of 31.0°C, an emissivity of 0.970, and a uniform density of 990 kg/m^3. Find (a) the radius of the hemisphere, (b) the area of its curved surface, (c) the radiated power emitted by the cats at their curved surface, and (d) the intensity of radiation at this surface. You may think of the emitted electromagnetic wave as having a single predominant frequency. Find (e) the amplitude of the electric field in the electromagnetic wave just outside the surface of the cozy pile and (f) the amplitude of the magnetic field. (g) **What If?** The next night, the kittens all sleep alone, curling up into separate hemispheres like their mother. Find the total radiated power of the family. (For simplicity, ignore the cats' absorption of radiation from the environment.)

74. The electromagnetic power radiated by a nonrelativistic particle with charge q moving with acceleration a is

$$P = \frac{q^2 a^2}{6\pi\epsilon_0 c^3}$$

where ϵ_0 is the permittivity of free space (also called the permittivity of vacuum) and c is the speed of light in vacuum. (a) Show that the right side of this equation has units of watts. An electron is placed in a constant electric field of magnitude 100 N/C. Determine (b) the acceleration of the electron and (c) the electromagnetic power radiated by this electron. (d) **What If?** If a proton is placed in a cyclotron with a radius of 0.500 m and a magnetic field of magnitude 0.350 T, what electromagnetic power does this proton radiate just before leaving the cyclotron?

75. Review. Gliese 581c is the first Earth-like extrasolar terrestrial planet discovered. Its parent star, Gliese 581, is a red dwarf that radiates electromagnetic waves with power 5.00×10^{24} W, which is only 1.30% of the power of the Sun. Assume the emissivity of the planet is equal for infrared and for visible light and the planet has a uniform surface temperature. Identify (a) the projected area over which the planet absorbs light from Gliese 581 and (b) the radiating area of the planet. (c) If an average temperature of 287 K is necessary for life to exist on Gliese 581c, what should the radius of the planet's orbit be?

Challenge Problems

76. A plane electromagnetic wave varies sinusoidally at 90.0 MHz as it travels through vacuum along the positive x direction. The peak value of the electric field is 2.00 mV/m, and it is directed along the positive y direction. Find (a) the wavelength, (b) the period, and (c) the maximum value of the magnetic field. (d) Write expressions in SI units for the space and time variations of the electric field and of the magnetic field. Include both numerical values and unit vectors to indicate directions. (e) Find the average power per unit area this wave carries through space. (f) Find the average energy density in the radiation (in joules per cubic meter). (g) What radiation pressure would this wave exert upon a perfectly reflecting surface at normal incidence?

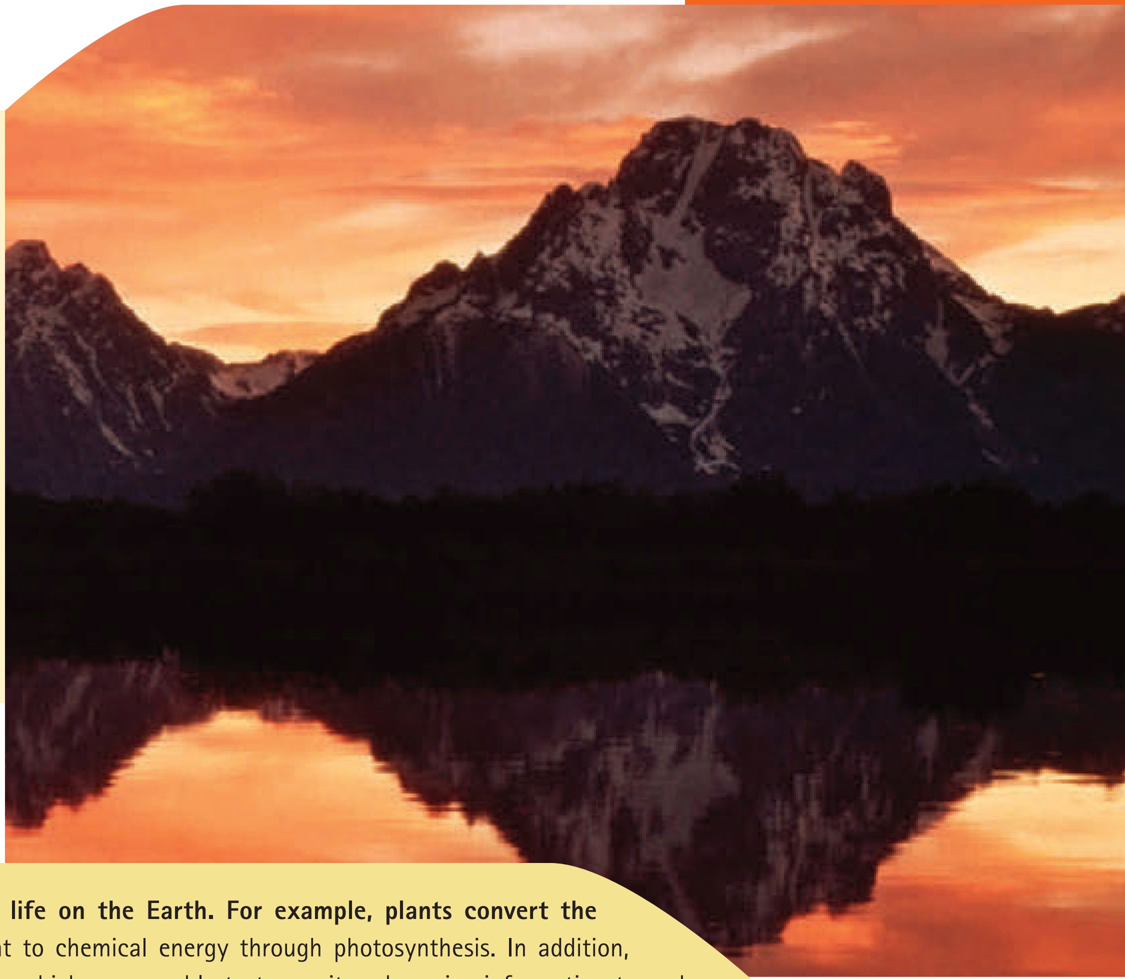
77. A linearly polarized microwave of wavelength 1.50 cm is directed along the positive x axis. The electric field vector has a maximum value of 175 V/m and vibrates in the xy plane. Assuming the magnetic field component of the wave can be written in the form $B = B_{max} \sin (kx - \omega t)$, give values for (a) B_{max}, (b) k, and (c) ω. (d) Determine in which plane the magnetic field vector vibrates. (e) Calculate the average value of the Poynting vector for this wave. (f) If this wave were directed at normal incidence onto a perfectly reflecting sheet, what radiation pressure would it exert? (g) What acceleration would be imparted to a 500-g sheet (perfectly reflecting and at normal incidence) with dimensions of 1.00 m × 0.750 m?

78. Review. In the absence of cable input or a satellite dish, a television set can use a dipole-receiving antenna for VHF channels and a loop antenna for UHF channels. In Figure CQ34.9, the "rabbit ears" form the VHF antenna and the smaller loop of wire is the UHF antenna. The UHF antenna produces an emf from the changing magnetic flux through the loop. The television station broadcasts a signal with a frequency f, and the signal has an electric field amplitude E_{max} and a magnetic field amplitude B_{max} at the location of the receiving antenna. (a) Using Faraday's law, derive an expression for the amplitude of the emf that appears in a single-turn, circular loop antenna with a radius r that is small compared with the wavelength of the wave. (b) If the electric field in the signal points vertically, what orientation of the loop gives the best reception?

79. AMT **Review.** An astronaut, stranded in space 10.0 m from her spacecraft and at rest relative to it, has a mass (including equipment) of 110 kg. Because she has a 100-W flashlight that forms a directed beam, she considers using the beam as a photon rocket to propel herself continuously toward the spacecraft. (a) Calculate the time interval required for her to reach the spacecraft by this method. (b) **What If?** Suppose she throws the 3.00-kg flashlight in the direction away from the spacecraft instead. After being thrown, the flashlight moves at 12.0 m/s relative to the recoiling astronaut. After what time interval will the astronaut reach the spacecraft?

Light and Optics

PART 5



The Grand Tetons in western Wyoming are reflected in a smooth lake at sunset. The optical principles we study in this part of the book will explain the nature of the reflected image of the mountains and why the sky appears red. *(David Muench/Terra/Corbis)*

Light is basic to almost all life on the Earth. For example, plants convert the energy transferred by sunlight to chemical energy through photosynthesis. In addition, light is the principal means by which we are able to transmit and receive information to and from objects around us and throughout the Universe. Light is a form of electromagnetic radiation and represents energy transfer from the source to the observer.

Many phenomena in our everyday life depend on the properties of light. When you watch a television or view photos on a computer monitor, you are seeing millions of colors formed from combinations of only three colors that are physically on the screen: red, blue, and green. The blue color of the daytime sky is a result of the optical phenomenon of *scattering* of light by air molecules, as are the red and orange colors of sunrises and sunsets. You see your image in your bathroom mirror in the morning or the images of other cars in your rearview mirror when you are driving. These images result from *reflection* of light. If you wear glasses or contact lenses, you are depending on *refraction* of light for clear vision. The colors of a rainbow result from *dispersion* of light as it passes through raindrops hovering in the sky after a rainstorm. If you have ever seen the colored circles of the glory surrounding the shadow of your airplane on clouds as you fly above them, you are seeing an effect that results from *interference* of light. The phenomena mentioned here have been studied by scientists and are well understood.

In the introduction to Chapter 35, we discuss the dual nature of light. In some cases, it is best to model light as a stream of particles; in others, a wave model works better. Chapters 35 through 38 concentrate on those aspects of light that are best understood through the wave model of light. In Part 6, we will investigate the particle nature of light. ■

CHAPTER

35

The Nature of Light and the Principles of Ray Optics

This photograph of a rainbow shows the range of colors from red on the top to violet on the bottom. The appearance of the rainbow depends on three optical phenomena discussed in this chapter: reflection, refraction, and dispersion. The faint pastel-colored bows beneath the main rainbow are called supernumerary bows. They are formed by interference between rays of light leaving raindrops below those causing the main rainbow. *(John W. Jewett, Jr.)*

This first chapter on optics begins by introducing two historical models for light and discussing early methods for measuring the speed of light. Next we study the fundamental phenomena of geometric optics: reflection of light from a surface and refraction as the light crosses the boundary between two media. We also study the dispersion of light as it refracts into materials, resulting in visual displays such as the rainbow. Finally, we investigate the phenomenon of total internal reflection, which is the basis for the operation of optical fibers and the technology of fiber optics.

35.1 The Nature of Light

Before the beginning of the 19th century, light was considered to be a stream of particles that either was emitted by the object being viewed or emanated from the eyes of the viewer. Newton, the chief architect of the particle model of light, held that particles were emitted from a light source and that these particles stimulated the sense of sight upon entering the eye. Using this idea, he was able to explain reflection and refraction.

Most scientists accepted Newton's particle model. During Newton's lifetime, however, another model was proposed, one that argued that light might be some sort of wave motion. In 1678, Dutch physicist and astronomer Christian Huygens showed that a wave model of light could also explain reflection and refraction.

In 1801, Thomas Young (1773–1829) provided the first clear experimental demonstration of the wave nature of light. Young showed that under appropriate conditions light rays interfere with one another according to the waves in interference model, just like mechanical waves (Chapter 18). Such behavior could not be explained at that time by a particle model because there was no conceivable way in which two or more particles could come together and cancel one another. Additional developments during the 19th century led to the general acceptance of the wave model of light, the most important resulting from the work of Maxwell, who in 1873 asserted that light was a form of high-frequency electromagnetic wave. As discussed in Chapter 34, Hertz provided experimental confirmation of Maxwell's theory in 1887 by producing and detecting electromagnetic waves.

Photo Researchers, Inc.

Christian Huygens
Dutch Physicist and Astronomer (1629–1695)
Huygens is best known for his contributions to the fields of optics and dynamics. To Huygens, light was a type of vibratory motion, spreading out and producing the sensation of light when impinging on the eye. On the basis of this theory, he deduced the laws of reflection and refraction and explained the phenomenon of double refraction.

Although the wave model and the classical theory of electricity and magnetism were able to explain most known properties of light, they could not explain some subsequent experiments. The most striking phenomenon is the photoelectric effect, also discovered by Hertz: when light strikes a metal surface, electrons are sometimes ejected from the surface. As one example of the difficulties that arose, experiments showed that the kinetic energy of an ejected electron is independent of the light intensity. This finding contradicted the wave model, which held that a more intense beam of light should add more energy to the electron. Einstein proposed an explanation of the photoelectric effect in 1905 using a model based on the concept of quantization developed by Max Planck (1858–1947) in 1900. The quantization model assumes the energy of a light wave is present in particles called *photons;* hence, the energy is said to be quantized. According to Einstein's theory, the energy of a photon is proportional to the frequency of the electromagnetic wave:

$$E = hf \qquad \textbf{(35.1)}$$

◀ **Energy of a photon**

where the constant of proportionality $h = 6.63 \times 10^{-34}$ J · s is called *Planck's constant.* We study this theory in Chapter 40.

In view of these developments, light must be regarded as having a dual nature. Light exhibits the characteristics of a wave in some situations and the characteristics of a particle in other situations. Light is light, to be sure. The question "Is light a wave or a particle?" is inappropriate, however. Sometimes light acts like a wave, and other times it acts like a particle. In the next few chapters, we investigate the wave nature of light.

35.2 Measurements of the Speed of Light

Light travels at such a high speed (to three digits, $c = 3.00 \times 10^8$ m/s) that early attempts to measure its speed were unsuccessful. Galileo attempted to measure the speed of light by positioning two observers in towers separated by approximately 10 km. Each observer carried a shuttered lantern. One observer would open his lantern first, and then the other would open his lantern at the moment he saw the light from the first lantern. Galileo reasoned that by knowing the transit time of the light beams from one lantern to the other and the distance between the two lanterns, he could obtain the speed. His results were inconclusive. Today, we realize (as Galileo concluded) that it is impossible to measure the speed of light in this manner because the transit time for the light is so much less than the reaction time of the observers.

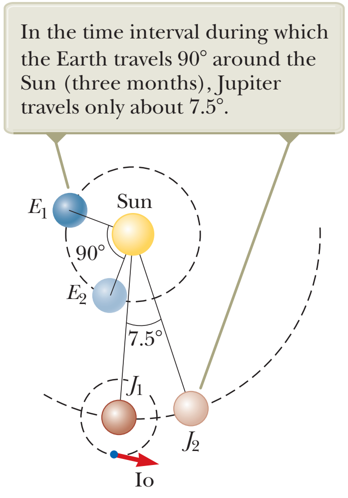


Figure 35.1 Roemer's method for measuring the speed of light (drawing not to scale).

Roemer's Method

In 1675, Danish astronomer Ole Roemer (1644–1710) made the first successful estimate of the speed of light. Roemer's technique involved astronomical observations of Io, one of the moons of Jupiter. Io has a period of revolution around Jupiter of approximately 42.5 h. The period of revolution of Jupiter around the Sun is about 12 yr; therefore, as the Earth moves through 90° around the Sun, Jupiter revolves through only $(\frac{1}{12})90° = 7.5°$ (Fig. 35.1).

An observer using the orbital motion of Io as a clock would expect the orbit to have a constant period. After collecting data for more than a year, however, Roemer observed a systematic variation in Io's period. He found that the periods were longer than average when the Earth was receding from Jupiter and shorter than average when the Earth was approaching Jupiter. Roemer attributed this variation in period to the distance between the Earth and Jupiter changing from one observation to the next.

Using Roemer's data, Huygens estimated the lower limit for the speed of light to be approximately 2.3×10^8 m/s. This experiment is important historically because it demonstrated that light does have a finite speed and gave an estimate of this speed.

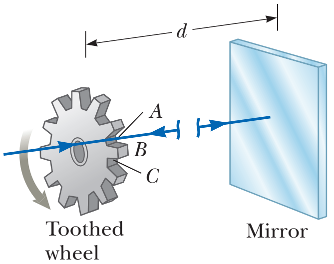


Figure 35.2 Fizeau's method for measuring the speed of light using a rotating toothed wheel. The light source is considered to be at the location of the wheel; therefore, the distance d is known.

Fizeau's Method

The first successful method for measuring the speed of light by means of purely terrestrial techniques was developed in 1849 by French physicist Armand H. L. Fizeau (1819–1896). Figure 35.2 represents a simplified diagram of Fizeau's apparatus. The basic procedure is to measure the total time interval during which light travels from some point to a distant mirror and back. If d is the distance between the light source (considered to be at the location of the wheel) and the mirror and if the time interval for one round trip is Δt, the speed of light is $c = 2d/\Delta t$.

To measure the transit time, Fizeau used a rotating toothed wheel, which converts a continuous beam of light into a series of light pulses. The rotation of such a wheel controls what an observer at the light source sees. For example, if the pulse traveling toward the mirror and passing the opening at point A in Figure 35.2 should return to the wheel at the instant tooth B had rotated into position to cover the return path, the pulse would not reach the observer. At a greater rate of rotation, the opening at point C could move into position to allow the reflected pulse to reach the observer. Knowing the distance d, the number of teeth in the wheel, and the angular speed of the wheel, Fizeau arrived at a value of 3.1×10^8 m/s. Similar measurements made by subsequent investigators yielded more precise values for c, which led to the currently accepted value of $2.997\,924\,58 \times 10^8$ m/s.

Example 35.1 Measuring the Speed of Light with Fizeau's Wheel AM

Assume Fizeau's wheel has 360 teeth and rotates at 27.5 rev/s when a pulse of light passing through opening A in Figure 35.2 is blocked by tooth B on its return. If the distance to the mirror is 7 500 m, what is the speed of light?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a pulse of light passing through opening A in Figure 35.2 and reflecting from the mirror. By the time the pulse arrives back at the wheel, tooth B has rotated into the position previously occupied by opening A.

Categorize The wheel is a rigid object rotating at constant angular speed. We model the pulse of light as a *particle under constant speed*.

Analyze The wheel has 360 teeth, so it must have 360 openings. Therefore, because the light passes through opening A but is blocked by the tooth immediately adjacent to A, the wheel must rotate through an angular displacement of $\frac{1}{720}$ rev in the time interval during which the light pulse makes its round trip.

Use Equation 10.2, with the angular speed constant, to find the time interval for the pulse's round trip:

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta\theta}{\omega} = \frac{\frac{1}{720}\text{ rev}}{27.5\text{ rev/s}} = 5.05 \times 10^{-5}\text{ s}$$

35.1 continued

From the particle under constant speed model, find the speed of the pulse of light:

$$c = \frac{2d}{\Delta t} = \frac{2(7\,500 \text{ m})}{5.05 \times 10^{-5} \text{ s}} = \boxed{2.97 \times 10^{8} \text{ m/s}}$$

Finalize This result is very close to the actual value of the speed of light.

35.3 The Ray Approximation in Ray Optics

The field of **ray optics** (sometimes called *geometric optics*) involves the study of the propagation of light. Ray optics assumes light travels in a fixed direction in a straight line as it passes through a uniform medium and changes its direction when it meets the surface of a different medium or if the optical properties of the medium are nonuniform in either space or time. In our study of ray optics here and in Chapter 36, we use what is called the **ray approximation.** To understand this approximation, first notice that the rays of a given wave are straight lines perpendicular to the wave fronts as illustrated in Figure 35.3 for a plane wave. In the ray approximation, a wave moving through a medium travels in a straight line in the direction of its rays.

If the wave meets a barrier in which there is a circular opening whose diameter is much larger than the wavelength as in Figure 35.4a, the wave emerging from the opening continues to move in a straight line (apart from some small edge effects); hence, the ray approximation is valid. If the diameter of the opening is on the order of the wavelength as in Figure 35.4b, the waves spread out from the opening in all directions. This effect, called *diffraction,* will be studied in Chapter 37. Finally, if the opening is much smaller than the wavelength, the opening can be approximated as a point source of waves as shown in Fig. 35.4c.

Similar effects are seen when waves encounter an opaque object of dimension d. In that case, when $\lambda << d$, the object casts a sharp shadow.

The ray approximation and the assumption that $\lambda << d$ are used in this chapter and in Chapter 36, both of which deal with ray optics. This approximation is very good for the study of mirrors, lenses, prisms, and associated optical instruments such as telescopes, cameras, and eyeglasses.

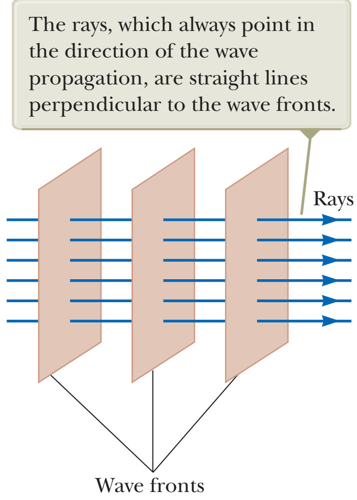


Figure 35.3 A plane wave propagating to the right.

35.4 Analysis Model: Wave Under Reflection

We introduced the concept of reflection of waves in a discussion of waves on strings in Section 16.4. As with waves on strings, when a light ray traveling in one medium encounters a boundary with another medium, part of the incident light

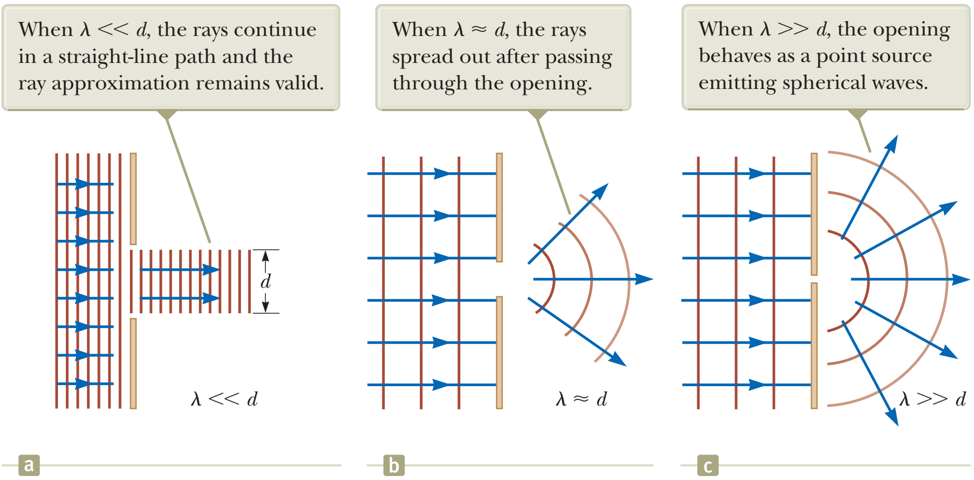


Figure 35.4 A plane wave of wavelength λ is incident on a barrier in which there is an opening of diameter d.

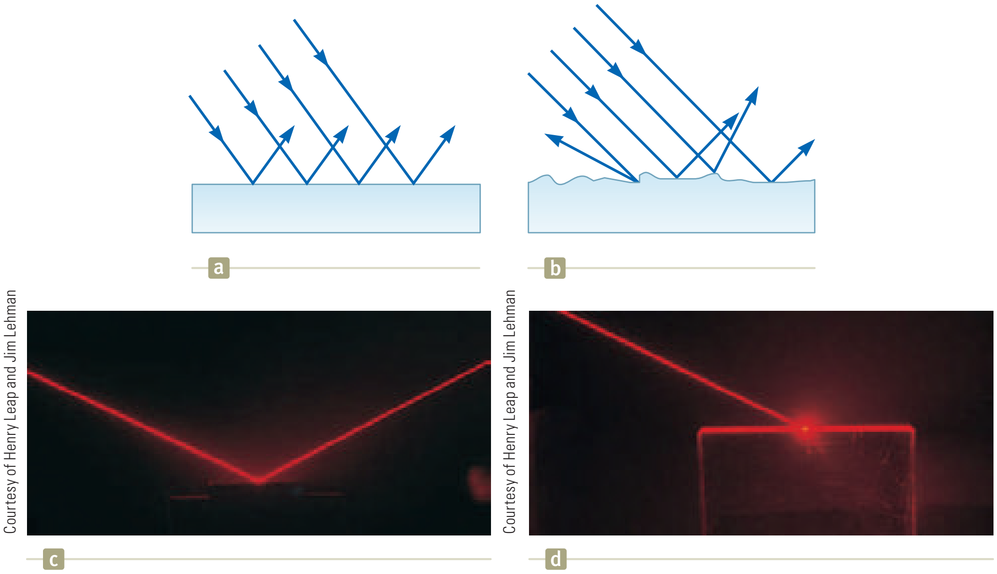


Figure 35.5 Schematic representation of (a) specular reflection, where the reflected rays are all parallel to one another, and (b) diffuse reflection, where the reflected rays travel in random directions. (c) and (d) Photographs of specular and diffuse reflection using laser light.

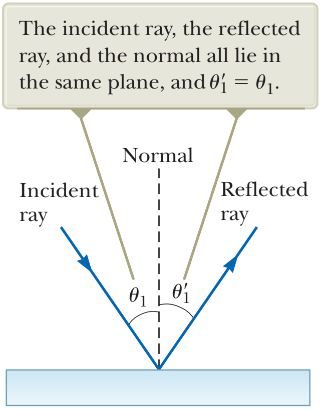


Figure 35.6 The wave under reflection model.

Pitfall Prevention 35.1

Subscript Notation The subscript 1 refers to parameters for the light in the initial medium. When light travels from one medium to another, we use the subscript 2 for the parameters associated with the light in the new medium. In this discussion, the light stays in the same medium, so we only have to use the subscript 1.

is reflected. For waves on a one-dimensional string, the reflected wave must necessarily be restricted to a direction along the string. For light waves traveling in three-dimensional space, no such restriction applies and the reflected light waves can be in directions different from the direction of the incident waves. Figure 35.5a shows several rays of a beam of light incident on a smooth, mirror-like, reflecting surface. The reflected rays are parallel to one another as indicated in the figure. The direction of a reflected ray is in the plane perpendicular to the reflecting surface that contains the incident ray. Reflection of light from such a smooth surface is called **specular reflection.** If the reflecting surface is rough as in Figure 35.5b, the surface reflects the rays not as a parallel set but in various directions. Reflection from any rough surface is known as **diffuse reflection.** A surface behaves as a smooth surface as long as the surface variations are much smaller than the wavelength of the incident light.

The difference between these two kinds of reflection explains why it is more difficult to see while driving on a rainy night than on a dry night. If the road is wet, the smooth surface of the water specularly reflects most of your headlight beams away from your car (and perhaps into the eyes of oncoming drivers). When the road is dry, its rough surface diffusely reflects part of your headlight beam back toward you, allowing you to see the road more clearly. Your bathroom mirror exhibits specular reflection, whereas light reflecting from this page experiences diffuse reflection. In this book, we restrict our study to specular reflection and use the term *reflection* to mean specular reflection.

Consider a light ray traveling in air and incident at an angle on a flat, smooth surface as shown in Figure 35.6. The incident and reflected rays make angles θ_1 and θ_1', respectively, where the angles are measured between the normal and the rays. (The normal is a line drawn perpendicular to the surface at the point where the incident ray strikes the surface.) Experiments and theory show that the angle of reflection equals the angle of incidence:

Law of reflection ▶

$$\theta_1' = \theta_1 \tag{35.2}$$

This relationship is called the **law of reflection.** Because reflection of waves from an interface between two media is a common phenomenon, we identify an analysis model for this situation: the **wave under reflection.** Equation 35.2 is the mathematical representation of this model.

Quick Quiz 35.1 In the movies, you sometimes see an actor looking in a mirror and you can see his face in the mirror. It can be said with certainty that during the filming of such a scene, the actor sees in the mirror: **(a)** his face **(b)** your face **(c)** the director's face **(d)** the movie camera **(e)** impossible to determine

Example 35.2 The Double-Reflected Light Ray AM

Two mirrors make an angle of 120° with each other as illustrated in Figure 35.7a. A ray is incident on mirror M_1 at an angle of 65° to the normal. Find the direction of the ray after it is reflected from mirror M_2.

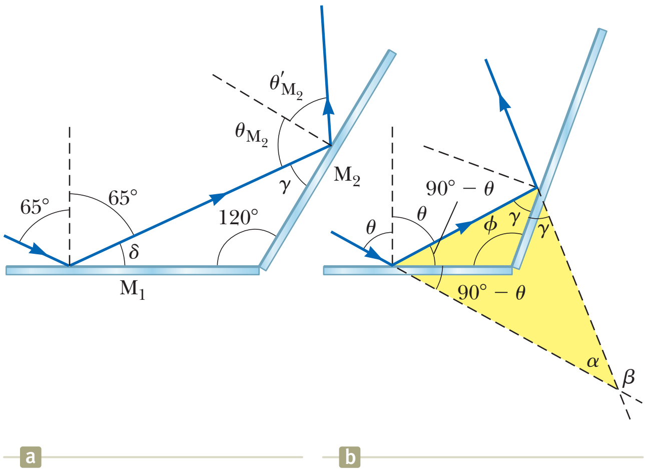


Figure 35.7 (Example 35.2) (a) Mirrors M_1 and M_2 make an angle of 120° with each other. (b) The geometry for an arbitrary mirror angle.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Figure 35.7a helps conceptualize this situation. The incoming ray reflects from the first mirror, and the reflected ray is directed toward the second mirror. Therefore, there is a second reflection from the second mirror.

Categorize Because the interactions with both mirrors are simple reflections, we apply the *wave under reflection* model and some geometry.

Analyze From the law of reflection, the first reflected ray makes an angle of 65° with the normal.

Find the angle the first reflected ray makes with the horizontal: $\delta = 90° - 65° = 25°$

From the triangle made by the first reflected ray and the two mirrors, find the angle the reflected ray makes with M_2: $\gamma = 180° - 25° - 120° = 35°$

Find the angle the first reflected ray makes with the normal to M_2: $\theta_{M_2} = 90° - 35° = 55°$

From the law of reflection, find the angle the second reflected ray makes with the normal to M_2: $\theta'_{M_2} = \theta_{M_2} = \boxed{55°}$

Finalize Let's explore variations in the angle between the mirrors as follows.

WHAT IF? If the incoming and outgoing rays in Figure 35.7a are extended behind the mirror, they cross at an angle of 60° and the overall change in direction of the light ray is 120°. This angle is the same as that between the mirrors. What if the angle between the mirrors is changed? Is the overall change in the direction of the light ray always equal to the angle between the mirrors?

Answer Making a general statement based on one data point or one observation is always a dangerous practice! Let's investigate the change in direction for a general situation. Figure 35.7b shows the mirrors at an arbitrary angle ϕ and the incoming light ray striking the mirror at an arbitrary angle θ with respect to the normal to the mirror surface. In accordance with the law of reflection and the sum of the interior angles of a triangle, the angle γ is given by $\gamma = 180° - (90° - \theta) - \phi = 90° + \theta - \phi$.

Consider the triangle highlighted in yellow in Figure 35.7b and determine α:

$$\alpha + 2\gamma + 2(90° - \theta) = 180° \quad \rightarrow \quad \alpha = 2(\theta - \gamma)$$

Notice from Figure 35.7b that the change in direction of the light ray is angle β. Use the geometry in the figure to solve for β:

$$\begin{aligned} \beta &= 180° - \alpha = 180° - 2(\theta - \gamma) \\ &= 180° - 2[\theta - (90° + \theta - \phi)] = 360° - 2\phi \end{aligned}$$

Notice that β is not equal to ϕ. For $\phi = 120°$, we obtain $\beta = 120°$, which happens to be the same as the mirror angle; that is true only for this special angle between the mirrors, however. For example, if $\phi = 90°$, we obtain $\beta = 180°$. In that case, the light is reflected straight back to its origin.

If the angle between two mirrors is 90°, the reflected beam returns to the source parallel to its original path as discussed in the What If? section of the preceding example. This phenomenon, called *retroreflection,* has many practical applications. If a third mirror is placed perpendicular to the first two so that the three form the

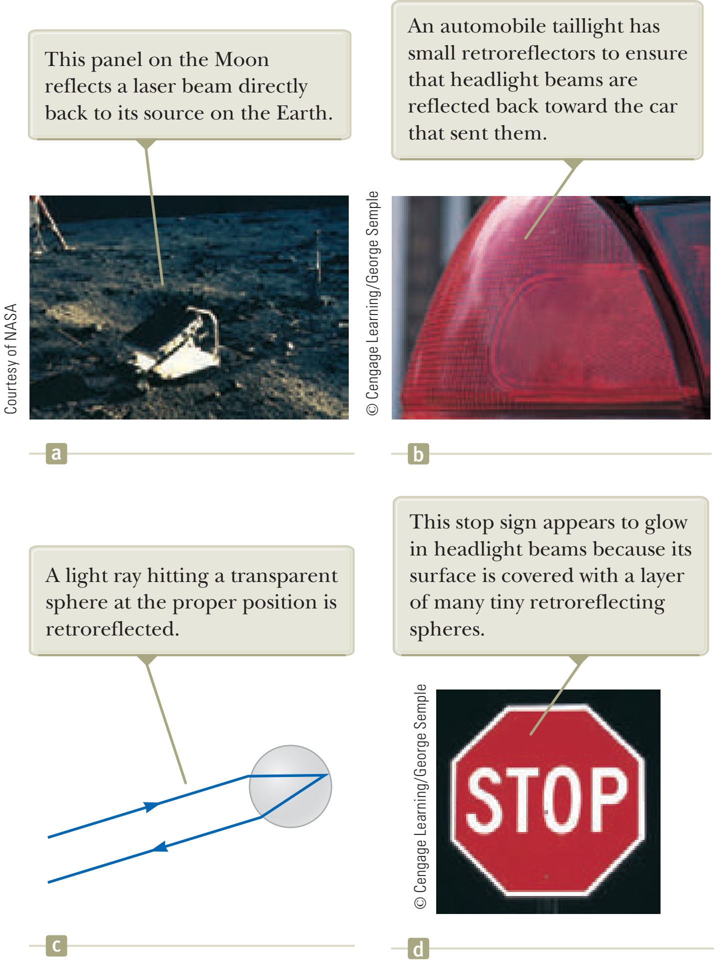


Figure 35.8 Applications of retroreflection.

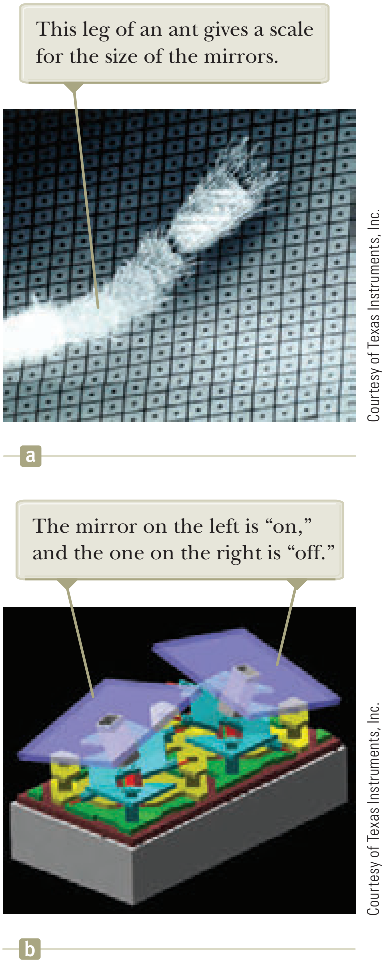


Figure 35.9 (a) An array of mirrors on the surface of a digital micromirror device. Each mirror has an area of approximately 16 μm^2. (b) A close-up view of two single micromirrors.

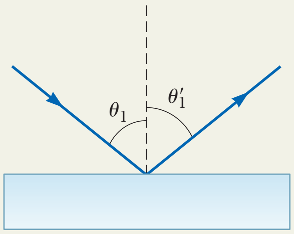
corner of a cube, retroreflection works in three dimensions. In 1969, a panel of many small reflectors was placed on the Moon by the *Apollo 11* astronauts (Fig. 35.8a). A laser beam from the Earth is reflected directly back on itself, and its transit time is measured. This information is used to determine the distance to the Moon with an uncertainty of 15 cm. (Imagine how difficult it would be to align a regular flat mirror on the Moon so that the reflected laser beam would hit a particular location on the Earth!) A more everyday application is found in automobile taillights. Part of the plastic making up the taillight is formed into many tiny cube corners (Fig. 35.8b) so that headlight beams from cars approaching from the rear are reflected back to the drivers. Instead of cube corners, small spherical bumps are sometimes used (Fig. 35.8c). Tiny clear spheres are used in a coating material found on many road signs. Due to retroreflection from these spheres, the stop sign in Figure 35.8d appears much brighter than it would if it were simply a flat, shiny surface. Retroreflectors are also used for reflective panels on running shoes and running clothing to allow joggers to be seen at night.

Another practical application of the law of reflection is the digital projection of movies, television shows, and computer presentations. A digital projector uses an optical semiconductor chip called a *digital micromirror device.* This device contains an array of tiny mirrors (Fig. 35.9a) that can be individually tilted by means of signals to an address electrode underneath the edge of the mirror. Each mirror corresponds to a pixel in the projected image. When the pixel corresponding to a given mirror is to be bright, the mirror is in the “on” position and is oriented so as to reflect light from a source illuminating the array to the screen (Fig. 35.9b). When the pixel for this mirror is to be dark, the mirror is “off” and is tilted so that the light is reflected away from the screen. The brightness of the pixel is determined by the total time interval during which the mirror is in the "on" position during the display of one image.

Digital movie projectors use three micromirror devices, one for each of the primary colors red, blue, and green, so that movies can be displayed with up to 35 trillion colors. Because information is stored as binary data, a digital movie does not degrade with time as does film. Furthermore, because the movie is entirely in the form of computer software, it can be delivered to theaters by means of satellites, optical discs, or optical fiber networks.

Analysis Model Wave Under Reflection

Imagine a wave (electromagnetic or mechanical) traveling through space and striking a flat surface at an angle θ_1 with respect to the normal to the surface. The wave will reflect from the surface in a direction described by the **law of reflection—**the angle of reflection θ_1' equals the angle of incidence θ_1:



$$\theta_1' = \theta_1 \tag{35.2}$$

Examples:

- sound waves from an orchestra reflect from a bandshell out to the audience
- a mirror is used to deflect a laser beam in a laser light show
- your bathroom mirror reflects light from your face back to you to form an image of your face (Chapter 36)
- x-rays reflected from a crystalline material create an optical pattern that can be used to understand the structure of the solid (Chapter 38)

35.5 Analysis Model: Wave Under Refraction

In addition to the phenomenon of reflection discussed for waves on strings in Section 16.4, we also found that some of the energy of the incident wave transmits into the new medium. For example, consider Figures 16.15 and 16.16, in which a pulse on a string approaching a junction with another string both reflects from and transmits past the junction and into the second string. Similarly, when a ray of light traveling through a transparent medium encounters a boundary leading into another transparent medium as shown in Figure 35.10, part of the energy is reflected and part enters the second medium. As with reflection, the direction of the transmitted wave exhibits an interesting behavior because of the three-dimensional nature of the light waves. The ray that enters the second medium changes its direction of propagation at the boundary and is said to be **refracted.** The incident ray, the reflected ray, and the refracted ray all lie in the same plane. The **angle of refraction,** θ_2 in Figure 35.10a, depends on the properties of the two media and on the angle of incidence θ_1 through the relationship

$$\frac{\sin\theta_2}{\sin\theta_1} = \frac{v_2}{v_1} \tag{35.3}$$

where v_1 is the speed of light in the first medium and v_2 is the speed of light in the second medium.

The path of a light ray through a refracting surface is reversible. For example, the ray shown in Figure 35.10a travels from point A to point B. If the ray originated at B, it would travel along line BA to reach point A and the reflected ray would point downward and to the left in the glass.

Quick Quiz 35.2 If beam ① is the incoming beam in Figure 35.10b, which of the other four red lines are reflected beams and which are refracted beams?

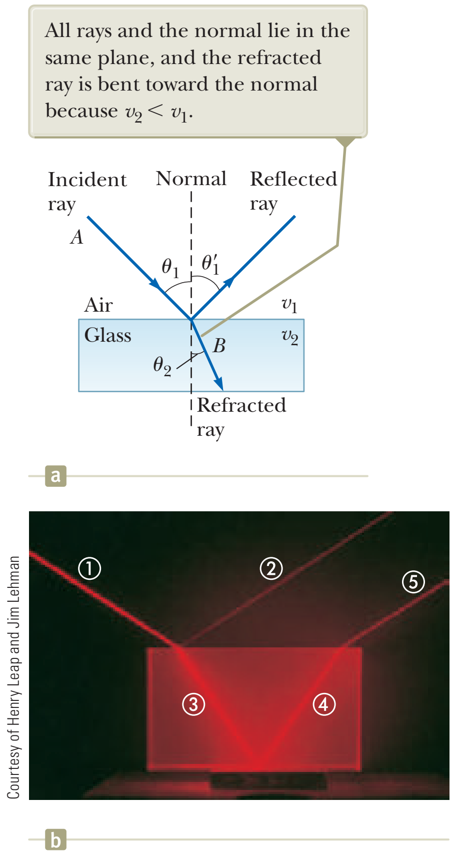


Figure 35.10 (a) The wave under refraction model. (b) Light incident on the Lucite block refracts both when it enters the block and when it leaves the block.

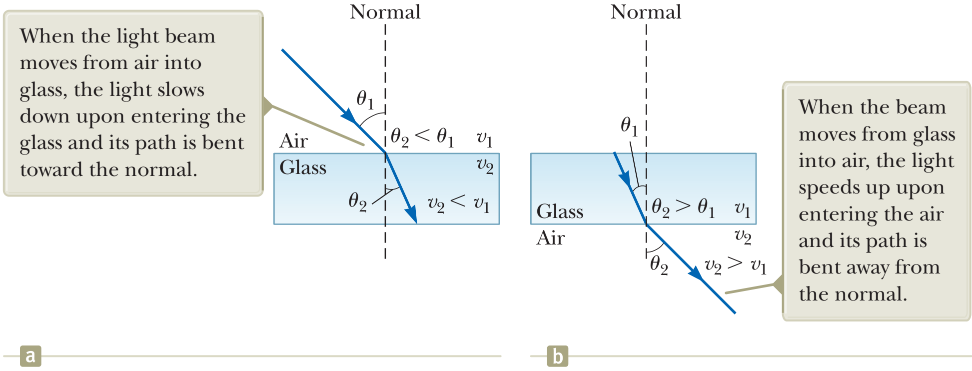


Figure 35.11 The refraction of light as it (a) moves from air into glass and (b) moves from glass into air.

From Equation 35.3, we can infer that when light moves from a material in which its speed is high to a material in which its speed is lower as shown in Figure 35.11a, the angle of refraction θ_2 is less than the angle of incidence θ_1 and the ray is bent *toward* the normal. If the ray moves from a material in which light moves slowly to a material in which it moves more rapidly as illustrated in Figure 35.11b, then θ_2 is greater than θ_1 and the ray is bent *away* from the normal.

The behavior of light as it passes from air into another substance and then re-emerges into air is often a source of confusion to students. When light travels in air, its speed is 3.00×10^8 m/s, but this speed is reduced to approximately 2×10^8 m/s when the light enters a block of glass. When the light re-emerges into air, its speed instantaneously increases to its original value of 3.00×10^8 m/s. This effect is far different from what happens, for example, when a bullet is fired through a block of wood. In that case, the speed of the bullet decreases as it moves through the wood because some of its original energy is used to tear apart the wood fibers. When the bullet enters the air once again, it emerges at a speed lower than it had when it entered the wood.

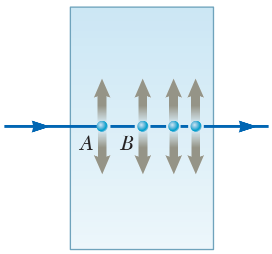


Figure 35.12 Light passing from one atom to another in a medium. The blue spheres are electrons, and the vertical arrows represent their oscillations.

To see why light behaves as it does, consider Figure 35.12, which represents a beam of light entering a piece of glass from the left. Once inside the glass, the light may encounter an electron bound to an atom, indicated as point *A*. Let's assume light is absorbed by the atom, which causes the electron to oscillate (a detail represented by the double-headed vertical arrows). The oscillating electron then acts as an antenna and radiates the beam of light toward an atom at *B*, where the light is again absorbed. The details of these absorptions and radiations are best explained in terms of quantum mechanics (Chapter 42). For now, it is sufficient to think of light passing from one atom to another through the glass. Although light travels from one atom to another at 3.00×10^8 m/s, the absorption and radiation that take place cause the *average* light speed through the material to fall to approximately 2×10^8 m/s. Once the light emerges into the air, absorption and radiation cease and the light travels at a constant speed of 3.00×10^8 m/s.

A mechanical analog of refraction is shown in Figure 35.13. When the left end of the rolling barrel reaches the grass, it slows down, whereas the right end remains on the concrete and moves at its original speed. This difference in speeds causes the barrel to pivot, which changes the direction of travel.

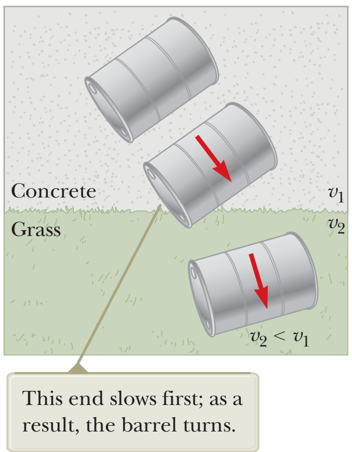


Figure 35.13 Overhead view of a barrel rolling from concrete onto grass.

Index of Refraction

In general, the speed of light in any material is *less* than its speed in vacuum. In fact, *light travels at its maximum speed c in vacuum*. It is convenient to define the **index of refraction** n of a medium to be the ratio

Index of refraction ▶

$$n \equiv \frac{\text{speed of light in vacuum}}{\text{speed of light in a medium}} \equiv \frac{c}{v} \qquad (35.4)$$

This definition shows that the index of refraction is a dimensionless number greater than unity because v is always less than c. Furthermore, n is equal to unity for vacuum. The indices of refraction for various substances are listed in Table 35.1.

As light travels from one medium to another, its frequency does not change but its wavelength does. To see why that is true, consider Figure 35.14. Waves pass an observer at point A in medium 1 with a certain frequency and are incident on the boundary between medium 1 and medium 2. The frequency with which the waves pass an observer at point B in medium 2 must equal the frequency at which they pass point A. If that were not the case, energy would be piling up or disappearing at the boundary. Because there is no mechanism for that to occur, the frequency must be a constant as a light ray passes from one medium into another. Therefore, because the relationship $v = \lambda f$ (Eq. 16.12) from the traveling wave model must be valid in both media and because $f_1 = f_2 = f$, we see that

$$v_1 = \lambda_1 f \quad \text{and} \quad v_2 = \lambda_2 f \tag{35.5}$$

Because $v_1 \neq v_2$, it follows that $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$ as shown in Figure 35.14.

We can obtain a relationship between index of refraction and wavelength by dividing the first Equation 35.5 by the second and then using Equation 35.4:

$$\frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_2} = \frac{v_1}{v_2} = \frac{c/n_1}{c/n_2} = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \tag{35.6}$$

This expression gives

$$\lambda_1 n_1 = \lambda_2 n_2$$

If medium 1 is vacuum or, for all practical purposes, air, then $n_1 = 1$. Hence, it follows from Equation 35.6 that the index of refraction of any medium can be expressed as the ratio

$$n = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda_n} \tag{35.7}$$

where λ is the wavelength of light in vacuum and λ_n is the wavelength of light in the medium whose index of refraction is n. From Equation 35.7, we see that because $n > 1$, $\lambda_n < \lambda$.

We are now in a position to express Equation 35.3 in an alternative form. Replacing the v_2/v_1 term in Equation 35.3 with n_1/n_2 from Equation 35.6 gives

$$\boxed{n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2} \tag{35.8}$$

◀ **Snell's law of refraction**

The experimental discovery of this relationship is usually credited to Willebrord Snell (1591–1626) and it is therefore known as **Snell's law of refraction.** We shall

As a wave moves between the media, its wavelength changes but its frequency remains constant.

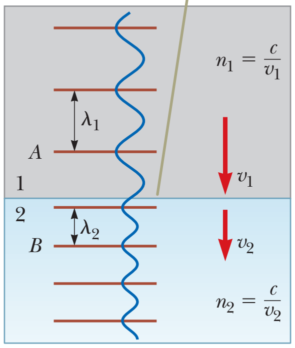


Figure 35.14 A wave travels from medium 1 to medium 2, in which it moves with lower speed.

Pitfall Prevention 35.2

An Inverse Relationship The index of refraction is *inversely* proportional to the wave speed. As the wave speed v decreases, the index of refraction n increases. Therefore, the higher the index of refraction of a material, the more it *slows down* light from its speed in vacuum. The more the light slows down, the more θ_2 differs from θ_1 in Equation 35.8.

Table 35.1 Indices of Refraction

Substance	Index of Refraction	Substance	Index of Refraction
Solids at 20°C		*Liquids at 20°C*	
Cubic zirconia	2.20	Benzene	1.501
Diamond (C)	2.419	Carbon disulfide	1.628
Fluorite (CaF_2)	1.434	Carbon tetrachloride	1.461
Fused quartz (SiO_2)	1.458	Ethyl alcohol	1.361
Gallium phosphide	3.50	Glycerin	1.473
Glass, crown	1.52	Water	1.333
Glass, flint	1.66		
Ice (H_2O)	1.309	*Gases at 0°C, 1 atm*	
Polystyrene	1.49	Air	1.000 293
Sodium chloride (NaCl)	1.544	Carbon dioxide	1.000 45

Note: All values are for light having a wavelength of 589 nm in vacuum.

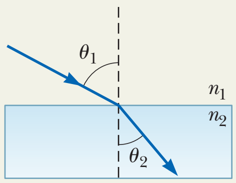
Pitfall Prevention 35.3

***n* Is Not an Integer Here** The symbol n has been used several times as an integer, such as in Chapter 18 to indicate the standing wave mode on a string or in an air column. The index of refraction n is *not* an integer.

examine this equation further in Section 35.6. Refraction of waves at an interface between two media is a common phenomenon, so we identify an analysis model for this situation: the **wave under refraction.** Equation 35.8 is the mathematical representation of this model for electromagnetic radiation. Other waves, such as seismic waves and sound waves, also exhibit refraction according to this model, and the mathematical representation of the model for these waves is Equation 35.3.

Quick Quiz 35.3 Light passes from a material with index of refraction 1.3 into one with index of refraction 1.2. Compared to the incident ray, what happens to the refracted ray? **(a)** It bends toward the normal. **(b)** It is undeflected. **(c)** It bends away from the normal.

Analysis Model Wave Under Refraction



Imagine a wave (electromagnetic or mechanical) traveling through space and striking a flat surface at an angle θ_1 with respect to the normal to the surface. Some of the energy of the wave refracts into the medium below the surface in a direction θ_2 described by the **law of refraction—**

$$\frac{\sin\theta_2}{\sin\theta_1} = \frac{v_2}{v_1} \tag{35.3}$$

where v_1 and v_2 are the speeds of the wave in medium 1 and medium 2, respectively.

For light waves, **Snell's law of refraction** states that

$$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2 \tag{35.8}$$

where n_1 and n_2 are the indices of refraction in the two media.

Examples:

- sound waves moving upward from the shore of a lake refract in warmer layers of air higher above the lake and travel downward to a listener in a boat, making sounds from the shore louder than expected
- light from the sky approaches a hot roadway at a grazing angle and refracts upward so as to miss the roadway and enter a driver's eye, giving the illusion of a pool of water on the distant roadway
- light is sent over long distances in an optical fiber because of a difference in index of refraction between the fiber and the surrounding material (Section 35.8)
- a magnifying glass forms an enlarged image of a postage stamp due to refraction of light through the lens (Chapter 36)

Example 35.3 Angle of Refraction for Glass AM

A light ray of wavelength 589 nm traveling through air is incident on a smooth, flat slab of crown glass at an angle of 30.0° to the normal.

(A) Find the angle of refraction.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 35.11a, which illustrates the refraction process occurring in this problem. We expect that $\theta_2 < \theta_1$ because the speed of light is lower in the glass.

Categorize This is a typical problem in which we apply the *wave under refraction* model.

Analyze Rearrange Snell's law of refraction to find $\sin\theta_2$:

$$\sin\theta_2 = \frac{n_1}{n_2}\sin\theta_1$$

Solve for θ_2:

$$\theta_2 = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{n_1}{n_2}\sin\theta_1\right)$$

Substitute indices of refraction from Table 35.1 and the incident angle:

$$\theta_2 = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{1.00}{1.52}\sin 30.0°\right) = \boxed{19.2°}$$

(B) Find the speed of this light once it enters the glass.

35.3 continued

SOLUTION

Solve Equation 35.4 for the speed of light in the glass: $v = \dfrac{c}{n}$

Substitute numerical values: $v = \dfrac{3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}{1.52} = \boxed{1.97 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}$

(C) What is the wavelength of this light in the glass?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 35.7 to find the wavelength in the glass: $\lambda_n = \dfrac{\lambda}{n} = \dfrac{589 \text{ nm}}{1.52} = \boxed{388 \text{ nm}}$

Finalize In part (A), note that $\theta_2 < \theta_1$, consistent with the slower speed of the light found in part (B). In part (C), we see that the wavelength of the light is shorter in the glass than in the air.

Example 35.4 Light Passing Through a Slab AM

A light beam passes from medium 1 to medium 2, with the latter medium being a thick slab of material whose index of refraction is n_2 (Fig. 35.15). Show that the beam emerging into medium 1 from the other side is parallel to the incident beam.

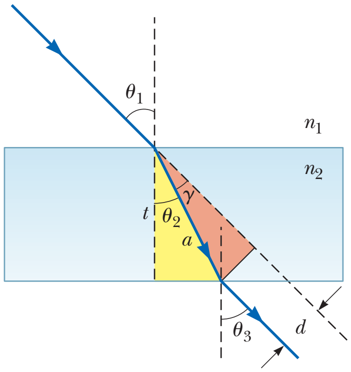


Figure 35.15 (Example 35.4) The dashed line drawn parallel to the ray coming out the bottom of the slab represents the path the light would take were the slab not there.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Follow the path of the light beam as it enters and exits the slab of material in Figure 35.15, where we have assumed that $n_2 > n_1$. The ray bends toward the normal upon entering and away from the normal upon leaving.

Categorize Like Example 35.3, this is another typical problem in which we apply the *wave under refraction* model.

Analyze Apply Snell's law of refraction to the upper surface: (1) $\sin\theta_2 = \dfrac{n_1}{n_2}\sin\theta_1$

Apply Snell's law to the lower surface: (2) $\sin\theta_3 = \dfrac{n_2}{n_1}\sin\theta_2$

Substitute Equation (1) into Equation (2): $\sin\theta_3 = \dfrac{n_2}{n_1}\left(\dfrac{n_1}{n_2}\sin\theta_1\right) = \sin\theta_1$

Finalize Therefore, $\theta_3 = \theta_1$ and the slab does not alter the direction of the beam. It does, however, offset the beam parallel to itself by the distance d shown in Figure 35.15.

WHAT IF? What if the thickness t of the slab is doubled? Does the offset distance d also double?

Answer Consider the region of the light path within the slab in Figure 35.15. The distance a is the hypotenuse of two right triangles.

Find an expression for a from the yellow triangle: $a = \dfrac{t}{\cos\theta_2}$

Find an expression for d from the red triangle: $d = a\sin\gamma = a\sin(\theta_1 - \theta_2)$

Combine these equations: $d = \dfrac{t}{\cos\theta_2}\sin(\theta_1 - \theta_2)$

For a given incident angle θ_1, the refracted angle θ_2 is determined solely by the index of refraction, so the offset distance d is proportional to t. If the thickness doubles, so does the offset distance.

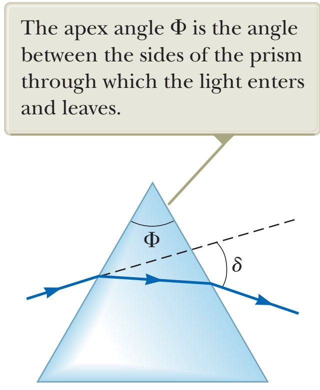


Figure 35.16 A prism refracts a single-wavelength light ray through an angle of deviation δ.

In Example 35.4, the light passes through a slab of material with parallel sides. What happens when light strikes a prism with nonparallel sides as shown in Figure 35.16? In this case, the outgoing ray does not propagate in the same direction as the incoming ray. A ray of single-wavelength light incident on the prism from the left emerges at angle δ from its original direction of travel. This angle δ is called the **angle of deviation.** The **apex angle** Φ of the prism, shown in the figure, is defined as the angle between the surface at which the light enters the prism and the second surface that the light encounters.

Example 35.5 Measuring *n* Using a Prism AM

Although we do not prove it here, the minimum angle of deviation δ_{min} for a prism occurs when the angle of incidence θ_1 is such that the refracted ray inside the prism makes the same angle with the normal to the two prism faces[1] as shown in Figure 35.17. Obtain an expression for the index of refraction of the prism material in terms of the minimum angle of deviation and the apex angle Φ.

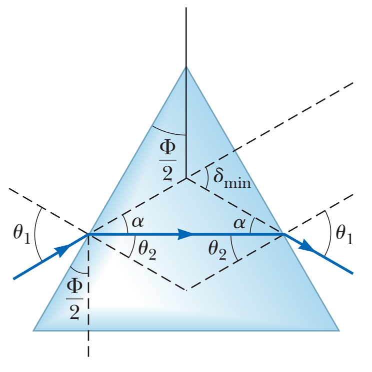


Figure 35.17 (Example 35.5) A light ray passing through a prism at the minimum angle of deviation δ_{min}.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 35.17 carefully and be sure you understand why the light ray comes out of the prism traveling in a different direction.

Categorize In this example, light enters a material through one surface and leaves the material at another surface. Let's apply the *wave under refraction* model to the light passing through the prism.

Analyze Consider the geometry in Figure 35.17, where we have used symmetry to label several angles. The reproduction of the angle $\Phi/2$ at the location of the incoming light ray shows that $\theta_2 = \Phi/2$. The theorem that an exterior angle of any triangle equals the sum of the two opposite interior angles shows that $\delta_{min} = 2\alpha$. The geometry also shows that $\theta_1 = \theta_2 + \alpha$.

Combine these three geometric results:

$$\theta_1 = \theta_2 + \alpha = \frac{\Phi}{2} + \frac{\delta_{min}}{2} = \frac{\Phi + \delta_{min}}{2}$$

Apply the wave under refraction model at the left surface and solve for n:

$$(1.00)\sin\theta_1 = n\sin\theta_2 \rightarrow n = \frac{\sin\theta_1}{\sin\theta_2}$$

Substitute for the incident and refracted angles:

$$n = \frac{\sin\left(\dfrac{\Phi + \delta_{min}}{2}\right)}{\sin(\Phi/2)} \qquad \textbf{(35.9)}$$

[1]The details of this proof are available in texts on optics.

35.5 continued

Finalize Knowing the apex angle Φ of the prism and measuring $\delta_{\min}$, you can calculate the index of refraction of the prism material. Furthermore, a hollow prism can be used to determine the values of n for various liquids filling the prism.

35.6 Huygens's Principle

The laws of reflection and refraction were stated earlier in this chapter without proof. In this section, we develop these laws by using a geometric method proposed by Huygens in 1678. **Huygens's principle** is a geometric construction for using knowledge of an earlier wave front to determine the position of a new wave front at some instant:

> All points on a given wave front are taken as point sources for the production of spherical secondary waves, called wavelets, that propagate outward through a medium with speeds characteristic of waves in that medium. After some time interval has passed, the new position of the wave front is the surface tangent to the wavelets.

First, consider a plane wave moving through free space as shown in Figure 35.18a. At $t = 0$, the wave front is indicated by the plane labeled AA'. In Huygens's construction, each point on this wave front is considered a point source. For clarity, only three point sources on AA' are shown. With these sources for the wavelets, we draw circular arcs, each of radius $c\,\Delta t$, where c is the speed of light in vacuum and Δt is some time interval during which the wave propagates. The surface drawn tangent to these wavelets is the plane BB', which is the wave front at a later time, and is parallel to AA'. In a similar manner, Figure 35.18b shows Huygens's construction for a spherical wave.

Pitfall Prevention 35.4

Of What Use Is Huygens's Principle? At this point, the importance of Huygens's principle may not be evident. Predicting the position of a future wave front may not seem to be very critical. We will use Huygens's principle here to generate the laws of reflection and refraction and in later chapters to explain additional wave phenomena for light.

Huygens's Principle Applied to Reflection and Refraction

We now derive the laws of reflection and refraction, using Huygens's principle.

For the law of reflection, refer to Figure 35.19. The line AB represents a plane wave front of the incident light just as ray 1 strikes the surface. At this instant, the wave at A sends out a Huygens wavelet (appearing at a later time as the light brown circular arc passing through D); the reflected light makes an angle γ' with the surface. At the

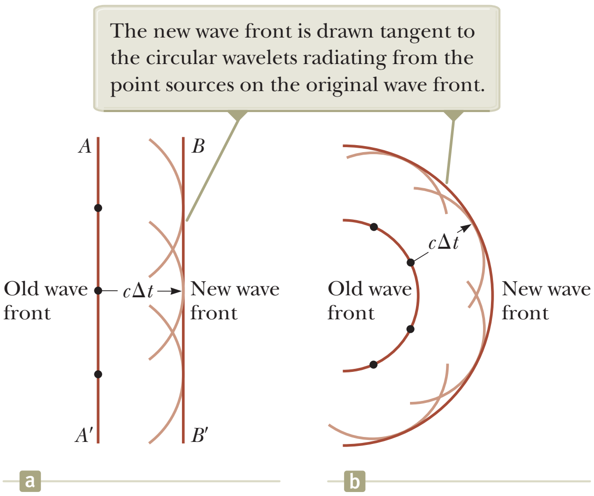


Figure 35.18 Huygens's construction for (a) a plane wave propagating to the right and (b) a spherical wave propagating to the right.

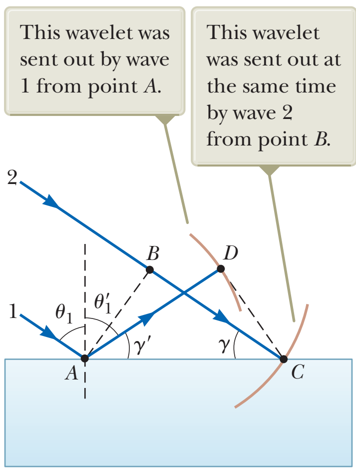


Figure 35.19 Huygens's construction for proving the law of reflection.

same time, the wave at B emits a Huygens wavelet (the light brown circular arc passing through C) with the incident light making an angle γ with the surface. Figure 35.19 shows these wavelets after a time interval Δt, after which ray 2 strikes the surface. Because both rays 1 and 2 move with the same speed, we must have $AD = BC = c\,\Delta t$.

The remainder of our analysis depends on geometry. Notice that the two triangles ABC and ADC are congruent because they have the same hypotenuse AC and because $AD = BC$. Figure 35.19 shows that

$$\cos\gamma = \frac{BC}{AC} \quad \text{and} \quad \cos\gamma' = \frac{AD}{AC}$$

where $\gamma = 90° - \theta_1$ and $\gamma' = 90° - \theta_1'$. Because $AD = BC$,

$$\cos\gamma = \cos\gamma'$$

Therefore,

$$\gamma = \gamma'$$

$$90° - \theta_1 = 90° - \theta_1'$$

and

$$\theta_1 = \theta_1'$$

which is the law of reflection.

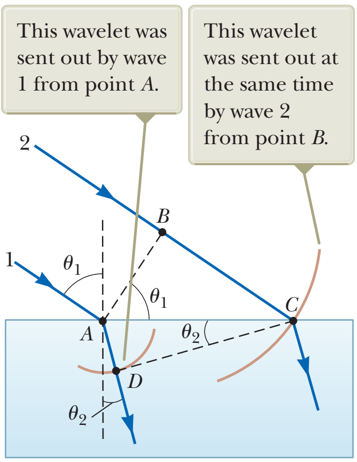


Figure 35.20 Huygens's construction for proving Snell's law of refraction.

Now let's use Huygens's principle to derive Snell's law of refraction. We focus our attention on the instant ray 1 strikes the surface and the subsequent time interval until ray 2 strikes the surface as in Figure 35.20. During this time interval, the wave at A sends out a Huygens wavelet (the light brown arc passing through D) and the light refracts into the material, making an angle θ_2 with the normal to the surface. In the same time interval, the wave at B sends out a Huygens wavelet (the light brown arc passing through C) and the light continues to propagate in the same direction. Because these two wavelets travel through different media, the radii of the wavelets are different. The radius of the wavelet from A is $AD = v_2\,\Delta t$, where v_2 is the wave speed in the second medium. The radius of the wavelet from B is $BC = v_1\,\Delta t$, where v_1 is the wave speed in the original medium.

From triangles ABC and ADC, we find that

$$\sin\theta_1 = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{v_1\,\Delta t}{AC} \quad \text{and} \quad \sin\theta_2 = \frac{AD}{AC} = \frac{v_2\,\Delta t}{AC}$$

Dividing the first equation by the second gives

$$\frac{\sin\theta_1}{\sin\theta_2} = \frac{v_1}{v_2}$$

From Equation 35.4, however, we know that $v_1 = c/n_1$ and $v_2 = c/n_2$. Therefore,

$$\frac{\sin\theta_1}{\sin\theta_2} = \frac{c/n_1}{c/n_2} = \frac{n_2}{n_1}$$

and

$$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$$

which is Snell's law of refraction.

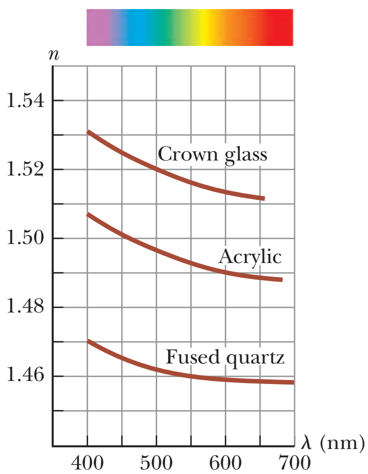


Figure 35.21 Variation of index of refraction with vacuum wavelength for three materials.

35.7 Dispersion

An important property of the index of refraction n is that, for a given material, the index varies with the wavelength of the light passing through the material as Figure 35.21 shows. This behavior is called **dispersion.** Because n is a function of wavelength, Snell's law of refraction indicates that light of different wavelengths is refracted at different angles when incident on a material.

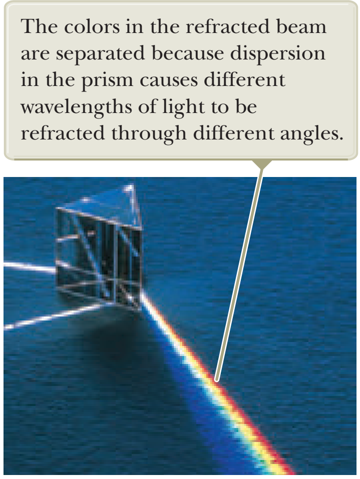


Figure 35.22 White light enters a glass prism at the upper left.

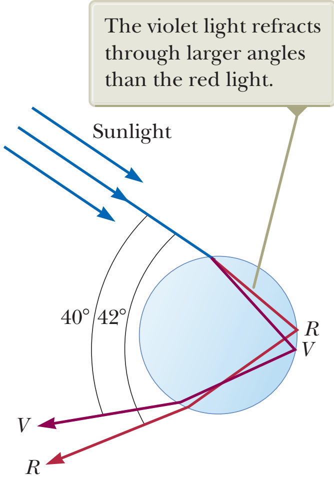


Figure 35.23 Path of sunlight through a spherical raindrop. Light following this path contributes to the visible rainbow.

Pitfall Prevention 35.5

A Rainbow of Many Light Rays
Pictorial representations such as Figure 35.23 are subject to misinterpretation. The figure shows one ray of light entering the raindrop and undergoing reflection and refraction, exiting the raindrop in a range of 40° to 42° from the entering ray. This illustration might be interpreted incorrectly as meaning that *all* light entering the raindrop exits in this small range of angles. In reality, light exits the raindrop over a much larger range of angles, from 0° to 42°. A careful analysis of the reflection and refraction from the spherical raindrop shows that the range of 40° to 42° is where the *highest-intensity light* exits the raindrop.

Figure 35.21 shows that the index of refraction generally decreases with increasing wavelength. For example, violet light refracts more than red light does when passing into a material.

Now suppose a beam of *white light* (a combination of all visible wavelengths) is incident on a prism as illustrated in Figure 35.22. Clearly, the angle of deviation δ depends on wavelength. The rays that emerge spread out in a series of colors known as the **visible spectrum.** These colors, in order of decreasing wavelength, are red, orange, yellow, green, blue, and violet. Newton showed that each color has a particular angle of deviation and that the colors can be recombined to form the original white light.

The dispersion of light into a spectrum is demonstrated most vividly in nature by the formation of a rainbow, which is often seen by an observer positioned between the Sun and a rain shower. To understand how a rainbow is formed, consider Figure 35.23. We will need to apply both the wave under reflection and wave under refraction models. A ray of sunlight (which is white light) passing overhead strikes a drop of water in the atmosphere and is refracted and reflected as follows. It is first refracted at the front surface of the drop, with the violet light deviating the most and the red light the least. At the back surface of the drop, the light is reflected and returns to the front surface, where it again undergoes refraction as it moves from water into air. The rays leave the drop such that the angle between the incident white light and the most intense returning violet ray is 40° and the angle between the incident white light and the most intense returning red ray is 42°. This small angular difference between the returning rays causes us to see a colored bow.

Now suppose an observer is viewing a rainbow as shown in Figure 35.24. If a raindrop high in the sky is being observed, the most intense red light returning from the drop reaches the observer because it is deviated the least; the most intense violet light, however, passes over the observer because it is deviated the most. Hence, the observer sees red light coming from this drop. Similarly, a drop lower in the sky directs the most intense violet light toward the observer and appears violet to the observer. (The most intense red light from this drop passes below the observer's eye and is not seen.) The most intense light from other colors of the spectrum reaches the observer from raindrops lying between these two extreme positions.

Figure 35.25 (page 1074) shows a *double rainbow.* The secondary rainbow is fainter than the primary rainbow, and the colors are reversed. The secondary rainbow arises from light that makes two reflections from the interior surface before exiting

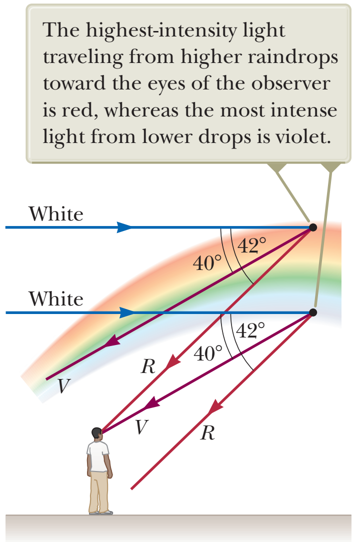


Figure 35.24 The formation of a rainbow seen by an observer standing with the Sun behind his back.

Mark D. Phillips/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Figure 35.25 This photograph of a rainbow shows a distinct secondary rainbow with the colors reversed.

the raindrop. In the laboratory, rainbows have been observed in which the light makes more than 30 reflections before exiting the water drop. Because each reflection involves some loss of light due to refraction of part of the incident light out of the water drop, the intensity of these higher-order rainbows is small compared with that of the primary rainbow.

Quick Quiz 35.4 In photography, lenses in a camera use refraction to form an image on a light-sensitive surface. Ideally, you want all the colors in the light from the object being photographed to be refracted by the same amount. Of the materials shown in Figure 35.21, which would you choose for a single-element camera lens? **(a)** crown glass **(b)** acrylic **(c)** fused quartz **(d)** impossible to determine

35.8 Total Internal Reflection

An interesting effect called **total internal reflection** can occur when light is directed from a medium having a given index of refraction toward one having a lower index of refraction. Consider Figure 35.26a, in which a light ray travels in medium 1 and meets the boundary between medium 1 and medium 2, where n_1 is greater than n_2. In the figure, labels 1 through 5 indicate various possible directions of the ray consistent with the wave under refraction model. The refracted rays are bent away from the normal because n_1 is greater than n_2. At some particular angle of incidence θ_c, called the **critical angle,** the refracted light ray moves parallel to the boundary so that $\theta_2 = 90°$ (Fig. 35.26b). For angles of incidence greater than θ_c, the ray is entirely reflected at the boundary as shown by ray 5 in Figure 35.26a.

We can use Snell's law of refraction to find the critical angle. When $\theta_1 = \theta_c$, $\theta_2 = 90°$ and Equation 35.8 gives

$$n_1 \sin \theta_c = n_2 \sin 90° = n_2$$

Critical angle for total internal reflection

$$\sin \theta_c = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \quad (\text{for } n_1 > n_2) \tag{35.10}$$

This equation can be used only when n_1 is greater than n_2. That is, total internal reflection occurs only when light is directed from a medium of a given index of refraction toward a medium of lower index of refraction. If n_1 were less than n_2,

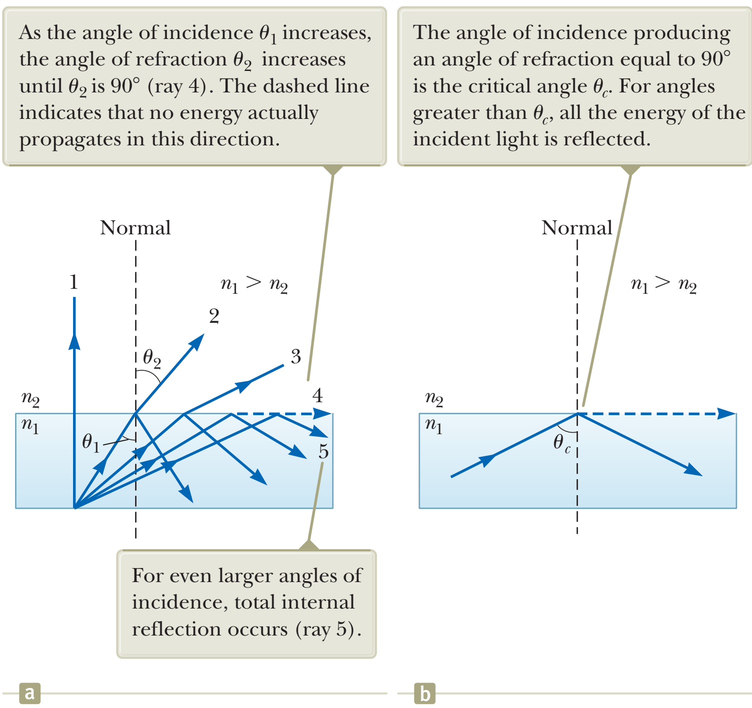


Figure 35.26 (a) Rays travel from a medium of index of refraction n_1 into a medium of index of refraction n_2, where $n_2 < n_1$. (b) Ray 4 is singled out.

Equation 35.10 would give $\sin \theta_c > 1$, which is a meaningless result because the sine of an angle can never be greater than unity.

The critical angle for total internal reflection is small when n_1 is considerably greater than n_2. For example, the critical angle for a diamond in air is 24°. Any ray inside the diamond that approaches the surface at an angle greater than 24° is completely reflected back into the crystal. This property, combined with proper faceting, causes diamonds to sparkle. The angles of the facets are cut so that light is "caught" inside the crystal through multiple internal reflections. These multiple reflections give the light a long path through the medium, and substantial dispersion of colors occurs. By the time the light exits through the top surface of the crystal, the rays associated with different colors have been fairly widely separated from one another.

Cubic zirconia also has a high index of refraction and can be made to sparkle very much like a diamond. If a suspect jewel is immersed in corn syrup, the difference in n for the cubic zirconia and that for the corn syrup is small and the critical angle is therefore great. Hence, more rays escape sooner; as a result, the sparkle completely disappears. A real diamond does not lose all its sparkle when placed in corn syrup.

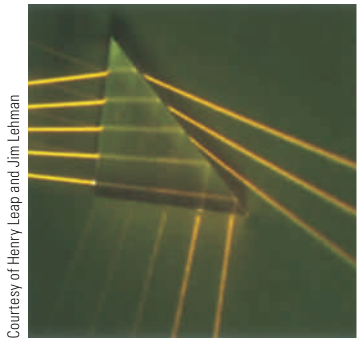


Figure 35.27 (Quick Quiz 35.5) Five nonparallel light rays enter a glass prism from the left.

Quick Quiz 35.5 In Figure 35.27, five light rays enter a glass prism from the left. **(i)** How many of these rays undergo total internal reflection at the slanted surface of the prism? (a) one (b) two (c) three (d) four (e) five **(ii)** Suppose the prism in Figure 35.27 can be rotated in the plane of the paper. For *all five* rays to experience total internal reflection from the slanted surface, should the prism be rotated (a) clockwise or (b) counterclockwise?

Example 35.6 A View from the Fish's Eye

Find the critical angle for an air–water boundary. (Assume the index of refraction of water is 1.33.)

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 35.26 to understand the concept of total internal reflection and the significance of the critical angle.

Categorize We use concepts developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Apply Equation 35.10 to the air–water interface:

$$\sin \theta_c = \frac{n_2}{n_1} = \frac{1.00}{1.33} = 0.752$$

$$\theta_c = \boxed{48.8°}$$

WHAT IF? What if a fish in a still pond looks upward toward the water's surface at different angles relative to the surface as in Figure 35.28? What does it see?

Answer Because the path of a light ray is reversible, light traveling from medium 2 into medium 1 in Figure 35.26a follows the paths shown, but in the *opposite* direction. A fish looking upward toward the water surface as in Figure 35.28 can see out of the water if it looks toward the surface at an angle less than the critical angle. Therefore, when the fish's line of vision makes an angle of $\theta = 40°$ with the normal to the surface, for example, light from above the water reaches the fish's eye. At $\theta = 48.8°$, the critical angle for water, the light has to skim along the water's surface before being refracted to the fish's eye; at this angle, the fish can, in principle, see the entire shore of the pond. At angles greater than the critical angle, the light reaching the fish comes by means of total internal reflection at the surface. Therefore, at $\theta = 60°$, the fish sees a reflection of the bottom of the pond.

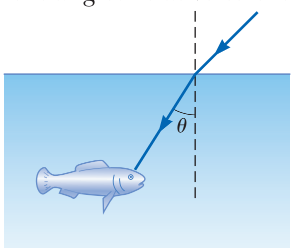


Figure 35.28 (Example 35.6) **What If?** A fish looks upward toward the water surface.

Optical Fibers

Another interesting application of total internal reflection is the use of glass or transparent plastic rods to "pipe" light from one place to another. As indicated in Figure 35.29 (page 1076), light is confined to traveling within a rod, even around curves, as the result of successive total internal reflections. Such a light pipe is flexible

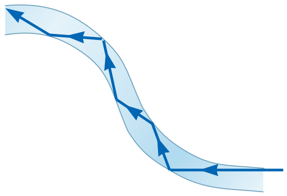


Figure 35.29 Light travels in a curved transparent rod by multiple internal reflections.

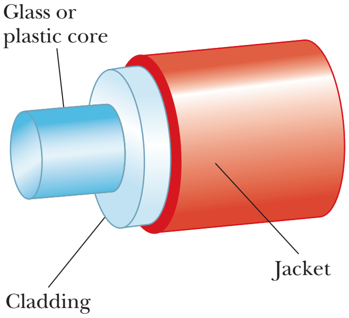


Figure 35.30 The construction of an optical fiber. Light travels in the core, which is surrounded by a cladding and a protective jacket.

if thin fibers are used rather than thick rods. A flexible light pipe is called an **optical fiber.** If a bundle of parallel fibers is used to construct an optical transmission line, images can be transferred from one point to another. Part of the 2009 Nobel Prize in Physics was awarded to Charles K. Kao (b. 1933) for his discovery of how to transmit light signals over long distances through thin glass fibers. This discovery has led to the development of a sizable industry known as *fiber optics*.

A practical optical fiber consists of a transparent core surrounded by a *cladding*, a material that has a lower index of refraction than the core. The combination may be surrounded by a plastic *jacket* to prevent mechanical damage. Figure 35.30 shows a cutaway view of this construction. Because the index of refraction of the cladding is less than that of the core, light traveling in the core experiences total internal reflection if it arrives at the interface between the core and the cladding at an angle of incidence that exceeds the critical angle. In this case, light "bounces" along the core of the optical fiber, losing very little of its intensity as it travels.

Any loss in intensity in an optical fiber is essentially due to reflections from the two ends and absorption by the fiber material. Optical fiber devices are particularly useful for viewing an object at an inaccessible location. For example, physicians often use such devices to examine internal organs of the body or to perform surgery without making large incisions. Optical fiber cables are replacing copper wiring and coaxial cables for telecommunications because the fibers can carry a much greater volume of telephone calls or other forms of communication than electrical wires can.

Figure 35.31a shows a bundle of optical fibers gathered into an optical cable that can be used to carry communication signals. Figure 35.31b shows laser light following the curves of a coiled bundle by total internal reflection. Many computers and other electronic equipment now have optical ports as well as electrical ports for transferring information.

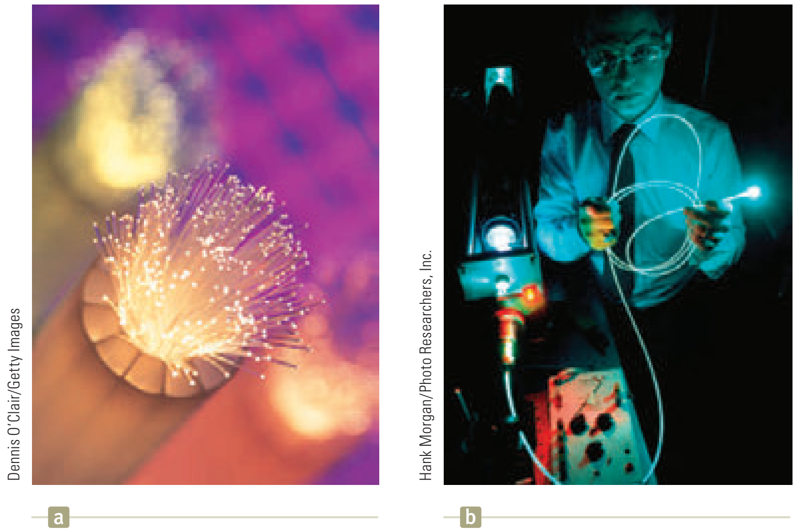


Figure 35.31 (a) Strands of glass optical fibers are used to carry voice, video, and data signals in telecommunication networks. (b) A bundle of optical fibers is illuminated by a laser.

Summary

Definition

The **index of refraction** n of a medium is defined by the ratio

$$n \equiv \frac{c}{v} \tag{35.4}$$

where c is the speed of light in vacuum and v is the speed of light in the medium.

Concepts and Principles

In geometric optics, we use the **ray approximation,** in which a wave travels through a uniform medium in straight lines in the direction of the rays.

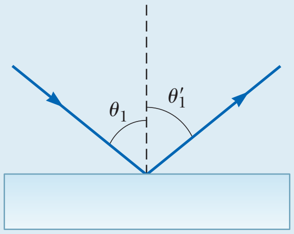
Total internal reflection occurs when light travels from a medium of high index of refraction to one of lower index of refraction. The **critical angle** θ_c for which total internal reflection occurs at an interface is given by

$$\sin \theta_c = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \quad (\text{for } n_1 > n_2) \tag{35.10}$$

Analysis Models for Problem Solving

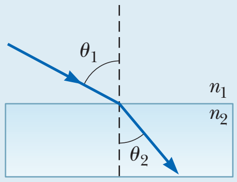
Wave Under Reflection. The **law of reflection** states that for a light ray (or other type of wave) incident on a smooth surface, the angle of reflection θ_1' equals the angle of incidence θ_1:

$$\theta_1' = \theta_1 \tag{35.2}$$



Wave Under Refraction. A wave crossing a boundary as it travels from medium 1 to medium 2 is **refracted.** The angle of refraction θ_2 is related to the incident angle θ_1 by the relationship

$$\frac{\sin \theta_2}{\sin \theta_1} = \frac{v_2}{v_1} \tag{35.3}$$



where v_1 and v_2 are the speeds of the wave in medium 1 and medium 2, respectively. The incident ray, the reflected ray, the refracted ray, and the normal to the surface all lie in the same plane.

For light waves, **Snell's law of refraction** states that

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2 \tag{35.8}$$

where n_1 and n_2 are the indices of refraction in the two media.

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. In each of the following situations, a wave passes through an opening in an absorbing wall. Rank the situations in order from the one in which the wave is best described by the ray approximation to the one in which the wave coming through the opening spreads out most nearly equally in all directions in the hemisphere beyond the wall. (a) The sound of a low whistle at 1 kHz passes through a doorway 1 m wide. (b) Red light passes through the pupil of your eye. (c) Blue light passes through the pupil of your eye. (d) The wave broadcast by an AM radio station passes through a doorway 1 m wide. (e) An x-ray passes through the space between bones in your elbow joint.

2. A source emits monochromatic light of wavelength 495 nm in air. When the light passes through a liquid, its wavelength reduces to 434 nm. What is the liquid's index of refraction? (a) 1.26 (b) 1.49 (c) 1.14 (d) 1.33 (e) 2.03

3. Carbon disulfide ($n = 1.63$) is poured into a container made of crown glass ($n = 1.52$). What is the critical angle for total internal reflection of a light ray in the liquid when it is incident on the liquid-to-glass surface? (a) 89.2° (b) 68.8° (c) 21.2° (d) 1.07° (e) 43.0°

4. A light wave moves between medium 1 and medium 2. Which of the following are correct statements relating its speed, frequency, and wavelength in the two media, the indices of refraction of the media, and the angles of incidence and refraction? More than one statement may be correct. (a) $v_1/\sin\theta_1 = v_2/\sin\theta_2$ (b) $\csc\theta_1/n_1 = \csc\theta_2/n_2$ (c) $\lambda_1/\sin\theta_1 = \lambda_2/\sin\theta_2$ (d) $f_1/\sin\theta_1 = f_2/\sin\theta_2$ (e) $n_1/\cos\theta_1 = n_2/\cos\theta_2$

5. What happens to a light wave when it travels from air into glass? (a) Its speed remains the same. (b) Its speed increases. (c) Its wavelength increases. (d) Its wavelength remains the same. (e) Its frequency remains the same.

6. The index of refraction for water is about $\frac{4}{3}$. What happens as a beam of light travels from air into water? (a) Its speed increases to $\frac{4}{3}c$, and its frequency decreases. (b) Its speed decreases to $\frac{3}{4}c$, and its wavelength decreases by a factor of $\frac{3}{4}$. (c) Its speed decreases to $\frac{3}{4}c$, and its wavelength increases by a factor of $\frac{4}{3}$. (d) Its speed and frequency remain the same. (e) Its speed decreases to $\frac{3}{4}c$, and its frequency increases.

7. Light can travel from air into water. Some possible paths for the light ray in the water are shown in Figure

OQ35.7. Which path will the light most likely follow? (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) E

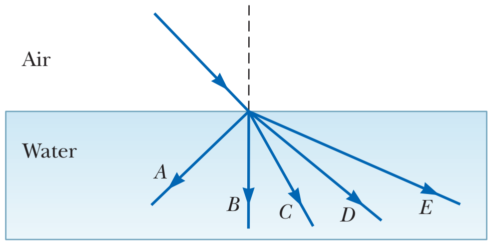


Figure OQ35.7

8. What is the order of magnitude of the time interval required for light to travel 10 km as in Galileo's attempt to measure the speed of light? (a) several seconds (b) several milliseconds (c) several microseconds (d) several nanoseconds

9. A light ray containing both blue and red wavelengths is incident at an angle on a slab of glass. Which of the sketches in Figure OQ35.9 represents the most likely outcome? (a) A (b) B (c) C (d) D (e) none of them

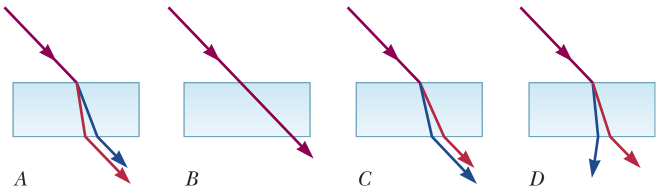


Figure OQ35.9

10. For the following questions, choose from the following possibilities: (a) yes; water (b) no; water (c) yes; air (d) no; air. **(i)** Can light undergo total internal reflection at a smooth interface between air and water? If so, in which medium must it be traveling originally? **(ii)** Can sound undergo total internal reflection at a smooth interface between air and water? If so, in which medium must it be traveling originally?

11. A light ray travels from vacuum into a slab of material with index of refraction n_1 at incident angle θ with respect to the surface. It subsequently passes into a second slab of material with index of refraction n_2 before passing back into vacuum again. The surfaces of the different materials are all parallel to one another. As the light exits the second slab, what can be said of the final angle ϕ that the outgoing light makes with the normal? (a) $\phi > \theta$ (b) $\phi < \theta$ (c) $\phi = \theta$ (d) The angle depends on the magnitudes of n_1 and n_2. (e) The angle depends on the wavelength of the light.

12. Suppose you find experimentally that two colors of light, A and B, originally traveling in the same direction in air, are sent through a glass prism, and A changes direction more than B. Which travels more slowly in the prism, A or B? Alternatively, is there insufficient information to determine which moves more slowly?

13. The core of an optical fiber transmits light with minimal loss if it is surrounded by what? (a) water (b) diamond (c) air (d) glass (e) fused quartz

14. Which color light refracts the most when entering crown glass from air at some incident angle θ with respect to the normal? (a) violet (b) blue (c) green (d) yellow (e) red

15. Light traveling in a medium of index of refraction n_1 is incident on another medium having an index of refraction n_2. Under which of the following conditions can total internal reflection occur at the interface of the two media? (a) The indices of refraction have the relation $n_2 > n_1$. (b) The indices of refraction have the relation $n_1 > n_2$. (c) Light travels slower in the second medium than in the first. (d) The angle of incidence is less than the critical angle. (e) The angle of incidence must equal the angle of refraction.

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. The level of water in a clear, colorless glass can easily be observed with the naked eye. The level of liquid helium in a clear glass vessel is extremely difficult to see with the naked eye. Explain.

2. A complete circle of a rainbow can sometimes be seen from an airplane. With a stepladder, a lawn sprinkler, and a sunny day, how can you show the complete circle to children?

3. You take a child for walks around the neighborhood. She loves to listen to echoes from houses when she shouts or when you clap loudly. A house with a large, flat front wall can produce an echo if you stand straight in front of it and reasonably far away. (a) Draw a bird's-eye view of the situation to explain the production of the echo. Shade the area where you can stand to hear the echo. For parts (b) through (e), explain your answers with diagrams. (b) **What If?** The child helps you discover that a house with an L-shaped floor plan can produce echoes if you are standing in a wider range of locations. You can be standing at any reasonably distant location from which you can see the inside corner. Explain the echo in this case and compare with your diagram in part (a). (c) **What If?** What if the two wings of the house are not perpendicular? Will you and the child, standing close together, hear echoes? (d) **What If?** What if a rectangular house and its garage have perpendicular walls that would form an inside corner but have a breezeway between them so that the walls do not meet? Will the structure produce strong echoes for people in a wide range of locations?

4. The F-117A stealth fighter (Fig. CQ35.4) is specifically designed to be a *non*retroreflector of radar. What aspects of its design help accomplish this purpose?

Courtesy U.S. Air Force

Figure CQ35.4

5. Retroreflection by transparent spheres, mentioned in Section 35.4, can be observed with dewdrops. To do so, look at your head's shadow where it falls on dewy grass. The optical display around the shadow of your head is called *heiligenschein,* which is German for *holy light.* Renaissance artist Benvenuto Cellini described the phenomenon and his reaction in his *Autobiography,* at the end of Part One, and American philosopher Henry David Thoreau did the same in *Walden,* "Baker Farm," second paragraph. Do some Internet research to find out more about the heiligenschein.

6. Sound waves have much in common with light waves, including the properties of reflection and refraction. Give an example of each of these phenomena for sound waves.

7. Total internal reflection is applied in the periscope of a submerged submarine to let the user observe events above the water surface. In this device, two prisms are arranged as shown in Figure CQ35.7 so that an incident beam of light follows the path shown. Parallel tilted, silvered mirrors could be used, but glass prisms with no silvered surfaces give higher light throughput. Propose a reason for the higher efficiency.

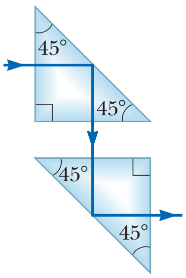


Figure CQ35.7

8. Explain why a diamond sparkles more than a glass crystal of the same shape and size.

9. A laser beam passing through a nonhomogeneous sugar solution follows a curved path. Explain.

10. The display windows of some department stores are slanted slightly inward at the bottom. This tilt is to decrease the glare from streetlights and the Sun, which would make it difficult for shoppers to see the display inside. Sketch a light ray reflecting from such a window to show how this design works.

11. At one restaurant, a worker uses colored chalk to write the daily specials on a blackboard illuminated with a spotlight. At another restaurant, a worker writes with colored grease pencils on a flat, smooth sheet of transparent acrylic plastic with an index of refraction 1.55. The panel hangs in front of a piece of black felt. Small, bright fluorescent tube lights are installed all along the edges of the sheet, inside an opaque channel. Figure CQ35.11 shows a cutaway view of the sign. (a) Explain why viewers at both restaurants see the letters shining against a black background. (b) Explain why the sign at the second restaurant may use less energy from the electric company than the illuminated blackboard at the first restaurant. (c) What would be a good choice for the index of refraction of the material in the grease pencils?

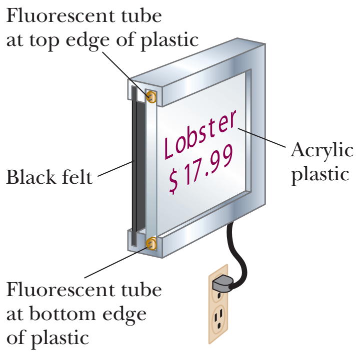


Figure CQ35.11

12. (a) Under what conditions is a mirage formed? While driving on a hot day, sometimes you see what appears to be water on the road far ahead. When you arrive at the location of the water, however, the road is perfectly dry. Explain this phenomenon. (b) The mirage called *fata morgana* often occurs over water or in cold regions covered with snow or ice. It can cause islands to sometimes become visible, even though they are not normally visible because they are below the horizon due to the curvature of the Earth. Explain this phenomenon.

13. Figure CQ35.13 shows a pencil partially immersed in a cup of water. Why does the pencil appear to be bent?

© Cengage Learning/Charles D. Winters

Figure CQ35.13

14. A scientific supply catalog advertises a material having an index of refraction of 0.85. Is that a good product to buy? Why or why not?

15. Why do astronomers looking at distant galaxies talk about looking backward in time?

16. Try this simple experiment on your own. Take two opaque cups, place a coin at the bottom of each cup near the edge, and fill one cup with water. Next, view the cups at some angle from the side so that the coin in water is just visible as shown on the left in Figure CQ35.16. Notice that the coin in air is not visible as shown on the right in Figure CQ35.16. Explain this observation.

Figure CQ35.16

17. Figure CQ35.17a shows a desk ornament globe containing a photograph. The flat photograph is in air, inside a vertical slot located behind a water-filled compartment having the shape of one half of a cylinder. Suppose you are looking at the center of the photograph and then rotate the globe about a vertical axis. You find that the center of the photograph disappears when you rotate the globe beyond a certain maximum angle (Fig. CQ35.17b). (a) Account for this phenomenon and (b) describe what you see when you turn the globe beyond this angle.

a b

Figure CQ35.17

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 35.1 The Nature of Light

Section 35.2 Measurements of the Speed of Light

1. M Find the energy of (a) a photon having a frequency of 5.00×10^{17} Hz and (b) a photon having a wavelength of 3.00×10^{2} nm. Express your answers in units of electron volts, noting that 1 eV $= 1.60 \times 10^{-19}$ J.

2. The *Apollo 11* astronauts set up a panel of efficient corner-cube retroreflectors on the Moon's surface (Fig. 35.8a). The speed of light can be found by measuring the time interval required for a laser beam to travel from the Earth, reflect from the panel, and return to the Earth. Assume this interval is measured to be 2.51 s at a station where the Moon is at the zenith and take the center-to-center distance from the Earth to the Moon to be equal to 3.84×10^{8} m. (a) What is the measured speed of light? (b) Explain whether it is necessary to consider the sizes of the Earth and the Moon in your calculation.

3. AMT M In an experiment to measure the speed of light using the apparatus of Armand H. L. Fizeau (see Fig. 35.2), the distance between light source and mirror was 11.45 km and the wheel had 720 notches. The experimentally determined value of c was 2.998×10^{8} m/s when the outgoing light passed through one notch and then returned through the next notch. Calculate the minimum angular speed of the wheel for this experiment.

4. As a result of his observations, Ole Roemer concluded that eclipses of Io by Jupiter were delayed by 22 min during a six-month period as the Earth moved from the point in its orbit where it is closest to Jupiter to the diametrically opposite point where it is farthest from Jupiter. Using the value 1.50×10^{8} km as the average radius of the Earth's orbit around the Sun, calculate the speed of light from these data.

Section 35.3 The Ray Approximation in Ray Optics

Section 35.4 Analysis Model: Wave Under Reflection

Section 35.5 Analysis Model: Wave Under Refraction

Notes: You may look up indices of refraction in Table 35.1. Unless indicated otherwise, assume the medium surrounding a piece of material is air with $n = 1.000\ 293$.

5. W The wavelength of red helium–neon laser light in air is 632.8 nm. (a) What is its frequency? (b) What is its wavelength in glass that has an index of refraction of 1.50? (c) What is its speed in the glass?

6. An underwater scuba diver sees the Sun at an apparent angle of 45.0° above the horizontal. What is the actual elevation angle of the Sun above the horizontal?

7. A ray of light is incident on a flat surface of a block of crown glass that is surrounded by water. The angle of refraction is 19.6°. Find the angle of reflection.

8. Figure P35.8 shows a refracted light beam in linseed oil making an angle of $\phi = 20.0°$ with the normal line NN'. The index of refraction of linseed oil is 1.48. Determine the angles (a) θ and (b) θ'.

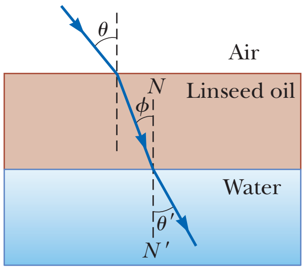


Figure P35.8

9. Find the speed of light in (a) flint glass, (b) water, and (c) cubic zirconia.

10. A dance hall is built without pillars and with a horizontal ceiling 7.20 m above the floor. A mirror is fastened flat against one section of the ceiling. Following an earthquake, the mirror is in place and unbroken. An engineer makes a quick check of whether the ceiling is sagging by directing a vertical beam of laser light up at the mirror and observing its reflection on the floor. (a) Show that if the mirror has rotated to make an angle ϕ with the horizontal, the normal to the mirror makes an angle ϕ with the vertical. (b) Show that the reflected laser light makes an angle 2ϕ with the vertical. (c) Assume the reflected laser light makes a spot on the floor 1.40 cm away from the point vertically below the laser. Find the angle ϕ.

11. A ray of light travels from air into another medium, making an angle of $\theta_1 = 45.0°$ with the normal as in Figure P35.11. Find the angle of refraction θ_2 if the second medium is (a) fused quartz, (b) carbon disulfide, and (c) water.

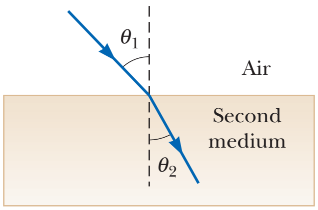


Figure P35.11

12. A ray of light strikes a flat block of glass ($n = 1.50$) of thickness 2.00 cm at an angle of 30.0° with the normal. Trace the light beam through the glass and find the angles of incidence and refraction at each surface.

13. A prism that has an apex angle of 50.0° is made of cubic zirconia. What is its minimum angle of deviation?

14. A plane sound wave in air at 20°C, with wavelength 589 mm, is incident on a smooth surface of water at 25°C at an angle of incidence of 13.0°. Determine (a) the angle of refraction for the sound wave and (b) the wavelength of the sound in water. A narrow beam of sodium yellow light, with wavelength 589 nm in vacuum, is incident from air onto a smooth water surface at an angle of incidence of 13.0°. Determine (c) the angle of refraction and (d) the wavelength of the light in water. (e) Compare and contrast the behavior of the sound and light waves in this problem.

15. A light ray initially in water enters a transparent substance at an angle of incidence of 37.0°, and the transmitted ray is refracted at an angle of 25.0°. Calculate the speed of light in the transparent substance.

16. A laser beam is incident at an angle of 30.0° from the vertical onto a solution of corn syrup in water. The beam is refracted to 19.24° from the vertical. (a) What is the index of refraction of the corn syrup solution? Assume that the light is red, with vacuum wavelength 632.8 nm. Find its (b) wavelength, (c) frequency, and (d) speed in the solution.

17. A ray of light strikes the midpoint of one face of an equiangular (60°–60°–60°) glass prism ($n = 1.5$) at an angle of incidence of 30°. (a) Trace the path of the light ray through the glass and find the angles of incidence and refraction at each surface. (b) If a small fraction of light is also reflected at each surface, what are the angles of reflection at the surfaces?

18. The reflecting surfaces of two intersecting flat mirrors are at an angle θ ($0° < \theta < 90°$) as shown in Figure P35.18. For a light ray that strikes the horizontal mirror, show that the emerging ray will intersect the incident ray at an angle $\beta = 180° - 2\theta$.

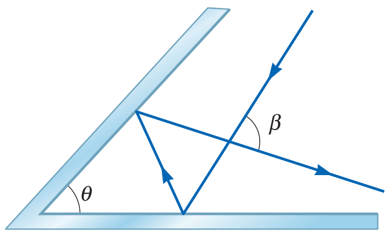


Figure P35.18

19. When you look through a window, by what time interval is the light you see delayed by having to go through glass instead of air? Make an order-of-magnitude estimate on the basis of data you specify. By how many wavelengths is it delayed?

20. Two flat, rectangular mirrors, both perpendicular to a horizontal sheet of paper, are set edge to edge with their reflecting surfaces perpendicular to each other. (a) A light ray in the plane of the paper strikes one of the mirrors at an arbitrary angle of incidence θ_1. Prove that the final direction of the ray, after reflection from both mirrors, is opposite its initial direction. (b) **What If?** Now assume the paper is replaced with a third flat mirror, touching edges with the other two and perpendicular to both, creating a corner-cube retroreflector (Fig. 35.8a). A ray of light is incident from any direction within the octant of space bounded by the reflecting surfaces. Argue that the ray will reflect once from each mirror and that its final direction will be opposite its original direction. The *Apollo 11* astronauts placed a panel of corner-cube retroreflectors on the Moon. Analysis of timing data taken with it reveals that the radius of the Moon's orbit is increasing at the rate of 3.8 cm/yr as it loses kinetic energy because of tidal friction.

21. W The two mirrors illustrated in Figure P35.21 meet at a right angle. The beam of light in the vertical plane indicated by the dashed lines strikes mirror 1 as shown. (a) Determine the distance the reflected light beam travels before striking mirror 2. (b) In what direction does the light beam travel after being reflected from mirror 2?

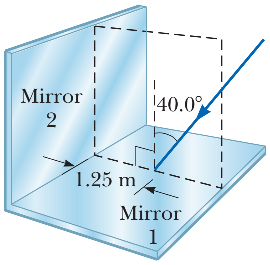


Figure P35.21

22. W When the light ray illustrated in Figure P35.22 passes through the glass block of index of refraction $n = 1.50$, it is shifted laterally by the distance d. (a) Find the value of d. (b) Find the time interval required for the light to pass through the glass block.

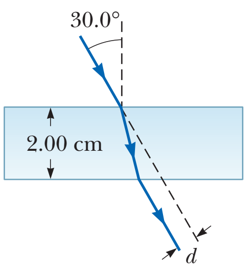


Figure P35.22

23. Two light pulses are emitted simultaneously from a source. Both pulses travel through the same total length of air to a detector, but mirrors shunt one pulse along a path that carries it through an extra length of 6.20 m of ice along the way. Determine the difference in the pulses' times of arrival at the detector.

24. Light passes from air into flint glass at a nonzero angle of incidence. (a) Is it possible for the component of its velocity perpendicular to the interface to remain constant? Explain your answer. (b) **What If?** Can the component of velocity parallel to the interface remain constant during refraction? Explain your answer.

25. A laser beam with vacuum wavelength 632.8 nm is incident from air onto a block of Lucite as shown in Figure 35.10b. The line of sight of the photograph is perpendicular to the plane in which the light moves. Find (a) the speed, (b) the frequency, and (c) the wavelength of the light in the Lucite. *Suggestion:* Use a protractor.

26. A narrow beam of ultrasonic waves reflects off the liver tumor illustrated in Figure P35.26. The speed of the wave is 10.0% less in the liver than in the surrounding medium. Determine the depth of the tumor.

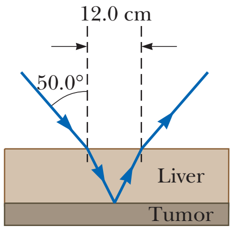


Figure P35.26

27. AMT M W An opaque cylindrical tank with an open top has a diameter of 3.00 m and is completely filled with water. When the afternoon Sun reaches an angle of 28.0° above the horizon, sunlight ceases to illuminate any part of the bottom of the tank. How deep is the tank?

28. A triangular glass prism with apex angle 60.0° has an index of refraction of 1.50. (a) Show that if its angle of incidence on the first surface is $\theta_1 = 48.6°$, light will pass symmetrically through the prism as shown in Figure 35.17. (b) Find the angle of deviation δ_{min} for $\theta_1 = 48.6°$. (c) **What If?** Find the angle of deviation if the angle of incidence on the first surface is 45.6°. (d) Find the angle of deviation if $\theta_1 = 51.6°$.

29. Light of wavelength 700 nm is incident on the face of a fused quartz prism ($n = 1.458$ at 700 nm) at an incidence angle of 75.0°. The apex angle of the prism is 60.0°. Calculate the angle (a) of refraction at the first surface, (b) of incidence at the second surface, (c) of refraction at the second surface, and (d) between the incident and emerging rays.

30. Figure P35.30 shows a light ray incident on a series of slabs having different refractive indices, where $n_1 < n_2 < n_3 < n_4$. Notice that the path of the ray steadily bends toward the normal. If the variation in n were continuous, the path would form a smooth curve. Use this idea and a ray diagram to explain why you can see the Sun at sunset after it has fallen below the horizon.

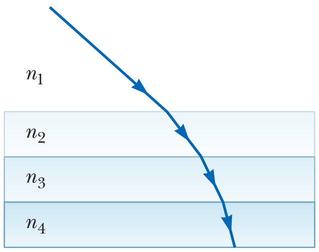


Figure P35.30

31. Three sheets of plastic have unknown indices of refraction. Sheet 1 is placed on top of sheet 2, and a laser beam is directed onto the sheets from above. The laser beam enters sheet 1 and then strikes the interface between sheet 1 and sheet 2 at an angle of 26.5° with the normal. The refracted beam in sheet 2 makes an angle of 31.7° with the normal. The experiment is repeated with sheet 3 on top of sheet 2, and, with the same angle of incidence on the sheet 3–sheet 2 interface, the refracted beam makes an angle of 36.7° with the normal. If the experiment is repeated again with sheet 1 on top of sheet 3, with that same angle of incidence on the sheet 1–sheet 3 interface, what is the expected angle of refraction in sheet 3?

32. A person looking into an empty container is able to see the far edge of the container's bottom as shown in Figure P35.32a. The height of the container is h, and its width is d. When the container is completely filled with a fluid of index of refraction n and viewed from the same angle, the person can see the center of a coin at

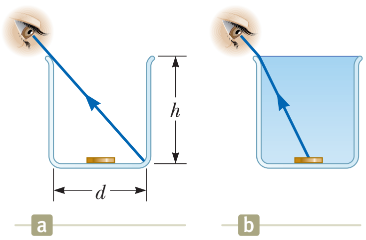


Figure P35.32

the middle of the container's bottom as shown in Figure P35.32b. (a) Show that the ratio h/d is given by

$$\frac{h}{d} = \sqrt{\frac{n^2 - 1}{4 - n^2}}$$

(b) Assuming the container has a width of 8.00 cm and is filled with water, use the expression above to find the height of the container. (c) For what range of values of n will the center of the coin not be visible for any values of h and d?

33. A laser beam is incident on a 45°–45°–90° prism perpendicular to one of its faces as shown in Figure P35.33. The transmitted beam that exits the hypotenuse of the prism makes an angle of $\theta = 15.0°$ with the direction of the incident beam. Find the index of refraction of the prism.

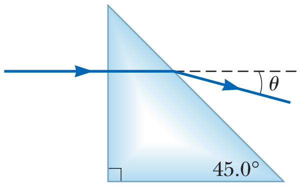


Figure P35.33

34. GP A submarine is 300 m horizontally from the shore of a freshwater lake and 100 m beneath the surface of the water. A laser beam is sent from the submarine so that the beam strikes the surface of the water 210 m from the shore. A building stands on the shore, and the laser beam hits a target at the top of the building. The goal is to find the height of the target above sea level. (a) Draw a diagram of the situation, identifying the two triangles that are important in finding the solution. (b) Find the angle of incidence of the beam striking the water–air interface. (c) Find the angle of refraction. (d) What angle does the refracted beam make with the horizontal? (e) Find the height of the target above sea level.

35. A beam of light both reflects and refracts at the surface between air and glass as shown in Figure P35.35. If the refractive index of the glass is n_g, find the angle of incidence θ_1 in the air that would result in the reflected ray and the refracted ray being perpendicular to each other.

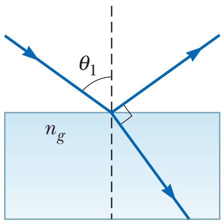


Figure P35.35

Section 35.6 Huygens's Principle

Section 35.7 Dispersion

36. The index of refraction for red light in water is 1.331 and that for blue light is 1.340. If a ray of white light enters the water at an angle of incidence of 83.0°, what are the underwater angles of refraction for the (a) red and (b) blue components of the light?

37. A light beam containing red and violet wavelengths is incident on a slab of quartz at an angle of incidence of 50.0°. The index of refraction of quartz is 1.455 at 600 nm (red light), and its index of refraction is 1.468 at 410 nm (violet light). Find the dispersion of the slab, which is defined as the difference in the angles of refraction for the two wavelengths.

38. The speed of a water wave is described by $v = \sqrt{gd}$, where d is the water depth, assumed to be small compared to the wavelength. Because their speed changes, water waves refract when moving into a region of different depth. (a) Sketch a map of an ocean beach on the eastern side of a landmass. Show contour lines of constant depth under water, assuming a reasonably uniform slope. (b) Suppose waves approach the coast from a storm far away to the north–northeast. Demonstrate that the waves move nearly perpendicular to the shoreline when they reach the beach. (c) Sketch a map of a coastline with alternating bays and headlands as suggested in Figure P35.38. Again make a reasonable guess about the shape of contour lines of constant depth. (d) Suppose waves approach the coast, carrying energy with uniform density along originally straight wave fronts. Show that the energy reaching the coast is concentrated at the headlands and has lower intensity in the bays.

Andy Ryan/Stone/Getty Images

Figure P35.38

39. M The index of refraction for violet light in silica flint glass is 1.66, and that for red light is 1.62. What is the angular spread of visible light passing through a prism of apex angle 60.0° if the angle of incidence is 50.0°? See Figure P35.39.

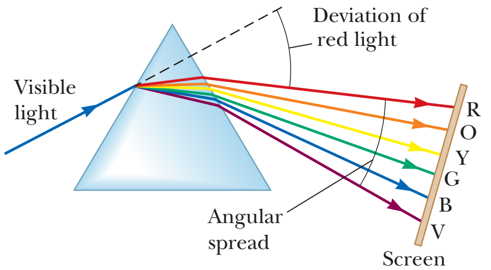


Figure P35.39 Problems 39 and 40.

40. The index of refraction for violet light in silica flint glass is n_V, and that for red light is n_R. What is the angular spread of visible light passing through a prism of apex angle Φ if the angle of incidence is θ? See Figure P35.39.

Section 35.8 Total Internal Reflection

41. A glass optical fiber ($n = 1.50$) is submerged in water ($n = 1.33$). What is the critical angle for light to stay inside the fiber?

42. W For 589-nm light, calculate the critical angle for the following materials surrounded by air: (a) cubic zirconia, (b) flint glass, and (c) ice.

43. M A triangular glass prism with apex angle $\Phi = 60.0°$ has an index of refraction $n = 1.50$ (Fig. P35.43). What is the smallest angle of incidence θ_1 for which a light ray can emerge from the other side?

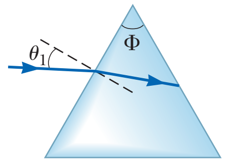


Figure P35.43
Problems 43 and 44.

44. A triangular glass prism with apex angle Φ has an index of refraction n (Fig. P35.43). What is the smallest angle of incidence θ_1 for which a light ray can emerge from the other side?

45. Assume a transparent rod of diameter $d = 2.00\ \mu$m has an index of refraction of 1.36. Determine the maximum angle θ for which the light rays incident on the end of the rod in Figure P35.45 are subject to total internal reflection along the walls of the rod. Your answer defines the size of the *cone of acceptance* for the rod.

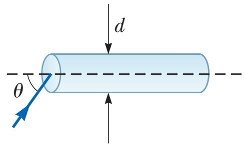


Figure P35.45

46. Consider a light ray traveling between air and a diamond cut in the shape shown in Figure P35.46. (a) Find the critical angle for total internal reflection for light in the diamond incident on the interface between the diamond and the outside air. (b) Consider the light ray incident normally on the top surface of the diamond as shown in Figure P35.46. Show that the light traveling toward point P in the diamond is totally reflected. **What If?** Suppose the diamond is immersed in water. (c) What is the critical angle at the diamond–water interface? (d) When the diamond is immersed in water, does the light ray entering the top surface in Figure P35.46 undergo total internal reflection at P? Explain. (e) If the light ray entering the diamond remains vertical as shown in Figure P35.46, which way should the diamond in the water be rotated about an axis perpendicular to the page through O so that light will exit the diamond at P? (f) At what angle of rotation in part (e) will light first exit the diamond at point P?

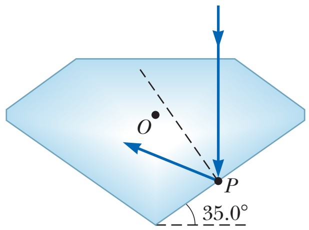


Figure P35.46

47. M Consider a common mirage formed by superheated air immediately above a roadway. A truck driver whose eyes are 2.00 m above the road, where $n = 1.000\ 293$, looks forward. She perceives the illusion of a patch of water ahead on the road. The road appears wet only beyond a point on the road at which her line of sight makes an angle of 1.20° below the horizontal. Find the index of refraction of the air immediately above the road surface.

48. A room contains air in which the speed of sound is 343 m/s. The walls of the room are made of concrete in which the speed of sound is 1 850 m/s. (a) Find the critical angle for total internal reflection of sound at the concrete–air boundary. (b) In which medium must the sound be initially traveling if it is to undergo total internal reflection? (c) "A bare concrete wall is a highly efficient mirror for sound." Give evidence for or against this statement.

49. An optical fiber has an index of refraction n and diameter d. It is surrounded by vacuum. Light is sent into the fiber along its axis as shown in Figure P35.49. (a) Find the smallest outside radius R_{min} permitted for a bend in the fiber if no light is to escape. (b) **What If?** What result does part (a) predict as d approaches zero? Is this behavior reasonable? Explain. (c) As n increases? (d) As n approaches 1? (e) Evaluate R_{min} assuming the fiber diameter is 100 μm and its index of refraction is 1.40.

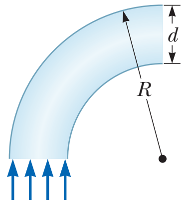


Figure P35.49

50. Around 1968, Richard A. Thorud, an engineer at The Toro Company, invented a gasoline gauge for small engines diagrammed in Figure P35.50. The gauge has no moving parts. It consists of a flat slab of transparent plastic fitting vertically into a slot in the cap on the gas tank. None of the plastic has a reflective coating. The plastic projects from the horizontal top down nearly to the bottom of the opaque tank. Its lower edge is cut with facets making angles of 45° with the horizontal. A lawn mower operator looks down from above and sees a boundary between bright and dark on the gauge. The location of the boundary, across the width of the plastic, indicates the quantity of gasoline in the tank. (a) Explain how the gauge works. (b) Explain the design requirements, if any, for the index of refraction of the plastic.

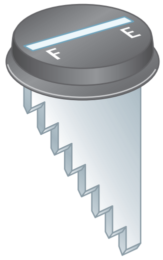


Figure P35.50

Additional Problems

51. M A beam of light is incident from air on the surface of a liquid. If the angle of incidence is 30.0° and the angle of refraction is 22.0°, find the critical angle for total internal reflection for the liquid when surrounded by air.

52. Consider a horizontal interface between air above and glass of index of refraction 1.55 below. (a) Draw a light ray incident from the air at angle of incidence 30.0°. Determine the angles of the reflected and refracted rays and show them on the diagram. (b) **What If?** Now suppose the light ray is incident from the glass at an angle of 30.0°. Determine the angles of the reflected and refracted rays and show all three rays on a new diagram. (c) For rays incident from the air onto the air–glass surface, determine and tabulate the angles of reflection and refraction for all the angles of incidence at 10.0° intervals from 0° to 90.0°. (d) Do the same for light rays coming up to the interface through the glass.

53. M A small light fixture on the bottom of a swimming pool is 1.00 m below the surface. The light emerging from the still water forms a circle on the water surface. What is the diameter of this circle?

54. *Why is the following situation impossible?* While at the bottom of a calm freshwater lake, a scuba diver sees the Sun at an apparent angle of 38.0° above the horizontal.

55. A digital video disc (DVD) records information in a spiral track approximately 1 μm wide. The track consists of a series of pits in the information layer (Fig. P35.55a) that scatter light from a laser beam sharply focused on them. The laser shines in from below through transparent plastic of thickness t = 1.20 mm and index of refraction 1.55 (Fig. P35.55b). Assume the width of the laser beam at the information layer must be a = 1.00 μm to read from only one track and not from its neighbors. Assume the width of the beam as it enters the transparent plastic is w = 0.700 mm. A lens makes the beam converge into a cone with an apex angle $2\theta_1$ before it enters the DVD. Find the incidence angle θ_1 of the light at the edge of the conical beam. This design is relatively immune to small dust particles degrading the video quality.

Andrew Syred/Photo Researchers, Inc.

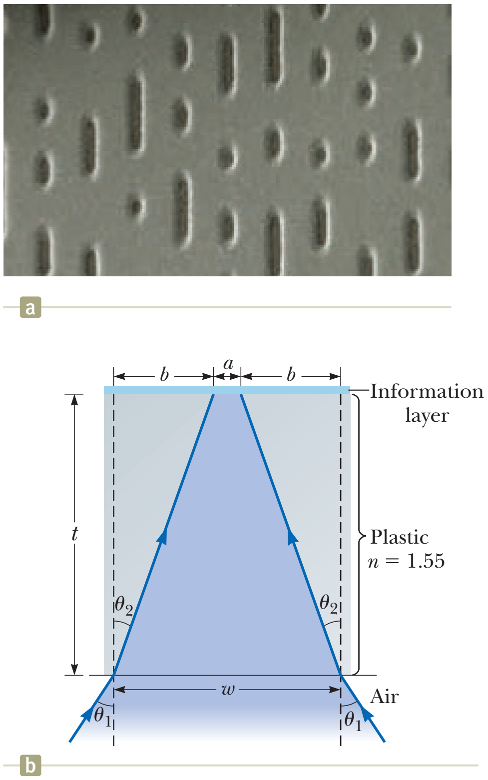


Figure P35.55

56. AMT How many times will the incident beam shown in Figure P35.56 be reflected by each of the parallel mirrors?

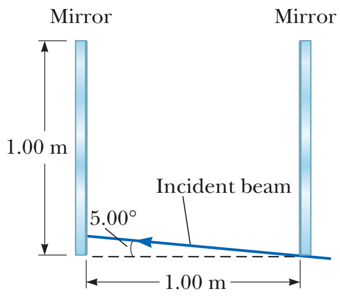


Figure P35.56

57. When light is incident normally on the interface between two transparent optical media, the intensity of the reflected light is given by the expression

$$S_1' = \left(\frac{n_2 - n_1}{n_2 + n_1}\right)^2 S_1$$

In this equation, S_1 represents the average magnitude of the Poynting vector in the incident light (the incident intensity), S_1' is the reflected intensity, and n_1 and n_2 are the refractive indices of the two media. (a) What fraction of the incident intensity is reflected for 589-nm light normally incident on an interface between air and crown glass? (b) Does it matter in part (a) whether the light is in the air or in the glass as it strikes the interface?

58. Refer to Problem 57 for its description of the reflected intensity of light normally incident on an interface between two transparent media. (a) For light normally incident on an interface between vacuum and a transparent medium of index n, show that the intensity S_2 of the transmitted light is given by $S_2/S_1 = 4n/(n + 1)^2$. (b) Light travels perpendicularly through a diamond slab, surrounded by air, with parallel surfaces of entry and exit. Apply the transmission fraction in part (a) to find the approximate overall transmission through the slab of diamond, as a percentage. Ignore light reflected back and forth within the slab.

59. M A light ray enters the atmosphere of the Earth and descends vertically to the surface a distance h = 100 km below. The index of refraction where the light enters the atmosphere is 1.00, and it increases linearly with distance to have the value n = 1.000 293 at the Earth's surface. (a) Over what time interval does the light traverse this path? (b) By what percentage is the time interval larger than that required in the absence of the Earth's atmosphere?

60. A light ray enters the atmosphere of a planet and descends vertically to the surface a distance h below. The index of refraction where the light enters the atmosphere is 1.00, and it increases linearly with distance to have the value n at the planet surface. (a) Over what time interval does the light traverse this path? (b) By what fraction is the time interval larger than that required in the absence of an atmosphere?

61. A narrow beam of light is incident from air onto the surface of glass with index of refraction 1.56. Find the angle of incidence for which the corresponding angle of refraction is half the angle of incidence. *Suggestion:* You might want to use the trigonometric identity $\sin 2\theta = 2 \sin \theta \cos \theta$.

62. One technique for measuring the apex angle of a prism is shown in Figure P35.62. Two parallel rays of light are directed onto the apex of the prism so that the rays reflect from opposite faces of the prism. The angular separation γ of the two reflected rays can be measured. Show that $\phi = \frac{1}{2}\gamma$.

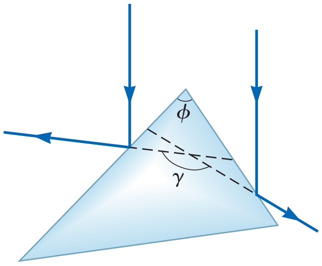


Figure P35.62

63. A thief hides a precious jewel by placing it on the bottom of a public swimming pool. He places a circular raft on the surface of the water directly above and centered over the jewel as shown in Figure P35.63. The surface of the water is calm. The raft, of diameter $d = 4.54$ m, prevents the jewel from being seen by any observer above the water, either on the raft or on the side of the pool. What is the maximum depth h of the pool for the jewel to remain unseen?

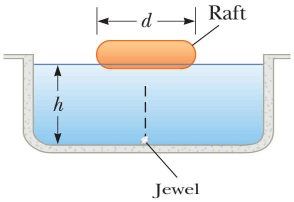


Figure P35.63

64. **Review.** A mirror is often "silvered" with aluminum. By adjusting the thickness of the metallic film, one can make a sheet of glass into a mirror that reflects anything between 3% and 98% of the incident light, transmitting the rest. Prove that it is impossible to construct a "one-way mirror" that would reflect 90% of the electromagnetic waves incident from one side and reflect 10% of those incident from the other side. *Suggestion:* Use Clausius's statement of the second law of thermodynamics.

65. M The light beam in Figure P35.65 strikes surface 2 at the critical angle. Determine the angle of incidence θ_1.

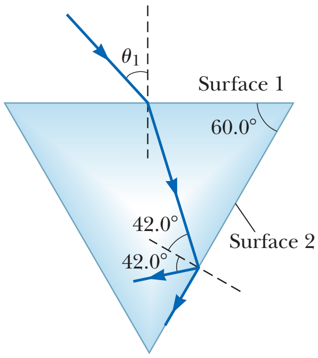


Figure P35.65

66. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A laser beam strikes one end of a slab of material of length $L = 42.0$ cm and thickness $t = 3.10$ mm as shown in Figure P35.66 (not to scale). It enters the material at the center of the left end, striking it at an angle of incidence of $\theta = 50.0°$. The index of refraction of the slab is $n = 1.48$. The light makes 85 internal reflections from the top and bottom of the slab before exiting at the other end.

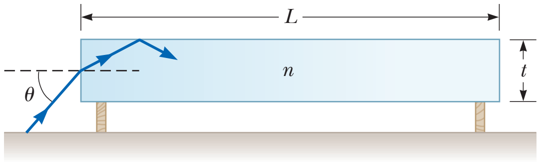


Figure P35.66

67. W A 4.00-m-long pole stands vertically in a freshwater lake having a depth of 2.00 m. The Sun is 40.0° above the horizontal. Determine the length of the pole's shadow on the bottom of the lake.

68. A light ray of wavelength 589 nm is incident at an angle θ on the top surface of a block of polystyrene as shown in Figure P35.68. (a) Find the maximum value of θ for which the refracted ray undergoes total internal reflection at the point P located at the left vertical face of the block. **What If?** Repeat the calculation for the case in which the polystyrene block is immersed in (b) water and (c) carbon disulfide. Explain your answers.

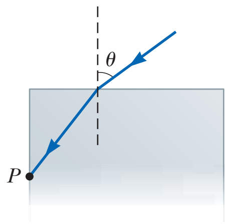


Figure P35.68

69. AMT A light ray traveling in air is incident on one face of a right-angle prism with index of refraction $n = 1.50$ as shown in Figure P35.69, and the ray follows the path shown in the figure. Assuming $\theta = 60.0°$ and the base of the prism is mirrored, determine the angle ϕ made by the outgoing ray with the normal to the right face of the prism.

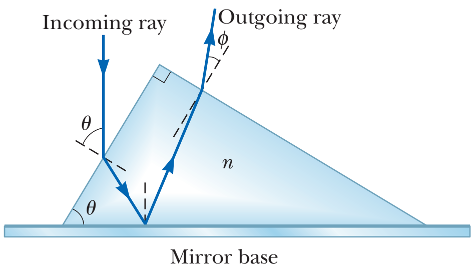


Figure P35.69

70. As sunlight enters the Earth's atmosphere, it changes direction due to the small difference between the speeds of light in vacuum and in air. The duration of an *optical* day is defined as the time interval between the instant when the top of the rising Sun is just visible above the horizon and the instant when the top of the Sun just disappears below the horizontal plane. The duration of the *geometric* day is defined as the time interval between the instant a mathematically straight line between an observer and the top of the Sun just clears the horizon and the instant this line just dips below the horizon. (a) Explain which is longer, an optical day or a geometric day. (b) Find the difference between these two time intervals. Model the Earth's atmosphere as uniform, with index of refraction 1.000 293, a sharply defined upper surface, and depth 8 614 m. Assume the observer is at the

Earth's equator so that the apparent path of the rising and setting Sun is perpendicular to the horizon.

71. A material having an index of refraction n is surrounded by vacuum and is in the shape of a quarter circle of radius R (Fig. P35.71). A light ray parallel to the base of the material is incident from the left at a distance L above the base and emerges from the material at the angle θ. Determine an expression for θ in terms of n, R, and L.

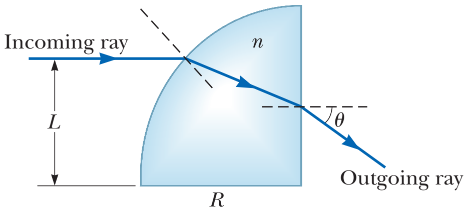


Figure P35.71

72. A ray of light passes from air into water. For its deviation angle $\delta = |\theta_1 - \theta_2|$ to be 10.0°, what must its angle of incidence be?

73. As shown in Figure P35.73, a light ray is incident normal to one face of a 30°–60°–90° block of flint glass (a prism) that is immersed in water. (a) Determine the exit angle θ_3 of the ray. (b) A substance is dissolved in the water to increase the index of refraction n_2. At what value of n_2 does total internal reflection cease at point P?

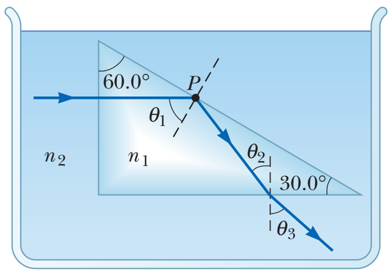


Figure P35.73

74. A transparent cylinder of radius $R = 2.00$ m has a mirrored surface on its right half as shown in Figure P35.74. A light ray traveling in air is incident on the left side of the cylinder. The incident light ray and exiting light ray are parallel, and $d = 2.00$ m. Determine the index of refraction of the material.

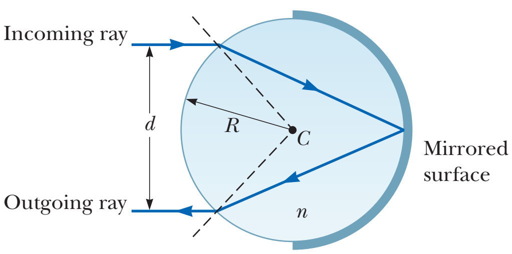


Figure P35.74

75. Figure P35.75 shows the path of a light beam through several slabs with different indices of refraction. (a) If $\theta_1 = 30.0°$, what is the angle θ_2 of the emerging beam? (b) What must the incident angle θ_1 be to have total internal reflection at the surface between the medium with $n = 1.20$ and the medium with $n = 1.00$?

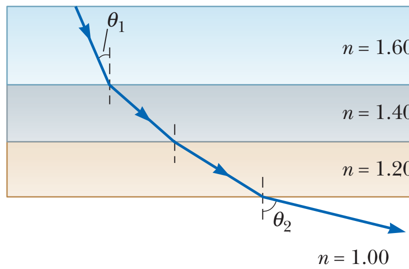


Figure P35.75

76. A. H. Pfund's method for measuring the index of refraction of glass is illustrated in Figure P35.76. One face of a slab of thickness t is painted white, and a small hole scraped clear at point P serves as a source of diverging rays when the slab is illuminated from below. Ray PBB' strikes the clear surface at the critical angle and is totally reflected, as are rays such as PCC'. Rays such as PAA' emerge from the clear surface. On the painted surface, there appears a dark circle of diameter d surrounded by an illuminated region, or halo. (a) Derive an equation for n in terms of the measured quantities d and t. (b) What is the diameter of the dark circle if $n = 1.52$ for a slab 0.600 cm thick? (c) If white light is used, dispersion causes the critical angle to depend on color. Is the inner edge of the white halo tinged with red light or with violet light? Explain.

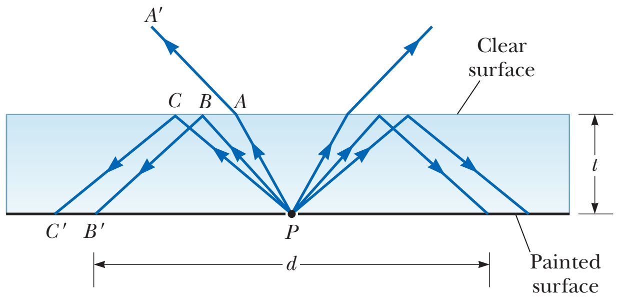


Figure P35.76

77. **W** A light ray enters a rectangular block of plastic at an angle $\theta_1 = 45.0°$ and emerges at an angle $\theta_2 = 76.0°$ as shown in Figure P35.77. (a) Determine the index of refraction of the plastic. (b) If the light ray enters the plastic at a point $L = 50.0$ cm from the bottom edge, what time interval is required for the light ray to travel through the plastic?

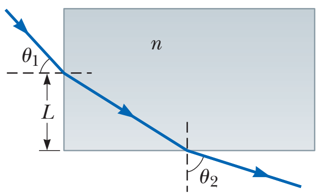


Figure P35.77

78. Students allow a narrow beam of laser light to strike a water surface. They measure the angle of refraction for selected angles of incidence and record the data shown in the accompanying table. (a) Use the data to verify Snell's law of refraction by plotting the sine of the angle of incidence versus the sine of the angle of refraction. (b) Explain what the shape of the graph demonstrates. (c) Use the resulting plot to deduce the index of refraction of water, explaining how you do so.

Angle of Incidence (degrees)	Angle of Refraction (degrees)
10.0	7.5
20.0	15.1
30.0	22.3
40.0	28.7
50.0	35.2
60.0	40.3
70.0	45.3
80.0	47.7

79. The walls of an ancient shrine are perpendicular to the four cardinal compass directions. On the first day of spring, light from the rising Sun enters a rectangular window in the eastern wall. The light traverses 2.37 m horizontally to shine perpendicularly on the wall opposite the window. A tourist observes the patch of light moving across this western wall. (a) With what speed does the illuminated rectangle move? (b) The tourist holds a small, square mirror flat against the western wall at one corner of the rectangle of light. The mirror reflects light back to a spot on the eastern wall close beside the window. With what speed does the smaller square of light move across that wall? (c) Seen from a latitude of 40.0° north, the rising Sun moves through the sky along a line making a 50.0° angle with the southeastern horizon. In what direction does the rectangular patch of light on the western wall of the shrine move? (d) In what direction does the smaller square of light on the eastern wall move?

80. Figure P35.80 shows a top view of a square enclosure. The inner surfaces are plane mirrors. A ray of light enters a small hole in the center of one mirror. (a) At what angle θ must the ray enter if it exits through the hole after being reflected once by each of the other three mirrors? (b) **What If?** Are there other values of θ for which the ray can exit after multiple reflections? If so, sketch one of the ray's paths.

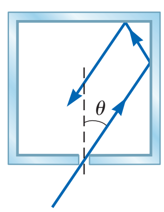


Figure P35.80

Challenge Problems

81. A hiker stands on an isolated mountain peak near sunset and observes a rainbow caused by water droplets in the air at a distance of 8.00 km along her line of sight to the most intense light from the rainbow. The valley is 2.00 km below the mountain peak and entirely flat. What fraction of the complete circular arc of the rainbow is visible to the hiker?

82. *Why is the following situation impossible?* The perpendicular distance of a lightbulb from a large plane mirror is twice the perpendicular distance of a person from the mirror. Light from the lightbulb reaches the person by two paths: (1) it travels to the mirror and reflects from the mirror to the person, and (2) it travels directly to the person without reflecting off the mirror. The total distance traveled by the light in the first case is 3.10 times the distance traveled by the light in the second case.

83. Figure P35.83 shows an overhead view of a room of square floor area and side L. At the center of the room is a mirror set in a vertical plane and rotating on a vertical shaft at angular speed ω about an axis coming out of the page. A bright red laser beam enters from the center point on one wall of the room and strikes the mirror. As the mirror rotates, the reflected laser beam creates a red spot sweeping across the walls of the room. (a) When the spot of light on the wall is at distance x from point O, what is its speed? (b) What value of x corresponds to the minimum value for the speed? (c) What is the minimum value for the speed? (d) What is the maximum speed of the spot on the wall? (e) In what time interval does the spot change from its minimum to its maximum speed?

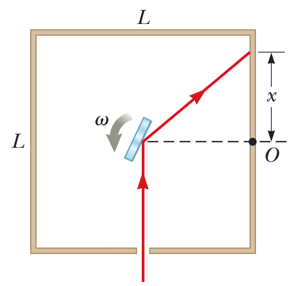


Figure P35.83

84. Pierre de Fermat (1601–1665) showed that whenever light travels from one point to another, its actual path is the path that requires the smallest time interval. This statement is known as *Fermat's principle.* The simplest example is for light propagating in a homogeneous medium. It moves in a straight line because a straight line is the shortest distance between two points. Derive Snell's law of refraction from Fermat's principle. Proceed as follows. In Figure P35.84, a light ray travels from point P in medium 1 to point Q in medium 2. The two points are, respectively, at perpendicular distances a and b from the interface. The displacement from P to Q has the component d parallel to the interface, and we let x represent the coordinate of the point where the ray enters the second medium. Let $t = 0$ be the instant the light starts from P. (a) Show that the time at which the light arrives at Q is

$$t = \frac{r_1}{v_1} + \frac{r_2}{v_2} = \frac{n_1\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}}{c} + \frac{n_2\sqrt{b^2 + (d - x)^2}}{c}$$

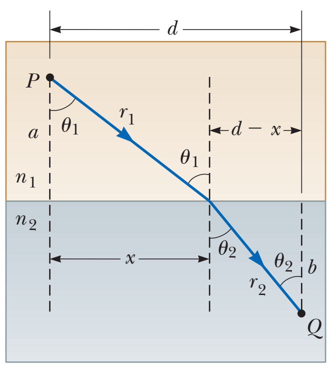


Figure P35.84 Problems 84 and 85.

(b) To obtain the value of x for which t has its minimum value, differentiate t with respect to x and set the derivative equal to zero. Show that the result implies

$$\frac{n_1 x}{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}} = \frac{n_2(d - x)}{\sqrt{b^2 + (d - x)^2}}$$

(c) Show that this expression in turn gives Snell's law,

$$n_1 \sin \theta_1 = n_2 \sin \theta_2$$

85. Refer to Problem 84 for the statement of Fermat's principle of least time. Derive the law of reflection (Eq. 35.2) from Fermat's principle.

86. Suppose a luminous sphere of radius R_1 (such as the Sun) is surrounded by a uniform atmosphere of radius $R_2 > R_1$ and index of refraction n. When the sphere is viewed from a location far away in vacuum, what is its apparent radius (a) when $R_2 > nR_1$ and (b) when $R_2 < nR_1$?

87. This problem builds upon the results of Problems 57 and 58. Light travels perpendicularly through a diamond slab, surrounded by air, with parallel surfaces of entry and exit. The intensity of the transmitted light is what fraction of the incident intensity? Include the effects of light reflected back and forth inside the slab.

CHAPTER

36 Image Formation

The light rays coming from the leaves in the background of this scene did not form a focused image in the camera that took this photograph. Consequently, the background appears very blurry. Light rays passing though the raindrop, however, have been altered so as to form a focused image of the background leaves for the camera. In this chapter, we investigate the formation of images as light rays reflect from mirrors and refract through lenses. *(Don Hammond Photography Ltd. RF)*

This chapter is concerned with the images that result when light rays encounter flat or curved surfaces between two media. Images can be formed by either reflection or refraction due to these surfaces. We can design mirrors and lenses to form images with desired characteristics. In this chapter, we continue to use the ray approximation and assume light travels in straight lines. We first study the formation of images by mirrors and lenses and techniques for locating an image and determining its size. Then we investigate how to combine these elements into several useful optical instruments such as microscopes and telescopes.

36.1 Images Formed by Flat Mirrors

Image formation by mirrors can be understood through the behavior of light rays as described by the wave under reflection analysis model. We begin by considering the simplest possible mirror, the flat mirror. Consider a point source of light placed at O in Figure 36.1, a distance p in front of a flat mirror. The distance p is called the **object distance.** Diverging light rays leave the source and are reflected from the mirror. Upon reflection, the rays continue to diverge. The dashed lines in Figure 36.1 are extensions of the diverging rays back to a point of intersection at I. The diverging rays appear to the viewer to originate at the point I behind the mirror. Point I, which is a distance q behind the mirror, is called the **image** of the object at O. The distance q is called the **image distance.** Regardless of the system under study, images can always be located by extending diverging rays back to a point at which they intersect. Images are located either at a point from which rays of light *actually* diverge or at a point from which they *appear* to diverge.

Images are classified as *real* or *virtual*. A **real image** is formed when all light rays pass through and diverge from the image point; a **virtual image** is formed when most if not all of the light rays do *not* pass through the image point but only appear to diverge from that point. The image formed by the mirror in Figure 36.1 is virtual. No light rays from the object exist behind the mirror, at the location of the image, so the light rays in front of the mirror only seem to be diverging from I. The image of an object seen in a flat mirror is *always* virtual. Real images can be displayed on a screen (as at a movie theater), but virtual images cannot be displayed on a screen. We shall see an example of a real image in Section 36.2.

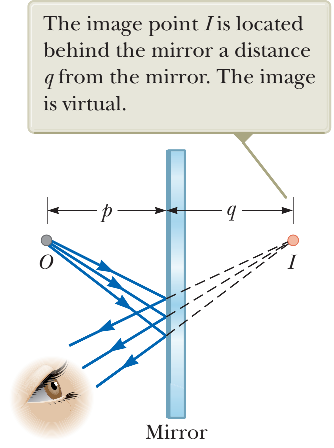


Figure 36.1 An image formed by reflection from a flat mirror.

We can use the simple geometry in Figure 36.2 to examine the properties of the images of extended objects formed by flat mirrors. Even though there are an infinite number of choices of direction in which light rays could leave each point on the object (represented by a gray arrow), we need to choose only two rays to determine where an image is formed. One of those rays starts at P, follows a path perpendicular to the mirror to Q, and reflects back on itself. The second ray follows the oblique path PR and reflects as shown in Figure 36.2 according to the law of reflection. An observer in front of the mirror would extend the two reflected rays back to the point at which they appear to have originated, which is point P' behind the mirror. A continuation of this process for points other than P on the object would result in a virtual image (represented by a pink arrow) of the entire object behind the mirror. Because triangles PQR and $P'QR$ are congruent, $PQ = P'Q$, so $|p| = |q|$. Therefore, the image formed of an object placed in front of a flat mirror is as far behind the mirror as the object is in front of the mirror.

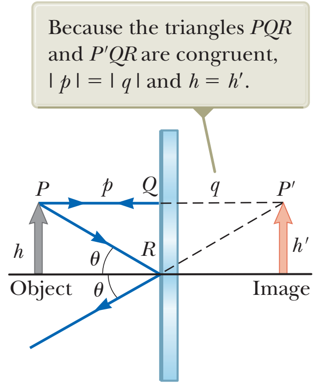


Figure 36.2 A geometric construction that is used to locate the image of an object placed in front of a flat mirror.

The geometry in Figure 36.2 also reveals that the object height h equals the image height h'. Let us define **lateral magnification** M of an image as follows:

$$M = \frac{\text{image height}}{\text{object height}} = \frac{h'}{h} \tag{36.1}$$

This general definition of the lateral magnification for an image from any type of mirror is also valid for images formed by lenses, which we study in Section 36.4. For a flat mirror, $M = +1$ for any image because $h' = h$. The positive value of the magnification signifies that the image is upright. (By upright we mean that if the object arrow points upward as in Figure 36.2, so does the image arrow.)

A flat mirror produces an image that has an *apparent* left–right reversal. You can see this reversal by standing in front of a mirror and raising your right hand as shown in Figure 36.3. The image you see raises its left hand. Likewise, your hair appears to be parted on the side opposite your real part, and a mole on your right cheek appears to be on your left cheek.

This reversal is not *actually* a left–right reversal. Imagine, for example, lying on your left side on the floor with your body parallel to the mirror surface. Now your head is on the left and your feet are on the right. If you shake your feet, the image does not shake its head! If you raise your right hand, however, the image again raises its left hand. Therefore, the mirror again appears to produce a left–right reversal but in the up–down direction!

The reversal is actually a *front–back reversal,* caused by the light rays going forward toward the mirror and then reflecting back from it. An interesting

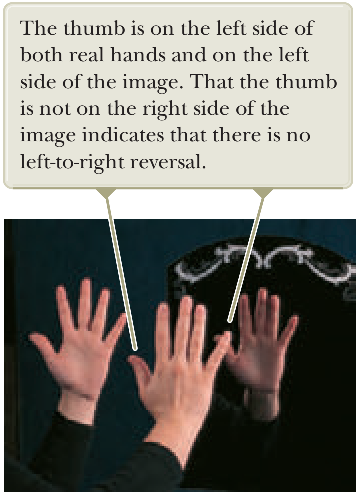


Figure 36.3 The image in the mirror of a person's right hand is reversed front to back, which makes the right hand appear to be a left hand.

exercise is to stand in front of a mirror while holding an overhead transparency in front of you so that you can read the writing on the transparency. You will also be able to read the writing on the image of the transparency. You may have had a similar experience if you have attached a transparent decal with words on it to the rear window of your car. If the decal can be read from outside the car, you can also read it when looking into your rearview mirror from inside the car.

Quick Quiz 36.1 You are standing approximately 2 m away from a mirror. The mirror has water spots on its surface. True or False: It is possible for you to see the water spots and your image both in focus at the same time.

Conceptual Example 36.1 Multiple Images Formed by Two Mirrors

Two flat mirrors are perpendicular to each other as in Figure 36.4, and an object is placed at point O. In this situation, multiple images are formed. Locate the positions of these images.

SOLUTION

The image of the object is at I_1 in mirror 1 (green rays) and at I_2 in mirror 2 (red rays). In addition, a third image is formed at I_3 (blue rays). This third image is the image of I_1 in mirror 2 or, equivalently, the image of I_2 in mirror 1. That is, the image at I_1 (or I_2) serves as the object for I_3. To form this image at I_3, the rays reflect twice after leaving the object at O.

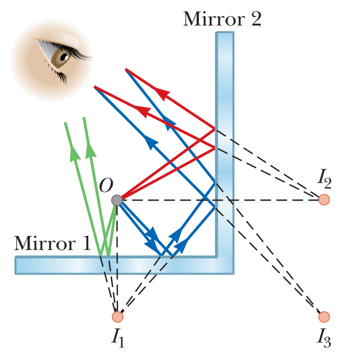


Figure 36.4 (Conceptual Example 36.1) When an object is placed in front of two mutually perpendicular mirrors as shown, three images are formed. Follow the different-colored light rays to understand the formation of each image.

Conceptual Example 36.2 The Tilting Rearview Mirror

Most rearview mirrors in cars have a day setting and a night setting. The night setting greatly diminishes the intensity of the image so that lights from trailing vehicles do not temporarily blind the driver. How does such a mirror work?

SOLUTION

Figure 36.5 shows a cross-sectional view of a rearview mirror for each setting. The unit consists of a reflective coating on the back of a wedge of glass. In the day setting (Fig. 36.5a), the light from an object behind the car strikes the glass wedge at point 1. Most of the light enters the wedge, refracting as it crosses the front surface, and reflects from the back surface to return to the front surface, where it is refracted again as it re-enters the air as ray B (for *bright*). In addition, a small portion of the light is reflected at the front surface of the glass as indicated by ray D (for *dim*).

This dim reflected light is responsible for the image observed when the mirror is in the night setting (Fig. 36.5b). In that case, the wedge is rotated so that the path followed by the bright light (ray B) does not lead to the eye. Instead, the dim light reflected from the front surface of the wedge travels to the eye, and the brightness of trailing headlights does not become a hazard.

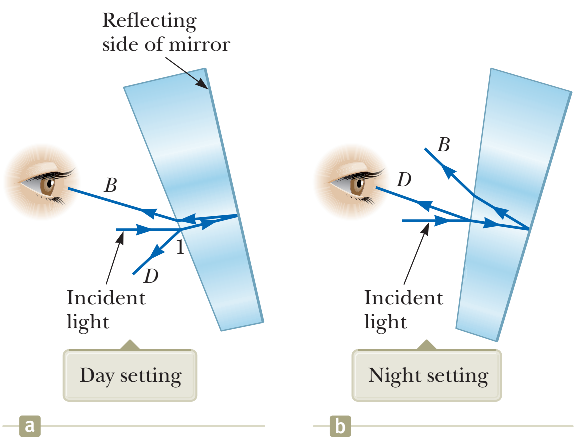


Figure 36.5 (Conceptual Example 36.2) Cross-sectional views of a rearview mirror.

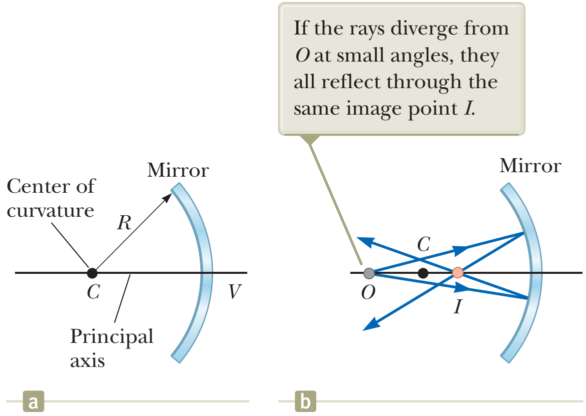


Figure 36.6 (a) A concave mirror of radius R. The center of curvature C is located on the principal axis. (b) A point object placed at O in front of a concave spherical mirror of radius R, where O is any point on the principal axis farther than R from the mirror surface, forms a real image at I.

36.2 Images Formed by Spherical Mirrors

In the preceding section, we considered images formed by flat mirrors. Now we study images formed by curved mirrors. Although a variety of curvatures are possible, we will restrict our investigation to spherical mirrors. As its name implies, a **spherical mirror** has the shape of a section of a sphere.

Concave Mirrors

We first consider reflection of light from the inner, concave surface of a spherical mirror as shown in Figure 36.6. This type of reflecting surface is called a **concave mirror.** Figure 36.6a shows that the mirror has a radius of curvature R, and its center of curvature is point C. Point V is the center of the spherical section, and a line through C and V is called the **principal axis** of the mirror. Figure 36.6a shows a cross section of a spherical mirror, with its surface represented by the solid, curved dark blue line. (The lighter blue band represents the structural support for the mirrored surface, such as a curved piece of glass on which a silvered reflecting surface is deposited.) This type of mirror focuses incoming parallel rays to a point as demonstrated by the yellow light rays in Figure 36.7.

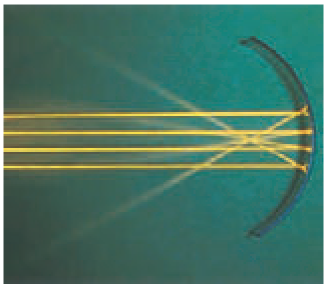

Henry Leap and Jim Lehman

Figure 36.7 Reflection of parallel rays from a concave mirror.

Now consider a point source of light placed at point O in Figure 36.6b, where O is any point on the principal axis to the left of C. Two diverging light rays that originate at O are shown. After reflecting from the mirror, these rays converge and cross at the image point I. They then continue to diverge from I as if an object were there. As a result, the image at point I is real.

In this section, we shall consider only rays that diverge from the object and make a small angle with the principal axis. Such rays are called **paraxial rays.** All paraxial rays reflect through the image point as shown in Figure 36.6b. Rays that are far from the principal axis such as those shown in Figure 36.8 converge to other points on the principal axis, producing a blurred image. This effect, called *spherical aberration,* is present to some extent for any spherical mirror and is discussed in Section 36.5.

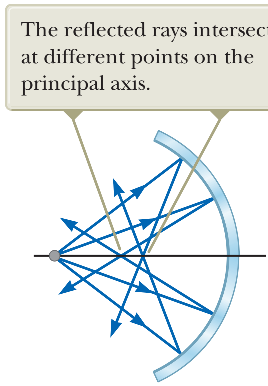


Figure 36.8 A spherical concave mirror exhibits spherical aberration when light rays make large angles with the principal axis.

If the object distance p and radius of curvature R are known, we can use Figure 36.9 (page 1094) to calculate the image distance q. By convention, these distances are measured from point V. Figure 36.9 shows two rays leaving the tip of the object. The red ray passes through the center of curvature C of the mirror, hitting the mirror perpendicular to the mirror surface and reflecting back on itself. The blue ray strikes the mirror at its center (point V) and reflects as shown, obeying the law of reflection. The image of the tip of the arrow is located at the point where these two rays intersect. From the large, red right triangle in Figure 36.9, we see that $\tan \theta = h/p$, and from the yellow right triangle, we see that $\tan \theta = -h'/q$. The

Pitfall Prevention 36.1

Magnification Does Not Necessarily Imply Enlargement For optical elements other than flat mirrors, the magnification defined in Equation 36.2 can result in a number with a magnitude larger *or* smaller than 1. Therefore, despite the cultural usage of the word *magnification* to mean *enlargement,* the image could be smaller than the object.

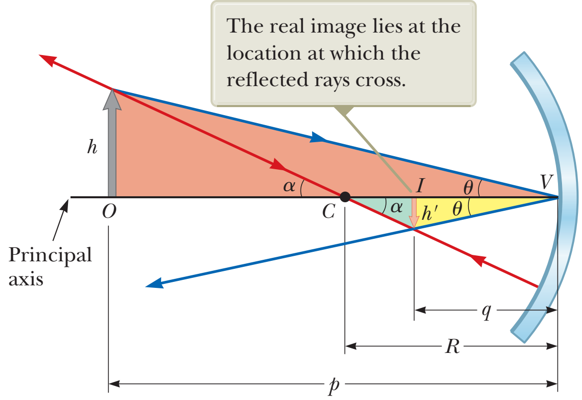


Figure 36.9 The image formed by a spherical concave mirror when the object O lies outside the center of curvature C. This geometric construction is used to derive Equation 36.4.

© iStockphoto.com/Maria Barski

A satellite-dish antenna is a concave reflector for television signals from a satellite in orbit around the Earth. Because the satellite is so far away, the signals are carried by microwaves that are parallel when they arrive at the dish. These waves reflect from the dish and are focused on the receiver.

negative sign is introduced because the image is inverted, so h' is taken to be negative. Therefore, from Equation 36.1 and these results, we find that the magnification of the image is

$$M = \frac{h'}{h} = -\frac{q}{p} \tag{36.2}$$

Also notice from the green right triangle in Figure 36.9 and the smaller red right triangle that

$$\tan\alpha = \frac{-h'}{R-q} \quad \text{and} \quad \tan\alpha = \frac{h}{p-R}$$

from which it follows that

$$\frac{h'}{h} = -\frac{R-q}{p-R} \tag{36.3}$$

Comparing Equations 36.2 and 36.3 gives

$$\frac{R-q}{p-R} = \frac{q}{p}$$

Simple algebra reduces this expression to

Mirror equation in terms of radius of curvature ▶

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{2}{R} \tag{36.4}$$

which is called the *mirror equation*. We present a modified version of this equation shortly.

If the object is very far from the mirror—that is, if p is so much greater than R that p can be said to approach infinity—then $1/p \approx 0$, and Equation 36.4 shows that $q \approx R/2$. That is, when the object is very far from the mirror, the image point is halfway between the center of curvature and the center point on the mirror as shown in Figure 36.10. The incoming rays from the object are essentially parallel in this figure because the source is assumed to be very far from the mirror. The image point in this special case is called the **focal point** F, and the image distance is called the **focal length** f, where

Focal length ▶

$$f = \frac{R}{2} \tag{36.5}$$

The focal point is a distance f from the mirror, as noted in Figure 36.10. In Figure 36.7, the beams are traveling parallel to the principal axis and the mirror reflects all beams to the focal point.

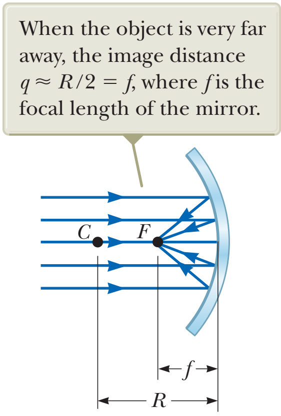


Figure 36.10 Light rays from a distant object ($p \to \infty$) reflect from a concave mirror through the focal point F.

Pitfall Prevention 36.2

The *Focal* Point Is Not the *Focus* Point The focal point *is usually not* the point at which the light rays focus to form an image. The focal point is determined solely by the curvature of the mirror; it does not depend on the location of the object. In general, an image forms at a point different from the focal point of a mirror (or a lens), as in Figure 36.9. The *only* exception is when the object is located infinitely far away from the mirror.

Because the focal length is a parameter particular to a given mirror, it can be used to compare one mirror with another. Combining Equations 36.4 and 36.5, the **mirror equation** can be expressed in terms of the focal length:

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} \qquad (36.6)$$

◀ Mirror equation in terms of focal length

Notice that the focal length of a mirror depends only on the curvature of the mirror and not on the material from which the mirror is made because the formation of the image results from rays reflected from the surface of the material. The situation is different for lenses; in that case, the light actually passes through the material and the focal length depends on the type of material from which the lens is made. (See Section 36.4.)

Convex Mirrors

Figure 36.11 shows the formation of an image by a **convex mirror,** that is, one silvered so that light is reflected from the outer, convex surface. It is sometimes called a **diverging mirror** because the rays from any point on an object diverge after reflection as though they were coming from some point behind the mirror. The image in Figure 36.11 is virtual because the reflected rays only appear to originate at the image point as indicated by the dashed lines. Furthermore, the image is always upright and smaller than the object. This type of mirror is often used in stores to foil shoplifters. A single mirror can be used to survey a large field of view because it forms a smaller image of the interior of the store.

We do not derive any equations for convex spherical mirrors because Equations 36.2, 36.4, and 36.6 can be used for either concave or convex mirrors if we adhere to a strict sign convention. We will refer to the region in which light rays originate and move toward the mirror as the *front side* of the mirror and the other side as the

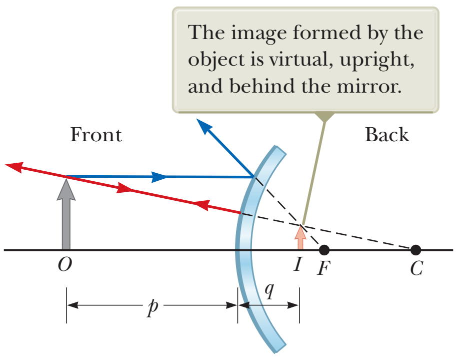


Figure 36.11 Formation of an image by a spherical convex mirror.

Pitfall Prevention 36.3

Watch Your Signs Success in working mirror problems (as well as problems involving refracting surfaces and thin lenses) is largely determined by proper sign choices when substituting into the equations. The best way to success is to work a multitude of problems on your own.

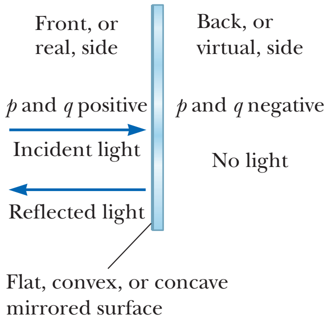


Figure 36.12 Signs of p and q for all types of mirrors.

Pitfall Prevention 36.4

Choose a Small Number of Rays A *huge* number of light rays leave each point on an object (and pass through each point on an image). In a ray diagram, which displays the characteristics of the image, we choose only a few rays that follow simply stated rules. Locating the image by calculation complements the diagram.

Table 36.1 **Sign Conventions for Mirrors**

Quantity	Positive When . . .	Negative When . . .
Object location (p)	object is in front of mirror (real object).	object is in back of mirror (virtual object).
Image location (q)	image is in front of mirror (real image).	image is in back of mirror (virtual image).
Image height (h')	image is upright.	image is inverted.
Focal length (f) and radius (R)	mirror is concave.	mirror is convex.
Magnification (M)	image is upright.	image is inverted.

back side. For example, in Figures 36.9 and 36.11, the side to the left of the mirrors is the front side and the side to the right of the mirrors is the back side. Figure 36.12 states the sign conventions for object and image distances for any type of mirror, and Table 36.1 summarizes the sign conventions for all quantities. One entry in the table, a *virtual object,* is formally introduced in Section 36.4.

Ray Diagrams for Mirrors

The positions and sizes of images formed by mirrors can be conveniently determined with *ray diagrams*. These pictorial representations reveal the nature of the image and can be used to check results calculated from the mathematical representation using the mirror and magnification equations. To draw a ray diagram, you must know the position of the object and the locations of the mirror's focal point and center of curvature. You then draw three rays to locate the image as shown by the examples in Figure 36.13. These rays all start from the same object point and are drawn as follows. You may choose any point on the object; here, let's choose the top of the object for simplicity. For concave mirrors (see Figs. 36.13a and 36.13b), draw the following three rays:

- Ray 1 is drawn from the top of the object parallel to the principal axis and is reflected through the focal point F.
- Ray 2 is drawn from the top of the object through the focal point (or as if coming from the focal point if $p < f$) and is reflected parallel to the principal axis.
- Ray 3 is drawn from the top of the object through the center of curvature C (or as if coming from the center C if $p < 2f$) and is reflected back on itself.

The intersection of any two of these rays locates the image. The third ray serves as a check of the construction. The image point obtained in this fashion must always agree with the value of q calculated from the mirror equation. With concave mirrors, notice what happens as the object is moved closer to the mirror. The real, inverted image in Figure 36.13a moves to the left and becomes larger as the object approaches the focal point. When the object is at the focal point, the image is infinitely far to the left. When the object lies between the focal point and the mirror surface as shown in Figure 36.13b, however, the image is to the right, behind the object, and virtual, upright, and enlarged. This latter situation applies when you use a shaving mirror or a makeup mirror, both of which are concave. Your face is closer to the mirror than the focal point, and you see an upright, enlarged image of your face.

For convex mirrors (see Fig. 36.13c), draw the following three rays:

- Ray 1 is drawn from the top of the object parallel to the principal axis and is reflected *away from* the focal point F.

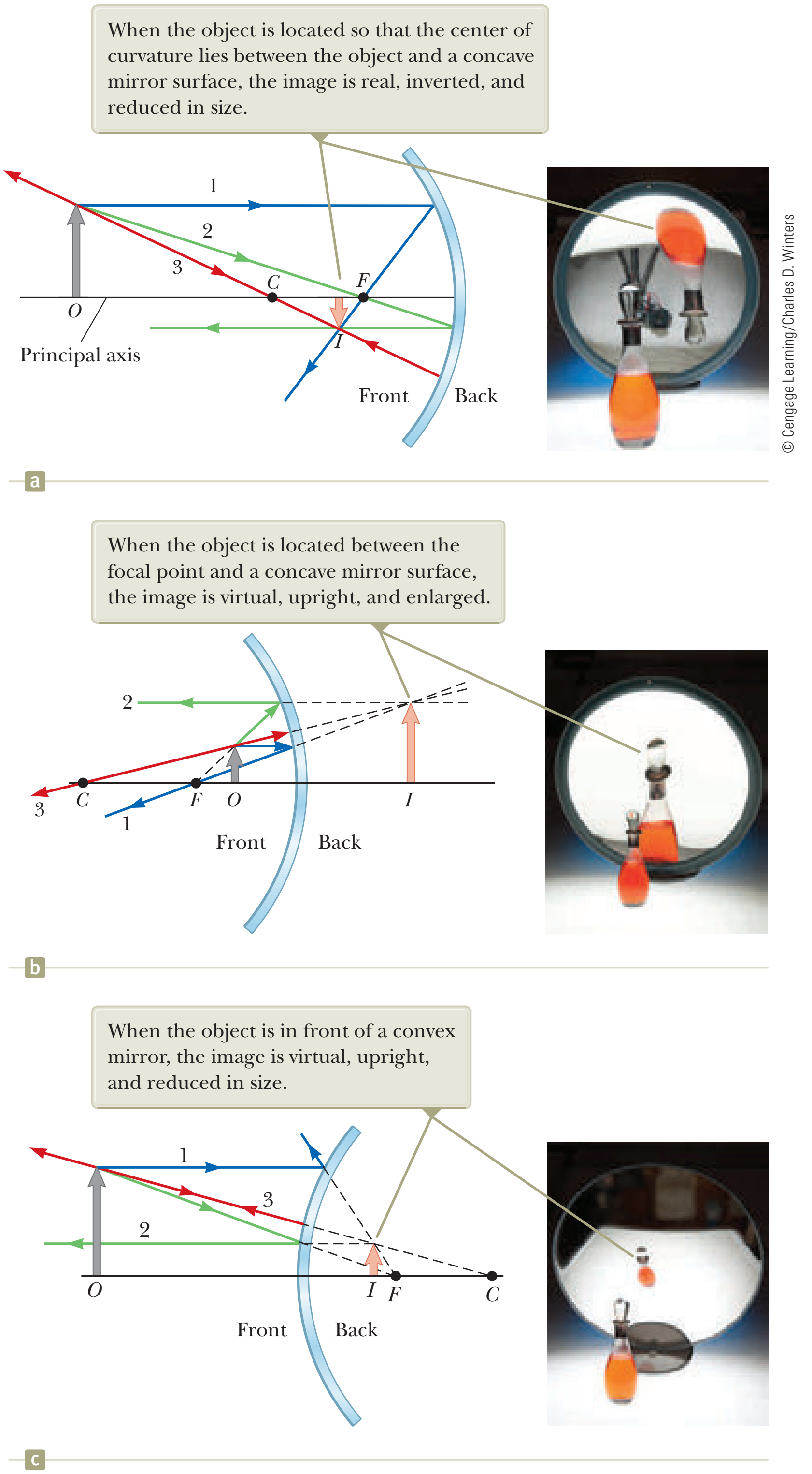


Figure 36.13 Ray diagrams for spherical mirrors along with corresponding photographs of the images of bottles.

- Ray 2 is drawn from the top of the object toward the focal point on the back side of the mirror and is reflected parallel to the principal axis.
- Ray 3 is drawn from the top of the object toward the center of curvature C on the back side of the mirror and is reflected back on itself.

Figure 36.14 (Quick Quiz 36.3) What type of mirror is shown here?

In a convex mirror, the image of an object is always virtual, upright, and reduced in size as shown in Figure 36.13c. In this case, as the object distance decreases, the virtual image increases in size and moves away from the focal point toward the mirror as the object approaches the mirror. You should construct other diagrams to verify how image position varies with object position.

Quick Quiz 36.2 You wish to start a fire by reflecting sunlight from a mirror onto some paper under a pile of wood. Which would be the best choice for the type of mirror? **(a)** flat **(b)** concave **(c)** convex

Quick Quiz 36.3 Consider the image in the mirror in Figure 36.14. Based on the appearance of this image, would you conclude that **(a)** the mirror is concave and the image is real, **(b)** the mirror is concave and the image is virtual, **(c)** the mirror is convex and the image is real, or **(d)** the mirror is convex and the image is virtual?

Example 36.3 The Image Formed by a Concave Mirror

A spherical mirror has a focal length of +10.0 cm.

(A) Locate and describe the image for an object distance of 25.0 cm.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because the focal length of the mirror is positive, it is a concave mirror (see Table 36.1). We expect the possibilities of both real and virtual images.

Categorize Because the object distance in this part of the problem is larger than the focal length, we expect the image to be real. This situation is analogous to that in Figure 36.13a.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.6:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{25.0\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{16.7\text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.2:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\frac{16.7\text{ cm}}{25.0\text{ cm}} = \boxed{-0.667}$$

Finalize The absolute value of M is less than unity, so the image is smaller than the object, and the negative sign for M tells us that the image is inverted. Because q is positive, the image is located on the front side of the mirror and is real. Look into the bowl of a shiny spoon or stand far away from a shaving mirror to see this image.

(B) Locate and describe the image for an object distance of 10.0 cm.

SOLUTION

Categorize Because the object is at the focal point, we expect the image to be infinitely far away.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.6:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{\infty}$$

36.3 continued

Finalize This result means that rays originating from an object positioned at the focal point of a mirror are reflected so that the image is formed at an infinite distance from the mirror; that is, the rays travel parallel to one another after reflection. Such is the situation in a flashlight or an automobile headlight, where the bulb filament is placed at the focal point of a reflector, producing a parallel beam of light.

(C) Locate and describe the image for an object distance of 5.00 cm.

SOLUTION

Categorize Because the object distance is smaller than the focal length, we expect the image to be virtual. This situation is analogous to that in Figure 36.13b.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.6:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{5.00\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-10.0\text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.2:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\left(\frac{-10.0\text{ cm}}{5.00\text{ cm}}\right) = \boxed{+2.00}$$

Finalize The image is twice as large as the object, and the positive sign for M indicates that the image is upright (see Fig. 36.13b). The negative value of the image distance tells us that the image is virtual, as expected. Put your face close to a shaving mirror to see this type of image.

WHAT IF? Suppose you set up the bottle and mirror apparatus illustrated in Figure 36.13a and described here in part (A). While adjusting the apparatus, you accidentally bump the bottle and it begins to slide toward the mirror at speed v_p. How fast does the image of the bottle move?

Answer Solve the mirror equation, Equation 36.6, for q:

$$q = \frac{fp}{p - f}$$

Differentiate this equation with respect to time to find the velocity of the image:

$$(1)\quad v_q = \frac{dq}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}\left(\frac{fp}{p-f}\right) = -\frac{f^2}{(p-f)^2}\frac{dp}{dt} = -\frac{f^2 v_p}{(p-f)^2}$$

Substitute numerical values from part (A):

$$v_q = -\frac{(10.0\text{ cm})^2\, v_p}{(25.0\text{ cm} - 10.0\text{ cm})^2} = -0.444 v_p$$

Therefore, the speed of the image is less than that of the object in this case.

We can see two interesting behaviors of the function for v_q in Equation (1). First, the velocity is negative regardless of the value of p or f. Therefore, if the object moves toward the mirror, the image moves toward the left in Figure 36.13 without regard for the side of the focal point at which the object is located or whether the mirror is concave or convex. Second, in the limit of $p \to 0$, the velocity v_q approaches $-v_p$. As the object moves very close to the mirror, the mirror looks like a plane mirror, the image is as far behind the mirror as the object is in front, and both the object and the image move with the same speed.

Example 36.4 The Image Formed by a Convex Mirror

An automobile rearview mirror as shown in Figure 36.15 (page 1100) shows an image of a truck located 10.0 m from the mirror. The focal length of the mirror is -0.60 m.

(A) Find the position of the image of the truck.

continued

36.4 continued

SOLUTION

Conceptualize This situation is depicted in Figure 36.13c.

Categorize Because the mirror is convex, we expect it to form an upright, reduced, virtual image for any object position.

Figure 36.15 (Example 36.4) An approaching truck is seen in a convex mirror on the right side of an automobile. Notice that the image of the truck is in focus, but the frame of the mirror is not, which demonstrates that the image is not at the same location as the mirror surface.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.6:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{-0.60\text{ m}} - \frac{1}{10.0\text{ m}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-0.57\text{ m}}$$

(B) Find the magnification of the image.

SOLUTION

Analyze Use Equation 36.2:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\left(\frac{-0.57\text{ m}}{10.0\text{ m}}\right) = \boxed{+0.057}$$

Finalize The negative value of q in part (A) indicates that the image is virtual, or behind the mirror, as shown in Figure 36.13c. The magnification in part (B) indicates that the image is much smaller than the truck and is upright because M is positive. The image is reduced in size, so the truck appears to be farther away than it actually is. Because of the image's small size, these mirrors carry the inscription, "Objects in this mirror are closer than they appear." Look into your rearview mirror or the back side of a shiny spoon to see an image of this type.

36.3 Images Formed by Refraction

In this section, we describe how images are formed when light rays follow the wave under refraction model at the boundary between two transparent materials. Consider two transparent media having indices of refraction n_1 and n_2, where the boundary between the two media is a spherical surface of radius R (Fig. 36.16). We assume the object at O is in the medium for which the index of refraction is n_1. Let's consider the paraxial rays leaving O. As we shall see, all such rays are refracted at the spherical surface and focus at a single point I, the image point.

Figure 36.17 shows a single ray leaving point O and refracting to point I. Snell's law of refraction applied to this ray gives

$$n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$$

Because θ_1 and θ_2 are assumed to be small, we can use the small-angle approximation $\sin\theta \approx \theta$ (with angles in radians) and write Snell's law as

$$n_1\theta_1 = n_2\theta_2$$

We know that an exterior angle of any triangle equals the sum of the two opposite interior angles, so applying this rule to triangles OPC and PIC in Figure 36.17 gives

$$\theta_1 = \alpha + \beta$$

$$\beta = \theta_2 + \gamma$$

Rays making small angles with the principal axis diverge from a point object at O and are refracted through the image point I.

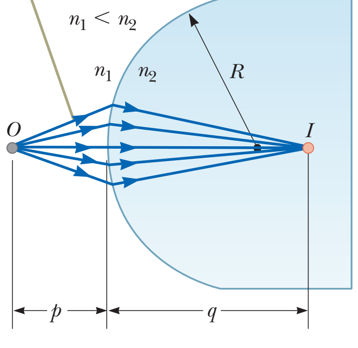


Figure 36.16 An image formed by refraction at a spherical surface.

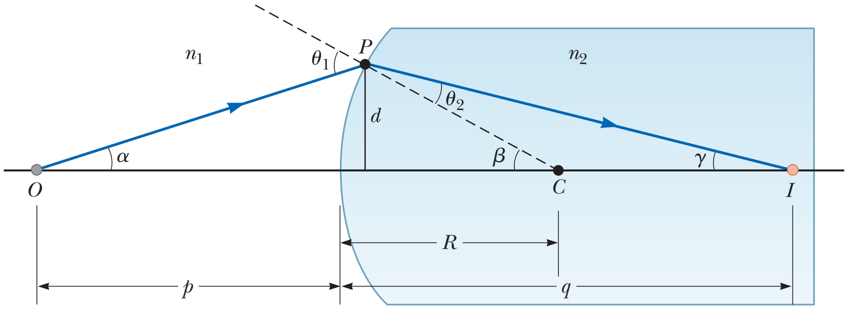


Figure 36.17 Geometry used to derive Equation 36.8, assuming $n_1 < n_2$.

Combining all three expressions and eliminating θ_1 and θ_2 gives

$$n_1\alpha + n_2\gamma = (n_2 - n_1)\beta \tag{36.7}$$

Figure 36.17 shows three right triangles that have a common vertical leg of length d. For paraxial rays (unlike the relatively large-angle ray shown in Fig. 36.17), the horizontal legs of these triangles are approximately p for the triangle containing angle α, R for the triangle containing angle β, and q for the triangle containing angle γ. In the small-angle approximation, $\tan\theta \approx \theta$, so we can write the approximate relationships from these triangles as follows:

$$\tan\alpha \approx \alpha \approx \frac{d}{p} \qquad \tan\beta \approx \beta \approx \frac{d}{R} \qquad \tan\gamma \approx \gamma \approx \frac{d}{q}$$

Substituting these expressions into Equation 36.7 and dividing through by d gives

$$\boxed{\frac{n_1}{p} + \frac{n_2}{q} = \frac{n_2 - n_1}{R}} \tag{36.8}$$

Relation between object and image distance for a refracting surface

For a fixed object distance p, the image distance q is independent of the angle the ray makes with the axis. This result tells us that all paraxial rays focus at the same point I.

As with mirrors, we must use a sign convention to apply Equation 36.8 to a variety of cases. We define the side of the surface in which light rays originate as the front side. The other side is called the back side. In contrast with mirrors, where real images are formed in front of the reflecting surface, real images are formed by refraction of light rays to the back of the surface. Because of the difference in location of real images, the refraction sign conventions for q and R are opposite the reflection sign conventions. For example, q and R are both positive in Figure 36.17. The sign conventions for spherical refracting surfaces are summarized in Table 36.2.

We derived Equation 36.8 from an assumption that $n_1 < n_2$ in Figure 36.17. This assumption is not necessary, however. Equation 36.8 is valid regardless of which index of refraction is greater.

Table 36.2 Sign Conventions for Refracting Surfaces

Quantity	Positive When . . .	Negative When . . .
Object location (p)	object is in front of surface (real object).	object is in back of surface (virtual object).
Image location (q)	image is in back of surface (real image).	image is in front of surface (virtual image).
Image height (h')	image is upright.	image is inverted.
Radius (R)	center of curvature is in back of surface.	center of curvature is in front of surface.

Flat Refracting Surfaces

If a refracting surface is flat, then R is infinite and Equation 36.8 reduces to

$$\frac{n_1}{p} = -\frac{n_2}{q}$$

$$q = -\frac{n_2}{n_1}p \tag{36.9}$$

From this expression, we see that the sign of q is opposite that of p. Therefore, according to Table 36.2, the image formed by a flat refracting surface is on the same side of the surface as the object as illustrated in Figure 36.18 for the situation in which the object is in the medium of index n_1 and n_1 is greater than n_2. In this case, a virtual image is formed between the object and the surface. If n_1 is less than n_2, the rays on the back side diverge from one another at smaller angles than those in Figure 36.18. As a result, the virtual image is formed to the left of the object.

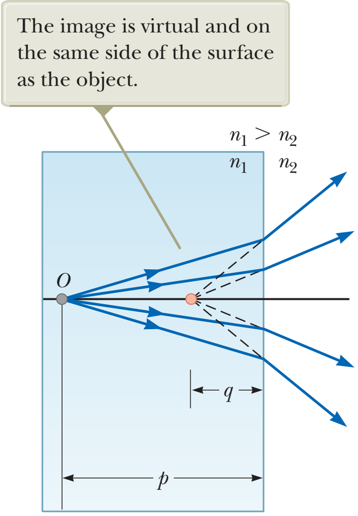


Figure 36.18 The image formed by a flat refracting surface. All rays are assumed to be paraxial.

Quick Quiz 36.4 In Figure 36.16, what happens to the image point I as the object point O is moved to the right from very far away to very close to the refracting surface? **(a)** It is always to the right of the surface. **(b)** It is always to the left of the surface. **(c)** It starts off to the left, and at some position of O, I moves to the right of the surface. **(d)** It starts off to the right, and at some position of O, I moves to the left of the surface.

Quick Quiz 36.5 In Figure 36.18, what happens to the image point I as the object point O moves toward the right-hand surface of the material of index of refraction n_1? **(a)** It always remains between O and the surface, arriving at the surface just as O does. **(b)** It moves toward the surface more slowly than O so that eventually O passes I. **(c)** It approaches the surface and then moves to the right of the surface.

Conceptual Example 36.5 Let's Go Scuba Diving!

Objects viewed under water with the naked eye appear blurred and out of focus. A scuba diver using a mask, however, has a clear view of underwater objects. Explain how that works, using the information that the indices of refraction of the cornea, water, and air are 1.376, 1.333, and 1.000 29, respectively.

SOLUTION

Because the cornea and water have almost identical indices of refraction, very little refraction occurs when a person under water views objects with the naked eye. In this case, light rays from an object focus behind the retina, resulting in a blurred image. When a mask is used, however, the air space between the eye and the mask surface provides the normal amount of refraction at the eye–air interface; consequently, the light from the object focuses on the retina.

Example 36.6 Gaze into the Crystal Ball

A set of coins is embedded in a spherical plastic paperweight having a radius of 3.0 cm. The index of refraction of the plastic is $n_1 = 1.50$. One coin is located 2.0 cm from the edge of the sphere (Fig. 36.19). Find the position of the image of the coin.

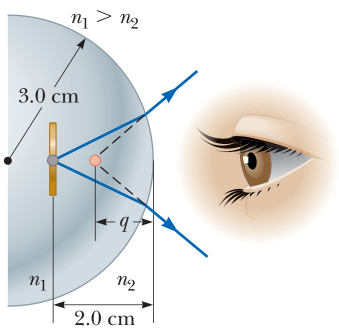


Figure 36.19 (Example 36.6) Light rays from a coin embedded in a plastic sphere form a virtual image between the surface of the object and the sphere surface. Because the object is inside the sphere, the front of the refracting surface is the *interior* of the sphere.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because $n_1 > n_2$, where $n_2 = 1.00$ is the index of refraction for air, the rays originating from the coin in Figure 36.19 are refracted away from the normal at the surface and diverge outward. Extending the outgoing rays backward shows an image point within the sphere.

36.6 continued

Categorize Because the light rays originate in one material and then pass through a curved surface into another material, this example involves an image formed by refraction.

Analyze Apply Equation 36.8, noting from Table 36.2 that R is negative:

$$\frac{n_2}{q} = \frac{n_2 - n_1}{R} - \frac{n_1}{p}$$

Substitute numerical values and solve for q:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1.00 - 1.50}{-3.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1.50}{2.0\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-1.7\text{ cm}}$$

Finalize The negative sign for q indicates that the image is in front of the surface; in other words, it is in the same medium as the object as shown in Figure 36.19. Therefore, the image must be virtual. (See Table 36.2.) The coin appears to be closer to the paperweight surface than it actually is.

Example 36.7 The One That Got Away

A small fish is swimming at a depth d below the surface of a pond (Fig. 36.20).

(A) What is the apparent depth of the fish as viewed from directly overhead?

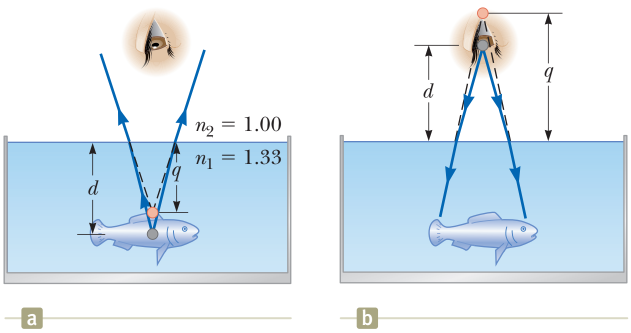


Figure 36.20 (Example 36.7) (a) The apparent depth q of the fish is less than the true depth d. All rays are assumed to be paraxial. (b) Your face appears to the fish to be higher above the surface than it is.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because $n_1 > n_2$, where $n_2 = 1.00$ is the index of refraction for air, the rays originating from the fish in Figure 36.20a are refracted away from the normal at the surface and diverge outward. Extending the outgoing rays backward shows an image point under the water.

Categorize Because the refracting surface is flat, R is infinite. Hence, we can use Equation 36.9 to determine the location of the image with $p = d$.

Analyze Use the indices of refraction given in Figure 36.20a in Equation 36.9:

$$q = -\frac{n_2}{n_1}p = -\frac{1.00}{1.33}d = \boxed{-0.752d}$$

Finalize Because q is negative, the image is virtual as indicated by the dashed lines in Figure 36.20a. The apparent depth is approximately three-fourths the actual depth.

(B) If your face is a distance d above the water surface, at what apparent distance above the surface does the fish see your face?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The light rays from your face are shown in Figure 36.20b. Because the rays refract toward the normal, your face appears higher above the surface than it actually is.

Categorize Because the refracting surface is flat, R is infinite. Hence, we can use Equation 36.9 to determine the location of the image with $p = d$.

Analyze Use Equation 36.9 to find the image distance:

$$q = -\frac{n_2}{n_1}p = -\frac{1.33}{1.00}d = \boxed{-1.33d}$$

Finalize The negative sign for q indicates that the image is in the medium from which the light originated, which is the air above the water.

continued

36.7 continued

WHAT IF? What if you look more carefully at the fish and measure its apparent *height* from its upper fin to its lower fin? Is the apparent height h' of the fish different from the actual height h?

Answer Because all points on the fish appear to be fractionally closer to the observer, we expect the height to be smaller. Let the distance d in Figure 36.20a be measured to the top fin and let the distance to the bottom fin be $d + h$. Then the images of the top and bottom of the fish are located at

$$q_{\text{top}} = -0.752d$$

$$q_{\text{bottom}} = -0.752(d + h)$$

The apparent height h' of the fish is

$$h' = q_{\text{top}} - q_{\text{bottom}} = -0.752d - [-0.752(d + h)] = 0.752h$$

Hence, the fish appears to be approximately three-fourths its actual height.

36.4 Images Formed by Thin Lenses

Lenses are commonly used to form images by refraction in optical instruments such as cameras, telescopes, and microscopes. Let's use what we just learned about images formed by refracting surfaces to help locate the image formed by a lens. Light passing through a lens experiences refraction at two surfaces. The development we shall follow is based on the notion that the image formed by one refracting surface serves as the object for the second surface. We shall analyze a thick lens first and then let the thickness of the lens be approximately zero.

Consider a lens having an index of refraction n and two spherical surfaces with radii of curvature R_1 and R_2 as in Figure 36.21. (Notice that R_1 is the radius of curvature of the lens surface the light from the object reaches first and R_2 is the radius of curvature of the other surface of the lens.) An object is placed at point O at a distance p_1 in front of surface 1.

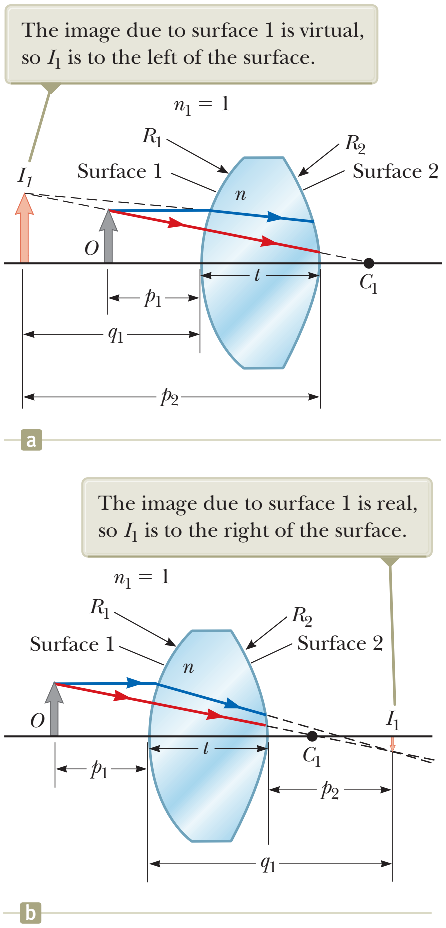


Figure 36.21 To locate the image formed by a lens, we use the virtual image at I_1 formed by surface 1 as the object for the image formed by surface 2. The point C_1 is the center of curvature of surface 1.

Let's begin with the image formed by surface 1. Using Equation 36.8 and assuming $n_1 = 1$ because the lens is surrounded by air, we find that the image I_1 formed by surface 1 satisfies the equation

$$\frac{1}{p_1} + \frac{n}{q_1} = \frac{n - 1}{R_1} \qquad \textbf{(36.10)}$$

where q_1 is the position of the image formed by surface 1. If the image formed by surface 1 is virtual (Fig. 36.21a), then q_1 is negative; it is positive if the image is real (Fig. 36.21b).

Now let's apply Equation 36.8 to surface 2, taking $n_1 = n$ and $n_2 = 1$. (We make this switch in index because the light rays approaching surface 2 are *in the material of the lens,* and this material has index n.) Taking p_2 as the object distance for surface 2 and q_2 as the image distance gives

$$\frac{n}{p_2} + \frac{1}{q_2} = \frac{1 - n}{R_2} \qquad \textbf{(36.11)}$$

We now introduce mathematically that the image formed by the first surface acts as the object for the second surface. If the image from surface 1 is virtual as in Figure 36.21a, we see that p_2, measured from surface 2, is related to q_1 as $p_2 = -q_1 + t$, where t is the thickness of the lens. Because q_1 is negative, p_2 is a positive number. Figure 36.21b shows the case of the image from surface 1 being real. In this situation, q_1 is positive and $p_2 = -q_1 + t$, where the image from surface 1 acts as a **virtual object,** so p_2 is negative. Regardless of the type of image from surface 1, the same equation describes the location of the object for surface 2 based on our sign convention. For a *thin* lens (one whose thickness is small compared with the radii of curvature), we can neglect t. In this approximation, $p_2 = -q_1$ for either type of image from surface 1. Hence, Equation 36.11 becomes

$$-\frac{n}{q_1} + \frac{1}{q_2} = \frac{1-n}{R_2} \tag{36.12}$$

Adding Equations 36.10 and 36.12 gives

$$\frac{1}{p_1} + \frac{1}{q_2} = (n-1)\left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2}\right) \tag{36.13}$$

For a thin lens, we can omit the subscripts on p_1 and q_2 in Equation 36.13 and call the object distance p and the image distance q as in Figure 36.22. Hence, we can write Equation 36.13 as

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = (n-1)\left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2}\right) \tag{36.14}$$

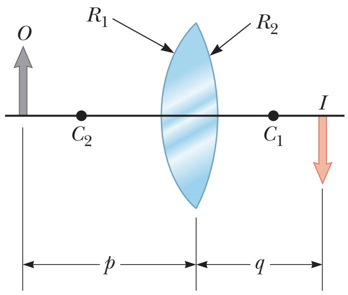


Figure 36.22 Simplified geometry for a thin lens.

This expression relates the image distance q of the image formed by a thin lens to the object distance p and to the lens properties (index of refraction and radii of curvature). It is valid only for paraxial rays and only when the lens thickness is much less than R_1 and R_2.

The **focal length** f of a thin lens is the image distance that corresponds to an infinite object distance, just as with mirrors. Letting p approach ∞ and q approach f in Equation 36.14, we see that the inverse of the focal length for a thin lens is

$$\frac{1}{f} = (n-1)\left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2}\right) \tag{36.15}$$

◀ **Lens-makers' equation**

This relationship is called the **lens-makers' equation** because it can be used to determine the values of R_1 and R_2 needed for a given index of refraction and a desired focal length f. Conversely, if the index of refraction and the radii of curvature of a lens are given, this equation can be used to find the focal length. If the lens is immersed in something other than air, this same equation can be used, with n interpreted as the *ratio* of the index of refraction of the lens material to that of the surrounding fluid.

Pitfall Prevention 36.5

A Lens Has Two Focal Points but Only One Focal Length A lens has a focal point on each side, front and back. There is only one focal length, however; each of the two focal points is located the same distance from the lens (Fig. 36.23). As a result, the lens forms an image of an object at the same point if it is turned around. In practice, that might not happen because real lenses are not infinitesimally thin.

Using Equation 36.15, we can write Equation 36.14 in a form identical to Equation 36.6 for mirrors:

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} \tag{36.16}$$

This equation, called the **thin lens equation,** can be used to relate the image distance and object distance for a thin lens.

Because light can travel in either direction through a lens, each lens has two focal points, one for light rays passing through in one direction and one for rays passing through in the other direction. These two focal points are illustrated in Figure 36.23 for a plano-convex lens (a converging lens) and a plano-concave lens (a diverging lens).

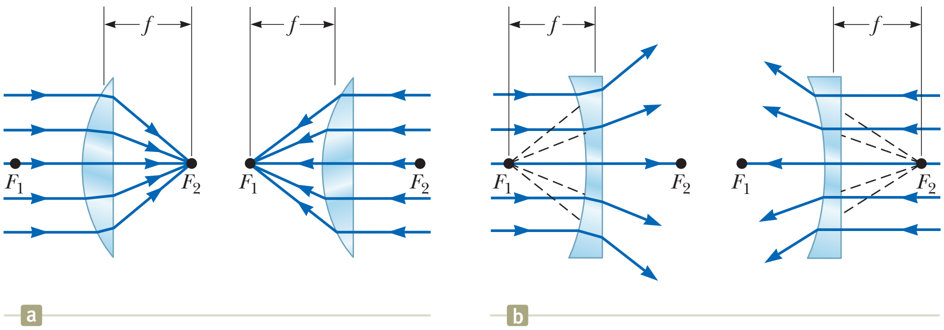


Figure 36.23 Parallel light rays pass through (a) a converging lens and (b) a diverging lens. The focal length is the same for light rays passing through a given lens in either direction. Both focal points F_1 and F_2 are the same distance from the lens.

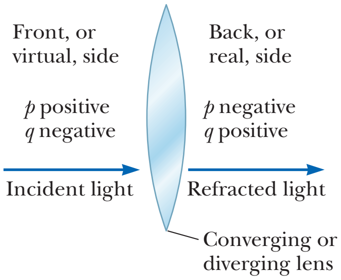


Figure 36.24 A diagram for obtaining the signs of p and q for a thin lens. (This diagram also applies to a refracting surface.)

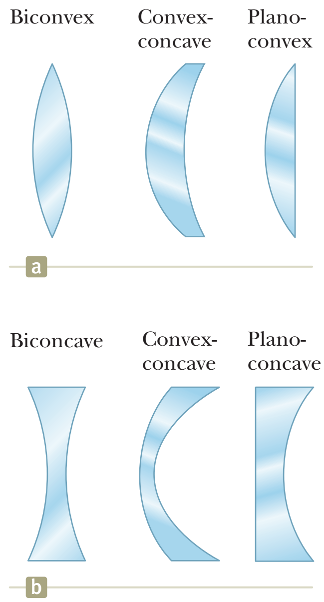


Figure 36.25 Various lens shapes. (a) Converging lenses have a positive focal length and are thickest at the middle. (b) Diverging lenses have a negative focal length and are thickest at the edges.

Table 36.3 Sign Conventions for Thin Lenses

Quantity	Positive When . . .	Negative When . . .
Object location (p)	object is in front of lens (real object).	object is in back of lens (virtual object).
Image location (q)	image is in back of lens (real image).	image is in front of lens (virtual image).
Image height (h')	image is upright.	image is inverted.
R_1 and R_2	center of curvature is in back of lens.	center of curvature is in front of lens.
Focal length (f)	a converging lens.	a diverging lens.

Figure 36.24 is useful for obtaining the signs of p and q, and Table 36.3 gives the sign conventions for thin lenses. These sign conventions are the *same* as those for refracting surfaces (see Table 36.2).

Various lens shapes are shown in Figure 36.25. Notice that a converging lens is thicker at the center than at the edge, whereas a diverging lens is thinner at the center than at the edge.

Magnification of Images

Consider a thin lens through which light rays from an object pass. As with mirrors (Eq. 36.2), a geometric construction shows that the lateral magnification of the image is

$$M = \frac{h'}{h} = -\frac{q}{p} \tag{36.17}$$

From this expression, it follows that when M is positive, the image is upright and on the same side of the lens as the object. When M is negative, the image is inverted and on the side of the lens opposite the object.

Ray Diagrams for Thin Lenses

Ray diagrams are convenient for locating the images formed by thin lenses or systems of lenses. They also help clarify our sign conventions. Figure 36.26 shows such diagrams for three single-lens situations.

To locate the image of a *converging* lens (Figs. 36.26a and 36.26b), the following three rays are drawn from the top of the object:

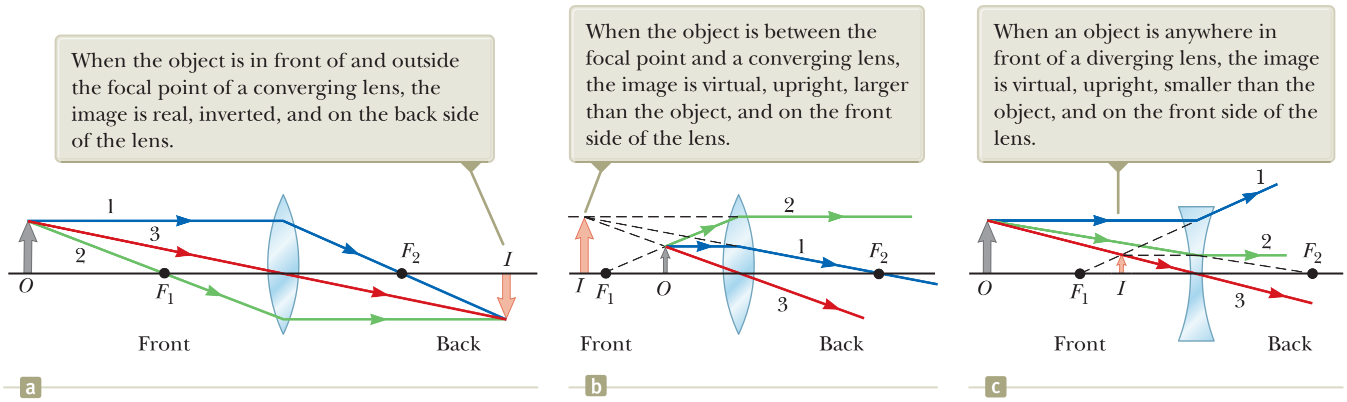


Figure 36.26 Ray diagrams for locating the image formed by a thin lens.

- Ray 1 is drawn parallel to the principal axis. After being refracted by the lens, this ray passes through the focal point on the back side of the lens.
- Ray 2 is drawn through the focal point on the front side of the lens (or as if coming from the focal point if $p < f$) and emerges from the lens parallel to the principal axis.
- Ray 3 is drawn through the center of the lens and continues in a straight line.

To locate the image of a *diverging* lens (Fig. 36.26c), the following three rays are drawn from the top of the object:

- Ray 1 is drawn parallel to the principal axis. After being refracted by the lens, this ray emerges directed away from the focal point on the front side of the lens.
- Ray 2 is drawn in the direction toward the focal point on the back side of the lens and emerges from the lens parallel to the principal axis.
- Ray 3 is drawn through the center of the lens and continues in a straight line.

For the converging lens in Figure 36.26a, where the object is to the left of the focal point ($p > f$), the image is real and inverted. When the object is between the focal point and the lens ($p < f$) as in Figure 36.26b, the image is virtual and upright. In that case, the lens acts as a magnifying glass, which we study in more detail in Section 36.8. For a diverging lens (Fig. 36.26c), the image is always virtual and upright, regardless of where the object is placed. These geometric constructions are reasonably accurate only if the distance between the rays and the principal axis is much less than the radii of the lens surfaces.

Refraction occurs only at the surfaces of the lens. A certain lens design takes advantage of this behavior to produce the *Fresnel lens,* a powerful lens without great thickness. Because only the surface curvature is important in the refracting qualities of the lens, material in the middle of a Fresnel lens is removed as shown in the cross sections of lenses in Figure 36.27. Because the edges of the curved segments cause some distortion, Fresnel lenses are generally used only in situations in which image quality is less important than reduction of weight. A classroom overhead projector often uses a Fresnel lens; the circular edges between segments of the lens can be seen by looking closely at the light projected onto a screen.

Quick Quiz 36.6 What is the focal length of a pane of window glass? **(a)** zero **(b)** infinity **(c)** the thickness of the glass **(d)** impossible to determine

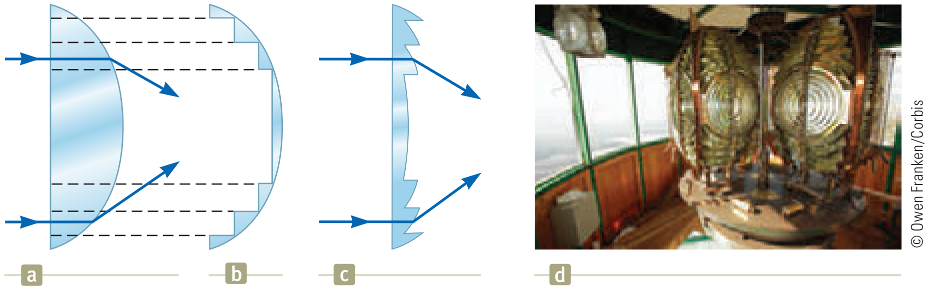


Figure 36.27 A side view of the construction of a Fresnel lens. (a) The thick lens refracts a light ray as shown. (b) Lens material in the bulk of the lens is cut away, leaving only the material close to the curved surface. (c) The small pieces of remaining material are moved to the left to form a flat surface on the left of the Fresnel lens with ridges on the right surface. From a front view, these ridges would be circular in shape. This new lens refracts light in the same way as the lens in (a). (d) A Fresnel lens used in a lighthouse shows several segments with the ridges discussed in (c).

Example 36.8 Images Formed by a Converging Lens

A converging lens has a focal length of 10.0 cm.

(A) An object is placed 30.0 cm from the lens. Construct a ray diagram, find the image distance, and describe the image.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because the lens is converging, the focal length is positive (see Table 36.3). We expect the possibilities of both real and virtual images.

Categorize Because the object distance is larger than the focal length, we expect the image to be real. The ray diagram for this situation is shown in Figure 36.28a.

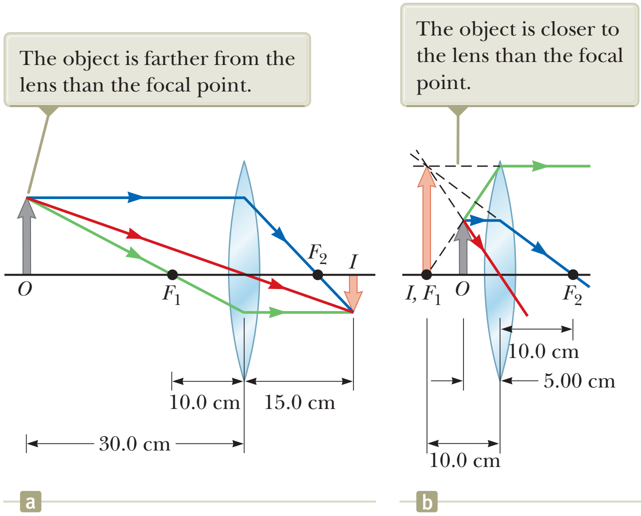


Figure 36.28 (Example 36.8) An image is formed by a converging lens.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{30.0 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{+15.0 \text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\frac{15.0 \text{ cm}}{30.0 \text{ cm}} = \boxed{-0.500}$$

Finalize The positive sign for the image distance tells us that the image is indeed real and on the back side of the lens. The magnification of the image tells us that the image is reduced in height by one half, and the negative sign for *M* tells us that the image is inverted.

(B) An object is placed 10.0 cm from the lens. Find the image distance and describe the image.

SOLUTION

Categorize Because the object is at the focal point, we expect the image to be infinitely far away.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{10.0 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{\infty}$$

Finalize This result means that rays originating from an object positioned at the focal point of a lens are refracted so that the image is formed at an infinite distance from the lens; that is, the rays travel parallel to one another after refraction.

(C) An object is placed 5.00 cm from the lens. Construct a ray diagram, find the image distance, and describe the image.

SOLUTION

Categorize Because the object distance is smaller than the focal length, we expect the image to be virtual. The ray diagram for this situation is shown in Figure 36.28b.

36.8 continued

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{10.0\text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{5.00\text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-10.0\text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\left(\frac{-10.0\text{ cm}}{5.00\text{ cm}}\right) = \boxed{+2.00}$$

Finalize The negative image distance tells us that the image is virtual and formed on the side of the lens from which the light is incident, the front side. The image is enlarged, and the positive sign for M tells us that the image is upright.

WHAT IF? What if the object moves right up to the lens surface so that $p \to 0$? Where is the image?

Answer In this case, because $p << R$, where R is either of the radii of the surfaces of the lens, the curvature of the lens can be ignored. The lens should appear to have the same effect as a flat piece of material, which suggests that the image is just on the front side of the lens, at $q = 0$. This conclusion can be verified mathematically by rearranging the thin lens equation:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

If we let $p \to 0$, the second term on the right becomes very large compared with the first and we can neglect $1/f$. The equation becomes

$$\frac{1}{q} = -\frac{1}{p} \quad \to \quad q = -p = 0$$

Therefore, q is on the front side of the lens (because it has the opposite sign as p) and right at the lens surface.

Example 36.9 Images Formed by a Diverging Lens

A diverging lens has a focal length of 10.0 cm.

(A) An object is placed 30.0 cm from the lens. Construct a ray diagram, find the image distance, and describe the image.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because the lens is diverging, the focal length is negative (see Table 36.3). The ray diagram for this situation is shown in Figure 36.29a.

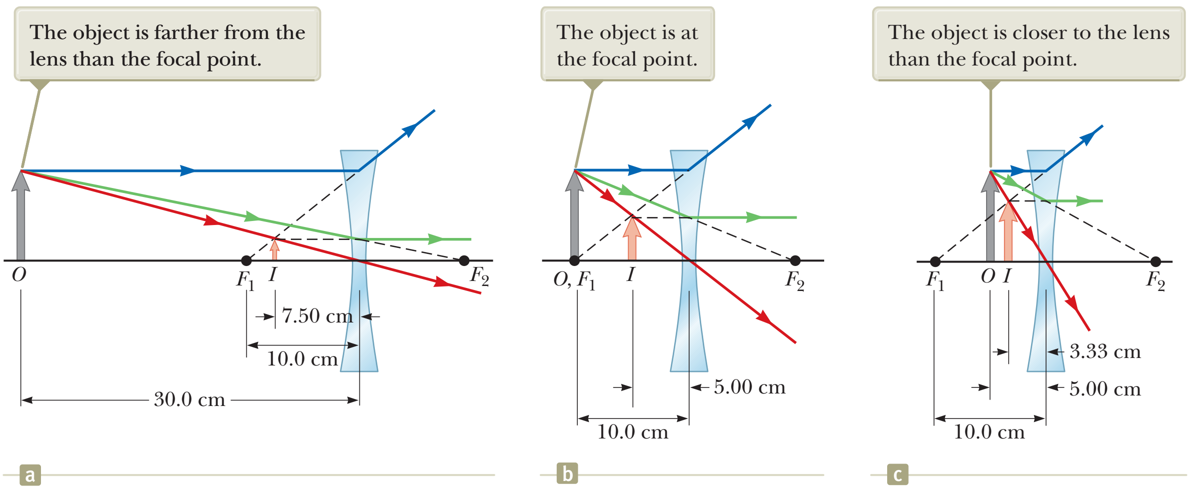


Figure 36.29 (Example 36.9) An image is formed by a diverging lens.

continued

36.9 continued

Categorize Because the lens is diverging, we expect it to form an upright, reduced, virtual image for any object position.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{-10.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{30.0 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-7.50 \text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\left(\frac{-7.50 \text{ cm}}{30.0 \text{ cm}}\right) = \boxed{+0.250}$$

Finalize This result confirms that the image is virtual, smaller than the object, and upright. Look through the diverging lens in a door peephole to see this type of image.

(B) An object is placed 10.0 cm from the lens. Construct a ray diagram, find the image distance, and describe the image.

SOLUTION

The ray diagram for this situation is shown in Figure 36.29b.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{-10.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{10.0 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-5.00 \text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M = -\frac{q}{p} = -\left(\frac{-5.00 \text{ cm}}{10.0 \text{ cm}}\right) = \boxed{+0.500}$$

Finalize Notice the difference between this situation and that for a converging lens. For a diverging lens, an object at the focal point does not produce an image infinitely far away.

(C) An object is placed 5.00 cm from the lens. Construct a ray diagram, find the image distance, and describe the image.

SOLUTION

The ray diagram for this situation is shown in Figure 36.29c.

Analyze Find the image distance by using Equation 36.16:

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p}$$

$$\frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{-10.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{5.0 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q = \boxed{-3.33 \text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M = -\left(\frac{-3.33 \text{ cm}}{5.00 \text{ cm}}\right) = \boxed{+0.667}$$

Finalize For all three object positions, the image position is negative and the magnification is a positive number smaller than 1, which confirms that the image is virtual, smaller than the object, and upright.

Combinations of Thin Lenses

If two thin lenses are used to form an image, the system can be treated in the following manner. First, the image formed by the first lens is located as if the second lens were not present. Then a ray diagram is drawn for the second lens, with the image formed by the first lens now serving as the object for the second lens. The second image formed is the final image of the system. If the image formed by the first lens lies on the back side of the second lens, that image is treated as a virtual object for the second lens (that is, in the thin lens equation, p is negative). The same procedure can be extended to a system of three or more lenses. Because the magnification due to the second lens is performed on the magnified image due to the first lens, the overall magnification of the image due to the combination of lenses is the product of the individual magnifications:

$$M = M_1 M_2 \tag{36.18}$$

This equation can be used for combinations of any optical elements such as a lens and a mirror. For more than two optical elements, the magnifications due to all elements are multiplied together.

Let's consider the special case of a system of two lenses of focal lengths f_1 and f_2 in contact with each other. If $p_1 = p$ is the object distance for the combination, application of the thin lens equation (Eq. 36.16) to the first lens gives

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q_1} = \frac{1}{f_1}$$

where q_1 is the image distance for the first lens. Treating this image as the object for the second lens, we see that the object distance for the second lens must be $p_2 = -q_1$. (The distances are the same because the lenses are in contact and assumed to be infinitesimally thin. The object distance is negative because the object is virtual if the image from the first lens is real.) Therefore, for the second lens,

$$\frac{1}{p_2} + \frac{1}{q_2} = \frac{1}{f_2} \rightarrow -\frac{1}{q_1} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f_2}$$

where $q = q_2$ is the final image distance from the second lens, which is the image distance for the combination. Adding the equations for the two lenses eliminates q_1 and gives

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f_1} + \frac{1}{f_2}$$

If the combination is replaced with a single lens that forms an image at the same location, its focal length must be related to the individual focal lengths by the expression

$$\frac{1}{f} = \frac{1}{f_1} + \frac{1}{f_2} \tag{36.19}$$

◀ **Focal length for a combination of two thin lenses in contact**

Therefore, two thin lenses in contact with each other are equivalent to a single thin lens having a focal length given by Equation 36.19.

Example 36.10 Where Is the Final Image?

Two thin converging lenses of focal lengths $f_1 = 10.0$ cm and $f_2 = 20.0$ cm are separated by 20.0 cm as illustrated in Figure 36.30. An object is placed 30.0 cm to the left of lens 1. Find the position and the magnification of the final image.

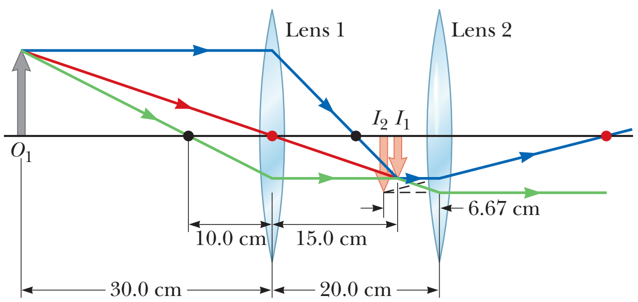


Figure 36.30 (Example 36.10) A combination of two converging lenses. The ray diagram shows the location of the final image (I_2) due to the combination of lenses. The black dots are the focal points of lens 1, and the red dots are the focal points of lens 2.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine light rays passing through the first lens and forming a real image (because $p > f$) in the absence of a second lens. Figure 36.30 shows these light rays forming the inverted image I_1. Once the light rays converge to the image point, they do not stop. They continue through the image point and interact with the

continued

36.10 continued

second lens. The rays leaving the image point behave in the same way as the rays leaving an object. Therefore, the image of the first lens serves as the object of the second lens.

Categorize We categorize this problem as one in which the thin lens equation is applied in a stepwise fashion to the two lenses.

Analyze Find the location of the image formed by lens 1 from the thin lens equation:

$$\frac{1}{q_1} = \frac{1}{f} - \frac{1}{p_1}$$

$$\frac{1}{q_1} = \frac{1}{10.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{30.0 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q_1 = +15.0 \text{ cm}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M_1 = -\frac{q_1}{p_1} = -\frac{15.0 \text{ cm}}{30.0 \text{ cm}} = -0.500$$

The image formed by this lens acts as the object for the second lens. Therefore, the object distance for the second lens is 20.0 cm − 15.0 cm = 5.00 cm.

Find the location of the image formed by lens 2 from the thin lens equation:

$$\frac{1}{q_2} = \frac{1}{20.0 \text{ cm}} - \frac{1}{5.00 \text{ cm}}$$

$$q_2 = \boxed{-6.67 \text{ cm}}$$

Find the magnification of the image from Equation 36.17:

$$M_2 = -\frac{q_2}{p_2} = -\frac{(-6.67 \text{ cm})}{5.00 \text{ cm}} = +1.33$$

Find the overall magnification of the system from Equation 36.18:

$$M = M_1 M_2 = (-0.500)(1.33) = \boxed{-0.667}$$

Finalize The negative sign on the overall magnification indicates that the final image is inverted with respect to the initial object. Because the absolute value of the magnification is less than 1, the final image is smaller than the object.

Because q_2 is negative, the final image is on the front, or left, side of lens 2. These conclusions are consistent with the ray diagram in Figure 36.30.

WHAT IF? Suppose you want to create an upright image with this system of two lenses. How must the second lens be moved?

Answer Because the object is farther from the first lens than the focal length of that lens, the first image is inverted. Consequently, the second lens must invert the image once again so that the final image is upright. An inverted image is only formed by a converging lens if the object is outside the focal point. Therefore, the image formed by the first lens must be to the left of the focal point of the second lens in Figure 36.30. To make that happen, you must move the second lens at least as far away from the first lens as the sum $q_1 + f_2 = 15.0 \text{ cm} + 20.0 \text{ cm} = 35.0 \text{ cm}$.

36.5 Lens Aberrations

Our analysis of mirrors and lenses assumes rays make small angles with the principal axis and the lenses are thin. In this simple model, all rays leaving a point source focus at a single point, producing a sharp image. Clearly, that is not always true. When the approximations used in this analysis do not hold, imperfect images are formed.

A precise analysis of image formation requires tracing each ray, using Snell's law at each refracting surface and the law of reflection at each reflecting surface. This procedure shows that the rays from a point object do not focus at a single point, with the result that the image is blurred. The departures of actual images from the ideal predicted by our simplified model are called **aberrations.**

Spherical Aberration

Spherical aberration occurs because the focal points of rays far from the principal axis of a spherical lens (or mirror) are different from the focal points of rays of the same wavelength passing near the axis. Figure 36.31 illustrates spherical aberration for parallel rays passing through a converging lens. Rays passing through points near the center of the lens are imaged farther from the lens than rays passing through points near the edges. Figure 36.8 earlier in the chapter shows spherical aberration for light rays leaving a point object and striking a spherical mirror.

Many cameras have an adjustable aperture to control light intensity and reduce spherical aberration. (An aperture is an opening that controls the amount of light passing through the lens.) Sharper images are produced as the aperture size is reduced; with a small aperture, only the central portion of the lens is exposed to the light and therefore a greater percentage of the rays are paraxial. At the same time, however, less light passes through the lens. To compensate for this lower light intensity, a longer exposure time is used.

In the case of mirrors, spherical aberration can be minimized through the use of a parabolic reflecting surface rather than a spherical surface. Parabolic surfaces are not used often, however, because those with high-quality optics are very expensive to make. Parallel light rays incident on a parabolic surface focus at a common point, regardless of their distance from the principal axis. Parabolic reflecting surfaces are used in many astronomical telescopes to enhance image quality.

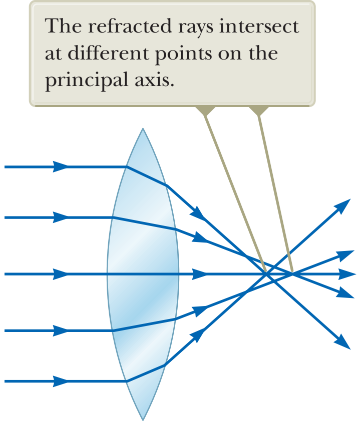


Figure 36.31 Spherical aberration caused by a converging lens. Does a diverging lens cause spherical aberration?

Chromatic Aberration

In Chapter 35, we described dispersion, whereby a material's index of refraction varies with wavelength. Because of this phenomenon, violet rays are refracted more than red rays when white light passes through a lens (Fig. 36.32). The figure shows that the focal length of a lens is greater for red light than for violet light. Other wavelengths (not shown in Fig. 36.32) have focal points intermediate between those of red and violet, which causes a blurred image and is called **chromatic aberration.**

Chromatic aberration for a diverging lens also results in a shorter focal length for violet light than for red light, but on the front side of the lens. Chromatic aberration can be greatly reduced by combining a converging lens made of one type of glass and a diverging lens made of another type of glass.

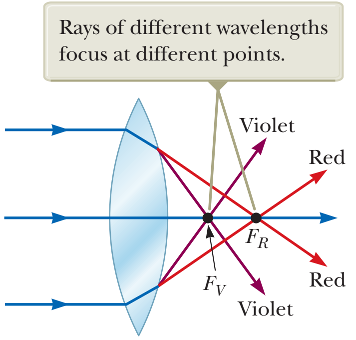


Figure 36.32 Chromatic aberration caused by a converging lens.

36.6 The Camera

The photographic **camera** is a simple optical instrument whose essential features are shown in Figure 36.33. It consists of a light-tight chamber, a converging lens that produces a real image, and a light-sensitive component behind the lens on which the image is formed.

The image in a digital camera is formed on a *charge-coupled device* (CCD), which digitizes the image, turning it into binary code. (A CCD is described in Section 40.2.) The digital information is then stored on a memory chip for playback on the camera's display screen, or it can be downloaded to a computer. Film cameras are similar to digital cameras except that the light forms an image on light-sensitive film rather than on a CCD. The film must then be chemically processed to produce the image on paper. In the discussion that follows, we assume the camera is digital.

A camera is focused by varying the distance between the lens and the CCD. For proper focusing—which is necessary for the formation of sharp images—the lens-to-CCD distance depends on the object distance as well as the focal length of the lens.

The shutter, positioned behind the lens, is a mechanical device that is opened for selected time intervals, called *exposure times.* You can photograph moving objects by using short exposure times or photograph dark scenes (with low light levels) by using long exposure times. If this adjustment were not available, it would be impossible

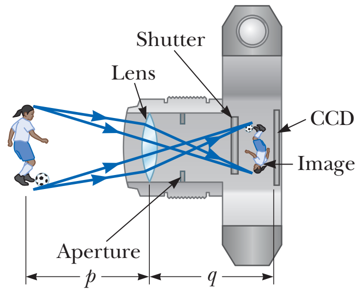


Figure 36.33 Cross-sectional view of a simple digital camera. The CCD is the light-sensitive component of the camera. In a nondigital camera, the light from the lens falls onto photographic film. In reality, $p >> q$.

to take stop-action photographs. For example, a rapidly moving vehicle could move enough in the time interval during which the shutter is open to produce a blurred image. Another major cause of blurred images is the movement of the camera while the shutter is open. To prevent such movement, either short exposure times or a tripod should be used, even for stationary objects. Typical shutter speeds (that is, exposure times) are $\frac{1}{30}$ s, $\frac{1}{60}$ s, $\frac{1}{125}$ s, and $\frac{1}{250}$ s. In practice, stationary objects are normally shot with an intermediate shutter speed of $\frac{1}{60}$ s.

The intensity I of the light reaching the CCD is proportional to the area of the lens. Because this area is proportional to the square of the diameter D, it follows that I is also proportional to D^2. Light intensity is a measure of the rate at which energy is received by the CCD per unit area of the image. Because the area of the image is proportional to q^2 and $q \approx f$ (when $p >> f$, so p can be approximated as infinite), we conclude that the intensity is also proportional to $1/f^2$ and therefore that $I \propto D^2/f^2$.

The ratio f/D is called the ***f*-number** of a lens:

$$f\text{-number} \equiv \frac{f}{D} \tag{36.20}$$

Hence, the intensity of light incident on the CCD varies according to the following proportionality:

$$I \propto \frac{1}{(f/D)^2} \propto \frac{1}{(f\text{-number})^2} \tag{36.21}$$

The f-number is often given as a description of the lens's "speed." The lower the f-number, the wider the aperture and the higher the rate at which energy from the light exposes the CCD; therefore, a lens with a low f-number is a "fast" lens. The conventional notation for an f-number is "$f/$" followed by the actual number. For example, "$f/4$" means an f-number of 4; it *does not* mean to divide f by 4! Extremely fast lenses, which have f-numbers as low as approximately $f/1.2$, are expensive because it is very difficult to keep aberrations acceptably small with light rays passing through a large area of the lens. Camera lens systems (that is, combinations of lenses with adjustable apertures) are often marked with multiple f-numbers, usually $f/2.8$, $f/4$, $f/5.6$, $f/8$, $f/11$, and $f/16$. Any one of these settings can be selected by adjusting the aperture, which changes the value of D. Increasing the setting from one f-number to the next higher value (for example, from $f/2.8$ to $f/4$) decreases the area of the aperture by a factor of 2. The lowest f-number setting on a camera lens corresponds to a wide-open aperture and the use of the maximum possible lens area.

Simple cameras usually have a fixed focal length and a fixed aperture size, with an f-number of about $f/11$. This high value for the f-number allows for a large **depth of field,** meaning that objects at a wide range of distances from the lens form reasonably sharp images on the CCD. In other words, the camera does not have to be focused.

Quick Quiz 36.7 A camera can be modeled as a simple converging lens that focuses an image on the CCD, acting as the screen. A camera is initially focused on a distant object. To focus the image of an object close to the camera, must the lens be **(a)** moved away from the CCD, **(b)** left where it is, or **(c)** moved toward the CCD?

Example 36.11 Finding the Correct Exposure Time

The lens of a digital camera has a focal length of 55 mm and a speed (an f-number) of $f/1.8$. The correct exposure time for this speed under certain conditions is known to be $\frac{1}{500}$ s.

(A) Determine the diameter of the lens.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Remember that the f-number for a lens relates its focal length to its diameter.

36.11 continued

Categorize We determine results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Solve Equation 36.20 for D and substitute numerical values:

$$D = \frac{f}{f\text{-number}} = \frac{55 \text{ mm}}{1.8} = \boxed{31 \text{ mm}}$$

(B) Calculate the correct exposure time if the f-number is changed to $f/4$ under the same lighting conditions.

SOLUTION

The total light energy hitting the CCD is proportional to the product of the intensity and the exposure time. If I is the light intensity reaching the CCD, the energy per unit area received by the CCD in a time interval Δt is proportional to $I\,\Delta t$. Comparing the two situations, we require that $I_1\,\Delta t_1 = I_2\,\Delta t_2$, where Δt_1 is the correct exposure time for $f/1.8$ and Δt_2 is the correct exposure time for $f/4$.

Use this result and substitute for I from Equation 36.21:

$$I_1\,\Delta t_1 = I_2\,\Delta t_2 \;\rightarrow\; \frac{\Delta t_1}{(f_1\text{-number})^2} = \frac{\Delta t_2}{(f_2\text{-number})^2}$$

Solve for Δt_2 and substitute numerical values:

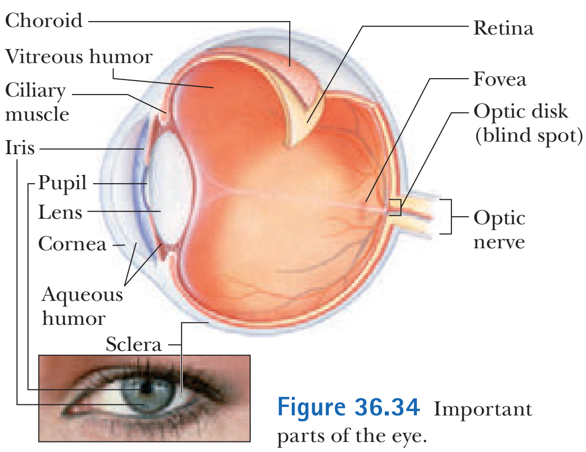
$$\Delta t_2 = \left(\frac{f_2\text{-number}}{f_1\text{-number}}\right)^2 \Delta t_1 = \left(\frac{4}{1.8}\right)^2 \left(\tfrac{1}{500}\text{ s}\right) \approx \boxed{\tfrac{1}{100}\text{ s}}$$

As the aperture size is reduced, the exposure time must increase.

36.7 The Eye

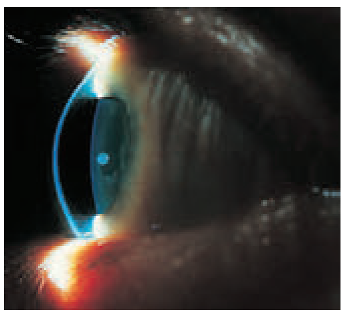
Like a camera, a normal eye focuses light and produces a sharp image. The mechanisms by which the eye controls the amount of light admitted and adjusts to produce correctly focused images, however, are far more complex, intricate, and effective than those in even the most sophisticated camera. In all respects, the eye is a physiological wonder.

Figure 36.34 shows the basic parts of the human eye. Light entering the eye passes through a transparent structure called the *cornea* (Fig. 36.35), behind which are a clear liquid (the *aqueous humor*), a variable aperture (the *pupil,* which is an opening in the *iris*), and the *crystalline lens.* Most of the refraction occurs at the outer surface of the eye, where the cornea is covered with a film of tears. Relatively little refraction occurs in the crystalline lens because the aqueous humor in contact with the lens has an average index of refraction close to that of the lens. The iris, which is the colored portion of the eye, is a muscular diaphragm that controls pupil size. The iris regulates the amount of light entering the eye by dilating, or



Art by Robert Demarest from Cecie Starr and Beverly McMillan, *Human Biology*, 5th ed., © 2003, Brooks/Cole, a Division of Cengage Learning, Inc.

Figure 36.34 Important parts of the eye.



Lennart Nilsson/Scanpix

Figure 36.35 Close-up photograph of the cornea of the human eye.

opening, the pupil in low-light conditions and contracting, or closing, the pupil in high-light conditions. The *f*-number range of the human eye is approximately $f/2.8$ to $f/16$.

The cornea–lens system focuses light onto the back surface of the eye, the *retina,* which consists of millions of sensitive receptors called *rods* and *cones.* When stimulated by light, these receptors send impulses via the optic nerve to the brain, where an image is perceived. By this process, a distinct image of an object is observed when the image falls on the retina.

The eye focuses on an object by varying the shape of the pliable crystalline lens through a process called **accommodation.** The lens adjustments take place so swiftly that we are not even aware of the change. Accommodation is limited in that objects very close to the eye produce blurred images. The **near point** is the closest distance for which the lens can accommodate to focus light on the retina. This distance usually increases with age and has an average value of 25 cm. At age 10, the near point of the eye is typically approximately 18 cm. It increases to approximately 25 cm at age 20, to 50 cm at age 40, and to 500 cm or greater at age 60. The **far point** of the eye represents the greatest distance for which the lens of the relaxed eye can focus light on the retina. A person with normal vision can see very distant objects and therefore has a far point that can be approximated as infinity.

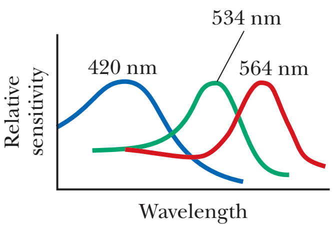


Figure 36.36 Approximate color sensitivity of the three types of cones in the retina.

The retina is covered with two types of light-sensitive cells, called **rods** and **cones.** The rods are not sensitive to color but are more light sensitive than the cones. The rods are responsible for *scotopic vision,* or dark-adapted vision. Rods are spread throughout the retina and allow good peripheral vision for all light levels and motion detection in the dark. The cones are concentrated in the fovea. These cells are sensitive to different wavelengths of light. The three categories of these cells are called red, green, and blue cones because of the peaks of the color ranges to which they respond (Fig. 36.36). If the red and green cones are stimulated simultaneously (as would be the case if yellow light were shining on them), the brain interprets what is seen as yellow. If all three types of cones are stimulated by the separate colors red, blue, and green, white light is seen. If all three types of cones are stimulated by light that contains *all* colors, such as sunlight, again white light is seen.

Televisions and computer monitors take advantage of this visual illusion by having only red, green, and blue dots on the screen. With specific combinations of brightness in these three primary colors, our eyes can be made to see any color in the rainbow. Therefore, the yellow lemon you see in a television commercial is not actually yellow, it is red and green! The paper on which this page is printed is made of tiny, matted, translucent fibers that scatter light in all directions, and the resultant mixture of colors appears white to the eye. Snow, clouds, and white hair are not actually white. In fact, there is no such thing as a white pigment. The appearance of these things is a consequence of the scattering of light containing all colors, which we interpret as white.

Conditions of the Eye

When the eye suffers a mismatch between the focusing range of the lens–cornea system and the length of the eye, with the result that light rays from a near object reach the retina before they converge to form an image as shown in Figure 36.37a, the condition is known as **farsightedness** (or *hyperopia*). A farsighted person can usually see faraway objects clearly but not nearby objects. Although the near point of a normal eye is approximately 25 cm, the near point of a farsighted person is much farther away. The refracting power in the cornea and lens is insufficient to focus the light from all but distant objects satisfactorily. The condition can be corrected by placing a converging lens in front of the eye as shown in Figure 36.37b. The lens refracts the incoming rays more toward the principal axis before entering the eye, allowing them to converge and focus on the retina.

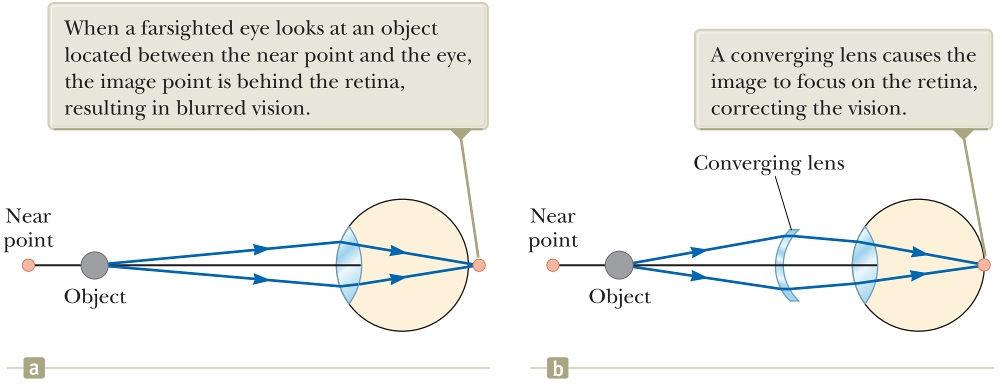


Figure 36.37 (a) An uncorrected farsighted eye. (b) A farsighted eye corrected with a converging lens.

A person with **nearsightedness** (or *myopia*), another mismatch condition, can focus on nearby objects but not on faraway objects. The far point of the nearsighted eye is not infinity and may be less than 1 m. The maximum focal length of the nearsighted eye is insufficient to produce a sharp image on the retina, and rays from a distant object converge to a focus in front of the retina. They then continue past that point, diverging before they finally reach the retina and causing blurred vision (Fig. 36.38a). Nearsightedness can be corrected with a diverging lens as shown in Figure 36.38b. The lens refracts the rays away from the principal axis before they enter the eye, allowing them to focus on the retina.

Beginning in middle age, most people lose some of their accommodation ability as their visual muscles weaken and the lens hardens. Unlike farsightedness, which is a mismatch between focusing power and eye length, **presbyopia** (literally, "old-age vision") is due to a reduction in accommodation ability. The cornea and lens do not have sufficient focusing power to bring nearby objects into focus on the retina. The symptoms are the same as those of farsightedness, and the condition can be corrected with converging lenses.

In eyes having a defect known as **astigmatism,** light from a point source produces a line image on the retina. This condition arises when the cornea, the lens, or both are not perfectly symmetric. Astigmatism can be corrected with lenses that have different curvatures in two mutually perpendicular directions.

Optometrists and ophthalmologists usually prescribe lenses[1] measured in **diopters:** the **power** P of a lens in diopters equals the inverse of the focal length in meters: $P = 1/f$. For example, a converging lens of focal length $+20$ cm has a power of $+5.0$ diopters, and a diverging lens of focal length -40 cm has a power of -2.5 diopters.

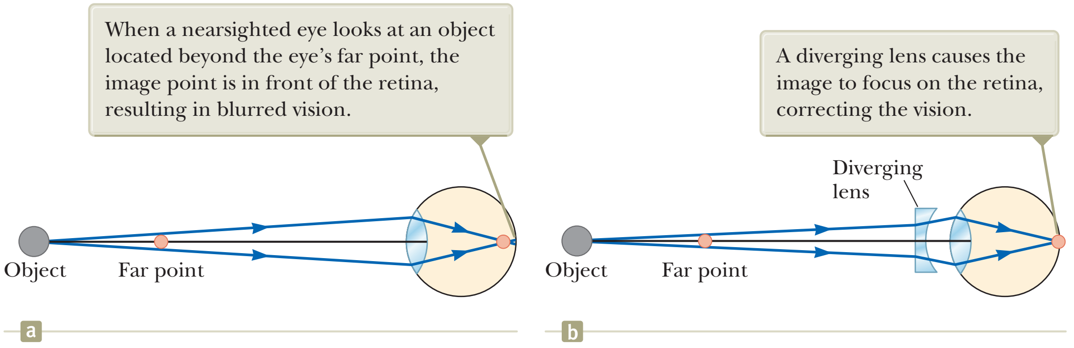


Figure 36.38 (a) An uncorrected nearsighted eye. (b) A nearsighted eye corrected with a diverging lens.

[1]The word *lens* comes from *lentil,* the name of an Italian legume. (You may have eaten lentil soup.) Early eyeglasses were called "glass lentils" because the biconvex shape of their lenses resembled the shape of a lentil. The first lenses for farsightedness and presbyopia appeared around 1280; concave eyeglasses for correcting nearsightedness did not appear until more than 100 years later.

Quick Quiz 36.8 Two campers wish to start a fire during the day. One camper is nearsighted, and one is farsighted. Whose glasses should be used to focus the Sun's rays onto some paper to start the fire? **(a)** either camper **(b)** the nearsighted camper **(c)** the farsighted camper

36.8 The Simple Magnifier

The simple magnifier, or magnifying glass, consists of a single converging lens. This device increases the apparent size of an object.

Suppose an object is viewed at some distance p from the eye as illustrated in Figure 36.39. The size of the image formed at the retina depends on the angle θ subtended by the object at the eye. As the object moves closer to the eye, θ increases and a larger image is observed. An average normal human eye, however, cannot focus on an object closer than about 25 cm, the near point (Fig. 36.40a). Therefore, θ is maximum at the near point.

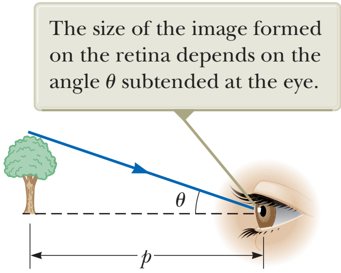


Figure 36.39 An observer looks at an object at distance p.

To further increase the apparent angular size of an object, a converging lens can be placed in front of the eye as in Figure 36.40b, with the object located at point O, immediately inside the focal point of the lens. At this location, the lens forms a virtual, upright, enlarged image. We define **angular magnification** m as the ratio of the angle subtended by an object with a lens in use (angle θ in Fig. 36.40b) to the angle subtended by the object placed at the near point with no lens in use (angle θ_0 in Fig. 36.40a):

$$m \equiv \frac{\theta}{\theta_0} \tag{36.22}$$

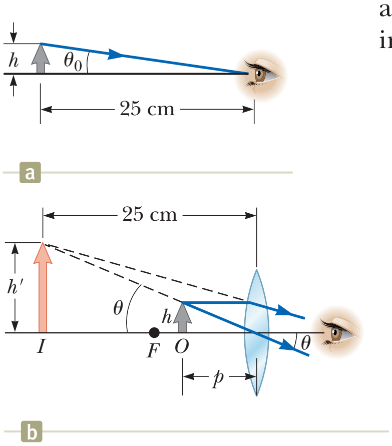


Figure 36.40 (a) An object placed at the near point of the eye (p = 25 cm) subtends an angle $\theta_0 \approx h/25$ cm at the eye. (b) An object placed near the focal point of a converging lens produces a magnified image that subtends an angle $\theta \approx h'/25$ cm at the eye.

The angular magnification is a maximum when the image is at the near point of the eye, that is, when $q = -25$ cm. The object distance corresponding to this image distance can be calculated from the thin lens equation:

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{-25\text{ cm}} = \frac{1}{f} \quad\rightarrow\quad p = \frac{25f}{25+f}$$

where f is the focal length of the magnifier in centimeters. If we make the small-angle approximations

$$\tan\theta_0 \approx \theta_0 \approx \frac{h}{25} \quad\text{and}\quad \tan\theta \approx \theta \approx \frac{h}{p} \tag{36.23}$$

Equation 36.22 becomes

$$m_{\max} = \frac{\theta}{\theta_0} = \frac{h/p}{h/25} = \frac{25}{p} = \frac{25}{25f/(25+f)}$$

$$m_{\max} = 1 + \frac{25\text{ cm}}{f} \tag{36.24}$$

Although the eye can focus on an image formed anywhere between the near point and infinity, it is most relaxed when the image is at infinity. For the image formed by the magnifying lens to appear at infinity, the object has to be at the focal point of the lens. In this case, Equations 36.23 become

$$\theta_0 \approx \frac{h}{25} \quad\text{and}\quad \theta \approx \frac{h}{f}$$

and the magnification is

$$m_{\min} = \frac{\theta}{\theta_0} = \frac{25\text{ cm}}{f} \tag{36.25}$$

A simple magnifier, also called a magnifying glass, is used to view an enlarged image of a portion of a map.

With a single lens, it is possible to obtain angular magnifications up to about 4 without serious aberrations. Magnifications up to about 20 can be achieved by using one or two additional lenses to correct for aberrations.

Example 36.12 Magnification of a Lens

What is the maximum magnification that is possible with a lens having a focal length of 10 cm, and what is the magnification of this lens when the eye is relaxed?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 36.40b for the situation in which a magnifying glass forms an enlarged image of an object placed inside the focal point. The maximum magnification occurs when the image is located at the near point of the eye. When the eye is relaxed, the image is at infinity.

Categorize We determine results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate the maximum magnification from Equation 36.24:

$$m_{\max} = 1 + \frac{25 \text{ cm}}{f} = 1 + \frac{25 \text{ cm}}{10 \text{ cm}} = \boxed{3.5}$$

Evaluate the minimum magnification, when the eye is relaxed, from Equation 36.25:

$$m_{\min} = \frac{25 \text{ cm}}{f} = \frac{25 \text{ cm}}{10 \text{ cm}} = \boxed{2.5}$$

36.9 The Compound Microscope

A simple magnifier provides only limited assistance in inspecting minute details of an object. Greater magnification can be achieved by combining two lenses in a device called a **compound microscope** shown in Figure 36.41a. It consists of one lens, the *objective,* that has a very short focal length $f_o < 1$ cm and a second lens, the *eyepiece,* that has a focal length f_e of a few centimeters. The two lenses are separated by a distance L that is much greater than either f_o or f_e. The object, which is placed just outside the focal point of the objective, forms a real, inverted image at I_1, and this image is located at or close to the focal point of the eyepiece. The eyepiece, which serves as a simple magnifier, produces at I_2 a virtual, enlarged image of I_1. The lateral magnification M_1 of the first image is $-q_1/p_1$. Notice from Figure 36.41a that q_1 is approximately equal to L and that the object is very close

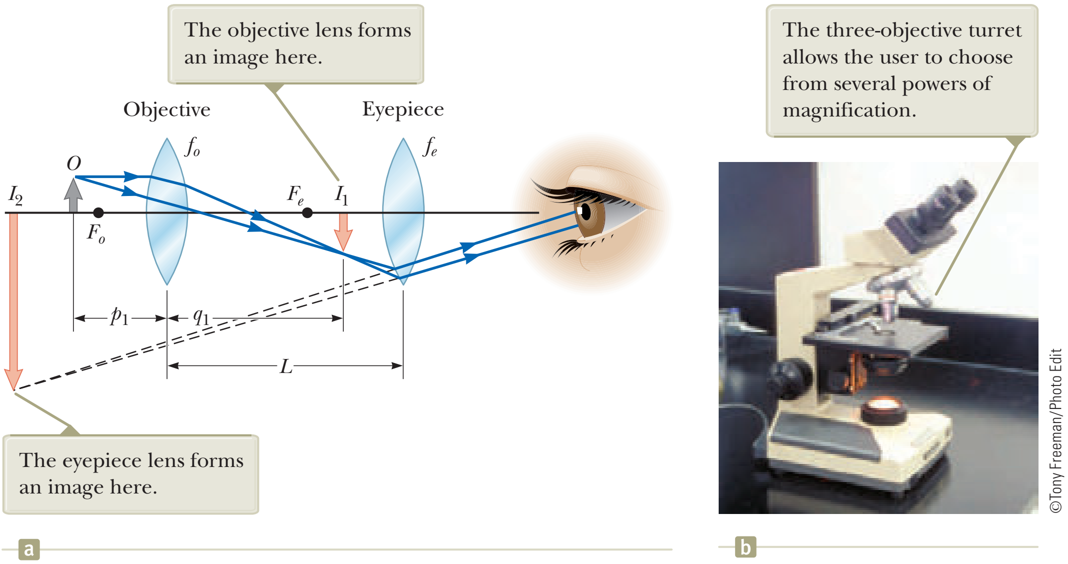


Figure 36.41 (a) Diagram of a compound microscope, which consists of an objective lens and an eyepiece lens. (b) A compound microscope.

to the focal point of the objective: $p_1 \approx f_o$. Therefore, the lateral magnification by the objective is

$$M_o \approx -\frac{L}{f_o}$$

The angular magnification by the eyepiece for an object (corresponding to the image at I_1) placed at the focal point of the eyepiece is, from Equation 36.25,

$$m_e = \frac{25\text{ cm}}{f_e}$$

The overall magnification of the image formed by a compound microscope is defined as the product of the lateral and angular magnifications:

$$M = M_o m_e = -\frac{L}{f_o}\left(\frac{25\text{ cm}}{f_e}\right) \tag{36.26}$$

The negative sign indicates that the image is inverted.

The microscope has extended human vision to the point where we can view previously unknown details of incredibly small objects. The capabilities of this instrument have steadily increased with improved techniques for precision grinding of lenses. A question often asked about microscopes is, "If one were extremely patient and careful, would it be possible to construct a microscope that would enable the human eye to see an atom?" The answer is no, as long as light is used to illuminate the object. For an object under an optical microscope (one that uses visible light) to be seen, the object must be at least as large as a wavelength of light. Because the diameter of any atom is many times smaller than the wavelengths of visible light, the mysteries of the atom must be probed using other types of "microscopes."

36.10 The Telescope

Two fundamentally different types of **telescopes** exist; both are designed to aid in viewing distant objects such as the planets in our solar system. The first type, the **refracting telescope,** uses a combination of lenses to form an image.

Like the compound microscope, the refracting telescope shown in Figure 36.42a has an objective and an eyepiece. The two lenses are arranged so that the objective

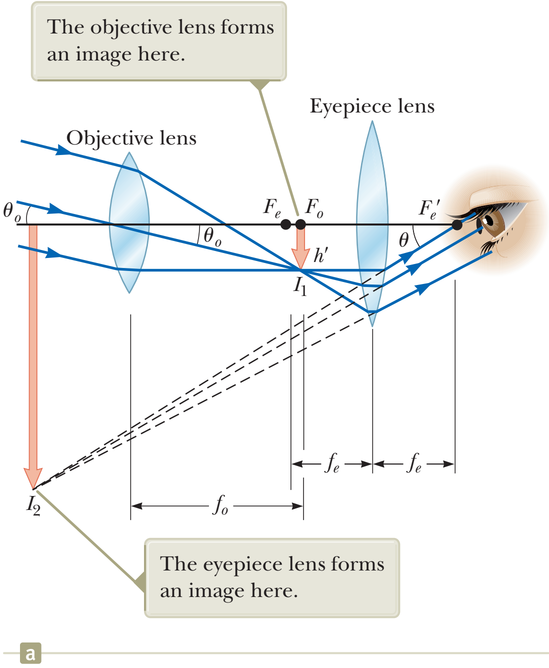


Figure 36.42 (a) Lens arrangement in a refracting telescope, with the object at infinity. (b) A refracting telescope.

forms a real, inverted image of a distant object very near the focal point of the eyepiece. Because the object is essentially at infinity, this point at which I_1 forms is the focal point of the objective. The eyepiece then forms, at I_2, an enlarged, inverted image of the image at I_1. To provide the largest possible magnification, the image distance for the eyepiece is infinite. Therefore, the image due to the objective lens, which acts as the object for the eyepiece lens, must be located at the focal point of the eyepiece. Hence, the two lenses are separated by a distance $f_o + f_e$, which corresponds to the length of the telescope tube.

The angular magnification of the telescope is given by θ/θ_o, where θ_o is the angle subtended by the object at the objective and θ is the angle subtended by the final image at the viewer's eye. Consider Figure 36.42a, in which the object is a very great distance to the left of the figure. The angle θ_o (to the *left* of the objective) subtended by the object at the objective is the same as the angle (to the *right* of the objective) subtended by the first image at the objective. Therefore,

$$\tan\theta_o \approx \theta_o \approx -\frac{h'}{f_o}$$

where the negative sign indicates that the image is inverted.

The angle θ subtended by the final image at the eye is the same as the angle that a ray coming from the tip of I_1 and traveling parallel to the principal axis makes with the principal axis after it passes through the lens. Therefore,

$$\tan\theta \approx \theta \approx \frac{h'}{f_e}$$

We have not used a negative sign in this equation because the final image is not inverted; the object creating this final image I_2 is I_1, and both it and I_2 point in the same direction. Therefore, the angular magnification of the telescope can be expressed as

$$m = \frac{\theta}{\theta_o} = \frac{h'/f_e}{-h'/f_o} = -\frac{f_o}{f_e} \qquad \textbf{(36.27)}$$

This result shows that the angular magnification of a telescope equals the ratio of the objective focal length to the eyepiece focal length. The negative sign indicates that the image is inverted.

When you look through a telescope at such relatively nearby objects as the Moon and the planets, magnification is important. Individual stars in our galaxy, however, are so far away that they always appear as small points of light no matter how great the magnification. To gather as much light as possible, large research telescopes used to study very distant objects must have a large diameter. It is difficult and expensive to manufacture large lenses for refracting telescopes. Another difficulty with large lenses is that their weight leads to sagging, which is an additional source of aberration.

These problems associated with large lenses can be partially overcome by replacing the objective with a concave mirror, which results in the second type of telescope, the **reflecting telescope.** Because light is reflected from the mirror and does not pass through a lens, the mirror can have rigid supports on the back side. Such supports eliminate the problem of sagging.

Figure 36.43a shows the design for a typical reflecting telescope. The incoming light rays are reflected by a parabolic mirror at the base. These reflected rays converge toward point A in the figure, where an image would be formed. Before this image is formed, however, a small, flat mirror M reflects the light toward an opening in the tube's side and it passes into an eyepiece. This particular design is said to have a Newtonian focus because Newton developed it. Figure 36.43b shows such a telescope. Notice that the light never passes through glass (except through the small eyepiece) in the reflecting telescope. As a result, problems associated with chromatic aberration are virtually eliminated. The reflecting telescope can be made even shorter by orienting the flat mirror so that it reflects the light back

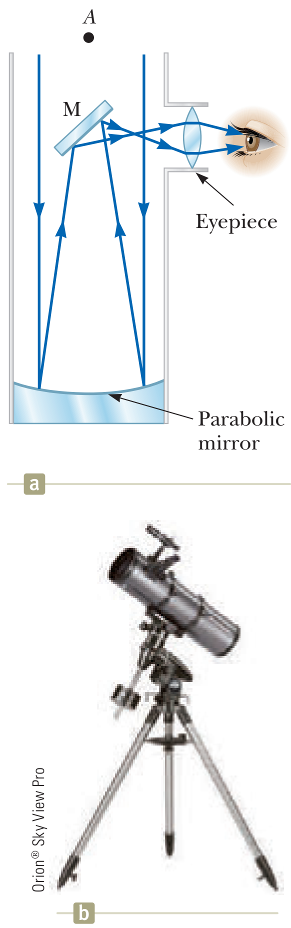
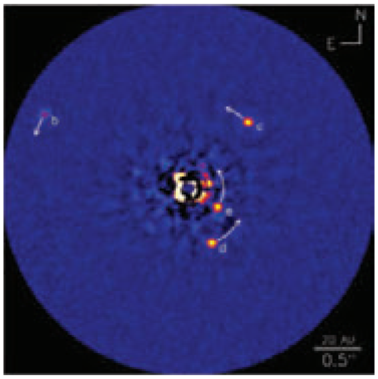


Figure 36.43 (a) A Newtonian-focus reflecting telescope. (b) A reflecting telescope. This type of telescope is shorter than that in Figure 36.42b.



National Research Council Canada, C. Marois & Keck Observatory

Figure 36.44 A direct optical image of a solar system around the star HR8799, developed at the Keck Observatory in Hawaii.

toward the objective mirror and the light enters an eyepiece in a hole in the middle of the mirror.

The largest reflecting telescopes in the world are at the Keck Observatory on Mauna Kea, Hawaii. The site includes two telescopes with diameters of 10 m, each containing 36 hexagonally shaped, computer-controlled mirrors that work together to form a large reflecting surface. In addition, the two telescopes can work together to provide a telescope with an effective diameter of 85 m. In contrast, the largest refracting telescope in the world, at the Yerkes Observatory in Williams Bay, Wisconsin, has a diameter of only 1 m.

Figure 36.44 shows a remarkable optical image from the Keck Observatory of a solar system around the star HR8799, located 129 light-years from the Earth. The planets labeled b, c, and d were seen in 2008 and the innermost planet, labeled e, was observed in December 2010. This photograph represents the first direct image of another solar system and was made possible by the adaptive optics technology used in the Keck Observatory.

Summary

Definitions

The **lateral magnification** M of the image due to a mirror or lens is defined as the ratio of the image height h' to the object height h. It is equal to the negative of the ratio of the image distance q to the object distance p:

$$M \equiv \frac{\text{image height}}{\text{object height}} = \frac{h'}{h} = -\frac{q}{p} \qquad \textbf{(36.1, 36.2, 36.17)}$$

The **angular magnification** m is the ratio of the angle subtended by an object with a lens in use (angle θ in Fig. 36.40b) to the angle subtended by the object placed at the near point with no lens in use (angle θ_0 in Fig. 36.40a):

$$m \equiv \frac{\theta}{\theta_0} \qquad \textbf{(36.22)}$$

The ratio of the focal length of a camera lens to the diameter of the lens is called the ***f*-number** of the lens:

$$f\text{-number} \equiv \frac{f}{D} \qquad \textbf{(36.20)}$$

Concepts and Principles

In the paraxial ray approximation, the object distance p and image distance q for a spherical mirror of radius R are related by the **mirror equation:**

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{2}{R} = \frac{1}{f} \qquad \textbf{(36.4, 36.6)}$$

where $f = R/2$ is the **focal length** of the mirror.

An image can be formed by refraction from a spherical surface of radius R. The object and image distances for refraction from such a surface are related by

$$\frac{n_1}{p} + \frac{n_2}{q} = \frac{n_2 - n_1}{R} \qquad \textbf{(36.8)}$$

where the light is incident in the medium for which the index of refraction is n_1 and is refracted in the medium for which the index of refraction is n_2.

The inverse of the **focal length** f of a thin lens surrounded by air is given by the **lens-makers' equation:**

$$\frac{1}{f} = (n-1)\left(\frac{1}{R_1} - \frac{1}{R_2}\right) \qquad \textbf{(36.15)}$$

Converging lenses have positive focal lengths, and **diverging lenses** have negative focal lengths.

For a thin lens, and in the paraxial ray approximation, the object and image distances are related by the **thin lens equation:**

$$\frac{1}{p} + \frac{1}{q} = \frac{1}{f} \qquad \textbf{(36.16)}$$

The maximum magnification of a single lens of focal length f used as a simple magnifier is

$$m_{\max} = 1 + \frac{25 \text{ cm}}{f} \tag{36.24}$$

The overall magnification of the image formed by a compound microscope is

$$M = -\frac{L}{f_o}\left(\frac{25 \text{ cm}}{f_e}\right) \tag{36.26}$$

where f_o and f_e are the focal lengths of the objective and eyepiece lenses, respectively, and L is the distance between the lenses.

The angular magnification of a refracting telescope can be expressed as

$$m = -\frac{f_o}{f_e} \tag{36.27}$$

where f_o and f_e are the focal lengths of the objective and eyepiece lenses, respectively.

The angular magnification of a reflecting telescope is given by the same expression where f_o is the focal length of the objective mirror.

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. The faceplate of a diving mask can be ground into a corrective lens for a diver who does not have perfect vision. The proper design allows the person to see clearly both under water and in the air. Normal eyeglasses have lenses with both the front and back surfaces curved. Should the lenses of a diving mask be curved (a) on the outer surface only, (b) on the inner surface only, or (c) on both surfaces?

2. Lulu looks at her image in a makeup mirror. It is enlarged when she is close to the mirror. As she backs away, the image becomes larger, then impossible to identify when she is 30.0 cm from the mirror, then upside down when she is beyond 30.0 cm, and finally small, clear, and upside down when she is much farther from the mirror. **(i)** Is the mirror (a) convex, (b) plane, or (c) concave? **(ii)** Is the magnitude of its focal length (a) 0, (b) 15.0 cm, (c) 30.0 cm, (d) 60.0 cm, or (e) ∞?

3. An object is located 50.0 cm from a converging lens having a focal length of 15.0 cm. Which of the following statements is true regarding the image formed by the lens? (a) It is virtual, upright, and larger than the object. (b) It is real, inverted, and smaller than the object. (c) It is virtual, inverted, and smaller than the object. (d) It is real, inverted, and larger than the object. (e) It is real, upright, and larger than the object.

4. **(i)** When an image of an object is formed by a converging lens, which of the following statements is *always* true? More than one statement may be correct. (a) The image is virtual. (b) The image is real. (c) The image is upright. (d) The image is inverted. (e) None of those statements is always true. **(ii)** When the image of an object is formed by a diverging lens, which of the statements is *always* true?

5. A converging lens in a vertical plane receives light from an object and forms an inverted image on a screen. An opaque card is then placed next to the lens, covering only the upper half of the lens. What happens to the image on the screen? (a) The upper half of the image disappears. (b) The lower half of the image disappears. (c) The entire image disappears. (d) The entire image is still visible, but is dimmer. (e) No change in the image occurs.

6. If Josh's face is 30.0 cm in front of a concave shaving mirror creating an upright image 1.50 times as large as the object, what is the mirror's focal length? (a) 12.0 cm (b) 20.0 cm (c) 70.0 cm (d) 90.0 cm (e) none of those answers

7. Two thin lenses of focal lengths $f_1 = 15.0$ and $f_2 = 10.0$ cm, respectively, are separated by 35.0 cm along a common axis. The f_1 lens is located to the left of the f_2 lens. An object is now placed 50.0 cm to the left of the f_1 lens, and a final image due to light passing though both lenses forms. By what factor is the final image different in size from the object? (a) 0.600 (b) 1.20 (c) 2.40 (d) 3.60 (e) none of those answers

8. If you increase the aperture diameter of a camera by a factor of 3, how is the intensity of the light striking the film affected? (a) It increases by factor of 3. (b) It decreases by a factor of 3. (c) It increases by a factor of 9. (d) It decreases by a factor of 9. (e) Increasing the aperture size doesn't affect the intensity.

9. A person spearfishing from a boat sees a stationary fish a few meters away in a direction about 30° below the horizontal. To spear the fish, and assuming the spear does not change direction when it enters the water, should the person (a) aim above where he sees the fish, (b) aim below the fish, or (c) aim precisely at the fish?

10. Model each of the following devices in use as consisting of a single converging lens. Rank the cases according to the ratio of the distance from the object to the lens to the focal length of the lens, from the largest ratio to the smallest. (a) a film-based movie projector showing a movie (b) a magnifying glass being used to examine a postage stamp (c) an astronomical refracting telescope being used to make a sharp image of stars on an electronic detector (d) a searchlight being used to produce a beam of parallel rays from a point source (e) a camera lens being used to photograph a soccer game

11. A converging lens made of crown glass has a focal length of 15.0 cm when used in air. If the lens is immersed in water, what is its focal length? (a) negative

(b) less than 15.0 cm (c) equal to 15.0 cm (d) greater than 15.0 cm (e) none of those answers

12. A converging lens of focal length 8 cm forms a sharp image of an object on a screen. What is the smallest possible distance between the object and the screen? (a) 0 (b) 4 cm (c) 8 cm (d) 16 cm (e) 32 cm

13. **(i)** When an image of an object is formed by a plane mirror, which of the following statements is *always* true? More than one statement may be correct. (a) The image is virtual. (b) The image is real. (c) The image is upright. (d) The image is inverted. (e) None of those statements is always true. **(ii)** When the image of an object is formed by a concave mirror, which of the preceding statements are *always* true? **(iii)** When the image of an object is formed by a convex mirror, which of the preceding statements are *always* true?

14. An object, represented by a gray arrow, is placed in front of a plane mirror. Which of the diagrams in Figure OQ36.14 correctly describes the image, represented by the pink arrow?

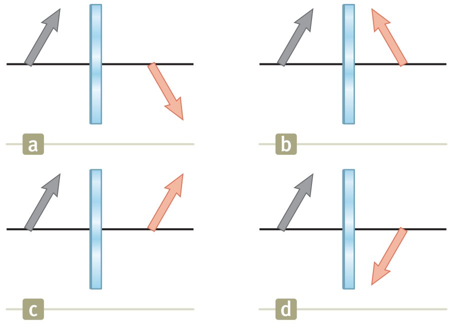


Figure OQ36.14

Conceptual Questions

[1.] denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. A converging lens of short focal length can take light diverging from a small source and refract it into a beam of parallel rays. A Fresnel lens as shown in Figure 36.27 is used in a lighthouse for this purpose. A concave mirror can take light diverging from a small source and reflect it into a beam of parallel rays. (a) Is it possible to make a Fresnel mirror? (b) Is this idea original, or has it already been done?

2. Explain this statement: "The focal point of a lens is the location of the image of a point object at infinity." (a) Discuss the notion of infinity in real terms as it applies to object distances. (b) Based on this statement, can you think of a simple method for determining the focal length of a converging lens?

3. Why do some emergency vehicles have the symbol ƎƆИA⅃UᙠMA written on the front?

4. Explain why a mirror cannot give rise to chromatic aberration.

5. (a) Can a converging lens be made to diverge light if it is placed into a liquid? (b) **What If?** What about a converging mirror?

[6.] Explain why a fish in a spherical goldfish bowl appears larger than it really is.

7. In Figure 36.26a, assume the gray object arrow is replaced by one that is much taller than the lens. (a) How many rays from the top of the object will strike the lens? (b) How many principal rays can be drawn in a ray diagram?

[8.] Lenses used in eyeglasses, whether converging or diverging, are always designed so that the middle of the lens curves away from the eye like the center lenses of Figures 36.25a and 36.25b. Why?

9. Suppose you want to use a converging lens to project the image of two trees onto a screen. As shown in Figure CQ36.9, one tree is a distance x from the lens and the other is at $2x$. You adjust the screen so that the near tree is in focus. If you now want the far tree to be in focus, do you move the screen toward or away from the lens?

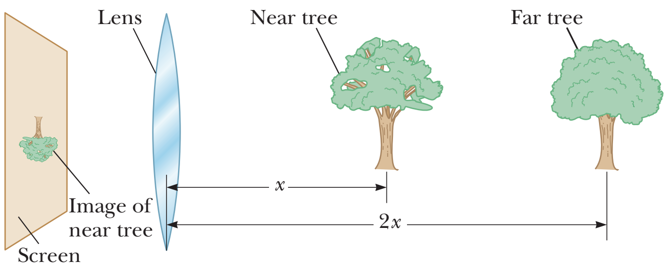


Figure CQ36.9

10. Consider a spherical concave mirror with the object located to the left of the mirror beyond the focal point. Using ray diagrams, show that the image moves to the left as the object approaches the focal point.

11. In Figures CQ36.11a and CQ36.11b, which glasses correct nearsightedness and which correct farsightedness?

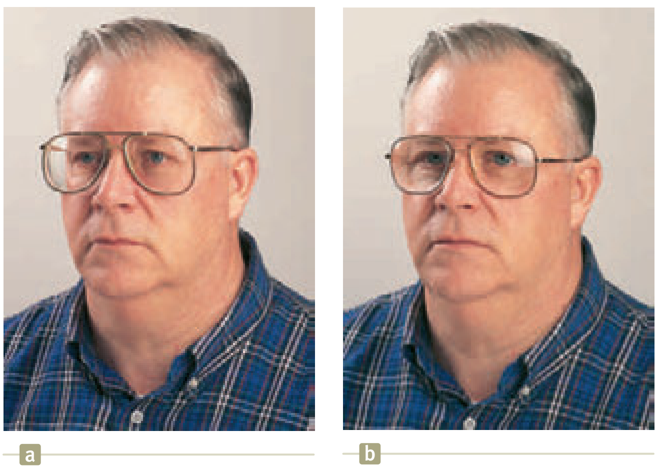


Figure CQ36.11 Conceptual Questions 11 and 12.

12. Bethany tries on either her hyperopic grandfather's or her myopic brother's glasses and complains, "Everything looks blurry." Why do the eyes of a person wearing glasses not look blurry? (See Fig. CQ36.11.)

the floor, and the ceiling, everything, albeit distorted, is compressed into that one small circle. Your own head, or more exactly the point between your eyes, is the absolute center. No matter how you turn or twist yourself, you can't get out of that central point. You are immovably the focus, the unshakable core, of your world." Comment on the accuracy of Escher's description.

13. In a Jules Verne novel, a piece of ice is shaped to form a magnifying lens, focusing sunlight to start a fire. Is that possible?

14. A solar furnace can be constructed by using a concave mirror to reflect and focus sunlight into a furnace enclosure. What factors in the design of the reflecting mirror would guarantee very high temperatures?

15. Figure CQ36.15 shows a lithograph by M. C. Escher titled *Hand with Reflection Sphere (Self-Portrait in Spherical Mirror)*. Escher said about the work: "The picture shows a spherical mirror, resting on a left hand. But as a print is the reverse of the original drawing on stone, it was my right hand that you see depicted. (Being left-handed, I needed my left hand to make the drawing.) Such a globe reflection collects almost one's whole surroundings in one disk-shaped image. The whole room, four walls, the floor, and the ceiling, everything, albeit distorted, is compressed into that one small circle. Your own head, or more exactly the point between your eyes, is the absolute center. No matter how you turn or twist yourself, you can't get out of that central point. You are immovably the focus, the unshakable core, of your world." Comment on the accuracy of Escher's description.

Figure CQ36.15

16. If a cylinder of solid glass or clear plastic is placed above the words LEAD OXIDE and viewed from the side as shown in Figure CQ36.16, the word LEAD appears inverted, but the word OXIDE does not. Explain.

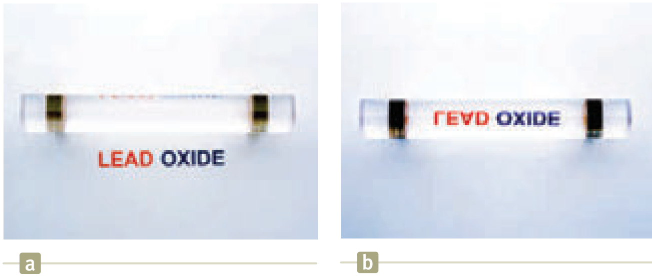


Figure CQ36.16

17. Do the equations $1/p + 1/q = 1/f$ and $M = -q/p$ apply to the image formed by a flat mirror? Explain your answer.

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 36.1 Images Formed by Flat Mirrors

1. AMT M W Determine the minimum height of a vertical flat mirror in which a person 178 cm tall can see his or her full image. *Suggestion:* Drawing a ray diagram would be helpful.

2. AMT In a choir practice room, two parallel walls are 5.30 m apart. The singers stand against the north wall. The organist faces the south wall, sitting 0.800 m away from it. To enable her to see the choir, a flat mirror 0.600 m wide is mounted on the south wall, straight in front of her. What width of the north wall can the organist see? *Suggestion:* Draw a top-view diagram to justify your answer.

3. (a) Does your bathroom mirror show you older or younger than you actually are? (b) Compute an order-of-magnitude estimate for the age difference based on data you specify.

4. A person walks into a room that has two flat mirrors on opposite walls. The mirrors produce multiple images of the person. Consider *only* the images formed in the mirror on the left. When the person is 2.00 m from the mirror on the left wall and 4.00 m from the mirror on the right wall, find the distance from the person to the first three images seen in the mirror on the left wall.

5. A periscope (Fig. P36.5) is useful for viewing objects that cannot be seen directly. It can be used in submarines and when watching golf matches or parades from behind a crowd of people. Suppose the object is a distance p_1 from the upper mirror and the centers

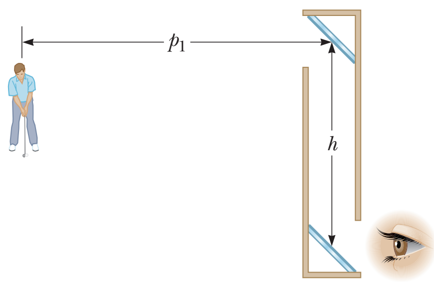


Figure P36.5

of the two flat mirrors are separated by a distance h. (a) What is the distance of the final image from the lower mirror? (b) Is the final image real or virtual? (c) Is it upright or inverted? (d) What is its magnification? (e) Does it appear to be left–right reversed?

6. Two flat mirrors have their reflecting surfaces facing each other, with the edge of one mirror in contact with an edge of the other, so that the angle between the mirrors is α. When an object is placed between the mirrors, a number of images are formed. In general, if the angle α is such that $n\alpha = 360°$, where n is an integer, the number of images formed is $n - 1$. Graphically, find all the image positions for the case $n = 6$ when a point object is between the mirrors (but not on the angle bisector).

7. Two plane mirrors stand facing each other, 3.00 m apart, and a woman stands between them. The woman looks at one of the mirrors from a distance of 1.00 m and holds her left arm out to the side of her body with the palm of her hand facing the closer mirror. (a) What is the apparent position of the closest image of her left hand, measured perpendicularly from the surface of the mirror in front of her? (b) Does it show the palm of her hand or the back of her hand? (c) What is the position of the next closest image? (d) Does it show the palm of her hand or the back of her hand? (e) What is the position of the third closest image? (f) Does it show the palm of her hand or the back of her hand? (g) Which of the images are real and which are virtual?

Section 36.2 Images Formed by Spherical Mirrors

8. An object is placed 50.0 cm from a concave spherical mirror with focal length of magnitude 20.0 cm. (a) Find the location of the image. (b) What is the magnification of the image? (c) Is the image real or virtual? (d) Is the image upright or inverted?

9. M A concave spherical mirror has a radius of curvature of magnitude 20.0 cm. (a) Find the location of the image for object distances of **(i)** 40.0 cm, **(ii)** 20.0 cm, and **(iii)** 10.0 cm. For each case, state whether the image is (b) real or virtual and (c) upright or inverted. (d) Find the magnification in each case.

10. An object is placed 20.0 cm from a concave spherical mirror having a focal length of magnitude 40.0 cm. (a) Use graph paper to construct an accurate ray diagram for this situation. (b) From your ray diagram, determine the location of the image. (c) What is the magnification of the image? (d) Check your answers to parts (b) and (c) using the mirror equation.

11. M A convex spherical mirror has a radius of curvature of magnitude 40.0 cm. Determine the position of the virtual image and the magnification for object distances of (a) 30.0 cm and (b) 60.0 cm. (c) Are the images in parts (a) and (b) upright or inverted?

12. M W At an intersection of hospital hallways, a convex spherical mirror is mounted high on a wall to help people avoid collisions. The magnitude of the mirror's radius of curvature is 0.550 m. (a) Locate the image of a patient 10.0 m from the mirror. (b) Indicate whether the image is upright or inverted. (c) Determine the magnification of the image.

13. An object of height 2.00 cm is placed 30.0 cm from a convex spherical mirror of focal length of magnitude 10.0 cm. (a) Find the location of the image. (b) Indicate whether the image is upright or inverted. (c) Determine the height of the image.

14. A dentist uses a spherical mirror to examine a tooth. The tooth is 1.00 cm in front of the mirror, and the image is formed 10.0 cm behind the mirror. Determine (a) the mirror's radius of curvature and (b) the magnification of the image.

15. A large hall in a museum has a niche in one wall. On the floor plan, the niche appears as a semicircular indentation of radius 2.50 m. A tourist stands on the centerline of the niche, 2.00 m out from its deepest point, and whispers "Hello." Where is the sound concentrated after reflection from the niche?

16. *Why is the following situation impossible?* At a blind corner in an outdoor shopping mall, a convex mirror is mounted so pedestrians can see around the corner before arriving there and bumping into someone traveling in the perpendicular direction. The installers of the mirror failed to take into account the position of the Sun, and the mirror focuses the Sun's rays on a nearby bush and sets it on fire.

17. To fit a contact lens to a patient's eye, a *keratometer* can be used to measure the curvature of the eye's front surface, the cornea. This instrument places an illuminated object of known size at a known distance p from the cornea. The cornea reflects some light from the object, forming an image of the object. The magnification M of the image is measured by using a small viewing telescope that allows comparison of the image formed by the cornea with a second calibrated image projected into the field of view by a prism arrangement. Determine the radius of curvature of the cornea for the case $p = 30.0$ cm and $M = 0.013\,0$.

18. A certain Christmas tree ornament is a silver sphere having a diameter of 8.50 cm. (a) If the size of an image created by reflection in the ornament is three-fourths the reflected object's actual size, determine the object's location. (b) Use a principal-ray diagram to determine whether the image is upright or inverted.

19. W (a) A concave spherical mirror forms an inverted image 4.00 times larger than the object. Assuming the distance between object and image is 0.600 m, find the focal length of the mirror. (b) **What If?** Suppose the mirror is convex. The distance between the image and the object is the same as in part (a), but the image is 0.500 the size of the object. Determine the focal length of the mirror.

20. (a) A concave spherical mirror forms an inverted image different in size from the object by a factor $a > 1$. The distance between object and image is d. Find the focal length of the mirror. (b) **What If?** Suppose the mirror is convex, an upright image is formed, and $a < 1$. Determine the focal length of the mirror.

21. An object 10.0 cm tall is placed at the zero mark of a **W** meterstick. A spherical mirror located at some point on the meterstick creates an image of the object that is upright, 4.00 cm tall, and located at the 42.0-cm mark of the meterstick. (a) Is the mirror convex or concave? (b) Where is the mirror? (c) What is the mirror's focal length?

22. A concave spherical mirror has a radius of curvature of magnitude 24.0 cm. (a) Determine the object position for which the resulting image is upright and larger than the object by a factor of 3.00. (b) Draw a ray diagram to determine the position of the image. (c) Is the image real or virtual?

23. A dedicated sports car enthusiast polishes the inside **W** and outside surfaces of a hubcap that is a thin section of a sphere. When she looks into one side of the hubcap, she sees an image of her face 30.0 cm in back of the hubcap. She then flips the hubcap over and sees another image of her face 10.0 cm in back of the hubcap. (a) How far is her face from the hubcap? (b) What is the radius of curvature of the hubcap?

24. A convex spherical mirror has a focal length of magnitude 8.00 cm. (a) What is the location of an object for which the magnitude of the image distance is one-third the magnitude of the object distance? (b) Find the magnification of the image and (c) state whether it is upright or inverted.

25. **M** A spherical mirror is to be used to form an image 5.00 times the size of an object on a screen located 5.00 m from the object. (a) Is the mirror required concave or convex? (b) What is the required radius of curvature of the mirror? (c) Where should the mirror be positioned relative to the object?

26. **AMT** **Review.** A ball is dropped at $t = 0$ from rest 3.00 m directly above the vertex of a concave spherical mirror that has a radius of curvature of magnitude 1.00 m and lies in a horizontal plane. (a) Describe the motion of the ball's image in the mirror. (b) At what instant or instants do the ball and its image coincide?

27. You unconsciously estimate the distance to an object from the angle it subtends in your field of view. This angle θ in radians is related to the linear height of the object h and to the distance d by $\theta = h/d$. Assume you are driving a car and another car, 1.50 m high, is 24.0 m behind you. (a) Suppose your car has a flat passenger-side rearview mirror, 1.55 m from your eyes. How far from your eyes is the image of the car following you? (b) What angle does the image subtend in your field of view? (c) **What If?** Now suppose your car has a convex rearview mirror with a radius of curvature of magnitude 2.00 m (as suggested in Fig. 36.15). How far from your eyes is the image of the car behind you? (d) What angle does the image subtend at your eyes? (e) Based on its angular size, how far away does the following car appear to be?

28. **M** A man standing 1.52 m in front of a shaving mirror produces an inverted image 18.0 cm in front of it. How close to the mirror should he stand if he wants to form an upright image of his chin that is twice the chin's actual size?

Section 36.3 Images Formed by Refraction

29. One end of a long glass rod ($n = 1.50$) is formed into a convex surface with a radius of curvature of magnitude 6.00 cm. An object is located in air along the axis of the rod. Find the image positions corresponding to object distances of (a) 20.0 cm, (b) 10.0 cm, and (c) 3.00 cm from the convex end of the rod.

30. A cubical block of ice 50.0 cm on a side is placed over a speck of dust on a level floor. Find the location of the image of the speck as viewed from above. The index of refraction of ice is 1.309.

31. The top of a swimming pool is at ground level. If the pool is 2.00 m deep, how far below ground level does the bottom of the pool appear to be located when (a) the pool is completely filled with water? (b) When it is filled halfway with water?

32. The magnification of the image formed by a refracting surface is given by

$$M = -\frac{n_1 q}{n_2 p}$$

where n_1, n_2, p, and q are defined as they are for Figure 36.17 and Equation 36.8. A paperweight is made of a solid glass hemisphere with index of refraction 1.50. The radius of the circular cross section is 4.00 cm. The hemisphere is placed on its flat surface, with the center directly over a 2.50-mm-long line drawn on a sheet of paper. What is the length of this line as seen by someone looking vertically down on the hemisphere?

33. A flint glass plate rests on the bottom of an aquarium tank. The plate is 8.00 cm thick (vertical dimension) and is covered with a layer of water 12.0 cm deep. Calculate the apparent thickness of the plate as viewed from straight above the water.

34. Figure P36.34 shows a curved surface separating a material with index of refraction n_1 from a material with index n_2. The surface forms an image I of object O. The ray shown in red passes through the surface along a radial line. Its angles of incidence and refraction are both zero, so its direction does not change at the surface. For the ray shown in blue, the direction changes according to Snell's law, $n_1 \sin\theta_1 = n_2 \sin\theta_2$. For paraxial rays, we assume θ_1 and θ_2 are small, so we may write $n_1 \tan\theta_1 = n_2 \tan\theta_2$. The magnification is defined as $M = h'/h$. Prove that the magnification is given by $M = -n_1 q/n_2 p$.

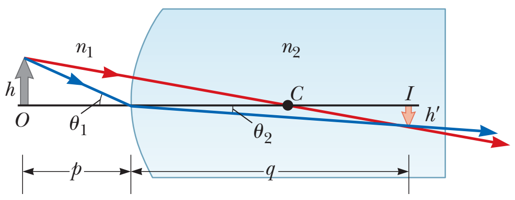


Figure P36.34

35. **M** A glass sphere ($n = 1.50$) with a radius of 15.0 cm has a tiny air bubble 5.00 cm above its center. The sphere is viewed looking down along the extended radius containing the bubble. What is the apparent depth of the bubble below the surface of the sphere?

36. As shown in Figure P36.36, Ben and Jacob check out an aquarium that has a curved front made of plastic with uniform thickness and a radius of curvature of magnitude $R = 2.25$ m. (a) Locate the images of fish that are located (i) 5.00 cm and (ii) 25.0 cm from the front wall of the aquarium. (b) Find the magnification of images (i) and (ii) from the previous part. (See Problem 32 to find an expression for the magnification of an image formed by a refracting surface.) (c) Explain why you don't need to know the refractive index of the plastic to solve this problem. (d) If this aquarium were very long from front to back, could the image of a fish ever be farther from the front surface than the fish itself is? (e) If not, explain why not. If so, give an example and find the magnification.

Chris Candela

Figure P36.36

37. W A goldfish is swimming at 2.00 cm/s toward the front wall of a rectangular aquarium. What is the apparent speed of the fish measured by an observer looking in from outside the front wall of the tank?

Section 36.4 Images Formed by Thin Lenses

38. A thin lens has a focal length of 25.0 cm. Locate and describe the image when the object is placed (a) 26.0 cm and (b) 24.0 cm in front of the lens.

39. An object located 32.0 cm in front of a lens forms an image on a screen 8.00 cm behind the lens. (a) Find the focal length of the lens. (b) Determine the magnification. (c) Is the lens converging or diverging?

40. M An object is located 20.0 cm to the left of a diverging lens having a focal length $f = -32.0$ cm. Determine (a) the location and (b) the magnification of the image. (c) Construct a ray diagram for this arrangement.

41. W The projection lens in a certain slide projector is a single thin lens. A slide 24.0 mm high is to be projected so that its image fills a screen 1.80 m high. The slide-to-screen distance is 3.00 m. (a) Determine the focal length of the projection lens. (b) How far from the slide should the lens of the projector be placed so as to form the image on the screen?

42. An object's distance from a converging lens is 5.00 times the focal length. (a) Determine the location of the image. Express the answer as a fraction of the focal length. (b) Find the magnification of the image and indicate whether it is (c) upright or inverted and (d) real or virtual.

43. W A contact lens is made of plastic with an index of refraction of 1.50. The lens has an outer radius of curvature of +2.00 cm and an inner radius of curvature of +2.50 cm. What is the focal length of the lens?

44. A converging lens has a focal length of 10.0 cm. Construct accurate ray diagrams for object distances of **(i)** 20.0 cm and **(ii)** 5.00 cm. (a) From your ray diagrams, determine the location of each image. (b) Is the image real or virtual? (c) Is the image upright or inverted? (d) What is the magnification of the image? (e) Compare your results with the values found algebraically. (f) Comment on difficulties in constructing the graph that could lead to differences between the graphical and algebraic answers.

45. A converging lens has a focal length of 10.0 cm. Locate the object if a real image is located at a distance from the lens of (a) 20.0 cm and (b) 50.0 cm. **What If?** Redo the calculations if the images are virtual and located at a distance from the lens of (c) 20.0 cm and (d) 50.0 cm.

46. A diverging lens has a focal length of magnitude 20.0 cm. (a) Locate the image for object distances of **(i)** 40.0 cm, **(ii)** 20.0 cm, and **(iii)** 10.0 cm. For each case, state whether the image is (b) real or virtual and (c) upright or inverted.(d) For each case, find the magnification.

47. The nickel's image in Figure P36.47 has twice the diameter of the nickel and is 2.84 cm from the lens. Determine the focal length of the lens.

Figure P36.47

48. Suppose an object has thickness dp so that it extends from object distance p to $p + dp$. (a) Prove that the thickness dq of its image is given by $(-q^2/p^2)dp$. (b) The longitudinal magnification of the object is $M_{\text{long}} = dq/dp$. How is the longitudinal magnification related to the lateral magnification M?

49. The left face of a biconvex lens has a radius of curvature of magnitude 12.0 cm, and the right face has a radius of curvature of magnitude 18.0 cm. The index of refraction of the glass is 1.44. (a) Calculate the focal length of the lens for light incident from the left. (b) **What If?** After the lens is turned around to interchange the radii of curvature of the two faces, calculate the focal length of the lens for light incident from the left.

50. In Figure P36.50, a thin converging lens of focal length 14.0 cm forms an image of the square $abcd$, which is $h_c = h_b = 10.0$ cm high and lies between distances of $p_d = 20.0$ cm and $p_a = 30.0$ cm from the lens. Let a', b', c', and d' represent the respective corners of the image. Let q_a represent the image distance for points a' and b', q_d represent the image distance for points c' and d',

h'_b represent the distance from point b' to the axis, and h'_c represent the height of c'. (a) Find q_a, q_d, h'_b, and h'_c. (b) Make a sketch of the image. (c) The area of the object is 100 cm^2. By carrying out the following steps, you will evaluate the area of the image. Let q represent the image distance of any point between a' and d', for which the object distance is p. Let h' represent the distance from the axis to the point at the edge of the image between b' and c' at image distance q. Demonstrate that

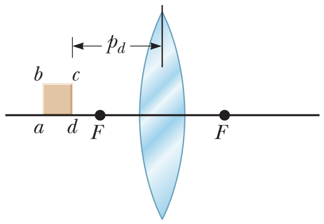


Figure P36.50

$$|h'| = 10.0q\left(\frac{1}{14.0} - \frac{1}{q}\right)$$

where h' and q are in centimeters. (d) Explain why the geometric area of the image is given by

$$\int_{q_a}^{q_d} |h'|\, dq$$

(e) Carry out the integration to find the area of the image.

51. W An antelope is at a distance of 20.0 m from a converging lens of focal length 30.0 cm. The lens forms an image of the animal. (a) If the antelope runs away from the lens at a speed of 5.00 m/s, how fast does the image move? (b) Does the image move toward or away from the lens?

52. *Why is the following situation impossible?* An illuminated object is placed a distance d = 2.00 m from a screen. By placing a converging lens of focal length f = 60.0 cm at two locations between the object and the screen, a sharp, real image of the object can be formed on the screen. In one location of the lens, the image is larger than the object, and in the other, the image is smaller.

53. M A 1.00-cm-high object is placed 4.00 cm to the left of a converging lens of focal length 8.00 cm. A diverging lens of focal length −16.00 cm is 6.00 cm to the right of the converging lens. Find the position and height of the final image. Is the image inverted or upright? Real or virtual?

Section 36.5 Lens Aberrations

54. The magnitudes of the radii of curvature are 32.5 cm and 42.5 cm for the two faces of a biconcave lens. The glass has index of refraction 1.53 for violet light and 1.51 for red light. For a very distant object, locate (a) the image formed by violet light and (b) the image formed by red light.

55. Two rays traveling parallel to the principal axis strike a large plano-convex lens having a refractive index of 1.60 (Fig. P36.55). If the convex face is spherical, a ray near the edge does not pass through the focal point (spherical aberration occurs). Assume this face has a radius of curvature of R = 20.0 cm and the two rays are at distances h_1 = 0.500 cm and h_2 = 12.0 cm from the principal axis. Find the difference Δx in the positions where each crosses the principal axis.

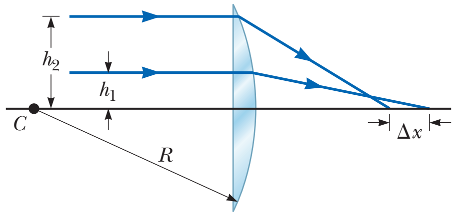


Figure P36.55

Section 36.6 The Camera

56. A camera is being used with a correct exposure at f/4 and a shutter speed of $\frac{1}{15}$ s. In addition to the f-numbers listed in Section 36.6, this camera has f-numbers f/1, f/1.4, and f/2. To photograph a rapidly moving subject, the shutter speed is changed to $\frac{1}{125}$ s. Find the new f-number setting needed on this camera to maintain satisfactory exposure.

57. Figure 36.33 diagrams a cross section of a camera. It has a single lens of focal length 65.0 mm, which is to form an image on the CCD at the back of the camera. Suppose the position of the lens has been adjusted to focus the image of a distant object. How far and in what direction must the lens be moved to form a sharp image of an object that is 2.00 m away?

Section 36.7 The Eye

58. A nearsighted person cannot see objects clearly beyond 25.0 cm (her far point). If she has no astigmatism and contact lenses are prescribed for her, what (a) power and (b) type of lens are required to correct her vision?

59. The near point of a person's eye is 60.0 cm. To see objects clearly at a distance of 25.0 cm, what should be the (a) focal length and (b) power of the appropriate corrective lens? (Neglect the distance from the lens to the eye.)

60. A person sees clearly wearing eyeglasses that have a power of −4.00 diopters when the lenses are 2.00 cm in front of the eyes. (a) What is the focal length of the lens? (b) Is the person nearsighted or farsighted? (c) If the person wants to switch to contact lenses placed directly on the eyes, what lens power should be prescribed?

61. M W The accommodation limits for a nearsighted person's eyes are 18.0 cm and 80.0 cm. When he wears his glasses, he can see faraway objects clearly. At what minimum distance is he able to see objects clearly?

62. A certain child's near point is 10.0 cm; her far point (with eyes relaxed) is 125 cm. Each eye lens is 2.00 cm from the retina. (a) Between what limits, measured in diopters, does the power of this lens–cornea combination vary? (b) Calculate the power of the eyeglass lens the child should use for relaxed distance vision. Is the lens converging or diverging?

63. A person is to be fitted with bifocals. She can see clearly when the object is between 30 cm and 1.5 m from the eye. (a) The upper portions of the bifocals (Fig. P36.63) should be designed to enable her to see distant objects clearly. What power should they have? (b) The lower portions of the bifocals should enable her to see objects located 25 cm in front of the eye. What power should they have?

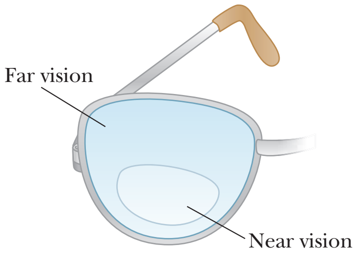


Figure P36.63

64. A simple model of the human eye ignores its lens entirely. Most of what the eye does to light happens at the outer surface of the transparent cornea. Assume that this surface has a radius of curvature of 6.00 mm and that the eyeball contains just one fluid with a refractive index of 1.40. Prove that a very distant object will be imaged on the retina, 21.0 mm behind the cornea. Describe the image.

65. A patient has a near point of 45.0 cm and far point of 85.0 cm. (a) Can a single pair of glasses correct the patient's vision? Explain the patient's options. (b) Calculate the power lens needed to correct the near point so that the patient can see objects 25.0 cm away. Neglect the eye–lens distance. (c) Calculate the power lens needed to correct the patient's far point, again neglecting the eye–lens distance.

Section 36.8 The Simple Magnifier

66. A lens that has a focal length of 5.00 cm is used as a magnifying glass. (a) To obtain maximum magnification and an image that can be seen clearly by a normal eye, where should the object be placed? (b) What is the magnification?

Section 36.9 The Compound Microscope

67. The distance between the eyepiece and the objective lens in a certain compound microscope is 23.0 cm. The focal length of the eyepiece is 2.50 cm and that of the objective is 0.400 cm. What is the overall magnification of the microscope?

Section 36.10 The Telescope

68. M The refracting telescope at the Yerkes Observatory has a 1.00-m diameter objective lens of focal length 20.0 m. Assume it is used with an eyepiece of focal length 2.50 cm. (a) Determine the magnification of Mars as seen through this telescope. (b) Are the Martian polar caps right side up or upside down?

69. A certain telescope has an objective mirror with an aperture diameter of 200 mm and a focal length of 2 000 mm. It captures the image of a nebula on photographic film at its prime focus with an exposure time of 1.50 min. To produce the same light energy per unit area on the film, what is the required exposure time to photograph the same nebula with a smaller telescope that has an objective with a 60.0-mm diameter and a 900-mm focal length?

70. Astronomers often take photographs with the objective lens or mirror of a telescope alone, without an eyepiece. (a) Show that the image size h' for such a telescope is given by $h' = fh/(f - p)$, where f is the objective focal length, h is the object size, and p is the object distance. (b) **What If?** Simplify the expression in part (a) for the case in which the object distance is much greater than objective focal length. (c) The "wingspan" of the International Space Station is 108.6 m, the overall width of its solar panel configuration. When the station is orbiting at an altitude of 407 km, find the width of the image formed by a telescope objective of focal length 4.00 m.

Additional Problems

71. The lens-makers' equation applies to a lens immersed in a liquid if n in the equation is replaced by n_2/n_1. Here n_2 refers to the index of refraction of the lens material and n_1 is that of the medium surrounding the lens. (a) A certain lens has focal length 79.0 cm in air and index of refraction 1.55. Find its focal length in water. (b) A certain mirror has focal length 79.0 cm in air. Find its focal length in water.

72. A real object is located at the zero end of a meterstick. A large concave spherical mirror at the 100-cm end of the meterstick forms an image of the object at the 70.0-cm position. A small convex spherical mirror placed at the 20.0-cm position forms a final image at the 10.0-cm point. What is the radius of curvature of the convex mirror?

73. The distance between an object and its upright image is 20.0 cm. If the magnification is 0.500, what is the focal length of the lens being used to form the image?

74. The distance between an object and its upright image is d. If the magnification is M, what is the focal length of the lens being used to form the image?

75. M A person decides to use an old pair of eyeglasses to make some optical instruments. He knows that the near point in his left eye is 50.0 cm and the near point in his right eye is 100 cm. (a) What is the maximum angular magnification he can produce in a telescope? (b) If he places the lenses 10.0 cm apart, what is the maximum overall magnification he can produce in a microscope? *Hint:* Go back to basics and use the thin lens equation to solve part (b).

76. You are designing an endoscope for use inside an air-filled body cavity. A lens at the end of the endoscope will form an image covering the end of a bundle of optical fibers. This image will then be carried by the optical fibers to an eyepiece lens at the outside end of the fiberscope. The radius of the bundle is 1.00 mm. The scene within the body that is to appear within the image fills a circle of radius 6.00 cm. The lens will be located 5.00 cm from the tissues you wish to observe. (a) How far should the lens be located from the end of an optical fiber bundle? (b) What is the focal length of the lens required?

77. The lens and mirror in Figure P36.77 are separated by d = 1.00 m and have focal lengths of +80.0 cm and

−50.0 cm, respectively. An object is placed p = 1.00 m to the left of the lens as shown. (a) Locate the final image, formed by light that has gone through the lens twice. (b) Determine the overall magnification of the image and (c) state whether the image is upright or inverted.

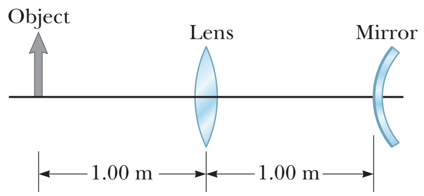


Figure P36.77

78. Two converging lenses having focal lengths of f_1 = 10.0 cm and f_2 = 20.0 cm are placed a distance d = 50.0 cm apart as shown in Figure P36.78. The image due to light passing through both lenses is to be located between the lenses at the position x = 31.0 cm indicated. (a) At what value of p should the object be positioned to the left of the first lens? (b) What is the magnification of the final image? (c) Is the final image upright or inverted? (d) Is the final image real or virtual?

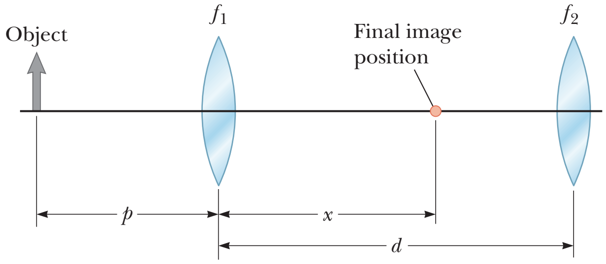


Figure P36.78

79. Figure P36.79 shows a piece of glass with index of refraction n = 1.50 surrounded by air. The ends are hemispheres with radii R_1 = 2.00 cm and R_2 = 4.00 cm, and the centers of the hemispherical ends are separated by a distance of d = 8.00 cm. A point object is in air, a distance p = 1.00 cm from the left end of the glass. (a) Locate the image of the object due to refraction at the two spherical surfaces. (b) Is the final image real or virtual?

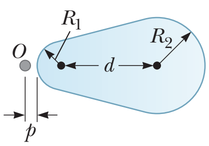


Figure P36.79

80. An object is originally at the x_i = 0 cm position of a meterstick located on the x axis. A converging lens of focal length 26.0 cm is fixed at the position 32.0 cm. Then we gradually slide the object to the position x_f = 12.0 cm. (a) Find the location x' of the object's image as a function of the object position x. (b) Describe the pattern of the image's motion with reference to a graph or a table of values. (c) As the object moves 12.0 cm to the right, how far does the image move? (d) In what direction or directions?

$\boxed{81.}$ The object in Figure P36.81 is midway between the lens and the mirror, which are separated by a distance d = 25.0 cm. The magnitude of the mirror's radius of curvature is 20.0 cm, and the lens has a focal length of −16.7 cm. (a) Considering only the light that leaves the object and travels first toward the mirror, locate the final image formed by this system. (b) Is this image real or virtual? (c) Is it upright or inverted? (d) What is the overall magnification?

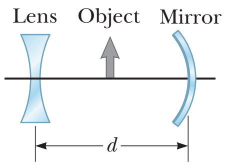


Figure P36.81

82. In many applications, it is necessary to expand or decrease the diameter of a beam of parallel rays of light, which can be accomplished by using a converging lens and a diverging lens in combination. Suppose you have a converging lens of focal length 21.0 cm and a diverging lens of focal length −12.0 cm. (a) How can you arrange these lenses to increase the diameter of a beam of parallel rays? (b) By what factor will the diameter increase?

83. **Review.** A spherical lightbulb of diameter 3.20 cm radiates light equally in all directions, with power 4.50 W. (a) Find the light intensity at the surface of the lightbulb. (b) Find the light intensity 7.20 m away from the center of the lightbulb. (c) At this 7.20-m distance, a lens is set up with its axis pointing toward the lightbulb. The lens has a circular face with a diameter of 15.0 cm and has a focal length of 35.0 cm. Find the diameter of the lightbulb's image. (d) Find the light intensity at the image.

$\boxed{84.}$ A parallel beam of light enters a glass hemisphere perpendicular to the flat face as shown in Figure P36.84. The magnitude of the radius of the hemisphere is R = 6.00 cm, and its index of refraction is n = 1.560. Assuming paraxial rays, determine the point at which the beam is focused.

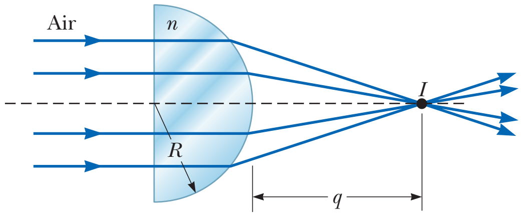


Figure P36.84

85. Two lenses made of kinds of glass having different indices of refraction n_1 and n_2 are cemented together to form an *optical doublet.* Optical doublets are often used to correct chromatic aberrations in optical devices. The first lens of a certain doublet has index of refraction n_1, one flat side, and one concave side with a radius of curvature of magnitude R. The second lens has index of refraction n_2 and two convex sides with radii of curvature also of magnitude R. Show that the doublet can be modeled as a single thin lens with a focal length described by

$$\frac{1}{f} = \frac{2n_2 - n_1 - 1}{R}$$

86. *Why is the following situation impossible?* Consider the lens–mirror combination shown in Figure P36.86 on page 1132. The lens has a focal length of f_L = 0.200 m, and the mirror has a focal length of $f_M = 0.500$ m. The lens and mirror are placed a distance $d = 1.30$ m apart, and an object is placed at $p = 0.300$ m from the lens. By moving a screen to various positions to the left of the lens, a student finds two different positions of the screen that produce a sharp image of the object. One of these positions corresponds to light leaving the object and traveling to the left through the lens. The other position corresponds to light traveling to the right from the object, reflecting from the mirror and then passing through the lens.

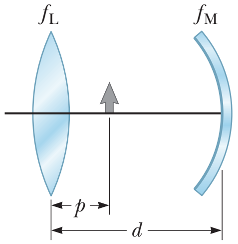


Figure P36.86 Problems 86 and 97.

87. An object is placed 12.0 cm to the left of a diverging lens of focal length −6.00 cm. A converging lens of focal length 12.0 cm is placed a distance d to the right of the diverging lens. Find the distance d so that the final image is infinitely far away to the right.

88. An object is placed a distance p to the left of a diverging lens of focal length f_1. A converging lens of focal length f_2 is placed a distance d to the right of the diverging lens. Find the distance d so that the final image is infinitely far away to the right.

89. An observer to the right of the mirror–lens combination shown in Figure P36.89 (not to scale) sees two real images that are the same size and in the same location. One image is upright, and the other is inverted. Both images are 1.50 times larger than the object. The lens has a focal length of 10.0 cm. The lens and mirror are separated by 40.0 cm. Determine the focal length of the mirror.

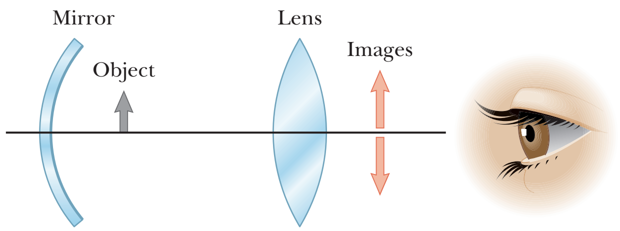


Figure P36.89

90. In a darkened room, a burning candle is placed 1.50 m from a white wall. A lens is placed between the candle and the wall at a location that causes a larger, inverted image to form on the wall. When the lens is in this position, the object distance is p_1. When the lens is moved 90.0 cm toward the wall, another image of the candle is formed on the wall. From this information, we wish to find p_1 and the focal length of the lens. (a) From the lens equation for the first position of the lens, write an equation relating the focal length f of the lens to the object distance p_1, with no other variables in the equation. (b) From the lens equation for the second position of the lens, write another equation relating the focal length f of the lens to the object distance p_1. (c) Solve the equations in parts (a) and (b) simultaneously to find p_1. (d) Use the value in part (c) to find the focal length f of the lens.

91. The disk of the Sun subtends an angle of 0.533° at the Earth. What are (a) the position and (b) the diameter of the solar image formed by a concave spherical mirror with a radius of curvature of magnitude 3.00 m?

92. An object 2.00 cm high is placed 40.0 cm to the left of a converging lens having a focal length of 30.0 cm. A diverging lens with a focal length of −20.0 cm is placed 110 cm to the right of the converging lens. Determine (a) the position and (b) the magnification of the final image. (c) Is the image upright or inverted? (d) **What If?** Repeat parts (a) through (c) for the case in which the second lens is a converging lens having a focal length of 20.0 cm.

Challenge Problems

93. Assume the intensity of sunlight is 1.00 kW/m^2 at a particular location. A highly reflecting concave mirror is to be pointed toward the Sun to produce a power of at least 350 W at the image point. (a) Assuming the disk of the Sun subtends an angle of 0.533° at the Earth, find the required radius R_a of the circular face area of the mirror. (b) Now suppose the light intensity is to be at least 120 kW/m^2 at the image. Find the required relationship between R_a and the radius of curvature R of the mirror.

94. A *zoom lens* system is a combination of lenses that produces a variable magnification of a fixed object as it maintains a fixed image position. The magnification is varied by moving one or more lenses along the axis. Multiple lenses are used in practice, but the effect of zooming in on an object can be demonstrated with a simple two-lens system. An object, two converging lenses, and a screen are mounted on an optical bench. Lens 1, which is to the right of the object, has a focal length of $f_1 = 5.00$ cm, and lens 2, which is to the right of the first lens, has a focal length of $f_2 = 10.0$ cm. The screen is to the right of lens 2. Initially, an object is situated at a distance of 7.50 cm to the left of lens 1, and the image formed on the screen has a magnification of +1.00. (a) Find the distance between the object and the screen. (b) Both lenses are now moved along their common axis while the object and the screen maintain fixed positions until the image formed on the screen has a magnification of +3.00. Find the displacement of each lens from its initial position in part (a). (c) Can the lenses be displaced in more than one way?

95. Figure P36.95 shows a thin converging lens for which the radii of curvature of its surfaces have magnitudes of 9.00 cm and 11.0 cm. The lens is in front of a concave spherical mirror with the radius of curvature $R = 8.00$ cm. Assume the focal points F_1 and F_2 of the lens are 5.00 cm from the center of the lens. (a) Determine the index of refraction of the lens material. The lens and mirror are 20.0 cm apart, and an object is placed

8.00 cm to the left of the lens. Determine (b) the posi tion of the final image and (c) its magnification as seen by the eye in the figure. (d) Is the final image inverted or upright? Explain.

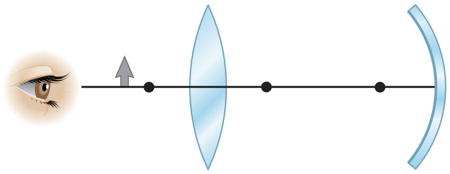


Figure P36.95

96. A floating strawberry illusion is achieved with two par abolic mirrors, each having a focal length 7.50 cm, facing each other as shown in Figure P36.96. If a strawberry is placed on the lower mirror, an image of the strawberry is formed at the small opening at the center of the top mirror, 7.50 cm above the lowest point of the bottom mirror. The position of the eye in Figure P36.96a corresponds to the view of the apparatus in Figure P36.96b. Consider the light path marked Notice that this light path is blocked by the upper mir ror so that the strawberry itself is not directly observ able. The light path marked corresponds to the eye viewing the image of the strawberry that is formed at the opening at the top of the apparatus. (a) Show that the final image is formed at that location and describe its characteristics. (b) A very startling effect is to shine a flashlight beam on this image. Even at a glancing angle, the incoming light beam is seemingly reflected from the image! Explain.

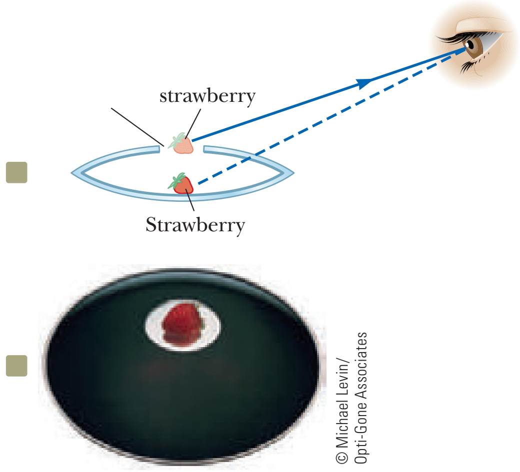


Figure P36.96

97. Consider the lens–mirror arrangement shown in Fig ure P36.86. There are two final image positions to the left of the lens of focal length . One image position is due to light traveling from the object to the left and passing through the lens. The other image position is due to light traveling to the right from the object, reflecting from the mirror of focal length and then passing through the lens. For a given object position between the lens and the mirror and measured with respect to the lens, there are two separation distances between the lens and mirror that will cause the two images described above to be at the same location. Find both positions.

CHAPTER

37

Wave Optics

The colors in many of a hummingbird's feathers are not due to pigment. The *iridescence* that makes the brilliant colors that often appear on the bird's throat and belly is due to an interference effect caused by structures in the feathers. The colors will vary with the viewing angle. *(Dec Hogan/Shutterstock.com)*

In Chapter 36, we studied light rays passing through a lens or reflecting from a mirror to describe the formation of images. This discussion completed our study of *ray optics.* In this chapter and in Chapter 38, we are concerned with *wave optics,* sometimes called *physical optics,* the study of interference, diffraction, and polarization of light. These phenomena cannot be adequately explained with the ray optics used in Chapters 35 and 36. We now learn how treating light as waves rather than as rays leads to a satisfying description of such phenomena.

37.1 Young's Double-Slit Experiment

In Chapter 18, we studied the waves in interference model and found that the superposition of two mechanical waves can be constructive or destructive. In constructive interference, the amplitude of the resultant wave is greater than that of either individual wave, whereas in destructive interference, the resultant amplitude is less than that of the larger wave. Light waves also interfere with one another. Fundamentally, all interference associated with light waves arises when the electromagnetic fields that constitute the individual waves combine.

Interference in light waves from two sources was first demonstrated by Thomas Young in 1801. A schematic diagram of the apparatus Young used is shown in Figure 37.1a. Plane light waves arrive at a barrier that contains two slits S_1 and S_2. The light from S_1 and S_2 produces on a viewing screen a visible pattern of bright and dark parallel bands called **fringes** (Fig. 37.1b). When the light from S_1 and that from S_2 both arrive at a point on the screen such that constructive interference occurs at

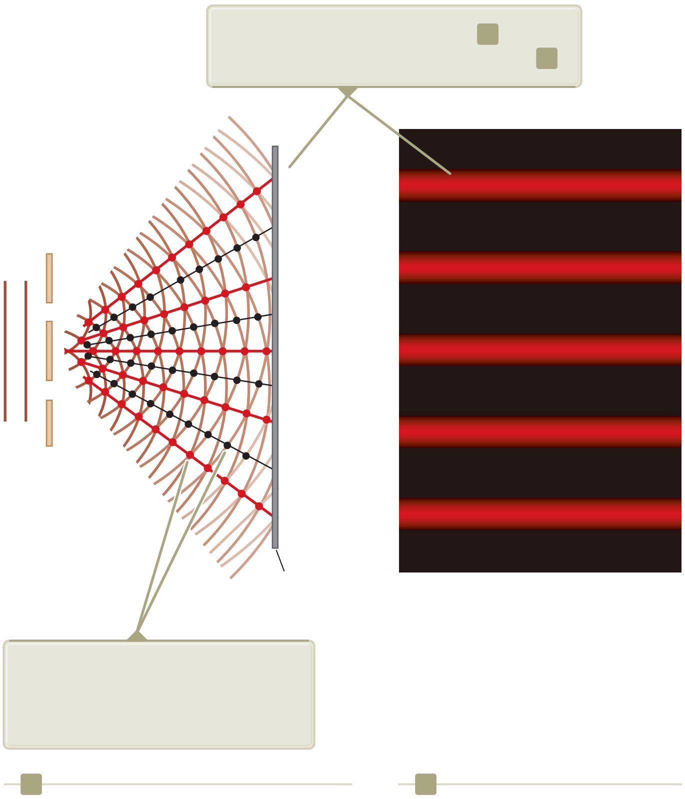


Figure 37.1 (a) Schematic dia gram of Young's double-slit experi ment. Slits S and S behave as coherent sources of light waves that produce an interference pattern on the viewing screen (drawing not to scale). (b) A simulation of an enlargement of the center of a fringe pattern formed on the view ing screen.

that location, a bright fringe appears. When the light from the two slits combines destructively at any location on the screen, a dark fringe results.

Figure 37.2 is a photograph looking down on an interference pattern produced on the surface of a water tank by two vibrating sources. The linear regions of con structive interference, such as at , and destructive interference, such as at , radi ating from the area between the sources are analogous to the red and black lines in Figure 37.1a.

Figure 37.3 on page 1136 shows some of the ways in which two waves can com bine at the screen. In Figure 37.3a, the two waves, which leave the two slits in phase, strike the screen at the central point Because both waves travel the same distance, they arrive at in phase. As a result, constructive interference occurs at this location and a bright fringe is observed. In Figure 37.3b, the two waves also start in phase, but here the lower wave has to travel one wavelength farther than the upper wave to reach point Because the lower wave falls behind

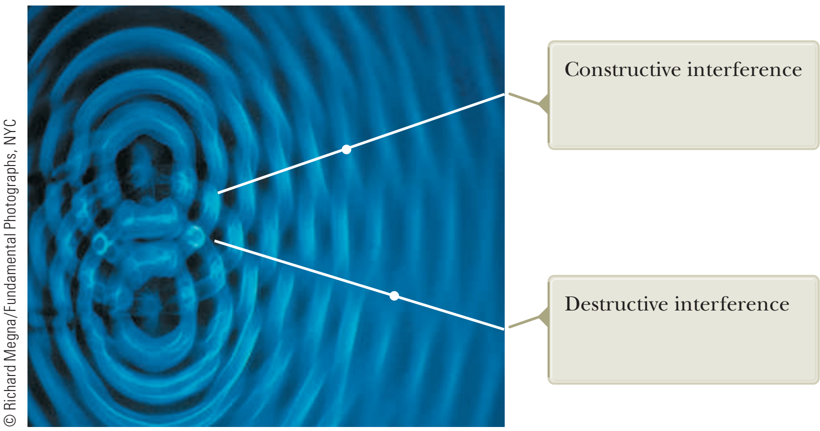


Figure 37.2 An interference pattern involving water waves is produced by two vibrating sources at the water's surface.

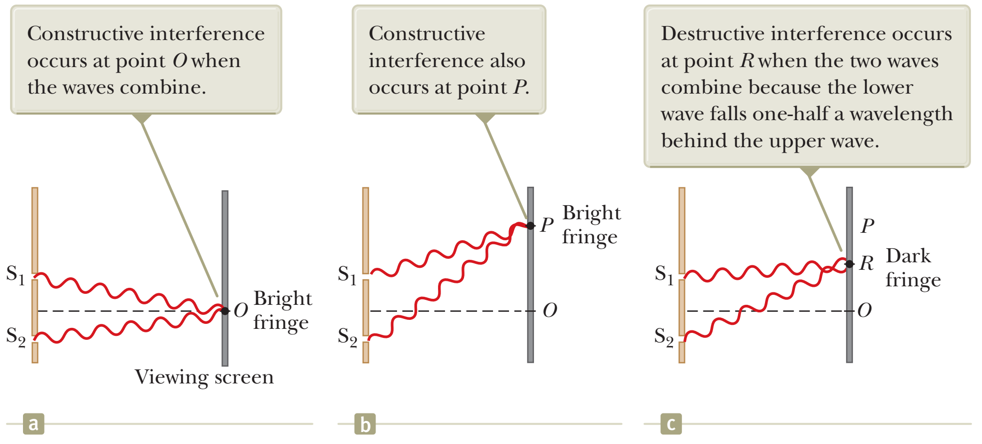


Figure 37.3 Waves leave the slits and combine at various points on the viewing screen. (All figures not to scale.)

the upper one by exactly one wavelength, they still arrive in phase at P and a second bright fringe appears at this location. At point R in Figure 37.3c, however, between points O and P, the lower wave has fallen half a wavelength behind the upper wave and a crest of the upper wave overlaps a trough of the lower wave, giving rise to destructive interference at point R. A dark fringe is therefore observed at this location.

If two lightbulbs are placed side by side so that light from both bulbs combines, no interference effects are observed because the light waves from one bulb are emitted independently of those from the other bulb. The emissions from the two lightbulbs do not maintain a constant phase relationship with each other over time. Light waves from an ordinary source such as a lightbulb undergo random phase changes in time intervals of less than a nanosecond. Therefore, the conditions for constructive interference, destructive interference, or some intermediate state are maintained only for such short time intervals. Because the eye cannot follow such rapid changes, no interference effects are observed. Such light sources are said to be **incoherent.**

To observe interference of waves from two sources, the following conditions must be met:

Conditions for interference ▶

- The sources must be **coherent;** that is, they must maintain a constant phase with respect to each other.
- The sources should be **monochromatic;** that is, they should be of a single wavelength.

As an example, single-frequency sound waves emitted by two side-by-side loudspeakers driven by a single amplifier can interfere with each other because the two speakers are coherent. In other words, they respond to the amplifier in the same way at the same time.

A common method for producing two coherent light sources is to use a monochromatic source to illuminate a barrier containing two small openings, usually in the shape of slits, as in the case of Young's experiment illustrated in Figure 37.1. The light emerging from the two slits is coherent because a single source produces the original light beam and the two slits serve only to separate the original beam into two parts (which, after all, is what is done to the sound signal from two side-by-side loudspeakers). Any random change in the light emitted by the source occurs in both beams at the same time. As a result, interference effects can be observed when the light from the two slits arrives at a viewing screen.

If the light traveled only in its original direction after passing through the slits as shown in Figure 37.4a, the waves would not overlap and no interference pattern would be seen. Instead, as we have discussed in our treatment of Huygens's principle (Section 35.6), the waves spread out from the slits as shown in Figure 37.4b. In other words, the light deviates from a straight-line path and enters the region that

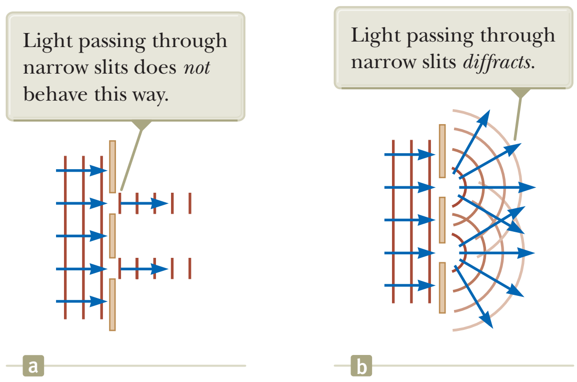


Figure 37.4 (a) If light waves did not spread out after passing through the slits, no interference would occur. (b) The light waves from the two slits overlap as they spread out, filling what we expect to be shadowed regions with light and producing interference fringes on a screen placed to the right of the slits.

would otherwise be shadowed. As noted in Section 35.3, this divergence of light from its initial line of travel is called **diffraction.**

37.2 Analysis Model: Waves in Interference

We discussed the superposition principle for waves on strings in Section 18.1, leading to a one-dimensional version of the waves in interference analysis model. In Example 18.1 on page 537, we briefly discussed a two-dimensional interference phenomenon for sound from two loudspeakers. In walking from point O to point P in Figure 18.5, the listener experienced a maximum in sound intensity at O and a minimum at P. This experience is exactly analogous to an observer looking at point O in Figure 37.3 and seeing a bright fringe and then sweeping his eyes upward to point R, where there is a minimum in light intensity.

Let's look in more detail at the two-dimensional nature of Young's experiment with the help of Figure 37.5. The viewing screen is located a perpendicular distance L from the barrier containing two slits, S_1 and S_2 (Fig. 37.5a). These slits are separated by a distance d, and the source is monochromatic. To reach any arbitrary point P in the upper half of the screen, a wave from the lower slit must travel farther than a wave from the upper slit. The extra distance traveled from the lower slit is the **path difference** δ (Greek letter delta). If we assume the rays labeled r_1 and r_2 are parallel (Fig. 37.5b), which is approximately true if L is much greater than d, then δ is given by

$$\delta = r_2 - r_1 = d \sin \theta \qquad \textbf{(37.1)}$$

The value of δ determines whether the two waves are in phase when they arrive at point P. If δ is either zero or some integer multiple of the wavelength, the two waves

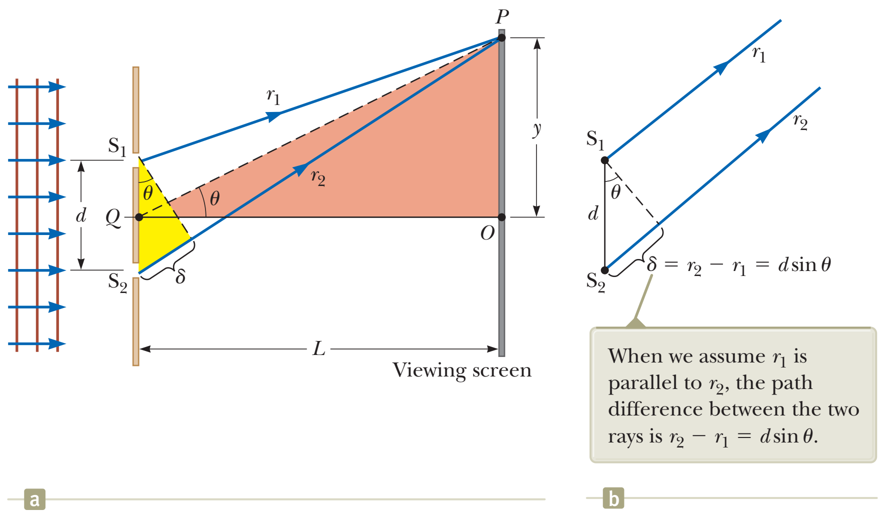


Figure 37.5 (a) Geometric construction for describing Young's double-slit experiment (not to scale). (b) The slits are represented as sources, and the outgoing light rays are assumed to be parallel as they travel to P. To achieve that in practice, it is essential that $L >> d$.

are in phase at point P and constructive interference results. Therefore, the condition for bright fringes, or **constructive interference,** at point P is

Condition for constructive interference

$$d \sin \theta_{\text{bright}} = m\lambda \qquad m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots \tag{37.2}$$

The number m is called the **order number.** For constructive interference, the order number is the same as the number of wavelengths that represents the path difference between the waves from the two slits. The central bright fringe at $\theta_{\text{bright}} = 0$ is called the *zeroth-order maximum*. The first maximum on either side, where $m = \pm 1$, is called the *first-order maximum,* and so forth.

When δ is an odd multiple of $\lambda/2$, the two waves arriving at point P are 180° out of phase and give rise to destructive interference. Therefore, the condition for dark fringes, or **destructive interference,** at point P is

Condition for destructive interference

$$d \sin \theta_{\text{dark}} = (m + \tfrac{1}{2})\lambda \qquad m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots \tag{37.3}$$

These equations provide the *angular* positions of the fringes. It is also useful to obtain expressions for the *linear* positions measured along the screen from O to P. From the triangle OPQ in Figure 37.5a, we see that

$$\tan \theta = \frac{y}{L} \tag{37.4}$$

Using this result, the linear positions of bright and dark fringes are given by

$$y_{\text{bright}} = L \tan \theta_{\text{bright}} \tag{37.5}$$

$$y_{\text{dark}} = L \tan \theta_{\text{dark}} \tag{37.6}$$

where θ_{bright} and θ_{dark} are given by Equations 37.2 and 37.3.

When the angles to the fringes are small, the positions of the fringes are linear near the center of the pattern. That can be verified by noting that for small angles, $\tan \theta \approx \sin \theta$, so Equation 37.5 gives the positions of the bright fringes as $y_{\text{bright}} = L \sin \theta_{\text{bright}}$. Incorporating Equation 37.2 gives

$$y_{\text{bright}} = L\frac{m\lambda}{d} \quad \text{(small angles)} \tag{37.7}$$

This result shows that y_{bright} is linear in the order number m, so the fringes are equally spaced for small angles. Similarly, for dark fringes,

$$y_{\text{dark}} = L\frac{(m + \frac{1}{2})\lambda}{d} \quad \text{(small angles)} \tag{37.8}$$

As demonstrated in Example 37.1, Young's double-slit experiment provides a method for measuring the wavelength of light. In fact, Young used this technique to do precisely that. In addition, his experiment gave the wave model of light a great deal of credibility. It was inconceivable that particles of light coming through the slits could cancel one another in a way that would explain the dark fringes.

The principles discussed in this section are the basis of the **waves in interference** analysis model. This model was applied to mechanical waves in one dimension in Chapter 18. Here we see the details of applying this model in three dimensions to light.

Quick Quiz 37.1 Which of the following causes the fringes in a two-slit interference pattern to move farther apart? **(a)** decreasing the wavelength of the light **(b)** decreasing the screen distance L **(c)** decreasing the slit spacing d **(d)** immersing the entire apparatus in water

Analysis Model Waves in Interference

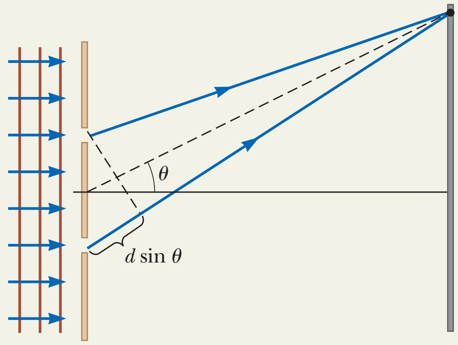
Imagine a broad beam of light that illuminates a double slit in an otherwise opaque material. An interference pattern of bright and dark fringes is created on a distant screen. The condition for bright fringes **(constructive interference)** is

$$d \sin \theta_{\text{bright}} = m\lambda \quad m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots \tag{37.2}$$

The condition for dark fringes **(destructive interference)** is

$$d \sin \theta_{\text{dark}} = \left(m + \tfrac{1}{2}\right)\lambda \quad m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots \tag{37.3}$$

The number m is called the **order number** of the fringe.



Examples:

- a thin film of oil on top of water shows swirls of color (Section 37.5)
- x-rays passing through a crystalline solid combine to form a Laue pattern (Chapter 38)
- a Michelson interferometer (Section 37.6) is used to search for the ether representing the medium through which light travels (Chapter 39)
- electrons exhibit interference just like light waves when they pass through a double slit (Chapter 40)

Example 37.1 Measuring the Wavelength of a Light Source AM

A viewing screen is separated from a double slit by 4.80 m. The distance between the two slits is 0.030 0 mm. Monochromatic light is directed toward the double slit and forms an interference pattern on the screen. The first dark fringe is 4.50 cm from the center line on the screen.

(A) Determine the wavelength of the light.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 37.5 to be sure you understand the phenomenon of interference of light waves. The distance of 4.50 cm is y in Figure 37.5. Because $L >> y$, the angles for the fringes are small.

Categorize This problem is a simple application of the *waves in interference* model.

Analyze

Solve Equation 37.8 for the wavelength and substitute numerical values, taking $m = 0$ for the first dark fringe:

$$\lambda = \frac{y_{\text{dark}} d}{\left(m + \frac{1}{2}\right)L} = \frac{(4.50 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m})(3.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m})}{\left(0 + \frac{1}{2}\right)(4.80\ \text{m})}$$

$$= 5.62 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m} = \boxed{562\ \text{nm}}$$

(B) Calculate the distance between adjacent bright fringes.

SOLUTION

Find the distance between adjacent bright fringes from Equation 37.7 and the results of part (A):

$$y_{m+1} - y_m = L\frac{(m+1)\lambda}{d} - L\frac{m\lambda}{d}$$

$$= L\frac{\lambda}{d} = 4.80\ \text{m}\left(\frac{5.62 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}}{3.00 \times 10^{-5}\ \text{m}}\right)$$

$$= 9.00 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m} = \boxed{9.00\ \text{cm}}$$

Finalize For practice, find the wavelength of the sound in Example 18.1 using the procedure in part (A) of this example.

Example 37.2 Separating Double-Slit Fringes of Two Wavelengths AM

A light source emits visible light of two wavelengths: $\lambda = 430$ nm and $\lambda' = 510$ nm. The source is used in a double-slit interference experiment in which $L = 1.50$ m and $d = 0.025\,0$ mm. Find the separation distance between the third-order bright fringes for the two wavelengths.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize In Figure 37.5a, imagine light of two wavelengths incident on the slits and forming two interference patterns on the screen. At some points, the fringes of the two colors might overlap, but at most points, they will not.

Categorize This problem is an application of the mathematical representation of the *waves in interference* analysis model.

Analyze

Use Equation 37.7 to find the fringe positions corresponding to these two wavelengths and subtract them:

$$\Delta y = y'_{\text{bright}} - y_{\text{bright}} = L\frac{m\lambda'}{d} - L\frac{m\lambda}{d} = \frac{Lm}{d}(\lambda' - \lambda)$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$\Delta y = \frac{(1.50 \text{ m})(3)}{0.025\,0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}}(510 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m} - 430 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m})$$

$$= 0.014\,4 \text{ m} = \boxed{1.44 \text{ cm}}$$

Finalize Let's explore further details of the interference pattern in the following **What If?**

WHAT IF? What if we examine the entire interference pattern due to the two wavelengths and look for overlapping fringes? Are there any locations on the screen where the bright fringes from the two wavelengths overlap exactly?

Answer Find such a location by setting the location of any bright fringe due to λ equal to one due to λ', using Equation 37.7:

$$L\frac{m\lambda}{d} = L\frac{m'\lambda'}{d} \rightarrow \frac{m'}{m} = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda'}$$

Substitute the wavelengths:

$$\frac{m'}{m} = \frac{430 \text{ nm}}{510 \text{ nm}} = \frac{43}{51}$$

Therefore, the 51st fringe of the 430-nm light overlaps with the 43rd fringe of the 510-nm light.

Use Equation 37.7 to find the value of y for these fringes:

$$y = (1.50 \text{ m})\left[\frac{51(430 \times 10^{-9} \text{ m})}{0.025\,0 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m}}\right] = 1.32 \text{ m}$$

This value of y is comparable to L, so the small-angle approximation used for Equation 37.7 is *not* valid. This conclusion suggests we should not expect Equation 37.7 to give us the correct result. If you use Equation 37.5, you can show that the bright fringes do indeed overlap when the same condition, $m'/m = \lambda/\lambda'$, is met (see Problem 48). Therefore, the 51st fringe of the 430-nm light does overlap with the 43rd fringe of the 510-nm light, but not at the location of 1.32 m. You are asked to find the correct location as part of Problem 48.

37.3 Intensity Distribution of the Double-Slit Interference Pattern

Notice that the edges of the bright fringes in Figure 37.1b are not sharp; rather, there is a gradual change from bright to dark. So far, we have discussed the locations of only the centers of the bright and dark fringes on a distant screen. Let's now direct our attention to the intensity of the light at other points between the positions of maximum constructive and destructive interference. In other words, we now calculate the distribution of light intensity associated with the double-slit interference pattern.

Again, suppose the two slits represent coherent sources of sinusoidal waves such that the two waves from the slits have the same angular frequency ω and are in phase. The total magnitude of the electric field at point P on the screen in Figure 37.5 is the superposition of the two waves. Assuming the two waves have the same amplitude E_0, we can write the magnitude of the electric field at point P due to each wave separately as

$$E_1 = E_0 \sin \omega t \quad \text{and} \quad E_2 = E_0 \sin (\omega t + \phi) \tag{37.9}$$

Although the waves are in phase at the slits, their phase difference ϕ at P depends on the path difference $\delta = r_2 - r_1 = d \sin \theta$. A path difference of λ (for constructive interference) corresponds to a phase difference of 2π rad. A path difference of δ is the same fraction of λ as the phase difference ϕ is of 2π. We can describe this fraction mathematically with the ratio

$$\frac{\delta}{\lambda} = \frac{\phi}{2\pi}$$

which gives

$$\phi = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} \delta = \frac{2\pi}{\lambda} d \sin \theta \tag{37.10}$$

◀ **Phase difference**

This equation shows how the phase difference ϕ depends on the angle θ in Figure 37.5.

Using the superposition principle and Equation 37.9, we obtain the following expression for the magnitude of the resultant electric field at point P:

$$E_P = E_1 + E_2 = E_0[\sin \omega t + \sin (\omega t + \phi)] \tag{37.11}$$

We can simplify this expression by using the trigonometric identity

$$\sin A + \sin B = 2 \sin \left(\frac{A + B}{2}\right) \cos \left(\frac{A - B}{2}\right)$$

Taking $A = \omega t + \phi$ and $B = \omega t$, Equation 37.11 becomes

$$E_P = 2E_0 \cos \left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) \sin \left(\omega t + \frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{37.12}$$

This result indicates that the electric field at point P has the same frequency ω as the light at the slits but that the amplitude of the field is multiplied by the factor $2 \cos (\phi/2)$. To check the consistency of this result, note that if $\phi = 0, 2\pi, 4\pi, \ldots$, the magnitude of the electric field at point P is $2E_0$, corresponding to the condition for maximum constructive interference. These values of ϕ are consistent with Equation 37.2 for constructive interference. Likewise, if $\phi = \pi, 3\pi, 5\pi, \ldots$, the magnitude of the electric field at point P is zero, which is consistent with Equation 37.3 for total destructive interference.

Finally, to obtain an expression for the light intensity at point P, recall from Section 34.4 that the intensity of a wave is proportional to the square of the resultant electric field magnitude at that point (Eq. 34.24). Using Equation 37.12, we can therefore express the light intensity at point P as

$$I \propto E_P^2 = 4E_0^2 \cos^2 \left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) \sin^2 \left(\omega t + \frac{\phi}{2}\right)$$

Most light-detecting instruments measure time-averaged light intensity, and the time-averaged value of $\sin^2 (\omega t + \phi/2)$ over one cycle is $\frac{1}{2}$. (See Fig. 33.5.) Therefore, we can write the average light intensity at point P as

$$I = I_{\max} \cos^2 \left(\frac{\phi}{2}\right) \tag{37.13}$$

where I_{max} is the maximum intensity on the screen and the expression represents the time average. Substituting the value for ϕ given by Equation 37.10 into this expression gives

$$I = I_{max} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi d \sin\theta}{\lambda}\right) \quad \textbf{(37.14)}$$

Alternatively, because $\sin\theta \approx y/L$ for small values of θ in Figure 37.5, we can write Equation 37.14 in the form

$$I = I_{max} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi d}{\lambda L} y\right) \quad \text{(small angles)} \quad \textbf{(37.15)}$$

Constructive interference, which produces light intensity maxima, occurs when the quantity $\pi dy/\lambda L$ is an integral multiple of π, corresponding to $y = (\lambda L/d)m$, where m is the order number. This result is consistent with Equation 37.7.

A plot of light intensity versus $d \sin\theta$ is given in Figure 37.6. The interference pattern consists of equally spaced fringes of equal intensity.

Figure 37.7 shows similar plots of light intensity versus $d \sin\theta$ for light passing through multiple slits. For more than two slits, we would add together more electric field magnitudes than the two in Equation 37.9. In this case, the pattern contains primary and secondary maxima. For three slits, notice that the primary maxima are nine times more intense than the secondary maxima as measured by the height of the curve because the intensity varies as E^2. For N slits, the intensity of the primary maxima is N^2 times greater than that for the secondary maxima. As the number of slits increases, the primary maxima increase in intensity and become narrower, while the secondary maxima decrease in intensity relative to the primary maxima. Figure 37.7 also shows that as the number of slits increases, the number of secondary maxima also increases. In fact, the number of secondary maxima is always $N - 2$, where N is the number of slits. In Section 38.4, we shall investigate the pattern for a very large number of slits in a device called a *diffraction grating*.

Quick Quiz 37.2 Using Figure 37.7 as a model, sketch the interference pattern from six slits.

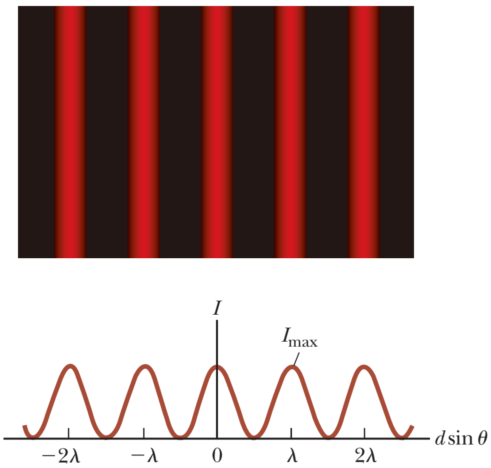


Figure 37.6 Light intensity versus $d \sin\theta$ for a double-slit interference pattern when the screen is far from the two slits ($L >> d$).

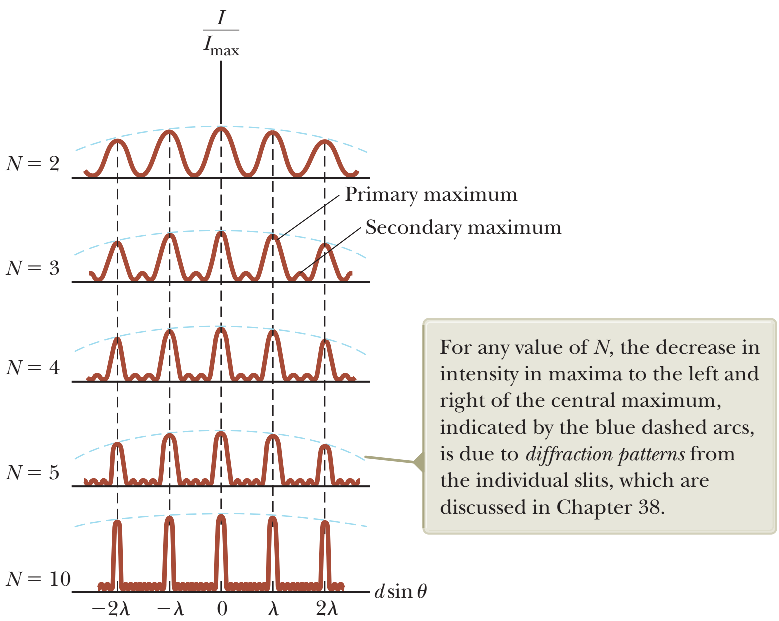


Figure 37.7 Multiple-slit interference patterns. As N, the number of slits, is increased, the primary maxima (the tallest peaks in each graph) become narrower but remain fixed in position and the number of secondary maxima increases.

37.4 Change of Phase Due to Reflection

Young's method for producing two coherent light sources involves illuminating a pair of slits with a single source. Another simple, yet ingenious, arrangement for producing an interference pattern with a single light source is known as *Lloyd's mirror*[1] (Fig. 37.8). A point light source S is placed close to a mirror, and a viewing screen is positioned some distance away and perpendicular to the mirror. Light waves can reach point P on the screen either directly from S to P or by the path involving reflection from the mirror. The reflected ray can be treated as a ray originating from a virtual source S′. As a result, we can think of this arrangement as a double-slit source where the distance d between sources S and S′ in Figure 37.8 is analogous to length d in Figure 37.5. Hence, at observation points far from the source ($L >> d$), we expect waves from S and S′ to form an interference pattern exactly like the one formed by two real coherent sources. An interference pattern is indeed observed. The positions of the dark and bright fringes, however, are reversed relative to the pattern created by two real coherent sources (Young's experiment). Such a reversal can only occur if the coherent sources S and S′ differ in phase by 180°.

To illustrate further, consider point P', the point where the mirror intersects the screen. This point is equidistant from sources S and S′. If path difference alone were responsible for the phase difference, we would see a bright fringe at P' (because the path difference is zero for this point), corresponding to the central bright fringe of the two-slit interference pattern. Instead, a dark fringe is observed at P'. We therefore conclude that a 180° phase change must be produced by reflection from the mirror. In general, an electromagnetic wave undergoes a phase change of 180° upon reflection from a medium that has a higher index of refraction than the one in which the wave is traveling.

It is useful to draw an analogy between reflected light waves and the reflections of a transverse pulse on a stretched string (Section 16.4). The reflected pulse on a string undergoes a phase change of 180° when reflected from the boundary of a denser string or a rigid support, but no phase change occurs when the pulse is reflected from the boundary of a less dense string or a freely-supported end. Similarly, an electromagnetic wave undergoes a 180° phase change when reflected from a boundary leading to an optically denser medium (defined as a medium with a higher index of refraction), but no phase change occurs when the wave is reflected from a boundary leading to a less dense medium. These rules, summarized in Figure 37.9, can be deduced from Maxwell's equations, but the treatment is beyond the scope of this text.

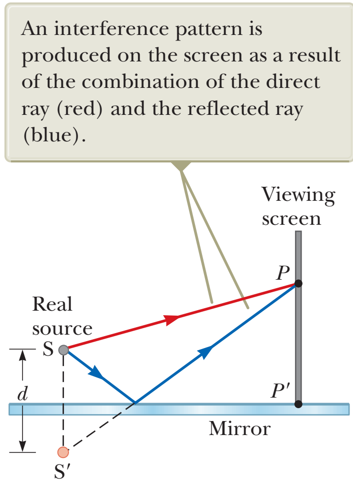


Figure 37.8 Lloyd's mirror. The reflected ray undergoes a phase change of 180°.

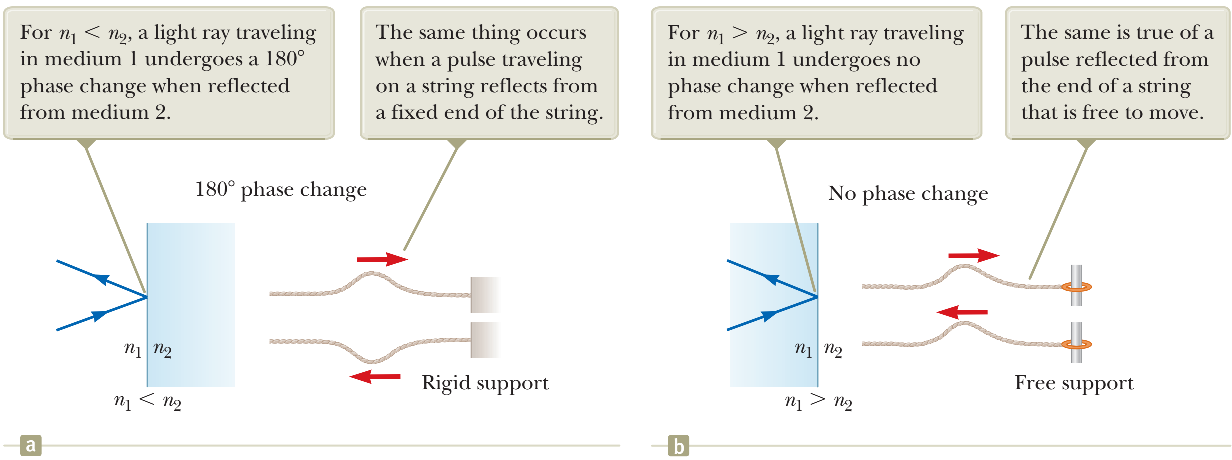


Figure 37.9 Comparisons of reflections of light waves and waves on strings.

[1]Developed in 1834 by Humphrey Lloyd (1800–1881), Professor of Natural and Experimental Philosophy, Trinity College, Dublin.

37.5 Interference in Thin Films

Interference effects are commonly observed in thin films, such as thin layers of oil on water or the thin surface of a soap bubble. The varied colors observed when white light is incident on such films result from the interference of waves reflected from the two surfaces of the film.

Consider a film of uniform thickness t and index of refraction n. The wavelength of light λ_n in the film (see Section 35.5) is

$$\lambda_n = \frac{\lambda}{n}$$

where λ is the wavelength of the light in free space and n is the index of refraction of the film material. Let's assume light rays traveling in air are nearly normal to the two surfaces of the film as shown in Figure 37.10.

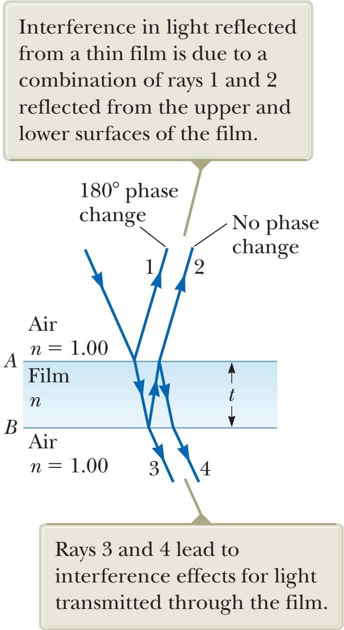


Figure 37.10 Light paths through a thin film.

Reflected ray 1, which is reflected from the upper surface (A) in Figure 37.10, undergoes a phase change of 180° with respect to the incident wave. Reflected ray 2, which is reflected from the lower film surface (B), undergoes no phase change because it is reflected from a medium (air) that has a lower index of refraction. Therefore, ray 1 is 180° out of phase with ray 2, which is equivalent to a path difference of $\lambda_n/2$. We must also consider, however, that ray 2 travels an extra distance $2t$ before the waves recombine in the air above surface A. (Remember that we are considering light rays that are close to normal to the surface. If the rays are not close to normal, the path difference is larger than $2t$.) If $2t = \lambda_n/2$, rays 1 and 2 recombine in phase and the result is constructive interference. In general, the condition for *constructive* interference in thin films is[2]

$$2t = (m + \tfrac{1}{2})\lambda_n \quad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \tag{37.16}$$

This condition takes into account two factors: (1) the difference in path length for the two rays (the term $m\lambda_n$) and (2) the 180° phase change upon reflection (the term $\frac{1}{2}\lambda_n$). Because $\lambda_n = \lambda/n$, we can write Equation 37.16 as

$$2nt = (m + \tfrac{1}{2})\lambda \quad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \tag{37.17}$$

If the extra distance $2t$ traveled by ray 2 corresponds to a multiple of λ_n, the two waves combine out of phase and the result is destructive interference. The general equation for *destructive* interference in thin films is

$$2nt = m\lambda \quad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \tag{37.18}$$

The foregoing conditions for constructive and destructive interference are valid when the medium above the top surface of the film is the same as the medium below the bottom surface or, if there are different media above and below the film, the index of refraction of both is less than n. If the film is placed between two different media, one with $n < n_{\text{film}}$ and the other with $n > n_{\text{film}}$, the conditions for constructive and destructive interference are reversed. In that case, either there is a phase change of 180° for both ray 1 reflecting from surface A and ray 2 reflecting from surface B or there is no phase change for either ray; hence, the net change in relative phase due to the reflections is zero.

Rays 3 and 4 in Figure 37.10 lead to interference effects in the light transmitted through the thin film. The analysis of these effects is similar to that of the reflected light. You are asked to explore the transmitted light in Problems 35, 36, and 38.

Pitfall Prevention 37.1

Be Careful with Thin Films Be sure to include *both* effects—path length and phase change—when analyzing an interference pattern resulting from a thin film. The possible phase change is a new feature we did not need to consider for double-slit interference. Also think carefully about the material on either side of the film. If there are different materials on either side of the film, you may have a situation in which there is a 180° phase change at *both* surfaces or at *neither* surface.

Quick Quiz 37.3 One microscope slide is placed on top of another with their left edges in contact and a human hair under the right edge of the upper slide. As a result, a wedge of air exists between the slides. An interference pattern results when monochromatic light is incident on the wedge. What is at the left edges of the slides? **(a)** a dark fringe **(b)** a bright fringe **(c)** impossible to determine

[2]The full interference effect in a thin film requires an analysis of an infinite number of reflections back and forth between the top and bottom surfaces of the film. We focus here only on a single reflection from the bottom of the film, which provides the largest contribution to the interference effect.

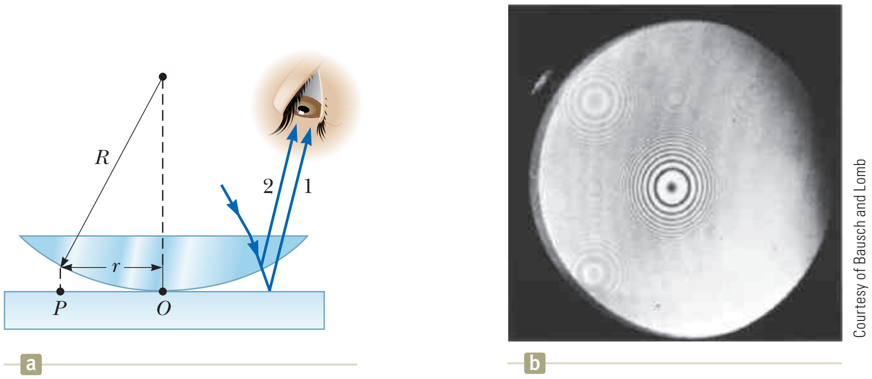


Figure 37.11 (a) The combination of rays reflected from the flat plate and the curved lens surface gives rise to an interference pattern known as Newton's rings. (b) Photograph of Newton's rings.

Newton's Rings

Another method for observing interference in light waves is to place a plano-convex lens on top of a flat glass surface as shown in Figure 37.11a. With this arrangement, the air film between the glass surfaces varies in thickness from zero at the point of contact to some nonzero value at point P. If the radius of curvature R of the lens is much greater than the distance r and the system is viewed from above, a pattern of light and dark rings is observed as shown in Figure 37.11b. These circular fringes, discovered by Newton, are called **Newton's rings.**

The interference effect is due to the combination of ray 1, reflected from the flat plate, with ray 2, reflected from the curved surface of the lens. Ray 1 undergoes a phase change of 180° upon reflection (because it is reflected from a medium of higher index of refraction), whereas ray 2 undergoes no phase change (because it is reflected from a medium of lower index of refraction). Hence, the conditions for constructive and destructive interference are given by Equations 37.17 and 37.18, respectively, with $n = 1$ because the film is air. Because there is no path difference and the total phase change is due only to the 180° phase change upon reflection, the contact point at O is dark as seen in Figure 37.11b.

Using the geometry shown in Figure 37.11a, we can obtain expressions for the radii of the bright and dark bands in terms of the radius of curvature R and wavelength λ. For example, the dark rings have radii given by the expression $r \approx \sqrt{m\lambda R/n}$. The details are left as a problem (see Problem 66). We can obtain the wavelength of the light causing the interference pattern by measuring the radii of the rings, provided R is known. Conversely, we can use a known wavelength to obtain R.

One important use of Newton's rings is in the testing of optical lenses. A circular pattern like that pictured in Figure 37.11b is obtained only when the lens is ground to a perfectly symmetric curvature. Variations from such symmetry produce a pattern with fringes that vary from a smooth, circular shape. These variations indicate how the lens must be reground and repolished to remove imperfections.

(a) A thin film of oil floating on water displays interference, shown by the pattern of colors when white light is incident on the film. Variations in film thickness produce the interesting color pattern. The razor blade gives you an idea of the size of the colored bands. (b) Interference in soap bubbles. The colors are due to interference between light rays reflected from the inner and outer surfaces of the thin film of soap making up the bubble. The color depends on the thickness of the film, ranging from black, where the film is thinnest, to magenta, where it is thickest.

Problem-Solving Strategy Thin-Film Interference

The following features should be kept in mind when working thin-film interference problems.

1. Conceptualize. Think about what is going on physically in the problem. Identify the light source and the location of the observer.

2. Categorize. Confirm that you should use the techniques for thin-film interference by identifying the thin film causing the interference.

3. Analyze. The type of interference that occurs is determined by the phase relationship between the portion of the wave reflected at the upper surface of the film and the portion reflected at the lower surface. Phase differences between the two portions of the wave have two causes: differences in the distances traveled by the two portions and phase changes occurring on reflection. *Both* causes must be considered when determining which type of interference occurs. If the media above and below the film both have index of refraction larger than that of the film or if both indices are smaller, use Equation 37.17 for constructive interference and Equation 37.18 for destructive interference. If the film is located between two different media, one with $n < n_{\text{film}}$ and the other with $n > n_{\text{film}}$, reverse these two equations for constructive and destructive interference.

4. Finalize. Inspect your final results to see if they make sense physically and are of an appropriate size.

Example 37.3 Interference in a Soap Film

Calculate the minimum thickness of a soap-bubble film that results in constructive interference in the reflected light if the film is illuminated with light whose wavelength in free space is $\lambda = 600$ nm. The index of refraction of the soap film is 1.33.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine that the film in Figure 37.10 is soap, with air on both sides.

Categorize We determine the result using an equation from this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

The minimum film thickness for constructive interference in the reflected light corresponds to $m = 0$ in Equation 37.17. Solve this equation for t and substitute numerical values:

$$t = \frac{(0 + \frac{1}{2})\lambda}{2n} = \frac{\lambda}{4n} = \frac{(600 \text{ nm})}{4(1.33)} = \boxed{113 \text{ nm}}$$

WHAT IF? What if the film is twice as thick? Does this situation produce constructive interference?

Answer Using Equation 37.17, we can solve for the thicknesses at which constructive interference occurs:

$$t = (m + \tfrac{1}{2})\frac{\lambda}{2n} = (2m + 1)\frac{\lambda}{4n} \quad m = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$$

The allowed values of m show that constructive interference occurs for *odd* multiples of the thickness corresponding to $m = 0$, $t = 113$ nm. Therefore, constructive interference does *not* occur for a film that is twice as thick.

Example 37.4 Nonreflective Coatings for Solar Cells

Solar cells—devices that generate electricity when exposed to sunlight—are often coated with a transparent, thin film of silicon monoxide (SiO, $n = 1.45$) to minimize reflective losses from the surface. Suppose a silicon solar cell ($n = 3.5$) is coated with a thin film of silicon monoxide for this purpose (Fig. 37.12a). Determine the minimum film thickness that produces the least reflection at a wavelength of 550 nm, near the center of the visible spectrum.

37.4 continued

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Figure 37.12a helps us visualize the path of the rays in the SiO film that result in interference in the reflected light.

Categorize Based on the geometry of the SiO layer, we categorize this example as a thin-film interference problem.

Analyze The reflected light is a minimum when rays 1 and 2 in Figure 37.12a meet the condition of destructive interference. In this situation, *both* rays undergo a 180° phase change upon reflection: ray 1 from the upper SiO surface and ray 2 from the lower SiO surface. The net change in phase due to reflection is therefore zero, and the condition for a reflection minimum requires a path difference of $\lambda_n/2$, where λ_n is the wavelength of the light in SiO. Hence, $2nt = \lambda/2$, where λ is the wavelength in air and n is the index of refraction of SiO.

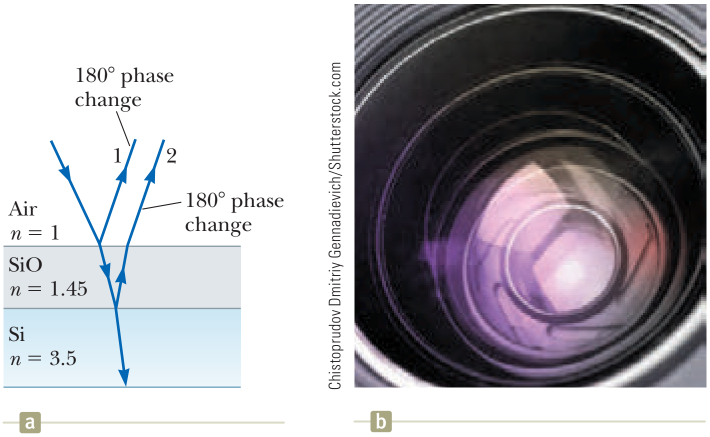


Figure 37.12 (Example 37.4) (a) Reflective losses from a silicon solar cell are minimized by coating the surface of the cell with a thin film of silicon monoxide. (b) The reflected light from a coated camera lens often has a reddish-violet appearance.

Solve the equation $2nt = \lambda/2$ for t and substitute numerical values:

$$t = \frac{\lambda}{4n} = \frac{550 \text{ nm}}{4(1.45)} = \boxed{94.8 \text{ nm}}$$

Finalize A typical uncoated solar cell has reflective losses as high as 30%, but a coating of SiO can reduce this value to about 10%. This significant decrease in reflective losses increases the cell's efficiency because less reflection means that more sunlight enters the silicon to create charge carriers in the cell. No coating can ever be made perfectly nonreflecting because the required thickness is wavelength-dependent and the incident light covers a wide range of wavelengths.

Glass lenses used in cameras and other optical instruments are usually coated with a transparent thin film to reduce or eliminate unwanted reflection and to enhance the transmission of light through the lenses. The camera lens in Figure 37.12b has several coatings (of different thicknesses) to minimize reflection of light waves having wavelengths near the center of the visible spectrum. As a result, the small amount of light that is reflected by the lens has a greater proportion of the far ends of the spectrum and often appears reddish violet.

37.6 The Michelson Interferometer

The **interferometer,** invented by American physicist A. A. Michelson (1852–1931), splits a light beam into two parts and then recombines the parts to form an interference pattern. The device can be used to measure wavelengths or other lengths with great precision because a large and precisely measurable displacement of one of the mirrors is related to an exactly countable number of wavelengths of light.

A schematic diagram of the interferometer is shown in Figure 37.13 (page 1148). A ray of light from a monochromatic source is split into two rays by mirror M_0, which is inclined at 45° to the incident light beam. Mirror M_0, called a *beam splitter,* transmits half the light incident on it and reflects the rest. One ray is reflected from M_0 to the right toward mirror M_1, and the second ray is transmitted vertically through M_0 toward mirror M_2. Hence, the two rays travel separate paths L_1 and L_2. After reflecting from M_1 and M_2, the two rays eventually recombine at M_0 to produce an interference pattern, which can be viewed through a telescope.

The interference condition for the two rays is determined by the difference in their path length. When the two mirrors are exactly perpendicular to each other, the interference pattern is a target pattern of bright and dark circular fringes. As M_1 is moved, the fringe pattern collapses or expands, depending on the direction in which M_1 is moved. For example, if a dark circle appears at the center of the

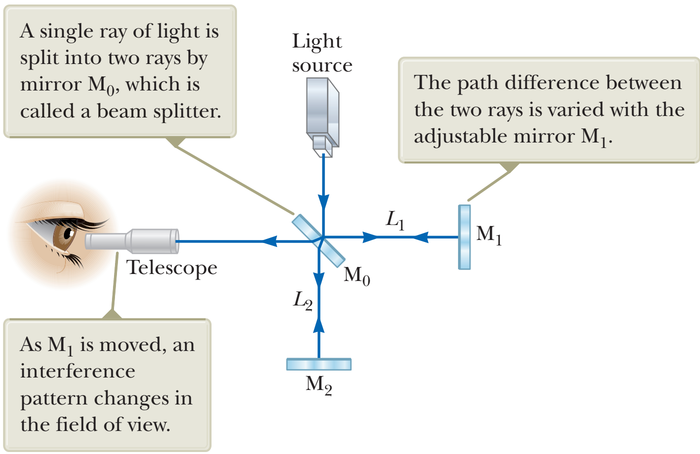


Figure 37.13 Diagram of the Michelson interferometer.

target pattern (corresponding to destructive interference) and M_1 is then moved a distance $\lambda/4$ toward M_0, the path difference changes by $\lambda/2$. What was a dark circle at the center now becomes a bright circle. As M_1 is moved an additional distance $\lambda/4$ toward M_0, the bright circle becomes a dark circle again. Therefore, the fringe pattern shifts by one-half fringe each time M_1 is moved a distance $\lambda/4$. The wavelength of light is then measured by counting the number of fringe shifts for a given displacement of M_1. If the wavelength is accurately known, mirror displacements can be measured to within a fraction of the wavelength.

We will see an important historical use of the Michelson interferometer in our discussion of relativity in Chapter 39. Modern uses include the following two applications, Fourier transform infrared spectroscopy and the laser interferometer gravitational-wave observatory.

Fourier Transform Infrared Spectroscopy

Spectroscopy is the study of the wavelength distribution of radiation from a sample that can be used to identify the characteristics of atoms or molecules in the sample. Infrared spectroscopy is particularly important to organic chemists when analyzing organic molecules. Traditional spectroscopy involves the use of an optical element, such as a prism (Section 35.5) or a diffraction grating (Section 38.4), which spreads out various wavelengths in a complex optical signal from the sample into different angles. In this way, the various wavelengths of radiation and their intensities in the signal can be determined. These types of devices are limited in their resolution and effectiveness because they must be scanned through the various angular deviations of the radiation.

The technique of *Fourier transform infrared* (FTIR) *spectroscopy* is used to create a higher-resolution spectrum in a time interval of 1 second that may have required 30 minutes with a standard spectrometer. In this technique, the radiation from a sample enters a Michelson interferometer. The movable mirror is swept through the zero-path-difference condition, and the intensity of radiation at the viewing position is recorded. The result is a complex set of data relating light intensity as a function of mirror position, called an *interferogram*. Because there is a relationship between mirror position and light intensity for a given wavelength, the interferogram contains information about all wavelengths in the signal.

In Section 18.8, we discussed Fourier analysis of a waveform. The waveform is a function that contains information about all the individual frequency components that make up the waveform.[3] Equation 18.13 shows how the waveform is generated from the individual frequency components. Similarly, the interferogram can be

[3]In acoustics, it is common to talk about the components of a complex signal in terms of frequency. In optics, it is more common to identify the components by wavelength.

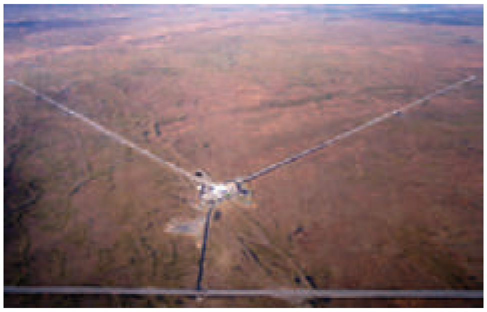


Figure 37.14 The Laser Interferometer Gravitational-Wave Observatory (LIGO) near Richland, Washington. Notice the two perpendicular arms of the Michelson interferometer.

analyzed by computer, in a process called a *Fourier transform,* to provide all the wavelength components. This information is the same as that generated by traditional spectroscopy, but the resolution of FTIR spectroscopy is much higher.

Laser Interferometer Gravitational-Wave Observatory

Einstein's general theory of relativity (Section 39.9) predicts the existence of *gravitational waves.* These waves propagate from the site of any gravitational disturbance, which could be periodic and predictable, such as the rotation of a double star around a center of mass, or unpredictable, such as the supernova explosion of a massive star.

In Einstein's theory, gravitation is equivalent to a distortion of space. Therefore, a gravitational disturbance causes an additional distortion that propagates through space in a manner similar to mechanical or electromagnetic waves. When gravitational waves from a disturbance pass by the Earth, they create a distortion of the local space. The laser interferometer gravitational-wave observatory (LIGO) apparatus is designed to detect this distortion. The apparatus employs a Michelson interferometer that uses laser beams with an effective path length of several kilometers. At the end of an arm of the interferometer, a mirror is mounted on a massive pendulum. When a gravitational wave passes by, the pendulum and the attached mirror move and the interference pattern due to the laser beams from the two arms changes.

Two sites for interferometers have been developed in the United States—in Richland, Washington, and in Livingston, Louisiana—to allow coincidence studies of gravitational waves. Figure 37.14 shows the Washington site. The two arms of the Michelson interferometer are evident in the photograph. Six data runs have been performed as of 2010. These runs have been coordinated with other gravitational wave detectors, such as GEO in Hannover, Germany, TAMA in Mitaka, Japan, and VIRGO in Cascina, Italy. So far, gravitational waves have not yet been detected, but the data runs have provided critical information for modifications and design features for the next generation of detectors. The original detectors are currently being dismantled, in preparation for the installation of Advanced LIGO, an upgrade that should increase the sensitivity of the observatory by a factor of 10. The target date for the beginning of scientific operation of Advanced LIGO is 2014.

Summary

Concepts and Principles

Interference in light waves occurs whenever two or more waves overlap at a given point. An interference pattern is observed if (1) the sources are coherent and (2) the sources have identical wavelengths.

The **intensity** at a point in a double-slit interference pattern is

$$I = I_{\max} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi d \sin \theta}{\lambda}\right) \qquad \textbf{(37.14)}$$

where $I_{\max}$ is the maximum intensity on the screen and the expression represents the time average.

continued

A wave traveling from a medium of index of refraction toward a medium of index of refraction undergoes a 180° phase change upon reflection when and undergoes no phase change when

The condition for constructive interference in a film of thickness and index of refraction surrounded by air is

$$nt \quad - \quad 0, 1, 2, \qquad \textbf{(37.17)}$$

where is the wavelength of the light in free space.

Similarly, the condition for destructive interference in a thin film surrounded by air is

$$0, 1, 2, \qquad \textbf{(37.18)}$$

Analysis Models for Problem Solving

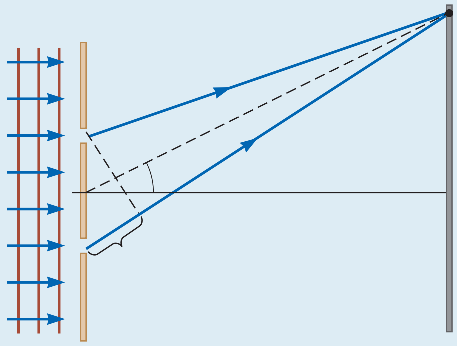
Waves in Interference. Young's double-slit experiment serves as a pro totype for interference phenomena involving electromagnetic radiation. In this experiment, two slits separated by a distance are illuminated by a single-wavelength light source. The condition for bright fringes **(constructive interference)**

$$\sin \ _{\text{bright}} \quad 0, \quad 1, \quad 2, \qquad \textbf{(37.2)}$$

The condition for dark fringes **(destructive interference)**

$$\sin \ _{\text{dark}} \quad - \quad 0, \quad 1, \quad 2, \qquad \textbf{(37.3)}$$

The number is called the **order number** of the fringe.



Objective Questions

While using a Michelson interferometer (shown in Fig. 37.13), you see a dark circle at the center of the inter ference pattern. **(i)** As you gradually move the light source toward the central mirror M , through a dis tance /2, what do you see? (a) There is no change in the pattern. (b) The dark circle changes into a bright circle. (c) The dark circle changes into a bright circle and then back into a dark circle. (d) The dark circle changes into a bright circle, then into a dark circle, and then into a bright circle. **(ii)** As you gradually move the moving mirror toward the central mirror M , through a distance /2, what do you see? Choose from the same possibilities.

2. Four trials of Young's double-slit experiment are con ducted. (a) In the first trial, blue light passes through two fine slits 400 m apart and forms an interference pattern on a screen 4 m away. (b) In a second trial, red light passes through the same slits and falls on the same screen. (c) A third trial is performed with red light and the same screen, but with slits 800 apart. (d) A final trial is performed with red light, slits 800 m apart, and a screen 8 m away. **(i)** Rank the trials (a) through (d) from the largest to the smallest value of the angle between the central maximum and the first-order side maximum. In your ranking, note any cases of equality. **(ii)** Rank the same trials accord ing to the distance between the central maximum and the first-order side maximum on the screen.

3. Suppose Young's double-slit experiment is performed in air using red light and then the apparatus is immersed in water. What happens to the interference pattern on the screen? (a) It disappears. (b) The bright and dark fringes stay in the same locations, but the contrast is reduced. (c) The bright fringes are closer together. (d) The bright fringes are farther apart. (e) No change happens in the interference pattern.

4. Green light has a wavelength of 500 nm in air. **(i)** Assume green light is reflected from a mirror with angle of incidence 0°. The incident and reflected waves together constitute a standing wave with what distance from one node to the next node? (a) 1 000 nm (b) 500 nm (c) 250 nm (d) 125 nm (e) 62.5 nm **(ii).** The green light is sent into a Michelson interferometer that is adjusted to produce a central bright circle. How far must the interferometer's moving mirror be shifted to change the center of the pattern into a dark circle? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i). **(iii).** The green light is reflected perpendicularly from a thin film of a plastic with an index of refraction 2.00. The film appears bright in the reflected light. How much addi tional thickness would make the film appear dark?

5. A thin layer of oil (1.25) is floating on water (1.33). What is the minimum nonzero thickness of the oil in the region that strongly reflects green light (530 nm)? (a) 500 nm (b) 313 nm (c) 404 nm (d) 212 nm (e) 285 nm

6. A monochromatic beam of light of wavelength 500 nm illuminates a double slit having a slit separation of 2.00 m. What is the angle of the second-order bright fringe? (a) 0.050 0 rad (b) 0.025 0 rad (c) 0.100 rad (d) 0.250 rad (e) 0.010 0 rad

7. According to Table 35.1, the index of refraction of flint glass is 1.66 and the index of refraction of crown glass is 1.52. **(i)** A film formed by one drop of sassafras oil, on a horizontal surface of a flint glass block, is viewed by reflected light. The film appears brightest at its outer margin, where it is thinnest. A film of the same oil on crown glass appears dark at its outer margin. What can you say about the index of refraction of the oil? (a) It must be less than 1.52. (b) It must be between 1.52 and 1.66. (c) It must be greater than 1.66. (d) None of those statements is necessarily true. **(ii)** Could a very thin film of some other liquid appear bright by reflected light on both of the glass blocks? **(iii)** Could it appear dark on both? **(iv)** Could it appear dark on crown glass and bright on flint glass? Experiments described by Thomas Young suggested this question.

8. Suppose you perform Young's double-slit experiment with the slit separation slightly smaller than the wavelength of the light. As a screen, you use a large half-cylinder with its axis along the midline between the slits. What interference pattern will you see on the interior surface of the cylinder? (a) bright and dark fringes so closely spaced as to be indistinguishable (b) one central bright fringe and two dark fringes only (c) a completely bright screen with no dark fringes (d) one central dark fringe and two bright fringes only (e) a completely dark screen with no bright fringes

A plane monochromatic light wave is incident on a double slit as illustrated in Figure 37.1. **(i)** As the viewing screen is moved away from the double slit, what happens to the separation between the interference fringes on the screen? (a) It increases. (b) It decreases. (c) It remains the same. (d) It may increase or decrease, depending on the wavelength of the light. (e) More information is required. **(ii)** As the slit separation increases, what happens to the separation between the interference fringes on the screen? Select from the same choices.

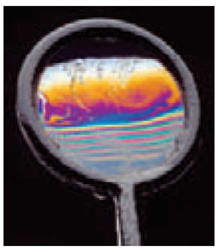
10. A film of oil on a puddle in a parking lot shows a variety of bright colors in swirled patches. What can you say about the thickness of the oil film? (a) It is much less than the wavelength of visible light. (b) It is on the same order of magnitude as the wavelength of visible light. (c) It is much greater than the wavelength of visible light. (d) It might have any relationship to the wavelength of visible light.

Conceptual Questions

Why is the lens on a good-quality camera coated with a thin film?

2. A soap film is held vertically in air and is viewed in reflected light as in Figure CQ37.2. Explain why the film appears to be dark at the top.

3. Explain why two flashlights held close together do not produce an interference pattern on a distant screen.



© Richard Megna/Fundamental Photographs, NYC

Figure CQ37.2 Conceptual Question 2 and Problem 70.

4. A lens with outer radius of curvature and index of refraction rests on a flat glass plate. The combination is illuminated with white light from above and observed from above. (a) Is there a dark spot or a light spot at the center of the lens? (b) What does it mean if the observed rings are noncircular?

5. Consider a dark fringe in a double-slit interference pattern at which almost no light energy is arriving. Light from both slits is arriving at the location of the dark fringe, but the waves cancel. Where does the energy at the positions of dark fringes go?

6. (a) In Young's double-slit experiment, why do we use monochromatic light? (b) If white light is used, how would the pattern change?

7. What is the necessary condition on the path length difference between two waves that interfere (a) constructively and (b) destructively?

8. In a laboratory accident, you spill two liquids onto different parts of a water surface. Neither of the liquids mixes with the water. Both liquids form thin films on the water surface. As the films spread and become very thin, you notice that one film becomes brighter and the other darker in reflected light. Why?

9. A theatrical smoke machine fills the space between the barrier and the viewing screen in the Young's double-slit experiment shown in Figure CQ37.9. Would the smoke show evidence of interference within this space? Explain your answer.

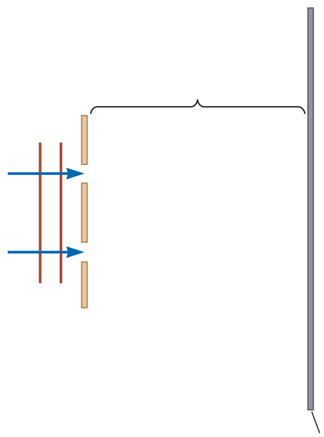


Figure CQ37.9

Problems

WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 37.1 Young's Double-Slit Experiment
Section 37.2 Analysis Model: Waves in Interference

Problems 3, 5, 8, 10, and 13 in Chapter 18 can be assigned with this section.

1. Two slits are separated by 0.320 mm. A beam of 500-nm light strikes the slits, producing an interference pattern. Determine the number of maxima observed in the angular range $-30.0° < \theta < 30.0°$.

2. Light of wavelength 530 nm illuminates a pair of slits separated by 0.300 mm. If a screen is placed 2.00 m from the slits, determine the distance between the first and second dark fringes.

3. A laser beam is incident on two slits with a separation of 0.200 mm, and a screen is placed 5.00 m from the slits. An interference pattern appears on the screen. If the angle from the center fringe to the first bright fringe to the side is 0.181°, what is the wavelength of the laser light?

4. W A Young's interference experiment is performed with blue-green argon laser light. The separation between the slits is 0.500 mm, and the screen is located 3.30 m from the slits. The first bright fringe is located 3.40 mm from the center of the interference pattern. What is the wavelength of the argon laser light?

5. W Young's double-slit experiment is performed with 589-nm light and a distance of 2.00 m between the slits and the screen. The tenth interference minimum is observed 7.26 mm from the central maximum. Determine the spacing of the slits.

6. *Why is the following situation impossible?* Two narrow slits are separated by 8.00 mm in a piece of metal. A beam of microwaves strikes the metal perpendicularly, passes through the two slits, and then proceeds toward a wall some distance away. You know that the wavelength of the radiation is 1.00 cm ±5%, but you wish to measure it more precisely. Moving a microwave detector along the wall to study the interference pattern, you measure the position of the $m = 1$ bright fringe, which leads to a successful measurement of the wavelength of the radiation.

7. Light of wavelength 620 nm falls on a double slit, and the first bright fringe of the interference pattern is seen at an angle of 15.0° with the horizontal. Find the separation between the slits.

8. In a Young's double-slit experiment, two parallel slits with a slit separation of 0.100 mm are illuminated by light of wavelength 589 nm, and the interference pattern is observed on a screen located 4.00 m from the slits. (a) What is the difference in path lengths from each of the slits to the location of the center of a third-order bright fringe on the screen? (b) What is the difference in path lengths from the two slits to the location of the center of the third dark fringe away from the center of the pattern?

9. AMT M A pair of narrow, parallel slits separated by 0.250 mm is illuminated by green light ($\lambda = 546.1$ nm). The interference pattern is observed on a screen 1.20 m away from the plane of the parallel slits. Calculate the distance (a) from the central maximum to the first bright region on either side of the central maximum and (b) between the first and second dark bands in the interference pattern.

10. Light with wavelength 442 nm passes through a double-slit system that has a slit separation $d = 0.400$ mm. Determine how far away a screen must be placed so that dark fringes appear directly opposite both slits, with only one bright fringe between them.

11. AMT M The two speakers of a boom box are 35.0 cm apart. A single oscillator makes the speakers vibrate in phase at a frequency of 2.00 kHz. At what angles, measured from the perpendicular bisector of the line joining the speakers, would a distant observer hear maximum sound intensity? Minimum sound intensity? (Take the speed of sound as 340 m/s.)

12. In a location where the speed of sound is 343 m/s, a 2 000-Hz sound wave impinges on two slits 30.0 cm apart. (a) At what angle is the first maximum of sound intensity located? (b) **What If?** If the sound wave is replaced by 3.00-cm microwaves, what slit separation gives the same angle for the first maximum of microwave intensity? (c) **What If?** If the slit separation is 1.00 μm, what frequency of light gives the same angle to the first maximum of light intensity?

13. AMT M Two radio antennas separated by $d = 300$ m as shown in Figure P37.13 simultaneously broadcast identical signals at the same wavelength. A car travels due north along a straight line at position $x = 1\,000$ m from the center point between the antennas, and its radio receives the signals. (a) If the car is at the position of the second maximum after that at point O when it has traveled a distance $y = 400$ m northward, what is the wavelength of the signals? (b) How much farther must the car travel from this position to encounter the next minimum in reception? *Note:* Do not use the small-angle approximation in this problem.

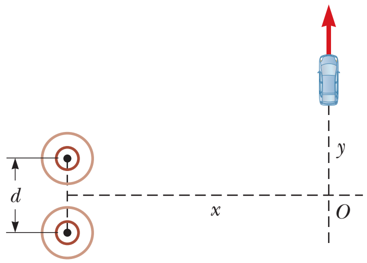


Figure P37.13

14. W A riverside warehouse has several small doors facing the river. Two of these doors are open as shown in Figure P37.14. The walls of the warehouse are lined with sound-absorbing material. Two people stand at a distance $L = 150$ m from the wall with the open doors. Person A stands along a line passing through the midpoint between the open doors, and person B stands a distance $y = 20$ m to his side. A boat on the river sounds its horn. To person A, the sound is loud and clear. To person B, the sound is barely audible. The principal wavelength of the sound waves is 3.00 m. Assuming person B is at the position of the first minimum, determine the distance d between the doors, center to center.

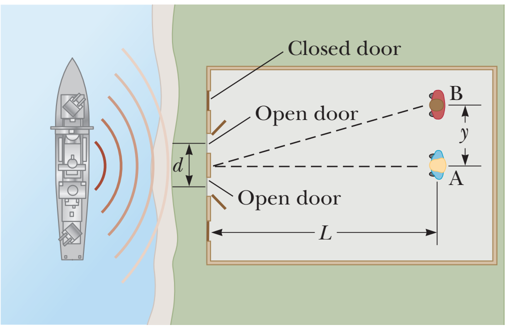


Figure P37.14

15. A student holds a laser that emits light of wavelength 632.8 nm. The laser beam passes though a pair of slits separated by 0.300 mm, in a glass plate attached to the front of the laser. The beam then falls perpendicularly on a screen, creating an interference pattern on it. The student begins to walk directly toward the screen at 3.00 m/s. The central maximum on the screen is stationary. Find the speed of the 50th-order maxima on the screen.

16. A student holds a laser that emits light of wavelength λ. The laser beam passes though a pair of slits separated by a distance d, in a glass plate attached to the front of the laser. The beam then falls perpendicularly on a screen, creating an interference pattern on it. The student begins to walk directly toward the screen at speed v. The central maximum on the screen is stationary. Find the speed of the mth-order maxima on the screen, where m can be very large.

17. Radio waves of wavelength 125 m from a galaxy reach a radio telescope by two separate paths as shown in Figure P37.17. One is a direct path to the receiver, which is situated on the edge of a tall cliff by the ocean, and the second is by reflection off the water. As the galaxy rises in the east over the water, the first minimum of destructive interference occurs when the galaxy is $\theta = 25.0°$ above the horizon. Find the height of the radio telescope dish above the water.

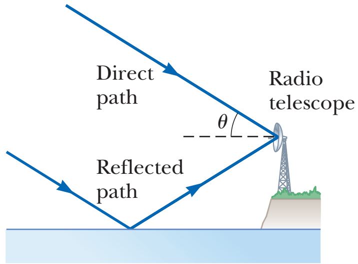


Figure P37.17 Problems 17 and 69.

18. M In Figure P37.18 (not to scale), let $L = 1.20$ m and $d = 0.120$ mm and assume the slit system is illuminated with monochromatic 500-nm light. Calculate the phase difference between the two wave fronts arriving at P when (a) $\theta = 0.500°$ and (b) $y = 5.00$ mm. (c) What is the value of θ for which the phase difference is 0.333 rad? (d) What is the value of θ for which the path difference is $\lambda/4$?

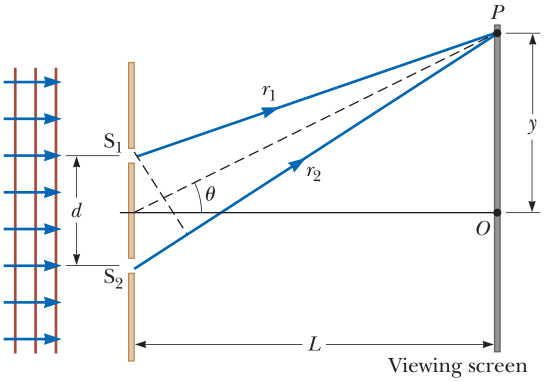


Figure P37.18 Problems 18 and 25.

19. Coherent light rays of wavelength λ strike a pair of slits separated by distance d at an angle θ_1 with respect to the normal to the plane containing the slits as shown in Figure P37.19. The rays leaving the slits make an

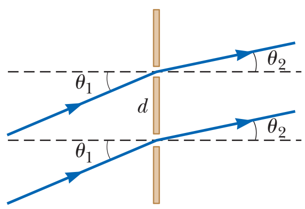


Figure P37.19

angle θ_2 with respect to the normal, and an interference maximum is formed by those rays on a screen that is a great distance from the slits. Show that the angle θ_2 is given by

$$\theta_2 = \sin^{-1}\left(\sin\theta_1 - \frac{m\lambda}{d}\right)$$

where m is an integer.

20. GP Monochromatic light of wavelength λ is incident on a pair of slits separated by 2.40×10^{-4} m and forms an interference pattern on a screen placed 1.80 m from the slits. The first-order bright fringe is at a position $y_{\text{bright}} = 4.52$ mm measured from the center of the central maximum. From this information, we wish to predict where the fringe for $n = 50$ would be located. (a) Assuming the fringes are laid out linearly along the screen, find the position of the $n = 50$ fringe by multiplying the position of the $n = 1$ fringe by 50.0. (b) Find the tangent of the angle the first-order bright fringe makes with respect to the line extending from the point midway between the slits to the center of the central maximum. (c) Using the result of part (b) and Equation 37.2, calculate the wavelength of the light. (d) Compute the angle for the 50th-order bright fringe from Equation 37.2. (e) Find the position of the 50th-order bright fringe on the screen from Equation 37.5. (f) Comment on the agreement between the answers to parts (a) and (e).

21. W In the double-slit arrangement of Figure P37.21, $d = 0.150$ mm, $L = 140$ cm, $\lambda = 643$ nm, and $y = 1.80$ cm. (a) What is the path difference δ for the rays from the two slits arriving at P? (b) Express this path difference in terms of λ. (c) Does P correspond to a maximum, a minimum, or an intermediate condition? Give evidence for your answer.

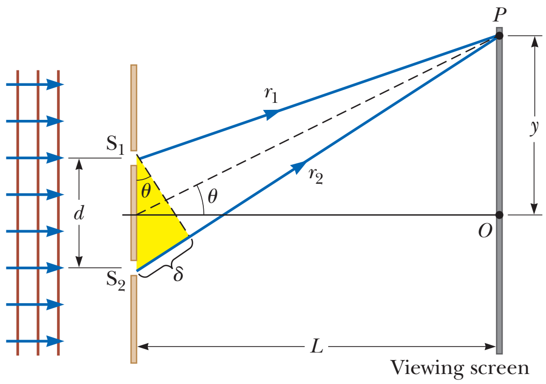


Figure P37.21

22. Young's double-slit experiment underlies the *instrument landing system* used to guide aircraft to safe landings at some airports when the visibility is poor. Although real systems are more complicated than the example described here, they operate on the same principles. A pilot is trying to align her plane with a runway as suggested in Figure P37.22. Two radio antennas (the black dots in the figure) are positioned adjacent to the runway, separated by $d = 40.0$ m. The antennas broadcast unmodulated coherent radio waves at 30.0 MHz. The red lines in Figure P37.22 represent paths along which maxima in the interference pattern of the radio waves exist. (a) Find the wavelength of the waves. The pilot "locks onto" the strong signal radiated along an interference maximum and steers the plane to keep the received signal strong. If she has found the central maximum, the plane will have precisely the correct heading to land when it reaches the runway as exhibited by plane A. (b) **What If?** Suppose the plane is flying along the first side maximum instead as is the case for plane B. How far to the side of the runway centerline will the plane be when it is 2.00 km from the antennas, measured along its direction of travel? (c) It is possible to tell the pilot that she is on the wrong maximum by sending out two signals from each antenna and equipping the aircraft with a two-channel receiver. The ratio of the two frequencies must not be the ratio of small integers (such as $\frac{3}{4}$). Explain how this two-frequency system would work and why it would not necessarily work if the frequencies were related by an integer ratio.

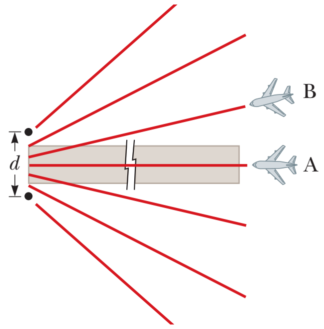


Figure P37.22

Section 37.3 Intensity Distribution of the Double-Slit Interference Pattern

23. Two slits are separated by 0.180 mm. An interference pattern is formed on a screen 80.0 cm away by 656.3-nm light. Calculate the fraction of the maximum intensity a distance $y = 0.600$ cm away from the central maximum.

24. Show that the two waves with wave functions given by $E_1 = 6.00 \sin(100\pi t)$ and $E_2 = 8.00 \sin(100\pi t + \pi/2)$ add to give a wave with the wave function $E_R \sin(100\pi t + \phi)$. Find the required values for E_R and ϕ.

25. M In Figure P37.18, let $L = 120$ cm and $d = 0.250$ cm. The slits are illuminated with coherent 600-nm light. Calculate the distance y from the central maximum for which the average intensity on the screen is 75.0% of the maximum.

26. Monochromatic coherent light of amplitude E_0 and angular frequency ω passes through three parallel slits, each separated by a distance d from its neighbor. (a) Show that the time-averaged intensity as a function of the angle θ is

$$I(\theta) = I_{\max}\left[1 + 2\cos\left(\frac{2\pi d \sin\theta}{\lambda}\right)\right]^2$$

(b) Explain how this expression describes both the primary and the secondary maxima. (c) Determine the ratio of the intensities of the primary and secondary maxima.

27. The intensity on the screen at a certain point in a double-slit interference pattern is 64.0% of the maximum value. (a) What minimum phase difference (in radians) between sources produces this result? (b) Express this phase difference as a path difference for 486.1-nm light.

28. Green light (λ = 546 nm) illuminates a pair of narrow, parallel slits separated by 0.250 mm. Make a graph of I/I_{max} as a function of θ for the interference pattern observed on a screen 1.20 m away from the plane of the parallel slits. Let θ range over the interval from $-0.3°$ to $+0.3°$.

29. W Two narrow, parallel slits separated by 0.850 mm are illuminated by 600-nm light, and the viewing screen is 2.80 m away from the slits. (a) What is the phase difference between the two interfering waves on a screen at a point 2.50 mm from the central bright fringe? (b) What is the ratio of the intensity at this point to the intensity at the center of a bright fringe?

Section 37.4 Change of Phase Due to Reflection

Section 37.5 Interference in Thin Films

30. A soap bubble (n = 1.33) floating in air has the shape of a spherical shell with a wall thickness of 120 nm. (a) What is the wavelength of the visible light that is most strongly reflected? (b) Explain how a bubble of different thickness could also strongly reflect light of this same wavelength. (c) Find the two smallest film thicknesses larger than 120 nm that can produce strongly reflected light of the same wavelength.

31. W A thin film of oil (n = 1.25) is located on smooth, wet pavement. When viewed perpendicular to the pavement, the film reflects most strongly red light at 640 nm and reflects no green light at 512 nm. How thick is the oil film?

32. A material having an index of refraction of 1.30 is used as an antireflective coating on a piece of glass (n = 1.50). What should the minimum thickness of this film be to minimize reflection of 500-nm light?

33. M A possible means for making an airplane invisible to radar is to coat the plane with an antireflective polymer. If radar waves have a wavelength of 3.00 cm and the index of refraction of the polymer is n = 1.50, how thick would you make the coating?

34. A film of MgF_2 (n = 1.38) having thickness 1.00×10^{-5} cm is used to coat a camera lens. (a) What are the three longest wavelengths that are intensified in the reflected light? (b) Are any of these wavelengths in the visible spectrum?

35. W A beam of 580-nm light passes through two closely spaced glass plates at close to normal incidence as shown in Figure P37.35. For what minimum nonzero value of the plate separation d is the transmitted light bright?

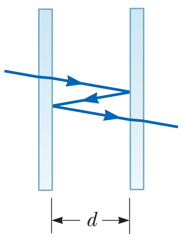


Figure P37.35

36. M An oil film (n = 1.45) floating on water is illuminated by white light at normal incidence. The film is 280 nm thick. Find (a) the wavelength and color of the light in the visible spectrum most strongly reflected and (b) the wavelength and color of the light in the spectrum most strongly transmitted. Explain your reasoning.

37. M An air wedge is formed between two glass plates separated at one edge by a very fine wire of circular cross section as shown in Figure P37.37. When the wedge is illuminated from above by 600-nm light and viewed from above, 30 dark fringes are observed. Calculate the diameter d of the wire.

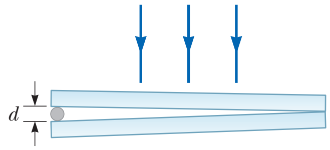


Figure P37.37 Problems 37, 41, 49, and 59.

38. Astronomers observe the chromosphere of the Sun with a filter that passes the red hydrogen spectral line of wavelength 656.3 nm, called the H_α line. The filter consists of a transparent dielectric of thickness d held between two partially aluminized glass plates. The filter is held at a constant temperature. (a) Find the minimum value of d that produces maximum transmission of perpendicular H_α light if the dielectric has an index of refraction of 1.378. (b) **What If?** If the temperature of the filter increases above the normal value, increasing its thickness, what happens to the transmitted wavelength? (c) The dielectric will also pass what near-visible wavelength? One of the glass plates is colored red to absorb this light.

39. W When a liquid is introduced into the air space between the lens and the plate in a Newton's-rings apparatus, the diameter of the tenth ring changes from 1.50 to 1.31 cm. Find the index of refraction of the liquid.

40. A lens made of glass (n_g = 1.52) is coated with a thin film of MgF_2 (n_s = 1.38) of thickness t. Visible light is incident normally on the coated lens as in Figure P37.40. (a) For what minimum value of t will the

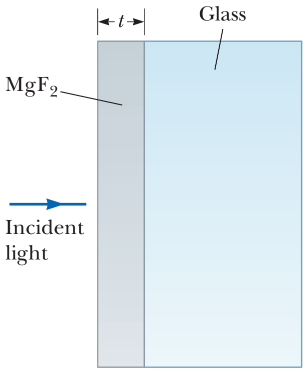


Figure P37.40

reflected light of wavelength 540 nm (in air) be missing? (b) Are there other values of t that will minimize the reflected light at this wavelength? Explain.

41. Two glass plates 10.0 cm long are in contact at one end and separated at the other end by a thread with a diameter $d = 0.050\,0$ mm (Fig. P37.37). Light containing the two wavelengths 400 nm and 600 nm is incident perpendicularly and viewed by reflection. At what distance from the contact point is the next dark fringe?

Section 37.6 The Michelson Interferometer

42. M Mirror M_1 in Figure 37.13 is moved through a displacement ΔL. During this displacement, 250 fringe reversals (formation of successive dark or bright bands) are counted. The light being used has a wavelength of 632.8 nm. Calculate the displacement ΔL.

43. M The Michelson interferometer can be used to measure the index of refraction of a gas by placing an evacuated transparent tube in the light path along one arm of the device. Fringe shifts occur as the gas is slowly added to the tube. Assume 600-nm light is used, the tube is 5.00 cm long, and 160 bright fringes pass on the screen as the pressure of the gas in the tube increases to atmospheric pressure. What is the index of refraction of the gas? *Hint:* The fringe shifts occur because the wavelength of the light changes inside the gas-filled tube.

44. One leg of a Michelson interferometer contains an evacuated cylinder of length L, having glass plates on each end. A gas is slowly leaked into the cylinder until a pressure of 1 atm is reached. If N bright fringes pass on the screen during this process when light of wavelength λ is used, what is the index of refraction of the gas? *Hint:* The fringe shifts occur because the wavelength of the light changes inside the gas-filled tube.

Additional Problems

45. Radio transmitter A operating at 60.0 MHz is 10.0 m from another similar transmitter B that is 180° out of phase with A. How far must an observer move from A toward B along the line connecting the two transmitters to reach the nearest point where the two beams are in phase?

46. A room is 6.0 m long and 3.0 m wide. At the front of the room, along one of the 3.0-m-wide walls, two loudspeakers are set 1.0 m apart, with the center point between them coinciding with the center point of the wall. The speakers emit a sound wave of a single frequency and a maximum in sound intensity is heard at the center of the back wall, 6.0 m from the speakers. What is the highest possible frequency of the sound from the speakers if no other maxima are heard anywhere along the back wall?

47. In an experiment similar to that of Example 37.1, green light with wavelength 560 nm, sent through a pair of slits 30.0 μm apart, produces bright fringes 2.24 cm apart on a screen 1.20 m away. If the apparatus is now submerged in a tank containing a sugar solution with index of refraction 1.38, calculate the fringe separation for this same arrangement.

48. In the What If? section of Example 37.2, it was claimed that overlapping fringes in a two-slit interference pattern for two different wavelengths obey the following relationship even for large values of the angle θ:

$$\frac{m'}{m} = \frac{\lambda}{\lambda'}$$

(a) Prove this assertion. (b) Using the data in Example 37.2, find the nonzero value of y on the screen at which the fringes from the two wavelengths first coincide.

49. An investigator finds a fiber at a crime scene that he wishes to use as evidence against a suspect. He gives the fiber to a technician to test the properties of the fiber. To measure the diameter d of the fiber, the technician places it between two flat glass plates at their ends as in Figure P37.37. When the plates, of length 14.0 cm, are illuminated from above with light of wavelength 650 nm, she observes interference bands separated by 0.580 mm. What is the diameter of the fiber?

50. Raise your hand and hold it flat. Think of the space between your index finger and your middle finger as one slit and think of the space between middle finger and ring finger as a second slit. (a) Consider the interference resulting from sending coherent visible light perpendicularly through this pair of openings. Compute an order-of-magnitude estimate for the angle between adjacent zones of constructive interference. (b) To make the angles in the interference pattern easy to measure with a plastic protractor, you should use an electromagnetic wave with frequency of what order of magnitude? (c) How is this wave classified on the electromagnetic spectrum?

51. Two coherent waves, coming from sources at different locations, move along the x axis. Their wave functions are

$$E_1 = 860 \sin\left[\frac{2\pi x_1}{650} - 924\pi t + \frac{\pi}{6}\right]$$

and

$$E_2 = 860 \sin\left[\frac{2\pi x_2}{650} - 924\pi t + \frac{\pi}{8}\right]$$

where E_1 and E_2 are in volts per meter, x_1 and x_2 are in nanometers, and t is in picoseconds. When the two waves are superposed, determine the relationship between x_1 and x_2 that produces constructive interference.

52. In a Young's interference experiment, the two slits are separated by 0.150 mm and the incident light includes two wavelengths: $\lambda_1 = 540$ nm (green) and $\lambda_2 = 450$ nm (blue). The overlapping interference patterns are observed on a screen 1.40 m from the slits. Calculate the minimum distance from the center of the screen to a point where a bright fringe of the green light coincides with a bright fringe of the blue light.

53. In a Young's double-slit experiment using light of wavelength λ, a thin piece of Plexiglas having index of refraction n covers one of the slits. If the center point on the screen is a dark spot instead of a bright spot, what is the minimum thickness of the Plexiglas?

54. AMT **Review.** A flat piece of glass is held stationary and horizontal above the highly polished, flat top end of a 10.0-cm-long vertical metal rod that has its lower end rigidly fixed. The thin film of air between the rod and glass is observed to be bright by reflected light when it is illuminated by light of wavelength 500 nm. As the temperature is slowly increased by 25.0°C, the film changes from bright to dark and back to bright 200 times. What is the coefficient of linear expansion of the metal?

55. A certain grade of crude oil has an index of refraction of 1.25. A ship accidentally spills 1.00 m^3 of this oil into the ocean, and the oil spreads into a thin, uniform slick. If the film produces a first-order maximum of light of wavelength 500 nm normally incident on it, how much surface area of the ocean does the oil slick cover? Assume the index of refraction of the ocean water is 1.34.

56. The waves from a radio station can reach a home receiver by two paths. One is a straight-line path from transmitter to home, a distance of 30.0 km. The second is by reflection from the ionosphere (a layer of ionized air molecules high in the atmosphere). Assume this reflection takes place at a point midway between receiver and transmitter, the wavelength broadcast by the radio station is 350 m, and no phase change occurs on reflection. Find the minimum height of the ionospheric layer that could produce destructive interference between the direct and reflected beams.

57. Interference effects are produced at point P on a screen as a result of direct rays from a 500-nm source and reflected rays from the mirror as shown in Figure P37.57. Assume the source is 100 m to the left of the screen and 1.00 cm above the mirror. Find the distance y to the first dark band above the mirror.

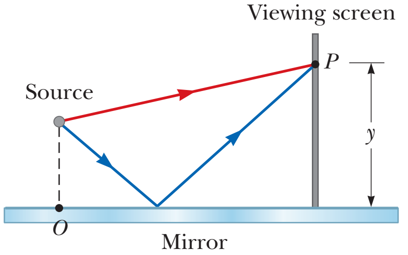


Figure P37.57

58. Measurements are made of the intensity distribution within the central bright fringe in a Young's interference pattern (see Fig. 37.6). At a particular value of y, it is found that $I/I_{max} = 0.810$ when 600-nm light is used. What wavelength of light should be used to reduce the relative intensity at the same location to 64.0% of the maximum intensity?

59. Many cells are transparent and colorless. Structures of great interest in biology and medicine can be practically invisible to ordinary microscopy. To indicate the size and shape of cell structures, an *interference microscope* reveals a difference in index of refraction as a shift in interference fringes. The idea is exemplified in the following problem. An air wedge is formed between two glass plates in contact along one edge and slightly separated at the opposite edge as in Figure P37.37. When the plates are illuminated with monochromatic light from above, the reflected light has 85 dark fringes. Calculate the number of dark fringes that appear if water (n = 1.33) replaces the air between the plates.

60. W Consider the double-slit arrangement shown in Figure P37.60, where the slit separation is d and the distance from the slit to the screen is L. A sheet of transparent plastic having an index of refraction n and thickness t is placed over the upper slit. As a result, the central maximum of the interference pattern moves upward a distance y'. Find y'.

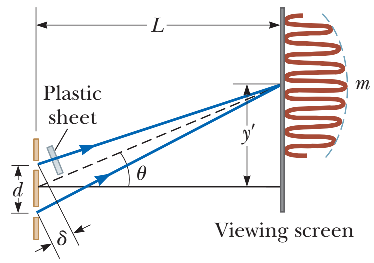


Figure P37.60

61. Figure P37.61 shows a radio-wave transmitter and a receiver separated by a distance d = 50.0 m and both a distance h = 35.0 m above the ground. The receiver can receive signals both directly from the transmitter and indirectly from signals that reflect from the ground. Assume the ground is level between the transmitter and receiver and a 180° phase shift occurs upon reflection. Determine the longest wavelengths that interfere (a) constructively and (b) destructively.

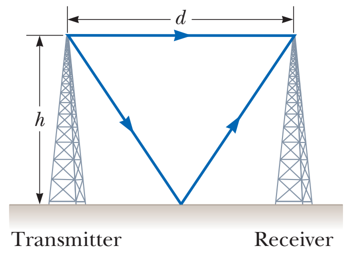


Figure P37.61 Problems 61 and 62.

62. Figure P37.61 shows a radio-wave transmitter and a receiver separated by a distance d and both a distance h above the ground. The receiver can receive signals both directly from the transmitter and indirectly from signals that reflect from the ground. Assume the ground is level between the transmitter and receiver and a 180° phase shift occurs upon reflection. Determine the longest wavelengths that interfere (a) constructively and (b) destructively.

63. In a Newton's-rings experiment, a plano-convex glass (n = 1.52) lens having radius r = 5.00 cm is placed on a flat plate as shown in Figure P37.63 (page 1158). When light of wavelength λ = 650 nm is incident normally, 55 bright rings are observed, with the last one precisely on the edge of the lens. (a) What is the radius R of curvature of the convex surface of the lens? (b) What is the focal length of the lens?

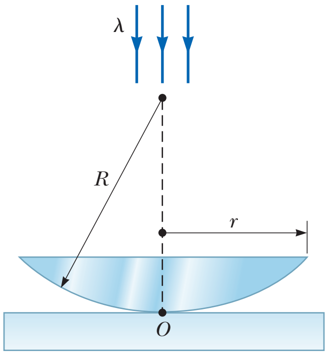


Figure P37.63

64. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A piece of transparent material having an index of refraction $n = 1.50$ is cut into the shape of a wedge as shown in Figure P37.64. Both the top and bottom surfaces of the wedge are in contact with air. Monochromatic light of wavelength $\lambda = 632.8$ nm is normally incident from above, and the wedge is viewed from above. Let $h = 1.00$ mm represent the height of the wedge and $\ell = 0.500$ m its length. A thin-film interference pattern appears in the wedge due to reflection from the top and bottom surfaces. You have been given the task of counting the number of bright fringes that appear in the entire length ℓ of the wedge. You find this task tedious, and your concentration is broken by a noisy distraction after accurately counting 5 000 bright fringes.

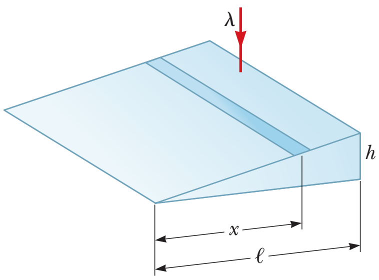


Figure P37.64

65. A plano-concave lens having index of refraction 1.50 is placed on a flat glass plate as shown in Figure P37.65. Its curved surface, with radius of curvature 8.00 m, is on the bottom. The lens is illuminated from above with yellow sodium light of wavelength 589 nm, and a series of concentric bright and dark rings is observed by reflection. The interference pattern has a dark spot at the center that is surrounded by 50 dark rings, the largest of which is at the outer edge of the lens. (a) What is the thickness of the air layer at the center of the interference pattern? (b) Calculate the radius of the outermost dark ring. (c) Find the focal length of the lens.

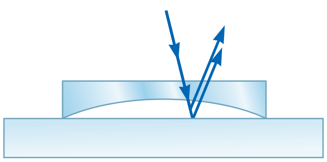


Figure P37.65

66. A plano-convex lens has index of refraction n. The curved side of the lens has radius of curvature R and rests on a flat glass surface of the same index of refraction, with a film of index n_{film} between them, as shown in Figure 37.66. The lens is illuminated from above by light of wavelength λ. Show that the dark Newton's rings have radii given approximately by

$$r \approx \sqrt{\frac{m\lambda R}{n_{\text{film}}}}$$

where $r << R$ and m is an integer.

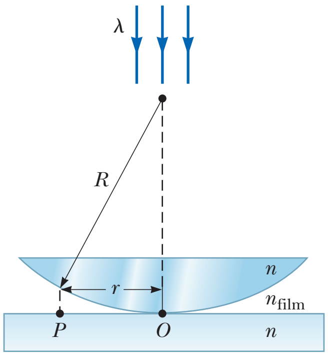


Figure P37.66

67. Interference fringes are produced using Lloyd's mirror and a source S of wavelength $\lambda = 606$ nm as shown in Figure P37.67. Fringes separated by $\Delta y = 1.20$ mm are formed on a screen a distance $L = 2.00$ m from the source. Find the vertical distance h of the source above the reflecting surface.

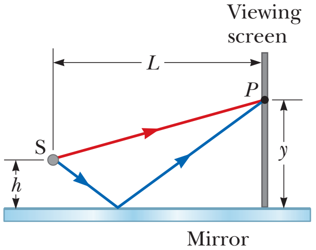


Figure P37.67

68. The quantity nt in Equations 37.17 and 37.18 is called the *optical path length* corresponding to the geometrical distance t and is analogous to the quantity δ in Equation 37.1, the path difference. The optical path length is proportional to n because a larger index of refraction shortens the wavelength, so more cycles of a wave fit into a particular geometrical distance. (a) Assume a mixture of corn syrup and water is prepared in a tank, with its index of refraction n increasing uniformly from 1.33 at y = 20.0 cm at the top to 1.90 at y = 0. Write the index of refraction $n(y)$ as a function of y.

(b) Compute the optical path length corresponding to the 20.0-cm height of the tank by calculating

$$\int_0^{20\text{ cm}} n(y)\,dy$$

(c) Suppose a narrow beam of light is directed into the mixture at a nonzero angle with respect to the normal to the surface of the mixture. Qualitatively describe its path.

69. M Astronomers observe a 60.0-MHz radio source both directly and by reflection from the sea as shown in Figure P37.17. If the receiving dish is 20.0 m above sea level, what is the angle of the radio source above the horizon at first maximum?

70. Figure CQ37.2 shows an unbroken soap film in a circular frame. The film thickness increases from top to bottom, slowly at first and then rapidly. As a simpler model, consider a soap film ($n = 1.33$) contained within a rectangular wire frame. The frame is held vertically so that the film drains downward and forms a wedge with flat faces. The thickness of the film at the top is essentially zero. The film is viewed in reflected white light with near-normal incidence, and the first violet ($\lambda = 420$ nm) interference band is observed 3.00 cm from the top edge of the film. (a) Locate the first red ($\lambda = 680$ nm) interference band. (b) Determine the film thickness at the positions of the violet and red bands. (c) What is the wedge angle of the film?

Challenge Problems

71. Our discussion of the techniques for determining constructive and destructive interference by reflection from a thin film in air has been confined to rays striking the film at nearly normal incidence. **What If?** Assume a ray is incident at an angle of 30.0° (relative to the normal) on a film with index of refraction 1.38 surrounded by vacuum. Calculate the minimum thickness for constructive interference of sodium light with a wavelength of 590 nm.

72. The condition for constructive interference by reflection from a thin film in air as developed in Section 37.5 assumes nearly normal incidence. **What If?** Suppose the light is incident on the film at a nonzero angle θ_1 (relative to the normal). The index of refraction of the film is n, and the film is surrounded by vacuum. Find the condition for constructive interference that relates the thickness t of the film, the index of refraction n of the film, the wavelength λ of the light, and the angle of incidence θ_1.

73. Both sides of a uniform film that has index of refraction n and thickness d are in contact with air. For normal incidence of light, an intensity minimum is observed in the reflected light at λ_2 and an intensity maximum is observed at λ_1, where $\lambda_1 > \lambda_2$. (a) Assuming no intensity minima are observed between λ_1 and λ_2, find an expression for the integer m in Equations 37.17 and 37.18 in terms of the wavelengths λ_1 and λ_2. (b) Assuming $n = 1.40$, $\lambda_1 = 500$ nm, and $\lambda_2 = 370$ nm, determine the best estimate for the thickness of the film.

74. Slit 1 of a double slit is wider than slit 2 so that the light from slit 1 has an amplitude 3.00 times that of the light from slit 2. Show that Equation 37.13 is replaced by the equation $I = I_{max}(1 + 3\cos^2\phi/2)$ for this situation.

75. Monochromatic light of wavelength 620 nm passes through a very narrow slit S and then strikes a screen in which are two parallel slits, S_1 and S_2, as shown in Figure P37.75. Slit S_1 is directly in line with S and at a distance of $L = 1.20$ m away from S, whereas S_2 is displaced a distance d to one side. The light is detected at point P on a second screen, equidistant from S_1 and S_2. When either slit S_1 or S_2 is open, equal light intensities are measured at point P. When both slits are open, the intensity is three times larger. Find the minimum possible value for the slit separation d.

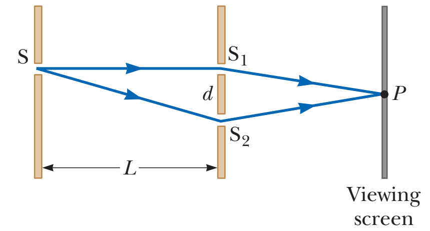


Figure P37.75

76. A plano-convex lens having a radius of curvature of $r = 4.00$ m is placed on a concave glass surface whose radius of curvature is $R = 12.0$ m as shown in Figure P37.76. Assuming 500-nm light is incident normal to the flat surface of the lens, determine the radius of the 100th bright ring.

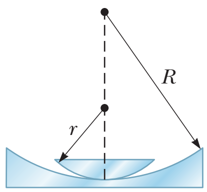


Figure P37.76

CHAPTER

38

Diffraction Patterns and Polarization

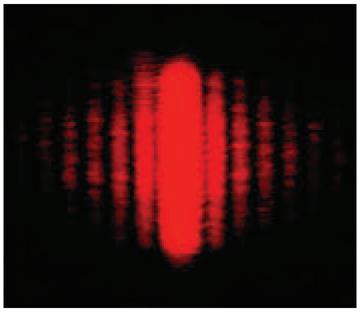
The Hubble Space Telescope does its viewing above the atmosphere and does not suffer from the atmospheric blurring, caused by air turbulence, that plagues ground-based telescopes. Despite this advantage, it does have limitations due to diffraction effects. In this chapter, we show how the wave nature of light limits the ability of any optical system to distinguish between closely spaced objects. *(NASA Hubble Space Telescope Collection)*

When plane light waves pass through a small aperture in an opaque barrier, the aper-ture acts as if it were a point source of light, with waves entering the shadow region behind the barrier. This phenomenon, known as diffraction, was first mentioned in Section 35.3, and can be described only with a wave model for light. In this chapter, we investigate the features of the *diffraction pattern* that occurs when the light from the aperture is allowed to fall upon a screen.

In Chapter 34, we learned that electromagnetic waves are transverse. That is, the electric and magnetic field vectors associated with electromagnetic waves are perpendicular to the direction of wave propagation. In this chapter, we show that under certain conditions these transverse waves with electric field vectors in all possible transverse directions can be *polarized* in various ways. In other words, only certain directions of the electric field vectors are present in the polarized wave.

38.1 Introduction to Diffraction Patterns

In Sections 35.3 and 37.1, we discussed that light of wavelength comparable to or larger than the width of a slit spreads out in all forward directions upon passing through the slit. This phenomenon is called *diffraction*. When light passes through a narrow slit, it spreads beyond the narrow path defined by the slit into regions that would be in shadow if light traveled in straight lines. Other waves, such as sound waves and water waves, also have this property of spreading when passing through apertures or by sharp edges.



Douglas C. Johnson/California State Polytechnic University, Pomona

Figure 38.1 The diffraction pattern that appears on a screen when light passes through a narrow vertical slit. The pattern consists of a broad central fringe and a series of less intense and narrower side fringes.

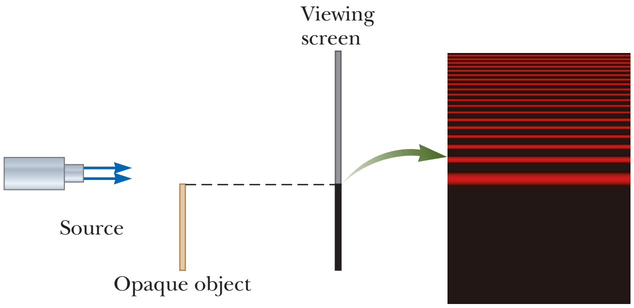
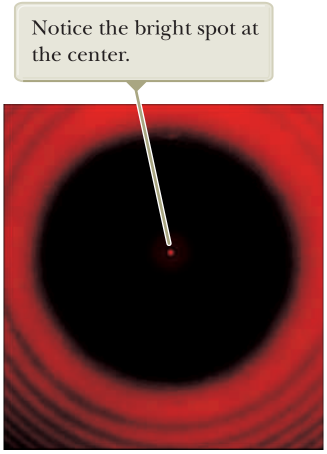


Figure 38.2 Light from a small source passes by the edge of an opaque object and continues on to a screen. A diffraction pattern consisting of bright and dark fringes appears on the screen in the region above the edge of the object.

You might expect that the light passing through a small opening would simply result in a broad region of light on a screen due to the spreading of the light as it passes through the opening. We find something more interesting, however. A **diffraction pattern** consisting of light and dark areas is observed, somewhat similar to the interference patterns discussed earlier. For example, when a narrow slit is placed between a distant light source (or a laser beam) and a screen, the light produces a diffraction pattern like that shown in Figure 38.1. The pattern consists of a broad, intense central band (called the **central maximum**) flanked by a series of narrower, less intense additional bands (called **side maxima** or **secondary maxima**) and a series of intervening dark bands (or **minima**). Figure 38.2 shows a diffraction pattern associated with light passing by the edge of an object. Again we see bright and dark fringes, which is reminiscent of an interference pattern.

Figure 38.3 shows a diffraction pattern associated with the shadow of a penny. A bright spot occurs at the center, and circular fringes extend outward from the shadow's edge. We can explain the central bright spot by using the wave theory of light, which predicts constructive interference at this point. From the viewpoint of ray optics (in which light is viewed as rays traveling in straight lines), we expect the center of the shadow to be dark because that part of the viewing screen is completely shielded by the penny.

Shortly before the central bright spot was first observed, one of the supporters of ray optics, Simeon Poisson, argued that if Augustin Fresnel's wave theory of light were valid, a central bright spot should be observed in the shadow of a circular object illuminated by a point source of light. To Poisson's astonishment, the spot was observed by Dominique Arago shortly thereafter. Therefore, Poisson's prediction reinforced the wave theory rather than disproving it.



P. M. Rinard, *Am. J. Phys.* 44: 70 1976

Figure 38.3 Diffraction pattern created by the illumination of a penny, with the penny positioned midway between the screen and light source.

38.2 Diffraction Patterns from Narrow Slits

Let's consider a common situation, that of light passing through a narrow opening modeled as a slit and projected onto a screen. To simplify our analysis, we assume the observing screen is far from the slit and the rays reaching the screen are approximately parallel. (This situation can also be achieved experimentally by using a converging lens to focus the parallel rays on a nearby screen.) In this model, the pattern on the screen is called a **Fraunhofer diffraction pattern.**[1]

Figure 38.4a (page 1162) shows light entering a single slit from the left and diffracting as it propagates toward a screen. Figure 38.4b shows the fringe structure of

[1]If the screen is brought close to the slit (and no lens is used), the pattern is a *Fresnel* diffraction pattern. The Fresnel pattern is more difficult to analyze, so we shall restrict our discussion to Fraunhofer diffraction.

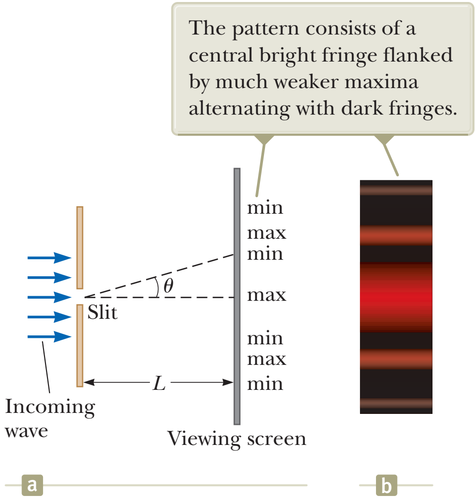


Figure 38.4 (a) Geometry for analyzing the Fraunhofer diffraction pattern of a single slit. (Drawing not to scale.) (b) Simulation of a single-slit Fraunhofer diffraction pattern.

Pitfall Prevention 38.1

Diffraction Versus Diffraction Pattern *Diffraction* refers to the general behavior of waves spreading out as they pass through a slit. We used diffraction in explaining the existence of an interference pattern in Chapter 37. A *diffraction pattern* is actually a misnomer, but is deeply entrenched in the language of physics. The diffraction pattern seen on a screen when a single slit is illuminated is actually another interference pattern. The interference is between parts of the incident light illuminating different regions of the slit.

a Fraunhofer diffraction pattern. A bright fringe is observed along the axis at $\theta = 0$, with alternating dark and bright fringes on each side of the central bright fringe.

Until now, we have assumed slits are point sources of light. In this section, we abandon that assumption and see how the finite width of slits is the basis for understanding Fraunhofer diffraction. We can explain some important features of this phenomenon by examining waves coming from various portions of the slit as shown in Figure 38.5. According to Huygens's principle, each portion of the slit acts as a source of light waves. Hence, light from one portion of the slit can interfere with light from another portion, and the resultant light intensity on a viewing screen depends on the direction θ. Based on this analysis, we recognize that a diffraction pattern is actually an interference pattern in which the different sources of light are different portions of the single slit! Therefore, the diffraction patterns we discuss in this chapter are applications of the waves in interference analysis model.

To analyze the diffraction pattern, let's divide the slit into two halves as shown in Figure 38.5. Keeping in mind that all the waves are in phase as they leave the slit, consider rays 1 and 3. As these two rays travel toward a viewing screen far to the right of the figure, ray 1 travels farther than ray 3 by an amount equal to the path difference $(a/2)\sin\theta$, where a is the width of the slit. Similarly, the path difference between rays 2 and 4 is also $(a/2)\sin\theta$, as is that between rays 3 and 5. If this path difference is exactly half a wavelength (corresponding to a phase difference of 180°), the pairs of waves cancel each other and destructive interference results. This cancellation occurs for any two rays that originate at points separated by half the slit width because the phase difference between two such points is 180°. Therefore, waves from the upper half of the slit interfere destructively with waves from the lower half when

$$\frac{a}{2}\sin\theta = \frac{\lambda}{2}$$

or, if we consider waves at angle θ both above the dashed line in Figure 38.5 and below,

$$\sin\theta = \pm\frac{\lambda}{a}$$

Dividing the slit into four equal parts and using similar reasoning, we find that the viewing screen is also dark when

$$\sin\theta = \pm 2\frac{\lambda}{a}$$

Likewise, dividing the slit into six equal parts shows that darkness occurs on the screen when

$$\sin\theta = \pm 3\frac{\lambda}{a}$$

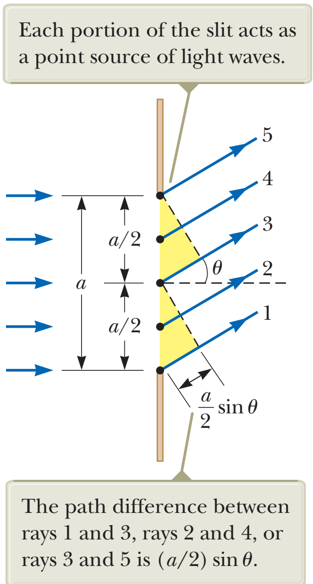


Figure 38.5 Paths of light rays that encounter a narrow slit of width a and diffract toward a screen in the direction described by angle θ (not to scale).

Therefore, the general condition for destructive interference is

$$\sin\theta_{\text{dark}} = m\frac{\lambda}{a} \qquad m = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \ldots \tag{38.1}$$

◀ **Condition for destructive interference for a single slit**

This equation gives the values of θ_{dark} for which the diffraction pattern has zero light intensity, that is, when a dark fringe is formed. It tells us nothing, however, about the variation in light intensity along the screen. The general features of the intensity distribution are shown in Figure 38.4. A broad, central bright fringe is observed; this fringe is flanked by much weaker bright fringes alternating with dark fringes. The various dark fringes occur at the values of θ_{dark} that satisfy Equation 38.1. Each bright-fringe peak lies approximately halfway between its bordering dark-fringe minima. Notice that the central bright maximum is twice as wide as the secondary maxima. There is no central dark fringe, represented by the absence of $m = 0$ in Equation 38.1.

Pitfall Prevention 38.2

Similar Equation Warning! Equation 38.1 has exactly the same form as Equation 37.2, with d, the slit separation, used in Equation 37.2 and a, the slit width, used in Equation 38.1. Equation 37.2, however, describes the *bright* regions in a two-slit interference pattern, whereas Equation 38.1 describes the *dark* regions in a single-slit diffraction pattern.

Quick Quiz 38.1 Suppose the slit width in Figure 38.4 is made half as wide. Does the central bright fringe **(a)** become wider, **(b)** remain the same, or **(c)** become narrower?

Example 38.1 Where Are the Dark Fringes? AM

Light of wavelength 580 nm is incident on a slit having a width of 0.300 mm. The viewing screen is 2.00 m from the slit. Find the width of the central bright fringe.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Based on the problem statement, we imagine a single-slit diffraction pattern similar to that in Figure 38.4.

Categorize We categorize this example as a straightforward application of our discussion of single-slit diffraction patterns, which comes from the *waves in interference* analysis model.

Analyze Evaluate Equation 38.1 for the two dark fringes that flank the central bright fringe, which correspond to $m = \pm 1$:

$$\sin\theta_{\text{dark}} = \pm\frac{\lambda}{a}$$

Let y represent the vertical position along the viewing screen in Figure 38.4a, measured from the point on the screen directly behind the slit. Then, $\tan\theta_{\text{dark}} = y_1/L$, where the subscript 1 refers to the first dark fringe. Because θ_{dark} is very small, we can use the approximation $\sin\theta_{\text{dark}} \approx \tan\theta_{\text{dark}}$; therefore, $y_1 = L\sin\theta_{\text{dark}}$.

The width of the central bright fringe is twice the absolute value of y_1:

$$2|y_1| = 2|L\sin\theta_{\text{dark}}| = 2\left|\pm L\frac{\lambda}{a}\right| = 2L\frac{\lambda}{a} = 2(2.00\text{ m})\frac{580\times10^{-9}\text{ m}}{0.300\times10^{-3}\text{ m}}$$

$$= 7.73\times10^{-3}\text{ m} = \boxed{7.73\text{ mm}}$$

Finalize Notice that this value is much greater than the width of the slit. Let's explore below what happens if we change the slit width.

WHAT IF? What if the slit width is increased by an order of magnitude to 3.00 mm? What happens to the diffraction pattern?

Answer Based on Equation 38.1, we expect that the angles at which the dark bands appear will decrease as a increases. Therefore, the diffraction pattern narrows.

Repeat the calculation with the larger slit width:

$$2|y_1| = 2L\frac{\lambda}{a} = 2(2.00\text{ m})\frac{580\times10^{-9}\text{ m}}{3.00\times10^{-3}\text{ m}} = 7.73\times10^{-4}\text{ m} = \boxed{0.773\text{ mm}}$$

Notice that this result is *smaller* than the width of the slit. In general, for large values of a, the various maxima and minima are so closely spaced that only a large, central bright area resembling the geometric image of the slit is observed. This concept is very important in the performance of optical instruments such as telescopes.

Intensity of Single-Slit Diffraction Patterns

Analysis of the intensity variation in a diffraction pattern from a single slit of width a shows that the intensity is given by

Intensity of a single-slit Fraunhofer diffraction pattern

$$I = I_{\max}\left[\frac{\sin(\pi a \sin\theta/\lambda)}{\pi a \sin\theta/\lambda}\right]^2 \quad \textbf{(38.2)}$$

where $I_{\max}$ is the intensity at $\theta = 0$ (the central maximum) and λ is the wavelength of light used to illuminate the slit. This expression shows that *minima* occur when

$$\frac{\pi a \sin\theta_{\text{dark}}}{\lambda} = m\pi$$

or

Condition for intensity minima for a single slit

$$\sin\theta_{\text{dark}} = m\frac{\lambda}{a} \qquad m = \pm1, \pm2, \pm3, \ldots$$

in agreement with Equation 38.1.

Figure 38.6a represents a plot of the intensity in the single-slit pattern as given by Equation 38.2, and Figure 38.6b is a simulation of a single-slit Fraunhofer diffraction pattern. Notice that most of the light intensity is concentrated in the central bright fringe.

Intensity of Two-Slit Diffraction Patterns

When more than one slit is present, we must consider not only diffraction patterns due to the individual slits but also the interference patterns due to the waves coming from different slits. Notice the curved dashed lines in Figure 37.7 in Chapter 37, which indicate a decrease in intensity of the interference maxima as θ increases. This decrease is due to a diffraction pattern. The interference patterns in that figure are located entirely within the central bright fringe of the diffraction pattern, so the only hint of the diffraction pattern we see is the falloff in intensity toward the outside of the pattern. To determine the effects of both two-slit interference and a single-slit diffraction pattern from each slit from a wider viewpoint than that in Figure 37.7, we combine Equations 37.14 and 38.2:

$$I = I_{\max}\cos^2\left(\frac{\pi d \sin\theta}{\lambda}\right)\left[\frac{\sin(\pi a \sin\theta/\lambda)}{\pi a \sin\theta/\lambda}\right]^2 \quad \textbf{(38.3)}$$

Although this expression looks complicated, it merely represents the single-slit diffraction pattern (the factor in square brackets) acting as an "envelope" for a two-slit interference pattern (the cosine-squared factor) as shown in Figure 38.7. The broken

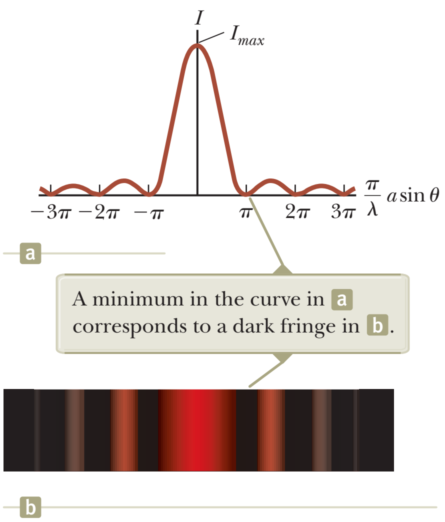


Figure 38.6 (a) A plot of light intensity I versus $(\pi/\lambda)a\sin\theta$ for the single-slit Fraunhofer diffraction pattern. (b) Simulation of a single-slit Fraunhofer diffraction pattern.

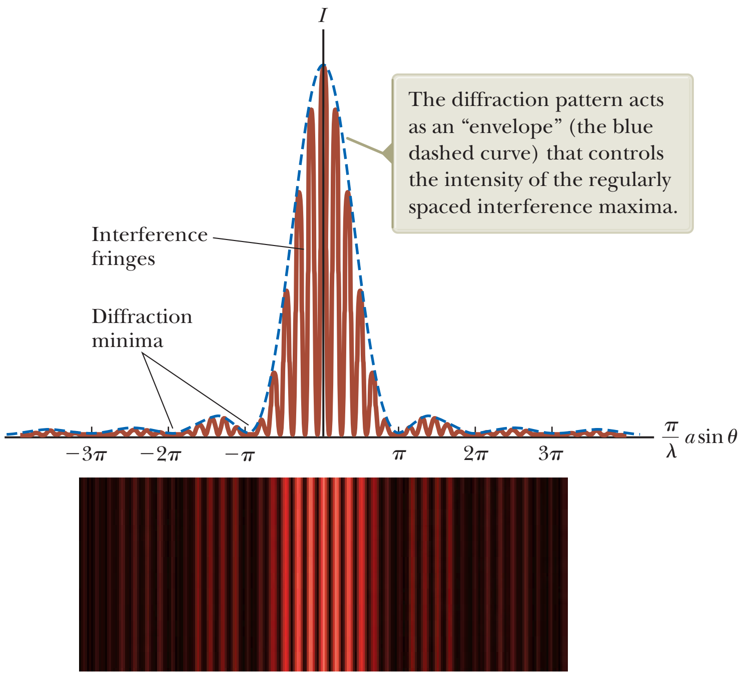


Figure 38.7 The combined effects of two-slit and single-slit interference. This pattern is produced when 650-nm light waves pass through two 3.0-μm slits that are 18 μm apart.

blue curve in Figure 38.7 represents the factor in square brackets in Equation 38.3. The cosine-squared factor by itself would give a series of peaks all with the same height as the highest peak of the red-brown curve in Figure 38.7. Because of the effect of the square-bracket factor, however, these peaks vary in height as shown.

Equation 37.2 indicates the conditions for interference maxima as $d \sin\theta = m\lambda$, where d is the distance between the two slits. Equation 38.1 specifies that the first diffraction minimum occurs when $a \sin\theta = \lambda$, where a is the slit width. Dividing Equation 37.2 by Equation 38.1 (with $m = 1$) allows us to determine which interference maximum coincides with the first diffraction minimum:

$$\frac{d \sin\theta}{a \sin\theta} = \frac{m\lambda}{\lambda}$$

$$\frac{d}{a} = m \qquad \textbf{(38.4)}$$

In Figure 38.7, $d/a = 18\ \mu\text{m}/3.0\ \mu\text{m} = 6$. Therefore, the sixth interference maximum (if we count the central maximum as $m = 0$) is aligned with the first diffraction minimum and is dark.

Quick Quiz 38.2 Consider the central peak in the diffraction envelope in Figure 38.7 and look closely at the horizontal scale. Suppose the wavelength of the light is changed to 450 nm. What happens to this central peak? **(a)** The width of the peak decreases, and the number of interference fringes it encloses decreases. **(b)** The width of the peak decreases, and the number of interference fringes it encloses increases. **(c)** The width of the peak decreases, and the number of interference fringes it encloses remains the same. **(d)** The width of the peak increases, and the number of interference fringes it encloses decreases. **(e)** The width of the peak increases, and the number of interference fringes it encloses increases. **(f)** The width of the peak increases, and the number of interference fringes it encloses remains the same. **(g)** The width of the peak remains the same, and the number of interference fringes it encloses decreases. **(h)** The width of the peak remains the same, and the number of interference fringes it encloses increases. **(i)** The width of the peak remains the same, and the number of interference fringes it encloses remains the same.

38.3 Resolution of Single-Slit and Circular Apertures

The ability of optical systems to distinguish between closely spaced objects is limited because of the wave nature of light. To understand this limitation, consider Figure 38.8, which shows two light sources far from a narrow slit of width a. The sources can be two noncoherent point sources S_1 and S_2; for example, they could be two distant stars. If no interference occurred between light passing through different parts of the slit, two distinct bright spots (or images) would be observed on the viewing screen. Because of such interference, however, each source is imaged as a bright central region flanked by weaker bright and dark fringes, a diffraction pattern. What is observed on the screen is the sum of two diffraction patterns: one from S_1 and the other from S_2.

If the two sources are far enough apart to keep their central maxima from overlapping as in Figure 38.8a, their images can be distinguished and are said to be *resolved.* If the sources are close together as in Figure 38.8b, however, the two central maxima overlap and the images are not resolved. To determine whether two images are resolved, the following condition is often used:

> When the central maximum of one image falls on the first minimum of another image, the images are said to be just resolved. This limiting condition of resolution is known as **Rayleigh's criterion.**

From Rayleigh's criterion, we can determine the minimum angular separation $\theta_{\min}$ subtended by the sources at the slit in Figure 38.8 for which the images are just resolved. Equation 38.1 indicates that the first minimum in a single-slit diffraction pattern occurs at the angle for which

$$\sin \theta = \frac{\lambda}{a}$$

where a is the width of the slit. According to Rayleigh's criterion, this expression gives the smallest angular separation for which the two images are resolved. Because $\lambda << a$ in most situations, $\sin \theta$ is small and we can use the approximation $\sin \theta \approx \theta$. Therefore, the limiting angle of resolution for a slit of width a is

$$\theta_{\min} = \frac{\lambda}{a} \tag{38.5}$$

where $\theta_{\min}$ is expressed in radians. Hence, the angle subtended by the two sources at the slit must be greater than λ/a if the images are to be resolved.

Many optical systems use circular apertures rather than slits. The diffraction pattern of a circular aperture as shown in the photographs of Figure 38.9 consists of

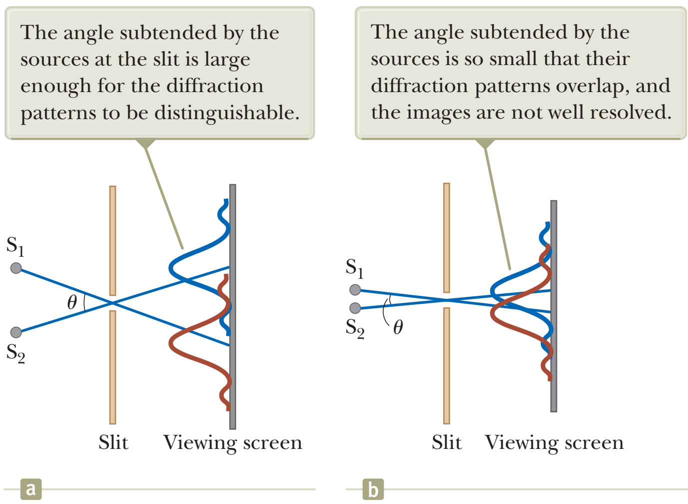


Figure 38.8 Two point sources far from a narrow slit each produce a diffraction pattern. (a) The sources are separated by a large angle. (b) The sources are separated by a small angle. (Notice that the angles are greatly exaggerated. The drawing is not to scale.)

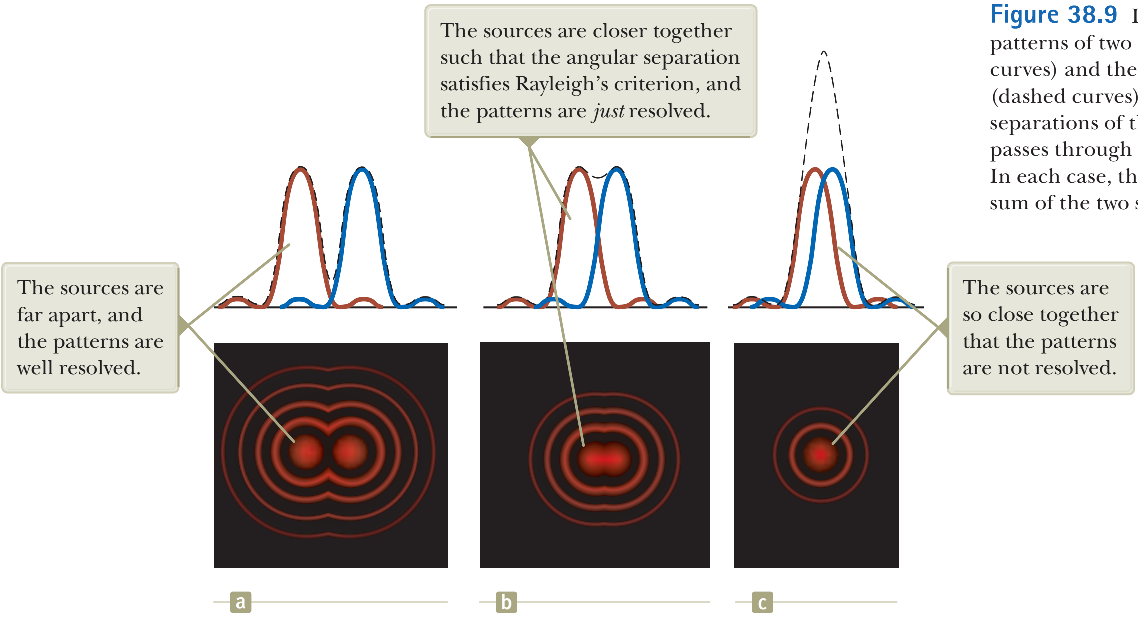


Figure 38.9 Individual diffraction patterns of two point sources (solid curves) and the resultant patterns (dashed curves) for various angular separations of the sources as the light passes through a circular aperture. In each case, the dashed curve is the sum of the two solid curves.

a central circular bright disk surrounded by progressively fainter bright and dark rings. Figure 38.9 shows diffraction patterns for three situations in which light from two point sources passes through a circular aperture. When the sources are far apart, their images are well resolved (Fig. 38.9a). When the angular separation of the sources satisfies Rayleigh's criterion, the images are just resolved (Fig. 38.9b). Finally, when the sources are close together, the images are said to be unresolved (Fig. 38.9c) and the pattern looks like that of a single source.

Analysis shows that the limiting angle of resolution of the circular aperture is

$$\theta_{\min} = 1.22\,\frac{\lambda}{D} \tag{38.6}$$

◀ **Limiting angle of resolution for a circular aperture**

where D is the diameter of the aperture. This expression is similar to Equation 38.5 except for the factor 1.22, which arises from a mathematical analysis of diffraction from the circular aperture.

Quick Quiz 38.3 Cat's eyes have pupils that can be modeled as vertical slits. At night, would cats be more successful in resolving **(a)** headlights on a distant car or **(b)** vertically separated lights on the mast of a distant boat?

Quick Quiz 38.4 Suppose you are observing a binary star with a telescope and are having difficulty resolving the two stars. You decide to use a colored filter to maximize the resolution. (A filter of a given color transmits only that color of light.) What color filter should you choose? **(a)** blue **(b)** green **(c)** yellow **(d)** red

Example 38.2 Resolution of the Eye

Light of wavelength 500 nm, near the center of the visible spectrum, enters a human eye. Although pupil diameter varies from person to person, let's estimate a daytime diameter of 2 mm.

(A) Estimate the limiting angle of resolution for this eye, assuming its resolution is limited only by diffraction.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Identify the pupil of the eye as the aperture through which the light travels. Light passing through this small aperture causes diffraction patterns to occur on the retina.

Categorize We determine the result using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

continued

38.2 continued

Use Equation 38.6, taking $\lambda = 500$ nm and $D = 2$ mm:

$$\theta_{\min} = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{D} = 1.22\left(\frac{5.00 \times 10^{-7}\text{ m}}{2 \times 10^{-3}\text{ m}}\right)$$

$$= \boxed{3 \times 10^{-4}\text{ rad}} \approx \boxed{1\text{ min of arc}}$$

(B) Determine the minimum separation distance d between two point sources that the eye can distinguish if the point sources are a distance $L = 25$ cm from the observer (Fig. 38.10).

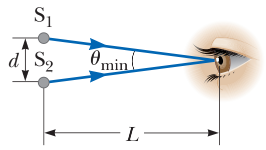


Figure 38.10 (Example 38.2) Two point sources separated by a distance d as observed by the eye.

SOLUTION

Noting that $\theta_{\min}$ is small, find d:

$$\sin\theta_{\min} \approx \theta_{\min} \approx \frac{d}{L} \rightarrow d = L\theta_{\min}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$d = (25\text{ cm})(3 \times 10^{-4}\text{ rad}) = \boxed{8 \times 10^{-3}\text{ cm}}$$

This result is approximately equal to the thickness of a human hair.

Example 38.3 Resolution of a Telescope

Each of the two telescopes at the Keck Observatory on the dormant Mauna Kea volcano in Hawaii has an effective diameter of 10 m. What is its limiting angle of resolution for 600-nm light?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Identify the aperture through which the light travels as the opening of the telescope. Light passing through this aperture causes diffraction patterns to occur in the final image.

Categorize We determine the result using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 38.6, taking $\lambda = 6.00 \times 10^{-7}$ m and $D = 10$ m:

$$\theta_{\min} = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{D} = 1.22\left(\frac{6.00 \times 10^{-7}\text{ m}}{10\text{ m}}\right)$$

$$= \boxed{7.3 \times 10^{-8}\text{ rad}} \approx \boxed{0.015\text{ s of arc}}$$

Any two stars that subtend an angle greater than or equal to this value are resolved (if atmospheric conditions are ideal).

WHAT IF? What if we consider radio telescopes? They are much larger in diameter than optical telescopes, but do they have better angular resolutions than optical telescopes? For example, the radio telescope at Arecibo, Puerto Rico, has a diameter of 305 m and is designed to detect radio waves of 0.75-m wavelength. How does its resolution compare with that of one of the Keck telescopes?

Answer The increase in diameter might suggest that radio telescopes would have better resolution than a Keck telescope, but Equation 38.6 shows that $\theta_{\min}$ depends on *both* diameter and wavelength. Calculating the minimum angle of resolution for the radio telescope, we find

$$\theta_{\min} = 1.22\frac{\lambda}{D} = 1.22\left(\frac{0.75\text{ m}}{305\text{ m}}\right)$$

$$= 3.0 \times 10^{-3}\text{ rad} \approx 10\text{ min of arc}$$

This limiting angle of resolution is measured in *minutes* of arc rather than the *seconds* of arc for the optical telescope. Therefore, the change in wavelength more than compensates for the increase in diameter. The limiting angle of resolution for the Arecibo radio telescope is more than 40 000 times larger (that is, *worse*) than the Keck minimum.

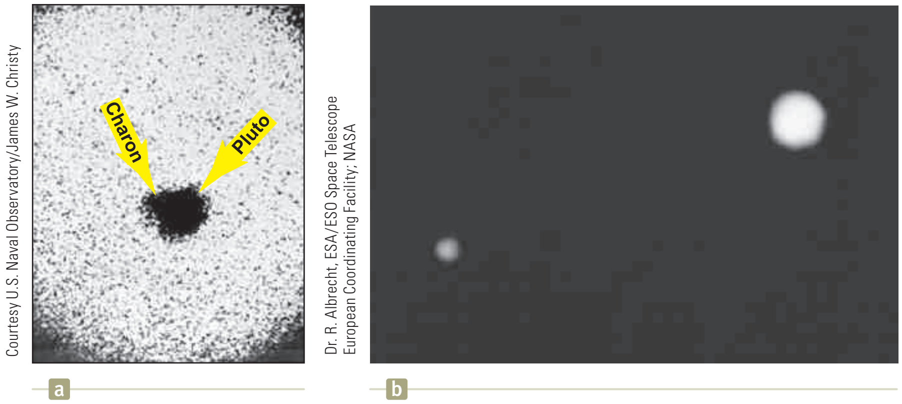


Figure 38.11 (a) The photograph on which Charon, the moon of Pluto, was discovered in 1978. From an Earth-based telescope, atmospheric blurring results in Charon appearing only as a subtle bump on the edge of Pluto. (b) A Hubble Space Telescope photo of Pluto and Charon, clearly resolving the two objects.

A telescope such as the one discussed in Example 38.3 can never reach its diffraction limit because the limiting angle of resolution is always set by atmospheric blurring at optical wavelengths. This seeing limit is usually about 1 s of arc and is never smaller than about 0.1 s of arc. The atmospheric blurring is caused by variations in index of refraction with temperature variations in the air. This blurring is one reason for the superiority of photographs from orbiting telescopes, which view celestial objects from a position above the atmosphere.

As an example of the effects of atmospheric blurring, consider telescopic images of Pluto and its moon, Charon. Figure 38.11a, an image taken in 1978, represents the discovery of Charon. In this photograph, taken from an Earth-based telescope, atmospheric turbulence causes the image of Charon to appear only as a bump on the edge of Pluto. In comparison, Figure 38.11b shows a photograph taken from the Hubble Space Telescope. Without the problems of atmospheric turbulence, Pluto and its moon are clearly resolved.

38.4 The Diffraction Grating

The **diffraction grating,** a useful device for analyzing light sources, consists of a large number of equally spaced parallel slits. A *transmission grating* can be made by cutting parallel grooves on a glass plate with a precision ruling machine. The spaces between the grooves are transparent to the light and hence act as separate slits. A *reflection grating* can be made by cutting parallel grooves on the surface of a reflective material. The reflection of light from the spaces between the grooves is specular, and the reflection from the grooves cut into the material is diffuse. Therefore, the spaces between the grooves act as parallel sources of reflected light like the slits in a transmission grating. Current technology can produce gratings that have very small slit spacings. For example, a typical grating ruled with 5 000 grooves/cm has a slit spacing $d = (1/5\,000)$ cm $= 2.00 \times 10^{-4}$ cm.

A section of a diffraction grating is illustrated in Figure 38.12 (page 1170). A plane wave is incident from the left, normal to the plane of the grating. The pattern observed on the screen far to the right of the grating is the result of the combined effects of interference and diffraction. Each slit produces diffraction, and the diffracted beams interfere with one another to produce the final pattern.

The waves from all slits are in phase as they leave the slits. For an arbitrary direction θ measured from the horizontal, however, the waves must travel different path lengths before reaching the screen. Notice in Figure 38.12 that the path difference δ between rays from any two adjacent slits is equal to $d \sin \theta$. If this path difference equals one wavelength or some integral multiple of a wavelength, waves from all slits are in phase at the screen and a bright fringe is observed. Therefore, the condition for *maxima* in the interference pattern at the angle θ_{bright} is

$$d \sin \theta_{\text{bright}} = m\lambda \quad m = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \ldots \tag{38.7}$$

◀ **Condition for interference maxima for a grating**

Pitfall Prevention 38.3

A Diffraction Grating Is an Interference Grating As with *diffraction pattern, diffraction grating* is a misnomer, but is deeply entrenched in the language of physics. The diffraction grating depends on diffraction in the same way as the double slit, spreading the light so that light from different slits can interfere. It would be more correct to call it an *interference grating,* but *diffraction grating* is the name in use.

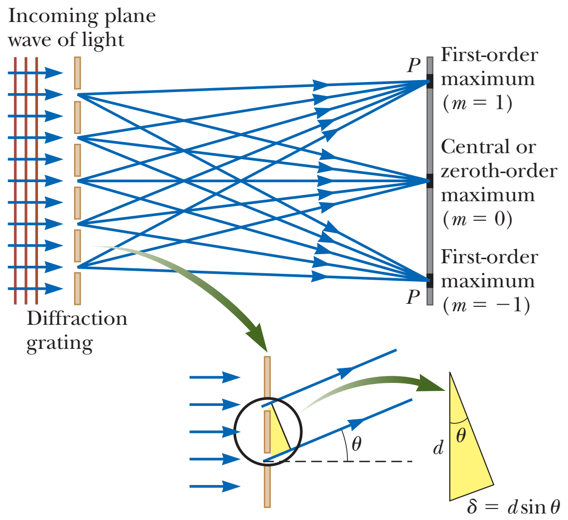


Figure 38.12 Side view of a diffraction grating. The slit separation is d, and the path difference between adjacent slits is $d \sin \theta$.

We can use this expression to calculate the wavelength if we know the grating spacing d and the angle θ_{bright}. If the incident radiation contains several wavelengths, the mth-order maximum for each wavelength occurs at a specific angle. All wavelengths are seen at $\theta = 0$, corresponding to $m = 0$, the zeroth-order maximum. The first-order maximum ($m = 1$) is observed at an angle that satisfies the relationship $\sin \theta_{\text{bright}} = \lambda/d$, the second-order maximum ($m = 2$) is observed at a larger angle θ_{bright}, and so on. For the small values of d typical in a diffraction grating, the angles θ_{bright} are large, as we see in Example 38.5.

The intensity distribution for a diffraction grating obtained with the use of a monochromatic source is shown in Figure 38.13. Notice the sharpness of the principal maxima and the broadness of the dark areas compared with the broad bright fringes characteristic of the two-slit interference pattern (see Fig. 37.6). You should also review Figure 37.7, which shows that the width of the intensity maxima decreases as the number of slits increases. Because the principal maxima are so sharp, they are much brighter than two-slit interference maxima.

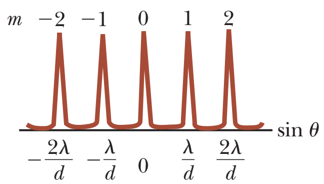


Figure 38.13 Intensity versus $\sin \theta$ for a diffraction grating. The zeroth-, first-, and second-order maxima are shown.

Quick Quiz 38.5 Ultraviolet light of wavelength 350 nm is incident on a diffraction grating with slit spacing d and forms an interference pattern on a screen a distance L away. The angular positions θ_{bright} of the interference maxima are large. The locations of the bright fringes are marked on the screen. Now red light of wavelength 700 nm is used with a diffraction grating to form another diffraction pattern on the screen. Will the bright fringes of this pattern be located at the marks on the screen if **(a)** the screen is moved to a distance $2L$ from the grating, **(b)** the screen is moved to a distance $L/2$ from the grating, **(c)** the grating is replaced with one of slit spacing $2d$, **(d)** the grating is replaced with one of slit spacing $d/2$, or **(e)** nothing is changed?

Conceptual Example 38.4 A Compact Disc Is a Diffraction Grating

Light reflected from the surface of a compact disc is multicolored as shown in Figure 38.14. The colors and their intensities depend on the orientation of the CD relative to the eye and relative to the light source. Explain how that works.

Carlos E. Santa Maria/Shutterstock.com

Figure 38.14 (Conceptual Example 38.4) A compact disc observed under white light. The colors observed in the reflected light and their intensities depend on the orientation of the CD relative to the eye and relative to the light source.

SOLUTION

The surface of a CD has a spiral grooved track (with adjacent grooves having a separation on

38.4 continued

the order of 1 μm). Therefore, the surface acts as a reflection grating. The light reflecting from the regions between these closely spaced grooves interferes constructively only in certain directions that depend on the wavelength and the direction of the incident light. Any section of the CD serves as a diffraction grating for white light, sending different colors in different directions. The different colors you see upon viewing one section change when the light source, the CD, or you change position. This change in position causes the angle of incidence or the angle of the diffracted light to be altered.

Example 38.5 The Orders of a Diffraction Grating

Monochromatic light from a helium–neon laser ($\lambda = 632.8$ nm) is incident normally on a diffraction grating containing 6 000 grooves per centimeter. Find the angles at which the first- and second-order maxima are observed.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 38.12 and imagine that the light coming from the left originates from the helium–neon laser. Let's evaluate the possible values of the angle θ for constructive interference.

Categorize We determine results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Calculate the slit separation as the inverse of the number of grooves per centimeter:

$$d = \frac{1}{6\,000}\text{ cm} = 1.667 \times 10^{-4}\text{ cm} = 1\,667\text{ nm}$$

Solve Equation 38.7 for sin θ and substitute numerical values for the first-order maximum ($m = 1$) to find θ_1:

$$\sin\theta_1 = \frac{(1)\lambda}{d} = \frac{632.8\text{ nm}}{1\,667\text{ nm}} = 0.379\,7$$

$$\theta_1 = \boxed{22.31°}$$

Repeat for the second-order maximum ($m = 2$):

$$\sin\theta_2 = \frac{(2)\lambda}{d} = \frac{2(632.8\text{ nm})}{1\,667\text{ nm}} = 0.759\,4$$

$$\theta_2 = \boxed{49.41°}$$

WHAT IF? What if you looked for the third-order maximum? Would you find it?

Answer For $m = 3$, we find $\sin\theta_3 = 1.139$. Because sin θ cannot exceed unity, this result does not represent a realistic solution. Hence, only zeroth-, first-, and second-order maxima can be observed for this situation.

Applications of Diffraction Gratings

A schematic drawing of a simple apparatus used to measure angles in a diffraction pattern is shown in Figure 38.15 (page 1172). This apparatus is a *diffraction grating spectrometer*. The light to be analyzed passes through a slit, and a collimated beam of light is incident on the grating. The diffracted light leaves the grating at angles that satisfy Equation 38.7, and a telescope is used to view the image of the slit. The wavelength can be determined by measuring the precise angles at which the images of the slit appear for the various orders.

The spectrometer is a useful tool in *atomic spectroscopy*, in which the light from an atom is analyzed to find the wavelength components. These wavelength components can be used to identify the atom. We shall investigate atomic spectra in Chapter 42 of the extended version of this text.

Another application of diffraction gratings is the *grating light valve* (GLV), which competes in some video display applications with the digital micromirror devices (DMDs) discussed in Section 35.4. A GLV is a silicon microchip fitted with an array

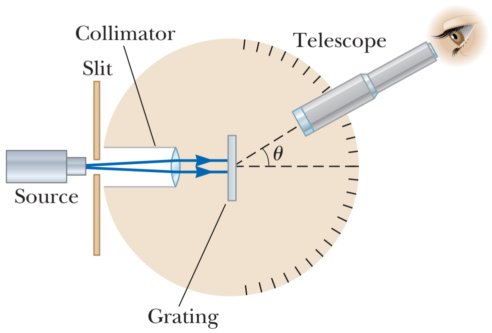
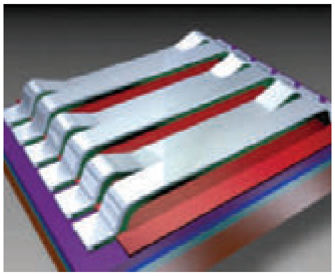


Figure 38.15 Diagram of a diffraction grating spectrometer. The collimated beam incident on the grating is spread into its various wavelength components with constructive interference for a particular wavelength occurring at the angles θ_{bright} that satisfy the equation $d \sin \theta_{\text{bright}} = m\lambda$, where $m = 0, \pm1, \pm2, \ldots$.



Courtesy Silicon Light Machines

Figure 38.16 A small portion of a grating light valve. The alternating reflective ribbons at different levels act as a diffraction grating, offering very high-speed control of the direction of light toward a digital display device.

of parallel silicon nitride ribbons coated with a thin layer of aluminum (Fig. 38.16). Each ribbon is approximately 20 μm long and 5 μm wide and is separated from the silicon substrate by an air gap on the order of 100 nm. With no voltage applied, all ribbons are at the same level. In this situation, the array of ribbons acts as a flat surface, specularly reflecting incident light.

When a voltage is applied between a ribbon and the electrode on the silicon substrate, an electric force pulls the ribbon downward, closer to the substrate. Alternate ribbons can be pulled down, while those in between remain in an elevated configuration. As a result, the array of ribbons acts as a diffraction grating such that the constructive interference for a particular wavelength of light can be directed toward a screen or other optical display system. If one uses three such devices—one each for red, blue, and green light—full-color display is possible.

In addition to its use in video display, the GLV has found applications in laser optical navigation sensor technology, computer-to-plate commercial printing, and other types of imaging.

Another interesting application of diffraction gratings is **holography,** the production of three-dimensional images of objects. The physics of holography was developed by Dennis Gabor (1900–1979) in 1948 and resulted in the Nobel Prize in Physics for Gabor in 1971. The requirement of coherent light for holography delayed the realization of holographic images from Gabor's work until the development of lasers in the 1960s. Figure 38.17 shows a single hologram viewed from two different positions and the three-dimensional character of its image. Notice in particular the difference in the view through the magnifying glass in Figures 38.17a and 38.17b.

Figure 38.18 shows how a hologram is made. Light from the laser is split into two parts by a half-silvered mirror at *B*. One part of the beam reflects off the object to be photographed and strikes an ordinary photographic film. The other half of the beam is diverged by lens L_2, reflects from mirrors M_1 and M_2, and finally

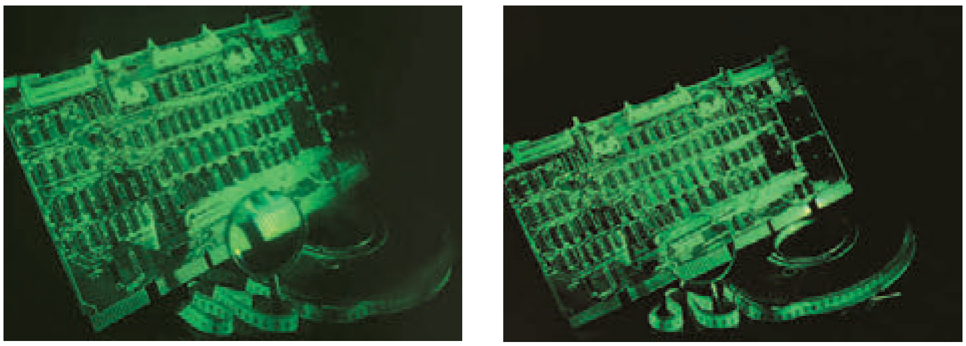


Photo by Ronald R. Erickson; hologram by Nicklaus Phillips

a b

Figure 38.17 In this hologram, a circuit board is shown from two different views. Notice the difference in the appearance of the measuring tape and the view through the magnifying lens in (a) and (b).

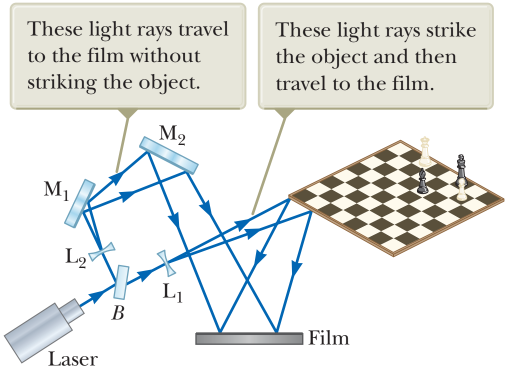


Figure 38.18 Experimental arrangement for producing a hologram.

strikes the film. The two beams overlap to form an extremely complicated interference pattern on the film. Such an interference pattern can be produced only if the phase relationship of the two waves is constant throughout the exposure of the film. This condition is met by illuminating the scene with light coming through a pinhole or with coherent laser radiation. The hologram records not only the intensity of the light scattered from the object (as in a conventional photograph), but also the phase difference between the reference beam and the beam scattered from the object. Because of this phase difference, an interference pattern is formed that produces an image in which all three-dimensional information available from the perspective of any point on the hologram is preserved.

In a normal photographic image, a lens is used to focus the image so that each point on the object corresponds to a single point on the photograph. Notice that there is no lens used in Figure 38.18 to focus the light onto the film. Therefore, light from each point on the object reaches *all* points on the film. As a result, each region of the photographic film on which the hologram is recorded contains information about all illuminated points on the object, which leads to a remarkable result: if a small section of the hologram is cut from the film, the complete image can be formed from the small piece! (The quality of the image is reduced, but the entire image is present.)

A hologram is best viewed by allowing coherent light to pass through the developed film as one looks back along the direction from which the beam comes. The interference pattern on the film acts as a diffraction grating. Figure 38.19 shows two rays of light striking and passing through the film. For each ray, the $m = 0$ and $m = \pm 1$ rays in the diffraction pattern are shown emerging from the right side of the film. The $m = +1$ rays converge to form a real image of the scene, which is not the image that is normally viewed. By extending the light rays corresponding to $m = -1$ behind the film, we see that there is a virtual image located there, with light coming from it in exactly the same way that light came from the actual object

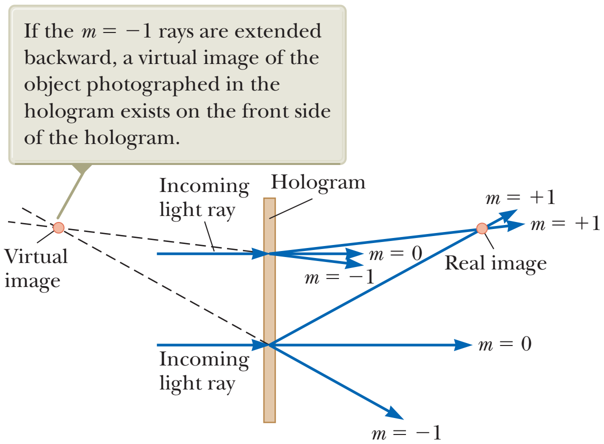


Figure 38.19 Two light rays strike a hologram at normal incidence. For each ray, outgoing rays corresponding to $m = 0$ and $m = \pm 1$ are shown.

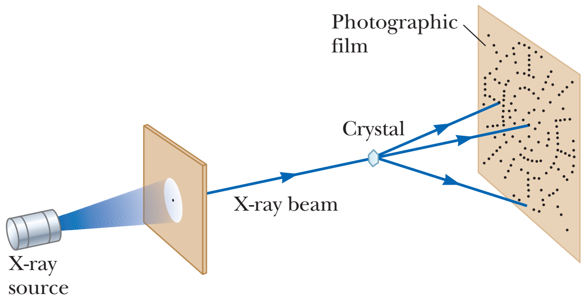


Figure 38.20 Schematic diagram of the technique used to observe the diffraction of x-rays by a crystal. The array of spots formed on the film is called a Laue pattern.

when the film was exposed. This image is what one sees when looking through the holographic film.

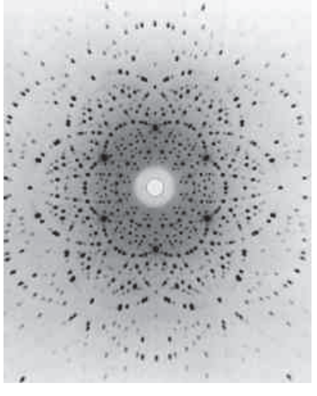
Holograms are finding a number of applications. You may have a hologram on your credit card. This special type of hologram is called a *rainbow hologram* and is designed to be viewed in reflected white light.

38.5 Diffraction of X-Rays by Crystals

In principle, the wavelength of any electromagnetic wave can be determined if a grating of the proper spacing (on the order of λ) is available. X-rays, discovered by Wilhelm Roentgen (1845–1923) in 1895, are electromagnetic waves of very short wavelength (on the order of 0.1 nm). It would be impossible to construct a grating having such a small spacing by the cutting process described at the beginning of Section 38.4. The atomic spacing in a solid is known to be about 0.1 nm, however. In 1913, Max von Laue (1879–1960) suggested that the regular array of atoms in a crystal could act as a three-dimensional diffraction grating for x-rays. Subsequent experiments confirmed this prediction. The diffraction patterns from crystals are complex because of the three-dimensional nature of the crystal structure. Nevertheless, x-ray diffraction has proved to be an invaluable technique for elucidating these structures and for understanding the structure of matter.

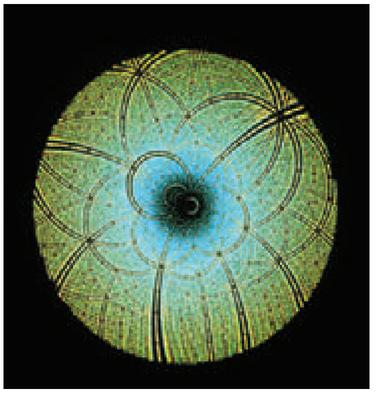
Figure 38.20 shows one experimental arrangement for observing x-ray diffraction from a crystal. A collimated beam of monochromatic x-rays is incident on a crystal. The diffracted beams are very intense in certain directions, corresponding to constructive interference from waves reflected from layers of atoms in the crystal. The diffracted beams, which can be detected by a photographic film, form an array of spots known as a *Laue pattern* as in Figure 38.21a. One can deduce the crystalline structure by analyzing the positions and intensities of the various spots in the pattern. Figure 38.21b shows a Laue pattern from a crystalline enzyme, using a wide range of wavelengths so that a swirling pattern results.

Used with permission of Eastman Kodak Company



a

© I. Andersson Oxford Molecular Biophysics Laboratory/Science Photo Library/Photo Researchers, Inc.



b

Figure 38.21 (a) A Laue pattern of a single crystal of the mineral beryl (beryllium aluminum silicate). Each dot represents a point of constructive interference. (b) A Laue pattern of the enzyme Rubisco, produced with a wide-band x-ray spectrum. This enzyme is present in plants and takes part in the process of photosynthesis. The Laue pattern is used to determine the crystal structure of Rubisco.

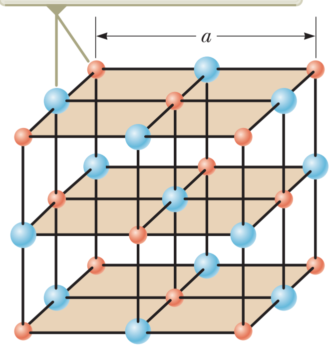


Figure 38.22 Crystalline structure of sodium chloride (NaCl). The length of the cube edge is $a = 0.562\ 737$ nm.

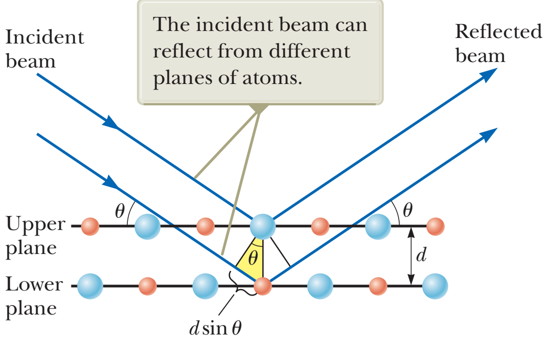


Figure 38.23 A two-dimensional description of the reflection of an x-ray beam from two parallel crystalline planes separated by a distance d. The beam reflected from the lower plane travels farther than the beam reflected from the upper plane by a distance $2d \sin \theta$.

The arrangement of atoms in a crystal of sodium chloride (NaCl) is shown in Figure 38.22. Each unit cell (the geometric solid that repeats throughout the crystal) is a cube having an edge length a. A careful examination of the NaCl structure shows that the ions lie in discrete planes (the shaded areas in Fig. 38.22). Now suppose an incident x-ray beam makes an angle θ with one of the planes as in Figure 38.23. The beam can be reflected from both the upper plane and the lower one, but the beam reflected from the lower plane travels farther than the beam reflected from the upper plane. The effective path difference is $2d \sin \theta$. The two beams reinforce each other (constructive interference) when this path difference equals some integer multiple of λ. The same is true for reflection from the entire family of parallel planes. Hence, the condition for *constructive* interference (maxima in the reflected beam) is

$$2d \sin \theta = m\lambda \quad m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{38.8}$$

◀ **Bragg's law**

This condition is known as **Bragg's law,** after W. L. Bragg (1890–1971), who first derived the relationship. If the wavelength and diffraction angle are measured, Equation 38.8 can be used to calculate the spacing between atomic planes.

Pitfall Prevention 38.4

Different Angles Notice in Figure 38.23 that the angle θ is measured from the reflecting surface rather than from the normal as in the case of the law of reflection in Chapter 35. With slits and diffraction gratings, we also measured the angle θ from the normal to the array of slits. Because of historical tradition, the angle is measured differently in Bragg diffraction, so interpret Equation 38.8 with care.

38.6 Polarization of Light Waves

In Chapter 34, we described the transverse nature of light and all other electromagnetic waves. Polarization, discussed in this section, is firm evidence of this transverse nature.

An ordinary beam of light consists of a large number of waves emitted by the atoms of the light source. Each atom produces a wave having some particular orientation of the electric field vector $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$, corresponding to the direction of atomic vibration. The *direction of polarization* of each individual wave is defined to be the direction in which the electric field is vibrating. In Figure 38.24, this direction happens to lie along the y axis. All individual electromagnetic waves traveling in the x direction have an $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ vector parallel to the yz plane, but this vector could be at any possible angle with respect to the y axis. Because all directions of vibration from a wave source are possible, the resultant electromagnetic wave is a superposition of waves vibrating in many different directions. The result is an **unpolarized** light beam, represented in Figure 38.25a (page 1176). The direction of wave propagation in this figure is perpendicular to the page. The arrows show a few possible

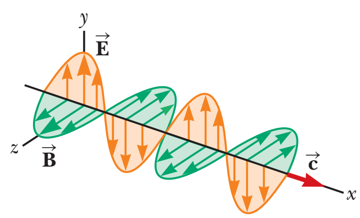


Figure 38.24 Schematic diagram of an electromagnetic wave propagating at velocity $\vec{\mathbf{c}}$ in the x direction. The electric field vibrates in the xy plane, and the magnetic field vibrates in the xz plane.

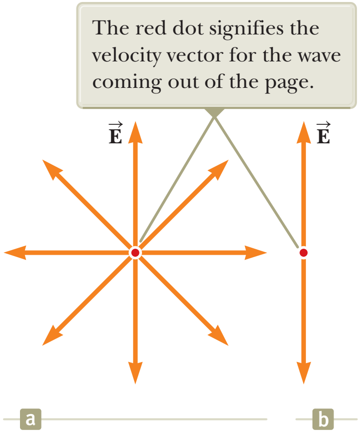


Figure 38.25 (a) A representation of an unpolarized light beam viewed along the direction of propagation. The transverse electric field can vibrate in any direction in the plane of the page with equal probability. (b) A linearly polarized light beam with the electric field vibrating in the vertical direction.

directions of the electric field vectors for the individual waves making up the resultant beam. At any given point and at some instant of time, all these individual electric field vectors add to give one resultant electric field vector.

As noted in Section 34.3, a wave is said to be **linearly polarized** if the resultant electric field $\vec{E}$ vibrates in the same direction *at all times* at a particular point as shown in Figure 38.25b. (Sometimes, such a wave is described as *plane-polarized,* or simply *polarized.*) The plane formed by $\vec{E}$ and the direction of propagation is called the *plane of polarization* of the wave. If the wave in Figure 38.24 represents the resultant of all individual waves, the plane of polarization is the *xy* plane.

A linearly polarized beam can be obtained from an unpolarized beam by removing all waves from the beam except those whose electric field vectors oscillate in a single plane. We now discuss four processes for producing polarized light from unpolarized light.

Polarization by Selective Absorption

The most common technique for producing polarized light is to use a material that transmits waves whose electric fields vibrate in a plane parallel to a certain direction and that absorbs waves whose electric fields vibrate in all other directions.

In 1938, E. H. Land (1909–1991) discovered a material, which he called *Polaroid,* that polarizes light through selective absorption. This material is fabricated in thin sheets of long-chain hydrocarbons. The sheets are stretched during manufacture so that the long-chain molecules align. After a sheet is dipped into a solution containing iodine, the molecules become good electrical conductors. Conduction takes place primarily along the hydrocarbon chains because electrons can move easily only along the chains. If light whose electric field vector is parallel to the chains is incident on the material, the electric field accelerates electrons along the chains and energy is absorbed from the radiation. Therefore, the light does not pass through the material. Light whose electric field vector is perpendicular to the chains passes through the material because electrons cannot move from one molecule to the next. As a result, when unpolarized light is incident on the material, the exiting light is polarized perpendicular to the molecular chains.

It is common to refer to the direction perpendicular to the molecular chains as the *transmission axis.* In an ideal polarizer, all light with $\vec{E}$ parallel to the transmission axis is transmitted and all light with $\vec{E}$ perpendicular to the transmission axis is absorbed.

Figure 38.26 represents an unpolarized light beam incident on a first polarizing sheet, called the *polarizer.* Because the transmission axis is oriented vertically in the figure, the light transmitted through this sheet is polarized vertically. A second polarizing sheet, called the *analyzer,* intercepts the beam. In Figure 38.26, the analyzer transmission axis is set at an angle θ to the polarizer axis. We call the electric field vector of the first transmitted beam $\vec{E}_0$. The component of $\vec{E}_0$ perpendicular to the analyzer axis is completely absorbed. The component of $\vec{E}_0$ parallel to the

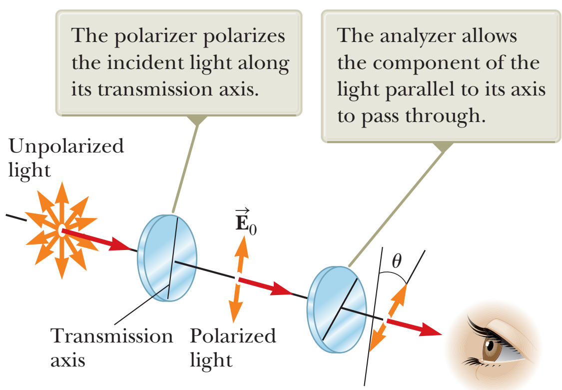


Figure 38.26 Two polarizing sheets whose transmission axes make an angle θ with each other. Only a fraction of the polarized light incident on the analyzer is transmitted through it.

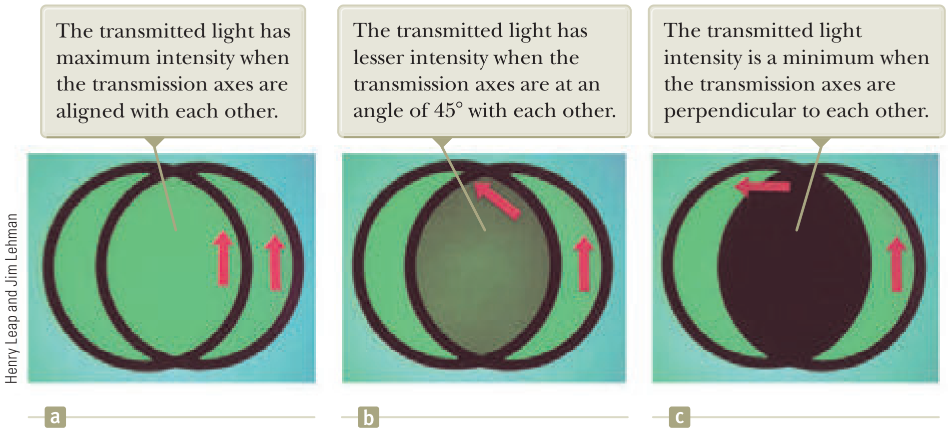


Figure 38.27 The intensity of light transmitted through two polarizers depends on the relative orientation of their transmission axes. The red arrows indicate the transmission axes of the polarizers.

analyzer axis, which is transmitted through the analyzer, is $E_0 \cos \theta$. Because the intensity of the transmitted beam varies as the square of its magnitude, we conclude that the intensity I of the (polarized) beam transmitted through the analyzer varies as

$$I = I_{\max} \cos^2 \theta \tag{38.9}$$

◀ Malus's law

where $I_{\max}$ is the intensity of the polarized beam incident on the analyzer. This expression, known as **Malus's law,**[2] applies to any two polarizing materials whose transmission axes are at an angle θ to each other. This expression shows that the intensity of the transmitted beam is maximum when the transmission axes are parallel ($\theta = 0$ or $180°$) and is zero (complete absorption by the analyzer) when the transmission axes are perpendicular to each other. This variation in transmitted intensity through a pair of polarizing sheets is illustrated in Figure 38.27. Because the average value of $\cos^2 \theta$ is $\frac{1}{2}$, the intensity of initially unpolarized light is reduced by a factor of one-half as the light passes through a single ideal polarizer.

Polarization by Reflection

When an unpolarized light beam is reflected from a surface, the polarization of the reflected light depends on the angle of incidence. If the angle of incidence is 0°, the reflected beam is unpolarized. For other angles of incidence, the reflected light is polarized to some extent, and for one particular angle of incidence, the reflected light is completely polarized. Let's now investigate reflection at that special angle.

Suppose an unpolarized light beam is incident on a surface as in Figure 38.28a (page 1178). Each individual electric field vector can be resolved into two components: one parallel to the surface (and perpendicular to the page in Fig. 38.28, represented by the dots) and the other (represented by the orange arrows) perpendicular both to the first component and to the direction of propagation. Therefore, the polarization of the entire beam can be described by two electric field components in these directions. It is found that the parallel component represented by the dots reflects more strongly than the other component represented by the arrows, resulting in a partially polarized reflected beam. Furthermore, the refracted beam is also partially polarized.

Now suppose the angle of incidence θ_1 is varied until the angle between the reflected and refracted beams is 90° as in Figure 38.28b. At this particular angle of incidence, the reflected beam is completely polarized (with its electric field vector parallel to the surface) and the refracted beam is still only partially polarized. The angle of incidence at which this polarization occurs is called the **polarizing angle** θ_p.

[2]Named after its discoverer, E. L. Malus (1775–1812). Malus discovered that reflected light was polarized by viewing it through a calcite ($CaCO_3$) crystal.

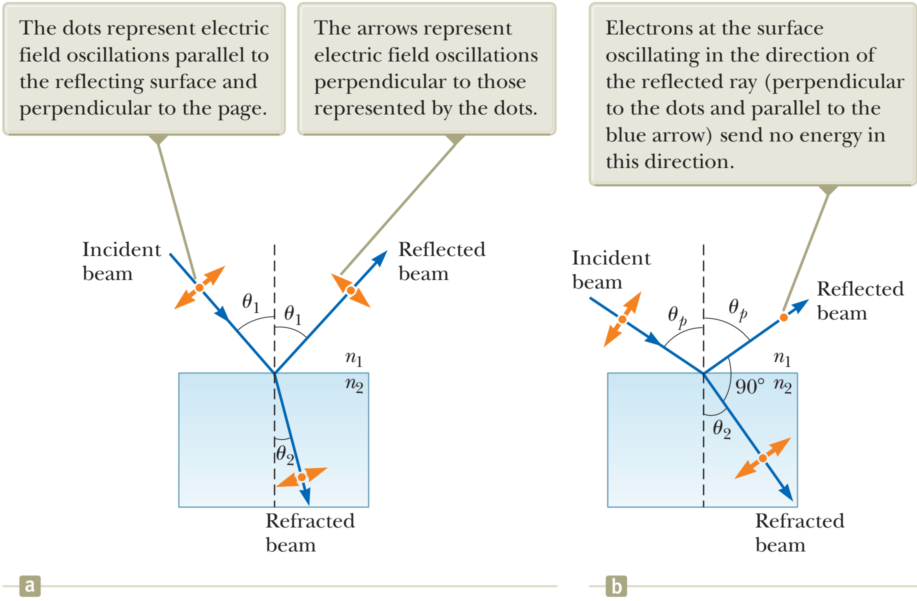


Figure 38.28 (a) When unpolarized light is incident on a reflecting surface, the reflected and refracted beams are partially polarized. (b) The reflected beam is completely polarized when the angle of incidence equals the polarizing angle θ_p, which satisfies the equation $n_2/n_1 = \tan\theta_p$. At this incident angle, the reflected and refracted rays are perpendicular to each other.

We can obtain an expression relating the polarizing angle to the index of refraction of the reflecting substance by using Figure 38.28b. From this figure, we see that $\theta_p + 90° + \theta_2 = 180°$; therefore, $\theta_2 = 90° - \theta_p$. Using Snell's law of refraction (Eq. 35.8) gives

$$\frac{n_2}{n_1} = \frac{\sin\theta_1}{\sin\theta_2} = \frac{\sin\theta_p}{\sin\theta_2}$$

Because $\sin\theta_2 = \sin(90° - \theta_p) = \cos\theta_p$, we can write this expression as $n_2/n_1 = \sin\theta_p/\cos\theta_p$, which means that

Brewster's law ▶

$$\tan\theta_p = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \tag{38.10}$$

This expression is called **Brewster's law,** and the polarizing angle θ_p is sometimes called **Brewster's angle,** after its discoverer, David Brewster (1781–1868). Because n varies with wavelength for a given substance, Brewster's angle is also a function of wavelength.

We can understand polarization by reflection by imagining that the electric field in the incident light sets electrons at the surface of the material in Figure 38.28b into oscillation. The component directions of oscillation are (1) parallel to the arrows shown on the refracted beam of light and therefore parallel to the reflected beam and (2) perpendicular to the page. The oscillating electrons act as dipole antennas radiating light with a polarization parallel to the direction of oscillation. Consult Figure 34.12, which shows the pattern of radiation from a dipole antenna. Notice that there is no radiation at an angle of $\theta = 0$, that is, along the oscillation direction of the antenna. Therefore, for the oscillations in direction 1, there is no radiation in the direction along the reflected ray. For oscillations in direction 2, the electrons radiate light with a polarization perpendicular to the page. Therefore, the light reflected from the surface at this angle is completely polarized parallel to the surface.

Polarization by reflection is a common phenomenon. Sunlight reflected from water, glass, and snow is partially polarized. If the surface is horizontal, the electric field vector of the reflected light has a strong horizontal component. Sunglasses made of polarizing material reduce the glare of reflected light. The transmission axes of such lenses are oriented vertically so that they absorb the strong horizontal component of the reflected light. If you rotate sunglasses through 90°, they are not as effective at blocking the glare from shiny horizontal surfaces.

Polarization by Double Refraction

Solids can be classified on the basis of internal structure. Those in which the atoms are arranged in a specific order are called *crystalline;* the NaCl structure of Figure 38.22 is one example of a crystalline solid. Those solids in which the atoms are distributed randomly are called *amorphous.* When light travels through an amorphous material such as glass, it travels with a speed that is the same in all directions. That is, glass has a single index of refraction. In certain crystalline materials such as calcite and quartz, however, the speed of light is not the same in all directions. In these materials, the speed of light depends on the direction of propagation *and* on the plane of polarization of the light. Such materials are characterized by two indices of refraction. Hence, they are often referred to as **double-refracting** or **birefringent** materials.

When unpolarized light enters a birefringent material, it may split into an **ordinary (O) ray** and an **extraordinary (E) ray.** These two rays have mutually perpendicular polarizations and travel at different speeds through the material. The two speeds correspond to two indices of refraction, n_O for the ordinary ray and n_E for the extraordinary ray.

There is one direction, called the **optic axis,** along which the ordinary and extraordinary rays have the same speed. If light enters a birefringent material at an angle to the optic axis, however, the different indices of refraction will cause the two polarized rays to split and travel in different directions as shown in Figure 38.29.

The index of refraction n_O for the ordinary ray is the same in all directions. If one could place a point source of light inside the crystal as in Figure 38.30, the ordinary waves would spread out from the source as spheres. The index of refraction n_E varies with the direction of propagation. A point source sends out an extraordinary wave having wave fronts that are elliptical in cross section. The difference in speed for the two rays is a maximum in the direction perpendicular to the optic axis. For example, in calcite, $n_O = 1.658$ at a wavelength of 589.3 nm and n_E varies from 1.658 along the optic axis to 1.486 perpendicular to the optic axis. Values for n_O and the extreme value of n_E for various double-refracting crystals are given in Table 38.1.

If you place a calcite crystal on a sheet of paper and then look through the crystal at any writing on the paper, you would see two images as shown in Figure 38.31. As can be seen from Figure 38.29, these two images correspond to one formed by the ordinary ray and one formed by the extraordinary ray. If the two images are viewed through a sheet of rotating polarizing glass, they alternately appear and disappear because the ordinary and extraordinary rays are plane-polarized along mutually perpendicular directions.

Some materials such as glass and plastic become birefringent when stressed. Suppose an unstressed piece of plastic is placed between a polarizer and an analyzer so that light passes from polarizer to plastic to analyzer. When the plastic is unstressed and the analyzer axis is perpendicular to the polarizer axis, none of the polarized light passes through the analyzer. In other words, the unstressed plastic has no effect on the light passing through it. If the plastic is stressed, however, regions of greatest stress become birefringent and the polarization of the light passing through the plastic changes. Hence, a series of bright and dark bands is observed in the transmitted light, with the bright bands corresponding to regions of greatest stress.

Table 38.1 Indices of Refraction for Some Double-Refracting Crystals at a Wavelength of 589.3 nm

Crystal	n_O	n_E	n_O/n_E
Calcite ($CaCO_3$)	1.658	1.486	1.116
Quartz (SiO_2)	1.544	1.553	0.994
Sodium nitrate ($NaNO_3$)	1.587	1.336	1.188
Sodium sulfite ($NaSO_3$)	1.565	1.515	1.033
Zinc chloride ($ZnCl_2$)	1.687	1.713	0.985
Zinc sulfide (ZnS)	2.356	2.378	0.991

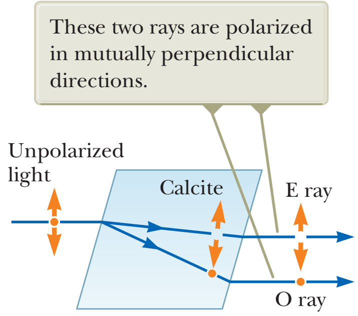


Figure 38.29 Unpolarized light incident at an angle to the optic axis in a calcite crystal splits into an ordinary (O) ray and an extraordinary (E) ray (not to scale).

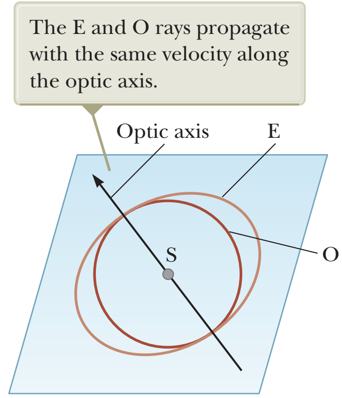
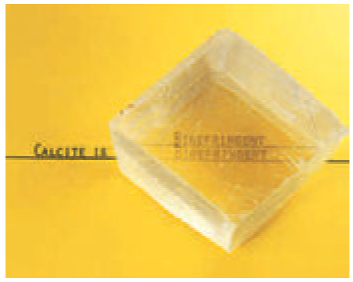


Figure 38.30 A point source S inside a double-refracting crystal produces a spherical wave front corresponding to the ordinary (O) ray and an elliptical wave front corresponding to the extraordinary (E) ray.



Henry Leap and Jim Lehman

Figure 38.31 A calcite crystal produces a double image because it is a birefringent (double-refracting) material.

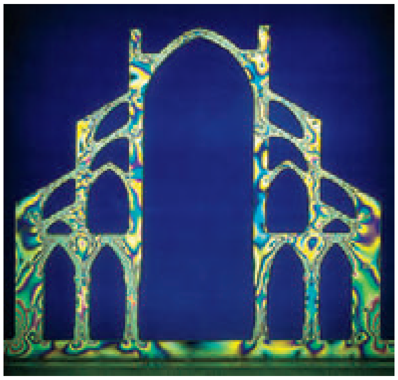


Figure 38.32 A plastic model of an arch structure under load conditions. The pattern is produced when the plastic model is viewed between a polarizer and analyzer oriented perpendicular to each other. Such patterns are useful in the optimal design of architectural components.

Peter Aprahamian/Science Photo Library, Photo Researchers, Inc.

Engineers often use this technique, called *optical stress analysis,* in designing structures ranging from bridges to small tools. They build a plastic model and analyze it under different load conditions to determine regions of potential weakness and failure under stress. An example of a plastic model under stress is shown in Figure 38.32.

Polarization by Scattering

When light is incident on any material, the electrons in the material can absorb and reradiate part of the light. Such absorption and reradiation of light by electrons in the gas molecules that make up air is what causes sunlight reaching an observer on the Earth to be partially polarized. You can observe this effect—called **scattering**—by looking directly up at the sky through a pair of sunglasses whose lenses are made of polarizing material. Less light passes through at certain orientations of the lenses than at others.

Figure 38.33 illustrates how sunlight becomes polarized when it is scattered. The phenomenon is similar to that creating completely polarized light upon reflection from a surface at Brewster's angle. An unpolarized beam of sunlight traveling in the horizontal direction (parallel to the ground) strikes a molecule of one of the gases that make up air, setting the electrons of the molecule into vibration. These vibrating charges act like the vibrating charges in an antenna. The horizontal component of the electric field vector in the incident wave results in a horizontal component of the vibration of the charges, and the vertical component of the vector results in a vertical component of vibration. If the observer in Figure 38.33 is looking straight up (perpendicular to the original direction of propagation of the light), the vertical oscillations of the charges send no radiation toward the observer. Therefore, the observer sees light that is completely polarized in the horizontal direction as indicated by the orange arrows. If the observer looks in other directions, the light is partially polarized in the horizontal direction.

Variations in the color of scattered light in the atmosphere can be understood as follows. When light of various wavelengths λ is incident on gas molecules of diameter d, where $d << \lambda$, the relative intensity of the scattered light varies as $1/\lambda^4$. The condition $d << \lambda$ is satisfied for scattering from oxygen (O_2) and nitrogen (N_2) molecules in the atmosphere, whose diameters are about 0.2 nm. Hence, short wavelengths (violet light) are scattered more efficiently than long wavelengths (red light). Therefore, when sunlight is scattered by gas molecules in the air, the short-wavelength radiation (violet) is scattered more intensely than the long-wavelength radiation (red).

When you look up into the sky in a direction that is not toward the Sun, you see the scattered light, which is predominantly violet. Your eyes, however, are not very sensitive to violet light. Light of the next color in the spectrum, blue, is scattered with less intensity than violet, but your eyes are far more sensitive to blue light than to violet light. Hence, you see a blue sky. If you look toward the west at sunset (or toward the east at sunrise), you are looking in a direction toward the Sun and are seeing light that has passed through a large distance of air. Most of the blue light has been scattered by the air between you and the Sun. The light that survives this

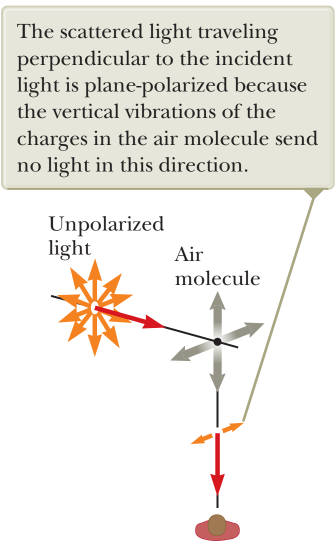


Figure 38.33 The scattering of unpolarized sunlight by air molecules.

trip through the air to you has had much of its blue component scattered and is therefore heavily weighted toward the red end of the spectrum; as a result, you see the red and orange colors of sunset (or sunrise).

Optical Activity

Many important applications of polarized light involve materials that display **optical activity.** A material is said to be optically active if it rotates the plane of polarization of any light transmitted through the material. The angle through which the light is rotated by a specific material depends on the length of the path through the material and on concentration if the material is in solution. One optically active material is a solution of the common sugar dextrose. A standard method for determining the concentration of sugar solutions is to measure the rotation produced by a fixed length of the solution.

Molecular asymmetry determines whether a material is optically active. For example, some proteins are optically active because of their spiral shape.

The liquid crystal displays found in most calculators have their optical activity changed by the application of electric potential across different parts of the display. Try using a pair of polarizing sunglasses to investigate the polarization used in the display of your calculator.

Quick Quiz 38.6 A polarizer for microwaves can be made as a grid of parallel metal wires approximately 1 cm apart. Is the electric field vector for microwaves transmitted through this polarizer **(a)** parallel or **(b)** perpendicular to the metal wires?

Quick Quiz 38.7 You are walking down a long hallway that has many light fixtures in the ceiling and a very shiny, newly waxed floor. When looking at the floor, you see reflections of every light fixture. Now you put on sunglasses that are polarized. Some of the reflections of the light fixtures can no longer be seen. (Try it!) Are the reflections that disappear those **(a)** nearest to you, **(b)** farthest from you, or **(c)** at an intermediate distance from you?

Summary

Concepts and Principles

Diffraction is the deviation of light from a straight-line path when the light passes through an aperture or around an obstacle. Diffraction is due to the wave nature of light.

The **Fraunhofer diffraction pattern** produced by a single slit of width a on a distant screen consists of a central bright fringe and alternating bright and dark fringes of much lower intensities. The angles θ_{dark} at which the diffraction pattern has zero intensity, corresponding to destructive interference, are given by

$$\sin\theta_{\text{dark}} = m\frac{\lambda}{a} \qquad m = \pm1, \pm2, \pm3, \ldots \tag{38.1}$$

Rayleigh's criterion, which is a limiting condition of resolution, states that two images formed by an aperture are just distinguishable if the central maximum of the diffraction pattern for one image falls on the first minimum of the diffraction pattern for the other image. The limiting angle of resolution for a slit of width a is $\theta_{\min} = \lambda/a$, and the limiting angle of resolution for a circular aperture of diameter D is given by $\theta_{\min} = 1.22\lambda/D$.

A **diffraction grating** consists of a large number of equally spaced, identical slits. The condition for intensity maxima in the interference pattern of a diffraction grating for normal incidence is

$$d\sin\theta_{\text{bright}} = m\lambda \qquad m = 0, \pm1, \pm2, \pm3, \ldots \tag{38.7}$$

where d is the spacing between adjacent slits and m is the order number of the intensity maximum.

continued

When polarized light of intensity I_{max} is emitted by a polarizer and then is incident on an analyzer, the light transmitted through the analyzer has an intensity equal to $I_{max} \cos^2 \theta$, where θ is the angle between the polarizer and analyzer transmission axes.

In general, reflected light is partially polarized. Reflected light, however, is completely polarized when the angle of incidence is such that the angle between the reflected and refracted beams is 90°. This angle of incidence, called the **polarizing angle** θ_p, satisfies **Brewster's law:**

$$\tan \theta_p = \frac{n_2}{n_1} \qquad \textbf{(38.10)}$$

where n_1 is the index of refraction of the medium in which the light initially travels and n_2 is the index of refraction of the reflecting medium.

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Certain sunglasses use a polarizing material to reduce the intensity of light reflected as glare from water or automobile windshields. What orientation should the polarizing filters have to be most effective? (a) The polarizers should absorb light with its electric field horizontal. (b) The polarizers should absorb light with its electric field vertical. (c) The polarizers should absorb both horizontal and vertical electric fields. (d) The polarizers should not absorb either horizontal or vertical electric fields.

2. What is most likely to happen to a beam of light when it reflects from a shiny metallic surface at an arbitrary angle? Choose the best answer. (a) It is totally absorbed by the surface. (b) It is totally polarized. (c) It is unpolarized. (d) It is partially polarized. (e) More information is required.

3. In Figure 38.4, assume the slit is in a barrier that is opaque to x-rays as well as to visible light. The photograph in Figure 38.4b shows the diffraction pattern produced with visible light. What will happen if the experiment is repeated with x-rays as the incoming wave and with no other changes? (a) The diffraction pattern is similar. (b) There is no noticeable diffraction pattern but rather a projected shadow of high intensity on the screen, having the same width as the slit. (c) The central maximum is much wider, and the minima occur at larger angles than with visible light. (d) No x-rays reach the screen.

4. A Fraunhofer diffraction pattern is produced on a screen located 1.00 m from a single slit. If a light source of wavelength 5.00×10^{-7} m is used and the distance from the center of the central bright fringe to the first dark fringe is 5.00×10^{-3} m, what is the slit width? (a) 0.010 0 mm (b) 0.100 mm (c) 0.200 mm (d) 1.00 mm (e) 0.005 00 mm

5. Consider a wave passing through a single slit. What happens to the width of the central maximum of its diffraction pattern as the slit is made half as wide? (a) It becomes one-fourth as wide. (b) It becomes one-half as wide. (c) Its width does not change. (d) It becomes twice as wide. (e) It becomes four times as wide.

6. Assume Figure 38.1 was photographed with red light of a single wavelength λ_0. The light passed through a single slit of width a and traveled distance L to the screen where the photograph was made. Consider the width of the central bright fringe, measured between the centers of the dark fringes on both sides of it. Rank from largest to smallest the widths of the central fringe in the following situations and note any cases of equality. (a) The experiment is performed as photographed. (b) The experiment is performed with light whose frequency is increased by 50%. (c) The experiment is performed with light whose wavelength is increased by 50%. (d) The experiment is performed with the original light and with a slit of width $2a$. (e) The experiment is performed with the original light and slit and with distance $2L$ to the screen.

7. If plane polarized light is sent through two polarizers, the first at 45° to the original plane of polarization and the second at 90° to the original plane of polarization, what fraction of the original polarized intensity passes through the last polarizer? (a) 0 (b) $\frac{1}{4}$ (c) $\frac{1}{2}$ (d) $\frac{1}{8}$ (e) $\frac{1}{10}$

8. Why is it advantageous to use a large-diameter objective lens in a telescope? (a) It diffracts the light more effectively than smaller-diameter objective lenses. (b) It increases its magnification. (c) It enables you to see more objects in the field of view. (d) It reflects unwanted wavelengths. (e) It increases its resolution.

9. What combination of optical phenomena causes the bright colored patterns sometimes seen on wet streets covered with a layer of oil? Choose the best answer. (a) diffraction and polarization (b) interference and diffraction (c) polarization and reflection (d) refraction and diffraction (e) reflection and interference

10. When you receive a chest x-ray at a hospital, the x-rays pass through a set of parallel ribs in your chest. Do your ribs act as a diffraction grating for x-rays? (a) Yes. They produce diffracted beams that can be observed separately. (b) Not to a measurable extent. The ribs are too far apart. (c) Essentially not. The ribs are too close together. (d) Essentially not. The ribs are too few in number. (e) Absolutely not. X-rays cannot diffract.

11. When unpolarized light passes through a diffraction grating, does it become polarized? (a) No, it does not. (b) Yes, it does, with the transmission axis parallel to the slits or grooves in the grating. (c) Yes, it does, with the transmission axis perpendicular to the slits or grooves in the grating. (d) It possibly does because an electric field above some threshold is blocked out by the grating if the field is perpendicular to the slits.

greater. What then happens to your ability to resolve the two light sources? (a) It increases by a factor of 9. (b) It increases by a factor of 3. (c) It remains the same. (d) It becomes one-third as good. (e) It becomes one-ninth as good.

12. Off in the distance, you see the headlights of a car, but they are indistinguishable from the single headlight of a motorcycle. Assume the car's headlights are now switched from low beam to high beam so that the light intensity you receive becomes three times greater. What then happens to your ability to resolve the two light sources? (a) It increases by a factor of 9. (b) It increases by a factor of 3. (c) It remains the same. (d) It becomes one-third as good. (e) It becomes one-ninth as good.

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. The atoms in a crystal lie in planes separated by a few tenths of a nanometer. Can they produce a diffraction pattern for visible light as they do for x-rays? Explain your answer with reference to Bragg's law.

2. Holding your hand at arm's length, you can readily block sunlight from reaching your eyes. Why can you not block sound from reaching your ears this way?

3. How could the index of refraction of a flat piece of opaque obsidian glass be determined?

4. (a) Is light from the sky polarized? (b) Why is it that clouds seen through Polaroid glasses stand out in bold contrast to the sky?

5. A laser beam is incident at a shallow angle on a horizontal machinist's ruler that has a finely calibrated scale. The engraved rulings on the scale give rise to a diffraction pattern on a vertical screen. Discuss how you can use this technique to obtain a measure of the wavelength of the laser light.

6. If a coin is glued to a glass sheet and this arrangement is held in front of a laser beam, the projected shadow has diffraction rings around its edge and a bright spot in the center. How are these effects possible?

7. Fingerprints left on a piece of glass such as a windowpane often show colored spectra like that from a diffraction grating. Why?

8. A laser produces a beam a few millimeters wide, with uniform intensity across its width. A hair is stretched vertically across the front of the laser to cross the beam. (a) How is the diffraction pattern it produces on a distant screen related to that of a vertical slit equal in width to the hair? (b) How could you determine the width of the hair from measurements of its diffraction pattern?

9. A radio station serves listeners in a city to the northeast of its broadcast site. It broadcasts from three adjacent towers on a mountain ridge, along a line running east to west, in what's called a *phased array*. Show that by introducing time delays among the signals the individual towers radiate, the station can maximize net intensity in the direction toward the city (and in the opposite direction) and minimize the signal transmitted in other directions.

10. John William Strutt, Lord Rayleigh (1842–1919), invented an improved foghorn. To warn ships of a coastline, a foghorn should radiate sound in a wide horizontal sheet over the ocean's surface. It should not waste energy by broadcasting sound upward or downward. Rayleigh's foghorn trumpet is shown in two possible configurations, horizontal and vertical, in Figure CQ38.10. Which is the correct orientation? Decide whether the long dimension of the rectangular opening should be horizontal or vertical and argue for your decision.

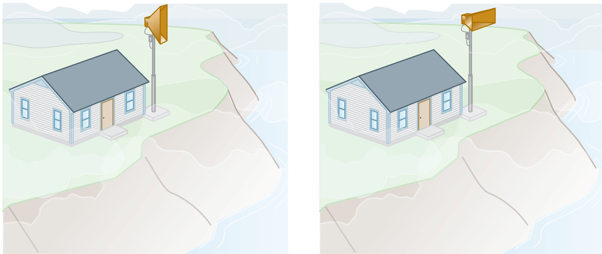
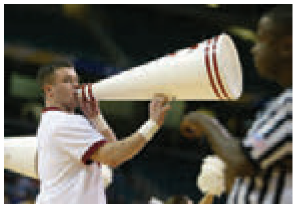


Figure CQ38.10

11. Why can you hear around corners, but not see around corners?

12. Figure CQ38.12 shows a megaphone in use. Construct a theoretical description of how a megaphone works. You may assume the sound of your voice radiates just through the opening of your mouth. Most of the information in speech is carried not in a signal at the fundamental frequency, but in noises and in harmonics, with frequencies of a few thousand hertz. Does your theory allow any prediction that is simple to test?



Doug Pensigner/Getty Images

Figure CQ38.12

Problems

The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 38.2 Diffraction Patterns from Narrow Slits

1. M Light of wavelength 587.5 nm illuminates a slit of width 0.75 mm. (a) At what distance from the slit should a screen be placed if the first minimum in the diffraction pattern is to be 0.85 mm from the central maximum? (b) Calculate the width of the central maximum.

2. W Helium–neon laser light (λ = 632.8 nm) is sent through a 0.300-mm-wide single slit. What is the width of the central maximum on a screen 1.00 m from the slit?

3. Sound with a frequency 650 Hz from a distant source passes through a doorway 1.10 m wide in a sound-absorbing wall. Find (a) the number and (b) the angular directions of the diffraction minima at listening positions along a line parallel to the wall.

4. A horizontal laser beam of wavelength 632.8 nm has a circular cross section 2.00 mm in diameter. A rectangular aperture is to be placed in the center of the beam so that when the light falls perpendicularly on a wall 4.50 m away, the central maximum fills a rectangle 110 mm wide and 6.00 mm high. The dimensions are measured between the minima bracketing the central maximum. Find the required (a) width and (b) height of the aperture. (c) Is the longer dimension of the central bright patch in the diffraction pattern horizontal or vertical? (d) Is the longer dimension of the aperture horizontal or vertical? (e) Explain the relationship between these two rectangles, using a diagram.

5. Coherent microwaves of wavelength 5.00 cm enter a tall, narrow window in a building otherwise essentially opaque to the microwaves. If the window is 36.0 cm wide, what is the distance from the central maximum to the first-order minimum along a wall 6.50 m from the window?

6. Light of wavelength 540 nm passes through a slit of width 0.200 mm. (a) The width of the central maximum on a screen is 8.10 mm. How far is the screen from the slit? (b) Determine the width of the first bright fringe to the side of the central maximum.

7. M A screen is placed 50.0 cm from a single slit, which is illuminated with light of wavelength 690 nm. If the distance between the first and third minima in the diffraction pattern is 3.00 mm, what is the width of the slit?

8. A screen is placed a distance L from a single slit of width a, which is illuminated with light of wavelength λ. Assume $L >> a$. If the distance between the minima for $m = m_1$ and $m = m_2$ in the diffraction pattern is Δy, what is the width of the slit?

9. Assume light of wavelength 650 nm passes through two slits 3.00 μm wide, with their centers 9.00 μm apart. Make a sketch of the combined diffraction and interference pattern in the form of a graph of intensity versus $\phi = (\pi a \sin \theta)/\lambda$. You may use Figure 38.7 as a starting point.

10. **What If?** Suppose light strikes a single slit of width a at an angle β from the perpendicular direction as shown in Figure P38.10. Show that Equation 38.1, the condition for destructive interference, must be modified to read

$$\sin \theta_{\text{dark}} = m\frac{\lambda}{a} - \sin \beta$$
$$m = \pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 3, \ldots$$

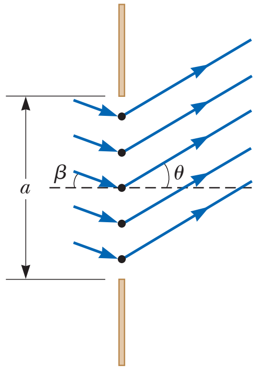


Figure P38.10

11. M A diffraction pattern is formed on a screen 120 cm away from a 0.400-mm-wide slit. Monochromatic 546.1-nm light is used. Calculate the fractional intensity I/I_{max} at a point on the screen 4.10 mm from the center of the principal maximum.

12. GP Coherent light of wavelength 501.5 nm is sent through two parallel slits in an opaque material. Each slit is 0.700 μm wide. Their centers are 2.80 μm apart. The light then falls on a semicylindrical screen, with its axis at the midline between the slits. We would like to describe the appearance of the pattern of light visible on the screen. (a) Find the direction for each two-slit interference maximum on the screen as an angle away from the bisector of the line joining the slits. (b) How many angles are there that represent two-slit interference maxima? (c) Find the direction for each single-slit interference minimum on the screen as an angle away from the bisector of the line joining the slits. (d) How many angles are there that represent single-slit interference minima? (e) How many of the angles in part (d) are identical to those in part (a)? (f) How many bright fringes are visible on the screen? (g) If the intensity of the central fringe is I_{max}, what is the intensity of the last fringe visible on the screen?

13. A beam of monochromatic light is incident on a single slit of width 0.600 mm. A diffraction pattern forms on a wall 1.30 m beyond the slit. The distance between the positions of zero intensity on both sides of the central maximum is 2.00 mm. Calculate the wavelength of the light.

Section 38.3 Resolution of Single-Slit and Circular Apertures

Note: In Problems 14, 19, 22, 23, and 67, you may use the Rayleigh criterion for the limiting angle of resolution of an eye. The standard may be overly optimistic for human vision.

14. The pupil of a cat's eye narrows to a vertical slit of width 0.500 mm in daylight. Assume the average wavelength of the light is 500 nm. What is the angular resolution for horizontally separated mice?

15. The angular resolution of a radio telescope is to be 0.100° when the incident waves have a wavelength of 3.00 mm. What minimum diameter is required for the telescope's receiving dish?

16. A *pinhole camera* has a small circular aperture of diameter D. Light from distant objects passes through the aperture into an otherwise dark box, falling on a screen at the other end of the box. The aperture in a pinhole camera has diameter D = 0.600 mm. Two point sources of light of wavelength 550 nm are at a distance L from the hole. The separation between the sources is 2.80 cm, and they are just resolved by the camera. What is L?

17. The objective lens of a certain refracting telescope has a diameter of 58.0 cm. The telescope is mounted in a satellite that orbits the Earth at an altitude of 270 km to view objects on the Earth's surface. Assuming an average wavelength of 500 nm, find the minimum distance between two objects on the ground if their images are to be resolved by this lens.

18. Yellow light of wavelength 589 nm is used to view an object under a microscope. The objective lens diameter is 9.00 mm. (a) What is the limiting angle of resolution? (b) Suppose it is possible to use visible light of any wavelength. What color should you choose to give the smallest possible angle of resolution, and what is this angle? (c) Suppose water fills the space between the object and the objective. What effect does this change have on the resolving power when 589-nm light is used?

19. What is the approximate size of the smallest object on the Earth that astronauts can resolve by eye when they are orbiting 250 km above the Earth? Assume λ = 500 nm and a pupil diameter of 5.00 mm.

20. M A helium–neon laser emits light that has a wavelength of 632.8 nm. The circular aperture through which the beam emerges has a diameter of 0.500 cm. Estimate the diameter of the beam 10.0 km from the laser.

21. M To increase the resolving power of a microscope, the object and the objective are immersed in oil (n = 1.5). If the limiting angle of resolution without the oil is 0.60 μrad, what is the limiting angle of resolution with the oil? *Hint:* The oil changes the wavelength of the light.

22. Narrow, parallel, glowing gas-filled tubes in a variety of colors form block letters to spell out the name of a nightclub. Adjacent tubes are all 2.80 cm apart. The tubes forming one letter are filled with neon and radiate predominantly red light with a wavelength of 640 nm. For another letter, the tubes emit predominantly blue light at 440 nm. The pupil of a dark-adapted viewer's eye is 5.20 mm in diameter. (a) Which color is easier to resolve? State how you decide. (b) If she is in a certain range of distances away, the viewer can resolve the separate tubes of one color but not the other. The viewer's distance must be in what range for her to resolve the tubes of only one of these two colors?

23. M Impressionist painter Georges Seurat created paintings with an enormous number of dots of pure pigment, each of which was approximately 2.00 mm in diameter. The idea was to have colors such as red and green next to each other to form a scintillating canvas, such as in his masterpiece, *A Sunday Afternoon on the Island of La Grande Jatte* (Fig. P38.23). Assume λ = 500 nm and a pupil diameter of 5.00 mm. Beyond what distance would a viewer be unable to discern individual dots on the canvas?

Figure P38.23

24. W A circular radar antenna on a Coast Guard ship has a diameter of 2.10 m and radiates at a frequency of 15.0 GHz. Two small boats are located 9.00 km away from the ship. How close together could the boats be and still be detected as two objects?

Section 38.4 The Diffraction Grating

Note: In the following problems, assume the light is incident normally on the gratings.

25. A helium–neon laser (λ = 632.8 nm) is used to calibrate a diffraction grating. If the first-order maximum occurs at 20.5°, what is the spacing between adjacent grooves in the grating?

26. M White light is spread out into its spectral components by a diffraction grating. If the grating has 2 000 grooves per centimeter, at what angle does red light of wavelength 640 nm appear in first order?

27. Consider an array of parallel wires with uniform spacing of 1.30 cm between centers. In air at 20.0°C, ultrasound with a frequency of 37.2 kHz from a distant source is incident perpendicular to the array. (a) Find the number of directions on the other side of the array in which there is a maximum of intensity. (b) Find the angle for each of these directions relative to the direction of the incident beam.

28. W Three discrete spectral lines occur at angles of 10.1°, 13.7°, and 14.8° in the first-order spectrum of a grating spectrometer. (a) If the grating has 3 660 slits/cm, what are the wavelengths of the light? (b) At what angles are these lines found in the second-order spectrum?

29. The laser in a compact disc player must precisely follow the spiral track on the CD, along which the distance between one loop of the spiral and the next is only about 1.25 μm. Figure P38.29 (page 1186) shows how a diffraction grating is used to provide information to keep the beam on track. The laser light passes through a diffraction grating before it reaches the CD. The strong central maximum of the diffraction pattern is used to read the information in the track of pits. The two first-order side maxima are designed to fall on the flat surfaces on both sides of the information track and are used for steering. As long as both beams are reflecting from smooth, nonpitted surfaces, they are detected with constant high intensity. If the main beam wanders off the track, however, one of the side beams begins to strike pits on the information track and the reflected light diminishes. This change is used with an electronic circuit to guide the beam back to the desired location. Assume the laser light has a wavelength of 780 nm and the diffraction grating is positioned 6.90 μm from the disk. Assume the first-order beams are to fall on the CD 0.400 μm on either side of the information track. What should be the number of grooves per millimeter in the grating?

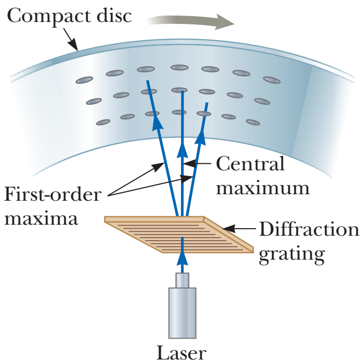


Figure P38.29

30. A grating with 250 grooves/mm is used with an incandescent light source. Assume the visible spectrum to range in wavelength from 400 nm to 700 nm. In how many orders can one see (a) the entire visible spectrum and (b) the short-wavelength region of the visible spectrum?

31. A diffraction grating has 4 200 rulings/cm. On a screen 2.00 m from the grating, it is found that for a particular order m, the maxima corresponding to two closely spaced wavelengths of sodium (589.0 nm and 589.6 nm) are separated by 1.54 mm. Determine the value of m.

32. M The hydrogen spectrum includes a red line at 656 nm and a blue-violet line at 434 nm. What are the angular separations between these two spectral lines for all visible orders obtained with a diffraction grating that has 4 500 grooves/cm?

33. W Light from an argon laser strikes a diffraction grating that has 5 310 grooves per centimeter. The central and first-order principal maxima are separated by 0.488 m on a wall 1.72 m from the grating. Determine the wavelength of the laser light.

34. Show that whenever white light is passed through a diffraction grating of any spacing size, the violet end of the spectrum in the third order on a screen always overlaps the red end of the spectrum in the second order.

35. Light of wavelength 500 nm is incident normally on a diffraction grating. If the third-order maximum of the diffraction pattern is observed at 32.0°, (a) what is the number of rulings per centimeter for the grating? (b) Determine the total number of primary maxima that can be observed in this situation.

36. A wide beam of laser light with a wavelength of 632.8 nm is directed through several narrow parallel slits, separated by 1.20 mm, and falls on a sheet of photographic film 1.40 m away. The exposure time is chosen so that the film stays unexposed everywhere except at the central region of each bright fringe. (a) Find the distance between these interference maxima. The film is printed as a transparency; it is opaque everywhere except at the exposed lines. Next, the same beam of laser light is directed through the transparency and allowed to fall on a screen 1.40 m beyond. (b) Argue that several narrow, parallel, bright regions, separated by 1.20 mm, appear on the screen as real images of the original slits. (A similar train of thought, at a soccer game, led Dennis Gabor to invent holography.)

37. A beam of bright red light of wavelength 654 nm passes through a diffraction grating. Enclosing the space beyond the grating is a large semicylindrical screen centered on the grating, with its axis parallel to the slits in the grating. Fifteen bright spots appear on the screen. Find (a) the maximum and (b) the minimum possible values for the slit separation in the diffraction grating.

Section 38.5 Diffraction of X-Rays by Crystals

38. M If the spacing between planes of atoms in a NaCl crystal is 0.281 nm, what is the predicted angle at which 0.140-nm x-rays are diffracted in a first-order maximum?

39. AMT M Potassium iodide (KI) has the same crystalline structure as NaCl, with atomic planes separated by 0.353 nm. A monochromatic x-ray beam shows a first-order diffraction maximum when the grazing angle is 7.60°. Calculate the x-ray wavelength.

40. Monochromatic x-rays (λ = 0.166 nm) from a nickel target are incident on a potassium chloride (KCl) crystal surface. The spacing between planes of atoms in KCl is 0.314 nm. At what angle (relative to the surface) should the beam be directed for a second-order maximum to be observed?

41. The first-order diffraction maximum is observed at 12.6° for a crystal having a spacing between planes of atoms of 0.250 nm. (a) What wavelength x-ray is used to observe this first-order pattern? (b) How many orders can be observed for this crystal at this wavelength?

Section 38.6 Polarization of Light Waves

Problem 62 in Chapter 34 can be assigned with this section.

42. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A technician is measuring the index of refraction of a solid material by observing the polarization of light reflected from its surface. She notices that when a light beam is projected from air onto the material surface, the reflected light is totally polarized parallel to the surface when the incident angle is 41.0°.

43. M Plane-polarized light is incident on a single polarizing disk with the direction of $\vec{\mathbf{E}}_0$ parallel to the direction of the transmission axis. Through what angle should the disk be rotated so that the intensity in the transmitted beam is reduced by a factor of (a) 3.00, (b) 5.00, and (c) 10.0?

44. AMT The angle of incidence of a light beam onto a reflecting surface is continuously variable. The reflected ray in air is completely polarized when the angle of incidence is 48.0°. What is the index of refraction of the reflecting material?

45. Unpolarized light passes through two ideal Polaroid sheets. The axis of the first is vertical, and the axis of the second is at 30.0° to the vertical. What fraction of the incident light is transmitted?

46. Two handheld radio transceivers with dipole antennas are separated by a large fixed distance. If the transmitting antenna is vertical, what fraction of the maximum received power will appear in the receiving antenna when it is inclined from the vertical by (a) 15.0°, (b) 45.0°, and (c) 90.0°?

47. You use a sequence of ideal polarizing filters, each with its axis making the same angle with the axis of the previous filter, to rotate the plane of polarization of a polarized light beam by a total of 45.0°. You wish to have an intensity reduction no larger than 10.0%. (a) How many polarizers do you need to achieve your goal? (b) What is the angle between adjacent polarizers?

48. An unpolarized beam of light is incident on a stack of ideal polarizing filters. The axis of the first filter is perpendicular to the axis of the last filter in the stack. Find the fraction by which the transmitted beam's intensity is reduced in the three following cases. (a) Three filters are in the stack, each with its transmission axis at 45.0° relative to the preceding filter. (b) Four filters are in the stack, each with its transmission axis at 30.0° relative to the preceding filter. (c) Seven filters are in the stack, each with its transmission axis at 15.0° relative to the preceding filter. (d) Comment on comparing the answers to parts (a), (b), and (c).

49. The critical angle for total internal reflection for sapphire surrounded by air is 34.4°. Calculate the polarizing angle for sapphire.

50. For a particular transparent medium surrounded by air, find the polarizing angle θ_p in terms of the critical angle for total internal reflection θ_c.

51. M Three polarizing plates whose planes are parallel are centered on a common axis. The directions of the transmission axes relative to the common vertical direction are shown in Figure P38.51. A linearly polarized beam of light with plane of polarization parallel to the vertical reference direction is incident from the left onto the first disk with intensity I_i = 10.0 units (arbitrary). Calculate the transmitted intensity I_f when θ_1 = 20.0°, θ_2 = 40.0°, and θ_3 = 60.0°. *Hint:* Make repeated use of Malus's law.

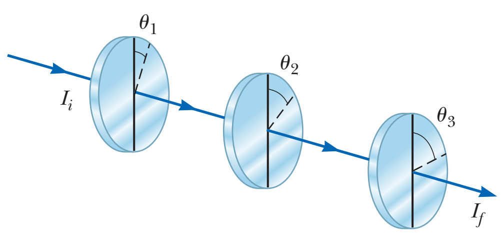


Figure P38.51

52. Two polarizing sheets are placed together with their transmission axes crossed so that no light is transmitted. A third sheet is inserted between them with its transmission axis at an angle of 45.0° with respect to each of the other axes. Find the fraction of incident unpolarized light intensity transmitted by the three-sheet combination. (Assume each polarizing sheet is ideal.)

Additional Problems

53. In a single-slit diffraction pattern, assuming each side maximum is halfway between the adjacent minima, find the ratio of the intensity of (a) the first-order side maximum and (b) the second-order side maximum to the intensity of the central maximum.

54. Laser light with a wavelength of 632.8 nm is directed through one slit or two slits and allowed to fall on a screen 2.60 m beyond. Figure P38.54 shows the pattern on the screen, with a centimeter ruler below it. (a) Did the light pass through one slit or two slits? Explain how you can determine the answer. (b) If one slit, find its width. If two slits, find the distance between their centers.

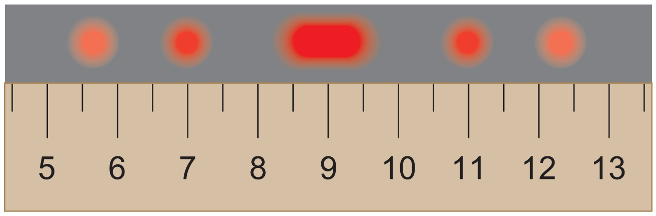


Figure P38.54

55. In water of uniform depth, a wide pier is supported on pilings in several parallel rows 2.80 m apart. Ocean waves of uniform wavelength roll in, moving in a direction that makes an angle of 80.0° with the rows of pilings. Find the three longest wavelengths of waves that are strongly reflected by the pilings.

56. The second-order dark fringe in a single-slit diffraction pattern is 1.40 mm from the center of the central maximum. Assuming the screen is 85.0 cm from a slit of width 0.800 mm and assuming monochromatic incident light, calculate the wavelength of the incident light.

57. Light from a helium–neon laser (λ = 632.8 nm) is incident on a single slit. What is the maximum width of the slit for which no diffraction minima are observed?

58. W Two motorcycles separated laterally by 2.30 m are approaching an observer wearing night-vision goggles sensitive to infrared light of wavelength 885 nm. (a) Assume the light propagates through perfectly steady and uniform air. What aperture diameter is required if the motorcycles' headlights are to be resolved at a distance of 12.0 km? (b) Comment on how realistic the assumption in part (a) is.

59. The *Very Large Array* (VLA) is a set of 27 radio telescope dishes in Catron and Socorro counties, New Mexico (Fig. P38.59). The antennas can be moved apart on railroad tracks, and their combined signals give the resolving power of a synthetic aperture 36.0 km in diameter. (a) If the detectors are tuned to a frequency of 1.40 GHz, what is the angular resolution of the VLA? (b) Clouds of interstellar hydrogen radiate at the frequency used in part (a). What must be the separation distance of two clouds at the center of the galaxy, 26 000 light-years away, if they are to be resolved? (c) **What If?** As the telescope looks up, a circling hawk looks down. Assume the hawk is most sensitive to green light having a wavelength of 500 nm and has a pupil of diameter 12.0 mm. Find the angular resolution of the hawk's eye. (d) A mouse is on the ground 30.0 m below. By what distance must the mouse's whiskers be separated if the hawk can resolve them?

Figure P38.59

60. Two wavelengths λ and $\lambda + \Delta\lambda$ (with $\Delta\lambda << \lambda$) are incident on a diffraction grating. Show that the angular separation between the spectral lines in the mth-order spectrum is

$$\Delta\theta = \frac{\Delta\lambda}{\sqrt{(d/m)^2 - \lambda^2}}$$

where d is the slit spacing and m is the order number.

61. **Review.** A beam of 541-nm light is incident on a diffraction grating that has 400 grooves/mm. (a) Determine the angle of the second-order ray. (b) **What If?** If the entire apparatus is immersed in water, what is the new second-order angle of diffraction? (c) Show that the two diffracted rays of parts (a) and (b) are related through the law of refraction.

62. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A technician is sending laser light of wavelength 632.8 nm through a pair of slits separated by 30.0 μm. Each slit is of width 2.00 μm. The screen on which he projects the pattern is not wide enough, so light from the m = 15 interference maximum misses the edge of the screen and passes into the next lab station, startling a coworker.

63. A 750-nm light beam in air hits the flat surface of a certain liquid, and the beam is split into a reflected ray and a refracted ray. If the reflected ray is completely polarized when it is at 36.0° with respect to the surface, what is the wavelength of the refracted ray?

64. Iridescent peacock feathers are shown in Figure P38.64a. The surface of one microscopic barbule is composed of transparent keratin that supports rods of dark brown melanin in a regular lattice, represented in Figure P38.64b. (Your fingernails are made of keratin, and melanin is the dark pigment giving color to human skin.) In a portion of the feather that can appear turquoise (blue-green), assume the melanin rods are uniformly separated by 0.25 μm, with air between them. (a) Explain how this structure can appear turquoise when it contains no blue or green pigment. (b) Explain how it can also appear violet if light falls on it in a different direction. (c) Explain how it can present different colors to your two eyes simultaneously, which is a characteristic of iridescence. (d) A compact disc can appear to be any color of the rainbow. Explain why the portion of the feather in Figure P38.64b cannot appear yellow or red. (e) What could be different about the array of melanin rods in a portion of the feather that does appear to be red?

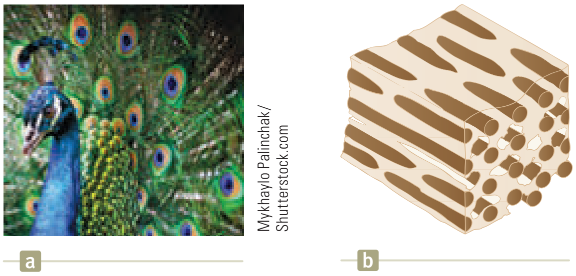


Figure P38.64

65. AMT Light in air strikes a water surface at the polarizing angle. The part of the beam refracted into the water strikes a submerged slab of material with refractive index n = 1.62 as shown in Figure P38.65. The light reflected from the upper surface of the slab is completely polarized. Find the angle θ between the water surface and the surface of the slab.

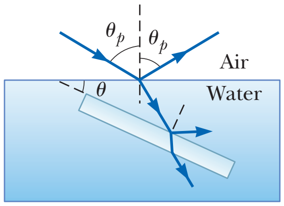


Figure P38.65
Problems 65 and 66.

66. Light in air (assume n = 1) strikes the surface of a liquid of index of refraction n_ℓ at the polarizing angle. The part of the beam refracted into the liquid strikes a submerged slab of material with refractive index n as shown in Figure P38.65. The light reflected from the upper surface of the slab is completely polarized. Find the angle θ between the water surface and the surface of the slab as a function of n and n_ℓ.

67. An American standard analog television picture (non-HDTV), also known as NTSC, is composed of approximately 485 visible horizontal lines of varying light intensity. Assume your ability to resolve the lines is limited only by the Rayleigh criterion, the pupils of your eyes are 5.00 mm in diameter, and the average wavelength of the light coming from the screen is 550 nm. Calculate the ratio of the minimum viewing distance to the vertical dimension of the picture such that you will not be able to resolve the lines.

68. A pinhole camera has a small circular aperture of diameter D. Light from distant objects passes through the aperture into an otherwise dark box, falling on a screen located a distance L away. If D is too large, the display on the screen will be fuzzy because a bright point in the field of view will send light onto a circle of diameter slightly larger than D. On the other hand, if D is too small, diffraction will blur the display on the screen. The screen shows a reasonably sharp image if the diameter of the central disk of the diffraction pattern, specified by Equation 38.6, is equal to D at the screen. (a) Show that for monochromatic light with plane wave fronts and $L >> D$, the condition for a sharp view is fulfilled if $D^2 = 2.44\lambda L$. (b) Find the optimum pinhole diameter for 500-nm light projected onto a screen 15.0 cm away.

69. The *scale* of a map is a number of kilometers per centimeter specifying the distance on the ground that any distance on the map represents. The scale of a spectrum is its *dispersion,* a number of nanometers per centimeter, specifying the change in wavelength that a distance across the spectrum represents. You must know the dispersion if you want to compare one spectrum with another or make a measurement of, for example, a Doppler shift. Let y represent the position relative to the center of a diffraction pattern projected onto a flat screen at distance L by a diffraction grating with slit spacing d. The dispersion is $d\lambda/dy$. (a) Prove that the dispersion is given by

$$\frac{d\lambda}{dy} = \frac{L^2 d}{m(L^2 + y^2)^{3/2}}$$

(b) A light with a mean wavelength of 550 nm is analyzed with a grating having 8 000 rulings/cm and projected onto a screen 2.40 m away. Calculate the dispersion in first order.

70. (a) Light traveling in a medium of index of refraction n_1 is incident at an angle θ on the surface of a medium of index n_2. The angle between reflected and refracted rays is β. Show that

$$\tan\theta = \frac{n_2 \sin\beta}{n_1 - n_2 \cos\beta}$$

(b) **What If?** Show that this expression for $\tan\theta$ reduces to Brewster's law when $\beta = 90°$.

71. The intensity of light in a diffraction pattern of a single slit is described by the equation

$$I = I_{\max}\frac{\sin^2\phi}{\phi^2}$$

where $\phi = (\pi a \sin\theta)/\lambda$. The central maximum is at $\phi = 0$, and the side maxima are *approximately* at $\phi = (m + \frac{1}{2})\pi$ for $m = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. Determine more precisely (a) the location of the first side maximum, where $m = 1$, and (b) the location of the second side maximum. *Suggestion:* Observe in Figure 38.6a that the graph of intensity versus ϕ has a horizontal tangent at maxima and also at minima.

72. How much diffraction spreading does a light beam undergo? One quantitative answer is the *full width at half maximum* of the central maximum of the single-slit Fraunhofer diffraction pattern. You can evaluate this angle of spreading in this problem. (a) In Equation 38.2, define $\phi = \pi a \sin\theta/\lambda$ and show that at the point where $I = 0.5I_{\max}$ we must have $\phi = \sqrt{2}\sin\phi$. (b) Let $y_1 = \sin\phi$ and $y_2 = \phi/\sqrt{2}$. Plot y_1 and y_2 on the same set of axes over a range from $\phi = 1$ rad to $\phi = \pi/2$ rad. Determine ϕ from the point of intersection of the two curves. (c) Then show that if the fraction λ/a is not large, the angular full width at half maximum of the central diffraction maximum is $\theta = 0.885\lambda/a$. (d) **What If?** Another method to solve the transcendental equation $\phi = \sqrt{2}\sin\phi$ in part (a) is to guess a first value of ϕ, use a computer or calculator to see how nearly it fits, and continue to update your estimate until the equation balances. How many steps (iterations) does this process take?

73. Two closely spaced wavelengths of light are incident on a diffraction grating. (a) Starting with Equation 38.7, show that the angular dispersion of the grating is given by

$$\frac{d\theta}{d\lambda} = \frac{m}{d\cos\theta}$$

(b) A square grating 2.00 cm on each side containing 8 000 equally spaced slits is used to analyze the spectrum of mercury. Two closely spaced lines emitted by this element have wavelengths of 579.065 nm and 576.959 nm. What is the angular separation of these two wavelengths in the second-order spectrum?

74. Light of wavelength 632.8 nm illuminates a single slit, and a diffraction pattern is formed on a screen 1.00 m from the slit. (a) Using the data in the following table, plot relative intensity versus position. Choose an appropriate value for the slit width a and, on the same graph used for the experimental data, plot the theoretical expression for the relative intensity

$$\frac{I}{I_{\max}} = \frac{\sin^2\phi}{\phi^2}$$

where $\phi = (\pi a \sin\theta)/\lambda$. (b) What value of a gives the best fit of theory and experiment?

Position Relative to Central Maximum (mm)	Relative Intensity
0	1.00
0.8	0.95
1.6	0.80
3.2	0.39
4.8	0.079
6.5	0.003
8.1	0.036
9.7	0.043
11.3	0.013
12.9	0.000 3
14.5	0.012
16.1	0.015
17.7	0.004 4
19.3	0.000 3

Challenge Problems

75. Figure P38.75a is a three-dimensional sketch of a birefringent crystal. The dotted lines illustrate how a thin, parallel-faced slab of material could be cut from the larger specimen with the crystal's optic axis parallel to the faces of the plate. A section cut from the crystal in this manner is known as a *retardation plate.* When a beam of light is incident on the plate perpendicular to the direction of the optic axis as shown in Figure P38.75b, the O ray and the E ray travel along a single straight line, but with different speeds. The figure shows the wave fronts for the two rays. (a) Let the thickness of the plate be d. Show that the phase difference between the O ray and the E ray after traveling the thickness of the plate is

$$\theta = \frac{2\pi d}{\lambda}|n_O - n_E|$$

where λ is the wavelength in air. (b) In a particular case, the incident light has a wavelength of 550 nm. Find the minimum value of d for a quartz plate for which $\theta = \pi/2$. Such a plate is called a *quarter-wave plate.* Use values of n_O and n_E from Table 38.1.

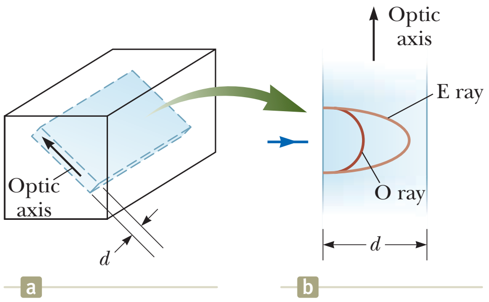


Figure P38.75

76. A spy satellite can consist of a large-diameter concave mirror forming an image on a digital-camera detector and sending the picture to a ground receiver by radio waves. In effect, it is an astronomical telescope in orbit, looking down instead of up. (a) Can a spy satellite read a license plate? (b) Can it read the date on a dime? Argue for your answers by making an order-of-magnitude calculation, specifying the data you estimate.

77. Suppose the single slit in Figure 38.4 is 6.00 cm wide and in front of a microwave source operating at 7.50 GHz. (a) Calculate the angle for the first minimum in the diffraction pattern. (b) What is the relative intensity I/I_{max} at $\theta = 15.0°$? (c) Assume two such sources, separated laterally by 20.0 cm, are behind the slit. What must be the maximum distance between the plane of the sources and the slit if the diffraction patterns are to be resolved? In this case, the approximation $\sin\theta \approx \tan\theta$ is not valid because of the relatively small value of a/λ.

78. In Figure P38.78, suppose the transmission axes of the left and right polarizing disks are perpendicular to each other. Also, let the center disk be rotated on the common axis with an angular speed ω. Show that if unpolarized light is incident on the left disk with an intensity I_{max}, the intensity of the beam emerging from the right disk is

$$I = \tfrac{1}{16}I_{max}(1 - \cos 4\omega t)$$

This result means that the intensity of the emerging beam is modulated at a rate four times the rate of rotation of the center disk. *Suggestion:* Use the trigonometric identities $\cos^2\theta = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \cos 2\theta)$ and $\sin^2\theta = \frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos 2\theta)$.

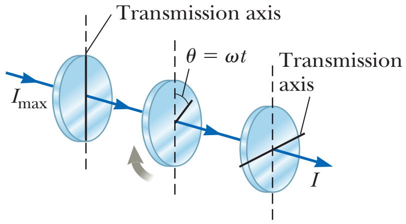


Figure P38.78

79. Consider a light wave passing through a slit and propagating toward a distant screen. Figure P38.79 shows the intensity variation for the pattern on the screen. Give a mathematical argument that more than 90% of the transmitted energy is in the central maximum of the diffraction pattern. *Suggestion:* You are not expected to calculate the precise percentage, but explain the steps of your reasoning. You may use the identification

$$\frac{1}{1^2} + \frac{1}{3^2} + \frac{1}{5^2} + \cdots = \frac{\pi^2}{8}$$

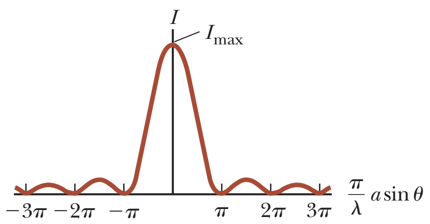
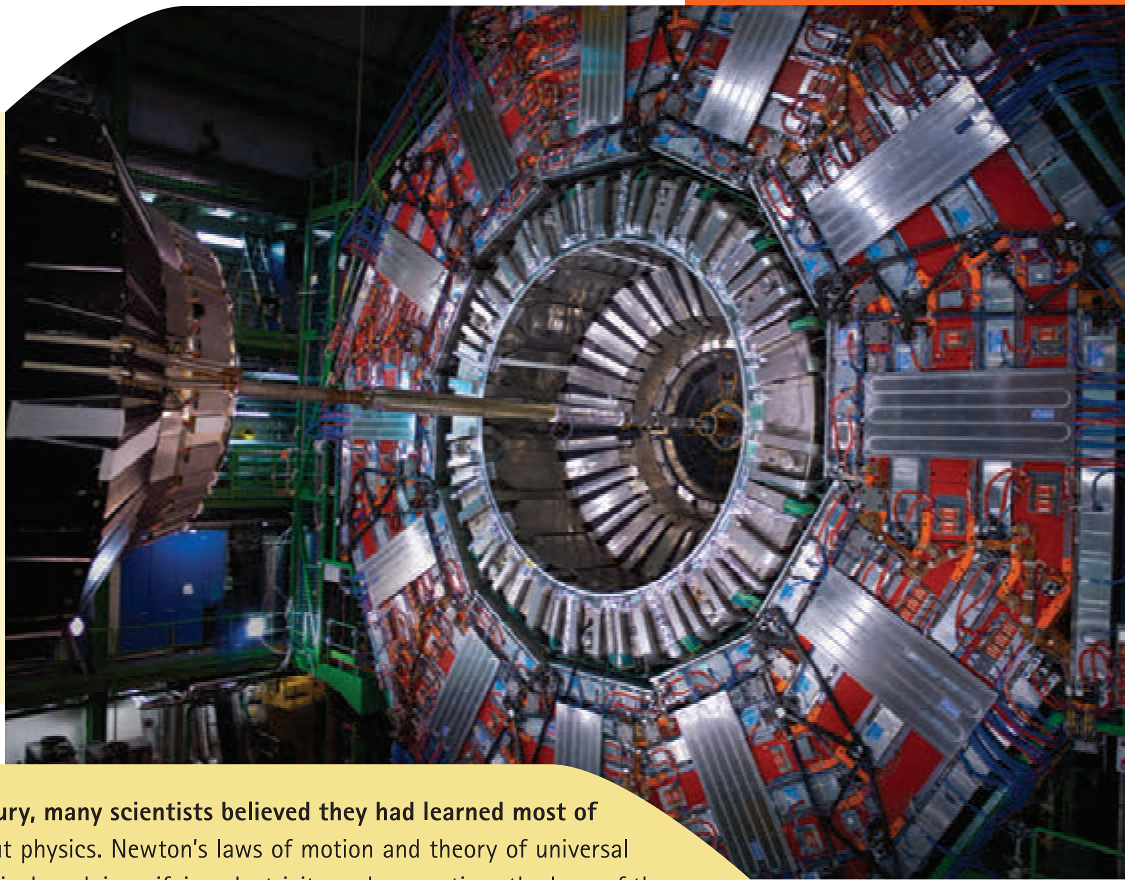


Figure P38.79

Modern Physics

PART 6



The Compact Muon Solenoid (CMS) Detector is part of the Large Hadron Collider at the European Laboratory for Particle Physics operated by CERN. It is one of several detectors that search for elementary particles. For a sense of scale, the green structure to the left of the detector and extending to the top is five stories high. *(CERN)*

At the end of the 19th century, many scientists believed they had learned most of what there was to know about physics. Newton's laws of motion and theory of universal gravitation, Maxwell's theoretical work in unifying electricity and magnetism, the laws of thermodynamics and kinetic theory, and the principles of optics were highly successful in explaining a variety of phenomena.

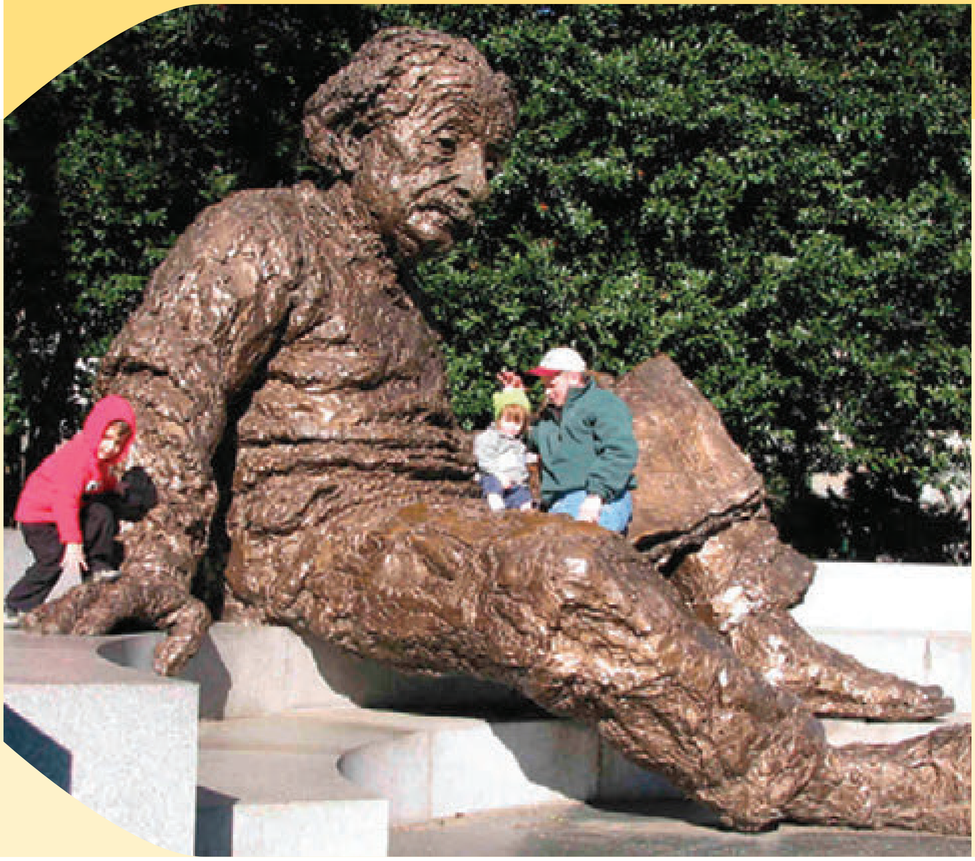
At the turn of the 20th century, however, a major revolution shook the world of physics. In 1900, Max Planck provided the basic ideas that led to the formulation of the quantum theory, and in 1905, Albert Einstein formulated his special theory of relativity. The excitement of the times is captured in Einstein's own words: "It was a marvelous time to be alive." Both theories were to have a profound effect on our understanding of nature. Within a few decades, they inspired new developments in the fields of atomic physics, nuclear physics, and condensed-matter physics.

In Chapter 39, we shall introduce the special theory of relativity. The theory provides us with a new and deeper view of physical laws. Although the predictions of this theory often violate our common sense, the theory correctly describes the results of experiments involving speeds near the speed of light. The extended version of this textbook, *Physics for Scientists and Engineers with Modern Physics,* covers the basic concepts of quantum mechanics and their application to atomic and molecular physics. In addition, we introduce condensed matter physics, nuclear physics, particle physics, and cosmology in the extended version.

Even though the physics that was developed during the 20th century has led to a multitude of important technological achievements, the story is still incomplete. Discoveries will continue to evolve during our lifetimes, and many of these discoveries will deepen or refine our understanding of nature and the Universe around us. It is still a "marvelous time to be alive." ■

CHAPTER

39 Relativity



Standing on the shoulders of a giant. David Serway, son of one of the authors, watches over two of his children, Nathan and Kaitlyn, as they frolic in the arms of Albert Einstein's statue at the Einstein memorial in Washington, D.C. It is well known that Einstein, the principal architect of relativity, was very fond of children. *(Emily Serway)*

Our everyday experiences and observations involve objects that move at speeds much less than the speed of light. Newtonian mechanics was formulated by observing and describing the motion of such objects, and this formalism is very successful in describing a wide range of phenomena that occur at low speeds. Nonetheless, it fails to describe properly the motion of objects whose speeds approach that of light.

Experimentally, the predictions of Newtonian theory can be tested at high speeds by accelerating electrons or other charged particles through a large electric potential difference. For example, it is possible to accelerate an electron to a speed of $0.99c$ (where c is the speed of light) by using a potential difference of several million volts. According to Newtonian mechanics, if the potential difference is increased by a factor of 4, the electron's kinetic energy is four times greater and its speed should double to $1.98c$. Experiments show, however, that the speed of the electron—as well as the speed of any other object in the Universe—always remains less than the speed of light, regardless of the size of the accelerating voltage. Because it places no upper limit on speed, Newtonian mechanics is contrary to modern experimental results and is clearly a limited theory.

In 1905, at the age of only 26, Einstein published his special theory of relativity. Regarding the theory, Einstein wrote:

> The relativity theory arose from necessity, from serious and deep contradictions in the old theory from which there seemed no escape. The strength of the new theory lies in the consistency and simplicity with which it solves all these difficulties.[1]

Although Einstein made many other important contributions to science, the special theory of relativity alone represents one of the greatest intellectual achievements of all time. With this theory, experimental observations can be correctly predicted over the range of speeds from $v = 0$ to speeds approaching the speed of light. At low speeds, Einstein's theory reduces to Newtonian mechanics as a limiting situation. It is important to recognize that Einstein was working on electromagnetism when he developed the special theory of relativity. He was convinced that Maxwell's equations were correct, and to reconcile them with one of his postulates, he was forced into the revolutionary notion of assuming that space and time are not absolute.

This chapter gives an introduction to the special theory of relativity, with emphasis on some of its predictions. In addition to its well-known and essential role in theoretical physics, the special theory of relativity has practical applications, including the design of nuclear power plants and modern global positioning system (GPS) units. These devices depend on relativistic principles for proper design and operation.

39.1 The Principle of Galilean Relativity

To describe a physical event, we must establish a frame of reference. You should recall from Chapter 5 that an inertial frame of reference is one in which an object is observed to have no acceleration when no forces act on it. Furthermore, any frame moving with constant velocity with respect to an inertial frame must also be an inertial frame.

There is no absolute inertial reference frame. Therefore, the results of an experiment performed in a vehicle moving with uniform velocity must be identical to the results of the same experiment performed in a stationary vehicle. The formal statement of this result is called the **principle of Galilean relativity:**

The laws of mechanics must be the same in all inertial frames of reference.

◀ **Principle of Galilean relativity**

Let's consider an observation that illustrates the equivalence of the laws of mechanics in different inertial frames. The pickup truck in Figure 39.1a moves with a

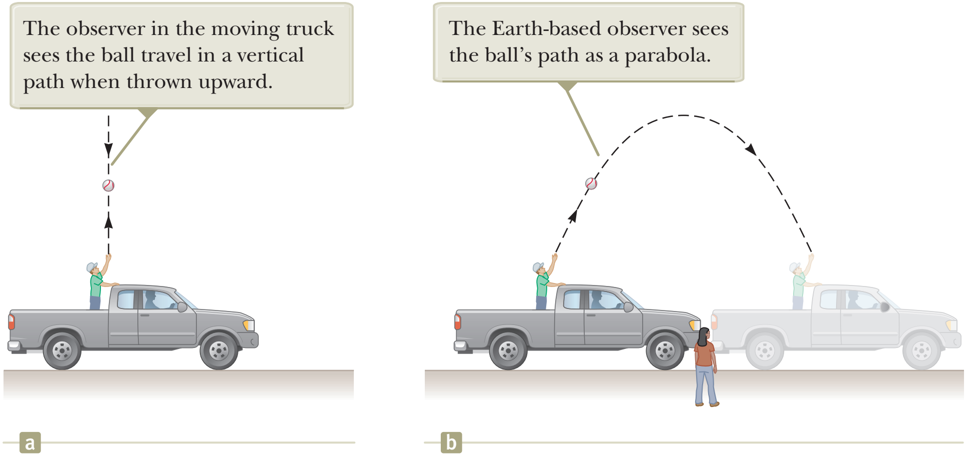


Figure 39.1 Two observers watch the path of a thrown ball and obtain different results.

[1]A. Einstein and L. Infield, *The Evolution of Physics* (New York: Simon and Schuster, 1961).

constant velocity with respect to the ground. If a passenger in the truck throws a ball straight up and if air resistance is neglected, the passenger observes that the ball moves in a vertical path. The motion of the ball appears to be precisely the same as if the ball were thrown by a person at rest on the Earth. The law of universal gravitation and the equations of motion under constant acceleration are obeyed whether the truck is at rest or in uniform motion.

Consider also an observer on the ground as in Figure 39.1b. Both observers agree on the laws of physics: the observer in the truck throws a ball straight up, and it rises and falls back into his hand according to the particle under constant acceleration model. Do the observers agree on the path of the ball thrown by the observer in the truck? The observer on the ground sees the path of the ball as a parabola as illustrated in Figure 39.1b, whereas, as mentioned earlier, the observer in the truck sees the ball move in a vertical path. Furthermore, according to the observer on the ground, the ball has a horizontal component of velocity equal to the velocity of the truck, and the horizontal motion of the ball is described by the particle under constant velocity model. Although the two observers disagree on certain aspects of the situation, they agree on the validity of Newton's laws and on the results of applying appropriate analysis models that we have learned. This agreement implies that no mechanical experiment can detect any difference between the two inertial frames. The only thing that can be detected is the relative motion of one frame with respect to the other.

Quick Quiz 39.1 Which observer in Figure 39.1 sees the ball's *correct* path? **(a)** the observer in the truck **(b)** the observer on the ground **(c)** both observers

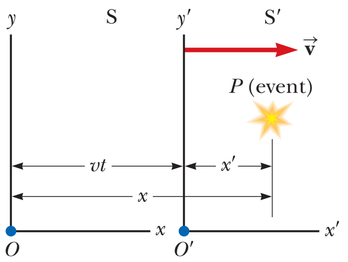


Figure 39.2 An event occurs at a point P. The event is seen by two observers in inertial frames S and S′, where S′ moves with a velocity $\vec{v}$ relative to S.

Suppose some physical phenomenon, which we call an *event,* occurs and is observed by an observer at rest in an inertial reference frame. The wording "in a frame" means that the observer is at rest with respect to the origin of that frame. The event's location and time of occurrence can be specified by the four coordinates (x, y, z, t). We would like to be able to transform these coordinates from those of an observer in one inertial frame to those of another observer in a frame moving with uniform relative velocity compared with the first frame.

Consider two inertial frames S and S′ (Fig. 39.2). The S′ frame moves with a constant velocity $\vec{v}$ along the common x and x' axes, where $\vec{v}$ is measured relative to S. We assume the origins of S and S′ coincide at $t = 0$ and an event occurs at point P in space at some instant of time. For simplicity, we show the observer O in the S frame and the observer O' in the S′ frame as blue dots at the origins of their coordinate frames in Figure 39.2, but that is not necessary: either observer could be at any fixed location in his or her frame. Observer O describes the event with space–time coordinates (x, y, z, t), whereas observer O' in S′ uses the coordinates (x', y', z', t') to describe the same event. Model the origin of S′ as a particle under constant velocity relative to the origin of S. As we see from the geometry in Figure 39.2, the relationships among these various coordinates can be written

Galilean transformation equations

$$x' = x - vt \qquad y' = y \qquad z' = z \qquad t' = t \tag{39.1}$$

These equations are the **Galilean space–time transformation equations.** Note that time is assumed to be the same in both inertial frames. That is, within the framework of classical mechanics, all clocks run at the same rate, regardless of their velocity, so the time at which an event occurs for an observer in S is the same as the time for the same event in S′. Consequently, the time interval between two successive events should be the same for both observers. Although this assumption may seem obvious, it turns out to be incorrect in situations where v is comparable to the speed of light.

Now suppose a particle moves through a displacement of magnitude dx along the x axis in a time interval dt as measured by an observer in S. It follows from Equations 39.1 that the corresponding displacement dx' measured by an observer in S′ is

$dx' = dx - v\,dt$, where frame S′ is moving with speed v in the x direction relative to frame S. Because $dt = dt'$, we find that

$$\frac{dx'}{dt'} = \frac{dx}{dt} - v$$

or

$$u'_x = u_x - v \tag{39.2}$$

where u_x and u'_x are the x components of the velocity of the particle measured by observers in S and S′, respectively. (We use the symbol $\vec{\mathbf{u}}$ rather than $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ for particle velocity because $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ is already used for the relative velocity of two reference frames.) Equation 39.2 is the **Galilean velocity transformation equation.** It is consistent with our intuitive notion of time and space as well as with our discussions in Section 4.6. As we shall soon see, however, it leads to serious contradictions when applied to electromagnetic waves.

Pitfall Prevention 39.1

The Relationship Between the S and S′ Frames Many of the mathematical representations in this chapter are true *only* for the specified relationship between the S and S′ frames. The x and x' axes coincide, except their origins are different. The y and y' axes (and the z and z' axes) are parallel, but they only coincide at one instant due to the time-varying position of the origin of S′ with respect to that of S. We choose the time $t = 0$ to be the instant at which the origins of the two coordinate systems coincide. If the S′ frame is moving in the positive x direction relative to S, then v is positive; otherwise, it is negative.

Quick Quiz 39.2 A baseball pitcher with a 90-mi/h fastball throws a ball while standing on a railroad flatcar moving at 110 mi/h. The ball is thrown in the same direction as that of the velocity of the train. If you apply the Galilean velocity transformation equation to this situation, is the speed of the ball relative to the Earth **(a)** 90 mi/h, **(b)** 110 mi/h, **(c)** 20 mi/h, **(d)** 200 mi/h, or **(e)** impossible to determine?

The Speed of Light

It is quite natural to ask whether the principle of Galilean relativity also applies to electricity, magnetism, and optics. Experiments indicate that the answer is no. Recall from Chapter 34 that Maxwell showed that the speed of light in free space is $c = 3.00 \times 10^8$ m/s. Physicists of the late 1800s thought light waves move through a medium called the *ether* and the speed of light is c only in a special, absolute frame at rest with respect to the ether. The Galilean velocity transformation equation was expected to hold for observations of light made by an observer in any frame moving at speed v relative to the absolute ether frame. That is, if light travels along the x axis and an observer moves with velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ along the x axis, the observer measures the light to have speed $c \pm v$, depending on the directions of travel of the observer and the light.

Because the existence of a preferred, absolute ether frame would show that light is similar to other classical waves and that Newtonian ideas of an absolute frame are true, considerable importance was attached to establishing the existence of the ether frame. Prior to the late 1800s, experiments involving light traveling in media moving at the highest laboratory speeds attainable at that time were not capable of detecting differences as small as that between c and $c \pm v$. Starting in about 1880, scientists decided to use the Earth as the moving frame in an attempt to improve their chances of detecting these small changes in the speed of light.

Observers fixed on the Earth can take the view that they are stationary and that the absolute ether frame containing the medium for light propagation moves past them with speed v. Determining the speed of light under these circumstances is similar to determining the speed of an aircraft traveling in a moving air current, or wind; consequently, we speak of an "ether wind" blowing through our apparatus fixed to the Earth.

A direct method for detecting an ether wind would use an apparatus fixed to the Earth to measure the ether wind's influence on the speed of light. If v is the speed of the ether relative to the Earth, light should have its maximum speed $c + v$ when propagating downwind as in Figure 39.3a. Likewise, the speed of light should have its minimum value $c - v$ when the light is propagating upwind as in Figure 39.3b and an intermediate value $(c^2 - v^2)^{1/2}$ when the light is directed such that it travels perpendicular to the ether wind as in Figure 39.3c. In this latter case, the vector $\vec{\mathbf{c}}$

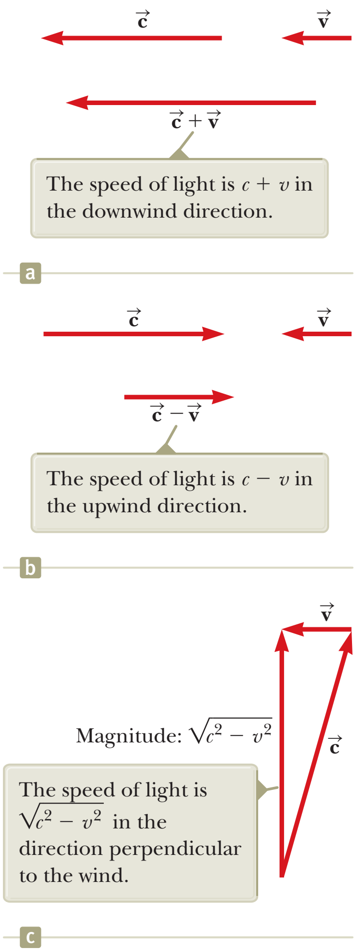


Figure 39.3 If the velocity of the ether wind relative to the Earth is $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ and the velocity of light relative to the ether is $\vec{\mathbf{c}}$, the speed of light relative to the Earth depends on the direction of the Earth's velocity.

must be aimed upstream so that the resultant velocity is perpendicular to the wind, like the boat in Figure 4.21b. If the Sun is assumed to be at rest in the ether, the velocity of the ether wind would be equal to the orbital velocity of the Earth around the Sun, which has a magnitude of approximately 30 km/s or 3×10^4 m/s. Because $c = 3 \times 10^8$ m/s, it is necessary to detect a change in speed of approximately 1 part in 10^4 for measurements in the upwind or downwind directions. Although such a change is experimentally measurable, all attempts to detect such changes and establish the existence of the ether wind (and hence the absolute frame) proved futile! We shall discuss the classic experimental search for the ether in Section 39.2.

The principle of Galilean relativity refers only to the laws of mechanics. If it is assumed the laws of electricity and magnetism are the same in all inertial frames, a paradox concerning the speed of light immediately arises. That can be understood by recognizing that Maxwell's equations imply that the speed of light always has the fixed value 3.00×10^8 m/s in all inertial frames, a result in direct contradiction to what is expected based on the Galilean velocity transformation equation. According to Galilean relativity, the speed of light should *not* be the same in all inertial frames.

To resolve this contradiction in theories, we must conclude that either (1) the laws of electricity and magnetism are not the same in all inertial frames or (2) the Galilean velocity transformation equation is incorrect. If we assume the first alternative, a preferred reference frame in which the speed of light has the value c must exist and the measured speed must be greater or less than this value in any other reference frame, in accordance with the Galilean velocity transformation equation. If we assume the second alternative, we must abandon the notions of absolute time and absolute length that form the basis of the Galilean space–time transformation equations.

39.2 The Michelson–Morley Experiment

The most famous experiment designed to detect small changes in the speed of light was first performed in 1881 by A. A. Michelson (see Section 37.6) and later repeated under various conditions by Michelson and Edward W. Morley (1838–1923). As we shall see, the outcome of the experiment contradicted the ether hypothesis.

The experiment was designed to determine the velocity of the Earth relative to that of the hypothetical ether. The experimental tool used was the Michelson interferometer, which was discussed in Section 37.6 and is shown again in Figure 39.4. Arm 2 is aligned along the direction of the Earth's motion through space. The Earth moving through the ether at speed v is equivalent to the ether flowing past the Earth in the opposite direction with speed v. This ether wind blowing in the direction opposite the direction of the Earth's motion should cause the speed of light measured in the Earth frame to be $c - v$ as the light approaches mirror M_2 and $c + v$ after reflection, where c is the speed of light in the ether frame.

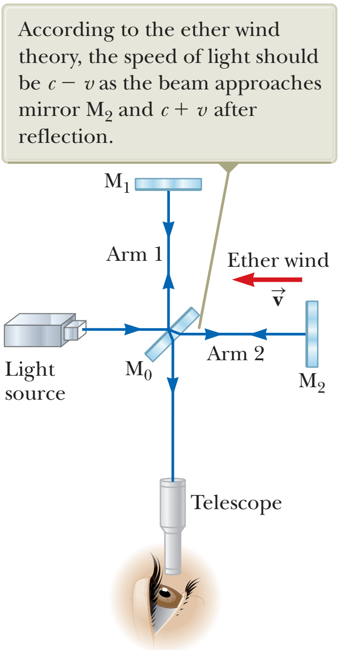


Figure 39.4 A Michelson interferometer is used in an attempt to detect the ether wind.

The two light beams reflect from M_1 and M_2 and recombine, and an interference pattern is formed as discussed in Section 37.6. The interference pattern is then observed while the interferometer is rotated through an angle of 90°. This rotation interchanges the speed of the ether wind between the arms of the interferometer. The rotation should cause the fringe pattern to shift slightly but measurably. Measurements failed, however, to show any change in the interference pattern! The Michelson–Morley experiment was repeated at different times of the year when the ether wind was expected to change direction and magnitude, but the results were always the same: no fringe shift of the magnitude required was *ever* observed.[2]

The negative results of the Michelson–Morley experiment not only contradicted the ether hypothesis, but also showed that it is impossible to measure the absolute

[2]From an Earth-based observer's point of view, changes in the Earth's speed and direction of motion in the course of a year are viewed as ether wind shifts. Even if the speed of the Earth with respect to the ether were zero at some time, six months later the speed of the Earth would be 60 km/s with respect to the ether and as a result a fringe shift should be noticed. No shift has ever been observed, however.

velocity of the Earth with respect to the ether frame. Einstein, however, offered a postulate for his special theory of relativity that places quite a different interpretation on these null results. In later years, when more was known about the nature of light, the idea of an ether that permeates all of space was abandoned. Light is now understood to be an electromagnetic wave, which requires no medium for its propagation. As a result, the idea of an ether in which these waves travel became unnecessary.

Details of the Michelson–Morley Experiment

To understand the outcome of the Michelson–Morley experiment, let's assume the two arms of the interferometer in Figure 39.4 are of equal length L. We shall analyze the situation as if there were an ether wind because that is what Michelson and Morley expected to find. As noted above, the speed of the light beam along arm 2 should be $c - v$ as the beam approaches M_2 and $c + v$ after the beam is reflected. We model a pulse of light as a particle under constant speed. Therefore, the time interval for travel to the right for the pulse is $\Delta t = L/(c - v)$ and the time interval for travel to the left is $\Delta t = L/(c + v)$. The total time interval for the round trip along arm 2 is

$$\Delta t_{\text{arm 2}} = \frac{L}{c+v} + \frac{L}{c-v} = \frac{2Lc}{c^2 - v^2} = \frac{2L}{c}\left(1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}\right)^{-1}$$

Now consider the light beam traveling along arm 1, perpendicular to the ether wind. Because the speed of the beam relative to the Earth is $(c^2 - v^2)^{1/2}$ in this case (see Fig. 39.3c), the time interval for travel for each half of the trip is $\Delta t = L/(c^2 - v^2)^{1/2}$ and the total time interval for the round trip is

$$\Delta t_{\text{arm 1}} = \frac{2L}{(c^2 - v^2)^{1/2}} = \frac{2L}{c}\left(1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}\right)^{-1/2}$$

The time difference Δt between the horizontal round trip (arm 2) and the vertical round trip (arm 1) is

$$\Delta t = \Delta t_{\text{arm 2}} - \Delta t_{\text{arm 1}} = \frac{2L}{c}\left[\left(1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}\right)^{-1} - \left(1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}\right)^{-1/2}\right]$$

Because $v^2/c^2 << 1$, we can simplify this expression by using the following binomial expansion after dropping all terms higher than second order:

$$(1 - x)^n \approx 1 - nx \quad (\text{for } x << 1)$$

In our case, $x = v^2/c^2$, and we find that

$$\Delta t = \Delta t_{\text{arm 2}} - \Delta t_{\text{arm 1}} \approx \frac{Lv^2}{c^3} \tag{39.3}$$

This time difference between the two instants at which the reflected beams arrive at the viewing telescope gives rise to a phase difference between the beams, producing an interference pattern when they combine at the position of the telescope. A shift in the interference pattern should be detected when the interferometer is rotated through 90° in a horizontal plane so that the two beams exchange roles. This rotation results in a time difference twice that given by Equation 39.3. Therefore, the path difference that corresponds to this time difference is

$$\Delta d = c(2\,\Delta t) = \frac{2Lv^2}{c^2}$$

Because a change in path length of one wavelength corresponds to a shift of one fringe, the corresponding fringe shift is equal to this path difference divided by the wavelength of the light:

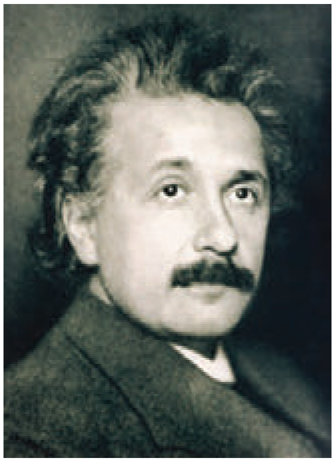
$$\text{Shift} = \frac{2Lv^2}{\lambda c^2} \tag{39.4}$$

In the experiments by Michelson and Morley, each light beam was reflected by mirrors many times to give an effective path length L of approximately 11 m. Using this value, taking v to be equal to 3.0×10^4 m/s (the speed of the Earth around the Sun), and using 500 nm for the wavelength of the light, we expect a fringe shift of

$$\text{Shift} = \frac{2(11\text{ m})(3.0 \times 10^4\text{ m/s})^2}{(5.0 \times 10^{-7}\text{ m})(3.0 \times 10^8\text{ m/s})^2} = 0.44$$

The instrument used by Michelson and Morley could detect shifts as small as 0.01 fringe, but it detected no shift whatsoever in the fringe pattern! The experiment has been repeated many times since by different scientists under a wide variety of conditions, and no fringe shift has ever been detected. Therefore, it was concluded that the motion of the Earth with respect to the postulated ether cannot be detected.

Many efforts were made to explain the null results of the Michelson–Morley experiment and to save the ether frame concept and the Galilean velocity transformation equation for light. All proposals resulting from these efforts have been shown to be wrong. No experiment in the history of physics received such valiant efforts to explain the absence of an expected result as did the Michelson–Morley experiment. The stage was set for Einstein, who solved the problem in 1905 with his special theory of relativity.



Albert Einstein
German-American Physicist (1879–1955)
Einstein, one of the greatest physicists of all time, was born in Ulm, Germany. In 1905, at age 26, he published four scientific papers that revolutionized physics. Two of these papers were concerned with what is now considered his most important contribution: the special theory of relativity.

In 1916, Einstein published his work on the general theory of relativity. The most dramatic prediction of this theory is the degree to which light is deflected by a gravitational field. Measurements made by astronomers on bright stars in the vicinity of the eclipsed Sun in 1919 confirmed Einstein's prediction, and Einstein became a world celebrity as a result. Einstein was deeply disturbed by the development of quantum mechanics in the 1920s despite his own role as a scientific revolutionary. In particular, he could never accept the probabilistic view of events in nature that is a central feature of quantum theory. The last few decades of his life were devoted to an unsuccessful search for a unified theory that would combine gravitation and electromagnetism.

39.3 Einstein's Principle of Relativity

In the previous section, we noted the impossibility of measuring the speed of the ether with respect to the Earth and the failure of the Galilean velocity transformation equation in the case of light. Einstein proposed a theory that boldly removed these difficulties and at the same time completely altered our notion of space and time.[3] He based his special theory of relativity on two postulates:

1. **The principle of relativity:** The laws of physics must be the same in all inertial reference frames.
2. **The constancy of the speed of light:** The speed of light in vacuum has the same value, $c = 3.00 \times 10^8$ m/s, in all inertial frames, regardless of the velocity of the observer or the velocity of the source emitting the light.

The first postulate asserts that *all* the laws of physics—those dealing with mechanics, electricity and magnetism, optics, thermodynamics, and so on—are the same in all reference frames moving with constant velocity relative to one another. This postulate is a generalization of the principle of Galilean relativity, which refers only to the laws of mechanics. From an experimental point of view, Einstein's principle of relativity means that any kind of experiment (measuring the speed of light, for example) performed in a laboratory at rest must give the same result when performed in a laboratory moving at a constant velocity with respect to the first one. Hence, no preferred inertial reference frame exists, and it is impossible to detect absolute motion.

Note that postulate 2 is required by postulate 1: if the speed of light were not the same in all inertial frames, measurements of different speeds would make it possible to distinguish between inertial frames. As a result, a preferred, absolute frame could be identified, in contradiction to postulate 1.

Although the Michelson–Morley experiment was performed before Einstein published his work on relativity, it is not clear whether or not Einstein was aware of the details of the experiment. Nonetheless, the null result of the experiment can be readily understood within the framework of Einstein's theory. According to

[3]A. Einstein, "On the Electrodynamics of Moving Bodies," *Ann. Physik* **17**:891, 1905. For an English translation of this article and other publications by Einstein, see the book by H. Lorentz, A. Einstein, H. Minkowski, and H. Weyl, *The Principle of Relativity* (New York: Dover, 1958).

his principle of relativity, the premises of the Michelson–Morley experiment were incorrect. In the process of trying to explain the expected results, we stated that when light traveled against the ether wind, its speed was $c - v$, in accordance with the Galilean velocity transformation equation. If the state of motion of the observer or of the source has no influence on the value found for the speed of light, however, one always measures the value to be c. Likewise, the light makes the return trip after reflection from the mirror at speed c, not at speed $c + v$. Therefore, the motion of the Earth does not influence the interference pattern observed in the Michelson–Morley experiment, and a null result should be expected.

If we accept Einstein's theory of relativity, we must conclude that relative motion is unimportant when measuring the speed of light. At the same time, we must alter our commonsense notion of space and time and be prepared for some surprising consequences. As you read the pages ahead, keep in mind that our commonsense ideas are based on a lifetime of everyday experiences and not on observations of objects moving at hundreds of thousands of kilometers per second. Therefore, these results may seem strange, but that is only because we have no experience with them.

39.4 Consequences of the Special Theory of Relativity

As we examine some of the consequences of relativity in this section, we restrict our discussion to the concepts of simultaneity, time intervals, and lengths, all three of which are quite different in relativistic mechanics from what they are in Newtonian mechanics. In relativistic mechanics, for example, the distance between two points and the time interval between two events depend on the frame of reference in which they are measured.

Simultaneity and the Relativity of Time

A basic premise of Newtonian mechanics is that a universal time scale exists that is the same for all observers. Newton and his followers took simultaneity for granted. In his special theory of relativity, Einstein abandoned this assumption.

Einstein devised the following thought experiment to illustrate this point. A boxcar moves with uniform velocity, and two bolts of lightning strike its ends as illustrated in Figure 39.5a, leaving marks on the boxcar and on the ground. The marks on the boxcar are labeled A' and B', and those on the ground are labeled A and B. An observer O' moving with the boxcar is midway between A' and B', and a ground observer O is midway between A and B. The events recorded by the observers are the striking of the boxcar by the two lightning bolts.

The light signals emitted from A and B at the instant at which the two bolts strike later reach observer O at the same time as indicated in Figure 39.5b. This observer

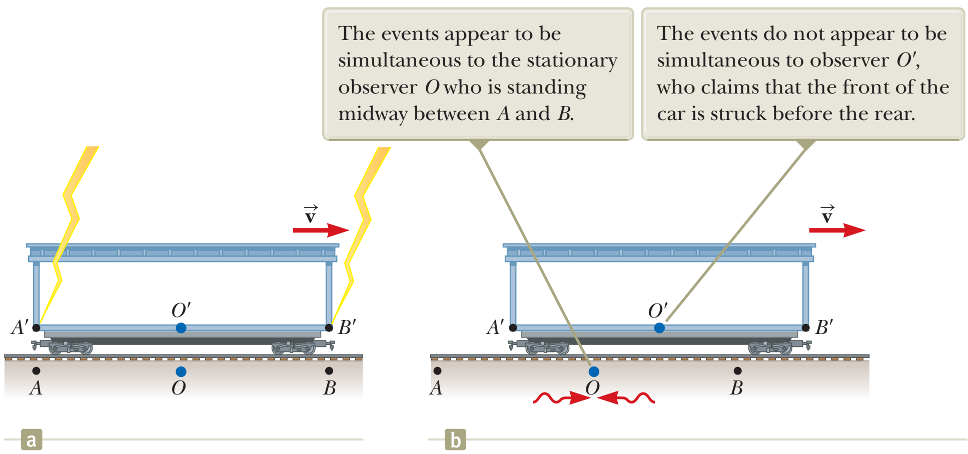


Figure 39.5 (a) Two lightning bolts strike the ends of a moving boxcar. (b) The leftward-traveling light signal has already passed O', but the rightward-traveling signal has not yet reached O'.

Pitfall Prevention 39.2

Who's Right? You might wonder which observer in Figure 39.5 is correct concerning the two lightning strikes. *Both are correct* because the principle of relativity states that *there is no preferred inertial frame of reference*. Although the two observers reach different conclusions, both are correct in their own reference frame because the concept of simultaneity is not absolute. That, in fact, is the central point of relativity: any uniformly moving frame of reference can be used to describe events and do physics.

realizes that the signals traveled at the same speed over equal distances and so concludes that the events at A and B occurred simultaneously. Now consider the same events as viewed by observer O'. By the time the signals have reached observer O, observer O' has moved as indicated in Figure 39.5b. Therefore, the signal from B' has already swept past O', but the signal from A' has not yet reached O'. In other words, O' sees the signal from B' before seeing the signal from A'. According to Einstein, *the two observers must find that light travels at the same speed*. Therefore, observer O' concludes that one lightning bolt strikes the front of the boxcar *before* the other one strikes the back.

This thought experiment clearly demonstrates that the two events that appear to be simultaneous to observer O do *not* appear to be simultaneous to observer O'. Simultaneity is not an absolute concept but rather one that depends on the state of motion of the observer. Einstein's thought experiment demonstrates that two observers can disagree on the simultaneity of two events. This disagreement, however, depends on the transit time of light to the observers and therefore does *not* demonstrate the deeper meaning of relativity. In relativistic analyses of high-speed situations, simultaneity is relative even when the transit time is subtracted out. In fact, in all the relativistic effects we discuss, we ignore differences caused by the transit time of light to the observers.

Time Dilation

To illustrate that observers in different inertial frames can measure different time intervals between a pair of events, consider a vehicle moving to the right with a speed v such as the boxcar shown in Figure 39.6a. A mirror is fixed to the ceiling of the vehicle, and observer O' at rest in the frame attached to the vehicle holds a flashlight a distance d below the mirror. At some instant, the flashlight emits a pulse of light directed toward the mirror (event 1), and at some later time after reflecting from the mirror, the pulse arrives back at the flashlight (event 2). Observer O' carries a clock and uses it to measure the time interval Δt_p between these two events. (The subscript p stands for *proper*, as we shall see in a moment.) We model the pulse of light as a particle under constant speed. Because the light pulse has a speed c, the time interval required for the pulse to travel from O' to the mirror and back is

$$\Delta t_p = \frac{\text{distance traveled}}{\text{speed}} = \frac{2d}{c} \tag{39.5}$$

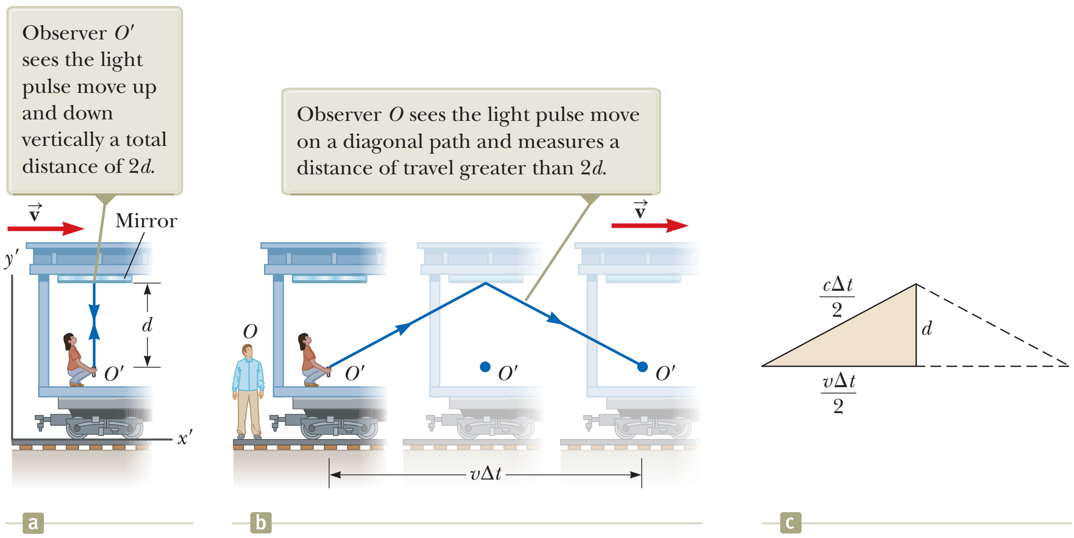


Figure 39.6 (a) A mirror is fixed to a moving vehicle, and a light pulse is sent out by observer O' at rest in the vehicle. (b) Relative to a stationary observer O standing alongside the vehicle, the mirror and O' move with a speed v. (c) The right triangle for calculating the relationship between Δt and Δt_p.

Now consider the same pair of events as viewed by observer O in a second frame at rest with respect to the ground as shown in Figure 39.6b. According to this observer, the mirror and the flashlight are moving to the right with a speed v, and as a result, the sequence of events appears entirely different. By the time the light from the flashlight reaches the mirror, the mirror has moved to the right a distance $v\,\Delta t/2$, where Δt is the time interval required for the light to travel from O' to the mirror and back to O' as measured by O. Observer O concludes that because of the motion of the vehicle, if the light is to hit the mirror, it must leave the flashlight at an angle with respect to the vertical direction. Comparing Figure 39.6a with Figure 39.6b, we see that the light must travel farther in part (b) than in part (a). (Notice that neither observer "knows" that he or she is moving. Each is at rest in his or her own inertial frame.)

According to the second postulate of the special theory of relativity, both observers must measure c for the speed of light. Because the light travels farther according to O, the time interval Δt measured by O is longer than the time interval Δt_p measured by O'. To obtain a relationship between these two time intervals, let's use the right triangle shown in Figure 39.6c. The Pythagorean theorem gives

$$\left(\frac{c\,\Delta t}{2}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{v\,\Delta t}{2}\right)^2 + d^2$$

Solving for Δt gives

$$\Delta t = \frac{2d}{\sqrt{c^2 - v^2}} = \frac{2d}{c\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{v^2}{c^2}}} \tag{39.6}$$

Because $\Delta t_p = 2d/c$, we can express this result as

$$\Delta t = \frac{\Delta t_p}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \gamma\,\Delta t_p \tag{39.7}$$

◀ Time dilation

where

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{v^2}{c^2}}} \tag{39.8}$$

Because γ is always greater than unity, Equation 39.7 shows that the time interval Δt measured by an observer moving with respect to a clock is longer than the time interval Δt_p measured by an observer at rest with respect to the clock. This effect is known as **time dilation.**

Time dilation is not observed in our everyday lives, which can be understood by considering the factor γ. This factor deviates significantly from a value of 1 only for very high speeds as shown in Figure 39.7 and Table 39.1. For example, for a speed of $0.1c$, the value of γ is 1.005. Therefore, there is a time dilation of only 0.5% at

Table 39.1 Approximate Values for γ at Various Speeds

v/c	γ
0	1
0.001 0	1.000 000 5
0.010	1.000 05
0.10	1.005
0.20	1.021
0.30	1.048
0.40	1.091
0.50	1.155
0.60	1.250
0.70	1.400
0.80	1.667
0.90	2.294
0.92	2.552
0.94	2.931
0.96	3.571
0.98	5.025
0.99	7.089
0.995	10.01
0.999	22.37

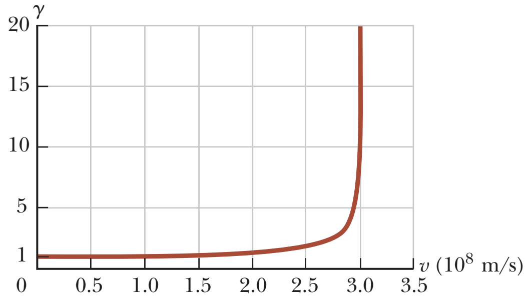


Figure 39.7 Graph of γ versus v. As the speed approaches that of light, γ increases rapidly.

one-tenth the speed of light. Speeds encountered on an everyday basis are far slower than $0.1c$, so we do not experience time dilation in normal situations.

The time interval Δt_p in Equations 39.5 and 39.7 is called the **proper time interval.** (Einstein used the German term *Eigenzeit,* which means "own-time.") In general, the proper time interval is the time interval between two events measured by an observer *who sees the events occur at the same point in space.*

If a clock is moving with respect to you, the time interval between ticks of the moving clock is observed to be longer than the time interval between ticks of an identical clock in your reference frame. Therefore, it is often said that a moving clock is measured to run more slowly than a clock in your reference frame by a factor γ. We can generalize this result by stating that all physical processes, including mechanical, chemical, and biological ones, are measured to slow down when those processes occur in a frame moving with respect to the observer. For example, the heartbeat of an astronaut moving through space keeps time with a clock inside the spacecraft. Both the astronaut's clock and heartbeat are measured to slow down relative to a clock back on the Earth (although the astronaut would have no sensation of life slowing down in the spacecraft).

Quick Quiz 39.3 Suppose the observer O' on the train in Figure 39.6 aims her flashlight at the far wall of the boxcar and turns it on and off, sending a pulse of light toward the far wall. Both O' and O measure the time interval between when the pulse leaves the flashlight and when it hits the far wall. Which observer measures the proper time interval between these two events? **(a)** O' **(b)** O **(c)** both observers **(d)** neither observer

Quick Quiz 39.4 A crew on a spacecraft watches a movie that is two hours long. The spacecraft is moving at high speed through space. Does an Earth-based observer watching the movie screen on the spacecraft through a powerful telescope measure the duration of the movie to be **(a)** longer than, **(b)** shorter than, or **(c)** equal to two hours?

Pitfall Prevention 39.3

The Proper Time Interval It is *very* important in relativistic calculations to correctly identify the observer who measures the proper time interval. The proper time interval between two events is always the time interval measured by an observer for whom the two events take place at the same position.

Time dilation is a very real phenomenon that has been verified by various experiments involving natural clocks. One experiment reported by J. C. Hafele and R. E. Keating provided direct evidence of time dilation.[4] Time intervals measured with four cesium atomic clocks in jet flight were compared with time intervals measured by Earth-based reference atomic clocks. To compare these results with theory, many factors had to be considered, including periods of speeding up and slowing down relative to the Earth, variations in direction of travel, and the weaker gravitational field experienced by the flying clocks than that experienced by the Earth-based clock. The results were in good agreement with the predictions of the special theory of relativity and were explained in terms of the relative motion between the Earth and the jet aircraft. In their paper, Hafele and Keating stated that "relative to the atomic time scale of the U.S. Naval Observatory, the flying clocks lost 59 ± 10 ns during the eastward trip and gained 273 ± 7 ns during the westward trip."

Another interesting example of time dilation involves the observation of *muons,* unstable elementary particles that have a charge equal to that of the electron and a mass 207 times that of the electron. Muons can be produced by the collision of cosmic radiation with atoms high in the atmosphere. Slow-moving muons in the laboratory have a lifetime that is measured to be the proper time interval $\Delta t_p = 2.2\ \mu s$. If we take $2.2\ \mu s$ as the average lifetime of a muon and assume that muons created by cosmic radiation have a speed close to the speed of light, we find that these particles can travel a distance of approximately $(3.0 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s})(2.2 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}) \approx 6.6 \times 10^2$ m before they decay (Fig. 39.8a). Hence, they are unlikely to reach the

[4]J. C. Hafele and R. E. Keating, "Around the World Atomic Clocks: Relativistic Time Gains Observed," *Science* **177:**168, 1972.

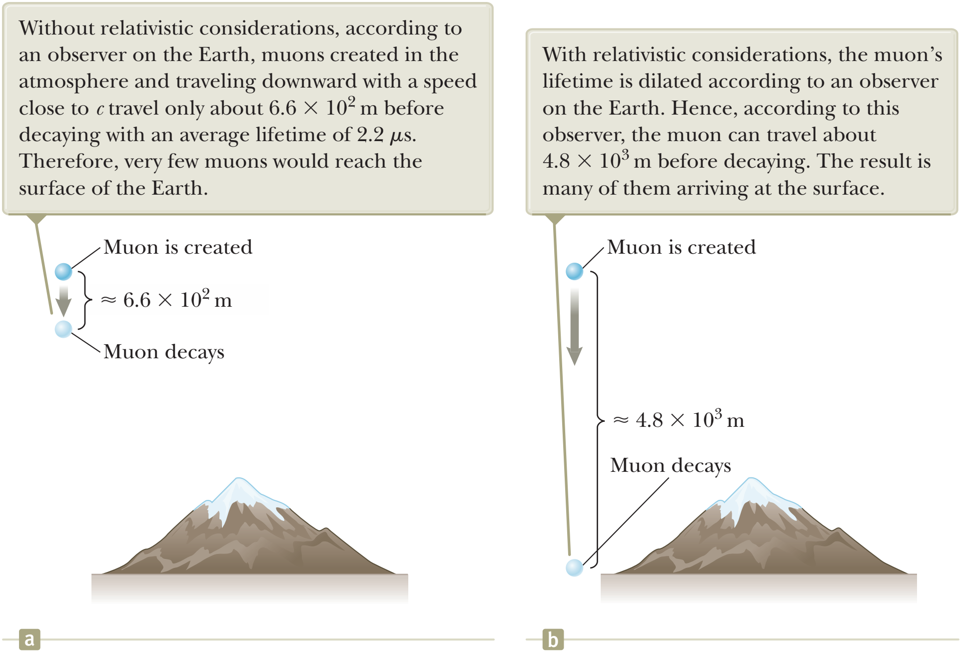


Figure 39.8 Travel of muons according to an Earth-based observer.

surface of the Earth from high in the atmosphere where they are produced. Experiments show, however, that a large number of muons *do* reach the surface. The phenomenon of time dilation explains this effect. As measured by an observer on the Earth, the muons have a dilated lifetime equal to $\gamma\,\Delta t_p$. For example, for $v = 0.99c$, $\gamma \approx 7.1$, and $\gamma\,\Delta t_p \approx 16\ \mu$s. Hence, the average distance traveled by the muons in this time interval as measured by an observer on the Earth is approximately $(0.99)(3.0 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s})(16 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{s}) \approx 4.8 \times 10^3$ m as indicated in Figure 39.8b.

In 1976, at the laboratory of the European Council for Nuclear Research (CERN) in Geneva, muons injected into a large storage ring reached speeds of approximately 0.999 4c. Electrons produced by the decaying muons were detected by counters around the ring, enabling scientists to measure the decay rate and hence the muon lifetime. The lifetime of the moving muons was measured to be approximately 30 times as long as that of the stationary muon, in agreement with the prediction of relativity to within two parts in a thousand.

Example 39.1 What Is the Period of the Pendulum?

The period of a pendulum is measured to be 3.00 s in the reference frame of the pendulum. What is the period when measured by an observer moving at a speed of 0.960c relative to the pendulum?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Let's change frames of reference. Instead of the observer moving at 0.960c, we can take the equivalent point of view that the observer is at rest and the pendulum is moving at 0.960c past the stationary observer. Hence, the pendulum is an example of a clock moving at high speed with respect to an observer.

Categorize Based on the Conceptualize step, we can categorize this example as a substitution problem involving relativistic time dilation.

The proper time interval, measured in the rest frame of the pendulum, is $\Delta t_p = 3.00$ s.

Use Equation 39.7 to find the dilated time interval:

$$\Delta t = \gamma\,\Delta t_p = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{(0.960c)^2}{c^2}}}\,\Delta t_p = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - 0.921\,6}}\,\Delta t_p$$

$$= 3.57(3.00\ \text{s}) = \boxed{10.7\ \text{s}}$$

continued

39.1 continued

This result shows that a moving pendulum is indeed measured to take longer to complete a period than a pendulum at rest does. The period increases by a factor of $\gamma = 3.57$.

WHAT IF? What if the speed of the observer increases by 4.00%? Does the dilated time interval increase by 4.00%?

Answer Based on the highly nonlinear behavior of γ as a function of v in Figure 39.7, we would guess that the increase in Δt would be different from 4.00%.

Find the new speed if it increases by 4.00%:

$$v_{\text{new}} = (1.040\,0)(0.960c) = 0.998\,4c$$

Perform the time dilation calculation again:

$$\Delta t = \gamma\,\Delta t_p = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{(0.998\,4c)^2}{c^2}}}\,\Delta t_p = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - 0.996\,8}}\,\Delta t_p$$

$$= 17.68(3.00\text{ s}) = 53.1\text{ s}$$

Therefore, the 4.00% increase in speed results in almost a 400% increase in the dilated time!

Example 39.2 How Long Was Your Trip?

Suppose you are driving your car on a business trip and are traveling at 30 m/s. Your boss, who is waiting at your destination, expects the trip to take 5.0 h. When you arrive late, your excuse is that the clock in your car registered the passage of 5.0 h but that you were driving fast and so your clock ran more slowly than the clock in your boss's office. If your car clock actually did indicate a 5.0-h trip, how much time passed on your boss's clock, which was at rest on the Earth?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The observer is your boss standing stationary on the Earth. The clock is in your car, moving at 30 m/s with respect to your boss.

Categorize The low speed of 30 m/s suggests we might categorize this problem as one in which we use classical concepts and equations. Based on the problem statement that the moving clock runs more slowly than a stationary clock, however, we categorize this problem as one involving time dilation.

Analyze The proper time interval, measured in the rest frame of the car, is $\Delta t_p = 5.0$ h.

Use Equation 39.8 to evaluate γ:

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{v^2}{c^2}}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{(3.0 \times 10^1\text{ m/s})^2}{(3.0 \times 10^8\text{ m/s})^2}}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - 10^{-14}}}$$

If you try to determine this value on your calculator, you will probably obtain $\gamma = 1$. Instead, perform a binomial expansion:

$$\gamma = (1 - 10^{-14})^{-1/2} \approx 1 + \tfrac{1}{2}(10^{-14}) = 1 + 5.0 \times 10^{-15}$$

Use Equation 39.7 to find the dilated time interval measured by your boss:

$$\Delta t = \gamma\,\Delta t_p = (1 + 5.0 \times 10^{-15})(5.0\text{ h})$$

$$= 5.0\text{ h} + 2.5 \times 10^{-14}\text{ h} = \boxed{5.0\text{ h} + 0.090\text{ ns}}$$

Finalize Your boss's clock would be only 0.090 ns ahead of your car clock. You might want to think of another excuse!

The Twin Paradox

An intriguing consequence of time dilation is the *twin paradox* (Fig. 39.9). Consider an experiment involving a set of twins named Speedo and Goslo. When they are 20 years old, Speedo, the more adventuresome of the two, sets out on an epic journey from the Earth to Planet X, located 20 light-years away. One light-year (ly) is the distance light travels through free space in 1 year. Furthermore, Speedo's

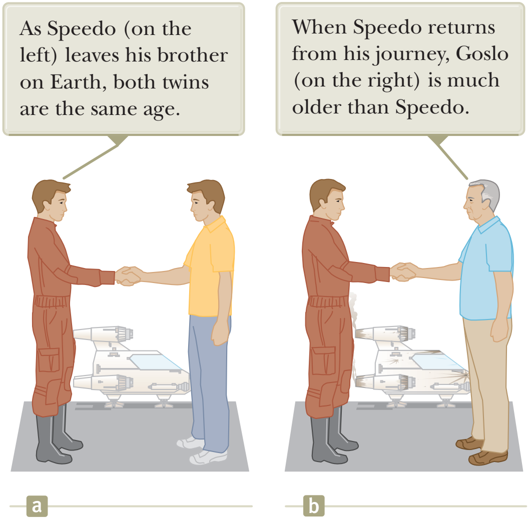


Figure 39.9 The twin paradox. Speedo takes a journey to a star 20 light-years away and returns to the Earth.

spacecraft is capable of reaching a speed of $0.95c$ relative to the inertial frame of his twin brother back home on the Earth. After reaching Planet X, Speedo becomes homesick and immediately returns to the Earth at the same speed $0.95c$. Upon his return, Speedo is shocked to discover that Goslo has aged 42 years and is now 62 years old. Speedo, on the other hand, has aged only 13 years.

The paradox is *not* that the twins have aged at different rates. Here is the apparent paradox. From Goslo's frame of reference, he was at rest while his brother traveled at a high speed away from him and then came back. According to Speedo, however, he himself remained stationary while Goslo and the Earth raced away from him and then headed back. Therefore, we might expect Speedo to claim that Goslo ages more slowly than himself. The situation appears to be symmetrical from either twin's point of view. Which twin *actually* ages more slowly?

The situation is actually not symmetrical. Consider a third observer moving at a constant speed relative to Goslo. According to the third observer, Goslo never changes inertial frames. Goslo's speed relative to the third observer is always the same. The third observer notes, however, that Speedo accelerates during his journey when he slows down and starts moving back toward the Earth, *changing reference frames in the process.* From the third observer's perspective, there is something very different about the motion of Goslo when compared to Speedo. Therefore, there is no paradox: only Goslo, who is always in a single inertial frame, can make correct predictions based on special relativity. Goslo finds that instead of aging 42 years, Speedo ages only $(1 - v^2/c^2)^{1/2}(42 \text{ years}) = 13$ years. Of these 13 years, Speedo spends 6.5 years traveling to Planet X and 6.5 years returning.

Quick Quiz 39.5 Suppose astronauts are paid according to the amount of time they spend traveling in space. After a long voyage traveling at a speed approaching c, would a crew rather be paid according to **(a)** an Earth-based clock, **(b)** their spacecraft's clock, or **(c)** either clock?

Length Contraction

The measured distance between two points in space also depends on the frame of reference of the observer. The **proper length** L_p of an object is the length measured by an observer *at rest relative to the object.* The length of an object measured by someone in a reference frame that is moving with respect to the object is always less than the proper length. This effect is known as **length contraction.**

To understand length contraction, consider a spacecraft traveling with a speed v from one star to another. There are two observers: one on the Earth and the other in the spacecraft. The observer at rest on the Earth (and also assumed to be at rest with respect to the two stars) measures the distance between the stars to be the proper length L_p. According to this observer, the time interval required for the spacecraft to complete the voyage is given by the particle under constant velocity model as $\Delta t = L_p/v$. The passages of the two stars by the spacecraft occur at the same position for the space traveler. Therefore, the space traveler measures the proper time interval Δt_p. Because of time dilation, the proper time interval is related to the Earth-measured time interval by $\Delta t_p = \Delta t/\gamma$. Because the space traveler reaches the second star in the time Δt_p, he or she concludes that the distance L between the stars is

$$L = v\,\Delta t_p = v\frac{\Delta t}{\gamma}$$

Because the proper length is $L_p = v\,\Delta t$, we see that

Length contraction ▶

$$\boxed{L = \frac{L_p}{\gamma} = L_p\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}}} \qquad \textbf{(39.9)}$$

where $\sqrt{1 - v^2/c^2}$ is a factor less than unity. If an object has a proper length L_p when it is measured by an observer at rest with respect to the object, its length L when it moves with speed v in a direction parallel to its length is measured to be shorter according to Equation 39.9.

For example, suppose a meterstick moves past a stationary Earth-based observer with speed v as in Figure 39.10. The length of the meterstick as measured by an observer in a frame attached to the stick is the proper length L_p shown in Figure 39.10a. The length of the stick L measured by the Earth observer is shorter than L_p by the factor $(1 - v^2/c^2)^{1/2}$ as suggested in Figure 39.10b. Notice that length contraction takes place only along the direction of motion.

The proper length and the proper time interval are defined differently. The proper length is measured by an observer for whom the endpoints of the length remain fixed in space. The proper time interval is measured by someone for whom the two events take place at the same position in space. As an example of this point, let's return to the decaying muons moving at speeds close to the speed of light. An observer in the muon's reference frame measures the proper lifetime, whereas an Earth-based observer measures the proper length (the distance between the creation point and the decay point in Fig. 39.8b). In the muon's reference frame, there is no time dilation, but the distance of travel to the surface is shorter when measured in this frame. Likewise, in the Earth observer's reference frame, there is time dilation, but the distance of travel is measured to be the proper length. Therefore, when calculations on the muon are performed in both frames, the outcome of the experiment in one frame is the same as the outcome in the other frame: more muons reach the surface than would be predicted without relativistic effects.

Pitfall Prevention 39.4

The Proper Length As with the proper time interval, it is *very* important in relativistic calculations to correctly identify the observer who measures the proper length. The proper length between two points in space is always the length measured by an observer at rest with respect to the points. Often, the proper time interval and the proper length are *not* measured by the same observer.

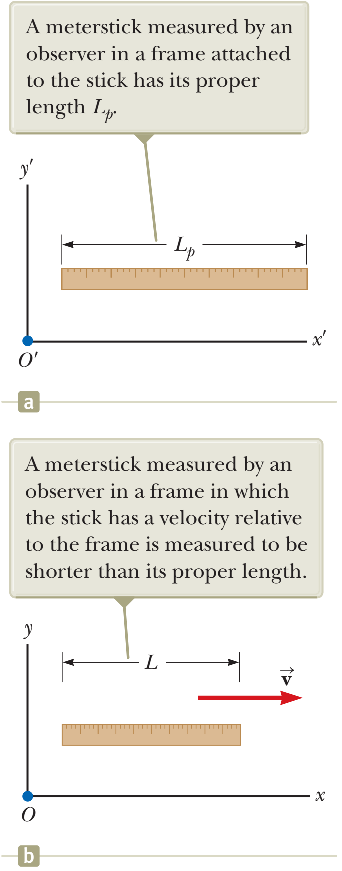


Figure 39.10 The length of a meterstick is measured by two observers.

Quick Quiz 39.6 You are packing for a trip to another star. During the journey, you will be traveling at $0.99c$. You are trying to decide whether you should buy smaller sizes of your clothing because you will be thinner on your trip due to length contraction. You also plan to save money by reserving a smaller cabin to sleep in because you will be shorter when you lie down. Should you **(a)** buy smaller sizes of clothing, **(b)** reserve a smaller cabin, **(c)** do neither of these things, or **(d)** do both of these things?

Quick Quiz 39.7 You are observing a spacecraft moving away from you. You measure it to be shorter than when it was at rest on the ground next to you. You also see a clock through the spacecraft window, and you observe that the passage of time on the clock is measured to be slower than that of the watch on your wrist. Compared with when the spacecraft was on the ground, what do you measure if the spacecraft turns around and comes *toward* you at the same speed? **(a)** The spacecraft is measured to be longer, and the clock runs faster. **(b)** The spacecraft is measured to be longer, and the clock runs slower. **(c)** The spacecraft is measured to be shorter, and the clock runs faster. **(d)** The spacecraft is measured to be shorter, and the clock runs slower.

Space–Time Graphs

It is sometimes helpful to represent a physical situation with a **space–time graph,** in which ct is the ordinate and position x is the abscissa. The twin paradox is displayed in such a graph in Figure 39.11 from Goslo's point of view. A path through space–time is called a **world-line.** At the origin, the world-lines of Speedo (blue) and Goslo (green) coincide because the twins are in the same location at the same time. After Speedo leaves on his trip, his world-line diverges from that of his brother. Goslo's world-line is vertical because he remains fixed in location. At Goslo and Speedo's reunion, the two world-lines again come together. It would be impossible for Speedo to have a world-line that crossed the path of a light beam that left the Earth when he did. To do so would require him to have a speed greater than c (which, as shown in Sections 39.6 and 39.7, is not possible).

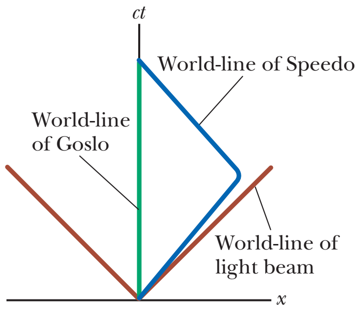


Figure 39.11 The twin paradox on a space–time graph. The twin who stays on the Earth has a world-line along the ct axis (green). The path of the traveling twin through space–time is represented by a world-line that changes direction (blue). The red-brown lines are world-lines for light beams traveling in the positive x direction (on the right) or the negative x direction (on the left).

World-lines for light beams are diagonal lines on space–time graphs, typically drawn at 45° to the right or left of vertical (assuming the x and ct axes have the same scales), depending on whether the light beam is traveling in the direction of increasing or decreasing x. All possible future events for Goslo and Speedo lie above the x axis and between the red-brown lines in Figure 39.11 because neither twin can travel faster than light. The only past events that Goslo and Speedo could have experienced occur between two similar 45° world-lines that approach the origin from below the x axis.

If Figure 39.11 is rotated about the ct axis, the red-brown lines sweep out a cone, called the *light cone,* which generalizes Figure 39.11 to two space dimensions. The y axis can be imagined coming out of the page. All future events for an observer at the origin must lie within the light cone. We can imagine another rotation that would generalize the light cone to three space dimensions to include z, but because of the requirement for four dimensions (three space dimensions and time), we cannot represent this situation in a two-dimensional drawing on paper.

Example 39.3 A Voyage to Sirius AM

An astronaut takes a trip to Sirius, which is located a distance of 8 light-years from the Earth. The astronaut measures the time of the one-way journey to be 6 years. If the spaceship moves at a constant speed of $0.8c$, how can the 8-ly distance be reconciled with the 6-year trip time measured by the astronaut?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize An observer on the Earth measures light to require 8 years to travel between Sirius and the Earth. The astronaut measures a time interval for his travel of only 6 years. Is the astronaut traveling faster than light?

Categorize Because the astronaut is measuring a length of space between the Earth and Sirius that is in motion with respect to her, we categorize this example as a length contraction problem. We also model the astronaut as a *particle under constant velocity.*

Analyze The distance of 8 ly represents the proper length from the Earth to Sirius measured by an observer on the Earth seeing both objects nearly at rest.

Calculate the contracted length measured by the astronaut using Equation 39.9:

$$L = \frac{8\text{ ly}}{\gamma} = (8\text{ ly})\sqrt{1-\frac{v^2}{c^2}} = (8\text{ ly})\sqrt{1-\frac{(0.8c)^2}{c^2}} = 5\text{ ly}$$

Use the particle under constant velocity model to find the travel time measured on the astronaut's clock:

$$\Delta t = \frac{L}{v} = \frac{5\text{ ly}}{0.8c} = \frac{5\text{ ly}}{0.8(1\text{ ly/yr})} = 6\text{ yr}$$

continued

39.3 continued

Finalize Notice that we have used the value for the speed of light as $c = 1$ ly/yr. The trip takes a time interval shorter than 8 years for the astronaut because, to her, the distance between the Earth and Sirius is measured to be shorter.

WHAT IF? What if this trip is observed with a very powerful telescope by a technician in Mission Control on the Earth? At what time will this technician *see* that the astronaut has arrived at Sirius?

Answer The time interval the technician measures for the astronaut to arrive is

$$\Delta t = \frac{L_p}{v} = \frac{8\text{ ly}}{0.8c} = 10\text{ yr}$$

For the technician to *see* the arrival, the light from the scene of the arrival must travel back to the Earth and enter the telescope. This travel requires a time interval of

$$\Delta t = \frac{L_p}{v} = \frac{8\text{ ly}}{c} = 8\text{ yr}$$

Therefore, the technician sees the arrival after 10 yr + 8 yr = 18 yr. If the astronaut immediately turns around and comes back home, she arrives, according to the technician, 20 years after leaving, only 2 years *after the technician saw her arrive!* In addition, the astronaut would have aged by only 12 years.

Example 39.4 The Pole-in-the-Barn Paradox AM

The twin paradox, discussed earlier, is a classic "paradox" in relativity. Another classic "paradox" is as follows. Suppose a runner moving at $0.75c$ carries a horizontal pole 15 m long toward a barn that is 10 m long. The barn has front and rear doors that are initially open. An observer on the ground can instantly and simultaneously close and open the two doors by remote control. When the runner and the pole are inside the barn, the ground observer closes and then opens both doors so that the runner and pole are momentarily captured inside the barn and then proceed to exit the barn from the back doorway. Do both the runner and the ground observer agree that the runner makes it safely through the barn?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize From your everyday experience, you would be surprised to see a 15-m pole fit inside a 10-m barn, but we are becoming used to surprising results in relativistic situations.

Categorize The pole is in motion with respect to the ground observer so that the observer measures its length to be contracted, whereas the stationary barn has a proper length of 10 m. We categorize this example as a length contraction problem. The runner carrying the pole is modeled as a *particle under constant velocity*.

Analyze Use Equation 39.9 to find the contracted length of the pole according to the ground observer:

$$L_{\text{pole}} = L_p\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}} = (15\text{ m})\sqrt{1 - (0.75)^2} = 9.9\text{ m}$$

Therefore, the ground observer measures the pole to be slightly shorter than the barn and there is no problem with momentarily capturing the pole inside it. The "paradox" arises when we consider the runner's point of view.

Use Equation 39.9 to find the contracted length of the barn according to the running observer:

$$L_{\text{barn}} = L_p\sqrt{1 - \frac{v^2}{c^2}} = (10\text{ m})\sqrt{1 - (0.75)^2} = 6.6\text{ m}$$

Because the pole is in the rest frame of the runner, the runner measures it to have its proper length of 15 m. Now the situation looks even worse: How can a 15-m pole fit inside a *6.6-m* barn? Although this question is the classic one that is often asked, it is not the question we have asked because it is not the important one. We asked, "*Does the runner make it safely through the barn?*"

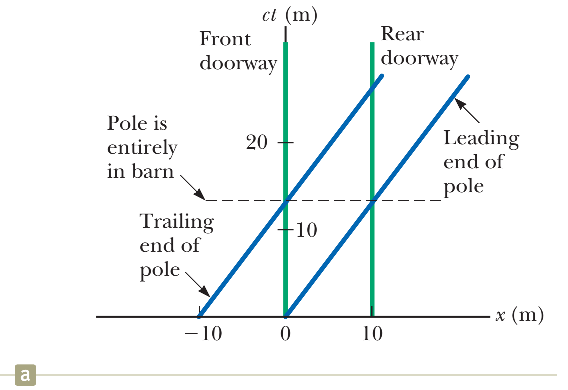
The resolution of the "paradox" lies in the relativity of simultaneity. The closing of the two doors is measured to be simultaneous by the ground observer. Because the doors are at different positions, however, they do not close simulta-

39.4 continued

neously as measured by the runner. The rear door closes and then opens first, allowing the leading end of the pole to exit. The front door of the barn does not close until the trailing end of the pole passes by.

We can analyze this "paradox" using a space–time graph. Figure 39.12a is a space–time graph from the ground observer's point of view. We choose $x = 0$ as the position of the front doorway of the barn and $t = 0$ as the instant at which the leading end of the pole is located at the front doorway of the barn. The world-lines for the two doorways of the barn are separated by 10 m and are vertical because the barn is not moving relative to this observer. For the pole, we follow two tilted world-lines, one for each end of the moving pole. These world-lines are 9.9 m apart horizontally, which is the contracted length seen by the ground observer. As seen in Figure 39.12a, the pole is entirely within the barn at some time.

Figure 39.12b shows the space–time graph according to the runner. Here, the world-lines for the pole are separated by 15 m and are vertical because the pole is at rest in the runner's frame of reference. The barn is hurtling *toward* the runner, so the world-lines for the front and rear doorways of the barn are tilted to the left. The world-lines for the barn are separated by 6.6 m, the contracted length as seen by the runner. The leading end of the pole leaves the rear doorway of the barn long before the trailing end of the pole enters the barn. Therefore, the opening of the rear door occurs before the closing of the front door.



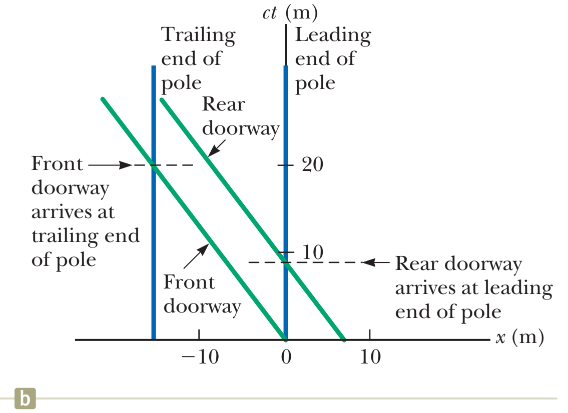


Figure 39.12 (Example 39.4) Space–time graphs for the pole-in-the-barn paradox (a) from the ground observer's point of view and (b) from the runner's point of view.

From the ground observer's point of view, use the particle under constant velocity model to find the time after $t = 0$ at which the trailing end of the pole enters the barn:

$$(1)\quad t = \frac{\Delta x}{v} = \frac{9.9\text{ m}}{0.75c} = \frac{13.2\text{ m}}{c}$$

From the runner's point of view, use the particle under constant velocity model to find the time at which the leading end of the pole leaves the barn:

$$(2)\quad t = \frac{\Delta x}{v} = \frac{6.6\text{ m}}{0.75c} = \frac{8.8\text{ m}}{c}$$

Find the time at which the trailing end of the pole enters the front door of the barn:

$$(3)\quad t = \frac{\Delta x}{v} = \frac{15\text{ m}}{0.75c} = \frac{20\text{ m}}{c}$$

Finalize From Equation (1), the pole should be completely inside the barn at a time corresponding to $ct = 13.2$ m. This situation is consistent with the point on the ct axis in Figure 39.12a where the pole is inside the barn. From Equation (2), the leading end of the pole leaves the barn at $ct = 8.8$ m. This situation is consistent with the point on the ct axis in Figure 39.12b where the rear doorway of the barn arrives at the leading end of the pole. Equation (3) gives $ct =$ 20 m, which agrees with the instant shown in Figure 39.12b at which the front doorway of the barn arrives at the trailing end of the pole.

The Relativistic Doppler Effect

Another important consequence of time dilation is the shift in frequency observed for light emitted by atoms in motion as opposed to light emitted by atoms at rest. This phenomenon, known as the Doppler effect, was introduced in Chapter 17 as it pertains to sound waves. In the case of sound, the velocity v_S of the source with respect to the medium of propagation can be distinguished from the velocity v_O of the observer with respect to the medium (the air). Light waves must be analyzed differently, however, because *they require no medium of propagation,* and no method exists for distinguishing the velocity of a light source from the velocity of the observer. The only measurable velocity is the *relative velocity* v between the source and the observer.

If a light source and an observer approach each other with a relative speed v, the frequency f' measured by the observer is

$$f' = \frac{\sqrt{1 + v/c}}{\sqrt{1 - v/c}} f \qquad \textbf{(39.10)}$$

where f is the frequency of the source measured in its rest frame. This relativistic Doppler shift equation, unlike the Doppler shift equation for sound, depends only on the relative speed v of the source and observer and holds for relative speeds as great as c. As you might expect, the equation predicts that $f' > f$ when the source and observer approach each other. We obtain the expression for the case in which the source and observer recede from each other by substituting negative values for v in Equation 39.10.

The most spectacular and dramatic use of the relativistic Doppler effect is the measurement of shifts in the frequency of light emitted by a moving astronomical object such as a galaxy. Light emitted by atoms and normally found in the extreme violet region of the spectrum is shifted toward the red end of the spectrum for atoms in other galaxies, indicating that these galaxies are *receding* from us. American astronomer Edwin Hubble (1889–1953) performed extensive measurements of this *red shift* to confirm that most galaxies are moving away from us, indicating that the Universe is expanding.

39.5 The Lorentz Transformation Equations

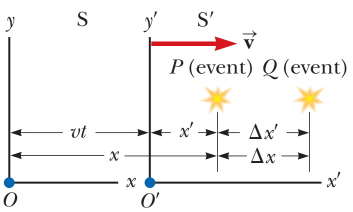


Figure 39.13 Events occur at points P and Q and are observed by an observer at rest in the S frame and another in the S′ frame, which is moving to the right with a speed v.

Suppose two events occur at points P and Q and are reported by two observers, one at rest in a frame S and another in a frame S′ that is moving to the right with speed v as in Figure 39.13. The observer in S reports the events with space–time coordinates (x, y, z, t), and the observer in S′ reports the same events using the coordinates (x', y', z', t'). Equation 39.1 predicts that the distance between the two points in space at which the events occur does not depend on motion of the observer: $\Delta x = \Delta x'$. Because this prediction is contradictory to the notion of length contraction, the Galilean transformation is not valid when v approaches the speed of light. In this section, we present the correct transformation equations that apply for all speeds in the range $0 < v < c$.

The equations that are valid for all speeds and that enable us to transform coordinates from S to S′ are the **Lorentz transformation equations:**

Lorentz transformation for S → S′

$$x' = \gamma(x - vt) \qquad y' = y \qquad z' = z \qquad t' = \gamma\left(t - \frac{v}{c^2}x\right) \qquad \textbf{(39.11)}$$

These transformation equations were developed by Hendrik A. Lorentz (1853–1928) in 1890 in connection with electromagnetism. It was Einstein, however, who recognized their physical significance and took the bold step of interpreting them within the framework of the special theory of relativity.

Notice the difference between the Galilean and Lorentz time equations. In the Galilean case, $t = t'$. In the Lorentz case, however, the value for t' assigned to an event by an observer O' in the S′ frame in Figure 39.13 depends both on the time t and on the coordinate x as measured by an observer O in the S frame, which is consistent with the notion that an event is characterized by four space–time coordinates (x, y, z, t). In other words, in relativity, space and time are *not* separate concepts but rather are closely interwoven with each other.

If you wish to transform coordinates in the S′ frame to coordinates in the S frame, simply replace v by $-v$ and interchange the primed and unprimed coordinates in Equations 39.11:

$$x = \gamma(x' + vt') \qquad y = y' \qquad z = z' \qquad t = \gamma\left(t' + \frac{v}{c^2}x'\right) \tag{39.12}$$

◀ **Inverse Lorentz transformation for S′ → S**

When $v << c$, the Lorentz transformation equations should reduce to the Galilean equations. As v approaches zero, $v/c << 1$; therefore, $\gamma \to 1$ and Equations 39.11 indeed reduce to the Galilean space–time transformation equations in Equation 39.1.

In many situations, we would like to know the difference in coordinates between two events or the time interval between two events as seen by observers O and O'. From Equations 39.11 and 39.12, we can express the differences between the four variables x, x', t, and t' in the form

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \Delta x' &= \gamma(\Delta x - v\,\Delta t) \\ \Delta t' &= \gamma\left(\Delta t - \frac{v}{c^2}\Delta x\right) \end{aligned}\right\} \text{S} \to \text{S}' \tag{39.13}$$

$$\left.\begin{aligned} \Delta x &= \gamma(\Delta x' + v\,\Delta t') \\ \Delta t &= \gamma\left(\Delta t' + \frac{v}{c^2}\Delta x'\right) \end{aligned}\right\} \text{S}' \to \text{S} \tag{39.14}$$

where $\Delta x' = x'_2 - x'_1$ and $\Delta t' = t'_2 - t'_1$ are the differences measured by observer O' and $\Delta x = x_2 - x_1$ and $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$ are the differences measured by observer O. (We have not included the expressions for relating the y and z coordinates because they are unaffected by motion along the x direction.[5])

Example 39.5 Simultaneity and Time Dilation Revisited

(A) Use the Lorentz transformation equations in difference form to show that simultaneity is not an absolute concept.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine two events that are simultaneous and separated in space as measured in the S′ frame such that $\Delta t' = 0$ and $\Delta x' \neq 0$. These measurements are made by an observer O' who is moving with speed v relative to O.

Categorize The statement of the problem tells us to categorize this example as one involving the use of the Lorentz transformation.

Analyze From the expression for Δt given in Equation 39.14, find the time interval Δt measured by observer O:

$$\Delta t = \gamma\left(\Delta t' + \frac{v}{c^2}\Delta x'\right) = \gamma\left(0 + \frac{v}{c^2}\Delta x'\right) = \gamma\frac{v}{c^2}\Delta x'$$

Finalize The time interval for the same two events as measured by O is nonzero, so the events do not appear to be simultaneous to O.

(B) Use the Lorentz transformation equations in difference form to show that a moving clock is measured to run more slowly than a clock that is at rest with respect to an observer.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine that observer O' carries a clock that he uses to measure a time interval $\Delta t'$. He finds that two events occur at the same place in his reference frame ($\Delta x' = 0$) but at different times ($\Delta t' \neq 0$). Observer O' is moving with speed v relative to O.

continued

[5]Although relative motion of the two frames along the x axis does not change the y and z coordinates of an object, it does change the y and z velocity components of an object moving in either frame as noted in Section 39.6.

39.5 continued

Categorize The statement of the problem tells us to categorize this example as one involving the use of the Lorentz transformation.

Analyze From the expression for Δt given in Equation 39.14, find the time interval Δt measured by observer O:

$$\Delta t = \gamma\left(\Delta t' + \frac{v}{c^2}\Delta x'\right) = \gamma\left[\Delta t' + \frac{v}{c^2}(0)\right] = \gamma\,\Delta t'$$

Finalize This result is the equation for time dilation found earlier (Eq. 39.7), where $\Delta t' = \Delta t_p$ is the proper time interval measured by the clock carried by observer O'. Therefore, O measures the moving clock to run slow.

39.6 The Lorentz Velocity Transformation Equations

Suppose two observers in relative motion with respect to each other are both observing an object's motion. Previously, we defined an event as occurring at an instant of time. Now let's interpret the "event" as the object's motion. We know that the Galilean velocity transformation (Eq. 39.2) is valid for low speeds. How do the observers' measurements of the velocity of the object relate to each other if the speed of the object or the relative speed of the observers is close to that of light? Once again, S′ is our frame moving at a speed v relative to S. Suppose an object has a velocity component u'_x measured in the S′ frame, where

$$u'_x = \frac{dx'}{dt'} \tag{39.15}$$

Using Equation 39.11, we have

$$dx' = \gamma(dx - v\,dt)$$

$$dt' = \gamma\left(dt - \frac{v}{c^2}\,dx\right)$$

Substituting these values into Equation 39.15 gives

$$u'_x = \frac{dx - v\,dt}{dt - \dfrac{v}{c^2}\,dx} = \frac{\dfrac{dx}{dt} - v}{1 - \dfrac{v}{c^2}\dfrac{dx}{dt}}$$

The term dx/dt, however, is simply the velocity component u_x of the object measured by an observer in S, so this expression becomes

Lorentz velocity transformation for S → S′

$$u'_x = \frac{u_x - v}{1 - \dfrac{u_x v}{c^2}} \tag{39.16}$$

If the object has velocity components along the y and z axes, the components as measured by an observer in S′ are

$$u'_y = \frac{u_y}{\gamma\left(1 - \dfrac{u_x v}{c^2}\right)} \quad \text{and} \quad u'_z = \frac{u_z}{\gamma\left(1 - \dfrac{u_x v}{c^2}\right)} \tag{39.17}$$

Notice that u'_y and u'_z do not contain the parameter v in the numerator because the relative velocity is along the x axis.

When v is much smaller than c (the nonrelativistic case), the denominator of Equation 39.16 approaches unity and so $u'_x \approx u_x - v$, which is the Galilean velocity transformation equation. In another extreme, when $u_x = c$, Equation 39.16 becomes

$$u'_x = \frac{c - v}{1 - \dfrac{cv}{c^2}} = \frac{c\left(1 - \dfrac{v}{c}\right)}{1 - \dfrac{v}{c}} = c$$

This result shows that a speed measured as c by an observer in S is also measured as c by an observer in S′, independent of the relative motion of S and S′. This conclusion is consistent with Einstein's second postulate: the speed of light must be c relative to all inertial reference frames. Furthermore, we find that the speed of an object can never be measured as larger than c. That is, the speed of light is the ultimate speed. We shall return to this point later.

To obtain u_x in terms of u'_x, we replace v by $-v$ in Equation 39.16 and interchange the roles of u_x and u'_x:

$$u_x = \frac{u'_x + v}{1 + \dfrac{u'_x v}{c^2}} \tag{39.18}$$

Pitfall Prevention 39.5

What Can the Observers Agree On? We have seen several measurements that the two observers O and O' do *not* agree on: (1) the time interval between events that take place in the same position in one of their frames, (2) the distance between two points that remain fixed in one of their frames, (3) the velocity components of a moving particle, and (4) whether two events occurring at different locations in both frames are simultaneous or not. The two observers *can* agree on (1) their relative speed of motion v with respect to each other, (2) the speed c of any ray of light, and (3) the simultaneity of two events that take place at the same position *and* time in some frame.

Quick Quiz 39.8 You are driving on a freeway at a relativistic speed. **(i)** Straight ahead of you, a technician standing on the ground turns on a searchlight and a beam of light moves exactly vertically upward as seen by the technician. As you observe the beam of light, do you measure the magnitude of the vertical component of its velocity as (a) equal to c, (b) greater than c, or (c) less than c? **(ii)** If the technician aims the searchlight directly at you instead of upward, do you measure the magnitude of the horizontal component of its velocity as (a) equal to c, (b) greater than c, or (c) less than c?

Example 39.6 Relative Velocity of Two Spacecraft

Two spacecraft A and B are moving in opposite directions as shown in Figure 39.14. An observer on the Earth measures the speed of spacecraft A to be 0.750c and the speed of spacecraft B to be 0.850c. Find the velocity of spacecraft B as observed by the crew on spacecraft A.

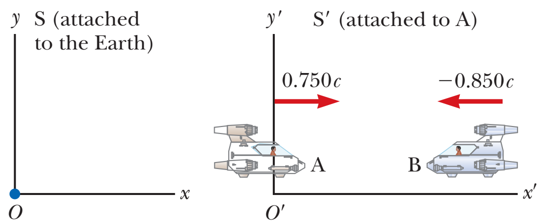


Figure 39.14 (Example 39.6) Two spacecraft A and B move in opposite directions. The speed of spacecraft B relative to spacecraft A is *less* than c and is obtained from the relativistic velocity transformation equation.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize There are two observers, one (O) on the Earth and one (O') on spacecraft A. The event is the motion of spacecraft B.

Categorize Because the problem asks to find an observed velocity, we categorize this example as one requiring the Lorentz velocity transformation.

Analyze The Earth-based observer at rest in the S frame makes two measurements, one of each spacecraft. We want to find the velocity of spacecraft B as measured by the crew on spacecraft A. Therefore, $u_x = -0.850c$. The velocity of spacecraft A is also the velocity of the observer at rest in spacecraft A (the S′ frame) relative to the observer at rest on the Earth. Therefore, $v = 0.750c$.

Obtain the velocity u'_x of spacecraft B relative to spacecraft A using Equation 39.16:

$$u'_x = \frac{u_x - v}{1 - \dfrac{u_x v}{c^2}} = \frac{-0.850c - 0.750c}{1 - \dfrac{(-0.850c)(0.750c)}{c^2}} = \boxed{-0.977c}$$

Finalize The negative sign indicates that spacecraft B is moving in the negative x direction as observed by the crew on spacecraft A. Is that consistent with your expectation from Figure 39.14? Notice that the speed is less than c. That is, an

continued

39.6 continued

object whose speed is less than c in one frame of reference must have a speed less than c in any other frame. (Had you used the Galilean velocity transformation equation in this example, you would have found that $u'_x = u_x - v = -0.850c - 0.750c = -1.60c$, which is impossible. The Galilean transformation equation does not work in relativistic situations.)

WHAT IF? What if the two spacecraft pass each other? What is their relative speed now?

Answer The calculation using Equation 39.16 involves only the velocities of the two spacecraft and does not depend on their locations. After they pass each other, they have the same velocities, so the velocity of spacecraft B as observed by the crew on spacecraft A is the same, $-0.977c$. The only difference after they pass is that spacecraft B is receding from spacecraft A, whereas it was approaching spacecraft A before it passed.

Example 39.7 Relativistic Leaders of the Pack

Two motorcycle pack leaders named David and Emily are racing at relativistic speeds along perpendicular paths as shown in Figure 39.15. How fast does Emily recede as seen by David over his right shoulder?

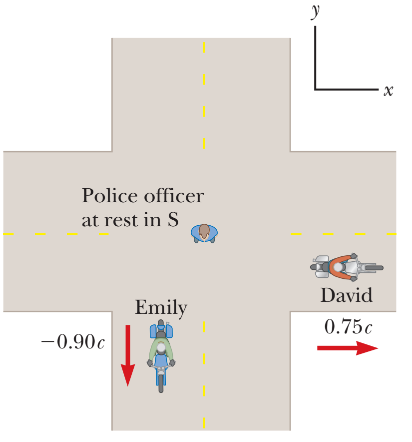


Figure 39.15 (Example 39.7) David moves east with a speed $0.75c$ relative to the police officer, and Emily travels south at a speed $0.90c$ relative to the officer.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The two observers are David and the police officer in Figure 39.15. The event is the motion of Emily. Figure 39.15 represents the situation as seen by the police officer at rest in frame S. Frame S′ moves along with David.

Categorize Because the problem asks to find an observed velocity, we categorize this problem as one requiring the Lorentz velocity transformation. The motion takes place in two dimensions.

Analyze Identify the velocity components for David and Emily according to the police officer:

$$\text{David: } v_x = v = 0.75c \quad v_y = 0$$

$$\text{Emily: } u_x = 0 \quad u_y = -0.90c$$

Using Equations 39.16 and 39.17, calculate u'_x and u'_y for Emily as measured by David:

$$u'_x = \frac{u_x - v}{1 - \dfrac{u_x v}{c^2}} = \frac{0 - 0.75c}{1 - \dfrac{(0)(0.75c)}{c^2}} = -0.75c$$

$$u'_y = \frac{u_y}{\gamma\left(1 - \dfrac{u_x v}{c^2}\right)} = \frac{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{(0.75c)^2}{c^2}}\,(-0.90c)}{1 - \dfrac{(0)(0.75c)}{c^2}} = -0.60c$$

Using the Pythagorean theorem, find the speed of Emily as measured by David:

$$u' = \sqrt{(u'_x)^2 + (u'_y)^2} = \sqrt{(-0.75c)^2 + (-0.60c)^2} = \boxed{0.96c}$$

Finalize This speed is less than c, as required by the special theory of relativity.

39.7 Relativistic Linear Momentum

To describe the motion of particles within the framework of the special theory of relativity properly, you must replace the Galilean transformation equations by the Lorentz transformation equations. Because the laws of physics must remain unchanged under the Lorentz transformation, we must generalize Newton's laws and the definitions of linear momentum and energy to conform to the Lorentz transformation equations and the principle of relativity. These generalized definitions should reduce to the classical (nonrelativistic) definitions for $v << c$.

First, recall from the isolated system model that when two particles (or objects that can be modeled as particles) collide, the total momentum of the isolated system of the two particles remains constant. Suppose we observe this collision in a reference frame S and confirm that the momentum of the system is conserved. Now imagine that the momenta of the particles are measured by an observer in a second reference frame S′ moving with velocity $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ relative to the first frame. Using the Lorentz velocity transformation equation and the classical definition of linear momentum, $\vec{\mathbf{p}} = m\vec{\mathbf{u}}$ (where $\vec{\mathbf{u}}$ is the velocity of a particle), we find that linear momentum of the system is *not* measured to be conserved by the observer in S′. Because the laws of physics are the same in all inertial frames, however, linear momentum of the system must be conserved in all frames. We have a contradiction. In view of this contradiction and assuming the Lorentz velocity transformation equation is correct, we must modify the definition of linear momentum so that the momentum of an isolated system is conserved for all observers. For any particle, the correct relativistic equation for linear momentum that satisfies this condition is

Pitfall Prevention 39.6

Watch Out for "Relativistic Mass" Some older treatments of relativity maintained the conservation of momentum principle at high speeds by using a model in which a particle's mass increases with speed. You might still encounter this notion of "relativistic mass" in your outside reading, especially in older books. Be aware that this notion is no longer widely accepted; today, mass is considered as *invariant*, independent of speed. The mass of an object in all frames is considered to be the mass as measured by an observer at rest with respect to the object.

$$\vec{\mathbf{p}} \equiv \frac{m\vec{\mathbf{u}}}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{u^2}{c^2}}} = \gamma m\vec{\mathbf{u}} \tag{39.19}$$

◀ **Definition of relativistic linear momentum**

where m is the mass of the particle and $\vec{\mathbf{u}}$ is the velocity of the particle. When u is much less than c, $\gamma = (1 - u^2/c^2)^{-1/2}$ approaches unity and $\vec{\mathbf{p}}$ approaches $m\vec{\mathbf{u}}$. Therefore, the relativistic equation for $\vec{\mathbf{p}}$ reduces to the classical expression when u is much smaller than c, as it should.

The relativistic force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}$ acting on a particle whose linear momentum is $\vec{\mathbf{p}}$ is defined as

$$\vec{\mathbf{F}} \equiv \frac{d\vec{\mathbf{p}}}{dt} \tag{39.20}$$

where $\vec{\mathbf{p}}$ is given by Equation 39.19. This expression, which is the relativistic form of Newton's second law, is reasonable because it preserves classical mechanics in the limit of low velocities and is consistent with conservation of linear momentum for an isolated system ($\vec{\mathbf{F}}_{\text{ext}} = 0$) both relativistically and classically.

It is left as an end-of-chapter problem (Problem 88) to show that under relativistic conditions, the acceleration $\vec{\mathbf{a}}$ of a particle decreases under the action of a constant force, in which case $a \propto (1 - u^2/c^2)^{3/2}$. This proportionality shows that as the particle's speed approaches c, the acceleration caused by any finite force approaches zero. Hence, it is impossible to accelerate a particle from rest to a speed $u \geq c$. This argument reinforces that the speed of light is the ultimate speed, the speed limit of the Universe. It is the maximum possible speed for energy transfer and for information transfer. Any object with mass must move at a lower speed.

Example 39.8 Linear Momentum of an Electron

An electron, which has a mass of 9.11×10^{-31} kg, moves with a speed of $0.750c$. Find the magnitude of its relativistic momentum and compare this value with the momentum calculated from the classical expression.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine an electron moving with high speed. The electron carries momentum, but the magnitude of its momentum is not given by $p = mu$ because the speed is relativistic.

Categorize We categorize this example as a substitution problem involving a relativistic equation.

continued

39.8 continued

Use Equation 39.19 with $u = 0.750c$ to find the magnitude of the momentum:

$$p = \frac{m_e u}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{u^2}{c^2}}}$$

$$p = \frac{(9.11 \times 10^{-31} \text{ kg})(0.750)(3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{(0.750c)^2}{c^2}}}$$

$$= \boxed{3.10 \times 10^{-22} \text{ kg} \cdot \text{m/s}}$$

The classical expression (used incorrectly here) gives $p_{\text{classical}} = m_e u = 2.05 \times 10^{-22}$ kg · m/s. Hence, the correct relativistic result is 50% greater than the classical result!

39.8 Relativistic Energy

We have seen that the definition of linear momentum requires generalization to make it compatible with Einstein's postulates. This conclusion implies that the definition of kinetic energy must most likely be modified also.

To derive the relativistic form of the work–kinetic energy theorem, imagine a particle moving in one dimension along the x axis. A force in the x direction causes the momentum of the particle to change according to Equation 39.20. In what follows, we assume the particle is accelerated from rest to some final speed u. The work done by the force F on the particle is

$$W = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} F\,dx = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \frac{dp}{dt}\,dx \qquad \textbf{(39.21)}$$

To perform this integration and find the work done on the particle and the relativistic kinetic energy as a function of u, we first evaluate dp/dt:

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}\frac{mu}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{u^2}{c^2}}} = \frac{m}{\left(1 - \dfrac{u^2}{c^2}\right)^{3/2}}\frac{du}{dt}$$

Substituting this expression for dp/dt and $dx = u\,dt$ into Equation 39.21 gives

$$W = \int_0^t \frac{m}{\left(1 - \dfrac{u^2}{c^2}\right)^{3/2}}\frac{du}{dt}(u\,dt) = m\int_0^u \frac{u}{\left(1 - \dfrac{u^2}{c^2}\right)^{3/2}}\,du$$

where we use the limits 0 and u in the integral because the integration variable has been changed from t to u. Evaluating the integral gives

$$W = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{u^2}{c^2}}} - mc^2 \qquad \textbf{(39.22)}$$

Recall from Chapter 7 that the work done by a force acting on a system consisting of a single particle equals the change in kinetic energy of the particle: $W = \Delta K$. Because we assumed the initial speed of the particle is zero, its initial kinetic energy is zero, so $W = K - K_i = K - 0 = K$. Therefore, the work W in Equation 39.22 is equivalent to the relativistic kinetic energy K:

Relativistic kinetic energy

$$K = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1 - \dfrac{u^2}{c^2}}} - mc^2 = \gamma mc^2 - mc^2 = (\gamma - 1)mc^2 \qquad \textbf{(39.23)}$$

This equation is routinely confirmed by experiments using high-energy particle accelerators.

At low speeds, where $u/c << 1$, Equation 39.23 should reduce to the classical expression $K = \frac{1}{2}mu^2$. We can check that by using the binomial expansion $(1 - \beta^2)^{-1/2} \approx 1 + \frac{1}{2}\beta^2 + \cdots$ for $\beta << 1$, where the higher-order powers of β are neglected in the expansion. (In treatments of relativity, β is a common symbol used to represent u/c or v/c.) In our case, $\beta = u/c$, so

$$\gamma = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{u^2}{c^2}}} = \left(1 - \frac{u^2}{c^2}\right)^{-1/2} \approx 1 + \frac{1}{2}\frac{u^2}{c^2}$$

Substituting this result into Equation 39.23 gives

$$K \approx \left[\left(1 + \frac{1}{2}\frac{u^2}{c^2}\right) - 1\right]mc^2 = \frac{1}{2}mu^2 \quad (\text{for } u/c << 1)$$

which is the classical expression for kinetic energy. A graph comparing the relativistic and nonrelativistic expressions is given in Figure 39.16. In the relativistic case, the particle speed never exceeds c, regardless of the kinetic energy. The two curves are in good agreement when $u << c$.

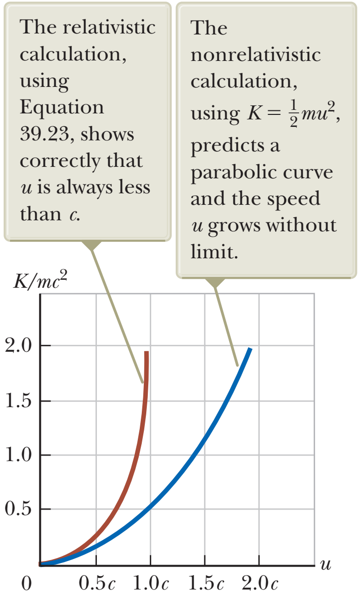


Figure 39.16 A graph comparing relativistic and nonrelativistic kinetic energy of a moving particle. The energies are plotted as a function of particle speed u.

The constant term mc^2 in Equation 39.23, which is independent of the speed of the particle, is called the **rest energy** E_R of the particle:

$$E_R = mc^2 \tag{39.24}$$

Equation 39.24 shows that **mass is a form of energy,** where c^2 is simply a constant conversion factor. This expression also shows that a small mass corresponds to an enormous amount of energy, a concept fundamental to nuclear and elementary-particle physics.

The term γmc^2 in Equation 39.23, which depends on the particle speed, is the sum of the kinetic and rest energies. It is called the **total energy** E:

Total energy = kinetic energy + rest energy

$$E = K + mc^2 \tag{39.25}$$

or

$$E = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{u^2}{c^2}}} = \gamma mc^2 \tag{39.26}$$

◀ **Total energy of a relativistic particle**

In many situations, the linear momentum or energy of a particle rather than its speed is measured. It is therefore useful to have an expression relating the total energy E to the relativistic linear momentum p, which is accomplished by using the expressions $E = \gamma mc^2$ and $p = \gamma mu$. By squaring these equations and subtracting, we can eliminate u (Problem 58). The result, after some algebra, is[6]

$$E^2 = p^2c^2 + (mc^2)^2 \tag{39.27}$$

◀ **Energy–momentum relationship for a relativistic particle**

When the particle is at rest, $p = 0$, so $E = E_R = mc^2$.

In Section 35.1, we introduced the concept of a particle of light, called a **photon.** For particles that have zero mass, such as photons, we set $m = 0$ in Equation 39.27 and find that

$$E = pc \tag{39.28}$$

[6]One way to remember this relationship is to draw a right triangle having a hypotenuse of length E and legs of lengths pc and mc^2.

This equation is an exact expression relating total energy and linear momentum for photons, which always travel at the speed of light (in vacuum).

Finally, because the mass m of a particle is independent of its motion, m must have the same value in all reference frames. For this reason, m is often called the **invariant mass.** On the other hand, because the total energy and linear momentum of a particle both depend on velocity, these quantities depend on the reference frame in which they are measured.

When dealing with subatomic particles, it is convenient to express their energy in electron volts (Section 25.1) because the particles are usually given this energy by acceleration through a potential difference. The conversion factor, as you recall from Equation 25.5, is

$$1 \text{ eV} = 1.602 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J}$$

For example, the mass of an electron is 9.109×10^{-31} kg. Hence, the rest energy of the electron is

$$m_e c^2 = (9.109 \times 10^{-31} \text{ kg})(2.998 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})^2 = 8.187 \times 10^{-14} \text{ J}$$

$$= (8.187 \times 10^{-14} \text{ J})(1 \text{ eV}/1.602 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J}) = 0.511 \text{ MeV}$$

Quick Quiz 39.9 The following *pairs* of energies—particle 1: E, $2E$; particle 2: E, $3E$; particle 3: $2E$, $4E$—represent the rest energy and total energy of three different particles. Rank the particles from greatest to least according to their **(a)** mass, **(b)** kinetic energy, and **(c)** speed.

Example 39.9 The Energy of a Speedy Proton

(A) Find the rest energy of a proton in units of electron volts.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Even if the proton is not moving, it has energy associated with its mass. If it moves, the proton possesses more energy, with the total energy being the sum of its rest energy and its kinetic energy.

Categorize The phrase "rest energy" suggests we must take a relativistic rather than a classical approach to this problem.

Analyze Use Equation 39.24 to find the rest energy:

$$E_R = m_p c^2 = (1.672\,6 \times 10^{-27} \text{ kg})(2.998 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})^2$$

$$= (1.504 \times 10^{-10} \text{ J})\left(\frac{1.00 \text{ eV}}{1.602 \times 10^{-19} \text{ J}}\right) = \boxed{938 \text{ MeV}}$$

(B) If the total energy of a proton is three times its rest energy, what is the speed of the proton?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 39.26 to relate the total energy of the proton to the rest energy:

$$E = 3m_p c^2 = \frac{m_p c^2}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{u^2}{c^2}}} \rightarrow 3 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - \frac{u^2}{c^2}}}$$

Solve for u:

$$1 - \frac{u^2}{c^2} = \frac{1}{9} \rightarrow \frac{u^2}{c^2} = \frac{8}{9}$$

$$u = \frac{\sqrt{8}}{3} c = 0.943c = \boxed{2.83 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s}}$$

(C) Determine the kinetic energy of the proton in units of electron volts.

39.9 continued

SOLUTION

Use Equation 39.25 to find the kinetic energy of the proton:

$$K = E - m_p c^2 = 3m_p c^2 - m_p c^2 = 2m_p c^2$$
$$= 2(938 \text{ MeV}) = \boxed{1.88 \times 10^3 \text{ MeV}}$$

(D) What is the proton's momentum?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 39.27 to calculate the momentum:

$$E^2 = p^2c^2 + (m_pc^2)^2 = (3m_pc^2)^2$$
$$p^2c^2 = 9(m_pc^2)^2 - (m_pc^2)^2 = 8(m_pc^2)^2$$
$$p = \sqrt{8}\,\frac{m_pc^2}{c} = \sqrt{8}\,\frac{938 \text{ MeV}}{c} = \boxed{2.65 \times 10^3 \text{ MeV}/c}$$

Finalize The unit of momentum in part (D) is written MeV/c, which is a common unit in particle physics. For comparison, you might want to solve this example using classical equations.

WHAT IF? In classical physics, if the momentum of a particle doubles, the kinetic energy increases by a factor of 4. What happens to the kinetic energy of the proton in this example if its momentum doubles?

Answer Based on what we have seen so far in relativity, it is likely you would predict that its kinetic energy does not increase by a factor of 4.

Find the new doubled momentum:

$$p_{\text{new}} = 2\left(\sqrt{8}\,\frac{m_pc^2}{c}\right) = 4\sqrt{2}\,\frac{m_pc^2}{c}$$

Use this result in Equation 39.27 to find the new total energy:

$$E_{\text{new}}^2 = p_{\text{new}}^2c^2 + (m_pc^2)^2$$
$$E_{\text{new}}^2 = \left(4\sqrt{2}\,\frac{m_pc^2}{c}\right)^2 c^2 + (m_pc^2)^2 = 33(m_pc^2)^2$$
$$E_{\text{new}} = \sqrt{33}\,m_pc^2 = 5.7m_pc^2$$

Use Equation 39.25 to find the new kinetic energy:

$$K_{\text{new}} = E_{\text{new}} - m_pc^2 = 5.7m_pc^2 - m_pc^2 = 4.7m_pc^2$$

This value is a little more than twice the kinetic energy found in part (C), not four times. In general, the factor by which the kinetic energy increases if the momentum doubles depends on the initial momentum, but it approaches 4 as the momentum approaches zero. In this latter situation, classical physics correctly describes the situation.

Equation 39.26, $E = \gamma mc^2$, represents the total energy of a particle. This important equation suggests that even when a particle is at rest ($\gamma = 1$), it still possesses enormous energy through its mass. The clearest experimental proof of the equivalence of mass and energy occurs in nuclear and elementary-particle interactions in which the conversion of mass into kinetic energy takes place. Consequently, we cannot use the principle of conservation of energy in relativistic situations as it was outlined in Chapter 8. We must modify the principle by including rest energy as another form of energy storage.

This concept is important in atomic and nuclear processes, in which the change in mass is a relatively large fraction of the initial mass. In a conventional nuclear reactor, for example, the uranium nucleus undergoes *fission,* a reaction that results in several lighter fragments having considerable kinetic energy. In the case of ^{235}U, which is used as fuel in nuclear power plants, the fragments are two lighter nuclei and a few neutrons. The total mass of the fragments is less than that of the ^{235}U by an amount Δm. The corresponding energy Δmc^2 associated with this mass difference is exactly equal to the sum of the kinetic energies of the fragments. The kinetic energy is absorbed as the fragments move through water, raising the internal energy of the water. This internal energy is used to produce steam for the generation of electricity.

Next, consider a basic *fusion* reaction in which two deuterium atoms combine to form one helium atom. The decrease in mass that results from the creation of one helium atom from two deuterium atoms is $\Delta m = 4.25 \times 10^{-29}$ kg. Hence, the corresponding energy that results from one fusion reaction is $\Delta mc^2 = 3.83 \times 10^{-12}$ J = 23.9 MeV. To appreciate the magnitude of this result, consider that if only 1 g of deuterium were converted to helium, the energy released would be on the order of 10^{12} J! In 2013's cost of electrical energy, this energy would be worth approximately \$35 000. We shall present more details of these nuclear processes in Chapter 45 of the extended version of this textbook.

Example 39.10 Mass Change in a Radioactive Decay

The ^{216}Po nucleus is unstable and exhibits radioactivity (Chapter 44). It decays to ^{212}Pb by emitting an alpha particle, which is a helium nucleus, ^{4}He. The relevant masses, in atomic mass units (see Table A.1 in Appendix A), are $m_i = m(^{216}\text{Po}) = 216.001\,915$ u and $m_f = m(^{212}\text{Pb}) + m(^{4}\text{He}) = 211.991\,898 \text{ u} + 4.002\,603$ u.

(A) Find the mass change of the system in this decay.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The initial system is the ^{216}Po nucleus. Imagine the mass of the system decreasing during the decay and transforming to kinetic energy of the alpha particle and the ^{212}Pb nucleus after the decay.

Categorize We use concepts discussed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Calculate the change in mass using the mass values given in the problem statement.

$$\Delta m = 216.001\,915 \text{ u} - (211.991\,898 \text{ u} + 4.002\,603 \text{ u})$$
$$= 0.007\,414 \text{ u} = \boxed{1.23 \times 10^{-29} \text{ kg}}$$

(B) Find the energy this mass change represents.

SOLUTION

Use Equation 39.24 to find the energy associated with this mass change:

$$E = \Delta mc^2 = (1.23 \times 10^{-29} \text{ kg})(3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})^2$$
$$= 1.11 \times 10^{-12} \text{ J} = \boxed{6.92 \text{ MeV}}$$

39.9 The General Theory of Relativity

Up to this point, we have sidestepped a curious puzzle. Mass has two seemingly different properties: a *gravitational attraction* for other masses and an *inertial* property that represents a resistance to acceleration. We first discussed these two attributes for mass in Section 5.5. To designate these two attributes, we use the subscripts g and i and write

Gravitational property: $F_g = m_g g$

Inertial property: $\sum F = m_i a$

The value for the gravitational constant G was chosen to make the magnitudes of m_g and m_i numerically equal. Regardless of how G is chosen, however, the strict proportionality of m_g and m_i has been established experimentally to an extremely high degree: a few parts in 10^{12}. Therefore, it appears that gravitational mass and inertial mass may indeed be exactly proportional.

Why, though? They seem to involve two entirely different concepts: a force of mutual gravitational attraction between two masses and the resistance of a single mass to being accelerated. This question, which puzzled Newton and many other physicists over the years, was answered by Einstein in 1916 when he published his theory of gravitation, known as the *general theory of relativity*. Because it is a mathematically complex theory, we offer merely a hint of its elegance and insight.

In Einstein's view, the dual behavior of mass was evidence for a very intimate and basic connection between the two behaviors. He pointed out that no mechanical experiment (such as dropping an object) could distinguish between the two situations illustrated in Figures 39.17a and 39.17b. In Figure 39.17a, a person standing in an elevator on the surface of a planet feels pressed into the floor due to the gravitational force. If he releases his briefcase, he observes it moving toward the floor with acceleration $\vec{\mathbf{g}} = -g\hat{\mathbf{j}}$. In Figure 39.17b, the person is in an elevator in empty space accelerating upward with $\vec{\mathbf{a}}_{\text{el}} = +g\hat{\mathbf{j}}$. The person feels pressed into the floor with the same force as in Figure 39.17a. If he releases his briefcase, he observes it moving toward the floor with acceleration g, exactly as in the previous situation. In each situation, an object released by the observer undergoes a downward acceleration of magnitude g relative to the floor. In Figure 39.17a, the person is at rest in an inertial frame in a gravitational field due to the planet. In Figure 39.17b, the person is in a noninertial frame accelerating in gravity-free space. Einstein's claim is that these two situations are completely equivalent.

Einstein carried this idea further and proposed that *no* experiment, mechanical or otherwise, could distinguish between the two situations. This extension to include all phenomena (not just mechanical ones) has interesting consequences. For example, suppose a light pulse is sent horizontally across the elevator as in Figure 39.17c, in which the elevator is accelerating upward in empty space. From the point of view of an observer in an inertial frame outside the elevator, the light travels in a straight line while the floor of the elevator accelerates upward. According to the observer on the elevator, however, the trajectory of the light pulse bends downward as the floor of the elevator (and the observer) accelerates upward. Therefore, based on the equality of parts (a) and (b) of the figure, Einstein proposed that a

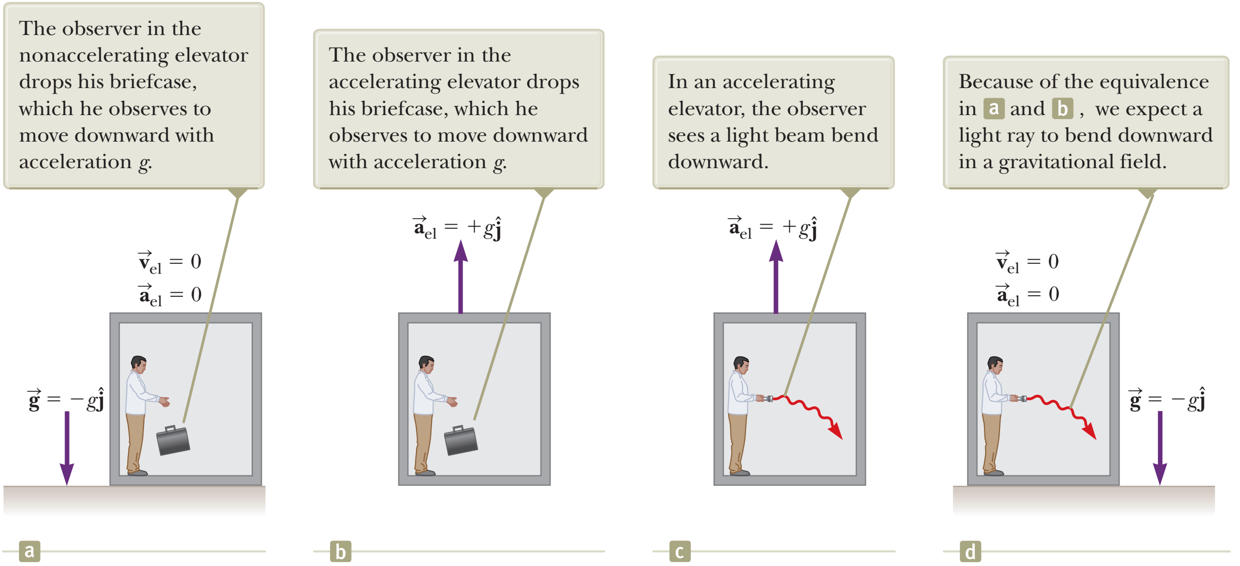


Figure 39.17 (a) The observer is at rest in an elevator in a uniform gravitational field $\vec{\mathbf{g}} = -g\hat{\mathbf{j}}$, directed downward. (b) The observer is in a region where gravity is negligible, but the elevator moves upward with an acceleration $\vec{\mathbf{a}}_{\text{el}} = +g\hat{\mathbf{j}}$. According to Einstein, the frames of reference in (a) and (b) are equivalent in every way. No local experiment can distinguish any difference between the two frames. (c) An observer watches a beam of light in an accelerating elevator. (d) Einstein's prediction of the behavior of a beam of light in a gravitational field.

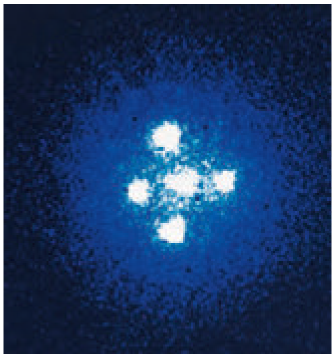
beam of light should also be bent downward by a gravitational field as in Figure 39.17d. Experiments have verified the effect, although the bending is small. A laser aimed at the horizon falls less than 1 cm after traveling 6 000 km. (No such bending is predicted in Newton's theory of gravitation.)

Einstein's **general theory of relativity** has two postulates:

- All the laws of nature have the same form for observers in any frame of reference, whether accelerated or not.
- In the vicinity of any point, a gravitational field is equivalent to an accelerated frame of reference in gravity-free space (the **principle of equivalence**).

One interesting effect predicted by the general theory is that time is altered by gravity. A clock in the presence of gravity runs slower than one located where gravity is negligible. Consequently, the frequencies of radiation emitted by atoms in the presence of a strong gravitational field are *redshifted* to lower frequencies when compared with the same emissions in the presence of a weak field. This gravitational redshift has been detected in spectral lines emitted by atoms in massive stars. It has also been verified on the Earth by comparing the frequencies of gamma rays emitted from nuclei separated vertically by about 20 m.

The second postulate suggests a gravitational field may be "transformed away" at any point if we choose an appropriate accelerated frame of reference, a freely falling one. Einstein developed an ingenious method of describing the acceleration necessary to make the gravitational field "disappear." He specified a concept, the *curvature of space–time,* that describes the gravitational effect at every point. In fact, the curvature of space–time completely replaces Newton's gravitational theory. According to Einstein, there is no such thing as a gravitational force. Rather, the presence of a mass causes a curvature of space–time in the vicinity of the mass, and this curvature dictates the space–time path that all freely moving objects must follow.



Courtesy of NASA

Einstein's cross. The four outer bright spots are images of the same galaxy that have been bent around a massive object located between the galaxy and the Earth. The massive object acts like a lens, causing the rays of light that were diverging from the distant galaxy to converge on the Earth. (If the intervening massive object had a uniform mass distribution, we would see a bright ring instead of four spots.)

As an example of the effects of curved space–time, imagine two travelers moving on parallel paths a few meters apart on the surface of the Earth and maintaining an exact northward heading along two longitude lines. As they observe each other near the equator, they will claim that their paths are exactly parallel. As they approach the North Pole, however, they notice that they are moving closer together and will meet at the North Pole. Therefore, they claim that they moved along parallel paths, but moved toward each other, *as if there were an attractive force between them.* The travelers make this conclusion based on their everyday experience of moving on flat surfaces. From our mental representation, however, we realize they are walking on a curved surface, and it is the geometry of the curved surface, rather than an attractive force, that causes them to converge. In a similar way, general relativity replaces the notion of forces with the movement of objects through curved space–time.

One prediction of the general theory of relativity is that a light ray passing near the Sun should be deflected in the curved space–time created by the Sun's mass. This prediction was confirmed when astronomers detected the bending of starlight near the Sun during a total solar eclipse that occurred shortly after World War I (Fig. 39.18). When this discovery was announced, Einstein became an international celebrity.

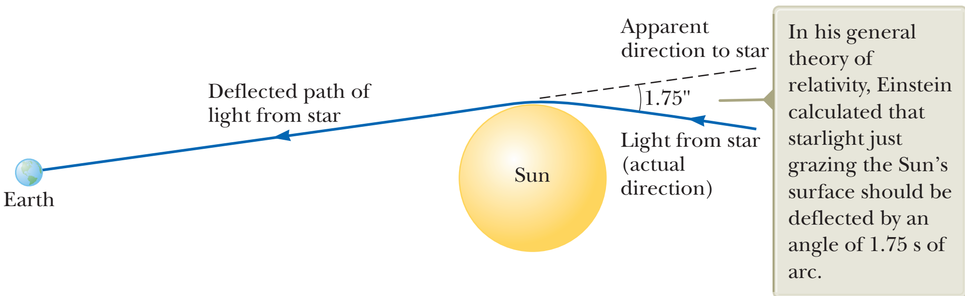


Figure 39.18 Deflection of starlight passing near the Sun. Because of this effect, the Sun or some other remote object can act as a *gravitational lens.*

If the concentration of mass becomes very great as is believed to occur when a large star exhausts its nuclear fuel and collapses to a very small volume, a **black hole** may form as discussed in Chapter 13. Here, the curvature of space–time is so extreme that within a certain distance from the center of the black hole all matter and light become trapped as discussed in Section 13.6.

Summary

Definitions

The relativistic expression for the **linear momentum** of a particle moving with a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{u}}$ is

$$\vec{\mathbf{p}} \equiv \frac{m\vec{\mathbf{u}}}{\sqrt{1-\frac{u^2}{c^2}}} = \gamma m\vec{\mathbf{u}} \qquad (39.19)$$

The relativistic force $\vec{\mathbf{F}}$ acting on a particle whose linear momentum is $\vec{\mathbf{p}}$ is defined as

$$\vec{\mathbf{F}} \equiv \frac{d\vec{\mathbf{p}}}{dt} \qquad (39.20)$$

Concepts and Principles

The two basic postulates of the special theory of relativity are as follows:

- The laws of physics must be the same in all inertial reference frames.
- The speed of light in vacuum has the same value, $c = 3.00 \times 10^8$ m/s, in all inertial frames, regardless of the velocity of the observer or the velocity of the source emitting the light.

Three consequences of the special theory of relativity are as follows:

- Events that are measured to be simultaneous for one observer are not necessarily measured to be simultaneous for another observer who is in motion relative to the first.
- Clocks in motion relative to an observer are measured to run slower by a factor $\gamma = (1 - v^2/c^2)^{-1/2}$. This phenomenon is known as **time dilation.**
- The lengths of objects in motion are measured to be shorter in the direction of motion by a factor $1/\gamma = (1 - v^2/c^2)^{1/2}$. This phenomenon is known as **length contraction.**

To satisfy the postulates of special relativity, the Galilean transformation equations must be replaced by the **Lorentz transformation equations:**

$$x' = \gamma(x - vt) \quad y' = y \quad z' = z \quad t' = \gamma\left(t - \frac{v}{c^2}x\right) \qquad (39.11)$$

where $\gamma = (1 - v^2/c^2)^{-1/2}$ and the S′ frame moves in the x direction at speed v relative to the S frame.

The relativistic form of the **Lorentz velocity transformation equation** is

$$u'_x = \frac{u_x - v}{1 - \frac{u_x v}{c^2}} \qquad (39.16)$$

where u'_x is the x component of the velocity of an object as measured in the S′ frame and u_x is its component as measured in the S frame.

The relativistic expression for the **kinetic energy** of a particle is

$$K = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1-\frac{u^2}{c^2}}} - mc^2 = (\gamma - 1)mc^2 \qquad (39.23)$$

The constant term mc^2 in Equation 39.23 is called the **rest energy** E_R of the particle:

$$E_R = mc^2 \qquad (39.24)$$

The **total energy** E of a particle is given by

$$E = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1-\frac{u^2}{c^2}}} = \gamma mc^2 \qquad (39.26)$$

The relativistic linear momentum of a particle is related to its total energy through the equation

$$E^2 = p^2c^2 + (mc^2)^2 \qquad (39.27)$$

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. **(i)** Does the speed of an electron have an upper limit? (a) yes, the speed of light c (b) yes, with another value (c) no **(ii)** Does the magnitude of an electron's momentum have an upper limit? (a) yes, m_ec (b) yes, with another value (c) no **(iii)** Does the electron's kinetic energy have an upper limit? (a) yes, m_ec^2 (b) yes, $\frac{1}{2}m_ec^2$ (c) yes, with another value (d) no

2. A spacecraft zooms past the Earth with a constant velocity. An observer on the Earth measures that an undamaged clock on the spacecraft is ticking at one-third the rate of an identical clock on the Earth. What does an observer on the spacecraft measure about the Earth-based clock's ticking rate? (a) It runs more than three times faster than his own clock. (b) It runs three times faster than his own. (c) It runs at the same rate as his own. (d) It runs at one-third the rate of his own. (e) It runs at less than one-third the rate of his own.

3. As a car heads down a highway traveling at a speed v away from a ground observer, which of the following statements are true about the measured speed of the light beam from the car's headlights? More than one statement may be correct. (a) The ground observer measures the light speed to be $c + v$. (b) The driver measures the light speed to be c. (c) The ground observer measures the light speed to be c. (d) The driver measures the light speed to be $c - v$. (e) The ground observer measures the light speed to be $c - v$.

4. A spacecraft built in the shape of a sphere moves past an observer on the Earth with a speed of $0.500c$. What shape does the observer measure for the spacecraft as it goes by? (a) a sphere (b) a cigar shape, elongated along the direction of motion (c) a round pillow shape, flattened along the direction of motion (d) a conical shape, pointing in the direction of motion

5. An astronaut is traveling in a spacecraft in outer space in a straight line at a constant speed of $0.500c$. Which of the following effects would she experience? (a) She would feel heavier. (b) She would find it harder to breathe. (c) Her heart rate would change. (d) Some of the dimensions of her spacecraft would be shorter. (e) None of those answers is correct.

6. You measure the volume of a cube at rest to be V_0. You then measure the volume of the same cube as it passes you in a direction parallel to one side of the cube. The speed of the cube is $0.980c$, so $\gamma \approx 5$. Is the volume you measure close to (a) $V_0/25$, (b) $V_0/5$, (c) V_0, (d) $5V_0$, or (e) $25V_0$?

7. Two identical clocks are set side by side and synchronized. One remains on the Earth. The other is put into orbit around the Earth moving rapidly toward the east. **(i)** As measured by an observer on the Earth, does the orbiting clock (a) run faster than the Earth-based clock, (b) run at the same rate, or (c) run slower? **(ii)** The orbiting clock is returned to its original location and brought to rest relative to the Earth-based clock. Thereafter, what happens? (a) Its reading lags farther and farther behind the Earth-based clock. (b) It lags behind the Earth-based clock by a constant amount. (c) It is synchronous with the Earth-based clock. (d) It is ahead of the Earth-based clock by a constant amount. (e) It gets farther and farther ahead of the Earth-based clock.

8. The following three particles all have the same total energy E: (a) a photon, (b) a proton, and (c) an electron. Rank the magnitudes of the particles' momenta from greatest to smallest.

9. Which of the following statements are fundamental postulates of the special theory of relativity? More than one statement may be correct. (a) Light moves through a substance called the ether. (b) The speed of light depends on the inertial reference frame in which it is measured. (c) The laws of physics depend on the inertial reference frame in which they are used. (d) The laws of physics are the same in all inertial reference frames. (e) The speed of light is independent of the inertial reference frame in which it is measured.

10. A distant astronomical object (a quasar) is moving away from us at half the speed of light. What is the speed of the light we receive from this quasar? (a) greater than c (b) c (c) between $c/2$ and c (d) $c/2$ (e) between 0 and $c/2$

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. In several cases, a nearby star has been found to have a large planet orbiting about it, although light from the planet could not be seen separately from the starlight. Using the ideas of a system rotating about its center of mass and of the Doppler shift for light, explain how an astronomer could determine the presence of the invisible planet.

2. Explain why, when defining the length of a rod, it is necessary to specify that the positions of the ends of the rod are to be measured simultaneously.

3. A train is approaching you at very high speed as you stand next to the tracks. Just as an observer on the train passes you, you both begin to play the same recorded version of a Beethoven symphony on identical iPods. (a) According to you, whose iPod finishes the symphony first? (b) **What If?** According to the observer on the train, whose iPod finishes the symphony first? (c) Whose iPod actually finishes the symphony first?

4. List three ways our day-to-day lives would change if the speed of light were only 50 m/s.

5. How is acceleration indicated on a space–time graph?

6. (a) "Newtonian mechanics correctly describes objects moving at ordinary speeds, and relativistic mechanics correctly describes objects moving very fast." (b) "Relativistic mechanics must make a smooth transition as it reduces to Newtonian mechanics in a case in which the speed of an object becomes small compared with the speed of light." Argue for or against statements (a) and (b).

7. The speed of light in water is 230 Mm/s. Suppose an electron is moving through water at 250 Mm/s. Does that violate the principle of relativity? Explain.

8. A particle is moving at a speed less than $c/2$. If the speed of the particle is doubled, what happens to its momentum?

9. Give a physical argument that shows it is impossible to accelerate an object of mass m to the speed of light, even with a continuous force acting on it.

10. Explain how the Doppler effect with microwaves is used to determine the speed of an automobile.

11. It is said that Einstein, in his teenage years, asked the question, "What would I see in a mirror if I carried it in my hands and ran at a speed near that of light?" How would you answer this question?

12. **(i)** An object is placed at a position $p > f$ from a concave mirror as shown in Figure CQ39.12a, where f is the focal length of the mirror. In a finite time interval, the object is moved to the right to a position at the focal point F of the mirror. Show that the image of the object moves at a speed greater than the speed of light. **(ii)** A laser pointer is suspended in a horizontal plane and set into rapid rotation as shown in Figure CQ39.12b. Show that the spot of light it produces on a distant screen can move across the screen at a speed greater than the speed of light. (If you carry out this experiment, make sure the direct laser light cannot enter a person's eyes.) **(iii)** Argue that the experiments in parts (i) and (ii) do not invalidate the principle that no material, no energy, and no information can move faster than light moves in a vacuum.

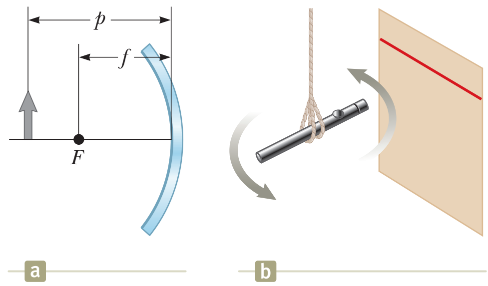


Figure CQ39.12

13. With regard to reference frames, how does general relativity differ from special relativity?

14. Two identical clocks are in the same house, one upstairs in a bedroom and the other downstairs in the kitchen. Which clock runs slower? Explain.

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 39.1 The Principle of Galilean Relativity

Problems 46–48, 50, 51, 53–54, and 79 in Chapter 4 can be assigned with this section.

1. The truck in Figure P39.1 is moving at a speed of 10.0 m/s relative to the ground. The person on the truck throws a baseball in the backward direction at a speed of 20.0 m/s relative to the truck. What is the velocity of the baseball as measured by the observer on the ground?

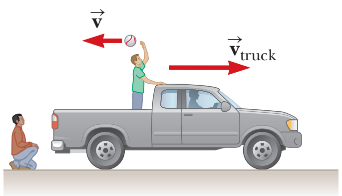


Figure P39.1

2. In a laboratory frame of reference, an observer notes that Newton's second law is valid. Assume forces and masses are measured to be the same in any reference frame for speeds small compared with the speed of light. (a) Show that Newton's second law is also valid for an observer moving at a constant speed, small compared with the speed of light, relative to the laboratory frame. (b) Show that Newton's second law is *not* valid in a reference frame moving past the laboratory frame with a constant acceleration.

3. The speed of the Earth in its orbit is 29.8 km/s. If that is the magnitude of the velocity $\vec{v}$ of the ether wind in Figure P39.3, find the angle ϕ between the velocity of light $\vec{c}$ in vacuum and the resultant velocity of light if there were an ether.

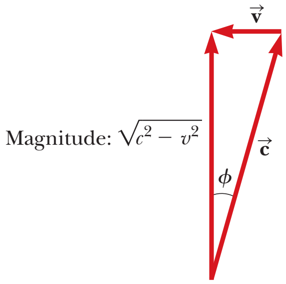


Figure P39.3

4. AMT A car of mass 2 000 kg moving with a speed of 20.0 m/s collides and locks together with a 1 500-kg car at rest at a stop sign. Show that momentum is conserved in a reference frame moving at 10.0 m/s in the direction of the moving car.

Section 39.2 The Michelson–Morley Experiment

Section 39.3 Einstein's Principle of Relativity

Section 39.4 Consequences of the Special Theory of Relativity

Problem 82 in Chapter 4 can be assigned with this section.

5. A star is 5.00 ly from the Earth. At what speed must a spacecraft travel on its journey to the star such that the Earth–star distance measured in the frame of the spacecraft is 2.00 ly?

6. A meterstick moving at 0.900c relative to the Earth's surface approaches an observer at rest with respect to the Earth's surface. (a) What is the meterstick's length as measured by the observer? (b) Qualitatively, how would the answer to part (a) change if the observer started running toward the meterstick?

7. W At what speed does a clock move if it is measured to run at a rate one-half the rate of a clock at rest with respect to an observer?

8. A muon formed high in the Earth's atmosphere is measured by an observer on the Earth's surface to travel at speed $v = 0.990c$ for a distance of 4.60 km before it decays into an electron, a neutrino, and an antineutrino ($\mu^- \rightarrow e^- + \nu + \bar{\nu}$). (a) For what time interval does the muon live as measured in its reference frame? (b) How far does the Earth travel as measured in the frame of the muon?

9. W How fast must a meterstick be moving if its length is measured to shrink to 0.500 m?

10. An astronaut is traveling in a space vehicle moving at 0.500c relative to the Earth. The astronaut measures her pulse rate at 75.0 beats per minute. Signals generated by the astronaut's pulse are radioed to the Earth when the vehicle is moving in a direction perpendicular to the line that connects the vehicle with an observer on the Earth. (a) What pulse rate does the Earth-based observer measure? (b) **What If?** What would be the pulse rate if the speed of the space vehicle were increased to 0.990c?

11. A physicist drives through a stop light. When he is pulled over, he tells the police officer that the Doppler shift made the red light of wavelength 650 nm appear green to him, with a wavelength of 520 nm. The police officer writes out a traffic citation for speeding. How fast was the physicist traveling, according to his own testimony?

12. W A fellow astronaut passes by you in a spacecraft traveling at a high speed. The astronaut tells you that his craft is 20.0 m long and that the identical craft you are sitting in is 19.0 m long. According to your observations, (a) how long is your craft, (b) how long is the astronaut's craft, and (c) what is the speed of the astronaut's craft relative to your craft?

13. A deep-space vehicle moves away from the Earth with a speed of 0.800c. An astronaut on the vehicle measures a time interval of 3.00 s to rotate her body through 1.00 rev as she floats in the vehicle. What time interval is required for this rotation according to an observer on the Earth?

14. For what value of v does $\gamma = 1.010\,0$? Observe that for speeds lower than this value, time dilation and length contraction are effects amounting to less than 1%.

15. A supertrain with a proper length of 100 m travels at a speed of 0.950c as it passes through a tunnel having a proper length of 50.0 m. As seen by a trackside observer, is the train ever completely within the tunnel? If so, by how much do the train's ends clear the ends of the tunnel?

16. M The average lifetime of a pi meson in its own frame of reference (i.e., the proper lifetime) is 2.6×10^{-8} s. If the meson moves with a speed of 0.98c, what is (a) its mean lifetime as measured by an observer on Earth, and (b) the average distance it travels before decaying, as measured by an observer on Earth? (c) What distance would it travel if time dilation did not occur?

17. An astronomer on the Earth observes a meteoroid in the southern sky approaching the Earth at a speed of 0.800c. At the time of its discovery the meteoroid is 20.0 ly from the Earth. Calculate (a) the time interval required for the meteoroid to reach the Earth as measured by the Earthbound astronomer, (b) this time interval as measured by a tourist on the meteoroid, and (c) the distance to the Earth as measured by the tourist.

18. A cube of steel has a volume of 1.00 cm^3 and a mass of 8.00 g when at rest on the Earth. If this cube is now given a speed $u = 0.900c$, what is its density as measured by a stationary observer? Note that relativistic density is defined as E_R/c^2V.

19. AMT M A spacecraft with a proper length of 300 m passes by an observer on the Earth. According to this observer, it takes 0.750 μs for the spacecraft to pass a fixed point. Determine the speed of the spacecraft as measured by the Earth-based observer.

20. A spacecraft with a proper length of L_p passes by an observer on the Earth. According to this observer, it takes a time interval Δt for the spacecraft to pass a fixed point. Determine the speed of the object as measured by the Earth-based observer.

21. A light source recedes from an observer with a speed v_S that is small compared with c. (a) Show that the fractional shift in the measured wavelength is given by the approximate expression

$$\frac{\Delta\lambda}{\lambda} \approx \frac{v_S}{c}$$

This phenomenon is known as the *redshift* because the visible light is shifted toward the red. (b) Spectroscopic measurements of light at $\lambda = 397$ nm coming from a galaxy in Ursa Major reveal a redshift of 20.0 nm. What is the recessional speed of the galaxy?

22. **Review.** In 1963, astronaut Gordon Cooper orbited the Earth 22 times. The press stated that for each orbit, he aged two-millionths of a second less than he would have had he remained on the Earth. (a) Assuming Cooper was 160 km above the Earth in a circular orbit, determine the difference in elapsed time between someone on the Earth and the orbiting astronaut for the 22 orbits. You may use the approximation

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x}} \approx 1 + \frac{x}{2}$$

for small x. (b) Did the press report accurate information? Explain.

23. Police radar detects the speed of a car (Fig. P39.23) as follows. Microwaves of a precisely known frequency are broadcast toward the car. The moving car reflects the microwaves with a Doppler shift. The reflected waves are received and combined with an attenuated version of the transmitted wave. Beats occur between the two microwave signals. The beat frequency is measured. (a) For an electromagnetic wave reflected back to its source from a mirror approaching at speed v, show that the reflected wave has frequency

$$f' = \frac{c+v}{c-v} f$$

where f is the source frequency. (b) Noting that v is much less than c, show that the beat frequency can be written as $f_{\text{beat}} = 2v/\lambda$. (c) What beat frequency is measured for a car speed of 30.0 m/s if the microwaves have frequency 10.0 GHz? (d) If the beat frequency measurement in part (c) is accurate to ±5.0 Hz, how accurate is the speed measurement?

Figure P39.23

24. The identical twins Speedo and Goslo join a migration from the Earth to Planet X, 20.0 ly away in a reference frame in which both planets are at rest. The twins, of the same age, depart at the same moment on different spacecraft. Speedo's spacecraft travels steadily at $0.950c$ and Goslo's at $0.750c$. (a) Calculate the age difference between the twins after Goslo's spacecraft lands on Planet X. (b) Which twin is older?

25. An atomic clock moves at 1 000 km/h for 1.00 h as measured by an identical clock on the Earth. At the end of the 1.00-h interval, how many nanoseconds slow will the moving clock be compared with the Earth-based clock?

26. **Review.** An alien civilization occupies a planet circling a brown dwarf, several light-years away. The plane of the planet's orbit is perpendicular to a line from the brown dwarf to the Sun, so the planet is at nearly a fixed position relative to the Sun. The extraterrestrials have come to love broadcasts of *MacGyver,* on television channel 2, at carrier frequency 57.0 MHz. Their line of sight to us is in the plane of the Earth's orbit. Find the difference between the highest and lowest frequencies they receive due to the Earth's orbital motion around the Sun.

Section 39.5 The Lorentz Transformation Equations

27. W A red light flashes at position $x_R = 3.00$ m and time $t_R = 1.00 \times 10^{-9}$ s, and a blue light flashes at $x_B = 5.00$ m and $t_B = 9.00 \times 10^{-9}$ s, all measured in the S reference frame. Reference frame S′ moves uniformly to the right and has its origin at the same point as S at $t = t' = 0$. Both flashes are observed to occur at the same place in S′. (a) Find the relative speed between S and S′. (b) Find the location of the two flashes in frame S′. (c) At what time does the red flash occur in the S′ frame?

28. Shannon observes two light pulses to be emitted from the same location, but separated in time by 3.00 μs. Kimmie observes the emission of the same two pulses to be separated in time by 9.00 μs. (a) How fast is Kimmie moving relative to Shannon? (b) According to Kimmie, what is the separation in space of the two pulses?

29. A moving rod is observed to have a length of $\ell = 2.00$ m and to be oriented at an angle of $\theta = 30.0°$ with respect to the direction of motion as shown in Figure P39.29. The rod has a speed of $0.995c$. (a) What is the proper length of the rod? (b) What is the orientation angle in the proper frame?

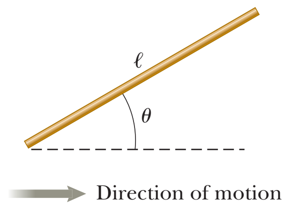


Figure P39.29

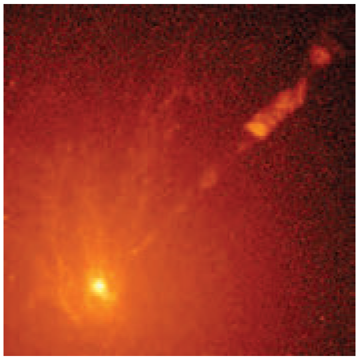
30. A rod moving with a speed v along the horizontal direction is observed to have length ℓ and to make an angle θ with respect to the direction of motion as shown in Figure P39.29. (a) Show that the length of the rod as measured by an observer at rest with respect to the rod is $\ell_p = \ell[1 - (v^2/c^2)\cos^2\theta]^{1/2}$. (b) Show that the angle θ_p that the rod makes with the x axis according to an observer at rest with respect to the rod can be found from $\tan\theta_p = \gamma\tan\theta$. These results show that the rod is observed to be both contracted and rotated. (Take the lower end of the rod to be at the origin of the coordinate system in which the rod is at rest.)

31. Keilah, in reference frame S, measures two events to be simultaneous. Event A occurs at the point (50.0 m, 0, 0) at the instant 9:00:00 Universal time on January 15,

2013. Event B occurs at the point (150 m, 0, 0) at the same moment. Torrey, moving past with a velocity of $0.800c\hat{\mathbf{i}}$, also observes the two events. In her reference frame S′, which event occurred first and what time interval elapsed between the events?

Section 39.6 The Lorentz Velocity Transformation Equations

32. Figure P39.32 shows a jet of material (at the upper right) being ejected by galaxy M87 (at the lower left). Such jets are believed to be evidence of supermassive black holes at the center of a galaxy. Suppose two jets of material from the center of a galaxy are ejected in opposite directions. Both jets move at $0.750c$ relative to the galaxy center. Determine the speed of one jet relative to the other.



NASA/STScI

Figure P39.32

33. An enemy spacecraft moves away from the Earth at a speed of $v = 0.800c$ (Fig. P39.33). A galactic patrol spacecraft pursues at a speed of $u = 0.900c$ relative to the Earth. Observers on the Earth measure the patrol craft to be overtaking the enemy craft at a relative speed of $0.100c$. With what speed is the patrol craft overtaking the enemy craft as measured by the patrol craft's crew?

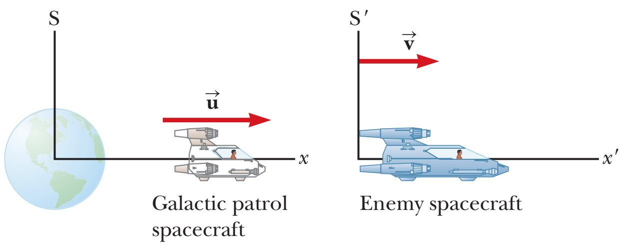


Figure P39.33

34. A spacecraft is launched from the surface of the Earth with a velocity of $0.600c$ at an angle of 50.0° above the horizontal positive x axis. Another spacecraft is moving past with a velocity of $0.700c$ in the negative x direction. Determine the magnitude and direction of the velocity of the first spacecraft as measured by the pilot of the second spacecraft.

35. A rocket moves with a velocity of $0.92c$ to the right with respect to a stationary observer A. An observer B moving relative to observer A finds that the rocket is moving with a velocity of $0.95c$ to the left. What is the velocity of observer B relative to observer A? (*Hint:* Consider observer B's velocity in the frame of reference of the rocket.)

Section 39.7 Relativistic Linear Momentum

36. Calculate the momentum of an electron moving with a speed of (a) $0.010\,0c$, (b) $0.500c$, and (c) $0.900c$.

37. An electron has a momentum that is three times larger than its classical momentum. (a) Find the speed of the electron. (b) **What If?** How would your result change if the particle were a proton?

38. Show that the speed of an object having momentum of magnitude p and mass m is

$$u = \frac{c}{\sqrt{1 + (mc/p)^2}}$$

39. (a) Calculate the classical momentum of a proton traveling at $0.990c$, neglecting relativistic effects. (b) Repeat the calculation while including relativistic effects. (c) Does it make sense to neglect relativity at such speeds?

40. The speed limit on a certain roadway is 90.0 km/h. Suppose speeding fines are made proportional to the amount by which a vehicle's momentum exceeds the momentum it would have when traveling at the speed limit. The fine for driving at 190 km/h (that is, 100 km/h over the speed limit) is \$80.0. What, then, is the fine for traveling (a) at 1 090 km/h? (b) At 1 000 000 090 km/h?

41. A golf ball travels with a speed of 90.0 m/s. By what fraction does its relativistic momentum magnitude p differ from its classical value mu? That is, find the ratio $(p - mu)/mu$.

42. The nonrelativistic expression for the momentum of a particle, $p = mu$, agrees with experiment if $u << c$. For what speed does the use of this equation give an error in the measured momentum of (a) 1.00% and (b) 10.0%?

43. An unstable particle at rest spontaneously breaks into two fragments of unequal mass. The mass of the first fragment is 2.50×10^{-28} kg, and that of the other is 1.67×10^{-27} kg. If the lighter fragment has a speed of $0.893c$ after the breakup, what is the speed of the heavier fragment?

Section 39.8 Relativistic Energy

44. Determine the energy required to accelerate an electron from (a) $0.500c$ to $0.900c$ and (b) $0.900c$ to $0.990c$.

45. An electron has a kinetic energy five times greater than its rest energy. Find (a) its total energy and (b) its speed.

46. Protons in an accelerator at the Fermi National Laboratory near Chicago are accelerated to a total energy that is 400 times their rest energy. (a) What is the speed of these protons in terms of c? (b) What is their kinetic energy in MeV?

47. A proton moves at $0.950c$. Calculate its (a) rest energy, (b) total energy, and (c) kinetic energy.

48. (a) Find the kinetic energy of a 78.0-kg spacecraft launched out of the solar system with speed 106 km/s by using the classical equation $K = \frac{1}{2}mu^2$. (b) **What If?** Calculate its kinetic energy using the relativistic equation. (c) Explain the result of comparing the answers of parts (a) and (b).

49. AMT M A proton in a high-energy accelerator moves with a speed of $c/2$. Use the work–kinetic energy theorem to find the work required to increase its speed to (a) $0.750c$ and (b) $0.995c$.

50. Show that for any object moving at less than one-tenth the speed of light, the relativistic kinetic energy agrees with the result of the classical equation $K = \frac{1}{2}mu^2$ to within less than 1%. Therefore, for most purposes, the classical equation is sufficient to describe these objects.

51. The total energy of a proton is twice its rest energy. Find the momentum of the proton in MeV/c units.

52. Consider electrons accelerated to a total energy of 20.0 GeV in the 3.00-km-long Stanford Linear Accelerator. (a) What is the factor γ for the electrons? (b) What is the electrons' speed at the given energy? (c) What is the length of the accelerator in the electrons' frame of reference when they are moving at their highest speed?

53. W When 1.00 g of hydrogen combines with 8.00 g of oxygen, 9.00 g of water is formed. During this chemical reaction, 2.86×10^5 J of energy is released. (a) Is the mass of the water larger or smaller than the mass of the reactants? (b) What is the difference in mass? (c) Explain whether the change in mass is likely to be detectable.

54. W In a nuclear power plant, the fuel rods last 3 yr before they are replaced. The plant can transform energy at a maximum possible rate of 1.00 GW. Supposing it operates at 80.0% capacity for 3.00 yr, what is the loss of mass of the fuel?

55. The power output of the Sun is 3.85×10^{26} W. By how much does the mass of the Sun decrease each second?

56. A gamma ray (a high-energy photon) can produce an electron (e^-) and a positron (e^+) of equal mass when it enters the electric field of a heavy nucleus: $\gamma \rightarrow e^+ + e^-$. What minimum gamma-ray energy is required to accomplish this task?

57. A spaceship of mass 2.40×10^6 kg is to be accelerated to a speed of $0.700c$. (a) What minimum amount of energy does this acceleration require from the spaceship's fuel, assuming perfect efficiency? (b) How much fuel would it take to provide this much energy if all the rest energy of the fuel could be transformed to kinetic energy of the spaceship?

58. Show that the energy–momentum relationship in Equation 39.27, $E^2 = p^2c^2 + (mc^2)^2$, follows from the expressions $E = \gamma mc^2$ and $p = \gamma mu$.

59. The rest energy of an electron is 0.511 MeV. The rest energy of a proton is 938 MeV. Assume both particles have kinetic energies of 2.00 MeV. Find the speed of (a) the electron and (b) the proton. (c) By what factor does the speed of the electron exceed that of the proton? (d) Repeat the calculations in parts (a) through (c) assuming both particles have kinetic energies of 2 000 MeV.

60. Consider a car moving at highway speed u. Is its actual kinetic energy larger or smaller than $\frac{1}{2}mu^2$? Make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the amount by which its actual kinetic energy differs from $\frac{1}{2}mu^2$. In your solution, state the quantities you take as data and the values you measure or estimate for them. You may find Appendix B.5 useful.

61. M A pion at rest ($m_\pi = 273m_e$) decays to a muon ($m_\mu = 207m_e$) and an antineutrino ($m_{\bar{\nu}} \approx 0$). The reaction is written $\pi^- \rightarrow \mu^- + \bar{\nu}$. Find (a) the kinetic energy of the muon and (b) the energy of the antineutrino in electron volts.

62. GP An unstable particle with mass $m = 3.34 \times 10^{-27}$ kg is initially at rest. The particle decays into two fragments that fly off along the x axis with velocity components $u_1 = 0.987c$ and $u_2 = -0.868c$. From this information, we wish to determine the masses of fragments 1 and 2. (a) Is the initial system of the unstable particle, which becomes the system of the two fragments, isolated or nonisolated? (b) Based on your answer to part (a), what two analysis models are appropriate for this situation? (c) Find the values of γ for the two fragments after the decay. (d) Using one of the analysis models in part (b), find a relationship between the masses m_1 and m_2 of the fragments. (e) Using the second analysis model in part (b), find a second relationship between the masses m_1 and m_2. (f) Solve the relationships in parts (d) and (e) simultaneously for the masses m_1 and m_2.

63. Massive stars ending their lives in supernova explosions produce the nuclei of all the atoms in the bottom half of the periodic table by fusion of smaller nuclei. This problem roughly models that process. A particle of mass $m = 1.99 \times 10^{-26}$ kg moving with a velocity $\vec{\mathbf{u}} = 0.500c\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ collides head-on and sticks to a particle of mass $m' = m/3$ moving with the velocity $\vec{\mathbf{u}} = -0.500c\hat{\mathbf{i}}$. What is the mass of the resulting particle?

64. Massive stars ending their lives in supernova explosions produce the nuclei of all the atoms in the bottom half of the periodic table by fusion of smaller nuclei. This problem roughly models that process. A particle of mass m moving along the x axis with a velocity component $+u$ collides head-on and sticks to a particle of mass $m/3$ moving along the x axis with the velocity component $-u$. (a) What is the mass M of the resulting particle? (b) Evaluate the expression from part (a) in the limit $u \rightarrow 0$. (c) Explain whether the result agrees with what you should expect from nonrelativistic physics.

Section 39.9 The General Theory of Relativity

65. **Review.** A global positioning system (GPS) satellite moves in a circular orbit with period 11 h 58 min. (a) Determine the radius of its orbit. (b) Determine its speed. (c) The nonmilitary GPS signal is broadcast at a frequency of 1 575.42 MHz in the reference frame of the satellite. When it is received on the Earth's surface by a GPS receiver (Fig. P39.65 on page 1230), what is the fractional change in this frequency due to time dilation as described by special relativity? (d) The gravitational "blueshift" of the frequency according to general relativity is a separate effect. It is called a blueshift to indicate a change to a higher frequency. The magnitude of that fractional change is given by

$$\frac{\Delta f}{f} = \frac{\Delta U_g}{mc^2}$$

where U_g is the change in gravitational potential energy of an object–Earth system when the object of mass m is moved between the two points where the signal is observed. Calculate this fractional change in frequency due to the change in position of the satellite from the Earth's surface to its orbital position. (e) What is the overall fractional change in frequency due to both time dilation and gravitational blueshift?

Figure P39.65

Additional Problems

66. An electron has a speed of $0.750c$. (a) Find the speed of a proton that has the same kinetic energy as the electron. (b) **What If?** Find the speed of a proton that has the same momentum as the electron.

67. M The net nuclear fusion reaction inside the Sun can be written as $4\,^1\text{H} \rightarrow {}^4\text{He} + E$. The rest energy of each hydrogen atom is 938.78 MeV, and the rest energy of the helium-4 atom is 3 728.4 MeV. Calculate the percentage of the starting mass that is transformed to other forms of energy.

68. *Why is the following situation impossible?* On their 40th birthday, twins Speedo and Goslo say good-bye as Speedo takes off for a planet that is 50 ly away. He travels at a constant speed of $0.85c$ and immediately turns around and comes back to the Earth after arriving at the planet. Upon arriving back at the Earth, Speedo has a joyous reunion with Goslo.

69. A Doppler weather radar station broadcasts a pulse of radio waves at frequency 2.85 GHz. From a relatively small batch of raindrops at bearing 38.6° east of north, the station receives a reflected pulse after 180 μs with a frequency shifted upward by 254 Hz. From a similar batch of raindrops at bearing 39.6° east of north, the station receives a reflected pulse after the same time delay, with a frequency shifted downward by 254 Hz. These pulses have the highest and lowest frequencies the station receives. (a) Calculate the radial velocity components of both batches of raindrops. (b) Assume that these raindrops are swirling in a uniformly rotating vortex. Find the angular speed of their rotation.

70. An object having mass 900 kg and traveling at speed $0.850c$ collides with a stationary object having mass 1 400 kg. The two objects stick together. Find (a) the speed and (b) the mass of the composite object.

71. M An astronaut wishes to visit the Andromeda galaxy, making a one-way trip that will take 30.0 years in the spaceship's frame of reference. Assume the galaxy is 2.00 million light-years away and his speed is constant. (a) How fast must he travel relative to Earth? (b) What will be the kinetic energy of his spacecraft, which has mass of 1.00×10^6 kg? (c) What is the cost of this energy if it is purchased at a typical consumer price for electric energy, 13.0¢ per kWh? The following approximation will prove useful:

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{1+x}} \approx 1 - \frac{x}{2} \quad \text{for } x << 1$$

72. A physics professor on the Earth gives an exam to her students, who are in a spacecraft traveling at speed v relative to the Earth. The moment the craft passes the professor, she signals the start of the exam. She wishes her students to have a time interval T_0 (spacecraft time) to complete the exam. Show that she should wait a time interval (Earth time) of

$$T = T_0\sqrt{\frac{1 - v/c}{1 + v/c}}$$

before sending a light signal telling them to stop. (*Suggestion:* Remember that it takes some time for the second light signal to travel from the professor to the students.)

73. M An interstellar space probe is launched from Earth. After a brief period of acceleration, it moves with a constant velocity, 70.0% of the speed of light. Its nuclear-powered batteries supply the energy to keep its data transmitter active continuously. The batteries have a lifetime of 15.0 years as measured in a rest frame. (a) How long do the batteries on the space probe last as measured by mission control on Earth? (b) How far is the probe from Earth when its batteries fail as measured by mission control? (c) How far is the probe from Earth as measured by its built-in trip odometer when its batteries fail? (d) For what total time after launch are data received from the probe by mission control? Note that radio waves travel at the speed of light and fill the space between the probe and Earth at the time the battery fails.

74. The equation

$$K = \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}} - 1\right)mc^2$$

gives the kinetic energy of a particle moving at speed u. (a) Solve the equation for u. (b) From the equation for u, identify the minimum possible value of speed and the corresponding kinetic energy. (c) Identify the maximum possible speed and the corresponding kinetic energy. (d) Differentiate the equation for u with respect to time to obtain an equation describing the acceleration of a particle as a function of its kinetic energy and the power input to the particle. (e) Observe that for a nonrelativistic particle we have $u = (2K/m)^{1/2}$ and that differentiating this equation with respect to time gives $a = P/(2mK)^{1/2}$. State the limiting form of the expression in part (d) at low energy. State how it compares with the nonrelativistic expression. (f) State the limiting form of the expression in part (d) at high energy. (g) Consider a particle with constant input power. Explain how the answer to part (f) helps account for the answer to part (c).

75. Consider the astronaut planning the trip to Andromeda in Problem 71. (a) To three significant figures, what is the value for γ for the speed found in part (a) of Problem 71? (b) Just as the astronaut leaves on his constant-speed trip, a light beam is also sent in the direction of Andromeda. According to the Earth observer, how much later does the astronaut arrive at Andromeda after the arrival of the light beam?

76. An object disintegrates into two fragments. One fragment has mass 1.00 MeV/c^2 and momentum 1.75 MeV/c in the positive x direction, and the other has mass 1.50 MeV/c^2 and momentum 2.00 MeV/c in the positive y direction. Find (a) the mass and (b) the speed of the original object.

77. M The cosmic rays of highest energy are protons that have kinetic energy on the order of 10^{13} MeV. (a) As measured in the proton's frame, what time interval would a proton of this energy require to travel across the Milky Way galaxy, which has a proper diameter $\sim 10^5$ ly? (b) From the point of view of the proton, how many kilometers across is the galaxy?

78. M Spacecraft I, containing students taking a physics exam, approaches the Earth with a speed of 0.600c (relative to the Earth), while spacecraft II, containing professors proctoring the exam, moves at 0.280c (relative to the Earth) directly toward the students. If the professors stop the exam after 50.0 min have passed on their clock, for what time interval does the exam last as measured by (a) the students and (b) an observer on the Earth?

79. **Review.** Around the core of a nuclear reactor shielded by a large pool of water, Cerenkov radiation appears as a blue glow. (See Fig. P17.38 on page 528.) Cerenkov radiation occurs when a particle travels faster through a medium than the speed of light in that medium. It is the electromagnetic equivalent of a bow wave or a sonic boom. An electron is traveling through water at a speed 10.0% faster than the speed of light in water. Determine the electron's (a) total energy, (b) kinetic energy, and (c) momentum. (d) Find the angle between the shock wave and the electron's direction of motion.

80. The motion of a transparent medium influences the speed of light. This effect was first observed by Fizeau in 1851. Consider a light beam in water. The water moves with speed v in a horizontal pipe. Assume the light travels in the same direction as the water moves. The speed of light with respect to the water is c/n, where $n = 1.33$ is the index of refraction of water. (a) Use the velocity transformation equation to show that the speed of the light measured in the laboratory frame is

$$u = \frac{c}{n}\left(\frac{1 + nv/c}{1 + v/nc}\right)$$

(b) Show that for $v << c$, the expression from part (a) becomes, to a good approximation,

$$u \approx \frac{c}{n} + v - \frac{v}{n^2}$$

(c) Argue for or against the view that we should expect the result to be $u = (c/n) + v$ according to the Galilean transformation and that the presence of the term $-v/n^2$ represents a relativistic effect appearing even at "nonrelativistic" speeds. (d) Evaluate u in the limit as the speed of the water approaches c.

81. Imagine that the entire Sun, of mass M_S, collapses to a sphere of radius R_g such that the work required to remove a small mass m from the surface would be equal to its rest energy mc^2. This radius is called the *gravitational radius* for the Sun. (a) Use this approach to show that $R_g = GM_S/c^2$. (b) Find a numerical value for R_g.

82. *Why is the following situation impossible?* An experimenter is accelerating electrons for use in probing a material. She finds that when she accelerates them through a potential difference of 84.0 kV, the electrons have half the speed she wishes. She quadruples the potential difference to 336 kV, and the electrons accelerated through this potential difference have her desired speed.

83. An alien spaceship traveling at 0.600c toward the Earth launches a landing craft. The landing craft travels in the same direction with a speed of 0.800c relative to the mother ship. As measured on the Earth, the spaceship is 0.200 ly from the Earth when the landing craft is launched. (a) What speed do the Earth-based observers measure for the approaching landing craft? (b) What is the distance to the Earth at the moment of the landing craft's launch as measured by the aliens? (c) What travel time is required for the landing craft to reach the Earth as measured by the aliens on the mother ship? (d) If the landing craft has a mass of 4.00×10^5 kg, what is its kinetic energy as measured in the Earth reference frame?

84. (a) Prepare a graph of the relativistic kinetic energy and the classical kinetic energy, both as a function of speed, for an object with a mass of your choice. (b) At what speed does the classical kinetic energy underestimate the experimental value by 1%? (c) By 5%? (d) By 50%?

85. AMT An observer in a coasting spacecraft moves toward a mirror at speed $v = 0.650c$ relative to the reference frame labeled S in Figure P39.85 (page 1232). The mirror is stationary with respect to S. A light pulse emitted by the spacecraft travels toward the mirror and is reflected back to the spacecraft. The spacecraft is a distance $d = 5.66 \times 10^{10}$ m from the mirror (as measured by observers in S) at the moment the light pulse leaves the spacecraft. What is the total travel time of the pulse as measured by observers in (a) the S frame and (b) the spacecraft?

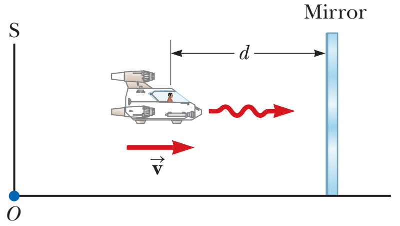


Figure P39.85 Problems 85 and 86.

86. An observer in a coasting spacecraft moves toward a mirror at speed v relative to the reference frame labeled S in Figure P39.85. The mirror is stationary with respect to S. A light pulse emitted by the spacecraft travels toward the mirror and is reflected back to the spacecraft. The spacecraft is a distance d from the mirror (as measured by observers in S) at the moment the light pulse leaves the spacecraft. What is the total travel time of the pulse as measured by observers in (a) the S frame and (b) the spacecraft?

87. A ^{57}Fe nucleus at rest emits a 14.0-keV photon. Use conservation of energy and momentum to find the kinetic energy of the recoiling nucleus in electron volts. Use $Mc^2 = 8.60 \times 10^{-9}$ J for the final state of the ^{57}Fe nucleus.

Challenge Problems

88. A particle with electric charge q moves along a straight line in a uniform electric field $\vec{\mathbf{E}}$ with speed u. The electric force exerted on the charge is $q\vec{\mathbf{E}}$. The velocity of the particle and the electric field are both in the x direction. (a) Show that the acceleration of the particle in the x direction is given by

$$a = \frac{du}{dt} = \frac{qE}{m}\left(1 - \frac{u^2}{c^2}\right)^{3/2}$$

(b) Discuss the significance of the dependence of the acceleration on the speed. (c) **What If?** If the particle starts from rest at $x = 0$ at $t = 0$, how would you proceed to find the speed of the particle and its position at time t?

89. The creation and study of new and very massive elementary particles is an important part of contemporary physics. To create a particle of mass M requires an energy Mc^2. With enough energy, an exotic particle can be created by allowing a fast-moving proton to collide with a similar target particle. Consider a perfectly inelastic collision between two protons: an incident proton with mass m_p, kinetic energy K, and momentum magnitude p joins with an originally stationary target proton to form a single product particle of mass M. Not all the kinetic energy of the incoming proton is available to create the product particle because conservation of momentum requires that the system as a whole still must have some kinetic energy after the collision. Therefore, only a fraction of the energy of the incident particle is available to create a new particle. (a) Show that the energy available to create a product particle is given by

$$Mc^2 = 2m_pc^2\sqrt{1 + \frac{K}{2m_pc^2}}$$

This result shows that when the kinetic energy K of the incident proton is large compared with its rest energy m_pc^2, then M approaches $(2m_pK)^{1/2}/c$. Therefore, if the energy of the incoming proton is increased by a factor of 9, the mass you can create increases only by a factor of 3, not by a factor of 9 as would be expected. (b) This problem can be alleviated by using *colliding beams* as is the case in most modern accelerators. Here the total momentum of a pair of interacting particles can be zero. The center of mass can be at rest after the collision, so, in principle, all the initial kinetic energy can be used for particle creation. Show that

$$Mc^2 = 2mc^2\left(1 + \frac{K}{mc^2}\right)$$

where K is the kinetic energy of each of the two identical colliding particles. Here, if $K >> mc^2$, we have M directly proportional to K as we would desire.

90. Suppose our Sun is about to explode. In an effort to escape, we depart in a spacecraft at $v = 0.800c$ and head toward the star Tau Ceti, 12.0 ly away. When we reach the midpoint of our journey from the Earth, we see our Sun explode, and, unfortunately, at the same instant, we see Tau Ceti explode as well. (a) In the spacecraft's frame of reference, should we conclude that the two explosions occurred simultaneously? If not, which occurred first? (b) **What If?** In a frame of reference in which the Sun and Tau Ceti are at rest, did they explode simultaneously? If not, which exploded first?

91. Owen and Dina are at rest in frame S′, which is moving at $0.600c$ with respect to frame S. They play a game of catch while Ed, at rest in frame S, watches the action (Fig. P39.91). Owen throws the ball to Dina at $0.800c$ (according to Owen), and their separation (measured in S′) is equal to 1.80×10^{12} m. (a) According to Dina, how fast is the ball moving? (b) According to Dina, what time interval is required for the ball to reach her? According to Ed, (c) how far apart are Owen and Dina, (d) how fast is the ball moving, and (e) what time interval is required for the ball to reach Dina?

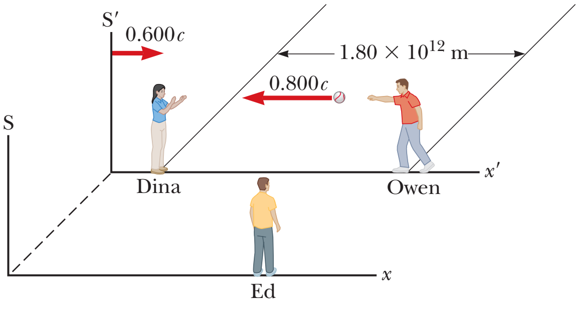
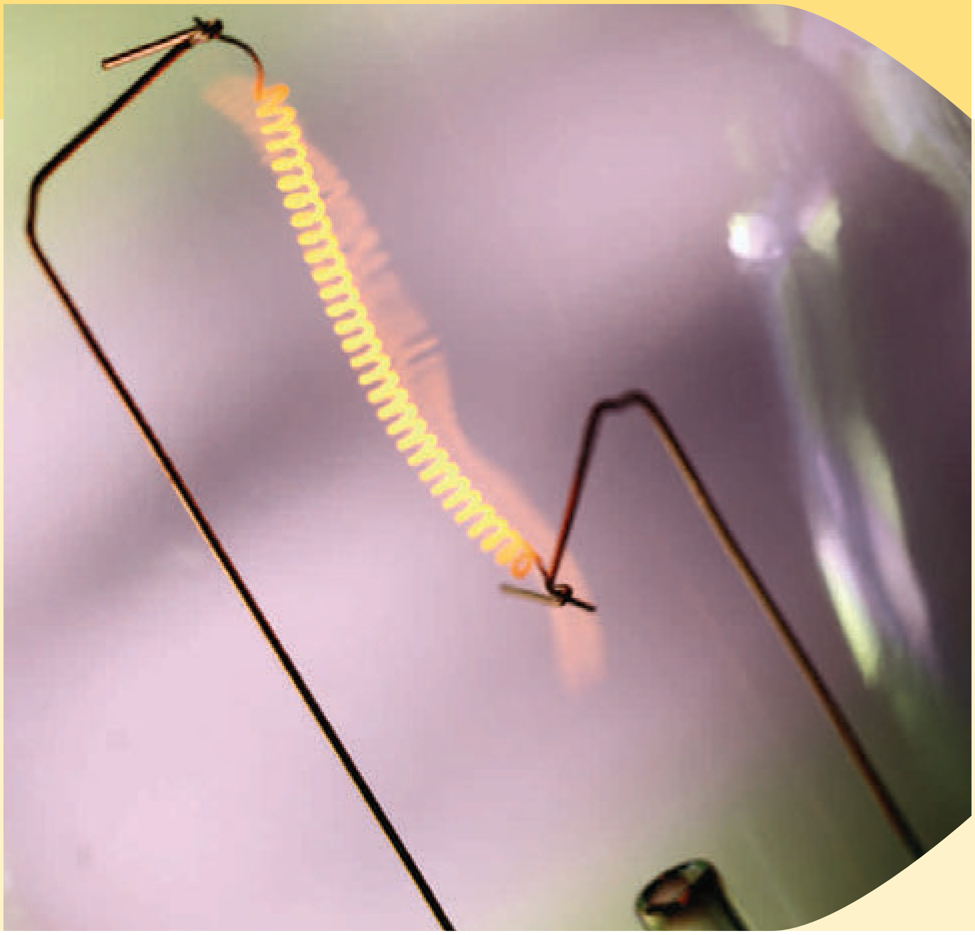


Figure P39.91

CHAPTER

40

Introduction to Quantum Physics



This lightbulb filament glows with an orange color. Why? Classical physics is unable to explain the experimentally observed wavelength distribution of electromagnetic radiation from a hot object. A theory proposed in 1900 and describing the radiation from such objects represents the dawn of quantum physics. *(Steve Cole/Getty Images)*

In Chapter 39, we discussed that Newtonian mechanics must be replaced by Einstein's special theory of relativity when dealing with particle speeds comparable to the speed of light. As the 20th century progressed, many experimental and theoretical problems were resolved by the special theory of relativity. For many other problems, however, neither relativity nor classical physics could provide a theoretical answer. Attempts to apply the laws of classical physics to explain the behavior of matter on the atomic scale were consistently unsuccessful. For example, the emission of discrete wavelengths of light from atoms in a high-temperature gas could not be explained within the framework of classical physics.

As physicists sought new ways to solve these puzzles, another revolution took place in physics between 1900 and 1930. A new theory called *quantum mechanics* was highly successful in explaining the behavior of particles of microscopic size. Like the special theory of relativity, the quantum theory requires a modification of our ideas concerning the physical world.

The first explanation of a phenomenon using quantum theory was introduced by Max Planck. Many subsequent mathematical developments and interpretations were made by a number of distinguished physicists, including Einstein, Bohr, de Broglie, Schrödinger, and

Pitfall Prevention 40.1

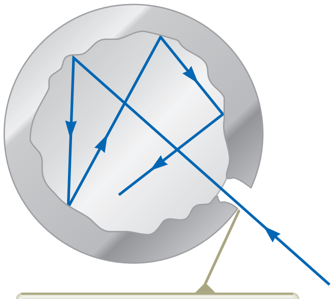
Expect to Be Challenged If the discussions of quantum physics in this and subsequent chapters seem strange and confusing to you, it's because your whole life experience has taken place in the macroscopic world, where quantum effects are not evident.

Heisenberg. Despite the great success of the quantum theory, Einstein frequently played the role of its critic, especially with regard to the manner in which the theory was interpreted.

Because an extensive study of quantum theory is beyond the scope of this book, this chapter is simply an introduction to its underlying principles.

40.1 Blackbody Radiation and Planck's Hypothesis

An object at any temperature emits electromagnetic waves in the form of **thermal radiation** from its surface as discussed in Section 20.7. The characteristics of this radiation depend on the temperature and properties of the object's surface. Careful study shows that the radiation consists of a continuous distribution of wavelengths from all portions of the electromagnetic spectrum. If the object is at room temperature, the wavelengths of thermal radiation are mainly in the infrared region and hence the radiation is not detected by the human eye. As the surface temperature of the object increases, the object eventually begins to glow visibly red, like the coils of a toaster. At sufficiently high temperatures, the glowing object appears white, as in the hot tungsten filament of an incandescent lightbulb.



The opening to a cavity inside a hollow object is a good approximation of a black body: the hole acts as a perfect absorber.

Figure 40.1 A physical model of a black body.

From a classical viewpoint, thermal radiation originates from accelerated charged particles in the atoms near the surface of the object; those charged particles emit radiation much as small antennas do. The thermally agitated particles can have a distribution of energies, which accounts for the continuous spectrum of radiation emitted by the object. By the end of the 19th century, however, it became apparent that the classical theory of thermal radiation was inadequate. The basic problem was in understanding the observed distribution of wavelengths in the radiation emitted by a black body. As defined in Section 20.7, a **black body** is an ideal system that absorbs all radiation incident on it. The electromagnetic radiation emitted by the black body is called **blackbody radiation.**

A good approximation of a black body is a small hole leading to the inside of a hollow object as shown in Figure 40.1. Any radiation incident on the hole from outside the cavity enters the hole and is reflected a number of times on the interior walls of the cavity; hence, the hole acts as a perfect absorber. The nature of the radiation leaving the cavity through the hole depends only on the temperature of the cavity walls and not on the material of which the walls are made. The spaces between lumps of hot charcoal (Fig. 40.2) emit light that is very much like blackbody radiation.

SOMMAI/Shutterstock.com

Figure 40.2 The glow emanating from the spaces between these hot charcoal briquettes is, to a close approximation, blackbody radiation. The color of the light depends only on the temperature of the briquettes.

The radiation emitted by oscillators in the cavity walls in Figure 40.1 experiences boundary conditions and can be analyzed using the waves under boundary conditions analysis model. As the radiation reflects from the cavity's walls, standing electromagnetic waves are established within the three-dimensional interior of the cavity. Many standing-wave modes are possible, and the distribution of the energy in the cavity among these modes determines the wavelength distribution of the radiation leaving the cavity through the hole.

The wavelength distribution of radiation from cavities was studied experimentally in the late 19th century. Figure 40.3 shows how the intensity of blackbody radiation varies with temperature and wavelength. The following two consistent experimental findings were seen as especially significant:

1. **The total power of the emitted radiation increases with temperature.** We discussed this behavior briefly in Chapter 20, where we introduced **Stefan's law:**

Stefan's law ▶

$$P = \sigma A e T^4 \tag{40.1}$$

where P is the power in watts radiated at all wavelengths from the surface of an object, $\sigma = 5.670 \times 10^{-8}\ \mathrm{W/m^2 \cdot K^4}$ is the Stefan–Boltzmann constant, A is the surface area of the object in square meters, e is the emissivity of the surface, and T is the surface temperature in kelvins. For a black body, the emissivity is $e = 1$ exactly.

2. **The peak of the wavelength distribution shifts to shorter wavelengths as the temperature increases.** This behavior is described by the following relationship, called **Wien's displacement law:**

$$\lambda_{\max} T = 2.898 \times 10^{-3}\ \mathrm{m \cdot K} \quad \textbf{(40.2)}$$

◀ **Wien's displacement law**

where $\lambda_{\max}$ is the wavelength at which the curve peaks and T is the absolute temperature of the surface of the object emitting the radiation. The wavelength at the curve's peak is inversely proportional to the absolute temperature; that is, as the temperature increases, the peak is "displaced" to shorter wavelengths (Fig. 40.3).

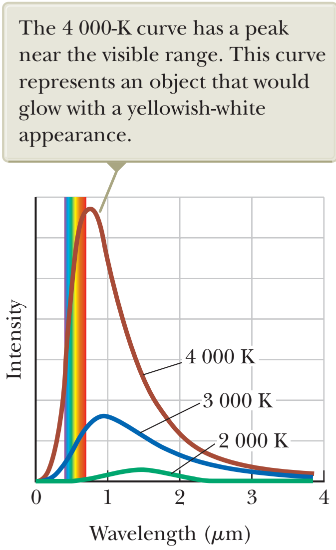
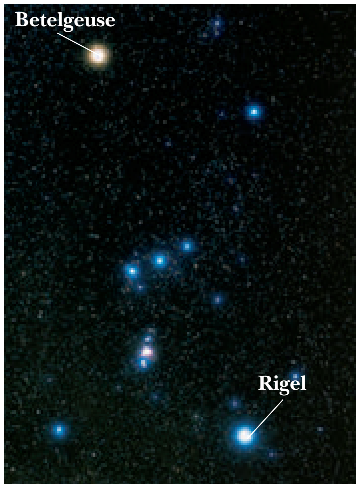


Figure 40.3 Intensity of blackbody radiation versus wavelength at three temperatures. The visible range of wavelengths is between 0.4 μm and 0.7 μm. At approximately 6 000 K, the peak is in the center of the visible wavelengths and the object appears white.

Wien's displacement law is consistent with the behavior of the object mentioned at the beginning of this section. At room temperature, the object does not appear to glow because the peak is in the infrared region of the electromagnetic spectrum. At higher temperatures, it glows red because the peak is in the near infrared with some radiation at the red end of the visible spectrum, and at still higher temperatures, it glows white because the peak is in the visible so that all colors are emitted.

Quick Quiz 40.1 Figure 40.4 shows two stars in the constellation Orion. Betelgeuse appears to glow red, whereas Rigel looks blue in color. Which star has a higher surface temperature? **(a)** Betelgeuse **(b)** Rigel **(c)** both the same **(d)** impossible to determine



John Chumack/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Figure 40.4 (Quick Quiz 40.1) Which star is hotter, Betelgeuse or Rigel?

A successful theory for blackbody radiation must predict the shape of the curves in Figure 40.3, the temperature dependence expressed in Stefan's law, and the shift of the peak with temperature described by Wien's displacement law. Early attempts to use classical ideas to explain the shapes of the curves in Figure 40.3 failed.

Let's consider one of these early attempts. To describe the distribution of energy from a black body, we define $I(\lambda,T)\,d\lambda$ to be the intensity, or power per unit area, emitted in the wavelength interval $d\lambda$. The result of a calculation based on a classical theory of blackbody radiation known as the **Rayleigh–Jeans law** is

$$I(\lambda,T) = \frac{2\pi c k_B T}{\lambda^4} \quad \textbf{(40.3)}$$

◀ **Rayleigh–Jeans law**

where k_B is Boltzmann's constant. The black body is modeled as the hole leading into a cavity (Fig. 40.1), resulting in many modes of oscillation of the electromagnetic field caused by accelerated charges in the cavity walls and the emission of electromagnetic waves at all wavelengths. In the classical theory used to derive

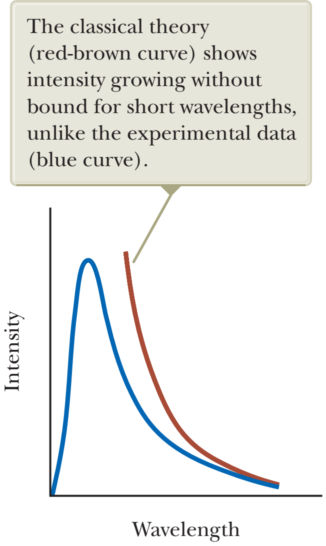


Figure 40.5 Comparison of experimental results and the curve predicted by the Rayleigh–Jeans law for the distribution of blackbody radiation.

Equation 40.3, the average energy for each wavelength of the standing-wave modes is assumed to be proportional to $k_B T$, based on the theorem of equipartition of energy discussed in Section 21.1.

An experimental plot of the blackbody radiation spectrum, together with the theoretical prediction of the Rayleigh–Jeans law, is shown in Figure 40.5. At long wavelengths, the Rayleigh–Jeans law is in reasonable agreement with experimental data, but at short wavelengths, major disagreement is apparent.

As λ approaches zero, the function $I(\lambda,T)$ given by Equation 40.3 approaches infinity. Hence, according to classical theory, not only should short wavelengths predominate in a blackbody spectrum, but also the energy emitted by any black body should become infinite in the limit of zero wavelength. In contrast to this prediction, the experimental data plotted in Figure 40.5 show that as λ approaches zero, $I(\lambda,T)$ also approaches zero. This mismatch of theory and experiment was so disconcerting that scientists called it the *ultraviolet catastrophe.* (This "catastrophe"—infinite energy—occurs as the wavelength approaches zero; the word *ultraviolet* was applied because ultraviolet wavelengths are short.)

In 1900, Max Planck developed a theory of blackbody radiation that leads to an equation for $I(\lambda,T)$ that is in complete agreement with experimental results at all wavelengths. In discussing this theory, we use the outline of properties of structural models introduced in Chapter 21:

1. *Physical components:*
   Planck assumed the cavity radiation came from atomic oscillators in the cavity walls in Figure 40.1.
2. *Behavior of the components:*
   (a) The energy of an oscillator can have only certain *discrete* values E_n:

$$E_n = nhf \tag{40.4}$$

   where n is a positive integer called a **quantum number,**[1] f is the oscillator's frequency, and h is a parameter Planck introduced that is now called **Planck's constant.** Because the energy of each oscillator can have only discrete values given by Equation 40.4, we say the energy is **quantized.** Each discrete energy value corresponds to a different **quantum state,** represented by the quantum number n. When the oscillator is in the $n = 1$ quantum state, its energy is hf; when it is in the $n = 2$ quantum state, its energy is $2hf$; and so on.

   (b) The oscillators emit or absorb energy when making a transition from one quantum state to another. The entire energy difference between the initial and final states in the transition is emitted or absorbed as a single quantum of radiation. If the transition is from one state to a lower adjacent state—say, from the $n = 3$ state to the $n = 2$ state—Equation 40.4 shows that the amount of energy emitted by the oscillator and carried by the quantum of radiation is

$$E = hf \tag{40.5}$$

According to property 2(b), an oscillator emits or absorbs energy only when it changes quantum states. If it remains in one quantum state, no energy is absorbed or emitted. Figure 40.6 is an **energy-level diagram** showing the quantized energy levels and allowed transitions proposed by Planck. This important semigraphical representation is used often in quantum physics.[2] The vertical axis is linear in energy, and the allowed energy levels are represented as horizontal lines. The quantized system can have only the energies represented by the horizontal lines.

Max Planck
German Physicist (1858–1947)
Planck introduced the concept of "quantum of action" (Planck's constant, h) in an attempt to explain the spectral distribution of blackbody radiation, which laid the foundations for quantum theory. In 1918, he was awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics for this discovery of the quantized nature of energy.

[1]A quantum number is generally an integer (although half-integer quantum numbers can occur) that describes an allowed state of a system, such as the values of n describing the normal modes of oscillation of a string fixed at both ends, as discussed in Section 18.3.

[2]We first saw an energy-level diagram in Section 21.3.

The key point in Planck's theory is the radical assumption of quantized energy states. This development—a clear deviation from classical physics—marked the birth of the quantum theory.

In the Rayleigh–Jeans model, the average energy associated with a particular wavelength of standing waves in the cavity is the same for all wavelengths and is equal to $k_B T$. Planck used the same classical ideas as in the Rayleigh–Jeans model to arrive at the energy density as a product of constants and the average energy for a given wavelength, but the average energy is not given by the equipartition theorem. A wave's average energy is the average energy difference between levels of the oscillator, *weighted according to the probability of the wave being emitted*. This weighting is based on the occupation of higher-energy states as described by the Boltzmann distribution law, which was discussed in Section 21.5. According to this law, the probability of a state being occupied is proportional to the factor $e^{-E/k_B T}$, where E is the energy of the state.

At low frequencies (long wavelengths), according to property 2(a), the energy levels are close together as on the right in Figure 40.7, and many of the energy states are excited because the Boltzmann factor $e^{-E/k_B T}$ is relatively large for these states. Therefore, there are many contributions to the outgoing radiation, although each contribution has very low energy. Now, consider high-frequency radiation, that is, radiation with short wavelength. To obtain this radiation, the allowed energies are very far apart as on the left in Figure 40.7. The probability of thermal agitation exciting these high energy levels is small because of the small value of the Boltzmann factor for large values of E. At high frequencies, the low probability of excitation results in very little contribution to the total energy, even though each quantum is of large energy. This low probability "turns the curve over" and brings it down to zero again at short wavelengths.

Using this approach, Planck generated a theoretical expression for the wavelength distribution that agreed remarkably well with the experimental curves in Figure 40.3:

$$I(\lambda, T) = \frac{2\pi hc^2}{\lambda^5 (e^{hc/\lambda k_B T} - 1)} \tag{40.6}$$

◀ **Planck's wavelength distribution function**

Pitfall Prevention 40.2

***n* Is Again an Integer** In the preceding chapters on optics, we used the symbol n for the index of refraction, which was not an integer. Here we are again using n as we did in Chapter 18 to indicate the standing-wave mode on a string or in an air column. In quantum physics, n is often used as an integer quantum number to identify a particular quantum state of a system.

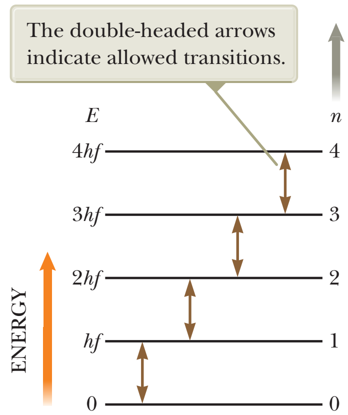


Figure 40.6 Allowed energy levels for an oscillator with frequency f.

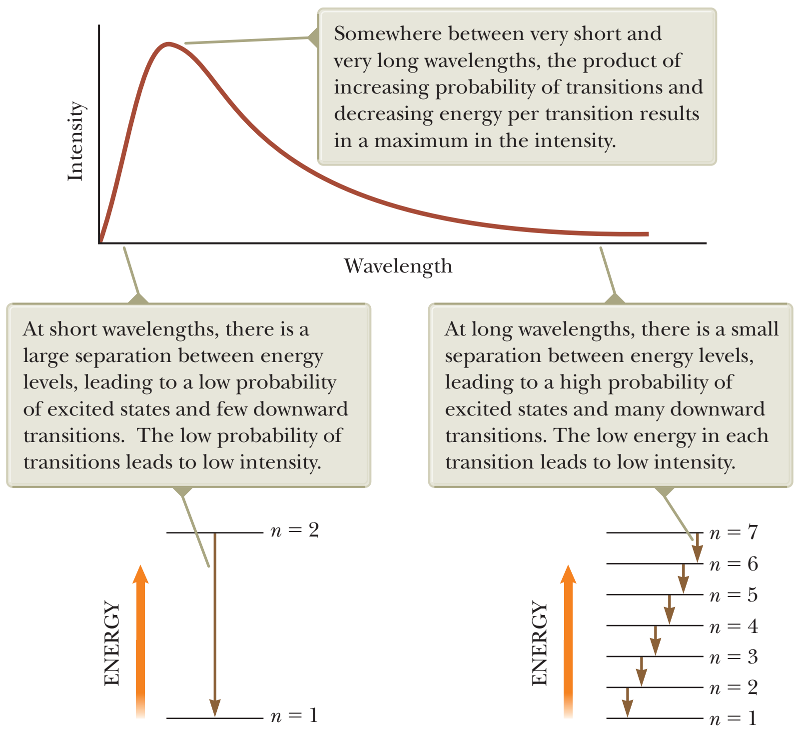


Figure 40.7 In Planck's model, the average energy associated with a given wavelength is the product of the energy of a transition and a factor related to the probability of the transition occurring.

This function includes the parameter h, which Planck adjusted so that his curve matched the experimental data at all wavelengths. The value of this parameter is found to be independent of the material of which the black body is made and independent of the temperature; it is a fundamental constant of nature. The value of h, Planck's constant, which was first introduced in Chapter 35, is

Planck's constant

$$h = 6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J \cdot s} \tag{40.7}$$

At long wavelengths, Equation 40.6 reduces to the Rayleigh–Jeans expression, Equation 40.3 (see Problem 14), and at short wavelengths, it predicts an exponential decrease in $I(\lambda, T)$ with decreasing wavelength, in agreement with experimental results.

When Planck presented his theory, most scientists (including Planck!) did not consider the quantum concept to be realistic. They believed it was a mathematical trick that happened to predict the correct results. Hence, Planck and others continued to search for a more "rational" explanation of blackbody radiation. Subsequent developments, however, showed that a theory based on the quantum concept (rather than on classical concepts) had to be used to explain not only blackbody radiation but also a number of other phenomena at the atomic level.

In 1905, Einstein rederived Planck's results by assuming the oscillations of the electromagnetic field were themselves quantized. In other words, he proposed that quantization is a fundamental property of light and other electromagnetic radiation, which led to the concept of photons as shall be discussed in Section 40.2. Critical to the success of the quantum or photon theory was the relation between energy and frequency, which classical theory completely failed to predict.

Figure 40.8 An ear thermometer measures a patient's temperature by detecting the intensity of infrared radiation leaving the eardrum.

You may have had your body temperature measured at the doctor's office by an *ear thermometer,* which can read your temperature very quickly (Fig. 40.8). In a fraction of a second, this type of thermometer measures the amount of infrared radiation emitted by the eardrum. It then converts the amount of radiation into a temperature reading. This thermometer is very sensitive because temperature is raised to the fourth power in Stefan's law. Suppose you have a fever 1°C above normal. Because absolute temperatures are found by adding 273 to Celsius temperatures, the ratio of your fever temperature to normal body temperature of 37°C is

$$\frac{T_{\text{fever}}}{T_{\text{normal}}} = \frac{38°\text{C} + 273°\text{C}}{37°\text{C} + 273°\text{C}} = 1.003\ 2$$

which is only a 0.32% increase in temperature. The increase in radiated power, however, is proportional to the fourth power of temperature, so

$$\frac{P_{\text{fever}}}{P_{\text{normal}}} = \left(\frac{38°\text{C} + 273°\text{C}}{37°\text{C} + 273°\text{C}}\right)^4 = 1.013$$

The result is a 1.3% increase in radiated power, which is easily measured by modern infrared radiation sensors.

Example 40.1 Thermal Radiation from Different Objects

(A) Find the peak wavelength of the blackbody radiation emitted by the human body when the skin temperature is 35°C.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Thermal radiation is emitted from the surface of any object. The peak wavelength is related to the surface temperature through Wien's displacement law (Eq. 40.2).

Categorize We evaluate results using an equation developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

40.1 continued

Solve Equation 40.2 for $\lambda_{\max}$:

$$(1)\quad \lambda_{\max} = \frac{2.898 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\cdot\text{K}}{T}$$

Substitute the surface temperature:

$$\lambda_{\max} = \frac{2.898 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\cdot\text{K}}{308\ \text{K}} = \boxed{9.41\ \mu\text{m}}$$

This radiation is in the infrared region of the spectrum and is invisible to the human eye. Some animals (pit vipers, for instance) are able to detect radiation of this wavelength and therefore can locate warm-blooded prey even in the dark.

(B) Find the peak wavelength of the blackbody radiation emitted by the tungsten filament of a lightbulb, which operates at 2 000 K.

SOLUTION

Substitute the filament temperature into Equation (1):

$$\lambda_{\max} = \frac{2.898 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\cdot\text{K}}{2\,000\ \text{K}} = \boxed{1.45\ \mu\text{m}}$$

This radiation is also in the infrared, meaning that most of the energy emitted by a lightbulb is not visible to us.

(C) Find the peak wavelength of the blackbody radiation emitted by the Sun, which has a surface temperature of approximately 5 800 K.

SOLUTION

Substitute the surface temperature into Equation (1):

$$\lambda_{\max} = \frac{2.898 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{m}\cdot\text{K}}{5\,800\ \text{K}} = \boxed{0.500\ \mu\text{m}}$$

This radiation is near the center of the visible spectrum, near the color of a yellow-green tennis ball. Because it is the most prevalent color in sunlight, our eyes have evolved to be most sensitive to light of approximately this wavelength.

Example 40.2 The Quantized Oscillator AM

A 2.00-kg block is attached to a massless spring that has a force constant of $k = 25.0$ N/m. The spring is stretched 0.400 m from its equilibrium position and released from rest.

(A) Find the total energy of the system and the frequency of oscillation according to classical calculations.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize We understand the details of the block's motion from our study of simple harmonic motion in Chapter 15. Review that material if you need to.

Categorize The phrase "according to classical calculations" tells us to categorize this part of the problem as a classical analysis of the oscillator. We model the block as a *particle in simple harmonic motion.*

Analyze Based on the way the block is set into motion, its amplitude is 0.400 m.

Evaluate the total energy of the block–spring system using Equation 15.21:

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(25.0\ \text{N/m})(0.400\ \text{m})^2 = \boxed{2.00\ \text{J}}$$

Evaluate the frequency of oscillation from Equation 15.14:

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{25.0\ \text{N/m}}{2.00\ \text{kg}}} = \boxed{0.563\ \text{Hz}}$$

(B) Assuming the energy of the oscillator is quantized, find the quantum number n for the system oscillating with this amplitude.

continued

40.2 continued

SOLUTION

Categorize This part of the problem is categorized as a quantum analysis of the oscillator. We model the block–spring system as a Planck oscillator.

Analyze Solve Equation 40.4 for the quantum number n:

$$n = \frac{E_n}{hf}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$n = \frac{2.00\text{ J}}{(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\text{ J}\cdot\text{s})(0.563\text{ Hz})} = \boxed{5.36 \times 10^{33}}$$

Finalize Notice that 5.36×10^{33} is a very large quantum number, which is typical for macroscopic systems. Changes between quantum states for the oscillator are explored next.

WHAT IF? Suppose the oscillator makes a transition from the $n = 5.36 \times 10^{33}$ state to the state corresponding to $n = 5.36 \times 10^{33} - 1$. By how much does the energy of the oscillator change in this one-quantum change?

Answer From Equation 40.5 and the result to part (A), the energy carried away due to the transition between states differing in n by 1 is

$$E = hf = (6.626 \times 10^{-34}\text{ J}\cdot\text{s})(0.563\text{ Hz}) = 3.73 \times 10^{-34}\text{ J}$$

This energy change due to a one-quantum change is fractionally equal to 3.73×10^{-34} J/2.00 J, or on the order of one part in 10^{34}! It is such a small fraction of the total energy of the oscillator that it cannot be detected. Therefore, even though the energy of a macroscopic block–spring system is quantized and does indeed decrease by small quantum jumps, our senses perceive the decrease as continuous. Quantum effects become important and detectable only on the submicroscopic level of atoms and molecules.

40.2 The Photoelectric Effect

Blackbody radiation was the first phenomenon to be explained with a quantum model. In the latter part of the 19th century, at the same time that data were taken on thermal radiation, experiments showed that light incident on certain metallic surfaces causes electrons to be emitted from those surfaces. This phenomenon, which was first discussed in Section 35.1, is known as the **photoelectric effect,** and the emitted electrons are called **photoelectrons.**[3]

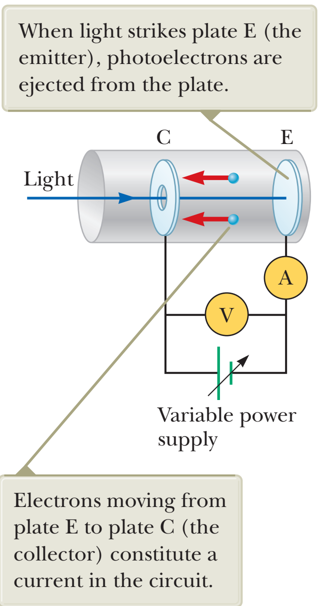


Figure 40.9 A circuit diagram for studying the photoelectric effect.

Figure 40.9 is a diagram of an apparatus for studying the photoelectric effect. An evacuated glass or quartz tube contains a metallic plate E (the emitter) connected to the negative terminal of a battery and another metallic plate C (the collector) that is connected to the positive terminal of the battery. When the tube is kept in the dark, the ammeter reads zero, indicating no current in the circuit. However, when plate E is illuminated by light having an appropriate wavelength, a current is detected by the ammeter, indicating a flow of charges across the gap between plates E and C. This current arises from photoelectrons emitted from plate E and collected at plate C.

Figure 40.10 is a plot of photoelectric current versus potential difference ΔV applied between plates E and C for two light intensities. At large values of ΔV, the current reaches a maximum value; all the electrons emitted from E are collected at C, and the current cannot increase further. In addition, the maximum current increases as the intensity of the incident light increases, as you might expect,

[3]Photoelectrons are not different from other electrons. They are given this name solely because of their ejection from a metal by light in the photoelectric effect.

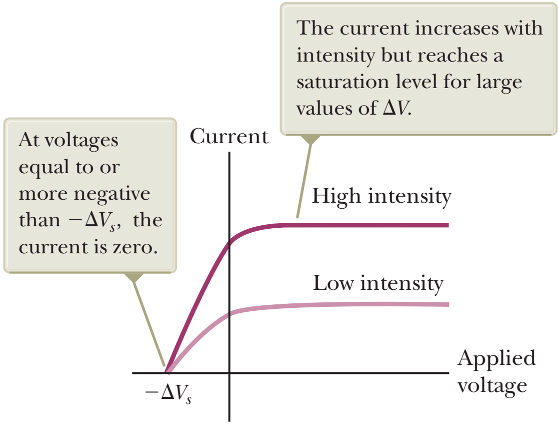


Figure 40.10 Photoelectric current versus applied potential difference for two light intensities.

because more electrons are ejected by the higher-intensity light. Finally, when ΔV is negative—that is, when the battery in the circuit is reversed to make plate E positive and plate C negative—the current drops because many of the photoelectrons emitted from E are repelled by the now negative plate C. In this situation, only those photoelectrons having a kinetic energy greater than $e|\Delta V|$ reach plate C, where e is the magnitude of the charge on the electron. When ΔV is equal to or more negative than $-\Delta V_s$, where ΔV_s is the **stopping potential,** no photoelectrons reach C and the current is zero.

Let's model the combination of the electric field between the plates and an electron ejected from plate E as an isolated system. Suppose this electron stops just as it reaches plate C. Because the system is isolated, the appropriate reduction of Equation 8.2 is

$$\Delta K + \Delta U = 0$$

where the initial configuration is at the instant the electron leaves the metal with kinetic energy K_i and the final configuration is when the electron stops just before touching plate C. If we define the electric potential energy of the system in the initial configuration to be zero, we have

$$(0 - K_i) + [(q)(\Delta V) - 0] = 0 \quad \rightarrow \quad K_i = q\Delta V = -e\Delta V$$

Now suppose the potential difference ΔV is increased in the negative direction just until the current is zero at $\Delta V = -\Delta V_s$. In this case, the electron that stops immediately before reaching plate C has the maximum possible kinetic energy upon leaving the metal surface. The previous equation can then be written as

$$K_{\max} = e\,\Delta V_s \tag{40.8}$$

This equation allows us to measure $K_{\max}$ experimentally by determining the magnitude of the voltage ΔV_s at which the current drops to zero.

Several features of the photoelectric effect are listed below. For each feature, we compare the predictions made by a classical approach, using the wave model for light, with the experimental results.

1. Dependence of photoelectron kinetic energy on light intensity

Classical prediction: Electrons should absorb energy continuously from the electromagnetic waves. As the light intensity incident on a metal is increased, energy should be transferred into the metal at a higher rate and the electrons should be ejected with more kinetic energy.
Experimental result: The maximum kinetic energy of photoelectrons is *independent* of light intensity as shown in Figure 40.10 with both curves falling to zero at the *same* negative voltage. (According to Equation 40.8, the maximum kinetic energy is proportional to the stopping potential.)

2. Time interval between incidence of light and ejection of photoelectrons
   Classical prediction: At low light intensities, a measurable time interval should pass between the instant the light is turned on and the time an electron is ejected from the metal. This time interval is required for the electron to absorb the incident radiation before it acquires enough energy to escape from the metal.
   Experimental result: Electrons are emitted from the surface of the metal almost *instantaneously* (less than 10^{-9} s after the surface is illuminated), even at very low light intensities.

3. Dependence of ejection of electrons on light frequency
   Classical prediction: Electrons should be ejected from the metal at any incident light frequency, as long as the light intensity is high enough, because energy is transferred to the metal regardless of the incident light frequency.
   Experimental result: No electrons are emitted if the incident light frequency falls below some **cutoff frequency** f_c, whose value is characteristic of the material being illuminated. No electrons are ejected below this cutoff frequency *regardless* of the light intensity.

4. Dependence of photoelectron kinetic energy on light frequency
   Classical prediction: There should be *no* relationship between the frequency of the light and the electron kinetic energy. The kinetic energy should be related to the intensity of the light.
   Experimental result: The maximum kinetic energy of the photoelectrons increases with increasing light frequency.

For these features, experimental results contradict *all four* classical predictions. A successful explanation of the photoelectric effect was given by Einstein in 1905, the same year he published his special theory of relativity. As part of a general paper on electromagnetic radiation, for which he received a Nobel Prize in Physics in 1921, Einstein extended Planck's concept of quantization to electromagnetic waves as mentioned in Section 40.1. Einstein assumed light (or any other electromagnetic wave) of frequency f from *any* source can be considered a stream of quanta. Today we call these quanta **photons.** Each photon has an energy E given by Equation 40.5, $E = hf$, and each moves in a vacuum at the speed of light c, where $c = 3.00 \times 10^8$ m/s.

Quick Quiz 40.2 While standing outdoors one evening, you are exposed to the following four types of electromagnetic radiation: yellow light from a sodium street lamp, radio waves from an AM radio station, radio waves from an FM radio station, and microwaves from an antenna of a communications system. Rank these types of waves in terms of photon energy from highest to lowest.

Let us organize Einstein's model for the photoelectric effect using the properties of structural models:

1. *Physical components:*
   We imagine the system to consist of two physical components: (1) an electron that is to be ejected by an incoming photon and (2) the remainder of the metal.
2. *Behavior of the components:*
   (a) In Einstein's model, a photon of the incident light gives *all* its energy hf to a *single* electron in the metal. Therefore, the absorption of energy by the electrons is not a continuous process as envisioned in the wave model, but rather a discontinuous process in which energy is delivered to the electrons in bundles. The energy transfer is accomplished via a one-photon/one-electron event.[4]

[4]In principle, two photons could combine to provide an electron with their combined energy. That is highly improbable, however, without the high intensity of radiation available from very strong lasers.

(b) We can describe the time evolution of the system by applying the nonisolated system model for energy over a time interval that includes the absorption of one photon and the ejection of the corresponding electron. Energy is transferred into the system by electromagnetic radiation, the photon. The system has two types of energy: the potential energy of the metal–electron system and the kinetic energy of the ejected electron. Therefore, we can write the conservation of energy equation (Eq. 8.2) as

$$\Delta K + \Delta U = T_{ER} \tag{40.9}$$

The energy transfer into the system is that of the photon, $T_{ER} = hf$. During the process, the kinetic energy of the electron increases from zero to its final value, which we assume to be the maximum possible value K_{max}. The potential energy of the system increases because the electron is pulled away from the metal to which it is attracted. We define the potential energy of the system when the electron is outside the metal as zero. The potential energy of the system when the electron is in the metal is $U = -\phi$, where ϕ is called the **work function** of the metal. The work function represents the minimum energy with which an electron is bound in the metal and is on the order of a few electron volts. Table 40.1 lists selected values. The increase in potential energy of the system when the electron is removed from the metal is the work function ϕ. Substituting these energies into Equation 40.9, we have

$$(K_{max} - 0) + [0 - (-\phi)] = hf$$

$$K_{max} + \phi = hf \tag{40.10}$$

If the electron makes collisions with other electrons or metal ions as it is being ejected, some of the incoming energy is transferred to the metal and the electron is ejected with less kinetic energy than K_{max}.

Table 40.1 Work Functions of Selected Metals

Metal	ϕ (eV)
Na	2.46
Al	4.08
Fe	4.50
Cu	4.70
Zn	4.31
Ag	4.73
Pt	6.35
Pb	4.14

Note: Values are typical for metals listed. Actual values may vary depending on whether the metal is a single crystal or polycrystalline. Values may also depend on the face from which electrons are ejected from crystalline metals. Furthermore, different experimental procedures may produce differing values.

The prediction made by Einstein is an equation for the maximum kinetic energy of an ejected electron as a function of frequency of the illuminating radiation. This equation can be found by rearranging Equation 40.10:

$$K_{max} = hf - \phi \tag{40.11}$$

◀ **Photoelectric effect equation**

With Einstein's structural model, one can explain the observed features of the photoelectric effect that cannot be understood using classical concepts:

1. Dependence of photoelectron kinetic energy on light intensity

Equation 40.11 shows that K_{max} is independent of the light intensity. The maximum kinetic energy of any one electron, which equals $hf - \phi$, depends only on the light frequency and the work function. If the light intensity is doubled, the number of photons arriving per unit time is doubled, which doubles the rate at which photoelectrons are emitted. The maximum kinetic energy of any one photoelectron, however, is unchanged.

2. Time interval between incidence of light and ejection of photoelectrons

Near-instantaneous emission of electrons is consistent with the photon model of light. The incident energy appears in small packets, and there is a one-to-one interaction between photons and electrons. If the incident light has very low intensity, there are very few photons arriving per unit time interval; each photon, however, can have sufficient energy to eject an electron immediately.

3. Dependence of ejection of electrons on light frequency

Because the photon must have energy greater than the work function ϕ to eject an electron, the photoelectric effect cannot be observed below a

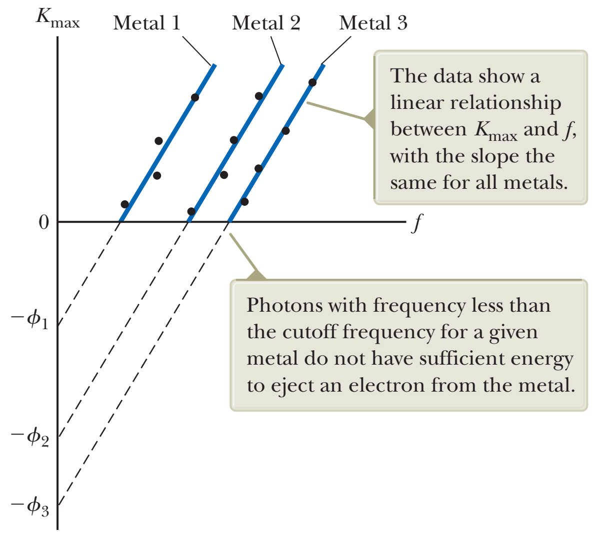


Figure 40.11 A plot of K_{max} for photoelectrons versus frequency of incident light in a typical photoelectric effect experiment.

certain cutoff frequency. If the energy of an incoming photon does not satisfy this requirement, an electron cannot be ejected from the surface, even though many photons per unit time are incident on the metal in a very intense light beam.

4. Dependence of photoelectron kinetic energy on light frequency
A photon of higher frequency carries more energy and therefore ejects a photoelectron with more kinetic energy than does a photon of lower frequency.

Einstein's model predicts a linear relationship (Eq. 40.11) between the maximum electron kinetic energy K_{max} and the light frequency f. Experimental observation of a linear relationship between K_{max} and f would be a final confirmation of Einstein's theory. Indeed, such a linear relationship was observed experimentally within a few years of Einstein's theory and is sketched in Figure 40.11. The slope of the lines in such a plot is Planck's constant h. The intercept on the horizontal axis gives the cutoff frequency below which no photoelectrons are emitted. The cutoff frequency is related to the work function through the relationship $f_c = \phi/h$. The cutoff frequency corresponds to a **cutoff wavelength** λ_c, where

Cutoff wavelength ▶

$$\lambda_c = \frac{c}{f_c} = \frac{c}{\phi/h} = \frac{hc}{\phi} \qquad \textbf{(40.12)}$$

and c is the speed of light. Wavelengths greater than λ_c incident on a material having a work function ϕ do not result in the emission of photoelectrons.

The combination hc in Equation 40.12 often occurs when relating a photon's energy to its wavelength. A common shortcut when solving problems is to express this combination in useful units according to the following approximation:

$$hc = 1\ 240 \text{ eV} \cdot \text{nm}$$

One of the first practical uses of the photoelectric effect was as the detector in a camera's light meter. Light reflected from the object to be photographed strikes a photoelectric surface in the meter, causing it to emit photoelectrons that then pass through a sensitive ammeter. The magnitude of the current in the ammeter depends on the light intensity.

The phototube, another early application of the photoelectric effect, acts much like a switch in an electric circuit. It produces a current in the circuit when light of sufficiently high frequency falls on a metal plate in the phototube, but produces no current in the dark. Phototubes were used in burglar alarms and in the detection of the soundtrack on motion picture film. Modern semiconductor devices have now replaced older devices based on the photoelectric effect.

Today, the photoelectric effect is used in the operation of photomultiplier tubes. Figure 40.12 shows the structure of such a device. A photon striking the photocathode ejects an electron by means of the photoelectric effect. This electron accelerates across the potential difference between the photocathode and the first *dynode,* shown as being at +200 V relative to the photocathode in Figure 40.12. This high-energy electron strikes the dynode and ejects several more electrons. The same process is repeated through a series of dynodes at ever higher potentials until an electrical pulse is produced as millions of electrons strike the last dynode. The tube is therefore called a *multiplier:* one photon at the input has resulted in millions of electrons at the output.

The photomultiplier tube is used in nuclear detectors to detect photons produced by the interaction of energetic charged particles or gamma rays with certain materials. It is also used in astronomy in a technique called *photoelectric photometry.* In that technique, the light collected by a telescope from a single star is allowed to fall on a photomultiplier tube for a time interval. The tube measures the total energy transferred by light during the time interval, which can then be converted to a luminosity of the star.

The photomultiplier tube is being replaced in many astronomical observations with a *charge-coupled device* (CCD), which is the same device used in a digital camera (Section 36.6). Half of the 2009 Nobel Prize in Physics was awarded to Willard S. Boyle (b. 1924) and George E. Smith (b. 1930) for their 1969 invention of the charge-coupled device. In a CCD, an array of pixels is formed on the silicon surface of an integrated circuit (Section 43.7). When the surface is exposed to light from an astronomical scene through a telescope or a terrestrial scene through a digital camera, electrons generated by the photoelectric effect are caught in "traps" beneath the surface. The number of electrons is related to the intensity of the light striking the surface. A signal processor measures the number of electrons associated with each pixel and converts this information into a digital code that a computer can use to reconstruct and display the scene.

The *electron bombardment CCD camera* allows higher sensitivity than a conventional CCD. In this device, electrons ejected from a photocathode by the photoelectric effect are accelerated through a high voltage before striking a CCD array. The higher energy of the electrons results in a very sensitive detector of low-intensity radiation.

An incoming particle enters the scintillation crystal, where a collision results in a photon. The photon strikes the photocathode, which emits an electron by the photoelectric effect.

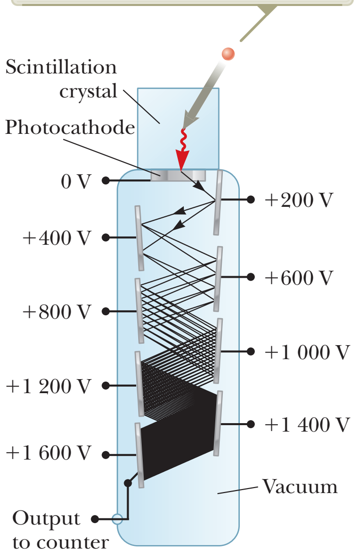


Figure 40.12 The multiplication of electrons in a photomultiplier tube.

Quick Quiz 40.3 Consider one of the curves in Figure 40.10. Suppose the intensity of the incident light is held fixed but its frequency is increased. Does the stopping potential in Figure 40.10 **(a)** remain fixed, **(b)** move to the right, or **(c)** move to the left?

Quick Quiz 40.4 Suppose classical physicists had the idea of plotting K_{max} versus f as in Figure 40.11. Draw a graph of what the expected plot would look like, based on the wave model for light.

Example 40.3 The Photoelectric Effect for Sodium

A sodium surface is illuminated with light having a wavelength of 300 nm. As indicated in Table 40.1, the work function for sodium metal is 2.46 eV.

(A) Find the maximum kinetic energy of the ejected photoelectrons.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a photon striking the metal surface and ejecting an electron. The electron with the maximum energy is one near the surface that experiences no interactions with other particles in the metal that would reduce its energy on its way out of the metal.

continued

40.3 continued

Categorize We evaluate the results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Find the energy of each photon in the illuminating light beam from Equation 40.5:

$$E = hf = \frac{hc}{\lambda}$$

From Equation 40.11, find the maximum kinetic energy of an electron:

$$K_{\max} = \frac{hc}{\lambda} - \phi = \frac{1\,240 \text{ eV}\cdot\text{nm}}{300 \text{ nm}} - 2.46 \text{ eV} = \boxed{1.67 \text{ eV}}$$

(B) Find the cutoff wavelength λ_c for sodium.

SOLUTION

Calculate λ_c using Equation 40.12:

$$\lambda_c = \frac{hc}{\phi} = \frac{1\,240 \text{ eV}\cdot\text{nm}}{2.46 \text{ eV}} = \boxed{504 \text{ nm}}$$

40.3 The Compton Effect

In 1919, Einstein concluded that a photon of energy E travels in a single direction and carries a momentum equal to $E/c = hf/c$. In 1923, Arthur Holly Compton (1892–1962) and Peter Debye (1884–1966) independently carried Einstein's idea of photon momentum further.

Prior to 1922, Compton and his coworkers had accumulated evidence showing that the classical wave theory of light failed to explain the scattering of x-rays from electrons. According to classical theory, electromagnetic waves of frequency f incident on electrons should have two effects: (1) radiation pressure (see Section 34.5) should cause the electrons to accelerate in the direction of propagation of the waves, and (2) the oscillating electric field of the incident radiation should set the electrons into oscillation at the apparent frequency f', where f' is the frequency in the frame of the moving electrons. This apparent frequency is different from the frequency f of the incident radiation because of the Doppler effect (see Section 17.4). Each electron first absorbs radiation as a moving particle and then reradiates as a moving particle, thereby exhibiting two Doppler shifts in the frequency of radiation.

Because different electrons move at different speeds after the interaction, depending on the amount of energy absorbed from the electromagnetic waves, the scattered wave frequency at a given angle to the incoming radiation should show a distribution of Doppler-shifted values. Contrary to this prediction, Compton's experiments showed that at a given angle only *one* frequency of radiation is observed. Compton and his coworkers explained these experiments by treating photons not as waves but rather as point-like particles having energy hf and momentum hf/c and by assuming the energy and momentum of the isolated system of the colliding photon–electron pair are conserved. Compton adopted a particle model for something that was well known as a wave, and today this scattering phenomenon is known as the **Compton effect.** Figure 40.13 shows the quantum picture of the collision between an individual x-ray photon of frequency f_0 and an electron. In the quantum model, the electron is scattered through an angle ϕ with respect to this direction as in a billiard-ball type of collision. (The symbol ϕ used here is an angle and is not to be confused with the work function, which was discussed in the preceding section.) Compare Figure 40.13 with the two-dimensional collision shown in Figure 9.11.

Figure 40.14 is a schematic diagram of the apparatus used by Compton. The x-rays, scattered from a carbon target, were diffracted by a rotating crystal spectrometer, and the intensity was measured with an ionization chamber that generated a current proportional to the intensity. The incident beam consisted of monochromatic x-rays of wavelength $\lambda_0 = 0.071$ nm. The experimental intensity-

Arthur Holly Compton
American Physicist (1892–1962)
Compton was born in Wooster, Ohio, and attended Wooster College and Princeton University. He became the director of the laboratory at the University of Chicago, where experimental work concerned with sustained nuclear chain reactions was conducted. This work was of central importance to the construction of the first nuclear weapon. His discovery of the Compton effect led to his sharing of the 1927 Nobel Prize in Physics with Charles Wilson.

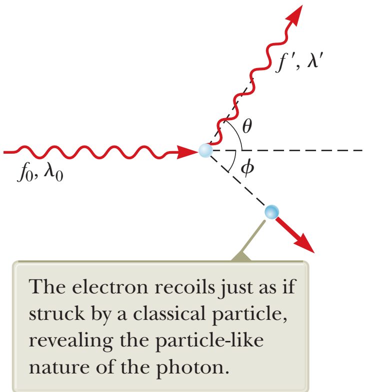


Figure 40.13 The quantum model for x-ray scattering from an electron.

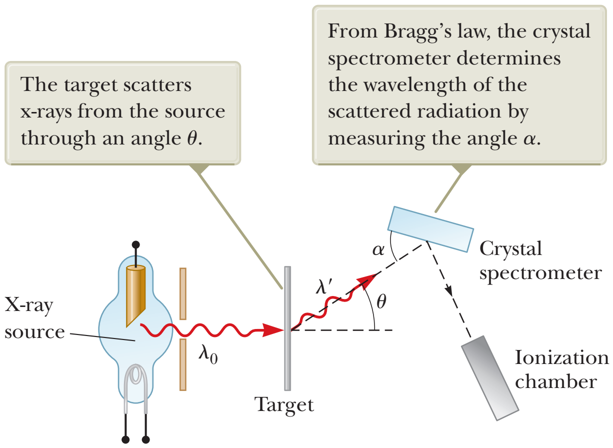


Figure 40.14 Schematic diagram of Compton's apparatus.

versus-wavelength plots observed by Compton for four scattering angles (corresponding to θ in Fig. 40.13) are shown in Figure 40.15. The graphs for the three nonzero angles show two peaks, one at λ_0 and one at $\lambda' > \lambda_0$. The shifted peak at λ' is caused by the scattering of x-rays from free electrons, which was predicted by Compton to depend on scattering angle as

$$\lambda' - \lambda_0 = \frac{h}{m_e c}(1 - \cos\theta) \tag{40.13}$$

◀ **Compton shift equation**

where m_e is the mass of the electron. This expression is known as the **Compton shift equation** and correctly describes the positions of the peaks in Figure 40.15. The factor $h/m_e c$, called the **Compton wavelength** of the electron, has a currently accepted value of

$$\lambda_C = \frac{h}{m_e c} = 0.002\ 43\ \text{nm}$$

◀ **Compton wavelength**

The unshifted peak at λ_0 in Figure 40.15 is caused by x-rays scattered from electrons tightly bound to the target atoms. This unshifted peak also is predicted by Equation 40.13 if the electron mass is replaced with the mass of a carbon atom, which is approximately 23 000 times the mass of the electron. Therefore, there is a wavelength shift for scattering from an electron bound to an atom, but it is so small that it was undetectable in Compton's experiment.

Compton's measurements were in excellent agreement with the predictions of Equation 40.13. These results were the first to convince many physicists of the fundamental validity of quantum theory.

Quick Quiz 40.5 For any given scattering angle θ, Equation 40.13 gives the same value for the Compton shift for any wavelength. Keeping that in mind, for which of the following types of radiation is the fractional shift in wavelength at a given scattering angle the largest? **(a)** radio waves **(b)** microwaves **(c)** visible light **(d)** x-rays

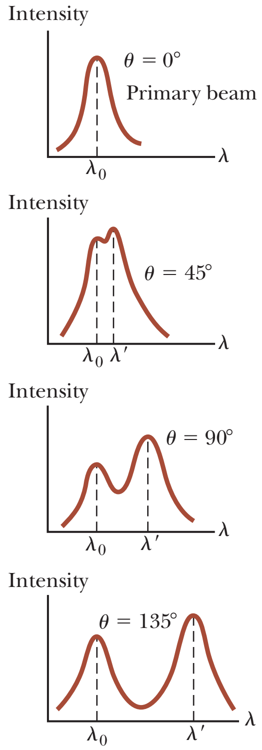


Figure 40.15 Scattered x-ray intensity versus wavelength for Compton scattering at $\theta = 0°$, 45°, 90°, and 135°.

Derivation of the Compton Shift Equation

We can derive the Compton shift equation by assuming the photon behaves like a particle and collides elastically with a free electron initially at rest as shown in Figure 40.13. The photon is treated as a particle having energy $E = hf = hc/\lambda$ and zero rest energy. We apply the isolated system analysis models for energy and momentum to the photon and the electron. In the scattering process, the total energy and total linear momentum of the system are conserved. Applying the isolated system model for energy to this process gives

$$\Delta K_{\text{photon}} + \Delta K_e = 0 \;\rightarrow\; \frac{hc}{\lambda_0} = \frac{hc}{\lambda'} + K_e$$

where hc/λ_0 is the energy of the incident photon, hc/λ' is the energy of the scattered photon, and K_e is the kinetic energy of the recoiling electron. Because the electron may recoil at a speed comparable to that of light, we must use the relativistic expression $K_e = (\gamma - 1)m_ec^2$ (Eq. 39.23). Therefore,

$$\frac{hc}{\lambda_0} = \frac{hc}{\lambda'} + (\gamma - 1)m_ec^2 \qquad \textbf{(40.14)}$$

where $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - (u^2/c^2)}$ and u is the speed of the electron.

Next, let's apply the isolated system model for momentum to this collision, noting that the x and y components of momentum are each conserved independently. Equation 39.28 shows that the momentum of a photon has a magnitude $p = E/c$, and we know from Equation 40.5 that $E = hf$. Therefore, $p = hf/c$. Substituting λf for c (Eq. 34.20) in this expression gives $p = h/\lambda$. Because the relativistic expression for the momentum of the recoiling electron is $p_e = \gamma m_e u$ (Eq. 39.19), we obtain the following expressions for the x and y components of linear momentum, where the angles are as described in Figure 40.13:

$$x \text{ component:} \quad \frac{h}{\lambda_0} = \frac{h}{\lambda'}\cos\theta + \gamma m_e u \cos\phi \qquad \textbf{(40.15)}$$

$$y \text{ component:} \quad 0 = \frac{h}{\lambda'}\sin\theta - \gamma m_e u \sin\phi \qquad \textbf{(40.16)}$$

Eliminating u and ϕ from Equations 40.14 through 40.16 gives a single expression that relates the remaining three variables (λ', λ_0, and θ). After some algebra (see Problem 64), we obtain Equation 40.13.

Example 40.4 Compton Scattering at 45°

X-rays of wavelength $\lambda_0 = 0.200\ 000$ nm are scattered from a block of material. The scattered x-rays are observed at an angle of 45.0° to the incident beam. Calculate their wavelength.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the process in Figure 40.13, with the photon scattered at 45° to its original direction.

Categorize We evaluate the result using an equation developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Solve Equation 40.13 for the wavelength of the scattered x-ray:

$$(1) \quad \lambda' = \lambda_0 + \frac{h(1 - \cos\theta)}{m_ec}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$\lambda' = 0.200\ 000 \times 10^{-9}\text{ m} + \frac{(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\text{ J}\cdot\text{s})(1 - \cos 45.0°)}{(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\text{ kg})(3.00 \times 10^8\text{ m/s})}$$

$$= 0.200\ 000 \times 10^{-9}\text{ m} + 7.10 \times 10^{-13}\text{ m} = \boxed{0.200\ 710\text{ nm}}$$

WHAT IF? What if the detector is moved so that scattered x-rays are detected at an angle larger than 45°? Does the wavelength of the scattered x-rays increase or decrease as the angle θ increases?

Answer In Equation (1), if the angle θ increases, $\cos\theta$ decreases. Consequently, the factor $(1 - \cos\theta)$ increases. Therefore, the scattered wavelength increases.

We could also apply an energy argument to achieve this same result. As the scattering angle increases, more energy is transferred from the incident photon to the electron. As a result, the energy of the scattered photon decreases with increasing scattering angle. Because $E = hf$, the frequency of the scattered photon decreases, and because $\lambda = c/f$, the wavelength increases.

40.4 The Nature of Electromagnetic Waves

In Section 35.1, we introduced the notion of competing models of light: particles and waves. Let's expand on that earlier discussion. Phenomena such as the photoelectric effect and the Compton effect offer ironclad evidence that when light (or other forms of electromagnetic radiation) and matter interact, the light behaves as if it were composed of particles having energy hf and momentum h/λ. How can light be considered a photon (in other words, a particle) when we know it is a wave? On the one hand, we describe light in terms of photons having energy and momentum. On the other hand, light and other electromagnetic waves exhibit interference and diffraction effects, which are consistent only with a wave interpretation.

Which model is correct? Is light a wave or a particle? The answer depends on the phenomenon being observed. Some experiments can be explained either better or solely with the photon model, whereas others are explained either better or solely with the wave model. We must accept both models and admit that the true nature of light is not describable in terms of any single classical picture. The same light beam that can eject photoelectrons from a metal (meaning that the beam consists of photons) can also be diffracted by a grating (meaning that the beam is a wave). In other words, the particle model and the wave model of light complement each other.

The success of the particle model of light in explaining the photoelectric effect and the Compton effect raises many other questions. If light is a particle, what is the meaning of the "frequency" and "wavelength" of the particle, and which of these two properties determines its energy and momentum? Is light *simultaneously* a wave and a particle? Although photons have no rest energy (a nonobservable quantity because a photon cannot be at rest), is there a simple expression for the *effective mass* of a moving photon? If photons have effective mass, do they experience gravitational attraction? What is the spatial extent of a photon, and how does an electron absorb or scatter one photon? Some of these questions can be answered, but others demand a view of atomic processes that is too pictorial and literal. Many of them stem from classical analogies such as colliding billiard balls and ocean waves breaking on a seashore. Quantum mechanics gives light a more flexible nature by treating the particle model and the wave model of light as both necessary and complementary. Neither model can be used exclusively to describe all properties of light. A complete understanding of the observed behavior of light can be attained only if the two models are combined in a complementary manner.

40.5 The Wave Properties of Particles

Students introduced to the dual nature of light often find the concept difficult to accept. In the world around us, we are accustomed to regarding such things as baseballs solely as particles and other things such as sound waves solely as forms of wave motion. Every large-scale observation can be interpreted by considering either a wave explanation or a particle explanation, but in the world of photons and electrons, such distinctions are not as sharply drawn.

Even more disconcerting is that, under certain conditions, the things we unambiguously call "particles" exhibit wave characteristics. In his 1923 doctoral dissertation, Louis de Broglie postulated that because photons have both wave and particle characteristics, perhaps all forms of matter have both properties. This highly revolutionary idea had no experimental confirmation at the time. According to de Broglie, electrons, just like light, have a dual particle–wave nature.

In Section 40.3, we found that the momentum of a photon can be expressed as

$$p = \frac{h}{\lambda}$$

SPL/Getty Images

Louis de Broglie
French Physicist (1892–1987)
De Broglie was born in Dieppe, France. At the Sorbonne in Paris, he studied history in preparation for what he hoped would be a career in the diplomatic service. The world of science is lucky he changed his career path to become a theoretical physicist. De Broglie was awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1929 for his prediction of the wave nature of electrons.

This equation shows that the photon wavelength can be specified by its momentum: $\lambda = h/p$. De Broglie suggested that material particles of momentum p have a characteristic wavelength that is given by the *same expression*. Because the magnitude of the momentum of a particle of mass m and speed u is $p = mu$, the **de Broglie wavelength** of that particle is[5]

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{p} = \frac{h}{mu} \tag{40.17}$$

Furthermore, in analogy with photons, de Broglie postulated that particles obey the Einstein relation $E = hf$, where E is the total energy of the particle. The frequency of a particle is then

$$f = \frac{E}{h} \tag{40.18}$$

The dual nature of matter is apparent in Equations 40.17 and 40.18 because each contains both particle quantities (p and E) and wave quantities (λ and f).

The problem of understanding the dual nature of matter and radiation is conceptually difficult because the two models seem to contradict each other. This problem as it applies to light was discussed earlier. The **principle of complementarity** states that

> the wave and particle models of either matter or radiation complement each other.

Neither model can be used exclusively to describe matter or radiation adequately. Because humans tend to generate mental images based on their experiences from the everyday world, we use both descriptions in a complementary manner to explain any given set of data from the quantum world.

The Davisson–Germer Experiment

De Broglie's 1923 proposal that matter exhibits both wave and particle properties was regarded as pure speculation. If particles such as electrons had wave properties, under the correct conditions they should exhibit diffraction effects. Only three years later, C. J. Davisson (1881–1958) and L. H. Germer (1896–1971) succeeded in observing electron diffraction and measuring the wavelength of electrons. Their important discovery provided the first experimental confirmation of the waves proposed by de Broglie.

Interestingly, the intent of the initial Davisson–Germer experiment was not to confirm the de Broglie hypothesis. In fact, their discovery was made by accident (as is often the case). The experiment involved the scattering of low-energy electrons (approximately 54 eV) from a nickel target in a vacuum. During one experiment, the nickel surface was badly oxidized because of an accidental break in the vacuum system. After the target was heated in a flowing stream of hydrogen to remove the oxide coating, electrons scattered by it exhibited intensity maxima and minima at specific angles. The experimenters finally realized that the nickel had formed large crystalline regions upon heating and that the regularly spaced planes of atoms in these regions served as a diffraction grating for electrons. (See the discussion of diffraction of x-rays by crystals in Section 38.5.)

Shortly thereafter, Davisson and Germer performed more extensive diffraction measurements on electrons scattered from single-crystal targets. Their results showed conclusively the wave nature of electrons and confirmed the de Broglie relationship $p = h/\lambda$. In the same year, G. P. Thomson (1892–1975) of Scotland also observed electron diffraction patterns by passing electrons through very thin gold

Pitfall Prevention 40.3

What's Waving? If particles have wave properties, what's waving? You are familiar with waves on strings, which are very concrete. Sound waves are more abstract, but you are likely comfortable with them. Electromagnetic waves are even more abstract, but at least they can be described in terms of physical variables and electric and magnetic fields. In contrast, waves associated with particles are completely abstract and cannot be associated with a physical variable. In Chapter 41, we describe the wave associated with a particle in terms of probability.

[5]The de Broglie wavelength for a particle moving at *any* speed u is $\lambda = h/\gamma mu$, where $\gamma = [1 - (u^2/c^2)]^{-1/2}$.

foils. Diffraction patterns were subsequently observed in the scattering of helium atoms, hydrogen atoms, and neutrons. Hence, the wave nature of particles has been established in various ways.

Quick Quiz 40.6 An electron and a proton both moving at nonrelativistic speeds have the same de Broglie wavelength. Which of the following quantities are also the same for the two particles? **(a)** speed **(b)** kinetic energy **(c)** momentum **(d)** frequency

Example 40.5 Wavelengths for Microscopic and Macroscopic Objects

(A) Calculate the de Broglie wavelength for an electron ($m_e = 9.11 \times 10^{-31}$ kg) moving at 1.00×10^7 m/s.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the electron moving through space. From a classical viewpoint, it is a particle under constant velocity. From the quantum viewpoint, the electron has a wavelength associated with it.

Categorize We evaluate the result using an equation developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate the de Broglie wavelength using Equation 40.17:

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{m_e u} = \frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}}{(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(1.00 \times 10^7\ \text{m/s})} = \boxed{7.27 \times 10^{-11}\ \text{m}}$$

The wave nature of this electron could be detected by diffraction techniques such as those in the Davisson–Germer experiment.

(B) A rock of mass 50 g is thrown with a speed of 40 m/s. What is its de Broglie wavelength?

SOLUTION

Evaluate the de Broglie wavelength using Equation 40.17:

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{mu} = \frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}}{(50 \times 10^{-3}\ \text{kg})(40\ \text{m/s})} = \boxed{3.3 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{m}}$$

This wavelength is much smaller than any aperture through which the rock could possibly pass. Hence, we could not observe diffraction effects, and as a result, the wave properties of large-scale objects cannot be observed.

The Electron Microscope

A practical device that relies on the wave characteristics of electrons is the **electron microscope.** A *transmission* electron microscope, used for viewing flat, thin samples, is shown in Figure 40.16 on page 1252. In many respects, it is similar to an optical microscope; the electron microscope, however, has a much greater resolving power because it can accelerate electrons to very high kinetic energies, giving them very short wavelengths. No microscope can resolve details that are significantly smaller than the wavelength of the waves used to illuminate the object. The shorter wavelengths of electrons gives an electron microscope a resolution that can be 1 000 times better than that from the visible light used in optical microscopes. As a result, an electron microscope with ideal lenses would be able to distinguish details approximately 1 000 times smaller than those distinguished by an optical microscope. (Electromagnetic radiation of the same wavelength as the electrons in an electron microscope is in the x-ray region of the spectrum.)

The electron beam in an electron microscope is controlled by electrostatic or magnetic deflection, which acts on the electrons to focus the beam and form an image. Rather than examining the image through an eyepiece as in an optical microscope, the viewer looks at an image formed on a monitor or other type of

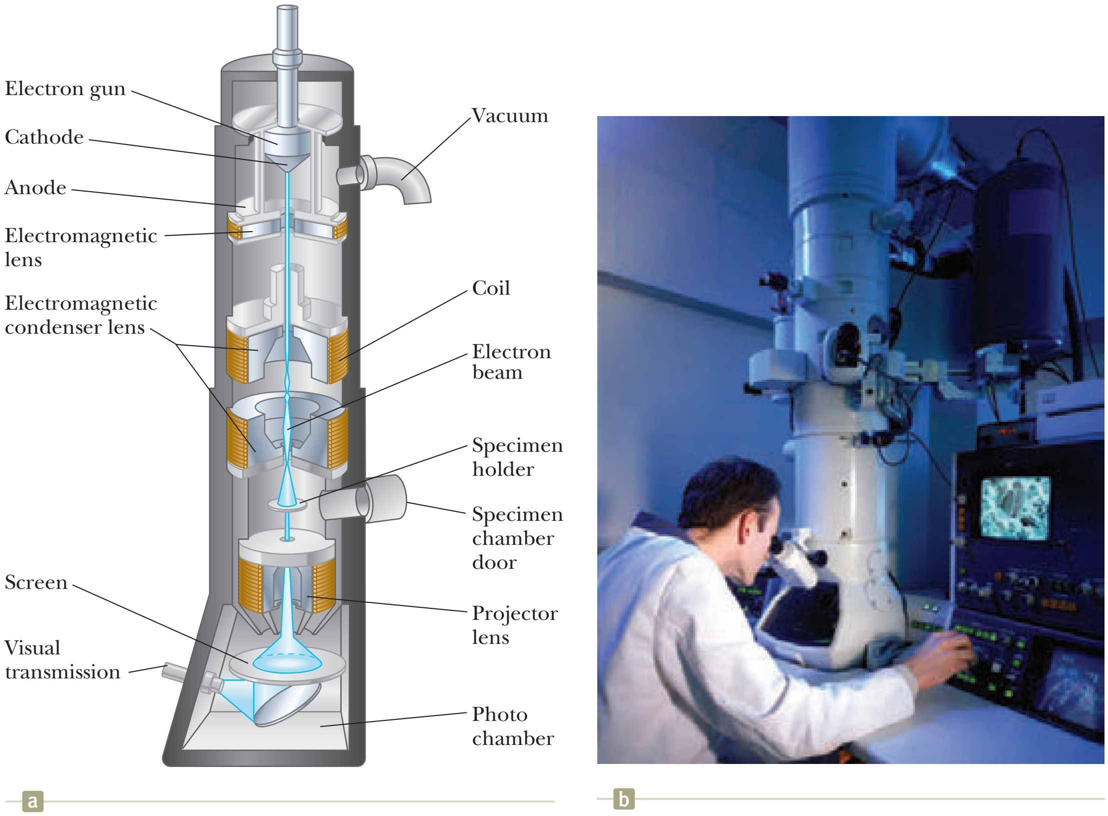


Figure 40.16 (a) Diagram of a transmission electron microscope for viewing a thinly sectioned sample. The "lenses" that control the electron beam are magnetic deflection coils. (b) An electron microscope in use.

Figure 40.17 A scanning electron microscope photograph shows significant detail of a cheese mite, *Tyrolichus casei*. The mite is so small, with a maximum length of 0.70 mm, that ordinary microscopes do not reveal minute anatomical details.

display screen. Figure 40.17 shows the amazing detail available with an electron microscope.

40.6 A New Model: The Quantum Particle

Because in the past we considered the particle and wave models to be distinct, the discussions presented in previous sections may be quite disturbing. The notion that both light and material particles have both particle and wave properties does not fit with this distinction. Experimental evidence shows, however, that this conclusion is exactly what we must accept. The recognition of this dual nature leads to a new model, the **quantum particle,** which is a combination of the particle model introduced in Chapter 2 and the wave model discussed in Chapter 16. In this new model, entities have both particle and wave characteristics, and we must choose one appropriate behavior—particle or wave—to understand a particular phenomenon.

In this section, we shall explore this model in a way that might make you more comfortable with this idea. We shall do so by demonstrating that an entity that exhibits properties of a particle can be constructed from waves.

Let's first recall some characteristics of ideal particles and ideal waves. An ideal particle has zero size. Therefore, an essential feature of a particle is that it is *localized* in space. An ideal wave has a single frequency and is infinitely long as suggested by Figure 40.18a. Therefore, an ideal wave is *unlocalized* in space. A localized entity can be built from infinitely long waves as follows. Imagine drawing one wave along the x axis, with one of its crests located at $x = 0$, as at the top of Figure 40.18b. Now draw a second wave, of the same amplitude but a different frequency, with one of its crests also at $x = 0$. As a result of the superposition of these two waves, *beats* exist as the waves are alternately in phase and out of phase. (Beats were discussed in Section 18.7.) The bottom curve in Figure 40.18b shows the results of superposing these two waves.

Notice that we have already introduced some localization by superposing the two waves. A single wave has the same amplitude everywhere in space; no point in space is any different from any other point. By adding a second wave, however, there is something different about the in-phase points compared with the out-of-phase points.

Now imagine that more and more waves are added to our original two, each new wave having a new frequency. Each new wave is added so that one of its crests is at $x = 0$ with the result that all the waves add constructively at $x = 0$. When we add a large number of waves, the probability of a positive value of a wave function at any point $x \neq 0$ is equal to the probability of a negative value, and there is destructive interference *everywhere* except near $x = 0$, where all the crests are superposed. The result is shown in Figure 40.19. The small region of constructive interference is called a **wave packet.** This localized region of space is different from all other regions. We can identify the wave packet as a particle because it has the localized nature of a particle! The location of the wave packet corresponds to the particle's position.

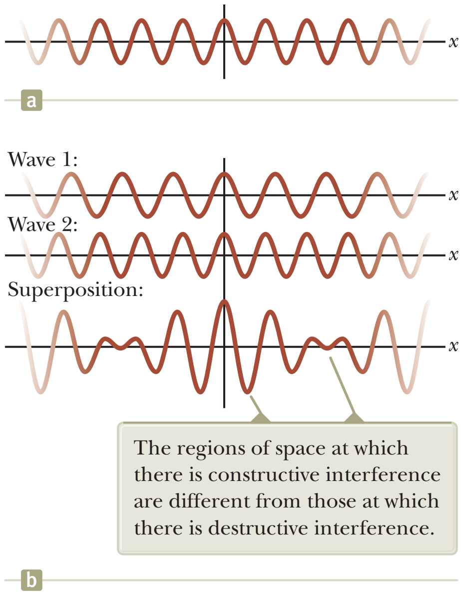


Figure 40.18 (a) An idealized wave of an exact single frequency is the same throughout space and time. (b) If two ideal waves with slightly different frequencies are combined, beats result (Section 18.7).

The localized nature of this entity is the *only* characteristic of a particle that was generated with this process. We have not addressed how the wave packet might achieve such particle characteristics as mass, electric charge, and spin. Therefore, you may not be completely convinced that we have built a particle. As further evidence that the wave packet can represent the particle, let's show that the wave packet has another characteristic of a particle.

To simplify the mathematical representation, we return to our combination of two waves. Consider two waves with equal amplitudes but different angular frequencies ω_1 and ω_2. We can represent the waves mathematically as

$$y_1 = A\cos(k_1x - \omega_1t) \quad \text{and} \quad y_2 = A\cos(k_2x - \omega_2t)$$

where, as in Chapter 16, $k = 2\pi/\lambda$ and $\omega = 2\pi f$. Using the superposition principle, let's add the waves:

$$y = y_1 + y_2 = A\cos(k_1x - \omega_1t) + A\cos(k_2x - \omega_2t)$$

It is convenient to write this expression in a form that uses the trigonometric identity

$$\cos a + \cos b = 2\cos\left(\frac{a-b}{2}\right)\cos\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)$$

Letting $a = k_1x - \omega_1t$ and $b = k_2x - \omega_2t$ gives

$$y = 2A\cos\left[\frac{(k_1x - \omega_1t) - (k_2x - \omega_2t)}{2}\right]\cos\left[\frac{(k_1x - \omega_1t) + (k_2x - \omega_2t)}{2}\right]$$

$$y = \left[2A\cos\left(\frac{\Delta k}{2}x - \frac{\Delta\omega}{2}t\right)\right]\cos\left(\frac{k_1 + k_2}{2}x - \frac{\omega_1 + \omega_2}{2}t\right) \qquad \textbf{(40.19)}$$

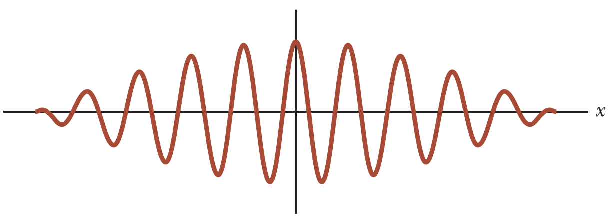


Figure 40.19 If a large number of waves are combined, the result is a wave packet, which represents a particle.

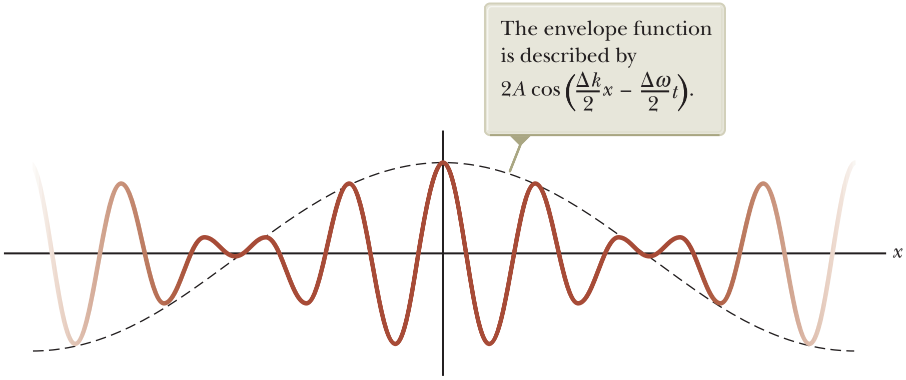


Figure 40.20 The beat pattern of Figure 40.18b, with an envelope function (dashed curve) superimposed.

where $\Delta k = k_1 - k_2$ and $\Delta\omega = \omega_1 - \omega_2$. The second cosine factor represents a wave with a wave number and frequency that are equal to the averages of the values for the individual waves.

In Equation 40.19, the factor in square brackets represents the envelope of the wave as shown by the dashed curve in Figure 40.20. This factor also has the mathematical form of a wave. This envelope of the combination can travel through space with a different speed than the individual waves. As an extreme example of this possibility, imagine combining two identical waves moving in opposite directions. The two waves move with the same speed, but the envelope has a speed of *zero* because we have built a standing wave, which we studied in Section 18.2.

For an individual wave, the speed is given by Equation 16.11,

Phase speed of a wave in a wave packet

$$v_{\text{phase}} = \frac{\omega}{k} \tag{40.20}$$

This speed is called the **phase speed** because it is the rate of advance of a crest on a single wave, which is a point of fixed phase. Equation 40.20 can be interpreted as follows: the phase speed of a wave is the ratio of the coefficient of the time variable t to the coefficient of the space variable x in the equation representing the wave, $y = A\cos(kx - \omega t)$.

The factor in brackets in Equation 40.19 is of the form of a wave, so it moves with a speed given by this same ratio:

$$v_g = \frac{\text{coefficient of time variable } t}{\text{coefficient of space variable } x} = \frac{(\Delta\omega/2)}{(\Delta k/2)} = \frac{\Delta\omega}{\Delta k}$$

The subscript g on the speed indicates that it is commonly called the **group speed,** or the speed of the wave packet (the *group* of waves) we have built. We have generated this expression for a simple addition of two waves. When a large number of waves are superposed to form a wave packet, this ratio becomes a derivative:

Group speed of a wave packet

$$v_g = \frac{d\omega}{dk} \tag{40.21}$$

Multiplying the numerator and the denominator by $\hbar$, where $\hbar = h/2\pi$, gives

$$v_g = \frac{\hbar\, d\omega}{\hbar\, dk} = \frac{d(\hbar\omega)}{d(\hbar k)} \tag{40.22}$$

Let's look at the terms in the parentheses of Equation 40.22 separately. For the numerator,

$$\hbar\omega = \frac{h}{2\pi}(2\pi f) = hf = E$$

For the denominator,

$$\hbar k = \frac{h}{2\pi}\left(\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}\right) = \frac{h}{\lambda} = p$$

Therefore, Equation 40.22 can be written as

$$v_g = \frac{d(\hbar\omega)}{d(\hbar k)} = \frac{dE}{dp} \tag{40.23}$$

Because we are exploring the possibility that the envelope of the combined waves represents the particle, consider a free particle moving with a speed u that is small compared with the speed of light. The energy of the particle is its kinetic energy:

$$E = \tfrac{1}{2}mu^2 = \frac{p^2}{2m}$$

Differentiating this equation with respect to p gives

$$v_g = \frac{dE}{dp} = \frac{d}{dp}\left(\frac{p^2}{2m}\right) = \frac{1}{2m}(2p) = u \tag{40.24}$$

Therefore, the group speed of the wave packet is identical to the speed of the particle that it is modeled to represent, giving us further confidence that the wave packet is a reasonable way to build a particle.

Quick Quiz 40.7 As an analogy to wave packets, consider an "automobile packet" that occurs near the scene of an accident on a freeway. The phase speed is analogous to the speed of individual automobiles as they move through the backup caused by the accident. The group speed can be identified as the speed of the leading edge of the packet of cars. For the automobile packet, is the group speed **(a)** the same as the phase speed, **(b)** less than the phase speed, or **(c)** greater than the phase speed?

40.7 The Double-Slit Experiment Revisited

Wave–particle duality is now a firmly accepted concept reinforced by experimental results, including those of the Davisson–Germer experiment. As with the postulates of special relativity, however, this concept often leads to clashes with familiar thought patterns we hold from everyday experience.

One way to crystallize our ideas about the electron's wave–particle duality is through an experiment in which electrons are fired at a double slit. Consider a parallel beam of mono-energetic electrons incident on a double slit as in Figure 40.21. Let's assume the slit widths are small compared with the electron wavelength so that we need not worry about diffraction maxima and minima as discussed for light in Section 38.2. An electron detector screen is positioned far from the slits at a distance much greater than d, the separation distance of the slits. If the detector screen collects electrons for a long enough time, we find a typical wave interference pattern for the counts per minute, or probability of arrival of electrons. Such an interference

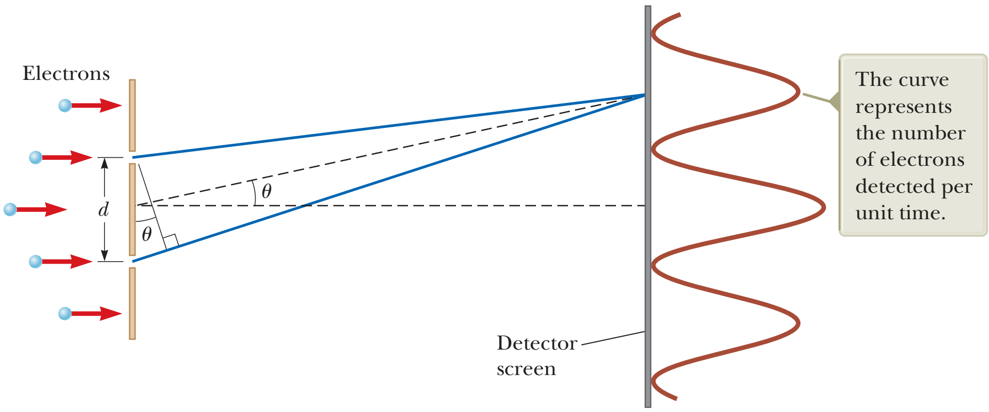


Figure 40.21 Electron interference. The slit separation d is much greater than the individual slit widths and much less than the distance between the slit and the detector screen.

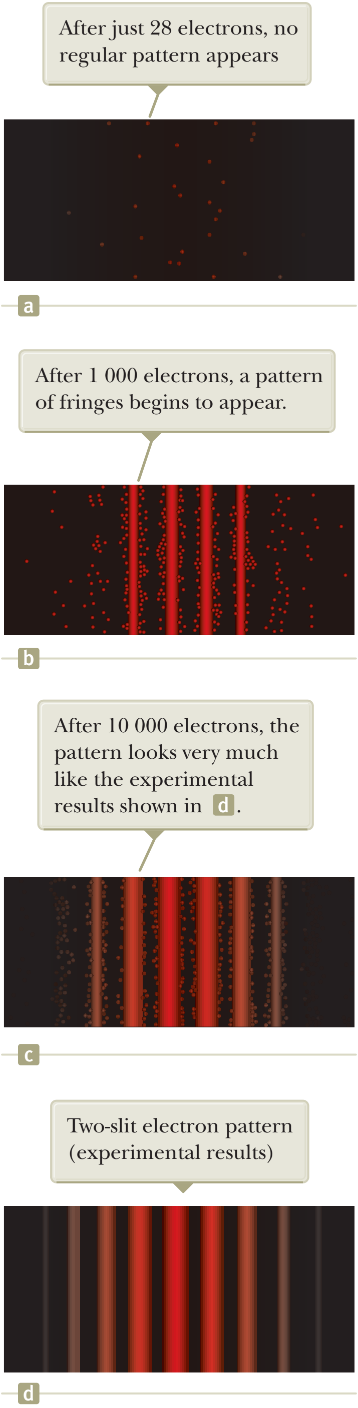


Figure 40.22 (a)–(c) Computer-simulated interference patterns for a small number of electrons incident on a double slit. (d) Computer simulation of a double-slit interference pattern produced by many electrons.

pattern would not be expected if the electrons behaved as classical particles, giving clear evidence that electrons are interfering, a distinct wave-like behavior.

If we measure the angles θ at which the maximum intensity of electrons arrives at the detector screen in Figure 40.21, we find they are described by exactly the same equation as that for light, $d \sin \theta = m\lambda$ (Eq. 37.2), where m is the order number and λ is the electron wavelength. Therefore, the dual nature of the electron is clearly shown in this experiment: the electrons are detected as particles at a localized spot on the detector screen at some instant of time, but the probability of arrival at that spot is determined by finding the intensity of two interfering waves.

Now imagine that we lower the beam intensity so that one electron at a time arrives at the double slit. It is tempting to assume the electron goes through either slit 1 or slit 2. You might argue that there are no interference effects because there is not a second electron going through the other slit to interfere with the first. This assumption places too much emphasis on the particle model of the electron, however. The interference pattern is still observed if the time interval for the measurement is sufficiently long for many electrons to pass one at a time through the slits and arrive at the detector screen! This situation is illustrated by the computer-simulated patterns in Figure 40.22 where the interference pattern becomes clearer as the number of electrons reaching the detector screen increases. Hence, our assumption that the electron is localized and goes through only one slit when both slits are open must be wrong (a painful conclusion!).

To interpret these results, we are forced to conclude that an electron interacts with both slits *simultaneously*. If you try to determine experimentally which slit the electron goes through, the act of measuring destroys the interference pattern. It is impossible to determine which slit the electron goes through. In effect, we can say only that the electron passes through *both* slits! The same arguments apply to photons.

If we restrict ourselves to a pure particle model, it is an uncomfortable notion that the electron can be present at both slits at once. From the quantum particle model, however, the particle can be considered to be built from waves that exist throughout space. Therefore, the wave components of the electron are present at both slits at the same time, and this model leads to a more comfortable interpretation of this experiment.

40.8 The Uncertainty Principle

Whenever one measures the position or velocity of a particle at any instant, experimental uncertainties are built into the measurements. According to classical mechanics, there is no fundamental barrier to an ultimate refinement of the apparatus or experimental procedures. In other words, it is possible, in principle, to make such measurements with arbitrarily small uncertainty. Quantum theory predicts, however, that it is fundamentally impossible to make simultaneous measurements of a particle's position and momentum with infinite accuracy.

In 1927, Werner Heisenberg (1901–1976) introduced this notion, which is now known as the **Heisenberg uncertainty principle:**

If a measurement of the position of a particle is made with uncertainty Δx and a simultaneous measurement of its x component of momentum is made with uncertainty Δp_x, the product of the two uncertainties can never be smaller than $\hbar/2$:

$$\Delta x \, \Delta p_x \geq \frac{\hbar}{2} \tag{40.25}$$

That is, it is physically impossible to measure simultaneously the exact position and exact momentum of a particle. Heisenberg was careful to point out that the inescapable uncertainties Δx and Δp_x do not arise from imperfections in practical measuring instruments. Rather, the uncertainties arise from the quantum structure of matter.

To understand the uncertainty principle, imagine that a particle has a single wavelength that is known *exactly*. According to the de Broglie relation, $\lambda = h/p$, we would therefore know the momentum to be precisely $p = h/\lambda$. In reality, a single-wavelength wave would exist throughout space. Any region along this wave is the same as any other region (Fig. 40.18a). Suppose we ask, Where is the particle this wave represents? No special location in space along the wave could be identified with the particle; all points along the wave are the same. Therefore, we have *infinite* uncertainty in the position of the particle, and we know nothing about its location. Perfect knowledge of the particle's momentum has cost us all information about its location.

In comparison, now consider a particle whose momentum is uncertain so that it has a range of possible values of momentum. According to the de Broglie relation, the result is a range of wavelengths. Therefore, the particle is not represented by a single wavelength, but rather by a combination of wavelengths within this range. This combination forms a wave packet as we discussed in Section 40.6 and illustrated in Figure 40.19. If you were asked to determine the location of the particle, you could only say that it is somewhere in the region defined by the wave packet because there is a distinct difference between this region and the rest of space. Therefore, by losing some information about the momentum of the particle, we have gained information about its position.

If you were to lose *all* information about the momentum, you would be adding together waves of all possible wavelengths, resulting in a wave packet of zero length. Therefore, if you know nothing about the momentum, you know exactly where the particle is.

The mathematical form of the uncertainty principle states that the product of the uncertainties in position and momentum is always larger than some minimum value. This value can be calculated from the types of arguments discussed above, and the result is the value of $\hbar/2$ in Equation 40.25.

Another form of the uncertainty principle can be generated by reconsidering Figure 40.19. Imagine that the horizontal axis is time rather than spatial position x. We can then make the same arguments that were made about knowledge of wavelength and position in the time domain. The corresponding variables would be frequency and time. Because frequency is related to the energy of the particle by $E = hf$, the uncertainty principle in this form is

$$\Delta E\,\Delta t \geq \frac{\hbar}{2} \qquad \textbf{(40.26)}$$

The form of the uncertainty principle given in Equation 40.26 suggests that energy conservation can appear to be violated by an amount ΔE as long as it is only for a short time interval Δt consistent with that equation. We shall use this notion to estimate the rest energies of particles in Chapter 46.

Quick Quiz 40.8 A particle's location is measured and specified as being exactly at $x = 0$, with *zero* uncertainty in the x direction. How does that location affect the uncertainty of its velocity component in the y direction? **(a)** It does not affect it. **(b)** It makes it infinite. **(c)** It makes it zero.

Werner Heisenberg
German Theoretical Physicist (1901–1976)
Heisenberg obtained his Ph.D. in 1923 at the University of Munich. While other physicists tried to develop physical models of quantum phenomena, Heisenberg developed an abstract mathematical model called *matrix mechanics*. The more widely accepted physical models were shown to be equivalent to matrix mechanics. Heisenberg made many other significant contributions to physics, including his famous uncertainty principle for which he received a Nobel Prize in Physics in 1932, the prediction of two forms of molecular hydrogen, and theoretical models of the nucleus.

Pitfall Prevention 40.4
The Uncertainty Principle Some students incorrectly interpret the uncertainty principle as meaning that a measurement interferes with the system. For example, if an electron is observed in a hypothetical experiment using an optical microscope, the photon used to see the electron collides with it and makes it move, giving it an uncertainty in momentum. This scenario does *not* represent the basis of the uncertainty principle. The uncertainty principle is independent of the measurement process and is based on the wave nature of matter.

Example 40.6 Locating an Electron

The speed of an electron is measured to be 5.00×10^3 m/s to an accuracy of 0.003 00%. Find the minimum uncertainty in determining the position of this electron.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The fractional value given for the accuracy of the electron's speed can be interpreted as the fractional uncertainty in its momentum. This uncertainty corresponds to a minimum uncertainty in the electron's position through the uncertainty principle.

continued

40.6 continued

Categorize We evaluate the result using concepts developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Assume the electron is moving along the x axis and find the uncertainty in p_x, letting f represent the accuracy of the measurement of its speed:

$$\Delta p_x = m\,\Delta v_x = mfv_x$$

Solve Equation 40.25 for the uncertainty in the electron's position and substitute numerical values:

$$\Delta x \geq \frac{\hbar}{2\,\Delta p_x} = \frac{\hbar}{2mfv_x} = \frac{1.055 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}}{2(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(0.000\,030\,0)(5.00 \times 10^{3}\ \text{m/s})}$$

$$= 3.86 \times 10^{-4}\ \text{m} = \boxed{0.386\ \text{mm}}$$

Example 40.7 The Line Width of Atomic Emissions

Atoms have quantized energy levels similar to those of Planck's oscillators, although the energy levels of an atom are usually not evenly spaced. When an atom makes a transition between states separated in energy by ΔE, energy is emitted in the form of a photon of frequency $f = \Delta E/h$. Although an excited atom can radiate at any time from $t = 0$ to $t = \infty$, the average time interval after excitation during which an atom radiates is called the **lifetime** τ. If $\tau = 1.0 \times 10^{-8}$ s, use the uncertainty principle to compute the line width Δf produced by this finite lifetime.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The lifetime τ given for the excited state can be interpreted as the uncertainty Δt in the time at which the transition occurs. This uncertainty corresponds to a minimum uncertainty in the frequency of the radiated photon through the uncertainty principle.

Categorize We evaluate the result using concepts developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 40.5 to relate the uncertainty in the photon's frequency to the uncertainty in its energy:

$$E = hf \;\rightarrow\; \Delta E = h\,\Delta f \;\rightarrow\; \Delta f = \frac{\Delta E}{h}$$

Use Equation 40.26 to substitute for the uncertainty in the photon's energy, giving the minimum value of Δf:

$$\Delta f \geq \frac{1}{h}\,\frac{\hbar}{2\,\Delta t} = \frac{1}{h}\,\frac{h/2\pi}{2\,\Delta t} = \frac{1}{4\pi\,\Delta t} = \frac{1}{4\pi\tau}$$

Substitute for the lifetime of the excited state:

$$\Delta f \geq \frac{1}{4\pi(1.0 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{s})} = \boxed{8.0 \times 10^{6}\ \text{Hz}}$$

WHAT IF? What if this same lifetime were associated with a transition that emits a radio wave rather than a visible light wave from an atom? Is the fractional line width $\Delta f/f$ larger or smaller than for the visible light?

Answer Because we are assuming the same lifetime for both transitions, Δf is independent of the frequency of radiation. Radio waves have lower frequencies than light waves, so the ratio $\Delta f/f$ will be larger for the radio waves. Assuming a light-wave frequency f of 6.00×10^{14} Hz, the fractional line width is

$$\frac{\Delta f}{f} = \frac{8.0 \times 10^{6}\ \text{Hz}}{6.00 \times 10^{14}\ \text{Hz}} = 1.3 \times 10^{-8}$$

This narrow fractional line width can be measured with a sensitive interferometer. Usually, however, temperature and pressure effects overshadow the natural line width and broaden the line through mechanisms associated with the Doppler effect and collisions.

Assuming a radio-wave frequency f of 94.7×10^{6} Hz, the fractional line width is

$$\frac{\Delta f}{f} = \frac{8.0 \times 10^{6}\ \text{Hz}}{94.7 \times 10^{6}\ \text{Hz}} = 8.4 \times 10^{-2}$$

Therefore, for the radio wave, this same absolute line width corresponds to a fractional line width of more than 8%.

Summary

Concepts and Principles

The characteristics of **blackbody radiation** cannot be explained using classical concepts. Planck introduced the quantum concept and Planck's constant h when he assumed atomic oscillators existing only in discrete energy states were responsible for this radiation. In Planck's model, radiation is emitted in single quantized packets whenever an oscillator makes a transition between discrete energy states. The energy of a packet is

$$E = hf \tag{40.5}$$

where f is the frequency of the oscillator. Einstein successfully extended Planck's quantum hypothesis to the standing waves of electromagnetic radiation in a cavity used in the blackbody radiation model.

The **photoelectric effect** is a process whereby electrons are ejected from a metal surface when light is incident on that surface. In Einstein's model, light is viewed as a stream of particles, or **photons,** each having energy $E = hf$, where h is Planck's constant and f is the frequency. The maximum kinetic energy of the ejected photoelectron is

$$K_{\text{max}} = hf - \phi \tag{40.11}$$

where ϕ is the **work function** of the metal.

X-rays are scattered at various angles by electrons in a target. In such a scattering event, a shift in wavelength is observed for the scattered x-rays, a phenomenon known as the **Compton effect.** Classical physics does not predict the correct behavior in this effect. If the x-ray is treated as a photon, conservation of energy and linear momentum applied to the photon–electron collisions yields, for the Compton shift,

$$\lambda' - \lambda_0 = \frac{h}{m_e c}(1 - \cos\theta) \tag{40.13}$$

where m_e is the mass of the electron, c is the speed of light, and θ is the scattering angle.

Light has a dual nature in that it has both wave and particle characteristics. Some experiments can be explained either better or solely by the particle model, whereas others can be explained either better or solely by the wave model.

Every object of mass m and momentum $p = mu$ has wave properties, with a **de Broglie wavelength** given by

$$\lambda = \frac{h}{p} = \frac{h}{mu} \tag{40.17}$$

By combining a large number of waves, a single region of constructive interference, called a **wave packet,** can be created. The wave packet carries the characteristic of localization like a particle does, but it has wave properties because it is built from waves. For an individual wave in the wave packet, the **phase speed** is

$$v_{\text{phase}} = \frac{\omega}{k} \tag{40.20}$$

For the wave packet as a whole, the **group speed** is

$$v_g = \frac{d\omega}{dk} \tag{40.21}$$

For a wave packet representing a particle, the group speed can be shown to be the same as the speed of the particle.

The **Heisenberg uncertainty principle** states that if a measurement of the position of a particle is made with uncertainty Δx and a simultaneous measurement of its linear momentum is made with uncertainty Δp_x, the product of the two uncertainties is restricted to

$$\Delta x\,\Delta p_x \ge \frac{\hbar}{2} \tag{40.25}$$

Another form of the uncertainty principle relates measurements of energy and time:

$$\Delta E\,\Delta t \ge \frac{\hbar}{2} \tag{40.26}$$

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Rank the wavelengths of the following quantum particles from the largest to the smallest. If any have equal wavelengths, display the equality in your ranking. (a) a photon with energy 3 eV (b) an electron with kinetic energy 3 eV (c) a proton with kinetic energy 3 eV (d) a photon with energy 0.3 eV (e) an electron with momentum 3 eV/c

2. An x-ray photon is scattered by an originally stationary electron. Relative to the frequency of the incident photon, is the frequency of the scattered photon (a) lower, (b) higher, or (c) unchanged?

3. In a Compton scattering experiment, a photon of energy E is scattered from an electron at rest. After the scattering event occurs, which of the following statements is true? (a) The frequency of the photon is greater than E/h. (b) The energy of the photon is less than E. (c) The wavelength of the photon is less than hc/E. (d) The momentum of the photon increases. (e) None of those statements is true.

4. In a certain experiment, a filament in an evacuated lightbulb carries a current I_1 and you measure the spectrum of light emitted by the filament, which behaves as a black body at temperature T_1. The wavelength emitted with highest intensity (symbolized by λ_{max}) has the value λ_1. You then increase the potential difference across the filament by a factor of 8, and the current increases by a factor of 2. **(i)** After this change, what is the new value of the temperature of the filament? (a) $16T_1$ (b) $8T_1$ (c) $4T_1$ (d) $2T_1$ (e) still T_1 **(ii)** What is the new value of the wavelength emitted with highest intensity? (a) $4\lambda_1$ (b) $2\lambda_1$ (c) λ_1 (d) $\frac{1}{2}\lambda_1$ (e) $\frac{1}{4}\lambda_1$

5. Which of the following statements are true according to the uncertainty principle? More than one statement may be correct. (a) It is impossible to simultaneously determine both the position and the momentum of a particle along the same axis with arbitrary accuracy. (b) It is impossible to simultaneously determine both the energy and momentum of a particle with arbitrary accuracy. (c) It is impossible to determine a particle's energy with arbitrary accuracy in a finite amount of time. (d) It is impossible to measure the position of a particle with arbitrary accuracy in a finite amount of time. (e) It is impossible to simultaneously measure both the energy and position of a particle with arbitrary accuracy.

6. A monochromatic light beam is incident on a barium target that has a work function of 2.50 eV. If a potential difference of 1.00 V is required to turn back all the ejected electrons, what is the wavelength of the light beam? (a) 355 nm (b) 497 nm (c) 744 nm (d) 1.42 pm (e) none of those answers

7. Which of the following is most likely to cause sunburn by delivering more energy to individual molecules in skin cells? (a) infrared light (b) visible light (c) ultraviolet light (d) microwaves (e) Choices (a) through (d) are equally likely.

8. Which of the following phenomena most clearly demonstrates the wave nature of electrons? (a) the photoelectric effect (b) blackbody radiation (c) the Compton effect (d) diffraction of electrons by crystals (e) none of those answers

9. What is the de Broglie wavelength of an electron accelerated from rest through a potential difference of 50.0 V? (a) 0.100 nm (b) 0.139 nm (c) 0.174 nm (d) 0.834 nm (e) none of those answers

10. A proton, an electron, and a helium nucleus all move at speed v. Rank their de Broglie wavelengths from largest to smallest.

11. Consider (a) an electron, (b) a photon, and (c) a proton, all moving in vacuum. Choose all correct answers for each question. **(i)** Which of the three possess rest energy? **(ii)** Which have charge? **(iii)** Which carry energy? **(iv)** Which carry momentum? **(v)** Which move at the speed of light? **(vi)** Which have a wavelength characterizing their motion?

12. An electron and a proton, moving in opposite directions, are accelerated from rest through the same potential difference. Which particle has the longer wavelength? (a) The electron does. (b) The proton does. (c) Both are the same. (d) Neither has a wavelength.

13. Which of the following phenomena most clearly demonstrates the particle nature of light? (a) diffraction (b) the photoelectric effect (c) polarization (d) interference (e) refraction

14. Both an electron and a proton are accelerated to the same speed, and the experimental uncertainty in the speed is the same for the two particles. The positions of the two particles are also measured. Is the minimum possible uncertainty in the electron's position (a) less than the minimum possible uncertainty in the proton's position, (b) the same as that for the proton, (c) more than that for the proton, or (d) impossible to tell from the given information?

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. The opening photograph for this chapter shows a filament of a lightbulb in operation. Look carefully at the last turns of wire at the upper and lower ends of the filament. Why are these turns dimmer than the others?

2. How does the Compton effect differ from the photoelectric effect?

3. If matter has a wave nature, why is this wave-like characteristic not observable in our daily experiences?

4. If the photoelectric effect is observed for one metal, can you conclude that the effect will also be observed for another metal under the same conditions? Explain.

5. In the photoelectric effect, explain why the stopping potential depends on the frequency of light but not on the intensity.

6. Why does the existence of a cutoff frequency in the photoelectric effect favor a particle theory for light over a wave theory?

7. Which has more energy, a photon of ultraviolet radiation or a photon of yellow light? Explain.

8. All objects radiate energy. Why, then, are we not able to see all objects in a dark room?

9. Is an electron a wave or a particle? Support your answer by citing some experimental results.

10. Suppose a photograph were made of a person's face using only a few photons. Would the result be simply a very faint image of the face? Explain your answer.

11. Why is an electron microscope more suitable than an optical microscope for "seeing" objects less than 1 μm in size?

12. Is light a wave or a particle? Support your answer by citing specific experimental evidence.

13. (a) What does the slope of the lines in Figure 40.11 represent? (b) What does the y intercept represent? (c) How would such graphs for different metals compare with one another?

14. Why was the demonstration of electron diffraction by Davisson and Germer an important experiment?

15. *Iridescence* is the phenomenon that gives shining colors to the feathers of peacocks, hummingbirds (see page 1134), resplendent quetzals, and even ducks and grackles. Without pigments, it colors Morpho butterflies (Fig. CQ40.15), Urania moths, some beetles and flies, rainbow trout, and mother-of-pearl in abalone shells. Iridescent colors change as you turn an object. They are produced by a wide variety of intricate structures in different species. Problem 64 in Chapter 38 describes the structures that produce iridescence in a peacock feather. These structures were all unknown until the invention of the electron microscope. Explain why light microscopes cannot reveal them.

Figure CQ40.15

16. In describing the passage of electrons through a slit and arriving at a screen, physicist Richard Feynman said that "electrons arrive in lumps, like particles, but the probability of arrival of these lumps is determined as the intensity of the waves would be. It is in this sense that the electron behaves sometimes like a particle and sometimes like a wave." Elaborate on this point in your own words. For further discussion, see R. Feynman, *The Character of Physical Law* (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 1980), chap. 6.

17. The classical model of blackbody radiation given by the Rayleigh–Jeans law has two major flaws. (a) Identify the flaws and (b) explain how Planck's law deals with them.

Problems

Enhanced WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 40.1 Blackbody Radiation and Planck's Hypothesis

1. The temperature of an electric heating element is 150°C. At what wavelength does the radiation emitted from the heating element reach its peak?

2. Model the tungsten filament of a lightbulb as a black body at temperature 2 900 K. (a) Determine the wavelength of light it emits most strongly. (b) Explain why the answer to part (a) suggests that more energy from the lightbulb goes into infrared radiation than into visible light.

3. W Lightning produces a maximum air temperature on the order of 10^4 K, whereas a nuclear explosion produces a temperature on the order of 10^7 K. (a) Use Wien's displacement law to find the order of magnitude of the wavelength of the thermally produced photons radiated with greatest intensity by each of these sources. (b) Name the part of the electromagnetic spectrum where you would expect each to radiate most strongly.

4. Figure P40.4 shows the spectrum of light emitted by a firefly. (a) Determine the temperature of a black body that would emit radiation peaked at the same wavelength. (b) Based on your result, explain whether firefly radiation is blackbody radiation.

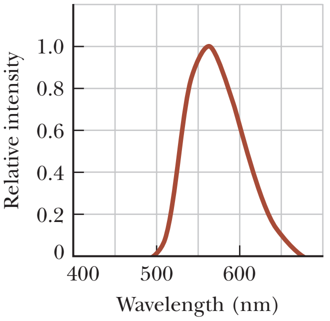


Figure P40.4

5. The average threshold of dark-adapted (scotopic) vision is 4.00×10^{-11} W/m^2 at a central wavelength of 500 nm. If light with this intensity and wavelength enters the eye and the pupil is open to its maximum diameter of 8.50 mm, how many photons per second enter the eye?

6. **(i)** Calculate the energy, in electron volts, of a photon whose frequency is (a) 620 THz, (b) 3.10 GHz, and (c) 46.0 MHz. **(ii)** Determine the corresponding wavelengths for the photons listed in part (i) and **(iii)** state the classification of each on the electromagnetic spectrum.

7. (a) What is the surface temperature of Betelgeuse, a red giant star in the constellation Orion (Fig. 40.4), which radiates with a peak wavelength of about 970 nm? (b) Rigel, a bluish-white star in Orion, radiates with a peak wavelength of 145 nm. Find the temperature of Rigel's surface.

8. An FM radio transmitter has a power output of 150 kW and operates at a frequency of 99.7 MHz. How many photons per second does the transmitter emit?

9. The human eye is most sensitive to 560-nm (green) light. What is the temperature of a black body that would radiate most intensely at this wavelength?

10. The radius of our Sun is 6.96×10^8 m, and its total power output is 3.85×10^{26} W. (a) Assuming the Sun's surface emits as a black body, calculate its surface temperature. (b) Using the result of part (a), find λ_{max} for the Sun.

11. A black body at 7 500 K consists of an opening of diameter 0.050 0 mm, looking into an oven. Find the number of photons per second escaping the opening and having wavelengths between 500 nm and 501 nm.

12. Consider a black body of surface area 20.0 cm^2 and temperature 5 000 K. (a) How much power does it radiate? (b) At what wavelength does it radiate most intensely? Find the spectral power per wavelength interval at (c) this wavelength and at wavelengths of (d) 1.00 nm (an x- or gamma ray), (e) 5.00 nm (ultraviolet light or an x-ray), (f) 400 nm (at the boundary between UV and visible light), (g) 700 nm (at the boundary between visible and infrared light), (h) 1.00 mm (infrared light or a microwave), and (i) 10.0 cm (a microwave or radio wave). (j) Approximately how much power does the object radiate as visible light?

13. **Review.** This problem is about how strongly matter is coupled to radiation, the subject with which quantum mechanics began. For a simple model, consider a solid iron sphere 2.00 cm in radius. Assume its temperature is always uniform throughout its volume. (a) Find the mass of the sphere. (b) Assume the sphere is at 20.0°C and has emissivity 0.860. Find the power with which it radiates electromagnetic waves. (c) If it were alone in the Universe, at what rate would the sphere's temperature be changing? (d) Assume Wien's law describes the sphere. Find the wavelength λ_{max} of electromagnetic radiation it emits most strongly. Although it emits a spectrum of waves having all different wavelengths, assume its power output is carried by photons of wavelength λ_{max}. Find (e) the energy of one photon and (f) the number of photons it emits each second.

14. Show that at long wavelengths, Planck's radiation law (Eq. 40.6) reduces to the Rayleigh–Jeans law (Eq. 40.3).

15. A simple pendulum has a length of 1.00 m and a mass of 1.00 kg. The maximum horizontal displacement of the pendulum bob from equilibrium is 3.00 cm. Calculate the quantum number n for the pendulum.

16. A pulsed ruby laser emits light at 694.3 nm. For a 14.0-ps pulse containing 3.00 J of energy, find (a) the physical length of the pulse as it travels through space and (b) the number of photons in it. (c) Assuming that the beam has a circular cross-section of 0.600 cm diameter, find the number of photons per cubic millimeter.

Section 40.2 The Photoelectric Effect

17. Molybdenum has a work function of 4.20 eV. (a) Find the cutoff wavelength and cutoff frequency for the photoelectric effect. (b) What is the stopping potential if the incident light has a wavelength of 180 nm?

18. The work function for zinc is 4.31 eV. (a) Find the cutoff wavelength for zinc. (b) What is the lowest frequency of light incident on zinc that releases photoelectrons from its surface? (c) If photons of energy 5.50 eV are incident on zinc, what is the maximum kinetic energy of the ejected photoelectrons?

19. Two light sources are used in a photoelectric experiment to determine the work function for a particular metal surface. When green light from a mercury lamp (λ = 546.1 nm) is used, a stopping potential of 0.376 V reduces the photocurrent to zero. (a) Based on this measurement, what is the work function for this metal? (b) What stopping potential would be observed when using the yellow light from a helium discharge tube (λ = 587.5 nm)?

20. Lithium, beryllium, and mercury have work functions of 2.30 eV, 3.90 eV, and 4.50 eV, respectively. Light with a wavelength of 400 nm is incident on each of these metals. (a) Determine which of these metals exhibit the photoelectric effect for this incident light. Explain your reasoning. (b) Find the maximum kinetic energy for the photoelectrons in each case.

21. Electrons are ejected from a metallic surface with speeds of up to 4.60×10^5 m/s when light with a wavelength of 625 nm is used. (a) What is the work function of the surface? (b) What is the cutoff frequency for this surface?

22. From the scattering of sunlight, J. J. Thomson calculated the classical radius of the electron as having the value 2.82×10^{-15} m. Sunlight with an intensity of 500 W/m^2 falls on a disk with this radius. Assume light is a classical wave and the light striking the disk is completely absorbed. (a) Calculate the time interval required to accumulate 1.00 eV of energy. (b) Explain how your result for part (a) compares with the observation that photoelectrons are emitted promptly (within 10^{-9} s).

23. AMT **Review.** An isolated copper sphere of radius 5.00 cm, initially uncharged, is illuminated by ultraviolet light of wavelength 200 nm. The work function for copper is 4.70 eV. What charge does the photoelectric effect induce on the sphere?

24. GP The work function for platinum is 6.35 eV. Ultraviolet light of wavelength 150 nm is incident on the clean surface of a platinum sample. We wish to predict the stopping voltage we will need for electrons ejected from the surface. (a) What is the photon energy of the ultraviolet light? (b) How do you know that these photons will eject electrons from platinum? (c) What is the maximum kinetic energy of the ejected photoelectrons? (d) What stopping voltage would be required to arrest the current of photoelectrons?

Section 40.3 The Compton Effect

25. X-rays are scattered from a target at an angle of 55.0° with the direction of the incident beam. Find the wavelength shift of the scattered x-rays.

26. A photon having wavelength λ scatters off a free electron at A (Fig. P40.26), producing a second photon having wavelength λ'. This photon then scatters off another free electron at B, producing a third photon having wavelength λ'' and moving in a direction directly opposite the original photon as shown in the figure. Determine the value of $\Delta\lambda = \lambda'' - \lambda$.

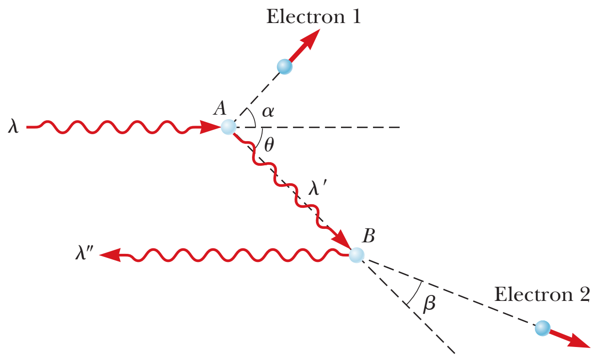


Figure P40.26

27. A 0.110-nm photon collides with a stationary electron. After the collision, the electron moves forward and the photon recoils backward. Find the momentum and the kinetic energy of the electron.

28. X-rays with a wavelength of 120.0 pm undergo Compton scattering. (a) Find the wavelengths of the photons scattered at angles of 30.0°, 60.0°, 90.0°, 120°, 150°, and 180°. (b) Find the energy of the scattered electron in each case. (c) Which of the scattering angles provides the electron with the greatest energy? Explain whether you could answer this question without doing any calculations.

29. M A 0.001 60-nm photon scatters from a free electron. For what (photon) scattering angle does the recoiling electron have kinetic energy equal to the energy of the scattered photon?

30. After a 0.800-nm x-ray photon scatters from a free electron, the electron recoils at 1.40×10^6 m/s. (a) What is the Compton shift in the photon's wavelength? (b) Through what angle is the photon scattered?

31. W A photon having energy $E_0 = 0.880$ MeV is scattered by a free electron initially at rest such that the scattering angle of the scattered electron is equal to that of the scattered photon as shown in Figure P40.31. (a) Determine the scattering angle of the photon and the electron. (b) Determine the energy and momentum of the scattered photon. (c) Determine the kinetic energy and momentum of the scattered electron.

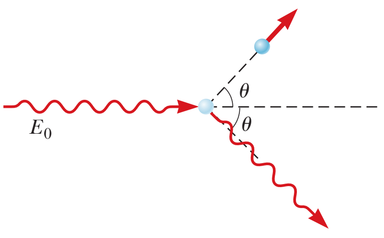


Figure P40.31 Problems 31 and 32.

32. A photon having energy E_0 is scattered by a free electron initially at rest such that the scattering angle of the scattered electron is equal to that of the scattered photon as shown in Figure P40.31. (a) Determine the angle θ. (b) Determine the energy and momentum of the scattered photon. (c) Determine the kinetic energy and momentum of the scattered electron.

33. X-rays having an energy of 300 keV undergo Compton scattering from a target. The scattered rays are detected at 37.0° relative to the incident rays. Find (a) the Compton shift at this angle, (b) the energy of the scattered x-ray, and (c) the energy of the recoiling electron.

34. In a Compton scattering experiment, a photon is scattered through an angle of 90.0° and the electron is set into motion in a direction at an angle of 20.0° to the original direction of the photon. (a) Explain how this information is sufficient to determine uniquely the wavelength of the scattered photon and (b) find this wavelength.

35. In a Compton scattering experiment, an x-ray photon scatters through an angle of 17.4° from a free electron that is initially at rest. The electron recoils with a speed of 2 180 km/s. Calculate (a) the wavelength of the incident photon and (b) the angle through which the electron scatters.

36. Find the maximum fractional energy loss for a 0.511-MeV gamma ray that is Compton scattered from (a) a free electron and (b) a free proton.

Section 40.4 The Nature of Electromagnetic Waves

37. An electromagnetic wave is called *ionizing radiation* if its photon energy is larger than, say, 10.0 eV so that a single photon has enough energy to break apart an atom. With reference to Figure P40.37 (page 1264), explain what region or regions of the electromagnetic spectrum fit this definition of ionizing radiation and what do not. (If you wish to consult a larger version of Fig. P40.37, see Fig. 34.13.)

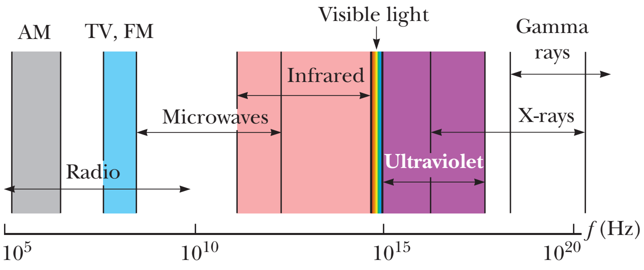


Figure P40.37

38. **Review.** A helium–neon laser produces a beam of diameter 1.75 mm, delivering 2.00×10^{18} photons/s. Each photon has a wavelength of 633 nm. Calculate the amplitudes of (a) the electric fields and (b) the magnetic fields inside the beam. (c) If the beam shines perpendicularly onto a perfectly reflecting surface, what force does it exert on the surface? (d) If the beam is absorbed by a block of ice at 0°C for 1.50 h, what mass of ice is melted?

Section 40.5 The Wave Properties of Particles

39. (a) Calculate the momentum of a photon whose wavelength is 4.00×10^{-7} m. (b) Find the speed of an electron having the same momentum as the photon in part (a).

40. (a) An electron has a kinetic energy of 3.00 eV. Find its wavelength. (b) **What If?** A photon has energy 3.00 eV. Find its wavelength.

41. The resolving power of a microscope depends on the wavelength used. If you wanted to "see" an atom, a wavelength of approximately 1.00×10^{-11} m would be required. (a) If electrons are used (in an electron microscope), what minimum kinetic energy is required for the electrons? (b) **What If?** If photons are used, what minimum photon energy is needed to obtain the required resolution?

42. Calculate the de Broglie wavelength for a proton moving with a speed of 1.00×10^6 m/s.

43. In the Davisson–Germer experiment, 54.0-eV electrons were diffracted from a nickel lattice. If the first maximum in the diffraction pattern was observed at $\phi = 50.0°$ (Fig. P40.43), what was the lattice spacing a between the vertical columns of atoms in the figure?

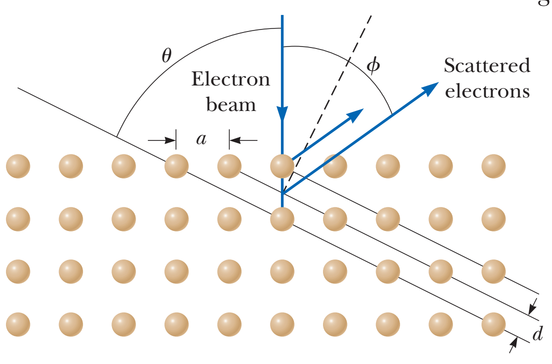


Figure P40.43

44. The nucleus of an atom is on the order of 10^{-14} m in diameter. For an electron to be confined to a nucleus, its de Broglie wavelength would have to be on this order of magnitude or smaller. (a) What would be the kinetic energy of an electron confined to this region? (b) Make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the electric potential energy of a system of an electron inside an atomic nucleus. (c) Would you expect to find an electron in a nucleus? Explain.

45. Robert Hofstadter won the 1961 Nobel Prize in Physics for his pioneering work in studying the scattering of 20-GeV electrons from nuclei. (a) What is the γ factor for an electron with total energy 20.0 GeV, defined by $\gamma = 1/\sqrt{1 - u^2/c^2}$? (b) Find the momentum of the electron. (c) Find the wavelength of the electron. (d) State how the wavelength compares with the diameter of an atomic nucleus, typically on the order of 10^{-14} m.

46. *Why is the following situation impossible?* After learning about de Broglie's hypothesis that material particles of momentum p move as waves with wavelength $\lambda = h/p$, an 80-kg student has grown concerned about being diffracted when passing through a doorway of width w = 75 cm. Assume significant diffraction occurs when the width of the diffraction aperture is less than ten times the wavelength of the wave being diffracted. Together with his classmates, the student performs precision experiments and finds that he does indeed experience measurable diffraction.

47. A photon has an energy equal to the kinetic energy of an electron with speed u, which may be close to the speed of light c. (a) Calculate the ratio of the wavelength of the photon to the wavelength of the electron. (b) Evaluate the ratio for the particle speed $u = 0.900c$. (c) **What If?** What would happen to the answer to part (b) if the material particle were a proton instead of an electron? (d) Evaluate the ratio for the particle speed $u = 0.001\,00c$. (e) What value does the ratio of the wavelengths approach at high particle speeds? (f) At low particle speeds?

48. (a) Show that the frequency f and wavelength λ of a freely moving quantum particle with mass are related by the expression

$$\left(\frac{f}{c}\right)^2 = \frac{1}{\lambda^2} + \frac{1}{\lambda_C^2}$$

where $\lambda_C = h/mc$ is the Compton wavelength of the particle. (b) Is it ever possible for a particle having nonzero mass to have the same wavelength *and* frequency as a photon? Explain.

Section 40.6 A New Model: The Quantum Particle

49. Consider a freely moving quantum particle with mass m and speed u. Its energy is $E = K = \frac{1}{2}mu^2$. (a) Determine the phase speed of the quantum wave representing the particle and (b) show that it is different from the speed at which the particle transports mass and energy.

50. For a free relativistic quantum particle moving with speed u, the total energy of the particle is $E = hf = \hbar\omega = \sqrt{p^2c^2 + m^2c^4}$ and the momentum is $p = h/\lambda = \hbar k =$

γmu. For the quantum wave representing the particle, the group speed is $v_g = d\omega/dk$. Prove that the group speed of the wave is the same as the speed of the particle.

Section 40.7 The Double-Slit Experiment Revisited

51. M Neutrons traveling at 0.400 m/s are directed through a pair of slits separated by 1.00 mm. An array of detectors is placed 10.0 m from the slits. (a) What is the de Broglie wavelength of the neutrons? (b) How far off axis is the first zero-intensity point on the detector array? (c) When a neutron reaches a detector, can we say which slit the neutron passed through? Explain.

52. In a certain vacuum tube, electrons evaporate from a hot cathode at a slow, steady rate and accelerate from rest through a potential difference of 45.0 V. Then they travel 28.0 cm as they pass through an array of slits and fall on a screen to produce an interference pattern. If the beam current is below a certain value, only one electron at a time will be in flight in the tube. In this situation, the interference pattern still appears, showing that each individual electron can interfere with itself. What is the maximum value for the beam current that will result in only one electron at a time in flight in the tube?

53. W A modified oscilloscope is used to perform an electron interference experiment. Electrons are incident on a pair of narrow slits 0.060 0 μm apart. The bright bands in the interference pattern are separated by 0.400 mm on a screen 20.0 cm from the slits. Determine the potential difference through which the electrons were accelerated to give this pattern.

Section 40.8 The Uncertainty Principle

54. Suppose a duck lives in a universe in which $h = 2\pi$ J · s. The duck has a mass of 2.00 kg and is initially known to be within a pond 1.00 m wide. (a) What is the minimum uncertainty in the component of the duck's velocity parallel to the pond's width? (b) Assuming this uncertainty in speed prevails for 5.00 s, determine the uncertainty in the duck's position after this time interval.

55. M An electron and a 0.020 0-kg bullet each have a velocity of magnitude 500 m/s, accurate to within 0.010 0%. Within what lower limit could we determine the position of each object along the direction of the velocity?

56. A 0.500-kg block rests on the frictionless, icy surface of a frozen pond. If the location of the block is measured to a precision of 0.150 cm and its mass is known exactly, what is the minimum uncertainty in the block's speed?

57. The average lifetime of a muon is about 2 μs. Estimate the minimum uncertainty in the rest energy of a muon.

58. *Why is the following situation impossible?* An air rifle is used to shoot 1.00-g particles at a speed of v_x = 100 m/s. The rifle's barrel has a diameter of 2.00 mm. The rifle is mounted on a perfectly rigid support so that it is fired in exactly the same way each time. Because of the uncertainty principle, however, after many firings, the diameter of the spray of pellets on a paper target is 1.00 cm.

59. Use the uncertainty principle to show that if an electron were confined inside an atomic nucleus of diameter on the order of 10^{-14} m, it would have to be moving relativistically, whereas a proton confined to the same nucleus can be moving nonrelativistically.

Additional Problems

60. The accompanying table shows data obtained in a photoelectric experiment. (a) Using these data, make a graph similar to Figure 40.11 that plots as a straight line. From the graph, determine (b) an experimental value for Planck's constant (in joule-seconds) and (c) the work function (in electron volts) for the surface. (Two significant figures for each answer are sufficient.)

Wavelength (nm)	Maximum Kinetic Energy of Photoelectrons (eV)
588	0.67
505	0.98
445	1.35
399	1.63

61. AMT M Photons of wavelength 450 nm are incident on a metal. The most energetic electrons ejected from the metal are bent into a circular arc of radius 20.0 cm by a magnetic field with a magnitude of 2.00×10^{-5} T. What is the work function of the metal?

62. **Review.** Photons of wavelength λ are incident on a metal. The most energetic electrons ejected from the metal are bent into a circular arc of radius R by a magnetic field having a magnitude B. What is the work function of the metal?

63. **Review.** Design an incandescent lamp filament. A tungsten wire radiates electromagnetic waves with power 75.0 W when its ends are connected across a 120-V power supply. Assume its constant operating temperature is 2 900 K and its emissivity is 0.450. Also assume it takes in energy only by electric transmission and emits energy only by electromagnetic radiation. You may take the resistivity of tungsten at 2 900 K as 7.13×10^{-7} Ω · m. Specify (a) the radius and (b) the length of the filament.

64. Derive the equation for the Compton shift (Eq. 40.13) from Equations 40.14 through 40.16.

65. Figure P40.65 shows the stopping potential versus the incident photon frequency for the photoelectric effect

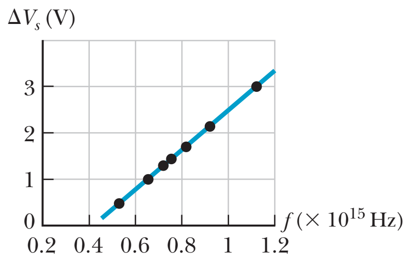


Figure P40.65

for sodium. Use the graph to find (a) the work function of sodium, (b) the ratio h/e, and (c) the cutoff wavelength. The data are taken from R. A. Millikan, *Physical Review* **7**:362 (1916).

66. A photon of initial energy E_0 undergoes Compton scattering at an angle θ from a free electron (mass m_e) initially at rest. Derive the following relationship for the final energy E' of the scattered photon:

$$E' = \frac{E_0}{1 + \left(\dfrac{E_0}{m_e c^2}\right)(1 - \cos\theta)}$$

67. A daredevil's favorite trick is to step out of a 16th-story window and fall 50.0 m into a pool. A news reporter takes a picture of the 75.0-kg daredevil just before he makes a splash, using an exposure time of 5.00 ms. Find (a) the daredevil's de Broglie wavelength at this moment, (b) the uncertainty of his kinetic energy measurement during the 5.00-ms time interval, and (c) the percent error caused by such an uncertainty.

68. Show that the ratio of the Compton wavelength λ_C to the de Broglie wavelength $\lambda = h/p$ for a relativistic electron is

$$\frac{\lambda_C}{\lambda} = \left[\left(\frac{E}{m_e c^2}\right)^2 - 1\right]^{1/2}$$

where E is the total energy of the electron and m_e is its mass.

69. Monochromatic ultraviolet light with intensity 550 W/m^2 is incident normally on the surface of a metal that has a work function of 3.44 eV. Photoelectrons are emitted with a maximum speed of 420 km/s. (a) Find the maximum possible rate of photoelectron emission from 1.00 cm^2 of the surface by imagining that every photon produces one photoelectron. (b) Find the electric current these electrons constitute. (c) How do you suppose the actual current compares with this maximum possible current?

70. A π^0 meson is an unstable particle produced in high-energy particle collisions. Its rest energy is approximately 135 MeV, and it exists for a lifetime of only 8.70×10^{-17} s before decaying into two gamma rays. Using the uncertainty principle, estimate the fractional uncertainty $\Delta m/m$ in its mass determination.

71. The neutron has a mass of 1.67×10^{-27} kg. Neutrons emitted in nuclear reactions can be slowed down by collisions with matter. They are referred to as thermal neutrons after they come into thermal equilibrium with the environment. The average kinetic energy ($\frac{3}{2}k_B T$) of a thermal neutron is approximately 0.04 eV. (a) Calculate the de Broglie wavelength of a neutron with a kinetic energy of 0.040 0 eV. (b) How does your answer compare with the characteristic atomic spacing in a crystal? (c) Explain whether you expect thermal neutrons to exhibit diffraction effects when scattered by a crystal.

Challenge Problems

72. A woman on a ladder drops small pellets toward a point target on the floor. (a) Show that, according to the uncertainty principle, the average miss distance must be at least

$$\Delta x_f = \left(\frac{2\hbar}{m}\right)^{1/2}\left(\frac{2H}{g}\right)^{1/4}$$

where H is the initial height of each pellet above the floor and m is the mass of each pellet. Assume that the spread in impact points is given by $\Delta x_f = \Delta x_i + (\Delta v_x)t$. (b) If $H = 2.00$ m and $m = 0.500$ g, what is Δx_f?

73. **Review.** A light source emitting radiation at frequency 7.00×10^{14} Hz is incapable of ejecting photoelectrons from a certain metal. In an attempt to use this source to eject photoelectrons from the metal, the source is given a velocity toward the metal. (a) Explain how this procedure can produce photoelectrons. (b) When the speed of the light source is equal to $0.280c$, photoelectrons just begin to be ejected from the metal. What is the work function of the metal? (c) When the speed of the light source is increased to $0.900c$, determine the maximum kinetic energy of the photoelectrons.

74. Using conservation principles, prove that a photon cannot transfer all its energy to a free electron.

75. The total power per unit area radiated by a black body at a temperature T is the area under the $I(\lambda, T)$-versus-λ curve as shown in Figure 40.3. (a) Show that this power per unit area is

$$\int_0^\infty I(\lambda, T)\, d\lambda = \sigma T^4$$

where $I(\lambda, T)$ is given by Planck's radiation law and σ is a constant independent of T. This result is known as Stefan's law. (See Section 20.7.) To carry out the integration, you should make the change of variable $x = hc/\lambda k_B T$ and use

$$\int_0^\infty \frac{x^3\, dx}{e^x - 1} = \frac{\pi^4}{15}$$

(b) Show that the Stefan–Boltzmann constant σ has the value

$$\sigma = \frac{2\pi^5 k_B^{\,4}}{15c^2h^3} = 5.67 \times 10^{-8}\ \text{W/m}^2 \cdot \text{K}^4$$

76. (a) Derive Wien's displacement law from Planck's law. Proceed as follows. In Figure 40.3, notice that the wavelength at which a black body radiates with greatest intensity is the wavelength for which the graph of $I(\lambda, T)$ versus λ has a horizontal tangent. From Equation 40.6, evaluate the derivative $dI/d\lambda$. Set it equal to zero. Solve the resulting transcendental equation numerically to prove that $hc/\lambda_{max}k_B T = 4.965\ldots$ or $\lambda_{max}T = hc/4.965k_B$. (b) Evaluate the constant as precisely as possible and compare it with Wien's experimental value.

Quantum Mechanics

CHAPTER

41

An opened flash drive of the type used as an external data storage device for a computer. Flash drives are employed extensively in computers, digital cameras, cell phones, and other devices. Writing data to and erasing data from flash drives incorporate the phenomenon of quantum tunneling, which we explore in this chapter. *(Image copyright Vasilius, 2009. Used under license from Shutterstock.com)*

In this chapter, we introduce quantum mechanics, an extremely successful theory for explaining the behavior of microscopic particles. This theory, developed in the 1920s by Erwin Schrödinger, Werner Heisenberg, and others, enables us to understand a host of phenomena involving atoms, molecules, nuclei, and solids. The discussion in this chapter follows from the quantum particle model that was developed in Chapter 40 and incorporates some of the features of the waves under boundary conditions model that was explored in Chapter 18. We also discuss practical applications of quantum mechanics, including the scanning tunneling microscope and nanoscale devices that may be used in future quantum computers. Finally, we shall return to the simple harmonic oscillator that was introduced in Chapter 15 and examine it from a quantum mechanical point of view.

41.1 The Wave Function

In Chapter 40, we introduced some new and strange ideas. In particular, we concluded on the basis of experimental evidence that both matter and electromagnetic radiation are sometimes best modeled as particles and sometimes as waves, depending on the phenomenon being observed. We can improve our understanding of quantum physics by making another connection between particles and waves using the notion of probability, a concept that was introduced in Chapter 40.

We begin by discussing electromagnetic radiation using the particle model. The probability per unit volume of finding a photon in a given region of space at an instant of time is proportional to the number of photons per unit volume at that time:

$$\frac{\text{Probability}}{V} \propto \frac{N}{V}$$

The number of photons per unit volume is proportional to the intensity of the radiation:

$$\frac{N}{V} \propto I$$

Now, let's form a connection between the particle model and the wave model by recalling that the intensity of electromagnetic radiation is proportional to the square of the electric field amplitude E for the electromagnetic wave (Eq. 34.24):

$$I \propto E^2$$

Equating the beginning and the end of this series of proportionalities gives

$$\frac{\text{Probability}}{V} \propto E^2 \quad \textbf{(41.1)}$$

Therefore, for electromagnetic radiation, the probability per unit volume of finding a particle associated with this radiation (the photon) is proportional to the square of the amplitude of the associated electromagnetic wave.

Recognizing the wave–particle duality of both electromagnetic radiation and matter, we should suspect a parallel proportionality for a material particle: the probability per unit volume of finding the particle is proportional to the square of the amplitude of a wave representing the particle. In Chapter 40, we learned that there is a de Broglie wave associated with every particle. The amplitude of the de Broglie wave associated with a particle is not a measurable quantity because the wave function representing a particle is generally a complex function as we discuss below. In contrast, the electric field for an electromagnetic wave is a real function. The matter analog to Equation 41.1 relates the square of the amplitude of the wave to the probability per unit volume of finding the particle. Hence, the amplitude of the wave associated with the particle is called the **probability amplitude,** or the **wave function,** and it has the symbol Ψ.

In general, the complete wave function Ψ for a system depends on the positions of all the particles in the system and on time; therefore, it can be written $\Psi(\vec{\mathbf{r}}_1, \vec{\mathbf{r}}_2, \vec{\mathbf{r}}_3, \ldots, \vec{\mathbf{r}}_j, \ldots, t)$, where $\vec{\mathbf{r}}_j$ is the position vector of the jth particle in the system. For many systems of interest, including all those we study in this text, the wave function Ψ is mathematically separable in space and time and can be written as a product of a space function ψ for one particle of the system and a complex time function:[1]

Space- and time-dependent wave function Ψ

$$\Psi(\vec{\mathbf{r}}_1, \vec{\mathbf{r}}_2, \vec{\mathbf{r}}_3, \ldots, \vec{\mathbf{r}}_j, \ldots, t) = \psi(\vec{\mathbf{r}}_j)e^{-i\omega t} \quad \textbf{(41.2)}$$

where ω $(= 2\pi f)$ is the angular frequency of the wave function and $i = \sqrt{-1}$.

For any system in which the potential energy is time-independent and depends only on the positions of particles within the system, the important information about the system is contained within the space part of the wave function. The time part is simply the factor $e^{-i\omega t}$. Therefore, an understanding of ψ is the critical aspect of a given problem.

The wave function ψ is often complex-valued. The absolute square $|\psi|^2 = \psi^*\psi$, where ψ^* is the complex conjugate[2] of ψ, is always real and positive and is proportional to the probability per unit volume of finding a particle at a given point at some instant. The wave function contains within it all the information that can be known about the particle.

---

[1]The standard form of a complex number is $a + ib$. The notation $e^{i\theta}$ is equivalent to the standard form as follows:

$$e^{i\theta} = \cos\theta + i\sin\theta$$

Therefore, the notation $e^{-i\omega t}$ in Equation 41.2 is equivalent to $\cos(-\omega t) + i\sin(-\omega t) = \cos\omega t - i\sin\omega t$.

[2]For a complex number $z = a + ib$, the complex conjugate is found by changing i to $-i$: $z^* = a - ib$. The product of a complex number and its complex conjugate is always real and positive. That is, $z^*z = (a - ib)(a + ib) = a^2 - (ib)^2 = a^2 - (i)^2b^2 = a^2 + b^2$.

Although ψ cannot be measured, we can measure the real quantity $|\psi|^2$, which can be interpreted as follows. If ψ represents a single particle, then $|\psi|^2$—called the **probability density**—is the relative probability per unit volume that the particle will be found at any given point in the volume. This interpretation can also be stated in the following manner. If dV is a small volume element surrounding some point, the probability of finding the particle in that volume element is

◀ **Probability density $|\psi|^2$**

$$P(x, y, z)\ dV = |\psi|^2\ dV \tag{41.3}$$

This probabilistic interpretation of the wave function was first suggested by Max Born (1882–1970) in 1928. In 1926, Erwin Schrödinger proposed a wave equation that describes the manner in which the wave function changes in space and time. The *Schrödinger wave equation,* which we shall examine in Section 41.3, represents a key element in the theory of quantum mechanics.

The concepts of quantum mechanics, strange as they sometimes may seem, developed from classical ideas. In fact, when the techniques of quantum mechanics are applied to macroscopic systems, the results are essentially identical to those of classical physics. This blending of the two approaches occurs when the de Broglie wavelength is small compared with the dimensions of the system. The situation is similar to the agreement between relativistic mechanics and classical mechanics when $v << c$.

In Section 40.5, we found that the de Broglie equation relates the momentum of a particle to its wavelength through the relation $p = h/\lambda$. If an ideal free particle has a precisely known momentum p_x, its wave function is an infinitely long sinusoidal wave of wavelength $\lambda = h/p_x$ and the particle has equal probability of being at any point along the x axis (Fig. 40.18a). The wave function ψ for such a free particle moving along the x axis can be written as

Pitfall Prevention 41.1

The Wave Function Belongs to a System The common language in quantum mechanics is to associate a wave function with a particle. The wave function, however, is determined by the particle *and* its interaction with its environment, so it more rightfully belongs to a system. In many cases, the particle is the only part of the system that experiences a change, which is why the common language has developed. You will see examples in the future in which it is more proper to think of the system wave function rather than the particle wave function.

$$\psi(x) = Ae^{ikx} \tag{41.4}$$

◀ **Wave function for a free particle**

where A is a constant amplitude and $k = 2\pi/\lambda$ is the angular wave number (Eq. 16.8) of the wave representing the particle.[3]

One-Dimensional Wave Functions and Expectation Values

This section discusses only one-dimensional systems, where the particle must be located along the x axis, so the probability $|\psi|^2\ dV$ in Equation 41.3 is modified to become $|\psi|^2\ dx$. The probability that the particle will be found in the infinitesimal interval dx around the point x is

$$P(x)\ dx = |\psi|^2\ dx \tag{41.5}$$

Although it is not possible to specify the position of a particle with complete certainty, it is possible through $|\psi|^2$ to specify the probability of observing it in a region surrounding a given point x. The probability of finding the particle in the arbitrary interval $a \leq x \leq b$ is

$$P_{ab} = \int_a^b |\psi|^2\, dx \tag{41.6}$$

The probability P_{ab} is the area under the curve of $|\psi|^2$ versus x between the points $x = a$ and $x = b$ as in Figure 41.1.

Experimentally, there is a finite probability of finding a particle in an interval near some point at some instant. The value of that probability must lie between the

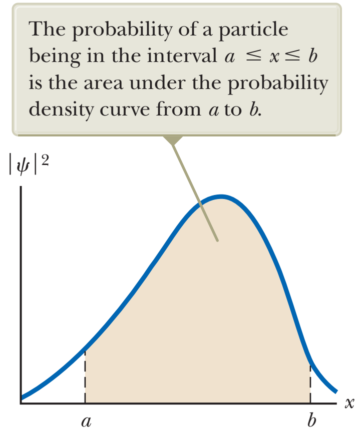


Figure 41.1 An arbitrary probability density curve for a particle.

[3]For the free particle, the full wave function, based on Equation 41.2, is

$$\Psi(x, t) = Ae^{ikx}e^{-i\omega t} = Ae^{i(kx-\omega t)} = A[\cos(kx - \omega t) + i \sin(kx - \omega t)]$$

The real part of this wave function has the same form as the waves we added together to form wave packets in Section 40.6.

limits 0 and 1. For example, if the probability is 0.30, there is a 30% chance of finding the particle in the interval.

Because the particle must be somewhere along the x axis, the sum of the probabilities over all values of x must be 1:

Normalization condition on ψ

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\psi|^2 \, dx = 1 \tag{41.7}$$

Any wave function satisfying Equation 41.7 is said to be **normalized.** Normalization is simply a statement that the particle exists at some point in space.

Once the wave function for a particle is known, it is possible to calculate the average position at which you would expect to find the particle after many measurements. This average position is called the **expectation value** of x and is defined by the equation

Expectation value for position x

$$\langle x \rangle \equiv \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi^* x \psi \, dx \tag{41.8}$$

(Brackets, $\langle \ldots \rangle$, are used to denote expectation values.) Furthermore, one can find the expectation value of any function $f(x)$ associated with the particle by using the following equation:[4]

Expectation value for a function $f(x)$

$$\langle f(x) \rangle \equiv \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi^* f(x) \psi \, dx \tag{41.9}$$

Quick Quiz 41.1 Consider the wave function for the free particle, Equation 41.4. At what value of x is the particle most likely to be found at a given time? **(a)** at $x = 0$ **(b)** at small nonzero values of x **(c)** at large values of x **(d)** anywhere along the x axis

Example 41.1 A Wave Function for a Particle

Consider a particle whose wave function is graphed in Figure 41.2 and is given by

$$\psi(x) = Ae^{-ax^2}$$

(A) What is the value of A if this wave function is normalized?

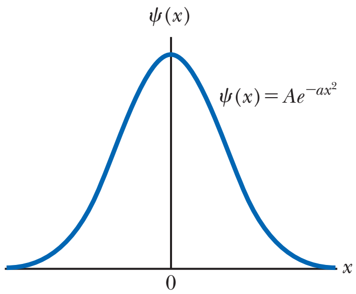


Figure 41.2 (Example 41.1) A symmetric wave function for a particle, given by $\psi(x) = Ae^{-ax^2}$.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The particle is not a free particle because the wave function is not a sinusoidal function. Figure 41.2 indicates that the particle is constrained to remain close to $x = 0$ at all times. Think of a physical system in which the particle always stays close to a given point. Examples of such systems are a block on a spring, a marble at the bottom of a bowl, and the bob of a simple pendulum.

Categorize Because the statement of the problem describes the wave nature of a particle, this example requires a quantum approach rather than a classical approach.

Analyze Apply the normalization condition, Equation 41.7, to the wave function:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\psi|^2 \, dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (Ae^{-ax^2})^2 \, dx = A^2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-2ax^2} \, dx = 1$$

[4]Expectation values are analogous to "weighted averages," in which each possible value of a function is multiplied by the probability of the occurrence of that value before summing over all possible values. We write the expectation value as $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi^* f(x) \psi \, dx$ rather than $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \psi^2 \, dx$ because $f(x)$ may be represented by an operator (such as a derivative) rather than a simple multiplicative function in more advanced treatments of quantum mechanics. In these situations, the operator is applied only to ψ and not to ψ^*.

41.1 continued

Express the integral as the sum of two integrals:

$$(1)\quad A^2\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx = A^2\left(\int_0^{\infty} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx + \int_{-\infty}^{0} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx\right) = 1$$

Change the integration variable from x to $-x$ in the second integral:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{0} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx = \int_{\infty}^{0} e^{-2a(-x)^2}\,(-dx) = -\int_{\infty}^{0} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx$$

Reverse the order of the limits, which introduces a negative sign:

$$-\int_{\infty}^{0} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx$$

Substitute this expression for the second integral in Equation (1):

$$A^2\left(\int_0^{\infty} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx\right) = 1$$

$$(2)\quad 2A^2\int_0^{\infty} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx = 1$$

Evaluate the integral with the help of Table B.6 in Appendix B:

$$\int_0^{\infty} e^{-2ax^2}\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2a}}$$

Substitute this result into Equation (2) and solve for A:

$$2A^2\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2a}}\right) = 1 \;\rightarrow\; A = \boxed{\left(\frac{2a}{\pi}\right)^{1/4}}$$

(B) What is the expectation value of x for this particle?

SOLUTION

Evaluate the expectation value using Equation 41.8:

$$\langle x\rangle \equiv \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi^* x\psi\,dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (Ae^{-ax^2})\,x\,(Ae^{-ax^2})\,dx$$

$$= A^2\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xe^{-2ax^2}dx$$

As in part (A), express the integral as a sum of two integrals:

$$(3)\quad \langle x\rangle = A^2\left(\int_0^{\infty} xe^{-2ax^2}\,dx + \int_{-\infty}^{0} xe^{-2ax^2}\,dx\right)$$

Change the integration variable from x to $-x$ in the second integral:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{0} xe^{-2ax^2}\,dx = \int_{\infty}^{0} -xe^{-2a(-x)^2}\,(-dx) = \int_{\infty}^{0} xe^{-2ax^2}\,dx$$

Reverse the order of the limits, which introduces a negative sign:

$$\int_{\infty}^{0} xe^{-2ax^2}\,dx = -\int_0^{\infty} xe^{-2ax^2}\,dx$$

Substitute this expression for the second integral in Equation (3):

$$\langle x\rangle = A^2\left(\int_0^{\infty} xe^{-2ax^2}\,dx - \int_0^{\infty} xe^{-2ax^2}\,dx\right) = \boxed{0}$$

Finalize Given the symmetry of the wave function around $x = 0$ in Figure 41.2, it is not surprising that the average position of the particle is at $x = 0$. In Section 41.7, we show that the wave function studied in this example represents the lowest-energy state of the quantum harmonic oscillator.

41.2 Analysis Model: Quantum Particle Under Boundary Conditions

The free particle discussed in Section 41.1 has no boundary conditions; it can be anywhere in space. The particle in Example 41.1 is not a free particle. Figure 41.2 shows that the particle is always restricted to positions near $x = 0$. In this section, we shall investigate the effects of restrictions on the motion of a quantum particle.

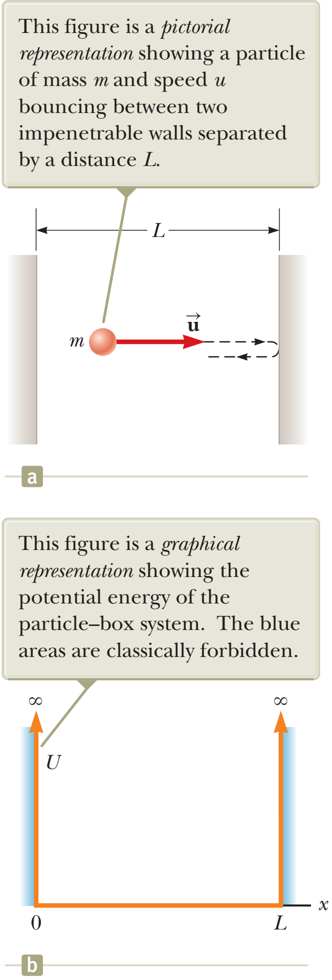


Figure 41.3 (a) The particle in a box. (b) The potential energy function for the system.

A Particle in a Box

We begin by applying some of the ideas we have developed to a simple physical problem, a particle confined to a one-dimensional region of space, called the *particle-in-a-box* problem (even though the "box" is one-dimensional!). From a classical viewpoint, if a particle is bouncing elastically back and forth along the x axis between two impenetrable walls separated by a distance L as in Figure 41.3a, it can be modeled as a particle under constant speed. If the speed of the particle is u, the magnitude of its momentum mu remains constant as does its kinetic energy. (Recall that in Chapter 39 we used u for particle speed to distinguish it from v, the speed of a reference frame.) Classical physics places no restrictions on the values of a particle's momentum and energy. The quantum-mechanical approach to this problem is quite different and requires that we find the appropriate wave function consistent with the conditions of the situation.

Because the walls are impenetrable, there is zero probability of finding the particle outside the box, so the wave function $\psi(x)$ must be zero for $x < 0$ and $x > L$. To be a mathematically well-behaved function, $\psi(x)$ must be continuous in space. There must be no discontinuous jumps in the value of the wave function at any point.[5] Therefore, if ψ is zero outside the walls, it must also be zero *at* the walls; that is, $\psi(0) = 0$ and $\psi(L) = 0$. Only those wave functions that satisfy these boundary conditions are allowed.

Figure 41.3b, a graphical representation of the particle-in-a-box problem, shows the potential energy of the particle–environment system as a function of the position of the particle. As long as the particle is inside the box, the potential energy of the system does not depend on the location of the particle and we can choose its constant value to be zero. Outside the box, we must ensure that the wave function is zero. We can do so by defining the system's potential energy as infinitely large if the particle were outside the box. Therefore, the only way a particle could be outside the box is if the system has an infinite amount of energy, which is impossible.

The wave function for a particle in the box can be expressed as a real sinusoidal function:[6]

$$\psi(x) = A\sin\left(\frac{2\pi x}{\lambda}\right) \tag{41.10}$$

where λ is the de Broglie wavelength associated with the particle. This wave function must satisfy the boundary conditions at the walls. The boundary condition $\psi(0) = 0$ is satisfied already because the sine function is zero when $x = 0$. The boundary condition $\psi(L) = 0$ gives

$$\psi(L) = 0 = A\sin\left(\frac{2\pi L}{\lambda}\right)$$

which can only be true if

$$\frac{2\pi L}{\lambda} = n\pi \quad\rightarrow\quad \lambda = \frac{2L}{n} \tag{41.11}$$

where $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. Therefore, only certain wavelengths for the particle are allowed! Each of the allowed wavelengths corresponds to a quantum state for the system, and n is the quantum number. Incorporating Equation 41.11 in Equation 41.10 gives

Wave functions for a particle in a box ▶

$$\psi_n(x) = A\sin\left(\frac{2\pi x}{2L/n}\right) = A\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \tag{41.12}$$

[5] If the wave function were not continuous at a point, the derivative of the wave function at that point would be infinite. This result leads to difficulties in the Schrödinger equation, for which the wave function is a solution as discussed in Section 41.3.

[6] We shall show this result explicitly in Section 41.3.

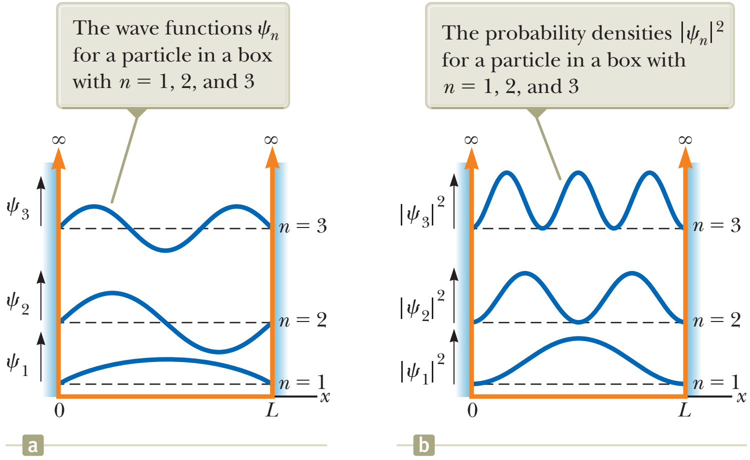


Figure 41.4 The first three allowed states for a particle confined to a one-dimensional box. The states are shown superimposed on the potential energy function of Figure 41.3b. The wave functions and probability densities are plotted vertically from separate axes that are offset vertically for clarity. The positions of these axes on the potential energy function suggest the relative energies of the states.

Normalizing this wave function shows that $A = \sqrt{2/L}$. (See Problem 18.) Therefore, the normalized wave function for the particle in a box is

$$\psi_n(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \tag{41.13}$$

◀ **Normalized wave function for a particle in a box**

Figures 41.4a and b are graphical representations of ψ_n versus x and $|\psi_n|^2$ versus x for $n = 1$, 2, and 3 for the particle in a box.[7] Although a general wave function ψ can have positive and negative values, $|\psi|^2$ is always positive. Because $|\psi|^2$ represents a probability density, a negative value for $|\psi|^2$ would be meaningless.

Further inspection of Figure 41.4b shows that $|\psi|^2$ is zero at the boundaries, satisfying our boundary conditions. In addition, $|\psi|^2$ is zero at other points, depending on the value of n. For $n = 2$, $|\psi_2|^2 = 0$ at $x = L/2$; for $n = 3$, $|\psi_3|^2 = 0$ at $x = L/3$ and at $x = 2L/3$. The number of zero points increases by one each time the quantum number increases by one.

Pitfall Prevention 41.2

Reminder: Energy Belongs to a System We often refer to the energy of a particle in commonly used language. As in Pitfall Prevention 41.1, we are actually describing the energy of the *system* of the particle and whatever environment is establishing the impenetrable walls. For the particle in a box, the only type of energy is kinetic energy belonging to the particle, which is the origin of the common description.

Because the wavelengths of the particle are restricted by the condition $\lambda = 2L/n$, the magnitude of the momentum of the particle is also restricted to specific values, which can be found from the expression for the de Broglie wavelength, Equation 40.17:

$$p = \frac{h}{\lambda} = \frac{h}{2L/n} = \frac{nh}{2L}$$

We have chosen the potential energy of the system to be zero when the particle is inside the box. Therefore, the energy of the system is simply the kinetic energy of the particle and the allowed values are given by

$$E_n = \tfrac{1}{2}mu^2 = \frac{p^2}{2m} = \frac{(nh/2L)^2}{2m}$$

$$E_n = \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)n^2 \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{41.14}$$

◀ **Quantized energies for a particle in a box**

This expression shows that the energy of the particle is quantized. The lowest allowed energy corresponds to the **ground state,** which is the lowest energy state for any system. For the particle in a box, the ground state corresponds to $n = 1$, for which $E_1 = h^2/8mL^2$. Because $E_n = n^2E_1$, the **excited states** corresponding to $n = 2, 3, 4, \ldots$ have energies given by $4E_1, 9E_1, 16E_1, \ldots$.

[7]Note that $n = 0$ is not allowed because, according to Equation 41.12, the wave function would be $\psi = 0$, which is not a physically reasonable wave function. For example, it cannot be normalized because $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}|\psi|^2\,dx = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}(0)\,dx = 0$, but Equation 41.7 tells us that this integral must equal 1.

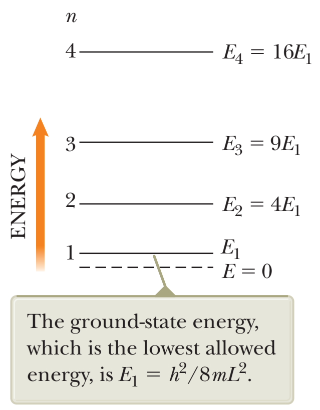


Figure 41.5 Energy-level diagram for a particle confined to a one-dimensional box of length L.

Figure 41.5 is an energy-level diagram describing the energy values of the allowed states. Because the lowest energy of the particle in a box is not zero, then, according to quantum mechanics, the particle can never be at rest! The smallest energy it can have, corresponding to $n = 1$, is called the **ground-state energy.** This result contradicts the classical viewpoint, in which $E = 0$ is an acceptable state, as are *all* positive values of E.

Quick Quiz 41.2 Consider an electron, a proton, and an alpha particle (a helium nucleus), each trapped separately in identical boxes. **(i)** Which particle corresponds to the highest ground-state energy? (a) the electron (b) the proton (c) the alpha particle (d) The ground-state energy is the same in all three cases. **(ii)** Which particle has the longest wavelength when the system is in the ground state? (a) the electron (b) the proton (c) the alpha particle (d) All three particles have the same wavelength.

Quick Quiz 41.3 A particle is in a box of length L. Suddenly, the length of the box is increased to $2L$. What happens to the energy levels shown in Figure 41.5? **(a)** nothing; they are unaffected. **(b)** They move farther apart. **(c)** They move closer together.

Example 41.2 Microscopic and Macroscopic Particles in Boxes

(A) An electron is confined between two impenetrable walls 0.200 nm apart. Determine the energy levels for the states $n = 1$, 2, and 3.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize In Figure 41.3a, imagine that the particle is an electron and the walls are very close together.

Categorize We evaluate the energy levels using an equation developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 41.14 for the $n = 1$ state:

$$E_1 = \frac{h^2}{8m_eL^2}(1)^2 = \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s})^2}{8(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(2.00 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{m})^2}$$

$$= 1.51 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{J} = \boxed{9.42\ \text{eV}}$$

Using $E_n = n^2E_1$, find the energies of the $n = 2$ and $n = 3$ states:

$$E_2 = (2)^2E_1 = 4(9.42\ \text{eV}) = \boxed{37.7\ \text{eV}}$$

$$E_3 = (3)^2E_1 = 9(9.42\ \text{eV}) = \boxed{84.8\ \text{eV}}$$

(B) Find the speed of the electron in the $n = 1$ state.

SOLUTION

Solve the classical expression for kinetic energy for the particle speed:

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2}m_eu^2 \rightarrow u = \sqrt{\frac{2K}{m_e}}$$

Recognize that the kinetic energy of the particle is equal to the system energy and substitute E_n for K:

$$(1)\quad u = \sqrt{\frac{2E_n}{m_e}}$$

Substitute numerical values from part (A):

$$u = \sqrt{\frac{2(1.51 \times 10^{-18}\ \text{J})}{9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg}}} = \boxed{1.82 \times 10^6\ \text{m/s}}$$

Simply placing the electron in the box results in a *minimum* speed of the electron equal to 0.6% of the speed of light!

(C) A 0.500-kg baseball is confined between two rigid walls of a stadium that can be modeled as a box of length 100 m. Calculate the minimum speed of the baseball.

41.2 continued

SOLUTION

Conceptualize In Figure 41.3a, imagine that the particle is a baseball and the walls are those of the stadium.

Categorize This part of the example is a substitution problem in which we apply a quantum approach to a macroscopic object.

Use Equation 41.14 for the $n = 1$ state:

$$E_1 = \frac{h^2}{8mL^2}(1)^2 = \frac{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J \cdot s})^2}{8(0.500\ \mathrm{kg})(100\ \mathrm{m})^2} = 1.10 \times 10^{-71}\ \mathrm{J}$$

Use Equation (1) to find the speed:

$$u = \sqrt{\frac{2(1.10 \times 10^{-71}\ \mathrm{J})}{0.500\ \mathrm{kg}}} = \boxed{6.63 \times 10^{-36}\ \mathrm{m/s}}$$

This speed is so small that the object can be considered to be at rest, which is what one would expect for the minimum speed of a macroscopic object.

WHAT IF? What if a sharp line drive is hit so that the baseball is moving with a speed of 150 m/s? What is the quantum number of the state in which the baseball now resides?

Answer We expect the quantum number to be very large because the baseball is a macroscopic object.

Evaluate the kinetic energy of the baseball:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}mu^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}(0.500\ \mathrm{kg})(150\ \mathrm{m/s})^2 = 5.62 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{J}$$

From Equation 41.14, calculate the quantum number n:

$$n = \sqrt{\frac{8mL^2E_n}{h^2}} = \sqrt{\frac{8(0.500\ \mathrm{kg})(100\ \mathrm{m})^2(5.62 \times 10^3\ \mathrm{J})}{(6.63 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J \cdot s})^2}} = 2.26 \times 10^{37}$$

This result is a tremendously large quantum number. As the baseball pushes air out of the way, hits the ground, and rolls to a stop, it moves through more than 10^{37} quantum states. These states are so close together in energy that we cannot observe the transitions from one state to the next. Rather, we see what appears to be a smooth variation in the speed of the ball. The quantum nature of the universe is simply not evident in the motion of macroscopic objects.

Example 41.3 The Expectation Values for the Particle in a Box

A particle of mass m is confined to a one-dimensional box between $x = 0$ and $x = L$. Find the expectation value of the position x of the particle in the state characterized by quantum number n.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Figure 41.4b shows that the probability for the particle to be at a given location varies with position within the box. Can you predict what the expectation value of x will be from the symmetry of the wave functions?

Categorize The statement of the example categorizes the problem for us: we focus on a quantum particle in a box and on the calculation of its expectation value of x.

Analyze In Equation 41.8, the integration from $-\infty$ to ∞ reduces to the limits 0 to L because $\psi = 0$ everywhere except in the box.

Substitute Equation 41.13 into Equation 41.8 to find the expectation value for x:

$$\langle x \rangle = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi_n{}^* x \psi_n\, dx = \int_0^L x\left[\sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)\right]^2 dx$$

$$= \frac{2}{L}\int_0^L x \sin^2\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) dx$$

continued

41.3 continued

Evaluate the integral by consulting an integral table or by mathematical integration:[8]

$$\langle x \rangle = \frac{2}{L}\left[\frac{x^2}{4} - \frac{x\sin\left(2\dfrac{n\pi x}{L}\right)}{4\dfrac{n\pi}{L}} - \frac{\cos\left(2\dfrac{n\pi x}{L}\right)}{8\left(\dfrac{n\pi}{L}\right)^2}\right]_0^L$$

$$= \frac{2}{L}\left[\frac{L^2}{4}\right] = \boxed{\frac{L}{2}}$$

Finalize This result shows that the expectation value of x is at the center of the box for all values of n, which you would expect from the symmetry of the square of the wave functions (the probability density) about the center (Fig. 41.4b).

The $n = 2$ wave function in Figure 41.4b has a value of zero at the midpoint of the box. Can the expectation value of the particle be at a position at which the particle has zero probability of existing? Remember that the expectation value is the *average* position. Therefore, the particle is as likely to be found to the right of the midpoint as to the left, so its average position is at the midpoint even though its probability of being there is zero. As an analogy, consider a group of students for whom the average final examination score is 50%. There is no requirement that some student achieve a score of exactly 50% for the average of all students to be 50%.

Boundary Conditions on Particles in General

The discussion of the particle in a box is very similar to the discussion in Chapter 18 of standing waves on strings:

- Because the ends of the string must be nodes, the wave functions for allowed waves must be zero at the boundaries of the string. Because the particle in a box cannot exist outside the box, the allowed wave functions for the particle must be zero at the boundaries.
- The boundary conditions on the string waves lead to quantized wavelengths and frequencies of the waves. The boundary conditions on the wave function for the particle in a box lead to quantized wavelengths and frequencies of the particle.

In quantum mechanics, it is very common for particles to be subject to boundary conditions. We therefore introduce a new analysis model, the **quantum particle under boundary conditions.** In many ways, this model is similar to the waves under boundary conditions model studied in Section 18.3. In fact, the allowed wavelengths for the wave function of a particle in a box (Eq. 41.11) are identical in form to the allowed wavelengths for mechanical waves on a string fixed at both ends (Eq. 18.4).

The quantum particle under boundary conditions model *differs* in some ways from the waves under boundary conditions model:

- In most cases of quantum particles, the wave function is *not* a simple sinusoidal function like the wave function for waves on strings. Furthermore, the wave function for a quantum particle may be a complex function.
- For a quantum particle, frequency is related to energy through $E = hf$, so the quantized frequencies lead to quantized energies.
- There may be no stationary "nodes" associated with the wave function of a quantum particle under boundary conditions. Systems more complicated than the particle in a box have more complicated wave functions, and some boundary conditions may not lead to zeroes of the wave function at fixed points.

[8]To integrate this function, first replace $\sin^2(n\pi x/L)$ with $\frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos 2n\pi x/L)$ (refer to Table B.3 in Appendix B), which allows $\langle x \rangle$ to be expressed as two integrals. The second integral can then be evaluated by partial integration (Section B.7 in Appendix B).

In general,

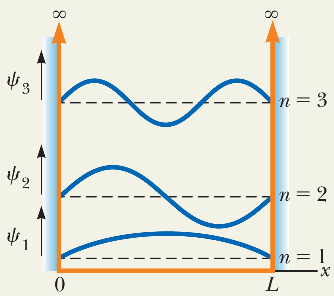
> an interaction of a quantum particle with its environment represents one or more boundary conditions, and, if the interaction restricts the particle to a finite region of space, results in quantization of the energy of the system.

Boundary conditions on quantum wave functions are related to the coordinates describing the problem. For the particle in a box, the wave function must be zero at two values of x. In the case of a three-dimensional system such as the hydrogen atom we shall discuss in Chapter 42, the problem is best presented in *spherical coordinates*. These coordinates, an extension of the plane polar coordinates introduced in Section 3.1, consist of a radial coordinate r and two angular coordinates. The generation of the wave function and application of the boundary conditions for the hydrogen atom are beyond the scope of this book. We shall, however, examine the behavior of some of the hydrogen-atom wave functions in Chapter 42.

Boundary conditions on wave functions that exist for all values of x require that the wave function approach zero as $x \rightarrow \infty$ (so that the wave function can be normalized) and remain finite as $x \rightarrow 0$. One boundary condition on any angular parts of wave functions is that adding 2π radians to the angle must return the wave function to the same value because an addition of 2π results in the same angular position.

Analysis Model **Quantum Particle Under Boundary Conditions**

Imagine a particle described by quantum physics that is subject to one or more boundary conditions. If the particle is restricted to a finite region of space by the boundary conditions, the energy of the system is quantized. Associated with each quantized energy is a quantum state characterized by a wave function and a quantum number.



Examples:

- an electron in a quantum dot cannot escape, quantizing the energies of the electron (Section 41.4)
- an electron in a hydrogen atom is restricted to stay near the nucleus of the atom, quantizing the energies of the atom (Chapter 42)
- two atoms are bound to form a diatomic molecule, quantizing the energies of vibration and rotation of the molecule (Chapter 43)
- a proton is trapped in a nucleus, quantizing its energy levels (Chapter 44)

41.3 The Schrödinger Equation

In Section 34.3, we discussed a linear wave equation for electromagnetic radiation that follows from Maxwell's equations. The waves associated with particles also satisfy a wave equation. The wave equation for material particles is different from that associated with photons because material particles have a nonzero rest energy. The appropriate wave equation was developed by Schrödinger in 1926. In analyzing the behavior of a quantum system, the approach is to determine a solution to this equation and then apply the appropriate boundary conditions to the solution. This process yields the allowed wave functions and energy levels of the system under consideration. Proper manipulation of the wave function then enables one to calculate all measurable features of the system.

The Schrödinger equation as it applies to a particle of mass m confined to moving along the x axis and interacting with its environment through a potential energy function $U(x)$ is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + U\psi = E\psi \qquad (41.15)$$

◀ Time-independent Schrödinger equation

Erwin Schrödinger
Austrian Theoretical Physicist (1887–1961)
Schrödinger is best known as one of the creators of quantum mechanics. His approach to quantum mechanics was demonstrated to be mathematically equivalent to the more abstract matrix mechanics developed by Heisenberg. Schrödinger also produced important papers in the fields of statistical mechanics, color vision, and general relativity.

where E is a constant equal to the total energy of the system (the particle and its environment). Because this equation is independent of time, it is commonly referred to as the **time-independent Schrödinger equation.** (We shall not discuss the time-dependent Schrödinger equation in this book.)

The Schrödinger equation is consistent with the principle of conservation of mechanical energy for an isolated system with no nonconservative forces acting. Problem 44 shows, both for a free particle and a particle in a box, that the first term in the Schrödinger equation reduces to the kinetic energy of the particle multiplied by the wave function. Therefore, Equation 41.15 indicates that the total energy of the system is the sum of the kinetic energy and the potential energy and that the total energy is a constant: $K + U = E =$ constant.

In principle, if the potential energy function U for a system is known, one can solve Equation 41.15 and obtain the wave functions and energies for the allowed states of the system. In addition, in many cases, the wave function ψ must satisfy boundary conditions. Therefore, once we have a preliminary solution to the Schrödinger equation, we impose the following conditions to find the exact solution and the allowed energies:

- ψ must be normalizable. That is, Equation 41.7 must be satisfied.
- ψ must go to 0 as $x \to \pm\infty$ and remain finite as $x \to 0$.
- ψ must be continuous in x and be single-valued everywhere; solutions to Equation 41.15 in different regions must join smoothly at the boundaries between the regions.
- $d\psi/dx$ must be finite, continuous, and single-valued everywhere for finite values of U. If $d\psi/dx$ were not continuous, we would not be able to evaluate the second derivative $d^2\psi/dx^2$ in Equation 41.15 at the point of discontinuity.

The task of solving the Schrödinger equation may be very difficult, depending on the form of the potential energy function. As it turns out, the Schrödinger equation is extremely successful in explaining the behavior of atomic and nuclear systems, whereas classical physics fails to explain this behavior. Furthermore, when quantum mechanics is applied to macroscopic objects, the results agree with classical physics.

The Particle in a Box Revisited

To see how the quantum particle under boundary conditions model is applied to a problem, let's return to our particle in a one-dimensional box of length L (see Fig. 41.3) and analyze it with the Schrödinger equation. Figure 41.3b is the potential-energy diagram that describes this problem. Potential-energy diagrams are a useful representation for understanding and solving problems with the Schrödinger equation.

Because of the shape of the curve in Figure 41.3b, the particle in a box is sometimes said to be in a **square well,**[9] where a **well** is an upward-facing region of the curve in a potential-energy diagram. (A downward-facing region is called a *barrier,* which we investigate in Section 41.5.) Figure 41.3b shows an infinite square well.

In the region $0 < x < L$, where $U = 0$, we can express the Schrödinger equation in the form

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} = -\frac{2mE}{\hbar^2}\psi = -k^2\psi \qquad \textbf{(41.16)}$$

where

$$k = \frac{\sqrt{2mE}}{\hbar}$$

Pitfall Prevention 41.3

Potential Wells A potential well such as that in Figure 41.3b is a graphical representation of energy, not a pictorial representation, so you would not see this shape if you were able to observe the situation. A particle moves *only horizontally* at a fixed vertical position in a potential-energy diagram, representing the conserved energy of the system of the particle and its environment.

[9]It is called a square well even if it has a rectangular shape in a potential-energy diagram.

The solution to Equation 41.16 is a function ψ whose second derivative is the negative of the same function multiplied by a constant k^2. Both the sine and cosine functions satisfy this requirement. Therefore, the most general solution to the equation is a linear combination of both solutions:

$$\psi(x) = A\sin kx + B\cos kx$$

where A and B are constants that are determined by the boundary and normalization conditions.

The first boundary condition on the wave function is that $\psi(0) = 0$:

$$\psi(0) = A\sin 0 + B\cos 0 = 0 + B = 0$$

which means that $B = 0$. Therefore, our solution reduces to

$$\psi(x) = A\sin kx$$

The second boundary condition, $\psi(L) = 0$, when applied to the reduced solution gives

$$\psi(L) = A\sin kL = 0$$

This equation could be satisfied by setting $A = 0$, but that would mean that $\psi = 0$ everywhere, which is not a valid wave function. The boundary condition is also satisfied if kL is an integral multiple of π, that is, if $kL = n\pi$, where n is an integer. Substituting $k = \sqrt{2mE}/\hbar$ into this expression gives

$$kL = \frac{\sqrt{2mE}}{\hbar}L = n\pi$$

Each value of the integer n corresponds to a quantized energy that we call E_n. Solving for the allowed energies E_n gives

$$E_n = \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)n^2 \qquad \textbf{(41.17)}$$

which are identical to the allowed energies in Equation 41.14.

Substituting the values of k in the wave function, the allowed wave functions $\psi_n(x)$ are given by

$$\psi_n(x) = A\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \qquad \textbf{(41.18)}$$

which is the wave function (Eq. 41.12) used in our initial discussion of the particle in a box.

41.4 A Particle in a Well of Finite Height

Now consider a particle in a *finite* potential well, that is, a system having a potential energy that is zero when the particle is in the region $0 < x < L$ and a finite value U when the particle is outside this region as in Figure 41.6. Classically, if the total energy E of the system is less than U, the particle is permanently bound in the potential well. If the particle were outside the well, its kinetic energy would have to be negative, which is an impossibility. According to quantum mechanics, however, a finite probability exists that the particle can be found outside the well even if $E < U$. That is, the wave function ψ is generally nonzero outside the well—regions I and III in Figure 41.6—so the probability density $|\psi|^2$ is also nonzero in these regions. Although this notion may be uncomfortable to accept, the uncertainty principle indicates that the energy of the system is uncertain. This uncertainty allows the particle to be outside the well as long as the apparent violation of conservation of energy does not exist in any measurable way.

In region II, where $U = 0$, the allowed wave functions are again sinusoidal because they represent solutions of Equation 41.16. The boundary conditions, however,

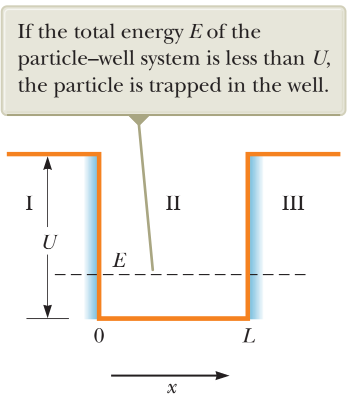


Figure 41.6 Potential-energy diagram of a well of finite height U and length L.

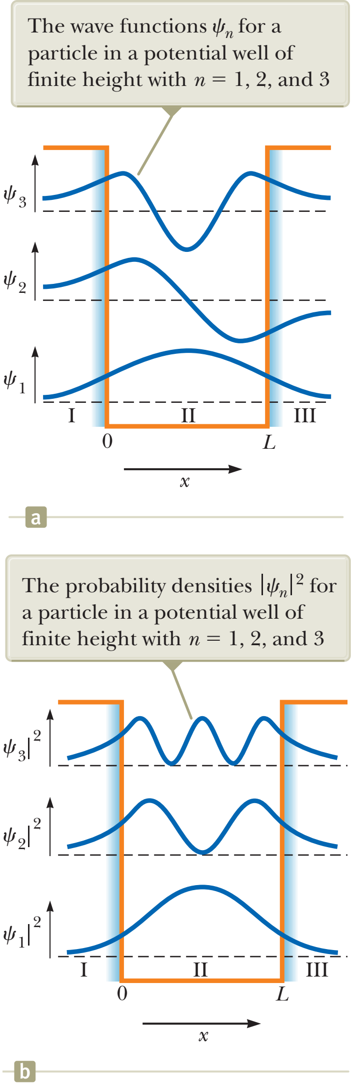


Figure 41.7 The first three allowed states for a particle in a potential well of finite height. The states are shown superimposed on the potential energy function of Figure 41.6. The wave functions and probability densities are plotted vertically from separate axes that are offset vertically for clarity. The positions of these axes on the potential energy function suggest the relative energies of the states.

no longer require that ψ be zero at the ends of the well, as was the case with the infinite square well.

The Schrödinger equation for regions I and III may be written

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} = \frac{2m(U - E)}{\hbar^2}\psi \tag{41.19}$$

Because $U > E$, the coefficient of ψ on the right-hand side is necessarily positive. Therefore, we can express Equation 41.19 as

$$\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} = C^2\psi \tag{41.20}$$

where $C^2 = 2m(U - E)/\hbar^2$ is a positive constant in regions I and III. As you can verify by substitution, the general solution of Equation 41.20 is

$$\psi = Ae^{Cx} + Be^{-Cx} \tag{41.21}$$

where A and B are constants.

We can use this general solution as a starting point for determining the appropriate solution for regions I and III. The solution must remain finite as $x \to \pm\infty$. Therefore, in region I, where $x < 0$, the function ψ cannot contain the term Be^{-Cx}. This requirement is handled by taking $B = 0$ in this region to avoid an infinite value for ψ for large negative values of x. Likewise, in region III, where $x > L$, the function ψ cannot contain the term Ae^{Cx}. This requirement is handled by taking $A = 0$ in this region to avoid an infinite value for ψ for large positive x values. Hence, the solutions in regions I and III are

$$\psi_{\text{I}} = Ae^{Cx} \qquad \text{for } x < 0$$

$$\psi_{\text{III}} = Be^{-Cx} \qquad \text{for } x > L$$

In region II, the wave function is sinusoidal and has the general form

$$\psi_{\text{II}}(x) = F\sin kx + G\cos kx$$

where F and G are constants.

These results show that the wave functions outside the potential well (where classical physics forbids the presence of the particle) decay exponentially with distance. At large negative x values, ψ_{I} approaches zero; at large positive x values, ψ_{III} approaches zero. These functions, together with the sinusoidal solution in region II, are shown in Figure 41.7a for the first three energy states. In evaluating the complete wave function, we impose the following boundary conditions:

$$\psi_{\text{I}} = \psi_{\text{II}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d\psi_{\text{I}}}{dx} = \frac{d\psi_{\text{II}}}{dx} \quad \text{at } x = 0$$

$$\psi_{\text{II}} = \psi_{\text{III}} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{d\psi_{\text{II}}}{dx} = \frac{d\psi_{\text{III}}}{dx} \quad \text{at } x = L$$

These four boundary conditions and the normalization condition (Eq. 41.7) are sufficient to determine the four constants A, B, F, and G and the allowed values of the energy E. Figure 41.7b plots the probability densities for these states. In each case, the wave functions inside and outside the potential well join smoothly at the boundaries.

The notion of trapping particles in potential wells is used in the burgeoning field of **nanotechnology,** which refers to the design and application of devices having dimensions ranging from 1 to 100 nm. The fabrication of these devices often involves manipulating single atoms or small groups of atoms to form very tiny structures or mechanisms.

One area of nanotechnology of interest to researchers is the **quantum dot,** a small region that is grown in a silicon crystal and acts as a potential well. This region can trap electrons into states with quantized energies. The wave functions for a particle in a quantum dot look similar to those in Figure 41.7a if L is on the order of nanometers. The storage of binary information using quantum dots is an active field of research. A simple binary scheme would involve associating a one with a quantum dot containing an electron and a zero with an empty dot. Other schemes involve cells of multiple dots such that arrangements of electrons among the dots correspond to ones and zeroes. Several research laboratories are studying the properties and potential applications of quantum dots. Information should be forthcoming from these laboratories at a steady rate in the next few years.

41.5 Tunneling Through a Potential Energy Barrier

Consider the potential energy function shown in Figure 41.8. In this situation, the potential energy has a constant value of U in the region of width L and is zero in all other regions.[10] A potential energy function of this shape is called a **square barrier,** and U is called the **barrier height.** A very interesting and peculiar phenomenon occurs when a moving particle encounters such a barrier of finite height and width. Suppose a particle of energy $E < U$ is incident on the barrier from the left (Fig. 41.8). Classically, the particle is reflected by the barrier. If the particle were located in region II, its kinetic energy would be negative, which is not classically allowed. Consequently, region II and therefore region III are both classically *forbidden* to the particle incident from the left. According to quantum mechanics, however, all regions are accessible to the particle, regardless of its energy. (Although all regions are accessible, the probability of the particle being in a classically forbidden region is very low.) According to the uncertainty principle, the particle could be within the barrier as long as the time interval during which it is in the barrier is short and consistent with Equation 40.26. If the barrier is relatively narrow, this short time interval can allow the particle to pass through the barrier.

Let's approach this situation using a mathematical representation. The Schrödinger equation has valid solutions in all three regions. The solutions in regions I and III are sinusoidal like Equation 41.18. In region II, the solution is exponential like Equation 41.21. Applying the boundary conditions that the wave functions in the three regions and their derivatives must join smoothly at the boundaries, a full solution, such as the one represented by the curve in Figure 41.8, can be found. Because the probability of locating the particle is proportional to $|\psi|^2$, the probability of finding the particle beyond the barrier in region III is nonzero. This result is in complete disagreement with classical physics. The movement of the particle to the far side of the barrier is called **tunneling** or **barrier penetration.**

The probability of tunneling can be described with a **transmission coefficient** T and a **reflection coefficient** R. The transmission coefficient represents the probability that the particle penetrates to the other side of the barrier, and the reflection coefficient is the probability that the particle is reflected by the barrier. Because the incident particle is either reflected or transmitted, we require that $T + R = 1$. An approximate expression for the transmission coefficient that is obtained in the case of $T << 1$ (a very wide barrier or a very high barrier, that is, $U >> E$) is

$$T \approx e^{-2CL} \tag{41.22}$$

where

$$C = \frac{\sqrt{2m(U - E)}}{\hbar} \tag{41.23}$$

This quantum model of barrier penetration and specifically Equation 41.22 show that T can be nonzero. That the phenomenon of tunneling is observed experimentally provides further confidence in the principles of quantum physics.

[10]It is common in physics to refer to L as the *length* of a well but the *width* of a barrier.

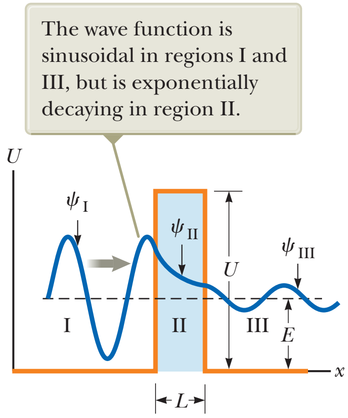


Figure 41.8 Wave function ψ for a particle incident from the left on a barrier of height U and width L. The wave function is plotted vertically from an axis positioned at the energy of the particle.

Pitfall Prevention 41.4

"Height" on an Energy Diagram The word *height* (as in *barrier height*) refers to an energy in discussions of barriers in potential-energy diagrams. For example, we might say the height of the barrier is 10 eV. On the other hand, the barrier *width* refers to the traditional usage of such a word and is an actual physical length measurement between the locations of the two vertical sides of the barrier.

Quick Quiz 41.4 Which of the following changes would increase the probability of transmission of a particle through a potential barrier? (You may choose more than one answer.) **(a)** decreasing the width of the barrier **(b)** increasing the width of the barrier **(c)** decreasing the height of the barrier **(d)** increasing the height of the barrier **(e)** decreasing the kinetic energy of the incident particle **(f)** increasing the kinetic energy of the incident particle

Example 41.4 Transmission Coefficient for an Electron

A 30-eV electron is incident on a square barrier of height 40 eV.

(A) What is the probability that the electron tunnels through the barrier if its width is 1.0 nm?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because the particle energy is smaller than the height of the potential barrier, we expect the electron to reflect from the barrier with a probability of 100% according to classical physics. Because of the tunneling phenomenon, however, there is a finite probability that the particle can appear on the other side of the barrier.

Categorize We evaluate the probability using an equation developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate the quantity $U - E$ that appears in Equation 41.23:

$$U - E = 40 \text{ eV} - 30 \text{ eV} = 10 \text{ eV}\left(\frac{1.6 \times 10^{-19}\text{ J}}{1 \text{ eV}}\right) = 1.6 \times 10^{-18}\text{ J}$$

Evaluate the quantity $2CL$ using Equation 41.23:

$$(1)\quad 2CL = 2\frac{\sqrt{2(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\text{ kg})(1.6 \times 10^{-18}\text{ J})}}{1.055 \times 10^{-34}\text{ J}\cdot\text{s}}(1.0 \times 10^{-9}\text{ m}) = 32.4$$

From Equation 41.22, find the probability of tunneling through the barrier:

$$T \approx e^{-2CL} = e^{-32.4} = \boxed{8.5 \times 10^{-15}}$$

(B) What is the probability that the electron tunnels through the barrier if its width is 0.10 nm?

SOLUTION

In this case, the width L in Equation (1) is one-tenth as large, so evaluate the new value of $2CL$:

$$2CL = (0.1)(32.4) = 3.24$$

From Equation 41.22, find the new probability of tunneling through the barrier:

$$T \approx e^{-2CL} = e^{-3.24} = \boxed{0.039}$$

In part (A), the electron has approximately 1 chance in 10^{14} of tunneling through the barrier. In part (B), however, the electron has a much higher probability (3.9%) of penetrating the barrier. Therefore, reducing the width of the barrier by only one order of magnitude increases the probability of tunneling by about 12 orders of magnitude!

41.6 Applications of Tunneling

As we have seen, tunneling is a quantum phenomenon, a manifestation of the wave nature of matter. Many examples exist (on the atomic and nuclear scales) for which tunneling is very important.

Alpha Decay

One form of radioactive decay is the emission of alpha particles (the nuclei of helium atoms) by unstable, heavy nuclei (Chapter 44). To escape from the nucleus, an alpha particle must penetrate a barrier whose height is several times larger than the energy of the nucleus–alpha particle system as shown in Figure 41.9. The barrier results from a combination of the attractive nuclear force (discussed in Chapter 44) and the Coulomb repulsion (discussed in Chapter 23) between the alpha particle and the rest of the nucleus. Occasionally, an alpha particle tunnels through the barrier, which explains the basic mechanism for this type of decay and the large variations in the mean lifetimes of various radioactive nuclei.

Figure 41.8 shows the wave function of a particle tunneling through a barrier in one dimension. A similar wave function having spherical symmetry describes the barrier penetration of an alpha particle leaving a radioactive nucleus. The wave function exists both inside and outside the nucleus, and its amplitude is constant in time. In this way, the wave function correctly describes the small but constant probability that the nucleus will decay. The moment of decay cannot be predicted. In general, quantum mechanics implies that the future is indeterminate. This feature is in contrast to classical mechanics, from which the trajectory of an object can be calculated to arbitrarily high precision from precise knowledge of its initial position and velocity and of the forces exerted on it. Do not think that the future is undetermined simply because we have incomplete information about the present. The wave function contains all the information about the state of a system. Sometimes precise predictions can be made, such as the energy of a bound system, but sometimes only probabilities can be calculated about the future. The fundamental laws of nature are probabilistic. Therefore, it appears that Einstein's famous statement about quantum mechanics, "God does not roll dice," was wrong.

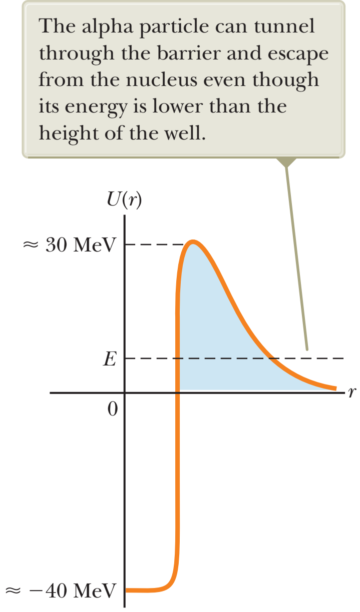


Figure 41.9 The potential well for an alpha particle in a nucleus.

A radiation detector can be used to show that a nucleus decays by emitting a particle at a particular moment and in a particular direction. To point out the contrast between this experimental result and the wave function describing it, Schrödinger imagined a box containing a cat, a radioactive sample, a radiation counter, and a vial of poison. When a nucleus in the sample decays, the counter triggers the administration of lethal poison to the cat. Quantum mechanics correctly predicts the probability of finding the cat dead when the box is opened. Before the box is opened, does the cat have a wave function describing it as fractionally dead, with some chance of being alive?

This question is under continuing investigation, never with actual cats but sometimes with interference experiments building upon the experiment described in Section 40.7. Does the act of measurement change the system from a probabilistic to a definite state? When a particle emitted by a radioactive nucleus is detected at one particular location, does the wave function describing the particle drop instantaneously to zero everywhere else in the Universe? (Einstein called such a state change a "spooky action at a distance.") Is there a fundamental difference between a quantum system and a macroscopic system? The answers to these questions are unknown.

Nuclear Fusion

The basic reaction that powers the Sun and, indirectly, almost everything else in the solar system is fusion, which we shall study in Chapter 45. In one step of the process that occurs at the core of the Sun, protons must approach one another to within such a small distance that they fuse and form a deuterium nucleus. (See Section 45.4.) According to classical physics, these protons cannot overcome and penetrate the barrier caused by their mutual electrical repulsion. Quantum mechanically, however, the protons are able to tunnel through the barrier and fuse together.

Scanning Tunneling Microscopes

The scanning tunneling microscope (STM) enables scientists to obtain highly detailed images of surfaces at resolutions comparable to the size of a *single atom*. Figure 41.10 (page 1284), showing the surface of a piece of graphite, demonstrates what STMs can do. What makes this image so remarkable is that its resolution is

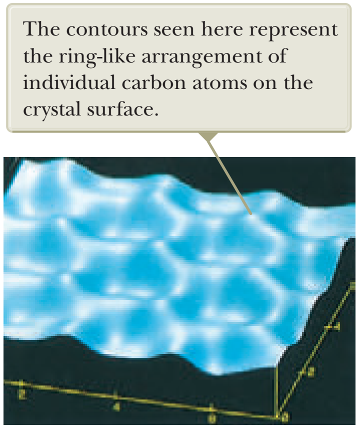


Photo courtesy of Paul K. Hansma, University of California, Santa Barbara

Figure 41.10 The surface of graphite as "viewed" with a scanning tunneling microscope. This type of microscope enables scientists to see details with a lateral resolution of about 0.2 nm and a vertical resolution of 0.001 nm.

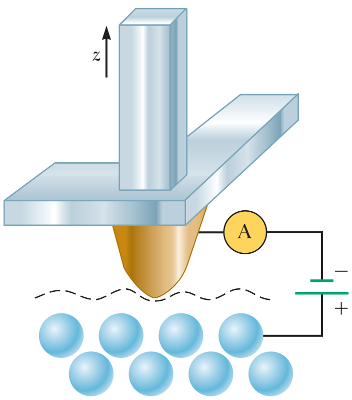


Figure 41.11 Schematic view of a scanning tunneling microscope. A scan of the tip over the sample can reveal surface contours down to the atomic level. An STM image is composed of a series of scans displaced laterally from one another. (Based on a drawing from P. K. Hansma, V. B. Elings, O. Marti, and C. Bracker, *Science* **242:**209, 1988. © 1988 by the AAAS.)

approximately 0.2 nm. For an optical microscope, the resolution is limited by the wavelength of the light used to make the image. Therefore, an optical microscope has a resolution no better than 200 nm, about half the wavelength of visible light, and so could never show the detail displayed in Figure 41.10.

Scanning tunneling microscopes achieve such high resolution by using the basic idea shown in Figure 41.11. An electrically conducting probe with a very sharp tip is brought near the surface to be studied. The empty space between tip and surface represents the "barrier" we have been discussing, and the tip and surface are the two walls of the "potential well." Because electrons obey quantum rules rather than Newtonian rules, they can "tunnel" across the barrier of empty space. If a voltage is applied between surface and tip, electrons in the atoms of the surface material can tunnel preferentially from surface to tip to produce a tunneling current. In this way, the tip samples the distribution of electrons immediately above the surface.

In the empty space between tip and surface, the electron wave function falls off exponentially (see region II in Fig. 41.8 and Example 41.4). For tip-to-surface distances $z > 1$ nm (that is, beyond a few atomic diameters), essentially no tunneling takes place. This exponential behavior causes the current of electrons tunneling from surface to tip to depend very strongly on z. By monitoring the tunneling current as the tip is scanned over the surface, scientists obtain a sensitive measure of the topography of the electron distribution on the surface. The result of this scan is used to make images like that in Figure 41.10. In this way, the STM can measure the height of surface features to within 0.001 nm, approximately 1/100 of an atomic diameter!

You can appreciate the sensitivity of STMs by examining Figure 41.10. Of the six carbon atoms in each ring, three appear lower than the other three. In fact, all six atoms are at the same height, but all have slightly different electron distributions. The three atoms that appear lower are bonded to other carbon atoms directly beneath them in the underlying atomic layer; as a result, their electron distributions, which are responsible for the bonding, extend downward beneath the surface. The atoms in the surface layer that appear higher do not lie directly over subsurface atoms and hence are not bonded to any underlying atoms. For these higher-appearing atoms, the electron distribution extends upward into the space above the surface. Because STMs map the topography of the electron distribution, this extra electron density makes these atoms appear higher in Figure 41.10.

The STM has one serious limitation: Its operation depends on the electrical conductivity of the sample and the tip. Unfortunately, most materials are not electrically conductive at their surfaces. Even metals, which are usually excellent electrical conductors, are covered with nonconductive oxides. A newer microscope, the atomic force microscope, or AFM, overcomes this limitation.

Resonant Tunneling Devices

Let's expand on the quantum-dot discussion in Section 41.4 by exploring the **resonant tunneling device.** Figure 41.12a shows the physical construction of such a device. The island of gallium arsenide in the center is a quantum dot located between two barriers formed from the thin extensions of aluminum arsenide. Figure 41.12b shows both the potential barriers encountered by electrons incident from the left and the quantized energy levels in the quantum dot. This situation differs from the one shown in Figure 41.8 in that there are quantized energy levels on the right of the first barrier. In Figure 41.8, an electron that tunnels through the barrier is considered a free particle and can have any energy. In contrast, the second barrier in Figure 41.12b imposes boundary conditions on the particle and quantizes its energy in the quantum dot. In Figure 41.12b, as the electron with the energy shown encounters the first barrier, it has no matching energy levels available on the right side of the barrier, which greatly reduces the probability of tunneling.

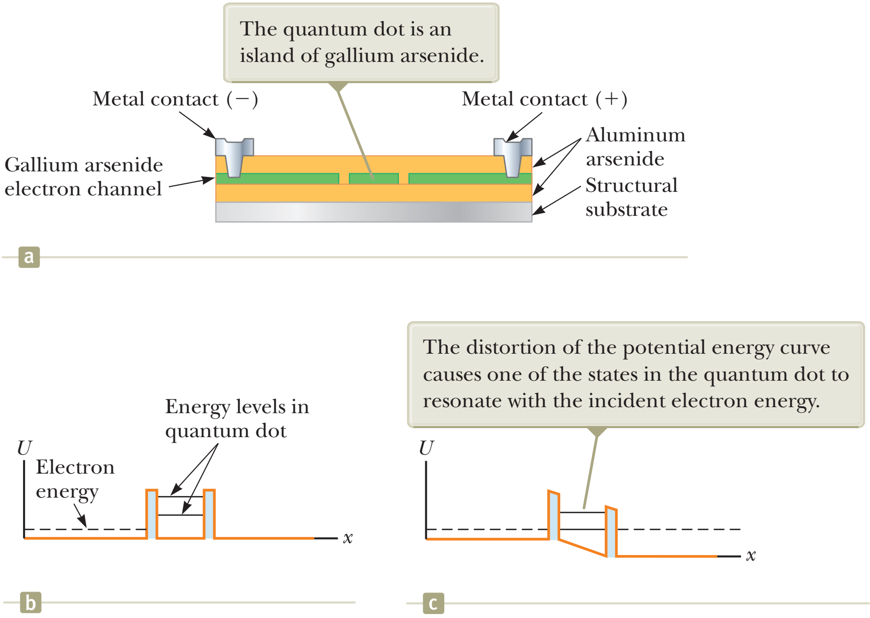


Figure 41.12 (a) The physical structure of a resonant tunneling device. (b) A potential-energy diagram showing the double barrier representing the walls of the quantum dot. (c) A voltage is applied across the device.

Figure 41.12c shows the effect of applying a voltage: the potential decreases with position as we move to the right across the device. The deformation of the potential barrier results in an energy level in the quantum dot coinciding with the energy of the incident electrons. This "resonance" of energies gives the device its name. When the voltage is applied, the probability of tunneling increases tremendously and the device carries current. In this manner, the device can be used as a very fast switch on a nanotechnological scale.

Resonant Tunneling Transistors

Figure 41.13a shows the addition of a gate electrode at the top of the resonant tunneling device over the quantum dot. This electrode turns the device into a **resonant**

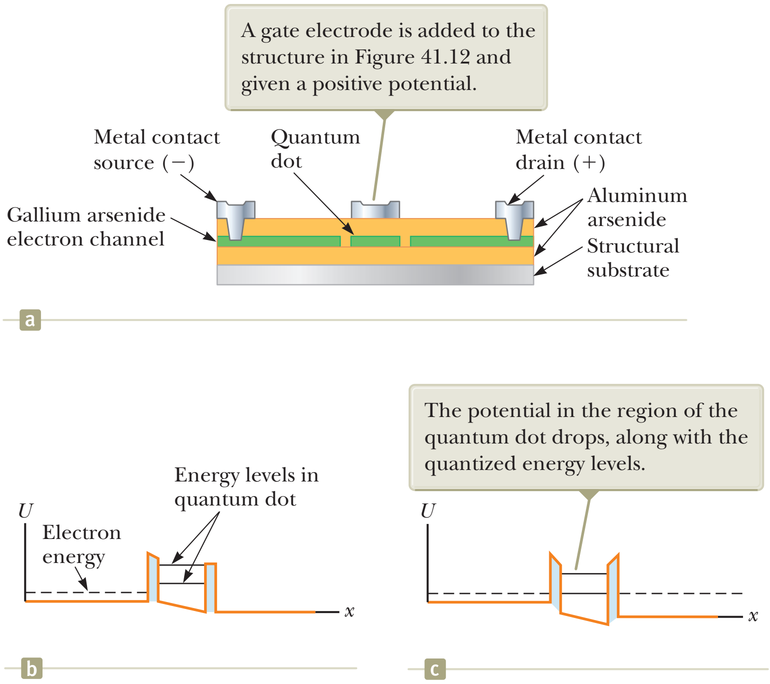


Figure 41.13 (a) A resonant tunneling transistor. (b) A potential-energy diagram showing the double barrier representing the walls of the quantum dot. (c) A voltage is applied to the gate electrode.

tunneling transistor. The basic function of a transistor is amplification, converting a small varying voltage into a large varying voltage. Figure 41.13b, representing the potential-energy diagram for the tunneling transistor, has a slope at the bottom of the quantum dot due to the differing voltages at the source and drain electrodes. In this configuration, there is no resonance between the electron energies outside the quantum dot and the quantized energies within the dot. By applying a small voltage to the gate electrode as in Figure 41.13c, the quantized energies can be brought into resonance with the electron energy outside the well and resonant tunneling occurs. The resulting current causes a voltage across an external resistor that is much larger than that of the gate voltage; hence, the device amplifies the input signal to the gate electrode.

41.7 The Simple Harmonic Oscillator

Consider a particle that is subject to a linear restoring force $F = -kx$, where k is a constant and x is the position of the particle relative to equilibrium ($x = 0$). The classical description of such a situation is provided by the particle in simple harmonic motion analysis model, which was discussed in Chapter 15. The potential energy of the system is, from Equation 15.20,

$$U = \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m\omega^2x^2$$

where the angular frequency of vibration is $\omega = \sqrt{k/m}$. Classically, if the particle is displaced from its equilibrium position and released, it oscillates between the points $x = -A$ and $x = A$, where A is the amplitude of the motion. Furthermore, its total energy E is, from Equation 15.21,

$$E = K + U = \tfrac{1}{2}kA^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}m\omega^2A^2$$

In the classical model, any value of E is allowed, including $E = 0$, which is the total energy when the particle is at rest at $x = 0$.

Let's investigate how the simple harmonic oscillator is treated from a quantum point of view. The Schrödinger equation for this problem is obtained by substituting $U = \frac{1}{2}m\omega^2x^2$ into Equation 41.15:

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + \tfrac{1}{2}m\omega^2x^2\psi = E\psi \tag{41.24}$$

The mathematical technique for solving this equation is beyond the level of this book; nonetheless, it is instructive to guess at a solution. We take as our guess the following wave function:

$$\psi = Be^{-Cx^2} \tag{41.25}$$

Substituting this function into Equation 41.24 shows that it is a satisfactory solution to the Schrödinger equation, provided that

$$C = \frac{m\omega}{2\hbar} \quad \text{and} \quad E = \tfrac{1}{2}\hbar\omega$$

It turns out that the solution we have guessed corresponds to the ground state of the system, which has an energy $\frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega$. Because $C = m\omega/2\hbar$, it follows from Equation 41.25 that the wave function for this state is

Wave function for the ground state of a simple harmonic oscillator ▶

$$\psi = Be^{-(m\omega/2\hbar)x^2} \tag{41.26}$$

where B is a constant to be determined from the normalization condition. This result is but one solution to Equation 41.24. The remaining solutions that describe the excited states are more complicated, but all solutions include the exponential factor e^{-Cx^2}.

The energy levels of a harmonic oscillator are quantized as we would expect because the oscillating particle is bound to stay near $x = 0$. The energy of a state having an arbitrary quantum number n is

$$E_n = \left(n + \tfrac{1}{2}\right)\hbar\omega \qquad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \tag{41.27}$$

The state $n = 0$ corresponds to the ground state, whose energy is $E_0 = \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega$; the state $n = 1$ corresponds to the first excited state, whose energy is $E_1 = \frac{3}{2}\hbar\omega$; and so on. The energy-level diagram for this system is shown in Figure 41.14. The separations between adjacent levels are equal and given by

$$\Delta E = \hbar\omega \tag{41.28}$$

Notice that the energy levels for the harmonic oscillator in Figure 41.14 are equally spaced, just as Planck proposed for the oscillators in the walls of the cavity that was used in the model for blackbody radiation in Section 40.1. Planck's Equation 40.4 for the energy levels of the oscillators differs from Equation 41.27 only in the term $\frac{1}{2}$ added to n. This additional term does not affect the energy emitted in a transition, given by Equation 40.5, which is equivalent to Equation 41.28. That Planck generated these concepts without the benefit of the Schrödinger equation is testimony to his genius.

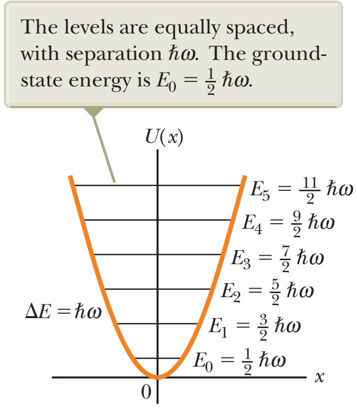


Figure 41.14 Energy-level diagram for a simple harmonic oscillator, superimposed on the potential energy function.

Example 41.5 Molar Specific Heat of Hydrogen Gas

In Figure 21.6 (Section 21.3), which shows the molar specific heat of hydrogen as a function of temperature, vibration does not contribute to the molar specific heat at room temperature. Explain why, modeling the hydrogen molecule as a simple harmonic oscillator. The effective spring constant for the bond in the hydrogen molecule is 573 N/m.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the only mode of vibration available to a diatomic molecule. This mode (shown in Fig. 21.5c) consists of the two atoms always moving in opposite directions with equal speeds.

Categorize We categorize this example as a quantum harmonic oscillator problem, with the molecule modeled as a two-particle system.

Analyze The motion of the particles relative to the center of mass can be analyzed by considering the oscillation of a single particle with reduced mass μ. (See Problem 40.)

Use the result of Problem 40 to evaluate the reduced mass of the hydrogen molecule, in which the masses of the two particles are the same:

$$\mu = \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2} = \frac{m^2}{2m} = \tfrac{1}{2}m$$

Using Equation 41.28, calculate the energy necessary to excite the molecule from its ground vibrational state to its first excited vibrational state:

$$\Delta E = \hbar\omega = \hbar\sqrt{\frac{k}{\mu}} = \hbar\sqrt{\frac{k}{\frac{1}{2}m}} = \hbar\sqrt{\frac{2k}{m}}$$

Substitute numerical values, noting that m is the mass of a hydrogen atom:

$$\Delta E = (1.055 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s})\sqrt{\frac{2(573\ \text{N/m})}{1.67 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg}}} = 8.74 \times 10^{-20}\ \text{J}$$

Set this energy equal to $\frac{3}{2}k_B T$ from Equation 21.19 and find the temperature at which the average molecular translational kinetic energy is equal to that required to excite the first vibrational state of the molecule:

$$\tfrac{3}{2}k_B T = \Delta E$$

$$T = \tfrac{2}{3}\left(\frac{\Delta E}{k_B}\right) = \tfrac{2}{3}\left(\frac{8.74 \times 10^{-20}\ \text{J}}{1.38 \times 10^{-23}\ \text{J/K}}\right) = 4.22 \times 10^3\ \text{K}$$

Finalize The temperature of the gas must be more than 4 000 K for the translational kinetic energy to be comparable to the energy required to excite the first vibrational state. This excitation energy must come from collisions between

continued

41.5 continued

molecules, so if the molecules do not have sufficient translational kinetic energy, they cannot be excited to the first vibrational state and vibration does not contribute to the molar specific heat. Hence, the curve in Figure 21.6 does not rise to a value corresponding to the contribution of vibration until the hydrogen gas has been raised to thousands of kelvins.

Figure 21.6 shows that rotational energy levels must be more closely spaced in energy than vibrational levels because they are excited at a lower temperature than the vibrational levels. The translational energy levels are those of a particle in a three-dimensional box, where the box is the container holding the gas. These levels are given by an expression similar to Equation 41.14. Because the box is macroscopic in size, L is very large and the energy levels are very close together. In fact, they are so close together that translational energy levels are excited at the temperature at which liquid hydrogen becomes a gas shown in Figure 21.6.

Summary

Definitions

The **wave function** Ψ for a system is a mathematical function that can be written as a product of a space function ψ for one particle of the system and a complex time function:

$$\Psi(\vec{\mathbf{r}}_1, \vec{\mathbf{r}}_2, \vec{\mathbf{r}}_3, \ldots, \vec{\mathbf{r}}_j, \ldots, t) = \psi(\vec{\mathbf{r}}_j)e^{-i\omega t} \quad \textbf{(41.2)}$$

where ω $(= 2\pi f)$ is the angular frequency of the wave function and $i = \sqrt{-1}$. The wave function contains within it all the information that can be known about the particle.

The measured position x of a particle, averaged over many trials, is called the **expectation value** of x and is defined by

$$\langle x \rangle \equiv \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi^* x \psi \, dx \quad \textbf{(41.8)}$$

Concepts and Principles

In quantum mechanics, a particle in a system can be represented by a wave function $\psi(x, y, z)$. The probability per unit volume (or probability density) that a particle will be found at a point is $|\psi|^2 = \psi^*\psi$, where ψ^* is the complex conjugate of ψ. If the particle is confined to moving along the x axis, the probability that it is located in an interval dx is $|\psi|^2 \, dx$. Furthermore, the sum of all these probabilities over all values of x must be 1:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |\psi|^2 \, dx = 1 \quad \textbf{(41.7)}$$

This expression is called the **normalization condition.**

If a particle of mass m is confined to moving in a one-dimensional box of length L whose walls are impenetrable, then ψ must be zero at the walls and outside the box. The wave functions for this system are given by

$$\psi(x) = A \sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right) \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \quad \textbf{(41.12)}$$

where A is the maximum value of ψ. The allowed states of a particle in a box have quantized energies given by

$$E_n = \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)n^2 \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \quad \textbf{(41.14)}$$

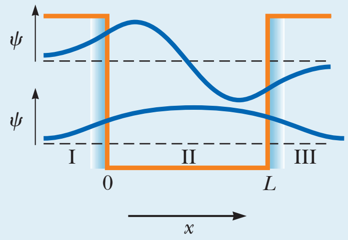
The wave function for a system must satisfy the **Schrödinger equation.** The time-independent Schrödinger equation for a particle confined to moving along the x axis is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\frac{d^2\psi}{dx^2} + U\psi = E\psi \quad \textbf{(41.15)}$$

where U is the potential energy of the system and E is the total energy.

Analysis Models for Problem Solving

Quantum Particle Under Boundary Conditions. An interaction of a quantum particle with its environment represents one or more boundary conditions. If the interaction restricts the particle to a finite region of space, the energy of the system is quantized. All wave functions must satisfy the following four boundary conditions: (1) $\psi(x)$ must remain finite as x approaches 0, (2) $\psi(x)$ must approach zero as x approaches $\pm\infty$, (3) $\psi(x)$ must be continuous for all values of x, and (4) $d\psi/dx$ must be continuous for all finite values of $U(x)$. If the solution to Equation 41.15 is piecewise, conditions (3) and (4) must be applied at the boundaries between regions of x in which Equation 41.15 has been solved.



Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. A beam of quantum particles with kinetic energy 2.00 eV is reflected from a potential barrier of small width and original height 3.00 eV. How does the fraction of the particles that are reflected change as the barrier height is reduced to 2.01 eV? (a) It increases. (b) It decreases. (c) It stays constant at zero. (d) It stays constant at 1. (e) It stays constant with some other value.

2. A quantum particle of mass m_1 is in a square well with infinitely high walls and length 3 nm. Rank the situations (a) through (e) according to the particle's energy from highest to lowest, noting any cases of equality. (a) The particle of mass m_1 is in the ground state of the well. (b) The same particle is in the $n = 2$ excited state of the same well. (c) A particle with mass $2m_1$ is in the ground state of the same well. (d) A particle of mass m_1 in the ground state of the same well, and the uncertainty principle has become inoperative; that is, Planck's constant has been reduced to zero. (e) A particle of mass m_1 is in the ground state of a well of length 6 nm.

3. Is each one of the following statements (a) through (e) true or false for an electron? (a) It is a quantum particle, behaving in some experiments like a classical particle and in some experiments like a classical wave. (b) Its rest energy is zero. (c) It carries energy in its motion. (d) It carries momentum in its motion. (e) Its motion is described by a wave function that has a wavelength and satisfies a wave equation.

4. Is each one of the following statements (a) through (e) true or false for a photon? (a) It is a quantum particle, behaving in some experiments like a classical particle and in some experiments like a classical wave. (b) Its rest energy is zero. (c) It carries energy in its motion. (d) It carries momentum in its motion. (e) Its motion is described by a wave function that has a wavelength and satisfies a wave equation.

5. A particle in a rigid box of length L is in the first excited state for which $n = 2$ (Fig. OQ41.5). Where is the particle most likely to be found? (a) At the center of the box. (b) At either end of the box. (c) All points in the box are equally likely. (d) One-fourth of the way from either end of the box. (e) None of those answers is correct.

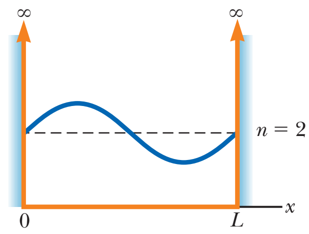


Figure OQ41.5

6. Two square wells have the same length. Well 1 has walls of finite height, and well 2 has walls of infinite height. Both wells contain identical quantum particles, one in each well. **(i)** Is the wavelength of the ground-state wave function (a) greater for well 1, (b) greater for well 2, or (c) equal for both wells? **(ii)** Is the magnitude of the ground-state momentum (a) greater for well 1, (b) greater for well 2, or (c) equal for both wells? **(iii)** Is the ground-state energy of the particle (a) greater for well 1, (b) greater for well 2, or (c) equal for both wells?

7. The probability of finding a certain quantum particle in the section of the x axis between $x = 4$ nm and $x = 7$ nm is 48%. The particle's wave function $\psi(x)$ is constant over this range. What numerical value can be attributed to $\psi(x)$, in units of $\text{nm}^{-1/2}$? (a) 0.48 (b) 0.16 (c) 0.12 (d) 0.69 (e) 0.40

8. Suppose a tunneling current in an electronic device goes through a potential-energy barrier. The tunneling current is small because the width of the barrier is large and the barrier is high. To increase the current most effectively, what should you do? (a) Reduce the width of the barrier. (b) Reduce the height of the barrier. (c) Either choice (a) or choice (b) is equally effective. (d) Neither choice (a) nor choice (b) increases the current.

9. Unlike the idealized diagram of Figure 41.11, a typical tip used for a scanning tunneling microscope is rather jagged on the atomic scale, with several irregularly spaced points. For such a tip, does most of the tunneling current occur between the sample and (a) all the points of the tip equally, (b) the most centrally located point, (c) the point closest to the sample, or (d) the point farthest from the sample?

10. Figure OQ41.10 represents the wave function for a hypothetical quantum particle in a given region. From the choices *a* through *e*, at what value of *x* is the particle most likely to be found?

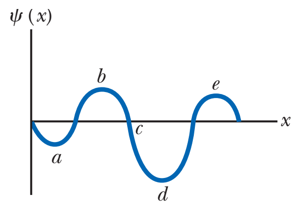


Figure OQ41.10

Conceptual Questions

$\boxed{1.}$ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Richard Feynman said, "A philosopher once said that 'it is necessary for the very existence of science that the same conditions always produce the same results.' Well, they don't!" In view of what has been discussed in this chapter, present an argument showing that the philosopher's statement is false. How might the statement be reworded to make it true?

$\boxed{2.}$ Discuss the relationship between ground-state energy and the uncertainty principle.

3. For a quantum particle in a box, the probability density at certain points is zero as seen in Figure CQ41.3. Does this value imply that the particle cannot move across these points? Explain.

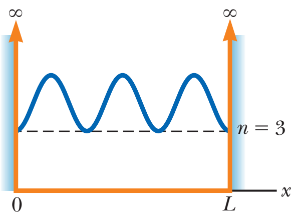


Figure CQ41.3

4. Why are the following wave functions not physically possible for all values of *x*? (a) $\psi(x) = Ae^x$ (b) $\psi(x) = A \tan x$

5. What is the significance of the wave function ψ?

6. In quantum mechanics, it is possible for the energy *E* of a particle to be less than the potential energy, but classically this condition is not possible. Explain.

7. Consider the wave functions in Figure CQ41.7. Which of them are not physically significant in the interval shown? For those that are not, state why they fail to qualify.

8. How is the Schrödinger equation useful in describing quantum phenomena?

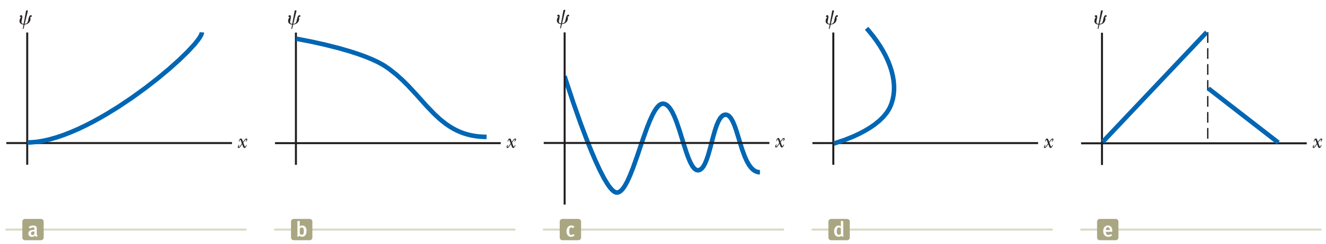


Figure CQ41.7

Problems

The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

$\boxed{1.}$ full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 41.1 The Wave Function

$\boxed{1.}$ **M** A free electron has a wave function

$$\psi(x) = Ae^{i(5.00 \times 10^{10}\ x)}$$

where *x* is in meters. Find its (a) de Broglie wavelength, (b) momentum, and (c) kinetic energy in electron volts.

2. The wave function for a particle is given by $\psi(x) = Ae^{-|x|/a}$, where *A* and *a* are constants. (a) Sketch this function for values of *x* in the interval $-3a < x < 3a$. (b) Determine the value of *A*. (c) Find the probability that the particle will be found in the interval $-a < x < a$.

3. The wave function for a quantum particle is given by $\psi(x) = Ax$ between $x = 0$ and $x = 1.00$, and $\psi(x) = 0$ elsewhere. Find (a) the value of the normalization constant A, (b) the probability that the particle will be found between $x = 0.300$ and $x = 0.400$, and (c) the expectation value of the particle's position.

4. The wave function for a quantum particle is

$$\psi(x) = \sqrt{\frac{a}{\pi(x^2 + a^2)}}$$

for $a > 0$ and $-\infty < x < +\infty$. Determine the probability that the particle is located somewhere between $x = -a$ and $x = +a$.

Section 41.2 Analysis Model: Quantum Particle Under Boundary Conditions

5. (a) Use the quantum-particle-in-a-box model to calculate the first three energy levels of a neutron trapped in an atomic nucleus of diameter 20.0 fm. (b) Explain whether the energy-level differences have a realistic order of magnitude.

6. An electron that has an energy of approximately 6 eV moves between infinitely high walls 1.00 nm apart. Find (a) the quantum number n for the energy state the electron occupies and (b) the precise energy of the electron.

7. An electron is contained in a one-dimensional box of length 0.100 nm. (a) Draw an energy-level diagram for the electron for levels up to $n = 4$. (b) Photons are emitted by the electron making downward transitions that could eventually carry it from the $n = 4$ state to the $n = 1$ state. Find the wavelengths of all such photons.

8. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A proton is in an infinitely deep potential well of length 1.00 nm. It absorbs a microwave photon of wavelength 6.06 mm and is excited into the next available quantum state.

9. AMT A ruby laser emits 694.3-nm light. Assume light of this wavelength is due to a transition of an electron in a box from its $n = 2$ state to its $n = 1$ state. Find the length of the box.

10. A laser emits light of wavelength λ. Assume this light is due to a transition of an electron in a box from its $n = 2$ state to its $n = 1$ state. Find the length of the box.

11. The nuclear potential energy that binds protons and neutrons in a nucleus is often approximated by a square well. Imagine a proton confined in an infinitely high square well of length 10.0 fm, a typical nuclear diameter. Assuming the proton makes a transition from the $n = 2$ state to the ground state, calculate (a) the energy and (b) the wavelength of the emitted photon. (c) Identify the region of the electromagnetic spectrum to which this wavelength belongs.

12. W A proton is confined to move in a one-dimensional box of length 0.200 nm. (a) Find the lowest possible energy of the proton. (b) **What If?** What is the lowest possible energy of an electron confined to the same box? (c) How do you account for the great difference in your results for parts (a) and (b)?

13. W An electron is confined to a one-dimensional region in which its ground-state ($n = 1$) energy is 2.00 eV. (a) What is the length L of the region? (b) What energy input is required to promote the electron to its first excited state?

14. A 4.00-g particle confined to a box of length L has a speed of 1.00 mm/s. (a) What is the classical kinetic energy of the particle? (b) If the energy of the first excited state ($n = 2$) is equal to the kinetic energy found in part (a), what is the value of L? (c) Is the result found in part (b) realistic? Explain.

15. A photon with wavelength λ is absorbed by an electron confined to a box. As a result, the electron moves from state $n = 1$ to $n = 4$. (a) Find the length of the box. (b) What is the wavelength λ' of the photon emitted in the transition of that electron from the state $n = 4$ to the state $n = 2$?

16. For a quantum particle of mass m in the ground state of a square well with length L and infinitely high walls, the uncertainty in position is $\Delta x \approx L$. (a) Use the uncertainty principle to estimate the uncertainty in its momentum. (b) Because the particle stays inside the box, its average momentum must be zero. Its average squared momentum is then $\langle p^2 \rangle \approx (\Delta p)^2$. Estimate the energy of the particle. (c) State how the result of part (b) compares with the actual ground-state energy.

17. A quantum particle is described by the wave function

$$\psi(x) = \begin{cases} A\cos\left(\dfrac{2\pi x}{L}\right) & \text{for } -\dfrac{L}{4} \le x \le \dfrac{L}{4} \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

(a) Determine the normalization constant A. (b) What is the probability that the particle will be found between $x = 0$ and $x = L/8$ if its position is measured?

18. The wave function for a quantum particle confined to moving in a one-dimensional box located between $x = 0$ and $x = L$ is

$$\psi(x) = A\sin\left(\frac{n\pi x}{L}\right)$$

Use the normalization condition on ψ to show that

$$A = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}$$

19. A quantum particle in an infinitely deep square well has a wave function given by

$$\psi_2(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}}\sin\left(\frac{2\pi x}{L}\right)$$

for $0 \le x \le L$ and zero otherwise. (a) Determine the expectation value of x. (b) Determine the probability of finding the particle near $\frac{1}{2}L$ by calculating the probability that the particle lies in the range $0.490L \le x \le 0.510L$. (c) **What If?** Determine the probability of finding the particle near $\frac{1}{4}L$ by calculating the probability that the particle lies in the range $0.240L \le x \le 0.260L$.

(d) Argue that the result of part (a) does not contradict the results of parts (b) and (c).

20. An electron in an infinitely deep square well has a wave function that is given by

$$\psi_3(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}} \sin\left(\frac{3\pi x}{L}\right)$$

for $0 \le x \le L$ and is zero otherwise. (a) What are the most probable positions of the electron? (b) Explain how you identify them.

21. An electron is trapped in an infinitely deep potential well 0.300 nm in length. (a) If the electron is in its ground state, what is the probability of finding it within 0.100 nm of the left-hand wall? (b) Identify the classical probability of finding the electron in this interval and state how it compares with the answer to part (a). (c) Repeat parts (a) and (b) assuming the particle is in the 99th energy state.

22. A quantum particle is in the $n = 1$ state of an infinitely deep square well with walls at $x = 0$ and $x = L$. Let ℓ be an arbitrary value of x between $x = 0$ and $x = L$. (a) Find an expression for the probability, as a function of ℓ, that the particle will be found between $x = 0$ and $x = \ell$. (b) Sketch the probability as a function of the variable ℓ/L. Choose values of ℓ/L ranging from 0 to 1.00 in steps of 0.100. (c) Explain why the probability function must have particular values at $\ell/L = 0$ and at $\ell/L = 1$. (d) Find the value of ℓ for which the probability of finding the particle between $x = 0$ and $x = \ell$ is twice the probability of finding the particle between $x = \ell$ and $x = L$. *Suggestion:* Solve the transcendental equation for ℓ/L numerically.

23. M A quantum particle in an infinitely deep square well has a wave function that is given by

$$\psi_1(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{L}} \sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{L}\right)$$

for $0 \le x \le L$ and is zero otherwise. (a) Determine the probability of finding the particle between $x = 0$ and $x = \frac{1}{3}L$. (b) Use the result of this calculation and a symmetry argument to find the probability of finding the particle between $x = \frac{1}{3}L$ and $x = \frac{2}{3}L$. Do not re-evaluate the integral.

Section 41.3 The Schrödinger Equation

24. Show that the wave function $\psi = Ae^{i(kx-\omega t)}$ is a solution to the Schrödinger equation (Eq. 41.15), where $k = 2\pi/\lambda$ and $U = 0$.

25. The wave function of a quantum particle of mass m is

$$\psi(x) = A\cos(kx) + B\sin(kx)$$

where A, B, and k are constants. (a) Assuming the particle is free ($U = 0$), show that $\psi(x)$ is a solution of the Schrödinger equation (Eq. 41.15). (b) Find the corresponding energy E of the particle.

26. Consider a quantum particle moving in a one-dimensional box for which the walls are at $x = -L/2$ and $x = L/2$. (a) Write the wave functions and probability densities for $n = 1$, $n = 2$, and $n = 3$. (b) Sketch the wave functions and probability densities.

27. In a region of space, a quantum particle with zero total energy has a wave function

$$\psi(x) = Axe^{-x^2/L^2}$$

(a) Find the potential energy U as a function of x. (b) Make a sketch of $U(x)$ versus x.

28. A quantum particle of mass m moves in a potential well of length $2L$. Its potential energy is infinite for $x < -L$ and for $x > +L$. In the region $-L < x < L$, its potential energy is given by

$$U(x) = \frac{-\hbar^2 x^2}{mL^2(L^2 - x^2)}$$

In addition, the particle is in a stationary state that is described by the wave function $\psi(x) = A(1 - x^2/L^2)$ for $-L < x < +L$ and by $\psi(x) = 0$ elsewhere. (a) Determine the energy of the particle in terms of $\hbar$, m, and L. (b) Determine the normalization constant A. (c) Determine the probability that the particle is located between $x = -L/3$ and $x = +L/3$.

Section 41.4 A Particle in a Well of Finite Height

29. Sketch (a) the wave function $\psi(x)$ and (b) the probability density $|\psi(x)|^2$ for the $n = 4$ state of a quantum particle in a finite potential well. (See Fig. 41.7.)

30. Suppose a quantum particle is in its ground state in a box that has infinitely high walls (see Fig. 41.4a). Now suppose the left-hand wall is suddenly lowered to a finite height and width. (a) Qualitatively sketch the wave function for the particle a short time later. (b) If the box has a length L, what is the wavelength of the wave that penetrates the left-hand wall?

Section 41.5 Tunneling Through a Potential Energy Barrier

31. M An electron with kinetic energy $E = 5.00$ eV is incident on a barrier of width $L = 0.200$ nm and height $U = 10.0$ eV (Fig. P41.31). What is the probability that the electron (a) tunnels through the barrier? (b) Is reflected?

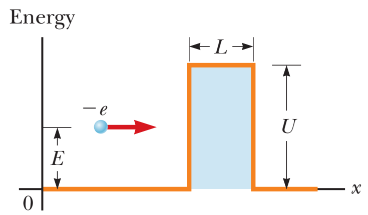


Figure P41.31 Problems 31 and 32.

32. W An electron having total energy $E = 4.50$ eV approaches a rectangular energy barrier with $U = 5.00$ eV and $L = 950$ pm as shown in Figure P41.31. Classically, the electron cannot pass through the barrier because $E < U$. Quantum-mechanically, however, the probability of tunneling is not zero. (a) Calculate this probability, which is the transmission coefficient. (b) To what value would the width L of the potential barrier have to be increased for the chance of an incident 4.50-eV electron tunneling through the barrier to be one in one million?

33. W An electron has a kinetic energy of 12.0 eV. The electron is incident upon a rectangular barrier of height 20.0 eV and width 1.00 nm. If the electron absorbed all the energy of a photon of green light (with wavelength 546 nm) at the instant it reached the barrier, by what factor would the electron's probability of tunneling through the barrier increase?

Section 41.6 Applications of Tunneling

34. W A scanning tunneling microscope (STM) can precisely determine the depths of surface features because the current through its tip is very sensitive to differences in the width of the gap between the tip and the sample surface. Assume the electron wave function falls off exponentially in this direction with a decay length of 0.100 nm, that is, with $C = 10.0\ \text{nm}^{-1}$. Determine the ratio of the current when the STM tip is 0.500 nm above a surface feature to the current when the tip is 0.515 nm above the surface.

35. M The design criterion for a typical scanning tunneling microscope (STM) specifies that it must be able to detect, on the sample below its tip, surface features that differ in height by only 0.002 00 nm. Assuming the electron transmission coefficient is e^{-2CL} with $C = 10.0\ \text{nm}^{-1}$, what percentage change in electron transmission must the electronics of the STM be able to detect to achieve this resolution?

Section 41.7 The Simple Harmonic Oscillator

36. A one-dimensional harmonic oscillator wave function is

$$\psi = Axe^{-bx^2}$$

(a) Show that ψ satisfies Equation 41.24. (b) Find b and the total energy E. (c) Is this wave function for the ground state or for the first excited state?

37. W A quantum simple harmonic oscillator consists of an electron bound by a restoring force proportional to its position relative to a certain equilibrium point. The proportionality constant is 8.99 N/m. What is the longest wavelength of light that can excite the oscillator?

38. A quantum simple harmonic oscillator consists of a particle of mass m bound by a restoring force proportional to its position relative to a certain equilibrium point. The proportionality constant is k. What is the longest wavelength of light that can excite the oscillator?

39. (a) Normalize the wave function for the ground state of a simple harmonic oscillator. That is, apply Equation 41.7 to Equation 41.26 and find the required value for the constant B in terms of m, ω, and fundamental constants. (b) Determine the probability of finding the oscillator in a narrow interval $-\delta/2 < x < \delta/2$ around its equilibrium position.

40. Two particles with masses m_1 and m_2 are joined by a light spring of force constant k. They vibrate along a straight line with their center of mass fixed. (a) Show that the total energy

$$\tfrac{1}{2}m_1u_1^{\,2} + \tfrac{1}{2}m_2u_2^{\,2} + \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2$$

can be written as $\frac{1}{2}\mu u^2 + \frac{1}{2}kx^2$, where $u = |u_1| + |u_2|$ is the *relative* speed of the particles and $\mu = m_1m_2/(m_1 + m_2)$ is the reduced mass of the system. This result demonstrates that the pair of freely vibrating particles can be precisely modeled as a single particle vibrating on one end of a spring that has its other end fixed. (b) Differentiate the equation

$$\tfrac{1}{2}\mu u^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}kx^2 = \text{constant}$$

with respect to x. Proceed to show that the system executes simple harmonic motion. (c) Find its frequency.

41. The total energy of a particle–spring system in which the particle moves with simple harmonic motion along the x axis is

$$E = \frac{p_x^{\,2}}{2m} + \frac{kx^2}{2}$$

where p_x is the momentum of the quantum particle and k is the spring constant. (a) Using the uncertainty principle, show that this expression can also be written as

$$E \geq \frac{p_x^{\,2}}{2m} + \frac{k\hbar^2}{8p_x^{\,2}}$$

(b) Show that the minimum energy of the harmonic oscillator is

$$E_{\text{min}} = K + U = \tfrac{1}{4}\hbar\sqrt{\frac{k}{m}} + \frac{\hbar\omega}{4} = \frac{\hbar\omega}{2}$$

42. Show that Equation 41.26 is a solution of Equation 41.24 with energy $E = \frac{1}{2}\hbar\omega$.

Additional Problems

43. W A particle of mass 2.00×10^{-28} kg is confined to a one-dimensional box of length 1.00×10^{-10} m. For $n = 1$, what are (a) the particle's wavelength, (b) its momentum, and (c) its ground-state energy?

44. Prove that the first term in the Schrödinger equation, $-(\hbar^2/2m)(d^2\psi/dx^2)$, reduces to the kinetic energy of the quantum particle multiplied by the wave function (a) for a freely moving particle, with the wave function given by Equation 41.4, and (b) for a particle in a box, with the wave function given by Equation 41.13.

45. A particle in a one-dimensional box of length L is in its first excited state, corresponding to $n = 2$. Determine the probability of finding the particle between $x = 0$ and $x = L/4$.

46. Prove that assuming $n = 0$ for a quantum particle in an infinitely deep potential well leads to a violation of the uncertainty principle $\Delta p_x \Delta x \geq \hbar/2$.

47. Calculate the transmission probability for quantum-mechanical tunneling in each of the following cases. (a) An electron with an energy deficit of $U - E = 0.010\,0$ eV is incident on a square barrier of width $L = 0.100$ nm. (b) An electron with an energy deficit of 1.00 eV is incident on the same barrier. (c) An alpha particle (mass 6.64×10^{-27} kg) with an energy deficit of 1.00 MeV is incident on a square barrier of width 1.00 fm. (d) An 8.00-kg bowling ball with an energy deficit of 1.00 J is incident on a square barrier of width 2.00 cm.

48. An electron in an infinitely deep potential well has a ground-state energy of 0.300 eV. (a) Show that the photon emitted in a transition from the $n = 3$ state to the $n = 1$ state has a wavelength of 517 nm, which makes it green visible light. (b) Find the wavelength and the spectral region for each of the other five transitions that take place among the four lowest energy levels.

49. W An atom in an excited state 1.80 eV above the ground state remains in that excited state 2.00 μs before moving to the ground state. Find (a) the frequency and (b) the wavelength of the emitted photon. (c) Find the approximate uncertainty in energy of the photon.

50. A marble rolls back and forth across a shoebox at a constant speed of 0.8 m/s. Make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the probability of it escaping through the wall of the box by quantum tunneling. State the quantities you take as data and the values you measure or estimate for them.

51. An electron confined to a box absorbs a photon with wavelength λ. As a result, the electron makes a transition from the $n = 1$ state to the $n = 3$ state. (a) Find the length of the box. (b) What is the wavelength λ' of the photon emitted when the electron makes a transition from the $n = 3$ state to the $n = 2$ state?

52. For a quantum particle described by a wave function $\psi(x)$, the expectation value of a physical quantity $f(x)$ associated with the particle is defined by

$$\langle f(x)\rangle \equiv \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi^* f(x)\psi\, dx$$

For a particle in an infinitely deep one-dimensional box extending from $x = 0$ to $x = L$, show that

$$\langle x^2\rangle = \frac{L^2}{3} - \frac{L^2}{2n^2\pi^2}$$

53. A quantum particle of mass m is placed in a one-dimensional box of length L. Assume the box is so small that the particle's motion is relativistic and $K = p^2/2m$ is not valid. (a) Derive an expression for the kinetic energy levels of the particle. (b) Assume the particle is an electron in a box of length $L = 1.00 \times 10^{-12}$ m. Find its lowest possible kinetic energy. (c) By what percent is the nonrelativistic equation in error? *Suggestion:* See Equation 39.23.

54. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A particle is in the ground state of an infinite square well of length L. A light source is adjusted so that the photons of wavelength λ are absorbed by the particle as it makes a transition to the first excited state. An identical particle is in the ground state of a finite square well of length L. The light source sends photons of the same wavelength λ toward this particle. The photons are not absorbed because the allowed energies of the finite square well are different from those of the infinite square well. To cause the photons to be absorbed, you move the light source at a high speed toward the particle in the finite square well. You are able to find a speed at which the Doppler-shifted photons are absorbed as the particle makes a transition to the first excited state.

55. A quantum particle has a wave function

$$\psi(x) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{\dfrac{2}{a}}\, e^{-x/a} & \text{for } x > 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

(a) Find and sketch the probability density. (b) Find the probability that the particle will be at any point where $x < 0$. (c) Show that ψ is normalized and then (d) find the probability of finding the particle between $x = 0$ and $x = a$.

56. GP An electron is confined to move in the xy plane in a rectangle whose dimensions are L_x and L_y. That is, the electron is trapped in a two-dimensional potential well having lengths of L_x and L_y. In this situation, the allowed energies of the electron depend on two quantum numbers n_x and n_y and are given by

$$E = \frac{h^2}{8m_e}\left(\frac{n_x^{\,2}}{L_x^{\,2}} + \frac{n_y^{\,2}}{L_y^{\,2}}\right)$$

Using this information, we wish to find the wavelength of a photon needed to excite the electron from the ground state to the second excited state, assuming $L_x = L_y = L$. (a) Using the assumption on the lengths, write an expression for the allowed energies of the electron in terms of the quantum numbers n_x and n_y. (b) What values of n_x and n_y correspond to the ground state? (c) Find the energy of the ground state. (d) What are the possible values of n_x and n_y for the first excited state, that is, the next-highest state in terms of energy? (e) What are the possible values of n_x and n_y for the second excited state? (f) Using the values in part (e), what is the energy of the second excited state? (g) What is the energy difference between the ground state and the second excited state? (h) What is the wavelength of a photon that will cause the transition between the ground state and the second excited state?

57. The normalized wave functions for the ground state, $\psi_0(x)$, and the first excited state, $\psi_1(x)$, of a quantum harmonic oscillator are

$$\psi_0(x) = \left(\frac{a}{\pi}\right)^{1/4} e^{-ax^2/2} \qquad \psi_1(x) = \left(\frac{4a^3}{\pi}\right)^{1/4} x e^{-ax^2/2}$$

where $a = m\omega/\hbar$. A mixed state, $\psi_{01}(x)$, is constructed from these states:

$$\psi_{01}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left[\psi_0(x) + \psi_1(x)\right]$$

The symbol $\langle q\rangle_s$ denotes the expectation value of the quantity q for the state $\psi_s(x)$. Calculate the expectation values (a) $\langle x\rangle_0$, (b) $\langle x\rangle_1$, and (c) $\langle x\rangle_{01}$.

58. A two-slit electron diffraction experiment is done with slits of *unequal* widths. When only slit 1 is open, the number of electrons reaching the screen per second is 25.0 times the number of electrons reaching the screen per second when only slit 2 is open. When both slits are open, an interference pattern results in which the destructive interference is not complete. Find the ratio of the probability of an electron arriving at an interference maximum to the probability of an electron arriving at an adjacent interference minimum. *Suggestion:* Use the superposition principle.

Challenge Problems

59. Particles incident from the left in Figure P41.59 are confronted with a step in potential energy. The step has a height U at $x = 0$. The particles have energy $E > U$. Classically, all the particles would continue moving forward with reduced speed. According to quantum mechanics, however, a fraction of the particles are reflected at the step. (a) Prove that the reflection coefficient R for this case is

$$R = \frac{(k_1 - k_2)^2}{(k_1 + k_2)^2}$$

where $k_1 = 2\pi/\lambda_1$ and $k_2 = 2\pi/\lambda_2$ are the wave numbers for the incident and transmitted particles, respectively. Proceed as follows. Show that the wave function $\psi_1 = Ae^{ik_1x} + Be^{-ik_1x}$ satisfies the Schrödinger equation in region 1, for $x < 0$. Here Ae^{ik_1x} represents the incident beam and Be^{-ik_1x} represents the reflected particles. Show that $\psi_2 = Ce^{ik_2x}$ satisfies the Schrödinger equation in region 2, for $x > 0$. Impose the boundary conditions $\psi_1 = \psi_2$ and $d\psi_1/dx = d\psi_2/dx$, at $x = 0$, to find the relationship between B and A. Then evaluate $R = B^2/A^2$. A particle that has kinetic energy $E = 7.00$ eV is incident from a region where the potential energy is zero onto one where $U = 5.00$ eV. Find (b) its probability of being reflected and (c) its probability of being transmitted.

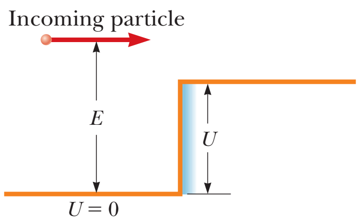


Figure P41.59

60. Consider a "crystal" consisting of two fixed ions of charge $+e$ and two electrons as shown in Figure P41.60. (a) Taking into account all the pairs of interactions, find the potential energy of the system as a function of d. (b) Assuming the electrons to be restricted to a one-dimensional box of length $3d$, find the minimum kinetic energy of the two electrons. (c) Find the value of d for which the total energy is a minimum. (d) State how this value of d compares with the spacing of atoms in lithium, which has a density of 0.530 g/cm^3 and a molar mass of 6.94 g/mol.

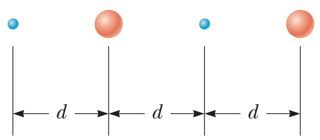


Figure P41.60

61. An electron is trapped in a quantum dot. The quantum dot may be modeled as a one-dimensional, rigid-walled box of length 1.00 nm. (a) Taking $x = 0$ as the left side of the box, calculate the probability of finding the electron between $x_1 = 0.150$ nm and $x_2 = 0.350$ nm for the $n = 1$ state. (b) Repeat part (a) for the $n = 2$ state. Calculate the energies in electron volts of (c) the $n = 1$ state and (d) the $n = 2$ state.

62. An electron is represented by the time-independent wave function

$$\psi(x) = \begin{cases} Ae^{-\alpha x} & \text{for } x > 0 \\ Ae^{+\alpha x} & \text{for } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

(a) Sketch the wave function as a function of x. (b) Sketch the probability density representing the likelihood that the electron is found between x and $x + dx$. (c) Only an infinite value of potential energy could produce the discontinuity in the derivative of the wave function at $x = 0$. Aside from this feature, argue that $\psi(x)$ can be a physically reasonable wave function. (d) Normalize the wave function. (e) Determine the probability of finding the electron somewhere in the range

$$-\frac{1}{2\alpha} \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2\alpha}$$

63. The wave function

$$\psi(x) = Bxe^{-(m\omega/2\hbar)x^2}$$

is a solution to the simple harmonic oscillator problem. (a) Find the energy of this state. (b) At what position are you least likely to find the particle? (c) At what positions are you most likely to find the particle? (d) Determine the value of B required to normalize the wave function. (e) **What If?** Determine the classical probability of finding the particle in an interval of small length δ centered at the position $x = 2(\hbar/m\omega)^{1/2}$. (f) What is the actual probability of finding the particle in this interval?

64. (a) Find the normalization constant A for a wave function made up of the two lowest states of a quantum particle in a box extending from $x = 0$ to $x = L$:

$$\psi(x) = A\left[\sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{L}\right) + 4\sin\left(\frac{2\pi x}{L}\right)\right]$$

(b) A particle is described in the space $-a \leq x \leq a$ by the wave function

$$\psi(x) = A\cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{2a}\right) + B\sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{a}\right)$$

Determine the relationship between the values of A and B required for normalization.

CHAPTER

42

Atomic Physics

This street in the Ginza district in Tokyo displays many signs formed from neon lamps of varying bright colors. The light from these lamps has its origin in transitions between quantized energy states in the atoms contained in the lamps. In this chapter, we investigate those transitions. *(© Ken Straiton/Corbis)*

In Chapter 41, we introduced some basic concepts and techniques used in quantum mechanics along with their applications to various one-dimensional systems. In this chapter, we apply quantum mechanics to atomic systems. A large portion of the chapter is focused on the application of quantum mechanics to the study of the hydrogen atom. Understanding the hydrogen atom, the simplest atomic system, is important for several reasons:

- The hydrogen atom is the only atomic system that can be solved exactly.
- Much of what was learned in the 20th century about the hydrogen atom, with its single electron, can be extended to such single-electron ions as He^{+} and Li^{2+}.
- The hydrogen atom is an ideal system for performing precise tests of theory against experiment and for improving our overall understanding of atomic structure.

- The quantum numbers that are used to characterize the allowed states of hydrogen can also be used to investigate more complex atoms, and such a description enables us to understand the periodic table of the elements. This understanding is one of the greatest triumphs of quantum mechanics.
- The basic ideas about atomic structure must be well understood before we attempt to deal with the complexities of molecular structures and the electronic structure of solids.

The full mathematical solution of the Schrödinger equation applied to the hydrogen atom gives a complete and beautiful description of the atom's properties. Because the mathematical procedures involved are beyond the scope of this text, however, many details are omitted. The solutions for some states of hydrogen are discussed, together with the quantum numbers used to characterize various allowed states. We also discuss the physical significance of the quantum numbers and the effect of a magnetic field on certain quantum states.

A new physical idea, the *exclusion principle*, is presented in this chapter. This principle is extremely important for understanding the properties of multielectron atoms and the arrangement of elements in the periodic table.

Finally, we apply our knowledge of atomic structure to describe the mechanisms involved in the production of x-rays and in the operation of a laser.

42.1 Atomic Spectra of Gases

As pointed out in Section 40.1, all objects emit thermal radiation characterized by a *continuous* distribution of wavelengths. In sharp contrast to this continuous-distribution spectrum is the *discrete* **line spectrum** observed when a low-pressure gas undergoes an electric discharge. (Electric discharge occurs when the gas is subject to a potential difference that creates an electric field greater than the dielectric strength of the gas.) Observation and analysis of these spectral lines is called **emission spectroscopy.**

When the light from a gas discharge is examined using a spectrometer (see Fig. 38.15), it is found to consist of a few bright lines of color on a generally dark background. This discrete line spectrum contrasts sharply with the continuous rainbow of colors seen when a glowing solid is viewed through the same instrument. Figure 42.1a (page 1298) shows that the wavelengths contained in a given line spectrum are characteristic of the element emitting the light. The simplest line spectrum is that for atomic hydrogen, and we describe this spectrum in detail. Because no two elements have the same line spectrum, this phenomenon represents a practical and sensitive technique for identifying the elements present in unknown samples.

Another form of spectroscopy very useful in analyzing substances is **absorption spectroscopy.** An absorption spectrum is obtained by passing white light from a continuous source through a gas or a dilute solution of the element being analyzed. The absorption spectrum consists of a series of dark lines superimposed on the continuous spectrum of the light source as shown in Figure 42.1b for atomic hydrogen.

The absorption spectrum of an element has many practical applications. For example, the continuous spectrum of radiation emitted by the Sun must pass through the cooler gases of the solar atmosphere. The various absorption lines observed in the solar spectrum have been used to identify elements in the solar atmosphere. In early studies of the solar spectrum, experimenters found some lines that did not correspond to any known element. A new element had been discovered!

Pitfall Prevention 42.1

Why Lines? The phrase "spectral lines" is often used when discussing the radiation from atoms. Lines are seen because the light passes through a long and very narrow slit before being separated by wavelength. You will see many references to these "lines" in both physics and chemistry.

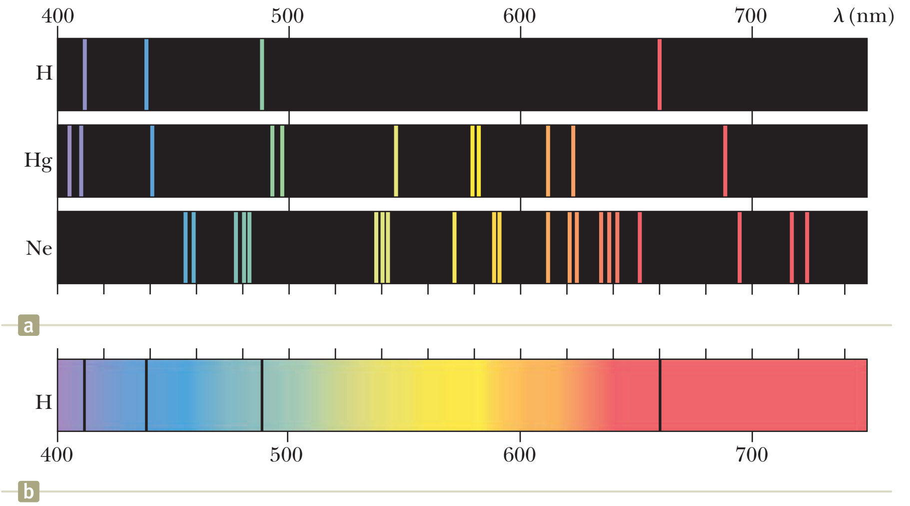


Figure 42.1 (a) Emission line spectra for hydrogen, mercury, and neon. (b) The absorption spectrum for hydrogen. Notice that the dark absorption lines occur at the same wavelengths as the hydrogen emission lines in (a). (K. W. Whitten, R. E. Davis, M. L. Peck, and G. G. Stanley, *General Chemistry,* 7th ed., Belmont, CA, Brooks/Cole, 2004.)

The new element was named helium, after the Greek word for Sun, *helios.* Helium was subsequently isolated from subterranean gas on the Earth.

Using this technique, scientists have examined the light from stars other than our Sun and have never detected elements other than those present on the Earth. Absorption spectroscopy has also been useful in analyzing heavy-metal contamination of the food chain. For example, the first determination of high levels of mercury in tuna was made with the use of atomic absorption spectroscopy.

The discrete emissions of light from gas discharges are used in "neon" signs such as those in the opening photograph of this chapter. Neon, the first gas used in these types of signs and the gas after which these signs are named, emits strongly in the red region. As a result, a glass tube filled with neon gas emits bright red light when an applied voltage causes a continuous discharge. Early signs used different gases to provide different colors, although the brightness of these signs was generally very low. Many present-day "neon" signs contain mercury vapor, which emits strongly in the ultraviolet range of the electromagnetic spectrum. The inside of a present-day sign's glass tube is coated with a material that emits a particular color when it absorbs ultraviolet radiation from the mercury. The color of the light from the tube results from the particular material chosen. A household fluorescent light operates in the same manner, with a white-emitting material coating the inside of the glass tube.

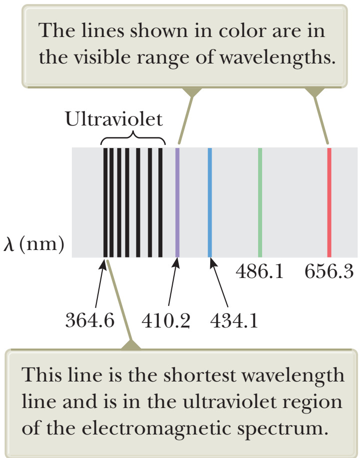


Figure 42.2 The Balmer series of spectral lines for atomic hydrogen, with several lines marked with the wavelength in nanometers. (The horizontal wavelength axis is not to scale.)

From 1860 to 1885, scientists accumulated a great deal of data on atomic emissions using spectroscopic measurements. In 1885, a Swiss schoolteacher, Johann Jacob Balmer (1825–1898), found an empirical equation that correctly predicted the wavelengths of four visible emission lines of hydrogen: H_α (red), H_β (blue-green), H_γ (blue-violet), and H_δ (violet). Figure 42.2 shows these and other lines (in the ultraviolet) in the emission spectrum of hydrogen. The four visible lines occur at the wavelengths 656.3 nm, 486.1 nm, 434.1 nm, and 410.2 nm. The complete set of lines is called the **Balmer series.** The wavelengths of these lines can be described by the following equation, which is a modification made by Johannes Rydberg (1854–1919) of Balmer's original equation:

Balmer series ▶

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H\left(\frac{1}{2^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \quad n = 3, 4, 5, \ldots \tag{42.1}$$

where R_H is a constant now called the **Rydberg constant** with a value of $1.097\,373\,2 \times 10^7\ \text{m}^{-1}$. The integer values of n from 3 to 6 give the four visible lines from 656.3 nm (red) down to 410.2 nm (violet). Equation 42.1 also describes the ultraviolet spectral lines in the Balmer series if n is carried out beyond $n = 6$. The **series limit** is the shortest wavelength in the series and corresponds to $n \to \infty$, with a wavelength of 364.6 nm as in Figure 42.2. The measured spectral lines agree with the empirical equation, Equation 42.1, to within 0.1%.

Other lines in the spectrum of hydrogen were found following Balmer's discovery. These spectra are called the Lyman, Paschen, and Brackett series after their discoverers. The wavelengths of the lines in these series can be calculated through the use of the following empirical equations:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H\left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \quad n = 2, 3, 4, \ldots \tag{42.2}$$

◀ Lyman series

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H\left(\frac{1}{3^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \quad n = 4, 5, 6, \ldots \tag{42.3}$$

◀ Paschen series

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H\left(\frac{1}{4^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \quad n = 5, 6, 7, \ldots \tag{42.4}$$

◀ Brackett series

No theoretical basis existed for these equations; they simply worked. The same constant R_H appears in each equation, and all equations involve small integers. In Section 42.3, we shall discuss the remarkable achievement of a theory for the hydrogen atom that provided an explanation for these equations.

42.2 Early Models of the Atom

The model of the atom in the days of Newton was a tiny, hard, indestructible sphere. Although this model provided a good basis for the kinetic theory of gases (Chapter 21), new models had to be devised when experiments revealed the electrical nature of atoms. In 1897, J. J. Thomson established the charge-to-mass ratio for electrons. (See Fig. 29.15 in Section 29.3.) The following year, he suggested a model that describes the atom as a region in which positive charge is spread out in space with electrons embedded throughout the region, much like the seeds in a watermelon or raisins in thick pudding (Fig. 42.3). The atom as a whole would then be electrically neutral.

In 1911, Ernest Rutherford (1871–1937) and his students Hans Geiger and Ernest Marsden performed a critical experiment that showed that Thomson's model could not be correct. In this experiment, a beam of positively charged alpha particles (helium nuclei) was projected into a thin metallic foil such as the target in Figure 42.4a (page 1300). Most of the particles passed through the foil as if it were empty space, but some of the results of the experiment were astounding. Many of the particles deflected from their original direction of travel were scattered through *large* angles. Some particles were even deflected backward, completely reversing their direction of travel! When Geiger informed Rutherford that some alpha particles were scattered backward, Rutherford wrote, "It was quite the most incredible event that has ever happened to me in my life. It was almost as incredible as if you fired a 15-inch [artillery] shell at a piece of tissue paper and it came back and hit you."

Such large deflections were not expected on the basis of Thomson's model. According to that model, the positive charge of an atom in the foil is spread out over such a great volume (the entire atom) that there is no concentration of positive charge strong enough to cause any large-angle deflections of the positively charged alpha particles. Furthermore, the electrons are so much less massive than the alpha particles that they would not cause large-angle scattering either. Rutherford explained his astonishing results by developing a new atomic model, one that assumed the positive charge in the atom was concentrated in a region that was small relative to the size of the atom. He called this concentration of positive charge the **nucleus** of the atom. Any electrons belonging to the atom were assumed to be in the relatively large volume outside the nucleus. To explain why these electrons were not pulled into the nucleus by the attractive electric force, Rutherford modeled them as moving in orbits around the nucleus in the same manner as the planets orbit the Sun (Fig. 42.4b). For this reason, this model is often referred to as the planetary model of the atom.

Two basic difficulties exist with Rutherford's planetary model. As we saw in Section 42.1, an atom emits (and absorbs) certain characteristic frequencies of

Stock Montage, Inc.

Joseph John Thomson
English physicist (1856–1940)
The recipient of a Nobel Prize in Physics in 1906, Thomson is usually considered the discoverer of the electron. He opened up the field of subatomic particle physics with his extensive work on the deflection of cathode rays (electrons) in an electric field.

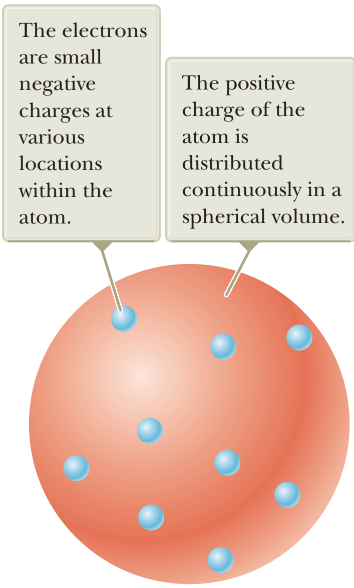


Figure 42.3 Thomson's model of the atom.

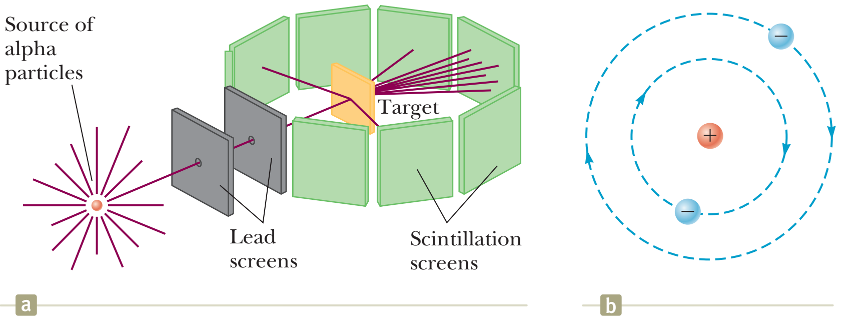


Figure 42.4 (a) Rutherford's technique for observing the scattering of alpha particles from a thin foil target. The source is a naturally occurring radioactive substance, such as radium. (b) Rutherford's planetary model of the atom.

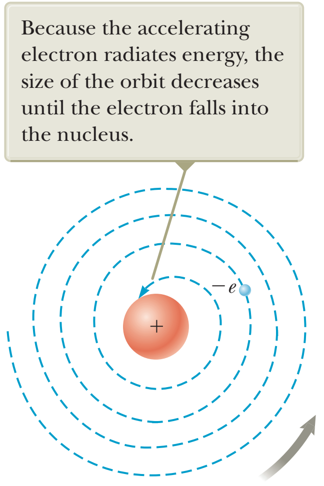


Figure 42.5 The classical model of the nuclear atom predicts that the atom decays.

electromagnetic radiation and no others, but the Rutherford model cannot explain this phenomenon. A second difficulty is that Rutherford's electrons are described by the particle in uniform circular motion model; they have a centripetal acceleration. According to Maxwell's theory of electromagnetism, centripetally accelerated charges revolving with frequency f should radiate electromagnetic waves of frequency f. Unfortunately, this classical model leads to a prediction of self-destruction when applied to the atom. Identifying the electron and the proton as a nonisolated system for energy, Equation 8.2 becomes $\Delta K + \Delta U = T_{ER}$, where K is the kinetic energy of the electron, U is the electric potential energy of the electron–nucleus system, and T_{ER} represents the outgoing electromagnetic radiation. As energy leaves the system, the radius of the electron's orbit steadily decreases (Fig. 42.5). The system is an isolated system for angular momentum because there is no torque on the system. Therefore, as the electron moves closer to the nucleus, the angular speed of the electron will increase, just like the spinning skater in Figure 11.10 in Section 11.4. This process leads to an ever-increasing frequency of emitted radiation and an ultimate collapse of the atom as the electron plunges into the nucleus.

42.3 Bohr's Model of the Hydrogen Atom

Given the situation described at the end of Section 42.2, the stage was set for Niels Bohr in 1913 when he presented a new model of the hydrogen atom that circumvented the difficulties of Rutherford's planetary model. Bohr applied Planck's ideas of quantized energy levels (Section 40.1) to Rutherford's orbiting atomic electrons. Bohr's theory was historically important to the development of quantum physics, and it appeared to explain the spectral line series described by Equations 42.1 through 42.4. Although Bohr's model is now considered obsolete and has been completely replaced by a probabilistic quantum-mechanical theory, we can use the Bohr model to develop the notions of energy quantization and angular momentum quantization as applied to atomic-sized systems.

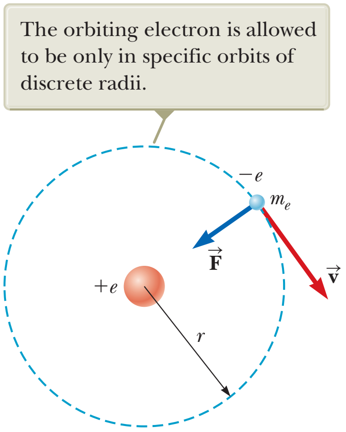


Figure 42.6 Diagram representing Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom.

Bohr combined ideas from Planck's original quantum theory, Einstein's concept of the photon, Rutherford's planetary model of the atom, and Newtonian mechanics to arrive at a semiclassical structural model based on some revolutionary ideas. The structural model of the Bohr theory as it applies to the hydrogen atom has the following properties:

1. *Physical components:*
   The electron moves in circular orbits around the proton under the influence of the electric force of attraction as shown in Figure 42.6.

2. *Behavior of the components:*
   (a) Only certain electron orbits are stable. When in one of these **stationary states,** as Bohr called them, the electron does not emit energy in the form of radiation, even though it is accelerating. Hence, the total energy of the atom remains constant and classical mechanics can be used to describe the electron's motion. Bohr's model claims that the centripetally accelerated electron does not continuously emit radiation, losing energy and eventually spiraling into the nucleus, as predicted by classical physics in the form of Rutherford's planetary model.
   (b) The atom emits radiation when the electron makes a transition from a more energetic initial stationary state to a lower-energy stationary state. This transition cannot be visualized or treated classically. In particular, the frequency f of the photon emitted in the transition is related to the change in the atom's energy and is not equal to the frequency of the electron's orbital motion. The frequency of the emitted radiation is found from the energy-conservation expression

$$E_i - E_f = hf \tag{42.5}$$

   where E_i is the energy of the initial state, E_f is the energy of the final state, and $E_i > E_f$. In addition, energy of an incident photon can be absorbed by the atom, but only if the photon has an energy that exactly matches the difference in energy between an allowed state of the atom and a higher-energy state. Upon absorption, the photon disappears and the atom makes a transition to the higher-energy state.
   (c) The size of an allowed electron orbit is determined by a condition imposed on the electron's orbital angular momentum: the allowed orbits are those for which the electron's orbital angular momentum about the nucleus is quantized and equal to an integral multiple of $\hbar = h/2\pi$,

$$m_e vr = n\hbar \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{42.6}$$

   where m_e is the electron mass, v is the electron's speed in its orbit, and r is the orbital radius.

Bain Collection, Prints & Photographs Division, Library of Congress, LC-DIG-ggbain-35303

Niels Bohr
Danish Physicist (1885–1962)
Bohr was an active participant in the early development of quantum mechanics and provided much of its philosophical framework. During the 1920s and 1930s, he headed the Institute for Advanced Studies in Copenhagen. The institute was a magnet for many of the world's best physicists and provided a forum for the exchange of ideas. Bohr was awarded the 1922 Nobel Prize in Physics for his investigation of the structure of atoms and the radiation emanating from them. When Bohr visited the United States in 1939 to attend a scientific conference, he brought news that the fission of uranium had been observed by Hahn and Strassman in Berlin. The results were the foundations of the nuclear weapon developed in the United States during World War II.

These postulates are a mixture of established principles and completely new and untested ideas at the time. Property 1, from classical mechanics, treats the electron in orbit around the nucleus in the same way we treat a planet in a circular orbit around a star, using the particle in uniform circular motion analysis model. Property 2(a) was a radical new idea in 1913 that was completely at odds with the understanding of electromagnetism at the time. Property 2(b) represents the principle of conservation of energy as described by the nonisolated system model for energy. Property 2(c) is another new idea that had no basis in classical physics.

Property 2(b) implies qualitatively the existence of a characteristic discrete emission line spectrum *and also* a corresponding absorption line spectrum of the kind shown in Figure 42.1 for hydrogen. Using these postulates, let's calculate the allowed energy levels and find quantitative values of the emission wavelengths of the hydrogen atom.

The electric potential energy of the system shown in Figure 42.6 is given by Equation 25.13, $U = k_e q_1 q_2/r = -k_e e^2/r$, where k_e is the Coulomb constant and the negative sign arises from the charge $-e$ on the electron. Therefore, the *total* energy of the atom, which consists of the electron's kinetic energy and the system's potential energy, is

$$E = K + U = \tfrac{1}{2} m_e v^2 - k_e \frac{e^2}{r} \tag{42.7}$$

The electron is modeled as a particle in uniform circular motion, so the electric force $k_e e^2/r^2$ exerted on the electron must equal the product of its mass and its centripetal acceleration ($a_c = v^2/r$):

$$\frac{k_e e^2}{r^2} = \frac{m_e v^2}{r}$$

$$v^2 = \frac{k_e e^2}{m_e r} \tag{42.8}$$

From Equation 42.8, we find that the kinetic energy of the electron is

$$K = \tfrac{1}{2} m_e v^2 = \frac{k_e e^2}{2r}$$

Substituting this value of K into Equation 42.7 gives the following expression for the total energy of the atom:[1]

$$E = -\frac{k_e e^2}{2r} \tag{42.9}$$

Because the total energy is *negative,* which indicates a bound electron–proton system, energy in the amount of $k_e e^2/2r$ must be added to the atom to remove the electron and make the total energy of the system zero.

We can obtain an expression for r, the radius of the allowed orbits, by solving Equation 42.6 for v^2 and equating it to Equation 42.8:

$$v^2 = \frac{n^2\hbar^2}{m_e^2 r^2} = \frac{k_e e^2}{m_e r}$$

$$r_n = \frac{n^2\hbar^2}{m_e k_e e^2} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{42.10}$$

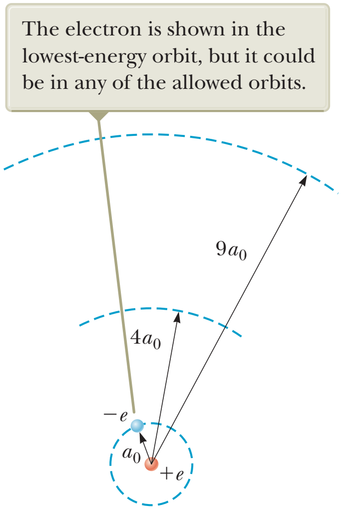


Figure 42.7 The first three circular orbits predicted by the Bohr model of the hydrogen atom.

Equation 42.10 shows that the radii of the allowed orbits have discrete values: they are quantized. The result is based on the *assumption* that the electron can exist only in certain allowed orbits determined by the integer n (Bohr's Property 2(c)).

The orbit with the smallest radius, called the **Bohr radius** a_0, corresponds to $n = 1$ and has the value

Bohr radius ▶

$$a_0 = \frac{\hbar^2}{m_e k_e e^2} = 0.052\,9 \text{ nm} \tag{42.11}$$

Substituting Equation 42.11 into Equation 42.10 gives a general expression for the radius of any orbit in the hydrogen atom:

Radii of Bohr orbits in hydrogen ▶

$$r_n = n^2 a_0 = n^2(0.052\,9 \text{ nm}) \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{42.12}$$

Bohr's theory predicts a value for the radius of a hydrogen atom on the right order of magnitude, based on experimental measurements. This result was a striking triumph for Bohr's theory. The first three Bohr orbits are shown to scale in Figure 42.7.

The quantization of orbit radii leads to energy quantization. Substituting $r_n = n^2 a_0$ into Equation 42.9 gives

$$\boxed{E_n = -\frac{k_e e^2}{2a_0}\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right) \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots} \tag{42.13}$$

Inserting numerical values into this expression, we find that

$$\boxed{E_n = -\frac{13.606 \text{ eV}}{n^2} \qquad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots} \tag{42.14}$$

[1]Compare Equation 42.9 with its gravitational counterpart, Equation 13.19.

Only energies satisfying this equation are permitted. The lowest allowed energy level, the ground state, has $n = 1$ and energy $E_1 = -13.606$ eV. The next energy level, the first excited state, has $n = 2$ and energy $E_2 = E_1/2^2 = -3.401$ eV. Figure 42.8 is an energy-level diagram showing the energies of these discrete energy states and the corresponding quantum numbers n. The uppermost level corresponds to $n = \infty$ (or $r = \infty$) and $E = 0$.

Notice how the allowed energies of the hydrogen atom differ from those of the particle in a box. The particle-in-a-box energies (Eq. 41.14) increase as n^2, so they become farther apart in energy as n increases. On the other hand, the energies of the hydrogen atom (Eq. 42.14) are inversely proportional to n^2, so their separation in energy becomes smaller as n increases. The separation between energy levels approaches zero as n approaches infinity and the energy approaches zero.

Zero energy represents the boundary between a bound system of an electron and a proton and an unbound system. If the energy of the atom is raised from that of the ground state to any energy larger than zero, the atom is **ionized.** The minimum energy required to ionize the atom in its ground state is called the **ionization energy.** As can be seen from Figure 42.8, the ionization energy for hydrogen in the ground state, based on Bohr's calculation, is 13.6 eV. This finding constituted another major achievement for the Bohr theory because the ionization energy for hydrogen had already been measured to be 13.6 eV.

Equations 42.5 and 42.13 can be used to calculate the frequency of the photon emitted when the electron makes a transition from an outer orbit to an inner orbit:

$$f = \frac{E_i - E_f}{h} = \frac{k_e e^2}{2a_0 h}\left(\frac{1}{n_f^{\,2}} - \frac{1}{n_i^{2}}\right) \tag{42.15}$$

Because the quantity measured experimentally is wavelength, it is convenient to use $c = f\lambda$ to express Equation 42.15 in terms of wavelength:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = \frac{f}{c} = \frac{k_e e^2}{2a_0 hc}\left(\frac{1}{n_f^{\,2}} - \frac{1}{n_i^{2}}\right) \tag{42.16}$$

Remarkably, this expression, which is purely theoretical, is *identical* to the general form of the empirical relationships discovered by Balmer and Rydberg and given by Equations 42.1 to 42.4:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_{\mathrm{H}}\left(\frac{1}{n_f^{\,2}} - \frac{1}{n_i^{2}}\right) \tag{42.17}$$

provided the constant $k_e e^2/2a_0 hc$ is equal to the experimentally determined Rydberg constant. Soon after Bohr demonstrated that these two quantities agree to within approximately 1%, this work was recognized as the crowning achievement of his new quantum theory of the hydrogen atom. Furthermore, Bohr showed that all the spectral series for hydrogen have a natural interpretation in his theory. The different series correspond to transitions to different final states characterized by the quantum number n_f. Figure 42.8 shows the origin of these spectral series as transitions between energy levels.

Bohr extended his model for hydrogen to other elements in which all but one electron had been removed. These systems have the same structure as the hydrogen atom except that the nuclear charge is larger. Ionized elements such as He^+, Li^{2+}, and Be^{3+} were suspected to exist in hot stellar atmospheres, where atomic collisions frequently have enough energy to completely remove one or more atomic electrons. Bohr showed that many mysterious lines observed in the spectra of the Sun and several other stars could not be due to hydrogen but were correctly predicted by his theory if attributed to singly ionized helium. In general, the number of protons in the nucleus of an atom is called the **atomic number** of the element

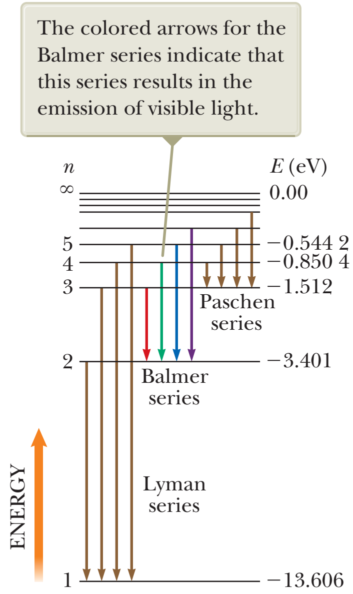


Figure 42.8 An energy-level diagram for the hydrogen atom. Quantum numbers are given on the left, and energies (in electron volts) are given on the right. Vertical arrows represent the four lowest-energy transitions for each of the spectral series shown.

and is given the symbol Z. To describe a single electron orbiting a fixed nucleus of charge $+Ze$, Bohr's theory gives

$$r_n = (n^2)\frac{a_0}{Z} \tag{42.18}$$

$$E_n = -\frac{k_e e^2}{2a_0}\left(\frac{Z^2}{n^2}\right) \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{42.19}$$

Although the Bohr theory was triumphant in its agreement with some experimental results on the hydrogen atom, it suffered from some difficulties. One of the first indications that the Bohr theory needed to be modified arose when improved spectroscopic techniques were used to examine the spectral lines of hydrogen. It was found that many of the lines in the Balmer and other series were not single lines at all. Instead, each was a group of lines spaced very close together. An additional difficulty arose when it was observed that in some situations certain single spectral lines were split into three closely spaced lines when the atoms were placed in a strong magnetic field. Efforts to explain these and other deviations from the Bohr model led to modifications in the theory and ultimately to a replacement theory that will be discussed in Section 42.4.

Pitfall Prevention 42.2

The Bohr Model Is Great, but . . . The Bohr model correctly predicts the ionization energy and general features of the spectrum for hydrogen, but it cannot account for the spectra of more complex atoms and is unable to predict many subtle spectral details of hydrogen and other simple atoms. Scattering experiments show that the electron in a hydrogen atom does not move in a flat circle around the nucleus. Instead, the atom is spherical. The ground-state angular momentum of the atom is zero and not $\hbar$.

Bohr's Correspondence Principle

In our study of relativity, we found that Newtonian mechanics is a special case of relativistic mechanics and is usable only for speeds much less than c. Similarly,

> quantum physics agrees with classical physics when the difference between quantized levels becomes vanishingly small.

This principle, first set forth by Bohr, is called the **correspondence principle.**[2]

For example, consider an electron orbiting the hydrogen atom with $n > 10\,000$. For such large values of n, the energy differences between adjacent levels approach zero; therefore, the levels are nearly continuous. Consequently, the classical model is reasonably accurate in describing the system for large values of n. According to the classical picture, the frequency of the light emitted by the atom is equal to the frequency of revolution of the electron in its orbit about the nucleus. Calculations show that for $n > 10\,000$, this frequency is different from that predicted by quantum mechanics by less than 0.015%.

Quick Quiz 42.1 A hydrogen atom is in its ground state. Incident on the atom is a photon having an energy of 10.5 eV. What is the result? **(a)** The atom is excited to a higher allowed state. **(b)** The atom is ionized. **(c)** The photon passes by the atom without interaction.

Quick Quiz 42.2 A hydrogen atom makes a transition from the $n = 3$ level to the $n = 2$ level. It then makes a transition from the $n = 2$ level to the $n = 1$ level. Which transition results in emission of the longer-wavelength photon? **(a)** the first transition **(b)** the second transition **(c)** neither transition because the wavelengths are the same for both

Example 42.1 Electronic Transitions in Hydrogen

(A) The electron in a hydrogen atom makes a transition from the $n = 2$ energy level to the ground level ($n = 1$). Find the wavelength and frequency of the emitted photon.

[2]In reality, the correspondence principle is the starting point for Bohr's property 2(c) on angular momentum quantization. To see how property 2(c) arises from the correspondence principle, see J. W. Jewett Jr., *Physics Begins with Another M . . . Mysteries, Magic, Myth, and Modern Physics* (Boston: Allyn & Bacon, 1996), pp. 353–356.

42.1 continued

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the electron in a circular orbit about the nucleus as in the Bohr model in Figure 42.6. When the electron makes a transition to a lower stationary state, it emits a photon with a given frequency and drops to a circular orbit of smaller radius.

Categorize We evaluate the results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 42.17 to obtain λ, with $n_i = 2$ and $n_f = 1$:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H\left(\frac{1}{1^2} - \frac{1}{2^2}\right) = \frac{3R_H}{4}$$

$$\lambda = \frac{4}{3R_H} = \frac{4}{3(1.097 \times 10^7\ \text{m}^{-1})} = 1.22 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m} = \boxed{122\ \text{nm}}$$

Use Equation 34.20 to find the frequency of the photon:

$$f = \frac{c}{\lambda} = \frac{3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}{1.22 \times 10^{-7}\ \text{m}} = \boxed{2.47 \times 10^{15}\ \text{Hz}}$$

(B) In interstellar space, highly excited hydrogen atoms called Rydberg atoms have been observed. Find the wavelength to which radio astronomers must tune to detect signals from electrons dropping from the $n = 273$ level to the $n = 272$ level.

SOLUTION

Use Equation 42.17, this time with $n_i = 273$ and $n_f = 272$:

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H\left(\frac{1}{n_f^2} - \frac{1}{n_i^2}\right) = R_H\left(\frac{1}{(272)^2} - \frac{1}{(273)^2}\right) = 9.88 \times 10^{-8}\ R_H$$

Solve for λ:

$$\lambda = \frac{1}{9.88 \times 10^{-8} R_H} = \frac{1}{(9.88 \times 10^{-8})(1.097 \times 10^7\ \text{m}^{-1})} = \boxed{0.922\ \text{m}}$$

(C) What is the radius of the electron orbit for a Rydberg atom for which $n = 273$?

SOLUTION

Use Equation 42.12 to find the radius of the orbit:

$$r_{273} = (273)^2\ (0.052\ 9\ \text{nm}) = \boxed{3.94\ \mu\text{m}}$$

This radius is large enough that the atom is on the verge of becoming macroscopic!

(D) How fast is the electron moving in a Rydberg atom for which $n = 273$?

SOLUTION

Solve Equation 42.8 for the electron's speed:

$$v = \sqrt{\frac{k_e e^2}{m_e r}} = \sqrt{\frac{(8.99 \times 10^9\ \text{N}\cdot\text{m}^2/\text{C}^2)(1.60 \times 10^{-19}\ \text{C})^2}{(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\ \text{kg})(3.94 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})}}$$

$$= \boxed{8.01 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}}$$

WHAT IF? What if radiation from the Rydberg atom in part (B) is treated classically? What is the wavelength of radiation emitted by the atom in the $n = 273$ level?

Answer Classically, the frequency of the emitted radiation is that of the rotation of the electron around the nucleus.

Calculate this frequency using the period defined in Equation 4.15:

$$f = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{v}{2\pi r}$$

Substitute the radius and speed from parts (C) and (D):

$$f = \frac{v}{2\pi r} = \frac{8.02 \times 10^3\ \text{m/s}}{2\pi(3.94 \times 10^{-6}\ \text{m})} = 3.24 \times 10^8\ \text{Hz}$$

Find the wavelength of the radiation from Equation 34.20:

$$\lambda = \frac{c}{f} = \frac{3.00 \times 10^8\ \text{m/s}}{3.24 \times 10^8\ \text{Hz}} = 0.927\ \text{m}$$

This value is about 0.5% different from the wavelength calculated in part (B). As indicated in the discussion of Bohr's correspondence principle, this difference becomes even smaller for higher values of n.

42.4 The Quantum Model of the Hydrogen Atom

In the preceding section, we described how the Bohr model views the electron as a particle orbiting the nucleus in nonradiating, quantized energy levels. This model combines both classical and quantum concepts. Although the model demonstrates excellent agreement with some experimental results, it cannot explain others. These difficulties are removed when a full quantum model involving the Schrödinger equation is used to describe the hydrogen atom.

The formal procedure for solving the problem of the hydrogen atom is to substitute the appropriate potential energy function into the Schrödinger equation, find solutions to the equation, and apply boundary conditions as we did for the particle in a box in Chapter 41. The potential energy function for the hydrogen atom is that due to the electrical interaction between the electron and the proton (see Section 25.3):

$$U(r) = -k_e \frac{e^2}{r} \tag{42.20}$$

where k_e is the Coulomb constant and r is the radial distance from the proton (situated at $r = 0$) to the electron.

The mathematics for the hydrogen atom is more complicated than that for the particle in a box for two primary reasons: (1) the atom is three-dimensional, and (2) U is not constant, but rather depends on the radial coordinate r. If the time-independent Schrödinger equation (Eq. 41.15) is extended to three-dimensional rectangular coordinates, the result is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\left(\frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial z^2}\right) + U\psi = E\psi$$

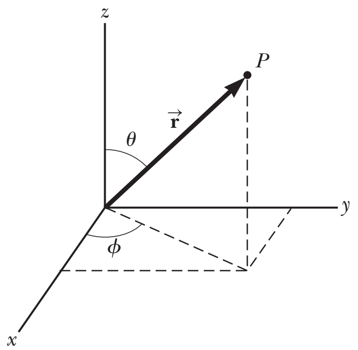


Figure 42.9 A point P in space is located by means of a position vector $\vec{\mathbf{r}}$. In Cartesian coordinates, the components of this vector are x, y, and z. In spherical polar coordinates, the point is described by r, the distance from the origin; θ, the angle between $\vec{\mathbf{r}}$ and the z axis; and ϕ, the angle between the x axis and a projection of $\vec{\mathbf{r}}$ onto the xy plane.

It is easier to solve this equation for the hydrogen atom if rectangular coordinates are converted to spherical polar coordinates, an extension of the plane polar coordinates introduced in Section 3.1. In spherical polar coordinates, a point in space is represented by the three variables r, θ, and ϕ, where r is the radial distance from the origin, $r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$. With the point represented at the end of a position vector $\vec{\mathbf{r}}$ as shown in Figure 42.9, the angular coordinate θ specifies its angular position relative to the z axis. Once that position vector is projected onto the xy plane, the angular coordinate ϕ specifies the projection's (and therefore the point's) angular position relative to the x axis.

The conversion of the three-dimensional time-independent Schrödinger equation for $\psi(x, y, z)$ to the equivalent form for $\psi(r, \theta, \phi)$ is straightforward but very tedious, so we omit the details.[3] In Chapter 41, we separated the time dependence from the space dependence in the general wave function Ψ. In this case of the hydrogen atom, the three space variables in $\psi(r, \theta, \phi)$ can be similarly separated by writing the wave function as a product of functions of each single variable:

$$\psi(r, \theta, \phi) = R(r)f(\theta)g(\phi)$$

In this way, Schrödinger's equation, which is a three-dimensional partial differential equation, can be transformed into three separate ordinary differential equations: one for $R(r)$, one for $f(\theta)$, and one for $g(\phi)$. Each of these functions is subject to boundary conditions. For example, $R(r)$ must remain finite as $r \to 0$ and $r \to \infty$; furthermore, $g(\phi)$ must have the same value as $g(\phi + 2\pi)$.

The potential energy function given in Equation 42.20 depends *only* on the radial coordinate r and not on either of the angular coordinates; therefore, it appears only in the equation for $R(r)$. As a result, the equations for θ and ϕ are independent of the particular system and their solutions are valid for *any* system exhibiting rotation.

When the full set of boundary conditions is applied to all three functions, three different quantum numbers are found for each allowed state of the hydrogen atom,

[3]Descriptions of the solutions to the Schrödinger equation for the hydrogen atom are available in modern physics textbooks such as R. A. Serway, C. Moses, and C. A. Moyer, *Modern Physics,* 3rd ed. (Belmont, CA: Brooks/Cole, 2005).

one for each of the separate differential equations. These quantum numbers are restricted to integer values and correspond to the three independent degrees of freedom (three space dimensions).

The first quantum number, associated with the radial function $R(r)$ of the full wave function, is called the **principal quantum number** and is assigned the symbol n. The differential equation for $R(r)$ leads to functions giving the probability of finding the electron at a certain radial distance from the nucleus. In Section 42.5, we will describe two of these radial wave functions. From the boundary conditions, the energies of the allowed states for the hydrogen atom are found to be related to n as follows:

$$E_n = -\left(\frac{k_e e^2}{2a_0}\right)\frac{1}{n^2} = -\frac{13.606 \text{ eV}}{n^2} \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{42.21}$$

◀ **Allowed energies of the quantum hydrogen atom**

This result is in exact agreement with that obtained in the Bohr theory (Eqs. 42.13 and 42.14)! This agreement is *remarkable* because the Bohr theory and the full quantum theory arrive at the result from completely different starting points.

The **orbital quantum number,** symbolized ℓ, comes from the differential equation for $f(\theta)$ and is associated with the orbital angular momentum of the electron. The **orbital magnetic quantum number** m_ℓ arises from the differential equation for $g(\phi)$. Both ℓ and m_ℓ are integers. We will expand our discussion of these two quantum numbers in Section 42.6, where we also introduce a fourth (nonintegral) quantum number, resulting from a relativistic treatment of the hydrogen atom.

The application of boundary conditions on the three parts of the full wave function leads to important relationships among the three quantum numbers as well as certain restrictions on their values:

The values of n are integers that can range from 1 to ∞.
The values of ℓ are integers that can range from 0 to $n - 1$.
The values of m_ℓ are integers that can range from $-\ell$ to ℓ.

◀ **Restrictions on the values of hydrogen-atom quantum numbers**

For example, if $n = 1$, only $\ell = 0$ and $m_\ell = 0$ are permitted. If $n = 2$, then ℓ may be 0 or 1; if $\ell = 0$, then $m_\ell = 0$; but if $\ell = 1$, then m_ℓ may be 1, 0, or -1. Table 42.1 summarizes the rules for determining the allowed values of ℓ and m_ℓ for a given n.

For historical reasons, all states having the same principal quantum number are said to form a **shell.** Shells are identified by the letters K, L, M, . . . , which designate the states for which $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. Likewise, all states having the same values of n and ℓ are said to form a **subshell.** The letters[4] *s, p, d, f, g, h,* . . . are used to designate the subshells for which $\ell = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. The state designated by $3p$, for example, has the quantum numbers $n = 3$ and $\ell = 1$; the $2s$ state has the quantum numbers $n = 2$ and $\ell = 0$. These notations are summarized in Tables 42.2 and 42.3 (page 1308).

States that violate the rules given in Table 42.1 do not exist. (They do not satisfy the boundary conditions on the wave function.) For instance, the $2d$ state, which

Pitfall Prevention 42.3

Energy Depends on *n* Only for Hydrogen The implication in Equation 42.21 that the energy depends only on the quantum number n is true only for the hydrogen atom. For more complicated atoms, we will use the same quantum numbers developed here for hydrogen. The energy levels for these atoms depend primarily on n, but they also depend to a lesser degree on other quantum numbers.

Pitfall Prevention 42.4

Quantum Numbers Describe a System It is common to assign the quantum numbers to an electron. Remember, however, that these quantum numbers arise from the Schrödinger equation, which involves a potential energy function for the *system* of the electron and the nucleus. Therefore, it is more *proper* to assign the quantum numbers to the atom, but it is more *popular* to assign them to an electron. We follow this latter usage because it is so common.

Table 42.1 Three Quantum Numbers for the Hydrogen Atom

Quantum Number	Name	Allowed Values	Number of Allowed States
n	Principal quantum number	$1, 2, 3, \ldots$	Any number
ℓ	Orbital quantum number	$0, 1, 2, \ldots, n - 1$	n
m_ℓ	Orbital magnetic quantum number	$-\ell, -\ell + 1, \ldots, 0, \ldots, \ell - 1, \ell$	$2\ell + 1$

Table 42.2 Atomic Shell Notations

n	Shell Symbol
1	K
2	L
3	M
4	N
5	O
6	P

[4]The first four of these letters come from early classifications of spectral lines: sharp, principal, diffuse, and fundamental. The remaining letters are in alphabetical order.

Table 42.3 Atomic Subshell Notations

ℓ	Subshell Symbol
0	s
1	p
2	d
3	f
4	g
5	h

would have $n = 2$ and $\ell = 2$, cannot exist because the highest allowed value of ℓ is $n - 1$, which in this case is 1. Therefore, for $n = 2$, the 2s and 2p states are allowed but 2d, 2f, . . . are not. For $n = 3$, the allowed subshells are 3s, 3p, and 3d.

Quick Quiz 42.3 How many possible subshells are there for the $n = 4$ level of hydrogen? **(a)** 5 **(b)** 4 **(c)** 3 **(d)** 2 **(e)** 1

Quick Quiz 42.4 When the principal quantum number is $n = 5$, how many different values of **(a)** ℓ and **(b)** m_ℓ are possible?

Example 42.2 The $n = 2$ Level of Hydrogen

For a hydrogen atom, determine the allowed states corresponding to the principal quantum number $n = 2$ and calculate the energies of these states.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Think about the atom in the $n = 2$ quantum state. There is only one such state in the Bohr theory, but our discussion of the quantum theory allows for more states because of the possible values of ℓ and m_ℓ.

Categorize We evaluate the results using rules discussed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

From Table 42.1, we find that when $n = 2$, ℓ can be 0 or 1. Find the possible values of m_ℓ from Table 42.1:

$$\ell = 0 \rightarrow m_\ell = 0$$
$$\ell = 1 \rightarrow m_\ell = -1, 0, \text{ or } 1$$

Hence, we have one state, designated as the 2s state, that is associated with the quantum numbers $n = 2$, $\ell = 0$, and $m_\ell = 0$, and we have three states, designated as 2p states, for which the quantum numbers are $n = 2$, $\ell = 1$, and $m_\ell = -1$; $n = 2$, $\ell = 1$, and $m_\ell = 0$; and $n = 2$, $\ell = 1$, and $m_\ell = 1$.

Find the energy for all four of these states with $n = 2$ from Equation 42.21:

$$E_2 = -\frac{13.606 \text{ eV}}{2^2} = \boxed{-3.401 \text{ eV}}$$

42.5 The Wave Functions for Hydrogen

Because the potential energy of the hydrogen atom depends only on the radial distance r between nucleus and electron, some of the allowed states for this atom can be represented by wave functions that depend only on r. For these states, $f(\theta)$ and $g(\phi)$ are constants. The simplest wave function for hydrogen is the one that describes the 1s state and is designated $\psi_{1s}(r)$:

Wave function for hydrogen in its ground state

$$\psi_{1s}(r) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi a_0^3}} e^{-r/a_0} \tag{42.22}$$

where a_0 is the Bohr radius. (In Problem 26, you can verify that this function satisfies the Schrödinger equation.) Note that ψ_{1s} approaches zero as r approaches ∞ and is normalized as presented (see Eq. 41.7). Furthermore, because ψ_{1s} depends only on r, it is *spherically symmetric*. This symmetry exists for all s states.

Recall that the probability of finding a particle in any region is equal to an integral of the probability density $|\psi|^2$ for the particle over the region. The probability density for the 1s state is

$$|\psi_{1s}|^2 = \left(\frac{1}{\pi a_0^3}\right) e^{-2r/a_0} \tag{42.23}$$

Because we imagine the nucleus to be fixed in space at $r = 0$, we can assign this probability density to the question of locating the electron. According to Equation 41.3, the probability of finding the electron in a volume element dV is $|\psi|^2\, dV$. It is convenient to define the *radial probability density function* $P(r)$ as the probability per unit radial length of finding the electron in a spherical shell of radius r and thickness dr. Therefore, $P(r)\ dr$ is the probability of finding the electron in this shell. The volume dV of such an infinitesimally thin shell equals its surface area $4\pi r^2$ multiplied by the shell thickness dr (Fig. 42.10), so we can write this probability as

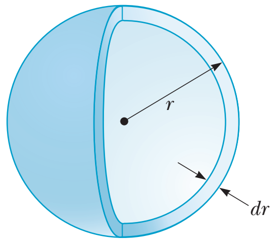


Figure 42.10 A spherical shell of radius r and infinitesimal thickness dr has a volume equal to $4\pi r^2\ dr$.

$$P(r)\ dr = |\psi|^2\ dV = |\psi|^2\, 4\pi r^2\ dr$$

Therefore, the radial probability density function for an s state is

$$P(r) = 4\pi r^2|\psi|^2 \tag{42.24}$$

Substituting Equation 42.23 into Equation 42.24 gives the radial probability density function for the hydrogen atom in its ground state:

$$P_{1s}(r) = \left(\frac{4r^2}{a_0^{\,3}}\right)e^{-2r/a_0} \tag{42.25}$$

◀ Radial probability density for the 1*s* state of hydrogen

A plot of the function $P_{1s}(r)$ versus r is presented in Figure 42.11a. The peak of the curve corresponds to the most probable value of r for this particular state. We show in Example 42.3 that this peak occurs at the Bohr radius, the radial position of the electron when the hydrogen atom is in its ground state in the Bohr theory, another remarkable agreement between the Bohr theory and the quantum theory.

According to quantum mechanics, the atom has no sharply defined boundary as suggested by the Bohr theory. The probability distribution in Figure 42.11a suggests that the charge of the electron can be modeled as being extended throughout a region of space, commonly referred to as an *electron cloud*. Figure 42.11b shows the probability density of the electron in a hydrogen atom in the 1s state as a function of position in the xy plane. The darkness of the blue color corresponds to the value of the probability density. The darkest portion of the distribution appears at $r = a_0$, corresponding to the most probable value of r for the electron.

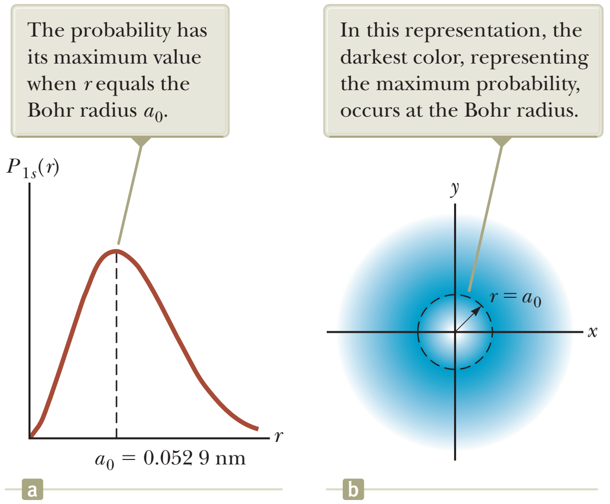


Figure 42.11 (a) The probability of finding the electron as a function of distance from the nucleus for the hydrogen atom in the 1s (ground) state. (b) The cross section in the xy plane of the spherical electronic charge distribution for the hydrogen atom in its 1s state.

Example 42.3 The Ground State of Hydrogen

(A) Calculate the most probable value of r for an electron in the ground state of the hydrogen atom.

continued

▶ 42.3 continued

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Do not imagine the electron in orbit around the proton as in the Bohr theory of the hydrogen atom. Instead, imagine the charge of the electron spread out in space around the proton in an electron cloud with spherical symmetry.

Categorize Because the statement of the problem asks for the "most probable value of r," we categorize this example as a problem in which the quantum approach is used. (In the Bohr atom, the electron moves in an orbit with an *exact* value of r.)

Analyze The most probable value of r corresponds to the maximum in the plot of $P_{1s}(r)$ versus r. We can evaluate the most probable value of r by setting $dP_{1s}/dr = 0$ and solving for r.

Differentiate Equation 42.25 and set the result equal to zero:

$$\frac{dP_{1s}}{dr} = \frac{d}{dr}\left[\left(\frac{4r^2}{a_0^{\,3}}\right)e^{-2r/a_0}\right] = 0$$

$$e^{-2r/a_0}\frac{d}{dr}(r^2) + r^2\frac{d}{dr}(e^{-2r/a_0}) = 0$$

$$2re^{-2r/a_0} + r^2(-2/a_0)e^{-2r/a_0} = 0$$

$$(1)\quad 2r[1 - (r/a_0)]e^{-2r/a_0} = 0$$

Set the bracketed expression equal to zero and solve for r:

$$1 - \frac{r}{a_0} = 0 \quad\rightarrow\quad r = \boxed{a_0}$$

Finalize The most probable value of r is the Bohr radius! Equation (1) is also satisfied at $r = 0$ and as $r \rightarrow \infty$. These points are locations of the *minimum* probability, which is equal to zero as seen in Figure 42.11a.

(B) Calculate the probability that the electron in the ground state of hydrogen will be found outside the Bohr radius.

SOLUTION

Analyze The probability is found by integrating the radial probability density function $P_{1s}(r)$ for this state from the Bohr radius a_0 to ∞.

Set up this integral using Equation 42.25:

$$P = \int_{a_0}^{\infty} P_{1s}(r)\,dr = \frac{4}{a_0^{\,3}}\int_{a_0}^{\infty} r^2 e^{-2r/a_0}\,dr$$

Put the integral in dimensionless form by changing variables from r to $z = 2r/a_0$, noting that $z = 2$ when $r = a_0$ and that $dr = (a_0/2)\,dz$:

$$P = \frac{4}{a_0^{\,3}}\int_{2}^{\infty}\left(\frac{za_0}{2}\right)^2 e^{-z}\left(\frac{a_0}{2}\right)dz = \tfrac{1}{2}\int_{2}^{\infty} z^2 e^{-z}\,dz$$

Evaluate the integral using partial integration (see Appendix B.7):

$$P = -\tfrac{1}{2}(z^2 + 2z + 2)e^{-z}\Big|_{2}^{\infty}$$

Evaluate between the limits:

$$P = 0 - [-\tfrac{1}{2}(4 + 4 + 2)e^{-2}] = 5e^{-2} = \boxed{0.677 \text{ or } 67.7\%}$$

Finalize This probability is larger than 50%. The reason for this value is the asymmetry in the radial probability density function (Fig. 42.11a), which has more area to the right of the peak than to the left.

WHAT IF? What if you were asked for the *average* value of r for the electron in the ground state rather than the most probable value?

Answer The average value of r is the same as the expectation value for r.

Use Equation 42.25 to evaluate the average value of r:

$$r_{\text{avg}} = \langle r\rangle = \int_0^{\infty} rP(r)\,dr = \int_0^{\infty} r\left(\frac{4r^2}{a_0^{\,3}}\right)e^{-2r/a_0}\,dr$$

$$= \left(\frac{4}{a_0^{\,3}}\right)\int_0^{\infty} r^3 e^{-2r/a_0}\,dr$$

42.3 continued

Evaluate the integral with the help of the first integral listed in Table B.6 in Appendix B:

$$r_{\text{avg}} = \left(\frac{4}{a_0^{\,3}}\right)\left(\frac{3!}{(2/a_0)^4}\right) = \tfrac{3}{2}a_0$$

Again, the average value is larger than the most probable value because of the asymmetry in the wave function as seen in Figure 42.11a.

The next-simplest wave function for the hydrogen atom is the one corresponding to the 2s state ($n = 2$, $\ell = 0$). The normalized wave function for this state is

$$\psi_{2s}(r) = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\frac{1}{a_0}\right)^{3/2}\left(2 - \frac{r}{a_0}\right)e^{-r/2a_0} \qquad \textbf{(42.26)}$$

Wave function for hydrogen in the 2*s* state

Again notice that ψ_{2s} depends only on r and is spherically symmetric. The energy corresponding to this state is $E_2 = -(13.606/4)\text{ eV} = -3.401\text{ eV}$. This energy level represents the first excited state of hydrogen. A plot of the radial probability density function for this state in comparison to the 1s state is shown in Figure 42.12. The plot for the 2s state has two peaks. In this case, the most probable value corresponds to that value of r that has the highest value of P ($\approx 5a_0$). An electron in the 2s state would be much farther from the nucleus (on the average) than an electron in the 1s state.

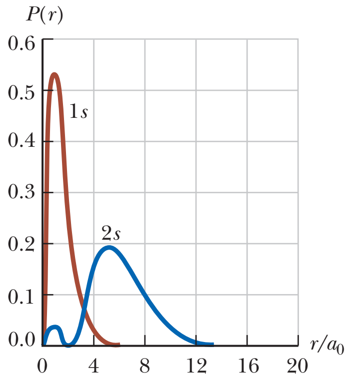


Figure 42.12 The radial probability density function versus r/a_0 for the 1s and 2s states of the hydrogen atom.

42.6 Physical Interpretation of the Quantum Numbers

The principal quantum number n of a particular state in the hydrogen atom determines the energy of the atom according to Equation 42.21. Now let's see what the other quantum numbers in our atomic model correspond to physically.

The Orbital Quantum Number ℓ

We begin this discussion by returning briefly to the Bohr model of the atom. If the electron moves in a circle of radius r, the magnitude of its angular momentum relative to the center of the circle is $L = m_e vr$. The direction of $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ is perpendicular to the plane of the circle and is given by a right-hand rule. According to classical physics, the magnitude L of the orbital angular momentum can have any value. The Bohr model of hydrogen, however, postulates that the magnitude of the angular momentum of the electron is restricted to multiples of $\hbar$; that is, $L = n\hbar$. This model must be modified because it predicts (incorrectly) that the ground state of hydrogen has one unit of angular momentum. Furthermore, if L is taken to be zero in the Bohr model, the electron must be pictured as a particle oscillating along a straight line through the nucleus, which is a physically unacceptable situation.

These difficulties are resolved with the quantum-mechanical model of the atom, although we must give up the convenient mental representation of an electron orbiting in a well-defined circular path. Despite the absence of this representation, the atom does indeed possess an angular momentum and it is still called orbital angular momentum. According to quantum mechanics, an atom in a state whose principal quantum number is n can take on the following *discrete* values of the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum:[5]

$$\boxed{L = \sqrt{\ell(\ell+1)}\,\hbar \qquad \ell = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n-1} \qquad \textbf{(42.27)}$$

Allowed values of *L*

[5]Equation 42.27 is a direct result of the mathematical solution of the Schrödinger equation and the application of angular boundary conditions. This development, however, is beyond the scope of this book.

Given these allowed values of ℓ, we see that $L = 0$ (corresponding to $\ell = 0$) is an acceptable value of the magnitude of the angular momentum. That L can be zero in this model serves to point out the inherent difficulties in any attempt to describe results based on quantum mechanics in terms of a purely particle-like (classical) model. In the quantum-mechanical interpretation, the electron cloud for the $L = 0$ state is spherically symmetric and has no fundamental rotation axis.

The Orbital Magnetic Quantum Number m_ℓ

Because angular momentum is a vector, its direction must be specified. Recall from Chapter 29 that a current loop has a corresponding magnetic moment $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}} = I\vec{\mathbf{A}}$ (Eq. 29.15), where I is the current in the loop and $\vec{\mathbf{A}}$ is a vector perpendicular to the loop whose magnitude is the area of the loop. Such a moment placed in a magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ interacts with the field. Suppose a weak magnetic field applied along the z axis defines a direction in space. According to classical physics, the energy of the loop–field system depends on the direction of the magnetic moment of the loop with respect to the magnetic field as described by Equation 29.18, $U_B = -\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}} \cdot \vec{\mathbf{B}}$. Any energy between $-\mu B$ and $+\mu B$ is allowed by classical physics.

In the Bohr theory, the circulating electron represents a current loop. In the quantum-mechanical approach to the hydrogen atom, we abandon the circular orbit viewpoint of the Bohr theory, but the atom still possesses an orbital angular momentum. Therefore, there is some sense of rotation of the electron around the nucleus and a magnetic moment is present due to this angular momentum.

As mentioned in Section 42.3, spectral lines from some atoms are observed to split into groups of three closely spaced lines when the atoms are placed in a magnetic field. Suppose the hydrogen atom is located in a magnetic field. According to quantum mechanics, there are *discrete* directions allowed for the magnetic moment vector $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$ with respect to the magnetic field vector $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$. This situation is very different from that in classical physics, in which all directions are allowed.

Because the magnetic moment $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$ of the atom can be related[6] to the angular momentum vector $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$, the discrete directions of $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$ translate to the direction of $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ being quantized. This quantization means that L_z (the projection of $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ along the z axis) can have only discrete values. The orbital magnetic quantum number m_ℓ specifies the allowed values of the z component of the orbital angular momentum according to the expression[7]

Allowed values of L_z

$$L_z = m_\ell \hbar \tag{42.28}$$

The quantization of the possible orientations of $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ with respect to an external magnetic field is often referred to as **space quantization.**

Let's look at the possible magnitudes and orientations of $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ for a given value of ℓ. Recall that m_ℓ can have values ranging from $-\ell$ to ℓ. If $\ell = 0$, then $L = 0$; the only allowed value of m_ℓ is $m_\ell = 0$ and $L_z = 0$. If $\ell = 1$, then $L = \sqrt{2}\hbar$ from Equation 42.27. The possible values of m_ℓ are -1, 0, and 1, so Equation 42.28 tells us that L_z may be $-\hbar$, 0, or $\hbar$. If $\ell = 2$, the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum is $\sqrt{6}\,\hbar$. The value of m_ℓ can be -2, -1, 0, 1, or 2, corresponding to L_z values of $-2\hbar$, $-\hbar$, 0, $\hbar$, or $2\hbar$, and so on.

Figure 42.13a shows a **vector model** that describes space quantization for the case $\ell = 2$. Notice that $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ can never be aligned parallel or antiparallel to $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$ because the maximum value of L_z is $\ell\hbar$, which is less than the magnitude of the angular momentum $L = \sqrt{\ell(\ell + 1)}\,\hbar$. The angular momentum vector $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ is allowed to be perpendicular to $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$, which corresponds to the case of $L_z = 0$ and $\ell = 0$.

---

[6]See Equation 30.22 for this relationship as derived from a classical viewpoint. Quantum mechanics arrives at the same result.

[7]As with Equation 42.27, the relationship expressed in Equation 42.28 arises from the solution to the Schrödinger equation and application of boundary conditions.

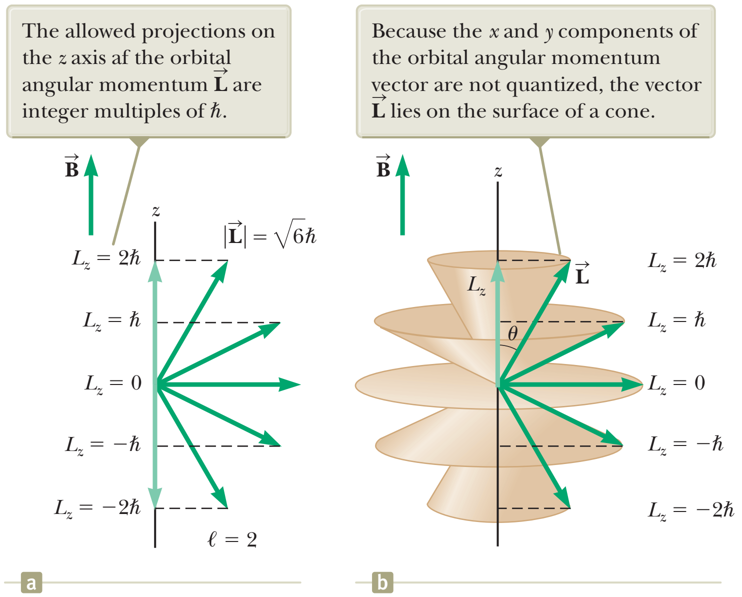


Figure 42.13 A vector model for $\ell = 2$.

The vector $\vec{L}$ does not point in one specific direction. If $\vec{L}$ were known exactly, all three components L_x, L_y, and L_z would be specified, which is inconsistent with an angular momentum version of the uncertainty principle. How can the magnitude and z component of a vector be specified, but the vector not be completely specified? To answer, imagine that L_x and L_y are completely unspecified so that $\vec{L}$ lies anywhere on the surface of a cone that makes an angle θ with the z axis as shown in Figure 42.13b. From the figure, we see that θ is also quantized and that its values are specified through the relationship

$$\cos\theta = \frac{L_z}{L} = \frac{m_\ell}{\sqrt{\ell(\ell+1)}} \tag{42.29}$$

◀ **Allowed directions of the orbital angular momentum vector**

If the atom is placed in a magnetic field, the energy $U_B = -\vec{\mu} \cdot \vec{B}$ is additional energy for the atom–field system beyond that described in Equation 42.21. Because the directions of $\vec{\mu}$ are quantized, there are discrete total energies for the system corresponding to different values of m_ℓ. Figure 42.14a shows a transition between two atomic levels in the absence of a magnetic field. In Figure 42.14b, a magnetic

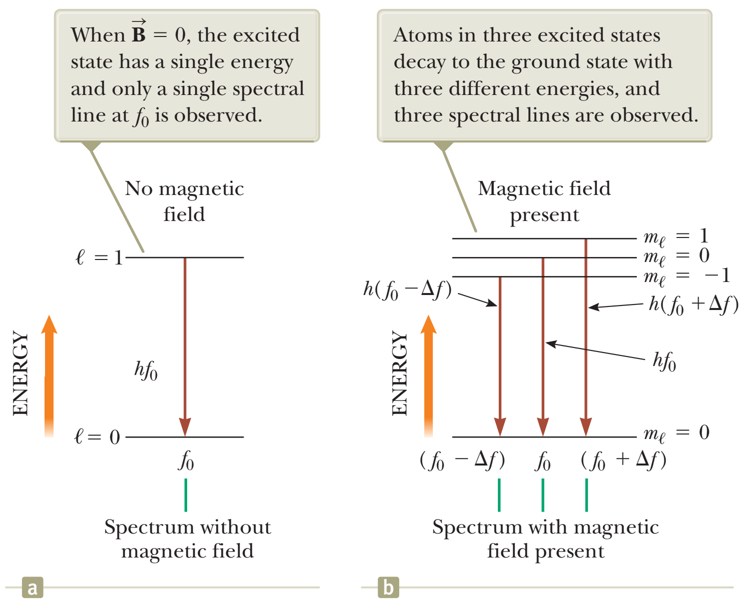


Figure 42.14 The Zeeman effect. (a) Energy levels for the ground and first excited states of a hydrogen atom. (b) When the atom is immersed in a magnetic field $\vec{B}$, the state with $\ell = 1$ splits into three states, giving rise to emission lines at f_0, $f_0 + \Delta f$, and $f_0 - \Delta f$, where Δf is the frequency shift of the emission caused by the magnetic field.

field is applied and the upper level, with $\ell = 1$, splits into three levels corresponding to the different directions of $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$. There are now three possible transitions from the $\ell = 1$ subshell to the $\ell = 0$ subshell. Therefore, in a collection of atoms, there are atoms in all three states and the single spectral line in Figure 42.14a splits into three spectral lines. This phenomenon is called the *Zeeman effect.*

The Zeeman effect can be used to measure extraterrestrial magnetic fields. For example, the splitting of spectral lines in light from hydrogen atoms in the surface of the Sun can be used to calculate the magnitude of the magnetic field at that location. The Zeeman effect is one of many phenomena that cannot be explained with the Bohr model but are successfully explained by the quantum model of the atom.

Example 42.4 Space Quantization for Hydrogen

Consider the hydrogen atom in the $\ell = 3$ state. Calculate the magnitude of $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$, the allowed values of L_z, and the corresponding angles θ that $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ makes with the z axis.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Consider Figure 42.13a, which is a vector model for $\ell = 2$. Draw such a vector model for $\ell = 3$ to help with this problem.

Categorize We evaluate results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Calculate the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum using Equation 42.27:

$$L = \sqrt{\ell(\ell + 1)}\,\hbar = \sqrt{3(3 + 1)}\,\hbar = \boxed{2\sqrt{3}\,\hbar}$$

Calculate the allowed values of L_z using Equation 42.28 with $m_\ell = -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2$, and 3:

$$L_z = \boxed{-3\hbar, -2\hbar, -\hbar, 0, \hbar, 2\hbar, 3\hbar}$$

Calculate the allowed values of $\cos\theta$ using Equation 42.29:

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\pm 3}{2\sqrt{3}} = \pm 0.866 \qquad \cos\theta = \frac{\pm 2}{2\sqrt{3}} = \pm 0.577$$

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\pm 1}{2\sqrt{3}} = \pm 0.289 \qquad \cos\theta = \frac{0}{2\sqrt{3}} = 0$$

Find the angles corresponding to these values of $\cos\theta$:

$$\theta = \boxed{30.0^\circ, 54.7^\circ, 73.2^\circ, 90.0^\circ, 107^\circ, 125^\circ, 150^\circ}$$

WHAT IF? What if the value of ℓ is an arbitrary integer? For an arbitrary value of ℓ, how many values of m_ℓ are allowed?

Answer For a given value of ℓ, the values of m_ℓ range from $-\ell$ to $+\ell$ in steps of 1. Therefore, there are 2ℓ nonzero values of m_ℓ (specifically, $\pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots, \pm \ell$). In addition, one more value of $m_\ell = 0$ is possible, for a total of $2\ell + 1$ values of m_ℓ. This result is critical in understanding the results of the Stern–Gerlach experiment described below with regard to spin.

MARGARETHE BOHR COLLECTION/ Photo Researchers, Inc.

Wolfgang Pauli and Niels Bohr watch a spinning top. The spin of the electron is analogous to the spin of the top but is different in many ways.

The Spin Magnetic Quantum Number m_s

The three quantum numbers n, ℓ, and m_ℓ discussed so far are generated by applying boundary conditions to solutions of the Schrödinger equation, and we can assign a physical interpretation to each quantum number. Let's now consider **electron spin,** which does *not* come from the Schrödinger equation.

In Example 42.2, we found four quantum states corresponding to $n = 2$. In reality, however, eight such states occur. The additional four states can be explained by requiring a fourth quantum number for each state, the **spin magnetic quantum number** $\boldsymbol{m_s}$**.**

The need for this new quantum number arises because of an unusual feature observed in the spectra of certain gases, such as sodium vapor. Close examination of one prominent line in the emission spectrum of sodium reveals that the line is, in fact, two closely spaced lines called a *doublet*.[8] The wavelengths of these lines occur in the yellow region of the electromagnetic spectrum at 589.0 nm and 589.6 nm. In 1925, when this doublet was first observed, it could not be explained with the existing atomic theory. To resolve this dilemma, Samuel Goudsmit (1902–1978) and George Uhlenbeck (1900–1988), following a suggestion made by Austrian physicist Wolfgang Pauli, proposed the spin quantum number.

To describe this new quantum number, it is convenient (but technically incorrect) to imagine the electron spinning about its axis as it orbits the nucleus as described in Section 30.6. As illustrated in Figure 42.15, only two directions exist for the electron spin. If the direction of spin is as shown in Figure 42.15a, the electron is said to have *spin up*. If the direction of spin is as shown in Figure 42.15b, the electron is said to have *spin down*. In the presence of a magnetic field, the energy associated with the electron is slightly different for the two spin directions. This energy difference accounts for the sodium doublet.

The classical description of electron spin—as resulting from a spinning electron—is incorrect. More recent theory indicates that the electron is a point particle, without spatial extent. Therefore, the electron is not modeled as a rigid object and cannot be considered to be spinning. Despite this conceptual difficulty, all experimental evidence supports the idea that an electron does have some intrinsic angular momentum that can be described by the spin magnetic quantum number. Paul Dirac (1902–1984) showed that this fourth quantum number originates in the relativistic properties of the electron.

In 1921, Otto Stern (1888–1969) and Walter Gerlach (1889–1979) performed an experiment that demonstrated space quantization. Their results, however, were not in quantitative agreement with the atomic theory that existed at that time. In their experiment, a beam of silver atoms sent through a nonuniform magnetic field was split into two discrete components (Fig. 42.16). Stern and Gerlach repeated the experiment using other atoms, and in each case the beam split into two or more components. The classical argument is as follows. If the z direction is chosen to be the direction of the maximum nonuniformity of $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$, the net magnetic force on the atoms is along the z axis and is proportional to the component of the magnetic moment $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$ of the atom in the z direction. Classically, $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$ can have any orientation, so the deflected beam should be spread out continuously. According to quantum mechanics, however, the deflected beam has an integral number of discrete components and the number of components determines the number of possible values of μ_z. Therefore, because the Stern–Gerlach experiment showed split beams, space quantization was at least qualitatively verified.

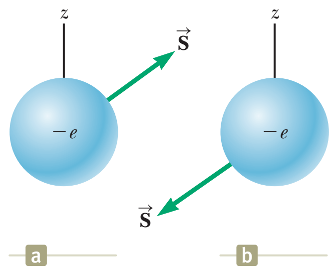


Figure 42.15 The spin of an electron can be either (a) up or (b) down relative to a specified z axis. As in the case of orbital angular momentum, the x and y components of the spin angular momentum vector are not quantized.

Pitfall Prevention 42.5

The Electron Is Not Spinning

Although the concept of a spinning electron is conceptually useful, it should not be taken literally. The spin of the Earth is a mechanical rotation. On the other hand, electron spin is a purely quantum effect that gives the electron an angular momentum as if it were physically spinning.

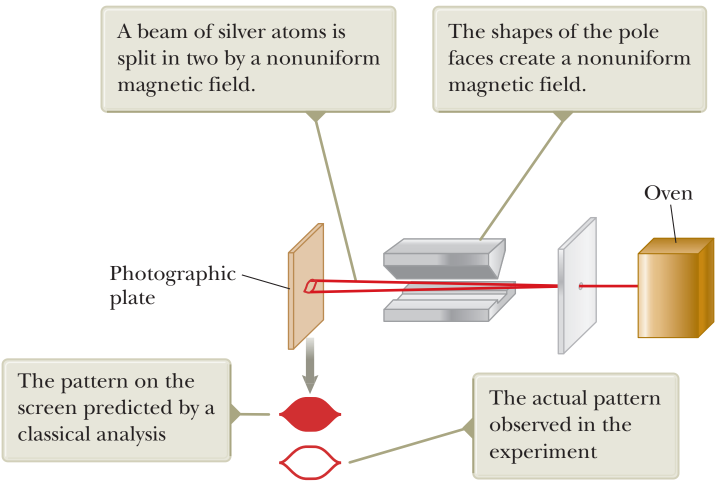


Figure 42.16 The technique used by Stern and Gerlach to verify space quantization.

[8]This phenomenon is a Zeeman effect for spin and is identical in nature to the Zeeman effect for orbital angular momentum discussed before Example 42.4 except that no external magnetic field is required. The magnetic field for this Zeeman effect is internal to the atom and arises from the relative motion of the electron and the nucleus.

For the moment, let's assume the magnetic moment of the atom is due to the orbital angular momentum. Because μ_z is proportional to m_ℓ, the number of possible values of μ_z is $2\ell + 1$ as found in the What If? section of Example 42.4. Furthermore, because ℓ is an integer, the number of values of μ_z is always odd. This prediction is not consistent with Stern and Gerlach's observation of two components (an *even* number) in the deflected beam of silver atoms. Hence, either quantum mechanics is incorrect or the model is in need of refinement.

In 1927, T. E. Phipps and J. B. Taylor repeated the Stern–Gerlach experiment using a beam of hydrogen atoms. Their experiment was important because it involved an atom containing a single electron in its ground state, for which the quantum theory makes reliable predictions. Recall that $\ell = 0$ for hydrogen in its ground state, so $m_\ell = 0$. Therefore, we would not expect the beam to be deflected by the magnetic field at all because the magnetic moment $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$ of the atom is zero. The beam in the Phipps–Taylor experiment, however, was again split into two components! On the basis of that result, we must conclude that something other than the electron's orbital motion is contributing to the atomic magnetic moment.

As we learned earlier, Goudsmit and Uhlenbeck had proposed that the electron has an intrinsic angular momentum, spin, apart from its orbital angular momentum. In other words, the total angular momentum of the electron in a particular electronic state contains both an orbital contribution $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ and a spin contribution $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$. The Phipps–Taylor result confirmed the hypothesis of Goudsmit and Uhlenbeck.

In 1929, Dirac used the relativistic form of the total energy of a system to solve the relativistic wave equation for the electron in a potential well. His analysis confirmed the fundamental nature of electron spin. (Spin, like mass and charge, is an *intrinsic* property of a particle, independent of its surroundings.) Furthermore, the analysis showed that electron spin[9] can be described by a single quantum number s, whose value can be only $s = \frac{1}{2}$. The spin angular momentum of the electron *never changes*. This notion contradicts classical laws, which dictate that a rotating charge slows down in the presence of an applied magnetic field because of the Faraday emf that accompanies the changing field (Chapter 31). Furthermore, if the electron is viewed as a spinning ball of charge subject to classical laws, parts of the electron near its surface would be rotating with speeds exceeding the speed of light. Therefore, the classical picture must not be pressed too far; ultimately, spin of an electron is a quantum entity defying any simple classical description.

Because spin is a form of angular momentum, it must follow the same quantum rules as orbital angular momentum. In accordance with Equation 42.27, the magnitude of the **spin angular momentum** $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ for the electron is

Magnitude of the spin angular momentum of an electron

$$S = \sqrt{s(s+1)}\,\hbar = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\hbar \qquad \textbf{(42.30)}$$

Like orbital angular momentum $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$, spin angular momentum $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ exhibits space quantization as described in Figure 42.17. The spin vector $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ can have two orientations relative to a z axis, specified by the **spin magnetic quantum number** $m_s = \pm\frac{1}{2}$. Similar to Equation 42.28 for orbital angular momentum, the z component of spin angular momentum is

Allowed values of S_z

$$S_z = m_s\hbar = \pm\tfrac{1}{2}\hbar \qquad \textbf{(42.31)}$$

The two values $\pm\hbar/2$ for S_z correspond to the two possible orientations for $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ shown in Figure 42.17. The value $m_s = +\frac{1}{2}$ refers to the spin-up case, and $m_s = -\frac{1}{2}$ refers to the spin-down case. Notice that Equations 42.30 and 42.31 do not allow the spin vector to lie along the z axis. The actual direction of $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ is at a relatively large angle with respect to the z axis as shown in Figures 42.15 and 42.17.

[9]Scientists often use the word *spin* when referring to the spin angular momentum quantum number. For example, it is common to say, "The electron has a spin of one half."

As discussed in the What If? feature of Example 42.4, there are $2\ell + 1$ possible values of m_ℓ for orbital angular momentum. Similarly, for spin angular momentum, there are $2s + 1$ values of m_s. For a spin of $s = \frac{1}{2}$, the number of values of m_s is $2s + 1 = 2$. These two possibilities for m_s lead to the splitting of the beams into two components in the Stern–Gerlach and Phipps–Taylor experiments.

The spin magnetic moment $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_{\text{spin}}$ of the electron is related to its spin angular momentum $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ by the expression

$$\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_{\text{spin}} = -\frac{e}{m_e}\vec{\mathbf{S}} \tag{42.32}$$

where e is the electronic charge and m_e is the mass of the electron. Because $S_z = \pm\frac{1}{2}\hbar$, the z component of the spin magnetic moment can have the values

$$\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_{\text{spin},z} = \pm\frac{e\hbar}{2m_e} \tag{42.33}$$

As we learned in Section 30.6, the quantity $e\hbar/2m_e$ is the Bohr magneton $\mu_B = 9.27 \times 10^{-24}$ J/T. The ratio of magnetic moment to angular momentum is twice as great for spin angular momentum (Eq. 42.32) as it is for orbital angular momentum (Eq. 30.22). The factor of 2 is explained in a relativistic treatment first carried out by Dirac.

Today, physicists explain the Stern–Gerlach and Phipps–Taylor experiments as follows. The observed magnetic moments for both silver and hydrogen are due to spin angular momentum only, with no contribution from orbital angular momentum. In the Phipps–Taylor experiment, the single electron in the hydrogen atom has its electron spin quantized in the magnetic field in such a way that the z component of spin angular momentum is either $\frac{1}{2}\hbar$ or $-\frac{1}{2}\hbar$, corresponding to $m_s = \pm\frac{1}{2}$. Electrons with spin $+\frac{1}{2}$ are deflected downward, and those with spin $-\frac{1}{2}$ are deflected upward. In the Stern–Gerlach experiment, 46 of a silver atom's 47 electrons are in filled subshells with paired spins. Therefore, these 46 electrons have a net zero contribution to both orbital and spin angular momentum for the atom. The angular momentum of the atom is due to only the 47th electron. This electron lies in the 5s subshell, so there is no contribution from orbital angular momentum. As a result, the silver atoms have angular momentum due to just the spin of one electron and behave in the same way in a nonuniform magnetic field as the hydrogen atoms in the Phipps–Taylor experiment.

The Stern–Gerlach experiment provided two important results. First, it verified the concept of space quantization. Second, it showed that spin angular momentum exists, even though this property was not recognized until four years after the experiments were performed.

As mentioned earlier, there are eight quantum states corresponding to $n = 2$ in the hydrogen atom, not four as found in Example 42.2. Each of the four states in Example 42.2 is actually two states because of the two possible values of m_s. Table 42.4 shows the quantum numbers corresponding to these eight states.

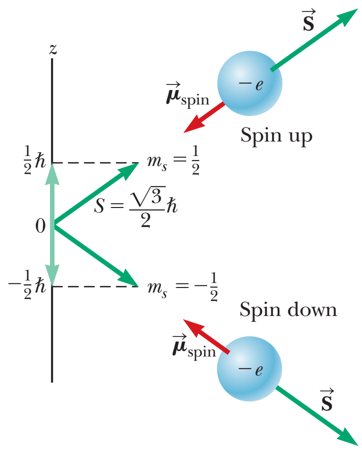


Figure 42.17 Spin angular momentum $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ exhibits space quantization. This figure shows the two allowed orientations of the spin angular momentum vector $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ and the spin magnetic moment $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_{\text{spin}}$ for a spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ particle, such as the electron.

Table 42.4 Quantum Numbers for the $n = 2$ State of Hydrogen

n	ℓ	m_ℓ	m_s	Subshell	Shell	Number of States in Subshell
2	0	0	$\frac{1}{2}$	2s	L	2
2	0	0	$-\frac{1}{2}$			
2	1	1	$\frac{1}{2}$	2p	L	6
2	1	1	$-\frac{1}{2}$			
2	1	0	$\frac{1}{2}$			
2	1	0	$-\frac{1}{2}$			
2	1	-1	$\frac{1}{2}$			
2	1	-1	$-\frac{1}{2}$			

Keystone/Getty Images

Wolfgang Pauli
Austrian Theoretical Physicist (1900–1958)
An extremely talented theoretician who made important contributions in many areas of modern physics, Pauli gained public recognition at the age of 21 with a masterful review article on relativity that is still considered one of the finest and most comprehensive introductions to the subject. His other major contributions were the discovery of the exclusion principle, the explanation of the connection between particle spin and statistics, theories of relativistic quantum electrodynamics, the neutrino hypothesis, and the hypothesis of nuclear spin.

Pitfall Prevention 42.6

The Exclusion Principle Is More General A more general form of the exclusion principle, discussed in Chapter 46, states that no two *fermions* can be in the same quantum state. Fermions are particles with half-integral spin ($\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}, \frac{5}{2}$, and so on).

42.7 The Exclusion Principle and the Periodic Table

We have found that the state of a hydrogen atom is specified by four quantum numbers: n, ℓ, m_ℓ, and m_s. As it turns out, the number of states available to other atoms may also be predicted by this same set of quantum numbers. In fact, these four quantum numbers can be used to describe all the electronic states of an atom, regardless of the number of electrons in its structure.

For our discussion of atoms with many electrons, it is often easiest to assign the quantum numbers to the electrons in the atom as opposed to the entire atom. An obvious question that arises here is, "How many electrons can be in a particular quantum state?" Pauli answered this important question in 1925, in a statement known as the **exclusion principle:**

> No two electrons can ever be in the same quantum state; therefore, no two electrons in the same atom can have the same set of quantum numbers.

If this principle were not valid, an atom could radiate energy until every electron in the atom is in the lowest possible energy state and therefore the chemical behavior of the elements would be grossly modified. Nature as we know it would not exist.

In reality, we can view the electronic structure of complex atoms as a succession of filled levels increasing in energy. As a general rule, the order of filling of an atom's subshells is as follows. Once a subshell is filled, the next electron goes into the lowest-energy vacant subshell. We can understand this behavior by recognizing that if the atom were not in the lowest energy state available to it, it would radiate energy until it reached this state. This tendency of a quantum system to achieve the lowest energy state is consistent with the second law of thermodynamics discussed in Chapter 22. The entropy of the Universe is increased by the system emitting photons, so that energy is spread out over a larger volume of space.

Before we discuss the electronic configuration of various elements, it is convenient to define an *orbital* as the atomic state characterized by the quantum numbers n, ℓ, and m_ℓ. The exclusion principle tells us that only two electrons can be present in any orbital. One of these electrons has a spin magnetic quantum number $m_s = +\frac{1}{2}$, and the other has $m_s = -\frac{1}{2}$. Because each orbital is limited to two electrons, the number of electrons that can occupy the various shells is also limited.

Table 42.5 shows the allowed quantum states for an atom up to $n = 3$. The arrows pointing upward indicate an electron described by $m_s = +\frac{1}{2}$, and those pointing downward indicate that $m_s = -\frac{1}{2}$. The $n = 1$ shell can accommodate only two electrons because $m_\ell = 0$ means that only one orbital is allowed. (The three quantum numbers describing this orbital are $n = 1$, $\ell = 0$, and $m_\ell = 0$.) The $n = 2$ shell has two subshells, one for $\ell = 0$ and one for $\ell = 1$. The $\ell = 0$ subshell is limited to two electrons because $m_\ell = 0$. The $\ell = 1$ subshell has three allowed orbitals, corresponding to $m_\ell = 1$, 0, and -1. Because each orbital can accommodate two electrons, the $\ell = 1$ subshell can hold six electrons. Therefore, the $n = 2$ shell can contain eight electrons as shown in Table 42.4. The $n = 3$ shell has three subshells ($\ell = 0, 1, 2$) and nine orbitals, accommodating up to 18 electrons. In general, each shell can accommodate up to $2n^2$ electrons.

Table 42.5 **Allowed Quantum States for an Atom Up to $n = 3$**

Shell	n	**1**	**2**				**3**								
Subshell	ℓ	0	0	1			0	1			2				
Orbital	m_ℓ	0	0	1	0	−1	0	1	0	−1	2	1	0	−1	−2
	m_s	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓	↑↓

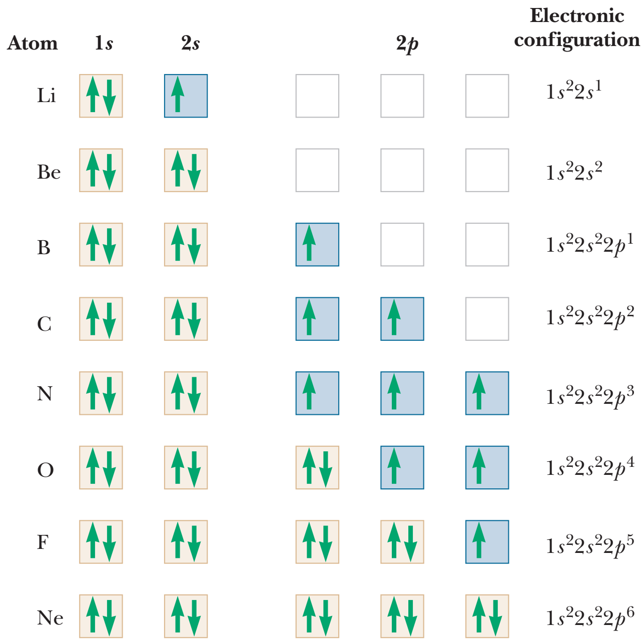


Figure 42.18 The filling of electronic states must obey both the exclusion principle and Hund's rule (page 1320).

The exclusion principle can be illustrated by examining the electronic arrangement in a few of the lighter atoms. The atomic number Z of any element is the number of protons in the nucleus of an atom of that element. A neutral atom of that element has Z electrons. Hydrogen ($Z = 1$) has only one electron, which, in the ground state of the atom, can be described by either of two sets of quantum numbers n, ℓ, m_ℓ, m_s: $1, 0, 0, \frac{1}{2}$ or $1, 0, 0, -\frac{1}{2}$. This electronic configuration is often written $1s^1$. The notation $1s$ refers to a state for which $n = 1$ and $\ell = 0$, and the superscript indicates that one electron is present in the s subshell.

Helium ($Z = 2$) has two electrons. In the ground state, their quantum numbers are $1, 0, 0, \frac{1}{2}$ and $1, 0, 0, -\frac{1}{2}$. No other possible combinations of quantum numbers exist for this level, and we say that the K shell is filled. This electronic configuration is written $1s^2$.

Lithium ($Z = 3$) has three electrons. In the ground state, two of them are in the $1s$ subshell. The third is in the $2s$ subshell because this subshell is slightly lower in energy than the $2p$ subshell.[10] Hence, the electronic configuration for lithium is $1s^22s^1$.

The electronic configurations of lithium and the next several elements are provided in Figure 42.18. The electronic configuration of beryllium ($Z = 4$), with its four electrons, is $1s^22s^2$, and boron ($Z = 5$) has a configuration of $1s^22s^22p^1$. The $2p$ electron in boron may be described by any of the six equally probable sets of quantum numbers listed in Table 42.4. In Figure 42.18, we show this electron in the leftmost $2p$ box with spin up, but it is equally likely to be in any $2p$ box with spin either up or down.

Carbon ($Z = 6$) has six electrons, giving rise to a question concerning how to assign the two $2p$ electrons. Do they go into the same orbital with paired spins ($\uparrow\downarrow$), or do they occupy different orbitals with unpaired spins ($\uparrow\uparrow$)? Experimental data show that the most stable configuration (that is, the one with the lowest energy) is the latter, in which the spins are unpaired. Hence, the two $2p$ electrons in carbon and the three $2p$ electrons in nitrogen ($Z = 7$) have unpaired spins as

[10]To a first approximation, energy depends only on the quantum number n, as we have discussed. Because of the effect of the electronic charge shielding the nuclear charge, however, energy depends on ℓ also in multielectron atoms. We shall discuss these shielding effects in Section 42.8.

Figure 42.18 shows. The general rule that governs such situations, called **Hund's rule,** states that

> when an atom has orbitals of equal energy, the order in which they are filled by electrons is such that a maximum number of electrons have unpaired spins.

Some exceptions to this rule occur in elements having subshells that are close to being filled or half-filled.

In 1871, long before quantum mechanics was developed, the Russian chemist Dmitri Mendeleev (1834–1907) made an early attempt at finding some order among the chemical elements. He was trying to organize the elements for the table of contents of a book he was writing. He arranged the atoms in a table similar to that shown in Figure 42.19, according to their atomic masses and chemical similarities. The first table Mendeleev proposed contained many blank spaces, and he boldly stated that the gaps were there only because the elements had not yet been discovered. By noting the columns in which some missing elements should be located, he was able to make rough predictions about their chemical properties. Within 20 years of this announcement, most of these elements were indeed discovered.

The elements in the **periodic table** (Fig. 42.19) are arranged so that all those in a column have similar chemical properties. For example, consider the elements in the last column, which are all gases at room temperature: He (helium), Ne (neon), Ar (argon), Kr (krypton), Xe (xenon), and Rn (radon). The outstanding characteristic of all these elements is that they do not normally take part in chemical reactions; that is, they do not readily join with other atoms to form molecules. They are therefore called *inert gases* or *noble gases.*

Group I	Group II	Transition elements										Group III	Group IV	Group V	Group VI	Group VII	Group 0
H 1 $1s^1$																H 1 $1s^1$	He 2 $1s^2$
Li 3 $2s^1$	Be 4 $2s^2$											B 5 $2p^1$	C 6 $2p^2$	N 7 $2p^3$	O 8 $2p^4$	F 9 $2p^5$	Ne 10 $2p^6$
Na 11 $3s^1$	Mg 12 $3s^2$											Al 13 $3p^1$	Si 14 $3p^2$	P 15 $3p^3$	S 16 $3p^4$	Cl 17 $3p^5$	Ar 18 $3p^6$
K 19 $4s^1$	Ca 20 $4s^2$	Sc 21 $3d^14s^2$	Ti 22 $3d^24s^2$	V 23 $3d^34s^2$	Cr 24 $3d^54s^1$	Mn 25 $3d^54s^2$	Fe 26 $3d^64s^2$	Co 27 $3d^74s^2$	Ni 28 $3d^84s^2$	Cu 29 $3d^{10}4s^1$	Zn 30 $3d^{10}4s^2$	Ga 31 $4p^1$	Ge 32 $4p^2$	As 33 $4p^3$	Se 34 $4p^4$	Br 35 $4p^5$	Kr 36 $4p^6$
Rb 37 $5s^1$	Sr 38 $5s^2$	Y 39 $4d^15s^2$	Zr 40 $4d^25s^2$	Nb 41 $4d^45s^1$	Mo 42 $4d^55s^1$	Tc 43 $4d^55s^2$	Ru 44 $4d^75s^1$	Rh 45 $4d^85s^1$	Pd 46 $4d^{10}$	Ag 47 $4d^{10}5s^1$	Cd 48 $4d^{10}5s^2$	In 49 $5p^1$	Sn 50 $5p^2$	Sb 51 $5p^3$	Te 52 $5p^4$	I 53 $5p^5$	Xe 54 $5p^6$
Cs 55 $6s^1$	Ba 56 $6s^2$	57–71*	Hf 72 $5d^26s^2$	Ta 73 $5d^36s^2$	W 74 $5d^46s^2$	Re 75 $5d^56s^2$	Os 76 $5d^66s^2$	Ir 77 $5d^76s^2$	Pt 78 $5d^96s^1$	Au 79 $5d^{10}6s^1$	Hg 80 $5d^{10}6s^2$	Tl 81 $6p^1$	Pb 82 $6p^2$	Bi 83 $6p^3$	Po 84 $6p^4$	At 85 $6p^5$	Rn 86 $6p^6$
Fr 87 $7s^1$	Ra 88 $7s^2$	89–103**	Rf 104 $6d^27s^2$	Db 105 $6d^37s^2$	Sg 106 $6d^47s^2$	Bh 107 $6d^57s^2$	Hs 108 $6d^67s^2$	Mt 109 $6d^77s^2$	Ds 110 $6d^97s^1$	Rg 111	Cn 112	113	Fl 114	115	Lv 116	117	118

*Lanthanide series	La 57 $5d^16s^2$	Ce 58 $5d^14f^16s^2$	Pr 59 $4f^36s^2$	Nd 60 $4f^46s^2$	Pm 61 $4f^56s^2$	Sm 62 $4f^66s^2$	Eu 63 $4f^76s^2$	Gd 64 $5d^14f^76s^2$	Tb 65 $5d^14f^86s^2$	Dy 66 $4f^{10}6s^2$	Ho 67 $4f^{11}6s^2$	Er 68 $4f^{12}6s^2$	Tm 69 $4f^{13}6s^2$	Yb 70 $4f^{14}6s^2$	Lu 71 $5d^14f^{14}6s^2$
**Actinide series	Ac 89 $6d^17s^2$	Th 90 $6d^27s^2$	Pa 91 $5f^26d^17s^2$	U 92 $5f^36d^17s^2$	Np 93 $5f^46d^17s^2$	Pu 94 $5f^67s^2$	Am 95 $5f^77s^2$	Cm 96 $5f^76d^17s^2$	Bk 97 $5f^86d^17s^2$	Cf 98 $5f^{10}7s^2$	Es 99 $5f^{11}7s^2$	Fm 100 $5f^{12}7s^2$	Md 101 $5f^{13}7s^2$	No 102 $5f^{14}7s^2$	Lr 103 $5f^{14}6d^17s^2$

Figure 42.19 The periodic table of the elements is an organized tabular representation of the elements that shows their periodic chemical behavior. Elements in a given column have similar chemical behavior. This table shows the chemical symbol for the element, the atomic number, and the electron configuration. A more complete periodic table is available in Appendix C.

We can partially understand this behavior by looking at the electronic configurations in Figure 42.19. The chemical behavior of an element depends on the outermost shell that contains electrons. The electronic configuration for helium is $1s^2$, and the $n = 1$ shell (which is the outermost shell because it is the only shell) is filled. Also, the energy of the atom in this configuration is considerably lower than the energy for the configuration in which an electron is in the next available level, the $2s$ subshell. Next, look at the electronic configuration for neon, $1s^22s^22p^6$. Again, the outermost shell ($n = 2$ in this case) is filled and a wide gap in energy occurs between the filled $2p$ subshell and the next available one, the $3s$ subshell. Argon has the configuration $1s^22s^22p^63s^23p^6$. Here, it is only the $3p$ subshell that is filled, but again a wide gap in energy occurs between the filled $3p$ subshell and the next available one, the $3d$ subshell. This pattern continues through all the noble gases. Krypton has a filled $4p$ subshell, xenon a filled $5p$ subshell, and radon a filled $6p$ subshell.

The column to the left of the noble gases in the periodic table consists of a group of elements called the *halogens:* fluorine, chlorine, bromine, iodine, and astatine. At room temperature, fluorine and chlorine are gases, bromine is a liquid, and iodine and astatine are solids. In each of these atoms, the outer subshell is one electron short of being filled. As a result, the halogens are chemically very active, readily accepting an electron from another atom to form a closed shell. The halogens tend to form strong ionic bonds with atoms at the other side of the periodic table. (We shall discuss ionic bonds in Chapter 43.) In a halogen lightbulb, bromine or iodine atoms combine with tungsten atoms evaporated from the filament and return them to the filament, resulting in a longer-lasting lightbulb. In addition, the filament can be operated at a higher temperature than in ordinary lightbulbs, giving a brighter and whiter light.

At the left side of the periodic table, the Group I elements consist of hydrogen and the *alkali metals:* lithium, sodium, potassium, rubidium, cesium, and francium. Each of these atoms contains one electron in a subshell outside of a closed subshell. Therefore, these elements easily form positive ions because the lone electron is bound with a relatively low energy and is easily removed. Therefore, the alkali metal atoms are chemically active and form very strong bonds with halogen atoms. For example, table salt, NaCl, is a combination of an alkali metal and a halogen. Because the outer electron is weakly bound, pure alkali metals tend to be good electrical conductors. Because of their high chemical activity, however, they are not generally found in nature in pure form.

It is interesting to plot ionization energy versus atomic number Z as in Figure 42.20. Notice the pattern of $\Delta Z = 2, 8, 8, 18, 18, 32$ for the various peaks. This pattern follows from the exclusion principle and helps explain why the elements repeat their chemical properties in groups. For example, the peaks at $Z = 2, 10, 18,$

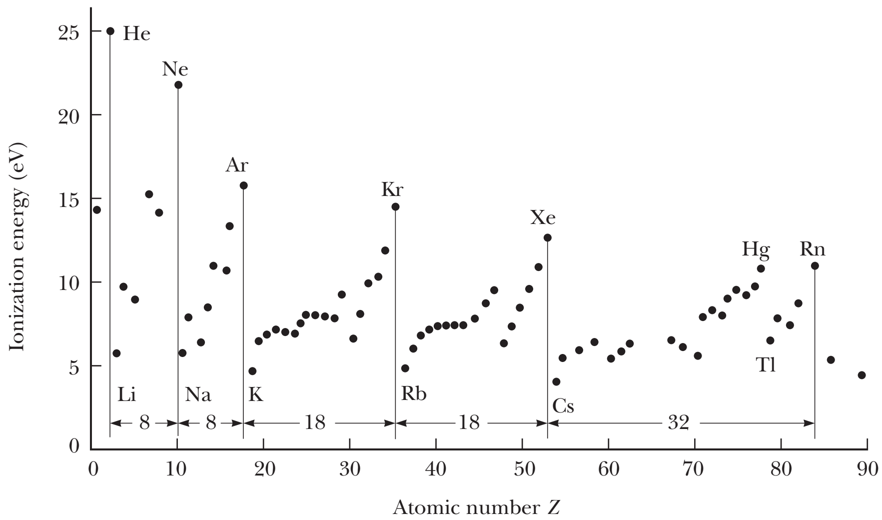


Figure 42.20 Ionization energy of the elements versus atomic number.

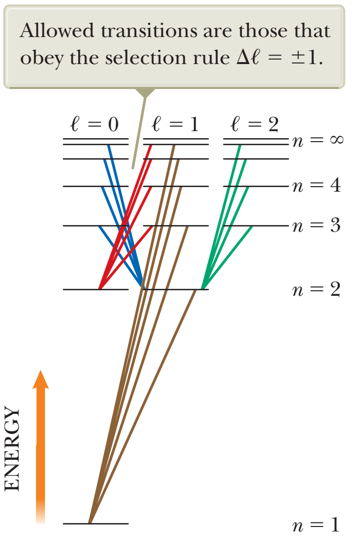


Figure 42.21 Some allowed electronic transitions for hydrogen, represented by the colored lines.

and 36 correspond to the noble gases helium, neon, argon, and krypton, respectively, which, as we have mentioned, all have filled outermost shells. These elements have relatively high ionization energies and similar chemical behavior.

42.8 More on Atomic Spectra: Visible and X-Ray

In Section 42.1, we discussed the observation and early interpretation of visible spectral lines from gases. These spectral lines have their origin in transitions between quantized atomic states. We shall investigate these transitions more deeply in these final three sections of this chapter.

A modified energy-level diagram for hydrogen is shown in Figure 42.21. In this diagram, the allowed values of ℓ for each shell are separated horizontally. Figure 42.21 shows only those states up to $\ell = 2$; the shells from $n = 4$ upward would have more sets of states to the right, which are not shown. Transitions for which ℓ does not change are very unlikely to occur and are called *forbidden transitions*. (Such transitions actually can occur, but their probability is very low relative to the probability of "allowed" transitions.) The various diagonal lines represent allowed transitions between stationary states. Whenever an atom makes a transition from a higher energy state to a lower one, a photon of light is emitted. The frequency of this photon is $f = \Delta E/h$, where ΔE is the energy difference between the two states and h is Planck's constant. The **selection rules** for the *allowed transitions* are

Selection rules for allowed atomic transitions

$$\Delta\ell = \pm1 \quad \text{and} \quad \Delta m_\ell = 0, \pm1 \tag{42.34}$$

Figure 42.21 shows that the orbital angular momentum of an atom *changes* when it makes a transition to a lower energy state. Therefore, the atom alone is a *nonisolated* system for angular momentum. If we consider the atom–photon system, however, it must be an *isolated* system for angular momentum because nothing else is interacting with this system. The photon involved in the process must carry angular momentum away from the atom when the transition occurs. In fact, the photon has an angular momentum equivalent to that of a particle having a spin of 1. We have now determined over several chapters that a photon has energy, linear momentum, and angular momentum, and each of these is conserved in atomic processes.

Recall from Equation 42.19 that the allowed energies for one-electron atoms and ions, such as hydrogen and He^+, are

$$E_n = -\frac{k_e e^2}{2a_0}\left(\frac{Z^2}{n^2}\right) = -\frac{(13.6 \text{ eV})Z^2}{n^2} \tag{42.35}$$

This equation was developed from the Bohr theory, but it serves as a good first approximation in quantum theory as well. For multielectron atoms, the positive nuclear charge Ze is largely shielded by the negative charge of the inner-shell electrons. Therefore, the outer electrons interact with a net charge that is smaller than the nuclear charge. The expression for the allowed energies for multielectron atoms has the same form as Equation 42.35 with Z replaced by an effective atomic number Z_{eff}:

$$E_n = -\frac{(13.6 \text{ eV})Z_{\text{eff}}^2}{n^2} \tag{42.36}$$

where Z_{eff} depends on n and ℓ.

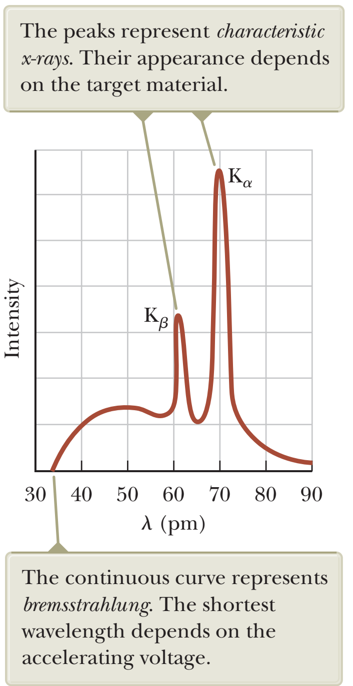


Figure 42.22 The x-ray spectrum of a metal target. The data shown were obtained when 37-keV electrons bombarded a molybdenum target.

X-Ray Spectra

X-rays are emitted when high-energy electrons or any other charged particles bombard a metal target. The x-ray spectrum typically consists of a broad continuous band containing a series of sharp lines as shown in Figure 42.22. In Section 34.6, we mentioned that an accelerated electric charge emits electromagnetic radiation. The x-rays in Figure 42.22 are the result of the slowing down of high-energy electrons as they strike the target. It may take several interactions with the atoms of the target before the electron gives up all its kinetic energy. The amount of kinetic energy given up in any interaction can vary from zero up to the entire kinetic energy of the electron. Therefore, the wavelength of radiation from these interactions lies in a continuous range from some minimum value up to infinity. It is this general slowing down of the electrons that provides the continuous curve in Figure 42.22, which shows the cutoff of x-rays below a minimum wavelength value that depends on the kinetic energy of the incoming electrons. X-ray radiation with its origin in the slowing down of electrons is called **bremsstrahlung,** the German word for "braking radiation."

Extremely high-energy bremsstrahlung can be used for the treatment of cancerous tissues. Figure 42.23 shows a machine that uses a linear accelerator to accelerate electrons up to 18 MeV and smash them into a tungsten target. The result is a beam of photons, up to a maximum energy of 18 MeV, which is actually in the gamma-ray range in Figure 34.13. This radiation is directed at the tumor in the patient.

Figure 42.23 Bremsstrahlung is created by this machine and used to treat cancer in a patient.

The discrete lines in Figure 42.22, called **characteristic x-rays** and discovered in 1908, have a different origin. Their origin remained unexplained until the details of atomic structure were understood. The first step in the production of characteristic x-rays occurs when a bombarding electron collides with a target atom. The electron must have sufficient energy to remove an inner-shell electron from the atom. The vacancy created in the shell is filled when an electron in a higher level drops down into the level containing the vacancy. The existence of characteristic lines in an x-ray spectrum is further direct evidence of the quantization of energy in atomic systems.

The time interval for atomic transitions to happen is very short, less than 10^{-9} s. This transition is accompanied by the emission of a photon whose energy equals the difference in energy between the two levels. Typically, the energy of such transitions is greater than 1 000 eV and the emitted x-ray photons have wavelengths in the range of 0.01 nm to 1 nm.

Let's assume the incoming electron has dislodged an atomic electron from the innermost shell, the K shell. If the vacancy is filled by an electron dropping from the next higher shell—the L shell—the photon emitted has an energy corresponding to the K_α characteristic x-ray line on the curve of Figure 42.22. In this notation, K refers to the final level of the electron and the subscript α, as the *first* letter of the Greek alphabet, refers to the initial level as the *first* one above the final level. Figure 42.24 shows this transition as well as others discussed below. If the vacancy in the K shell is filled by an electron dropping from the M shell, the K_β line in Figure 42.22 is produced.

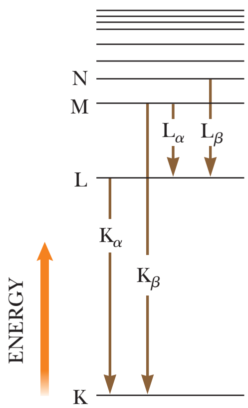


Figure 42.24 Transitions between higher and lower atomic energy levels that give rise to x-ray photons from heavy atoms when they are bombarded with high-energy electrons.

Other characteristic x-ray lines are formed when electrons drop from upper levels to vacancies other than those in the K shell. For example, L lines are produced when vacancies in the L shell are filled by electrons dropping from higher shells. An L_α line is produced as an electron drops from the M shell to the L shell, and an L_β line is produced by a transition from the N shell to the L shell.

Although multielectron atoms cannot be analyzed exactly with either the Bohr model or the Schrödinger equation, we can apply Gauss's law from Chapter 24 to make some surprisingly accurate estimates of expected x-ray energies and wavelengths. Consider an atom of atomic number Z in which one of the two electrons in the K shell has been ejected. Imagine drawing a gaussian sphere immediately inside the most probable radius of the L electrons. The electric field at the position of the L electrons is a combination of the fields created by the nucleus, the single K electron, the other L electrons, and the outer electrons. The wave functions of the outer electrons are such that the electrons have a very high probability of being farther from the nucleus than the L electrons are. Therefore, the outer electrons are much more likely to be outside the gaussian surface than inside and, on average, do not contribute significantly to the electric field at the position of the L electrons. The effective charge inside the gaussian surface is the positive nuclear charge and one negative charge due to the single K electron. Ignoring the interactions between L electrons, a single L electron behaves as if it experiences an electric field due to a charge $(Z - 1)e$ enclosed by the gaussian surface. The nuclear charge is shielded by the electron in the K shell such that Z_{eff} in Equation 42.36 is $Z - 1$. For higher-level shells, the nuclear charge is shielded by electrons in all the inner shells.

We can now use Equation 42.36 to estimate the energy associated with an electron in the L shell:

$$E_L = -(Z-1)^2 \frac{13.6 \text{ eV}}{2^2}$$

After the atom makes the transition, there are two electrons in the K shell. We can approximate the energy associated with one of these electrons as that of a one-electron atom. (In reality, the nuclear charge is reduced somewhat by the negative charge of the other electron, but let's ignore this effect.) Therefore,

$$E_K \approx -Z^2(13.6 \text{ eV}) \qquad \textbf{(42.37)}$$

As Example 42.5 shows, the energy of the atom with an electron in an M shell can be estimated in a similar fashion. Taking the energy difference between the initial and final levels, we can then calculate the energy and wavelength of the emitted photon.

In 1914, Henry G. J. Moseley (1887–1915) plotted $\sqrt{1/\lambda}$ versus the Z values for a number of elements where λ is the wavelength of the K_α line of each element. He found that the plot is a straight line as in Figure 42.25, which is consistent with rough calculations of the energy levels given by Equation 42.37. From this plot, Moseley determined the Z values of elements that had not yet been discovered and produced a periodic table in excellent agreement with the known chemical properties of the elements. Until that experiment, atomic numbers had been merely placeholders for the elements that appeared in the periodic table, the elements being ordered according to mass.

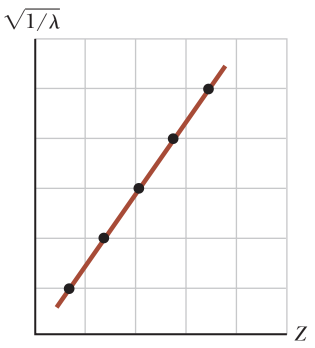


Figure 42.25 A Moseley plot of $\sqrt{1/\lambda}$ versus Z, where λ is the wavelength of the K_α x-ray line of the element of atomic number Z.

Quick Quiz 42.5 In an x-ray tube, as you increase the energy of the electrons striking the metal target, do the wavelengths of the characteristic x-rays **(a)** increase, **(b)** decrease, or **(c)** remain constant?

Quick Quiz 42.6 True or False: It is possible for an x-ray spectrum to show the continuous spectrum of x-rays without the presence of the characteristic x-rays.

Example 42.5 Estimating the Energy of an X-Ray

Estimate the energy of the characteristic x-ray emitted from a tungsten target when an electron drops from an M shell ($n = 3$ state) to a vacancy in the K shell ($n = 1$ state). The atomic number for tungsten is $Z = 74$.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine an accelerated electron striking a tungsten atom and ejecting an electron from the K shell ($n = 1$). Subsequently, an electron in the M shell ($n = 3$) drops down to fill the vacancy and the energy difference between the states is emitted as an x-ray photon.

Categorize We estimate the results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Use Equation 42.37 and $Z = 74$ for tungsten to estimate the energy associated with the electron in the K shell:

$$E_K \approx -(74)^2(13.6 \text{ eV}) = -7.4 \times 10^4 \text{ eV}$$

42.5 continued

Use Equation 42.36 and that nine electrons shield the nuclear charge (eight electrons in the $n = 2$ state and one electron in the $n = 1$ state) to estimate the energy of the M shell:

$$E_M \approx -\frac{(13.6 \text{ eV})(74-9)^2}{(3)^2} \approx -6.4 \times 10^3 \text{ eV}$$

Find the energy of the emitted x-ray photon:

$$hf = E_M - E_K \approx -6.4 \times 10^3 \text{ eV} - (-7.4 \times 10^4 \text{ eV})$$
$$\approx 6.8 \times 10^4 \text{ eV} = \boxed{68 \text{ keV}}$$

Consultation of x-ray tables shows that the M–K transition energies in tungsten vary from 66.9 keV to 67.7 keV, where the range of energies is due to slightly different energy values for states of different ℓ. Therefore, our estimate differs from the midpoint of this experimentally measured range by approximately 1%.

42.9 Spontaneous and Stimulated Transitions

We have seen that an atom absorbs and emits electromagnetic radiation only at frequencies that correspond to the energy differences between allowed states. Let's now examine more details of these processes. Consider an atom having the allowed energy levels labeled E_1, E_2, E_3, ... When radiation is incident on the atom, only those photons whose energy hf matches the energy separation ΔE between two energy levels can be absorbed by the atom as represented in Figure 42.26. This process is called **stimulated absorption** because the photon stimulates the atom to make the upward transition. At ordinary temperatures, most of the atoms in a sample are in the ground state. If a vessel containing many atoms of a gaseous element is illuminated with radiation of all possible photon frequencies (that is, a continuous spectrum), only those photons having energy $E_2 - E_1$, $E_3 - E_1$, $E_4 - E_1$, and so on are absorbed by the atoms. As a result of this absorption, some of the atoms are raised to excited states.

Once an atom is in an excited state, the excited atom can make a transition back to a lower energy level, emitting a photon in the process as in Figure 42.27. This process is known as **spontaneous emission** because it happens naturally, without requiring an event to trigger the transition. Typically, an atom remains in an excited state for only about 10^{-8} s.

In addition to spontaneous emission, **stimulated emission** occurs. Suppose an atom is in an excited state E_2 as in Figure 42.28 (page 1326). If the excited state is a *metastable state*—that is, if its lifetime is much longer than the typical 10^{-8} s lifetime of

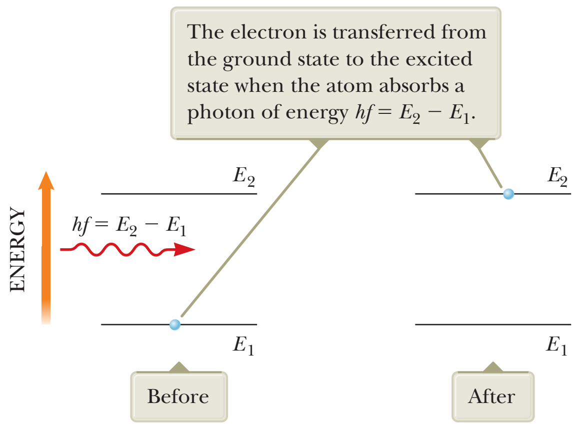


Figure 42.26 Stimulated absorption of a photon.

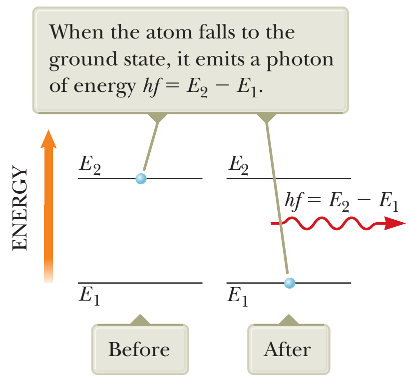


Figure 42.27 Spontaneous emission of a photon by an atom that is initially in the excited state E_2.

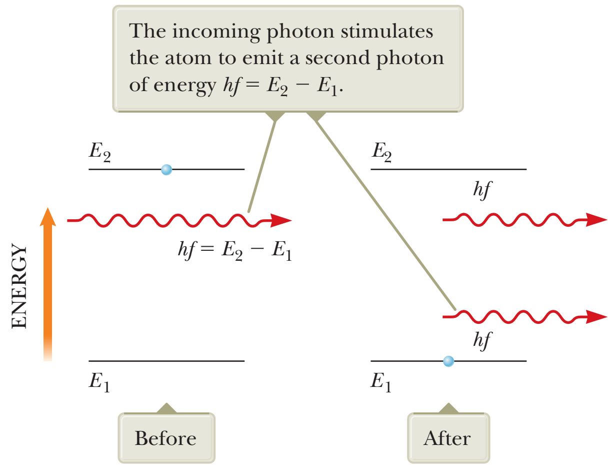


Figure 42.28 Stimulated emission of a photon by an incoming photon of energy $hf = E_2 - E_1$. Initially, the atom is in the excited state.

excited states—the time interval until spontaneous emission occurs is relatively long. Let's imagine that during that interval a photon of energy $hf = E_2 - E_1$ is incident on the atom. One possibility is that the photon energy is sufficient for the photon to ionize the atom. Another possibility is that the interaction between the incoming photon and the atom causes the atom to return to the ground state[11] and thereby emit a second photon with energy $hf = E_2 - E_1$. In this process, the incident photon is not absorbed; therefore, after the stimulated emission, two photons with identical energy exist: the incident photon and the emitted photon. The two are in phase and travel in the same direction, which is an important consideration in lasers, discussed next.

42.10 Lasers

In this section, we explore the nature of laser light and a variety of applications of lasers in our technological society. The primary properties of laser light that make it useful in these technological applications are the following:

- Laser light is coherent. The individual rays of light in a laser beam maintain a fixed phase relationship with one another.
- Laser light is monochromatic. Light in a laser beam has a very narrow range of wavelengths.
- Laser light has a small angle of divergence. The beam spreads out very little, even over large distances.

To understand the origin of these properties, let's combine our knowledge of atomic energy levels from this chapter with some special requirements for the atoms that emit laser light.

We have described how an incident photon can cause atomic energy transitions either upward (stimulated absorption) or downward (stimulated emission). The two processes are equally probable. When light is incident on a collection of atoms, a net absorption of energy usually occurs because when the system is in thermal equilibrium, many more atoms are in the ground state than in excited states. If the situation can be inverted so that more atoms are in an excited state than in the ground state, however, a net emission of photons can result. Such a condition is called **population inversion.**

Population inversion is, in fact, the fundamental principle involved in the operation of a **laser** (an acronym for *l*ight *a*mplification by *s*timulated *e*mission of *r*adia-

[11]This phenomenon is fundamentally due to *resonance.* The incoming photon has a frequency and drives the system of the atom at that frequency. Because the driving frequency matches that associated with a transition between states—one of the natural frequencies of the atom—there is a large response: the atom makes the transition.

tion). The full name indicates one of the requirements for laser light: to achieve laser action, the process of stimulated emission must occur.

Suppose an atom is in the excited state E_2 as in Figure 42.28 and a photon with energy $hf = E_2 - E_1$ is incident on it. As described in Section 42.9, the incoming photon can stimulate the excited atom to return to the ground state and thereby emit a second photon having the same energy hf and traveling in the same direction. The incident photon is not absorbed, so after the stimulated emission, there are two identical photons: the incident photon and the emitted photon. The emitted photon is in phase with the incident photon. These photons can stimulate other atoms to emit photons in a chain of similar processes. The many photons produced in this fashion are the source of the intense, coherent light in a laser.

For the stimulated emission to result in laser light, there must be a buildup of photons in the system. The following three conditions must be satisfied to achieve this buildup:

- The system must be in a state of population inversion: there must be more atoms in an excited state than in the ground state. That must be true because the number of photons emitted must be greater than the number absorbed.
- The excited state of the system must be a *metastable state,* meaning that its lifetime must be long compared with the usually short lifetimes of excited states, which are typically 10^{-8} s. In this case, the population inversion can be established and stimulated emission is likely to occur before spontaneous emission.
- The emitted photons must be confined in the system long enough to enable them to stimulate further emission from other excited atoms. That is achieved by using reflecting mirrors at the ends of the system. One end is made totally reflecting, and the other is partially reflecting. A fraction of the light intensity passes through the partially reflecting end, forming the beam of laser light (Fig. 42.29).

One device that exhibits stimulated emission of radiation is the helium–neon gas laser. Figure 42.30 is an energy-level diagram for the neon atom in this system. The mixture of helium and neon is confined to a glass tube that is sealed at the ends by mirrors. A voltage applied across the tube causes electrons to sweep through the tube, colliding with the atoms of the gases and raising them into excited states. Neon atoms are excited to state E_3* through this process (the asterisk indicates a metastable state) and also as a result of collisions with excited helium atoms. Stimulated emission occurs, causing neon atoms to make transitions to state E_2. Neighboring excited atoms are also stimulated. The result is the production of coherent light at a wavelength of 632.8 nm.

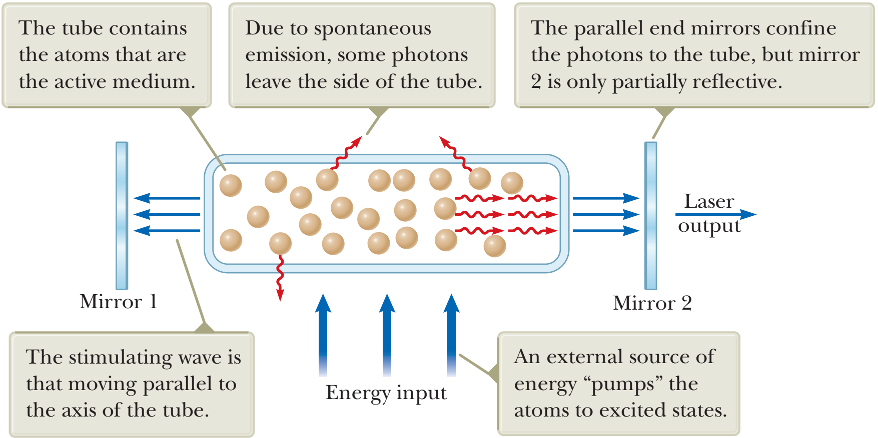


Figure 42.29 Schematic diagram of a laser design.

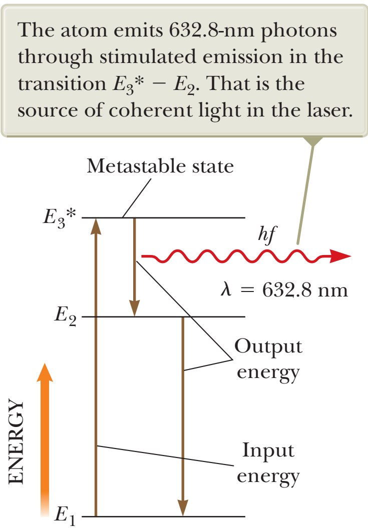


Figure 42.30 Energy-level diagram for a neon atom in a helium–neon laser.

Figure 42.31 This robot carrying laser scissors, which can cut up to 50 layers of fabric at a time, is one of the many applications of laser technology.

Applications

Since the development of the first laser in 1960, tremendous growth has occurred in laser technology. Lasers that cover wavelengths in the infrared, visible, and ultraviolet regions are now available. *Laser diodes* are used as laser pointers, and in surveying and construction rangefinders, fiber optic communication, DVD and Blu-ray players, and bar code readers. *Carbon dioxide lasers* are used in industry for welding and cutting, such as the process shown to cut fabric in Figure 42.31. *Excimer lasers* are used in Lasik eye surgery. A variety of other types of lasers exist and are used in various applications. These applications are possible because of the unique characteristics of laser light. In addition to being highly monochromatic, laser light is also highly directional and can be sharply focused to produce regions of extremely intense light energy (with energy densities 10^{12} times the density in the flame of a typical cutting torch).

Lasers are used in precision long-range distance measurement (range finding). In recent years, it has become important in astronomy and geophysics to measure as precisely as possible the distances from various points on the surface of the Earth to a point on the Moon's surface. To facilitate these measurements, the *Apollo* astronauts set up a 0.5-m square of reflector prisms on the Moon, which enables laser pulses directed from an Earth-based station to be retroreflected to the same station (see Fig. 35.8a). Using the known speed of light and the measured round-trip travel time of a laser pulse, the Earth–Moon distance can be determined to a precision of better than 10 cm.

Because various laser wavelengths can be absorbed in specific biological tissues, lasers have a number of medical applications. For example, certain laser procedures have greatly reduced blindness in patients with glaucoma and diabetes. Glaucoma is a widespread eye condition characterized by a high fluid pressure in the eye, a condition that can lead to destruction of the optic nerve. A simple laser operation (iridectomy) can "burn" open a tiny hole in a clogged membrane, relieving the destructive pressure. A serious side effect of diabetes is neovascularization, the proliferation of weak blood vessels, which often leak blood. When neovascularization occurs in the retina, vision deteriorates (diabetic retinopathy) and finally is destroyed. Today, it is possible to direct the green light from an argon ion laser through the clear eye lens and eye fluid, focus on the retina edges, and photocoagulate the leaky vessels. Even people who have only minor vision defects such as nearsightedness are benefiting from the use of lasers to reshape the cornea, changing its focal length and reducing the need for eyeglasses.

Laser surgery is now an everyday occurrence at hospitals and medical clinics around the world. Infrared light at 10 μm from a carbon dioxide laser can cut through muscle tissue, primarily by vaporizing the water contained in cellular material. Laser power of approximately 100 W is required in this technique. The advantage of the "laser knife" over conventional methods is that laser radiation cuts tissue and coagulates blood at the same time, leading to a substantial reduction in blood loss. In addition, the technique virtually eliminates cell migration, an important consideration when tumors are being removed.

A laser beam can be trapped in fine optical fiber light guides (endoscopes) by means of total internal reflection. An endoscope can be introduced through natural orifices, conducted around internal organs, and directed to specific interior body locations, eliminating the need for invasive surgery. For example, bleeding in the gastrointestinal tract can be optically cauterized by endoscopes inserted through the patient's mouth.

In biological and medical research, it is often important to isolate and collect unusual cells for study and growth. A laser cell separator exploits the tagging of specific cells with fluorescent dyes. All cells are then dropped from a tiny charged nozzle and laser-scanned for the dye tag. If triggered by the correct light-emitting tag, a small voltage applied to parallel plates deflects the falling electrically charged cell into a collection beaker.

An exciting area of research and technological applications arose in the 1990s with the development of *laser trapping* of atoms. One scheme, called *optical molasses* and developed by Steven Chu of Stanford University and his colleagues, involves focusing six laser beams onto a small region in which atoms are to be trapped. Each pair of lasers is along one of the x, y, and z axes and emits light in opposite directions (Fig. 42.32). The frequency of the laser light is tuned to be slightly below the absorption frequency of the subject atom. Imagine that an atom has been placed into the trap region and moves along the positive x axis toward the laser that is emitting light toward it (the rightmost laser on the x axis in Fig. 42.32). Because the atom is moving, the light from the laser appears Doppler-shifted upward in frequency in the reference frame of the atom. Therefore, a match between the Doppler-shifted laser frequency and the absorption frequency of the atom exists and the atom absorbs photons.[12] The momentum carried by these photons results in the atom being pushed back to the center of the trap. By incorporating six lasers, the atoms are pushed back into the trap regardless of which way they move along any axis.

In 1986, Chu developed *optical tweezers,* a device that uses a single tightly focused laser beam to trap and manipulate small particles. In combination with microscopes, optical tweezers have opened up many new possibilities for biologists. Optical tweezers have been used to manipulate live bacteria without damage, move chromosomes within a cell nucleus, and measure the elastic properties of a single DNA molecule. Chu shared the 1997 Nobel Prize in Physics with two of his colleagues for the development of the techniques of optical trapping.

An extension of laser trapping, *laser cooling,* is possible because the normal high speeds of the atoms are reduced when they are restricted to the region of the trap. As a result, the temperature of the collection of atoms can be reduced to a few microkelvins. The technique of laser cooling allows scientists to study the behavior of atoms at extremely low temperatures (Fig. 42.33).

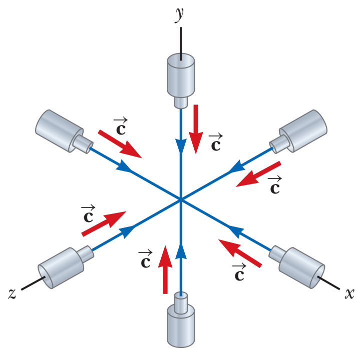
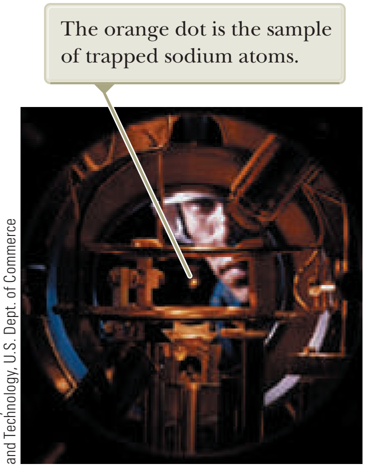


Figure 42.32 An optical trap for atoms is formed at the intersection point of six counterpropagating laser beams along mutually perpendicular axes.



Courtesy of National Institute of Standards and Technology, U.S. Dept. of Commerce

Figure 42.33 A staff member of the National Institute of Standards and Technology views a sample of trapped sodium atoms cooled to a temperature of less than 1 mK.

Summary

Concepts and Principles

The wavelengths of spectral lines from hydrogen, called the **Balmer series,** can be described by the equation

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H\left(\frac{1}{2^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \qquad n = 3, 4, 5, \ldots \tag{42.1}$$

where R_H is the **Rydberg constant.** The spectral lines corresponding to values of n from 3 to 6 are in the visible range of the electromagnetic spectrum. Values of n higher than 6 correspond to spectral lines in the ultraviolet region of the spectrum.

continued

[12]The laser light traveling in the same direction as the atom is Doppler-shifted further downward in frequency, so there is no absorption. Therefore, the atom is not pushed out of the trap by the diametrically opposed laser.

The Bohr model of the atom is successful in describing some details of the spectra of atomic hydrogen and hydrogen-like ions. One basic assumption of the model is that the electron can exist only in discrete orbits such that the angular momentum of the electron is an integral multiple of $h/2\pi = \hbar$. When we assume circular orbits and a simple Coulomb attraction between electron and proton, the energies of the quantum states for hydrogen are calculated to be

$$E_n = -\frac{k_e e^2}{2a_0}\left(\frac{1}{n^2}\right) \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{42.13}$$

where n is an integer called the **quantum number,** k_e is the Coulomb constant, e is the electronic charge, and $a_0 = 0.052\,9$ nm is the **Bohr radius.**

If the electron in a hydrogen atom makes a transition from an orbit whose quantum number is n_i to one whose quantum number is n_f, where $n_f < n_i$, a photon is emitted by the atom. The frequency of this photon is

$$f = \frac{k_e e^2}{2a_0 h}\left(\frac{1}{n_f^2} - \frac{1}{n_i^2}\right) \tag{42.15}$$

Quantum mechanics can be applied to the hydrogen atom by the use of the potential energy function $U(r) = -k_e e^2/r$ in the Schrödinger equation. The solution to this equation yields wave functions for allowed states and allowed energies:

$$E_n = -\left(\frac{k_e e^2}{2a_0}\right)\frac{1}{n^2} = -\frac{13.606 \text{ eV}}{n^2} \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{42.21}$$

where n is the **principal quantum number.** The allowed wave functions depend on three quantum numbers: n, ℓ, and m_ℓ, where ℓ is the **orbital quantum number** and m_ℓ is the **orbital magnetic quantum number.** The restrictions on the quantum numbers are

$$n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$$
$$\ell = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n - 1$$
$$m_\ell = -\ell, -\ell + 1, \ldots \ell - 1, \ell$$

All states having the same principal quantum number n form a **shell,** identified by the letters K, L, M, . . . (corresponding to $n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$). All states having the same values of n and ℓ form a **subshell,** designated by the letters s, p, d, f, . . . (corresponding to $\ell = 0, 1, 2, 3, \ldots$).

An atom in a state characterized by a specific value of n can have the following values of L, the magnitude of the atom's orbital angular momentum $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$:

$$L = \sqrt{\ell(\ell + 1)}\,\hbar$$
$$\ell = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, n - 1 \tag{42.27}$$

The allowed values of the projection of $\vec{\mathbf{L}}$ along the z axis are

$$L_z = m_\ell \hbar \tag{42.28}$$

Only discrete values of L_z are allowed as determined by the restrictions on m_ℓ. This quantization of L_z is referred to as **space quantization.**

The electron has an intrinsic angular momentum called the **spin angular momentum.** Electron spin can be described by a single quantum number $s = \frac{1}{2}$. To describe a quantum state completely, it is necessary to include a fourth quantum number m_s, called the **spin magnetic quantum number.** This quantum number can have only two values, $\pm\frac{1}{2}$. The magnitude of the spin angular momentum is

$$S = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\hbar \tag{42.30}$$

and the z component of $\vec{\mathbf{S}}$ is

$$S_z = m_s \hbar = \pm\tfrac{1}{2}\hbar \tag{42.31}$$

That is, the spin angular momentum is also quantized in space, as specified by the spin magnetic quantum number $m_s = \pm\frac{1}{2}$.

The **exclusion principle** states that **no two electrons in an atom can be in the same quantum state.** In other words, no two electrons can have the same set of quantum numbers n, ℓ, m_ℓ, and m_s. Using this principle, the electronic configurations of the elements can be determined. This principle serves as a basis for understanding atomic structure and the chemical properties of the elements.

The magnetic moment $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_{\text{spin}}$ associated with the spin angular momentum of an electron is

$$\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_{\text{spin}} = -\frac{e}{m_e}\vec{\mathbf{S}} \tag{42.32}$$

The z component of $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_{\text{spin}}$ can have the values

$$\mu_{\text{spin},z} = \pm\frac{e\hbar}{2m_e} \tag{42.33}$$

The x-ray spectrum of a metal target consists of a set of sharp characteristic lines superimposed on a broad continuous spectrum. **Bremsstrahlung** is x-radiation with its origin in the slowing down of high-energy electrons as they encounter the target. **Characteristic x-rays** are emitted by atoms when an electron undergoes a transition from an outer shell to a vacancy in an inner shell.

Atomic transitions can be described with three processes: **stimulated absorption,** in which an incoming photon raises the atom to a higher energy state; **spontaneous emission,** in which the atom makes a transition to a lower energy state, emitting a photon; and **stimulated emission,** in which an incident photon causes an excited atom to make a downward transition, emitting a photon identical to the incident one.

Objective Questions

$\boxed{1.}$ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. **(i)** What is the principal quantum number of the initial state of an atom as it emits an M_β line in an x-ray spectrum? (a) 1 (b) 2 (c) 3 (d) 4 (e) 5 **(ii)** What is the principal quantum number of the final state for this transition? Choose from the same possibilities as in part (i).

2. If an electron in an atom has the quantum numbers $n = 3$, $\ell = 2$, $m_\ell = 1$, and $m_s = \frac{1}{2}$, what state is it in? (a) $3s$ (b) $3p$ (c) $3d$ (d) $4d$ (e) $3f$

3. An electron in the $n = 5$ energy level of hydrogen undergoes a transition to the $n = 3$ energy level. What is the wavelength of the photon the atom emits in this process? (a) 2.28×10^{-6} m (b) 8.20×10^{-7} m (c) 3.64×10^{-7} m (d) 1.28×10^{-6} m (e) 5.92×10^{-5} m

4. Consider the $n = 3$ energy level in a hydrogen atom. How many electrons can be placed in this level? (a) 1 (b) 2 (c) 8 (d) 9 (e) 18

5. Which of the following is *not* one of the basic assumptions of the Bohr model of hydrogen? (a) Only certain electron orbits are stable and allowed. (b) The electron moves in circular orbits about the proton under the influence of the Coulomb force. (c) The charge on the electron is quantized. (d) Radiation is emitted by the atom when the electron moves from a higher energy state to a lower energy state. (e) The angular momentum associated with the electron's orbital motion is quantized.

6. Let $-E$ represent the energy of a hydrogen atom. **(i)** What is the kinetic energy of the electron? (a) $2E$ (b) E (c) 0 (d) $-E$ (e) $-2E$ **(ii)** What is the potential energy of the atom? Choose from the same possibilities (a) through (e).

7. The periodic table is based on which of the following principles? (a) The uncertainty principle. (b) All electrons in an atom must have the same set of quantum numbers. (c) Energy is conserved in all interactions. (d) All electrons in an atom are in orbitals having the same energy. (e) No two electrons in an atom can have the same set of quantum numbers.

8. (a) Can a hydrogen atom in the ground state absorb a photon of energy less than 13.6 eV? (b) Can this atom absorb a photon of energy greater than 13.6 eV?

$\boxed{\textbf{9.}}$ Which of the following electronic configurations are *not* allowed for an atom? Choose all correct answers. (a) $2s^22p^6$ (b) $3s^23p^7$ (c) $3d^74s^2$ (d) $3d^{10}4s^24p^6$ (e) $1s^22s^22d^1$

10. What can be concluded about a hydrogen atom with its electron in the d state? (a) The atom is ionized. (b) The orbital quantum number is $\ell = 1$. (c) The principal quantum number is $n = 2$. (d) The atom is in its ground state. (e) The orbital angular momentum of the atom is not zero.

11. **(i)** Rank the following transitions for a hydrogen atom from the transition with the greatest gain in energy to that with the greatest loss, showing any cases of equality. (a) $n_i = 2$; $n_f = 5$ (b) $n_i = 5$; $n_f = 3$ (c) $n_i = 7$; $n_f = 4$ (d) $n_i = 4$; $n_f = 7$ **(ii)** Rank the same transitions as in part (i) according to the wavelength of the photon absorbed or emitted by an otherwise isolated atom from greatest wavelength to smallest.

12. When an atom emits a photon, what happens? (a) One of its electrons leaves the atom. (b) The atom moves to a state of higher energy. (c) The atom moves to a state of lower energy. (d) One of its electrons collides with another particle. (e) None of those events occur.

13. (a) In the hydrogen atom, can the quantum number n increase without limit? (b) Can the frequency of possible discrete lines in the spectrum of hydrogen increase without limit? (c) Can the wavelength of possible discrete lines in the spectrum of hydrogen increase without limit?

14. Consider the quantum numbers (a) n, (b) ℓ, (c) m_ℓ, and (d) m_s. **(i)** Which of these quantum numbers are fractional as opposed to being integers? **(ii)** Which can sometimes attain negative values? **(iii)** Which can be zero?

15. When an electron collides with an atom, it can transfer all or some of its energy to the atom. A hydrogen atom is in its ground state. Incident on the atom are several electrons, each having a kinetic energy of 10.5 eV. What is the result? (a) The atom can be excited to a higher allowed state. (b) The atom is ionized. (c) The electrons pass by the atom without interaction.

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Why is stimulated emission so important in the operation of a laser?
2. An energy of about 21 eV is required to excite an electron in a helium atom from the 1s state to the 2s state. The same transition for the He^+ ion requires approximately twice as much energy. Explain.
3. Why are three quantum numbers needed to describe the state of a one-electron atom (ignoring spin)?
4. Compare the Bohr theory and the Schrödinger treatment of the hydrogen atom, specifically commenting on their treatment of total energy and orbital angular momentum of the atom.
5. Could the Stern–Gerlach experiment be performed with ions rather than neutral atoms? Explain.
6. Why is a *nonuniform* magnetic field used in the Stern–Gerlach experiment?
7. Discuss some consequences of the exclusion principle.
8. (a) According to Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom, what is the uncertainty in the radial coordinate of the electron? (b) What is the uncertainty in the radial component of the velocity of the electron? (c) In what way does the model violate the uncertainty principle?
9. Why do lithium, potassium, and sodium exhibit similar chemical properties?
10. It is easy to understand how two electrons (one spin up, one spin down) fill the $n = 1$ or K shell for a helium atom. How is it possible that eight more electrons are allowed in the $n = 2$ shell, filling the K and L shells for a neon atom?
11. Suppose the electron in the hydrogen atom obeyed classical mechanics rather than quantum mechanics. Why should a gas of such hypothetical atoms emit a continuous spectrum rather than the observed line spectrum?
12. Does the intensity of light from a laser fall off as $1/r^2$? Explain.

Problems

Enhanced WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; 2. intermediate; 3. challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 42.1 Atomic Spectra of Gases

1. The wavelengths of the Lyman series for hydrogen are given by

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H\left(1 - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \qquad n = 2, 3, 4, \ldots$$

(a) Calculate the wavelengths of the first three lines in this series. (b) Identify the region of the electromagnetic spectrum in which these lines appear.

2. The wavelengths of the Paschen series for hydrogen are given by

$$\frac{1}{\lambda} = R_H\left(\frac{1}{3^2} - \frac{1}{n^2}\right) \qquad n = 4, 5, 6, \ldots$$

(a) Calculate the wavelengths of the first three lines in this series. (b) Identify the region of the electromagnetic spectrum in which these lines appear.

3. An isolated atom of a certain element emits light of wavelength 520 nm when the atom falls from its fifth excited state into its second excited state. The atom emits a photon of wavelength 410 nm when it drops from its sixth excited state into its second excited state. Find the wavelength of the light radiated when the atom makes a transition from its sixth to its fifth excited state.

4. An isolated atom of a certain element emits light of wavelength λ_{m1} when the atom falls from its state with quantum number m into its ground state of quantum number 1. The atom emits a photon of wavelength λ_{n1} when the atom falls from its state with quantum number n into its ground state. (a) Find the wavelength of the light radiated when the atom makes a transition from the m state to the n state. (b) Show that $k_{mn} = |k_{m1} - k_{n1}|$, where $k_{ij} = 2\pi/\lambda_{ij}$ is the wave number of the photon. This problem exemplifies the *Ritz combination principle*, an empirical rule formulated in 1908.

5. (a) What value of n_i is associated with the 94.96-nm spectral line in the Lyman series of hydrogen? (b) **What If?** Could this wavelength be associated with the Paschen series? (c) Could this wavelength be associated with the Balmer series?

Section 42.2 Early Models of the Atom

6. According to classical physics, a charge e moving with an acceleration a radiates energy at a rate

$$\frac{dE}{dt} = -\frac{1}{6\pi\epsilon_0}\frac{e^2a^2}{c^3}$$

(a) Show that an electron in a classical hydrogen atom (see Fig. 42.5) spirals into the nucleus at a rate

$$\frac{dr}{dt} = -\frac{e^4}{12\pi^2\epsilon_0^2 m_e^2 c^3}\left(\frac{1}{r^2}\right)$$

(b) Find the time interval over which the electron reaches $r = 0$, starting from $r_0 = 2.00 \times 10^{-10}$ m.

7. **Review.** In the Rutherford scattering experiment, 4.00-MeV alpha particles scatter off gold nuclei (containing 79 protons and 118 neutrons). Assume a particular alpha particle moves directly toward the gold nucleus and scatters backward at 180°, and that the gold nucleus remains fixed throughout the entire process. Determine (a) the distance of closest approach of the alpha particle to the gold nucleus and (b) the maximum force exerted on the alpha particle.

Section 42.3 Bohr's Model of the Hydrogen Atom

Note: In this section, unless otherwise indicated, assume the hydrogen atom is treated with the Bohr model.

8. Show that the speed of the electron in the nth Bohr orbit in hydrogen is given by

$$v_n = \frac{k_e e^2}{n\hbar}$$

9. How much energy is required to ionize hydrogen (a) when it is in the ground state and (b) when it is in the state for which $n = 3$?

10. What is the energy of a photon that, when absorbed by a hydrogen atom, could cause an electronic transition from (a) the $n = 2$ state to the $n = 5$ state and (b) the $n = 4$ state to the $n = 6$ state?

11. A photon is emitted when a hydrogen atom undergoes a transition from the $n = 5$ state to the $n = 3$ state. Calculate (a) the energy (in electron volts), (b) the wavelength, and (c) the frequency of the emitted photon.

12. The Balmer series for the hydrogen atom corresponds to electronic transitions that terminate in the state with quantum number $n = 2$ as shown in Figure P42.12. Consider the photon of longest wavelength corresponding to a transition shown in the figure. Determine (a) its energy and (b) its wavelength. Consider the spectral line of shortest wavelength corresponding to a transition shown in the figure. Find (c) its photon energy and (d) its wavelength. (e) What is the shortest possible wavelength in the Balmer series?

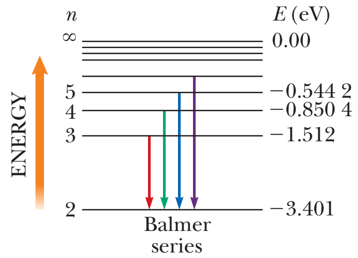


Figure P42.12

13. For a hydrogen atom in its ground state, compute (a) the orbital speed of the electron, (b) the kinetic energy of the electron, and (c) the electric potential energy of the atom.

14. Two hydrogen atoms collide head-on and end up with zero kinetic energy. Each atom then emits light with a wavelength of 121.6 nm ($n = 2$ to $n = 1$ transition). At what speed were the atoms moving before the collision?

15. (a) Calculate the angular momentum of the Moon due to its orbital motion about the Earth. In your calculation, use 3.84×10^8 m as the average Earth–Moon distance and 2.36×10^6 s as the period of the Moon in its orbit. (b) Assume that the Moon's angular momentum is described by Bohr's assumption $mvr = n\hbar$. Determine the corresponding quantum number. (c) By what fraction would the Earth–Moon distance have to be increased to raise the quantum number by 1?

16. A monochromatic beam of light is absorbed by a collection of ground-state hydrogen atoms in such a way that six different wavelengths are observed when the hydrogen relaxes back to the ground state. (a) What is the wavelength of the incident beam? Explain the steps in your solution. (b) What is the longest wavelength in the emission spectrum of these atoms? (c) To what portion of the electromagnetic spectrum and (d) to what series does it belong? (e) What is the shortest wavelength? (f) To what portion of the electromagnetic spectrum and (g) to what series does it belong?

17. A hydrogen atom is in its second excited state, corresponding to $n = 3$. Find (a) the radius of the electron's Bohr orbit and (b) the de Broglie wavelength of the electron in this orbit.

18. A hydrogen atom is in its first excited state ($n = 2$). Calculate (a) the radius of the orbit, (b) the linear momentum of the electron, (c) the angular momentum of the electron, (d) the kinetic energy of the electron, (e) the potential energy of the system, and (f) the total energy of the system.

19. A photon with energy 2.28 eV is absorbed by a hydrogen atom. Find (a) the minimum n for a hydrogen atom that can be ionized by such a photon and (b) the speed of the electron released from the state in part (a) when it is far from the nucleus.

20. An electron is in the nth Bohr orbit of the hydrogen atom. (a) Show that the period of the electron is $T = n^3 t_0$ and determine the numerical value of t_0. (b) On average, an electron remains in the $n = 2$ orbit for approximately 10 μs before it jumps down to the $n = 1$ (ground-state) orbit. How many revolutions does the electron make in the excited state? (c) Define the period of one revolution as an electron year, analogous to an Earth year being the period of the Earth's motion around the Sun. Explain whether we should think of the electron in the $n = 2$ orbit as "living for a long time."

21. (a) Construct an energy-level diagram for the He^+ ion, for which $Z = 2$, using the Bohr model. (b) What is the ionization energy for He^+?

Section 42.4 The Quantum Model of the Hydrogen Atom

22. A general expression for the energy levels of one-electron atoms and ions is

$$E_n = -\frac{\mu k_e^2 q_1^2 q_2^2}{2\hbar^2 n^2}$$

Here μ is the reduced mass of the atom, given by $\mu = m_1m_2/(m_1 + m_2)$, where m_1 is the mass of the electron and m_2 is the mass of the nucleus; k_e is the Coulomb constant; and q_1 and q_2 are the charges of the electron and the nucleus, respectively. The wavelength for the $n = 3$ to $n = 2$ transition of the hydrogen atom is 656.3 nm (visible red light). What are the wavelengths for this same transition in (a) positronium, which consists of an electron and a positron, and (b) singly ionized helium? *Note:* A positron is a positively charged electron.

23. Atoms of the same element but with different numbers of neutrons in the nucleus are called *isotopes*. Ordinary hydrogen gas is a mixture of two isotopes containing either one- or two-particle nuclei. These isotopes are hydrogen-1, with a proton nucleus, and hydrogen-2, called deuterium, with a deuteron nucleus. A deuteron is one proton and one neutron bound together. Hydrogen-1 and deuterium have identical chemical properties, but they can be separated via an ultracentrifuge or by other methods. Their emission spectra show lines of the same colors at very slightly different wavelengths. (a) Use the equation given in Problem 22 to show that the difference in wavelength between the hydrogen-1 and deuterium spectral lines associated with a particular electron transition is given by

$$\lambda_H - \lambda_D = \left(1 - \frac{\mu_H}{\mu_D}\right)\lambda_H$$

(b) Find the wavelength difference for the Balmer alpha line of hydrogen, with wavelength 656.3 nm, emitted by an atom making a transition from an $n = 3$ state to an $n = 2$ state. Harold Urey observed this wavelength difference in 1931 and so confirmed his discovery of deuterium.

24. An electron of momentum p is at a distance r from a stationary proton. The electron has kinetic energy $K = p^2/2m_e$. The atom has potential energy $U = -k_e e^2/r$ and total energy $E = K + U$. If the electron is bound to the proton to form a hydrogen atom, its average position is at the proton but the uncertainty in its position is approximately equal to the radius r of its orbit. The electron's average vector momentum is zero, but its average squared momentum is approximately equal to the squared uncertainty in its momentum as given by the uncertainty principle. Treating the atom as a one-dimensional system, (a) estimate the uncertainty in the electron's momentum in terms of r. Estimate the electron's (b) kinetic energy and (c) total energy in terms of r. The actual value of r is the one that *minimizes the total energy,* resulting in a stable atom. Find (d) that value of r and (e) the resulting total energy. (f) State how your answers compare with the predictions of the Bohr theory.

Section 42.5 The Wave Functions for Hydrogen

25. Plot the wave function $\psi_{1s}(r)$ versus r (see Eq. 42.22) and the radial probability density function $P_{1s}(r)$ versus r (see Eq. 42.25) for hydrogen. Let r range from 0 to $1.5a_0$, where a_0 is the Bohr radius.

26. For a spherically symmetric state of a hydrogen atom, the Schrödinger equation in spherical coordinates is

$$-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m_e}\left(\frac{d^2\psi}{dr^2} + \frac{2}{r}\frac{d\psi}{dr}\right) - \frac{k_e e^2}{r}\psi = E\psi$$

(a) Show that the 1s wave function for an electron in hydrogen,

$$\psi_{1s}(r) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi a_0^3}}e^{-r/a_0}$$

satisfies the Schrödinger equation. (b) What is the energy of the atom for this state?

27. The radial function $R(r)$ of the wave function for a hydrogen atom in the 2p state is

$$\psi_{2p} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}(2a_0)^{3/2}}\frac{r}{a_0}e^{-r/2a_0}$$

What is the most likely distance from the nucleus to find an electron in the 2p state?

28. The ground-state wave function for the electron in a hydrogen atom is

$$\psi_{1s}(r) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi a_0^3}}e^{-r/a_0}$$

where r is the radial coordinate of the electron and a_0 is the Bohr radius. (a) Show that the wave function as given is normalized. (b) Find the probability of locating the electron between $r_1 = a_0/2$ and $r_2 = 3a_0/2$.

29. In an experiment, a large number of electrons are fired at a sample of neutral hydrogen atoms and observations are made of how the incident particles scatter. The electron in the ground state of a hydrogen atom is found to be momentarily at a distance $a_0/2$ from the nucleus in 1 000 of the observations. In this set of trials, how many times is the atomic electron observed at a distance $2a_0$ from the nucleus?

Section 42.6 Physical Interpretation of the Quantum Numbers

30. List the possible sets of quantum numbers for the hydrogen atom associated with (a) the 3d subshell and (b) the 3p subshell.

31. If a hydrogen atom has orbital angular momentum 4.714×10^{-34} J · s, what is the orbital quantum number for the state of the atom?

32. Find all possible values of (a) L, (b) L_z, and (c) θ for a hydrogen atom in a 3d state.

33. Calculate the magnitude of the orbital angular momentum for a hydrogen atom in (a) the 4d state and (b) the 6f state.

34. How many sets of quantum numbers are possible for a hydrogen atom for which (a) $n = 1$, (b) $n = 2$, (c) $n = 3$, (d) $n = 4$, and (e) $n = 5$?

35. An electron in a sodium atom is in the N shell. Determine the maximum value the z component of its angular momentum could have.

36. W (a) Find the mass density of a proton, modeling it as a solid sphere of radius 1.00×10^{-15} m. (b) **What If?** Consider a classical model of an electron as a uniform solid sphere with the same density as the proton. Find its radius. (c) Imagine that this electron possesses spin angular momentum $I\omega = \hbar/2$ because of classical rotation about the z axis. Determine the speed of a point on the equator of the electron. (d) State how this speed compares with the speed of light.

37. A hydrogen atom is in its fifth excited state, with principal quantum number 6. The atom emits a photon with a wavelength of 1 090 nm. Determine the maximum possible magnitude of the orbital angular momentum of the atom after emission.

38. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A photon of wavelength 88.0 nm strikes a clean aluminum surface, ejecting a photoelectron. The photoelectron then strikes a hydrogen atom in its ground state, transferring energy to it and exciting the atom to a higher quantum state.

39. M The ρ^- meson has a charge of $-e$, a spin quantum number of 1, and a mass 1 507 times that of the electron. The possible values for its spin magnetic quantum number are -1, 0, and 1. **What If?** Imagine that the electrons in atoms are replaced by ρ^- mesons. List the possible sets of quantum numbers for ρ^- mesons in the $3d$ subshell.

Section 42.7 The Exclusion Principle and the Periodic Table

40. (a) As we go down the periodic table, which subshell is filled first, the $3d$ or the $4s$ subshell? (b) Which electronic configuration has a lower energy, $[\mathrm{Ar}]3d^4 4s^2$ or $[\mathrm{Ar}]3d^5 4s^1$? *Note:* The notation [Ar] represents the filled configuration for argon. *Suggestion:* Which has the greater number of unpaired spins? (c) Identify the element with the electronic configuration in part (b).

41. (a) Write out the electronic configuration of the ground state for nitrogen ($Z = 7$). (b) Write out the values for the possible set of quantum numbers n, ℓ, m_ℓ, and m_s for the electrons in nitrogen.

42. Devise a table similar to that shown in Figure 42.18 for atoms containing 11 through 19 electrons. Use Hund's rule and educated guesswork.

43. A certain element has its outermost electron in a $3p$ subshell. It has valence +3 because it has three more electrons than a certain noble gas. What element is it?

44. Scanning through Figure 42.19 in order of increasing atomic number, notice that the electrons usually fill the subshells in such a way that those subshells with the lowest values of $n + \ell$ are filled first. If two subshells have the same value of $n + \ell$, the one with the lower value of n is generally filled first. Using these two rules, write the order in which the subshells are filled through $n + \ell = 7$.

45. Two electrons in the same atom both have $n = 3$ and $\ell = 1$. Assume the electrons are distinguishable, so that interchanging them defines a new state. (a) How many states of the atom are possible considering the quantum numbers these two electrons can have? (b) **What If?** How many states would be possible if the exclusion principle were inoperative?

46. For a neutral atom of element 110, what would be the probable ground-state electronic configuration?

47. **Review.** For an electron with magnetic moment $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_s$ in a magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$, Section 29.5 showed the following. The electron–field system can be in a higher energy state with the z component of the electron's magnetic moment opposite the field or a lower energy state with the z component of the magnetic moment in the direction of the field. The difference in energy between the two states is $2\mu_B B$.

Under high resolution, many spectral lines are observed to be doublets. The most famous doublet is the pair of two yellow lines in the spectrum of sodium (the D lines), with wavelengths of 588.995 nm and 589.592 nm. Their existence was explained in 1925 by Goudsmit and Uhlenbeck, who postulated that an electron has intrinsic spin angular momentum. When the sodium atom is excited with its outermost electron in a $3p$ state, the orbital motion of the outermost electron creates a magnetic field. The atom's energy is somewhat different depending on whether the electron is itself spin-up or spin-down in this field. Then the photon energy the atom radiates as it falls back into its ground state depends on the energy of the excited state. Calculate the magnitude of the internal magnetic field, mediating this so-called spin-orbit coupling.

Section 42.8 More on Atomic Spectra: Visible and X-Ray

48. In x-ray production, electrons are accelerated through a high voltage ΔV and then decelerated by striking a target. Show that the shortest wavelength of an x-ray that can be produced is

$$\lambda_{\min} = \frac{1\,240\ \mathrm{nm}\cdot\mathrm{V}}{\Delta V}$$

49. What minimum accelerating voltage would be required to produce an x-ray with a wavelength of 70.0 pm?

50. A tungsten target is struck by electrons that have been accelerated from rest through a 40.0-keV potential difference. Find the shortest wavelength of the radiation emitted.

51. A bismuth target is struck by electrons, and x-rays are emitted. Estimate (a) the M- to L-shell transitional energy for bismuth and (b) the wavelength of the x-ray emitted when an electron falls from the M shell to the L shell.

52. The $3p$ level of sodium has an energy of -3.0 eV, and the $3d$ level has an energy of -1.5 eV. (a) Determine Z_{eff} for each of these states. (b) Explain the difference.

53. (a) Determine the possible values of the quantum numbers ℓ and m_ℓ for the He^+ ion in the state corresponding to $n = 3$. (b) What is the energy of this state?

54. M The K series of the discrete spectrum of tungsten contains wavelengths of 0.018 5 nm, 0.020 9 nm, and 0.021 5 nm. The K-shell ionization energy is 69.5 keV. Determine the ionization energies of the L, M, and N shells.

55. M Use the method illustrated in Example 42.5 to calculate the wavelength of the x-ray emitted from a molybdenum target ($Z = 42$) when an electron moves from the L shell ($n = 2$) to the K shell ($n = 1$).

56. In x-ray production, electrons are accelerated through a high voltage and then decelerated by striking a target. (a) To make possible the production of x-rays of wavelength λ, what is the minimum potential difference ΔV through which the electrons must be accelerated? (b) State in words how the required potential difference depends on the wavelength. (c) Explain whether your result predicts the correct minimum wavelength in Figure 42.22. (d) Does the relationship from part (a) apply to other kinds of electromagnetic radiation besides x-rays? (e) What does the potential difference approach as λ goes to zero? (f) What does the potential difference approach as λ increases without limit?

57. When an electron drops from the M shell ($n = 3$) to a vacancy in the K shell ($n = 1$), the measured wavelength of the emitted x-ray is found to be 0.101 nm. Identify the element.

Section 42.9 Spontaneous and Stimulated Transitions

Section 42.10 Lasers

58. Figure P42.58 shows portions of the energy-level diagrams of the helium and neon atoms. An electrical discharge excites the He atom from its ground state (arbitrarily assigned the energy $E_1 = 0$) to its excited state of 20.61 eV. The excited He atom collides with a Ne atom in its ground state and excites this atom to the state at 20.66 eV. Lasing action takes place for electron transitions from $E_3{}^*$ to E_2 in the Ne atoms. From the data in the figure, show that the wavelength of the red He–Ne laser light is approximately 633 nm.

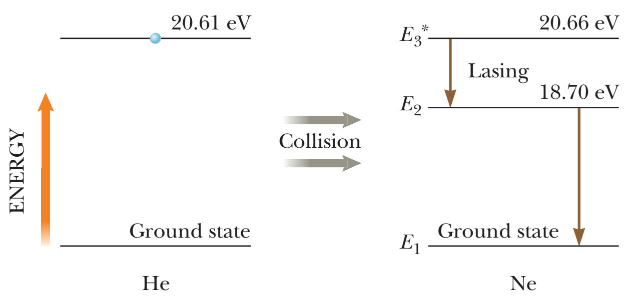


Figure P42.58

59. The carbon dioxide laser is one of the most powerful developed. The energy difference between the two laser levels is 0.117 eV. Determine (a) the frequency and (b) the wavelength of the radiation emitted by this laser. (c) In what portion of the electromagnetic spectrum is this radiation?

60. Review. A helium–neon laser can produce a green laser beam instead of a red one. Figure P42.60 shows the transitions involved to form the red beam and the green beam. After a population inversion is established, neon atoms make a variety of downward transitions in falling from the state labeled $E_4{}^*$ down eventually to level E_1 (arbitrarily assigned the energy $E_1 = 0$). The atoms emit both red light with a wavelength of 632.8 nm in a transition $E_4{}^* - E_3$ and green light with a wavelength of 543 nm in a competing transition $E_4{}^* - E_2$. (a) What is the energy E_2? Assume the atoms are in a cavity between mirrors designed to reflect the green light with high efficiency but to allow the red light to leave the cavity immediately. Then stimulated emission can lead to the buildup of a collimated beam of green light between the mirrors having a greater intensity than that of the red light. To constitute the radiated laser beam, a small fraction of the green light is permitted to escape by transmission through one mirror. The mirrors forming the resonant cavity can be made of layers of silicon dioxide (index of refraction $n = 1.458$) and titanium dioxide (index of refraction varies between 1.9 and 2.6). (b) How thick a layer of silicon dioxide, between layers of titanium dioxide, would minimize reflection of the red light? (c) What should be the thickness of a similar but separate layer of silicon dioxide to maximize reflection of the green light?

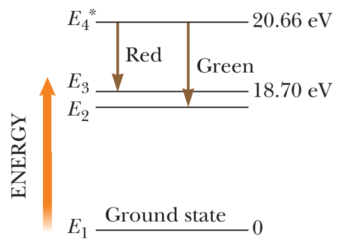


Figure P42.60 Problems 60 and 62.

61. **M** A ruby laser delivers a 10.0-ns pulse of 1.00-MW average power. If the photons have a wavelength of 694.3 nm, how many are contained in the pulse?

62. The number N of atoms in a particular state is called the population of that state. This number depends on the energy of that state and the temperature. In thermal equilibrium, the population of atoms in a state of energy E_n is given by a Boltzmann distribution expression

$$N = N_g e^{-(E_n - E_g)/k_B T}$$

where N_g is the population of the ground state of energy E_g, k_B is Boltzmann's constant, and T is the absolute temperature. For simplicity, assume each energy level has only one quantum state associated with it. (a) Before the power is switched on, the neon atoms in a laser are in thermal equilibrium at 27.0°C. Find the equilibrium ratio of the populations of the states $E_4{}^*$ and E_3 shown for the red transition in Figure P42.60. Lasers operate by a clever artificial production of a "population inversion" between the upper and lower atomic energy states involved in the lasing transition. This term means that more atoms are in the upper excited state than in the lower one. Consider the $E_4{}^*-E_3$ transition in Figure P42.60. Assume 2% more atoms occur in the upper state than in the lower. (b) To demonstrate how unnatural such a situation is, find the temperature for which the Boltzmann distribution describes a 2.00% population inversion. (c) Why does such a situation not occur naturally?

63. A neodymium–yttrium–aluminum garnet laser used in M W eye surgery emits a 3.00-mJ pulse in 1.00 ns, focused to a spot 30.0 μm in diameter on the retina. (a) Find (in SI units) the power per unit area at the retina. (In the optics industry, this quantity is called the *irradiance.*) (b) What energy is delivered by the pulse to an area of molecular size, taken as a circular area 0.600 nm in diameter?

64. AMT **Review.** Figure 42.29 represents the light bouncing between two mirrors in a laser cavity as two traveling waves. These traveling waves moving in opposite directions constitute a standing wave. If the reflecting surfaces are metallic films, the electric field has nodes at both ends. The electromagnetic standing wave is analogous to the standing string wave represented in Figure 18.10. (a) Assume that a helium–neon laser has precisely flat and parallel mirrors 35.124 103 cm apart. Assume that the active medium can efficiently amplify only light with wavelengths between 632.808 40 nm and 632.809 80 nm. Find the number of components that constitute the laser light, and the wavelength of each component, precise to eight digits. (b) Find the root-mean-square speed for a neon atom at 120°C. (c) Show that at this temperature the Doppler effect for light emission by moving neon atoms should realistically make the bandwidth of the light amplifier larger than the 0.001 40 nm assumed in part (a).

Additional Problems

65. How much energy is required to ionize a hydrogen atom when it is in (a) the $n = 2$ state and (b) the $n = 10$ state?

66. The force on a magnetic moment μ_z in a nonuniform magnetic field B_z is given by $F_z = \mu_z(dB_z/dz)$. If a beam of silver atoms travels a horizontal distance of 1.00 m through such a field and each atom has a speed of 100 m/s, how strong must be the field gradient dB_z/dz to deflect the beam 1.00 mm?

$\boxed{67.}$ Suppose a hydrogen atom is in the 2*s* state, with its wave function given by Equation 42.26. Taking $r = a_0$, calculate values for (a) $\psi_{2s}(a_0)$, (b) $|\psi_{2s}(a_0)|^2$, and (c) $P_{2s}(a_0)$.

68. W **Review.** (a) How much energy is required to cause an electron in hydrogen to move from the $n = 1$ state to the $n = 2$ state? (b) Suppose the atom gains this energy through collisions among hydrogen atoms at a high temperature. At what temperature would the average atomic kinetic energy $\frac{3}{2}k_BT$ be great enough to excite the electron? Here k_B is Boltzmann's constant.

$\boxed{69.}$ M In the technique known as electron spin resonance (ESR), a sample containing unpaired electrons is placed in a magnetic field. Consider a situation in which a single electron (*not* contained in an atom) is immersed in a magnetic field. In this simple situation, only two energy states are possible, corresponding to $m_s = \pm\frac{1}{2}$. In ESR, the absorption of a photon causes the electron's spin magnetic moment to flip from the lower energy state to the higher energy state. According to Section 29.5, the change in energy is $2\mu_B B$. (The lower energy state corresponds to the case in which the z component of the magnetic moment $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_{\text{spin}}$ is aligned with the magnetic field, and the higher energy state corresponds to the case in which the z component of $\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_{\text{spin}}$ is aligned opposite to the field.) What is the photon frequency required to excite an ESR transition in a 0.350-T magnetic field?

$\boxed{70.}$ An electron in chromium moves from the $n = 2$ state to the $n = 1$ state without emitting a photon. Instead, the excess energy is transferred to an outer electron (one in the $n = 4$ state), which is then ejected by the atom. In this Auger (pronounced "ohjay") process, the ejected electron is referred to as an Auger electron. Use the Bohr theory to find the kinetic energy of the Auger electron.

71. The states of matter are solid, liquid, gas, and plasma. Plasma can be described as a gas of charged particles or a gas of ionized atoms. Most of the matter in the Solar System is plasma (throughout the interior of the Sun). In fact, most of the matter in the Universe is plasma; so is a candle flame. Use the information in Figure 42.20 to make an order-of-magnitude estimate for the temperature to which a typical chemical element must be raised to turn into plasma by ionizing most of the atoms in a sample. Explain your reasoning.

72. Show that the wave function for a hydrogen atom in the 2*s* state

$$\psi_{2s}(r) = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{2\pi}}\left(\frac{1}{a_0}\right)^{3/2}\left(2 - \frac{r}{a_0}\right)e^{-r/2a_0}$$

satisfies the spherically symmetric Schrödinger equation given in Problem 26.

73. Find the average (expectation) value of $1/r$ in the 1*s* state of hydrogen. Note that the general expression is given by

$$\langle 1/r \rangle = \int_{\text{all space}} |\psi|^2(1/r)\,dV = \int_0^\infty P(r)(1/r)\,dr$$

Is the result equal to the inverse of the average value of r?

74. *Why is the following situation impossible?* An experiment is performed on an atom. Measurements of the atom when it is in a particular excited state show five possible values of the z component of orbital angular momentum, ranging between 3.16×10^{-34} kg · m²/s and -3.16×10^{-34} kg · m²/s.

75. In the Bohr model of the hydrogen atom, an electron travels in a circular path. Consider another case in which an electron travels in a circular path: a single electron moving perpendicular to a magnetic field $\vec{\mathbf{B}}$. Lev Davidovich Landau (1908–1968) solved the Schrödinger equation for such an electron. The electron can be considered as a model atom without a nucleus or as the irreducible quantum limit of the cyclotron. Landau proved its energy is quantized in uniform steps of $e\hbar B/m_e$. In 1999, a single electron was trapped by a Harvard University research team in an evacuated centimeter-size metal can cooled to a temperature of 80 mK. In a magnetic field of magnitude

5.26 T, the electron circulated for hours in its lowest energy level. (a) Evaluate the size of a quantum jump in the electron's energy. (b) For comparison, evaluate $k_B T$ as a measure of the energy available to the electron in blackbody radiation from the walls of its container. Microwave radiation was introduced to excite the electron. Calculate (c) the frequency and (d) the wavelength of the photon the electron absorbed as it jumped to its second energy level. Measurement of the resonant absorption frequency verified the theory and permitted precise determination of properties of the electron.

76. As the Earth moves around the Sun, its orbits are quantized. (a) Follow the steps of Bohr's analysis of the hydrogen atom to show that the allowed radii of the Earth's orbit are given by

$$r = \frac{n^2\hbar^2}{GM_S M_E^{\,2}}$$

where n is an integer quantum number, M_S is the mass of the Sun, and M_E is the mass of the Earth. (b) Calculate the numerical value of n for the Sun–Earth system. (c) Find the distance between the orbit for quantum number n and the next orbit out from the Sun corresponding to the quantum number $n + 1$. (d) Discuss the significance of your results from parts (b) and (c).

77. An elementary theorem in statistics states that the root-mean-square uncertainty in a quantity r is given by $\Delta r = \sqrt{\langle r^2\rangle - \langle r\rangle^2}$. Determine the uncertainty in the radial position of the electron in the ground state of the hydrogen atom. Use the average value of r found in Example 42.3: $\langle r\rangle = 3a_0/2$. The average value of the squared distance between the electron and the proton is given by

$$\langle r^2\rangle = \int_{\text{all space}} |\psi|^2 r^2\, dV = \int_0^\infty P(r) r^2\, dr$$

78. Example 42.3 calculates the most probable value and the average value for the radial coordinate r of the electron in the ground state of a hydrogen atom. For comparison with these modal and mean values, find the median value of r. Proceed as follows. (a) Derive an expression for the probability, as a function of r, that the electron in the ground state of hydrogen will be found outside a sphere of radius r centered on the nucleus. (b) Make a graph of the probability as a function of r/a_0. Choose values of r/a_0 ranging from 0 to 4.00 in steps of 0.250. (c) Find the value of r for which the probability of finding the electron outside a sphere of radius r is equal to the probability of finding the electron inside this sphere. You must solve a transcendental equation numerically, and your graph is a good starting point.

79. AMT M (a) For a hydrogen atom making a transition from the $n = 4$ state to the $n = 2$ state, determine the wavelength of the photon created in the process. (b) Assuming the atom was initially at rest, determine the recoil speed of the hydrogen atom when it emits this photon.

80. Astronomers observe a series of spectral lines in the light from a distant galaxy. On the hypothesis that the lines form the Lyman series for a (new?) one-electron atom, they start to construct the energy-level diagram shown in Figure P42.80, which gives the wavelengths of the first four lines and the short-wavelength limit of this series. Based on this information, calculate (a) the energies of the ground state and first four excited states for this one-electron atom and (b) the wavelengths of the first three lines and the short-wavelength limit in the Balmer series for this atom. (c) Show that the wavelengths of the first four lines and the short-wavelength limit of the Lyman series for the hydrogen atom are all 60.0% of the wavelengths for the Lyman series in the one-electron atom in the distant galaxy. (d) Based on this observation, explain why this atom could be hydrogen.

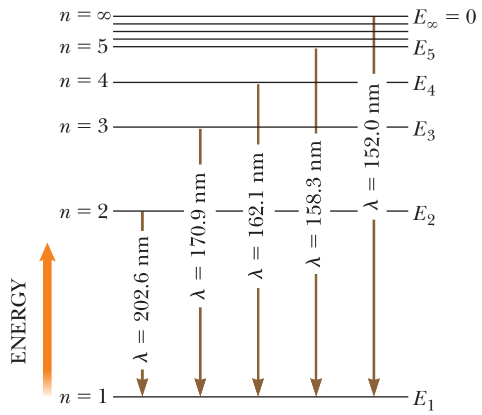


Figure P42.80

81. GP We wish to show that the most probable radial position for an electron in the $2s$ state of hydrogen is $r = 5.236a_0$. (a) Use Equations 42.24 and 42.26 to find the radial probability density for the $2s$ state of hydrogen. (b) Calculate the derivative of the radial probability density with respect to r. (c) Set the derivative in part (b) equal to zero and identify three values of r that represent minima in the function. (d) Find two values of r that represent maxima in the function. (e) Identify which of the values in part (c) represents the highest probability.

82. All atoms have the same size, to an order of magnitude. (a) To demonstrate this fact, estimate the atomic diameters for aluminum (with molar mass 27.0 g/mol and density 2.70 g/cm^3) and uranium (molar mass 238 g/mol and density 18.9 g/cm^3). (b) What do the results of part (a) imply about the wave functions for inner-shell electrons as we progress to higher and higher atomic mass atoms?

83. A pulsed ruby laser emits light at 694.3 nm. For a 14.0-ps pulse containing 3.00 J of energy, find (a) the physical length of the pulse as it travels through space and (b) the number of photons in it. (c) The beam has a circular cross section of diameter 0.600 cm. Find the number of photons per cubic millimeter.

84. A pulsed laser emits light of wavelength λ. For a pulse of duration Δt having energy T_{ER}, find (a) the physical length of the pulse as it travels through space and (b) the number of photons in it. (c) The beam has a circular cross section having diameter d. Find the number of photons per unit volume.

85. Assume three identical uncharged particles of mass m and spin $\frac{1}{2}$ are contained in a one-dimensional box of length L. What is the ground-state energy of this system?

86. Suppose the ionization energy of an atom is 4.10 eV. In the spectrum of this same atom, we observe emission lines with wavelengths 310 nm, 400 nm, and 1 377.8 nm. Use this information to construct the energy-level diagram with the fewest levels. Assume the higher levels are closer together.

87. For hydrogen in the 1s state, what is the probability of finding the electron farther than $2.50a_0$ from the nucleus?

88. For hydrogen in the 1s state, what is the probability of finding the electron farther than βa_0 from the nucleus, where β is an arbitrary number?

Challenge Problems

89. The positron is the antiparticle to the electron. It has the same mass and a positive electric charge of the same magnitude as that of the electron. Positronium is a hydrogen-like atom consisting of a positron and an electron revolving around each other. Using the Bohr model, find (a) the allowed distances between the two particles and (b) the allowed energies of the system.

90. **Review.** Steven Chu, Claude Cohen-Tannoudji, and William Phillips received the 1997 Nobel Prize in Physics for "the development of methods to cool and trap atoms with laser light." One part of their work was with a beam of atoms (mass $\sim 10^{-25}$ kg) that move at a speed on the order of 1 km/s, similar to the speed of molecules in air at room temperature. An intense laser light beam tuned to a visible atomic transition (assume 500 nm) is directed straight into the atomic beam; that is, the atomic beam and the light beam are traveling in opposite directions. An atom in the ground state immediately absorbs a photon. Total system momentum is conserved in the absorption process. After a lifetime on the order of 10^{-8} s, the excited atom radiates by spontaneous emission. It has an equal probability of emitting a photon in any direction. Therefore, the average "recoil" of the atom is zero over many absorption and emission cycles. (a) Estimate the average deceleration of the atomic beam. (b) What is the order of magnitude of the distance over which the atoms in the beam are brought to a halt?

91. (a) Use Bohr's model of the hydrogen atom to show that when the electron moves from the n state to the $n - 1$ state, the frequency of the emitted light is

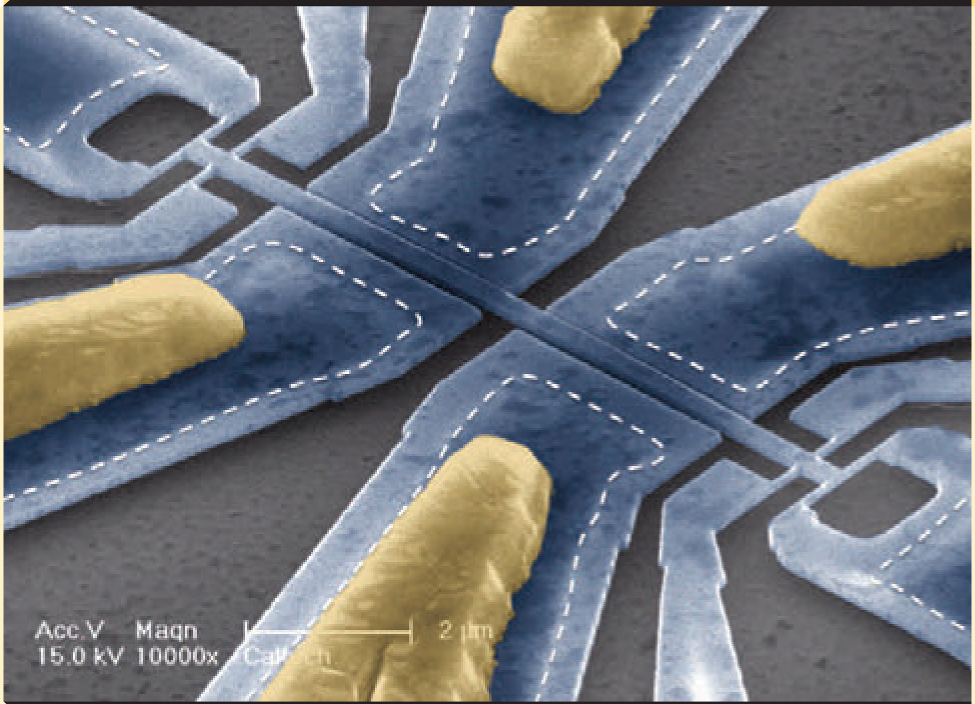
$$f = \left(\frac{2\pi^2 m_e k_e^2 e^4}{h^3}\right)\frac{2n - 1}{n^2(n - 1)^2}$$

(b) Bohr's correspondence principle claims that quantum results should reduce to classical results in the limit of large quantum numbers. Show that as $n \to \infty$, this expression varies as $1/n^3$ and reduces to the classical frequency one expects the atom to emit. *Suggestion:* To calculate the classical frequency, note that the frequency of revolution is $v/2\pi r$, where v is the speed of the electron and r is given by Equation 42.10.

CHAPTER

43

Molecules and Solids



The photograph shows a *NEMS resonator,* where NEMS is an acronym for *nanoelectromechanical system.* The device employs a semiconductor bridge vibrating in a standing wave like the strings in Chapter 18. When a single molecule or other particle adheres to the bridge, the resonance frequencies of the normal modes shift in a measurable way. Scientists can determine the mass of the particle from the shifts in the frequencies. The new device shows promise in allowing the masses of molecules and many biological particles to be measured with great accuracy. *(Caltech/Scott Kelberg and Michael Roukes)*

The most random atomic arrangement, that of a gas, was well understood in the 1800s as discussed in our study of kinetic theory in Chapter 21. In a crystalline solid, the atoms are not randomly arranged; rather, they form a regular array. The symmetry of the arrangement of atoms both stimulated and allowed rapid progress in the field of solid-state physics in the 20th century. Recently, our understanding of liquids and amorphous solids has advanced. (In an amorphous solid such as glass or paraffin, the atoms do not form a regular array.) The recent interest in the physics of low-cost amorphous materials has been driven by their use in such devices as solar cells, memory elements, and fiber-optic waveguides. With the addition of liquids, amorphous solids, and some more exotic forms of matter, such as Bose–Einstein condensates, solid-state physics expanded in the middle of the 20th century to become known as *condensed matter physics.*

We begin this chapter by studying the aggregates of atoms known as molecules. We describe the bonding mechanisms in molecules, the various modes of molecular excitation, and the radiation emitted or absorbed by molecules. Next, we show how molecules combine to form solids. Then, by examining their energy-level structure, we explain the differences between insulating, conducting, semiconducting, and superconducting materials. The chapter also includes discussions of semiconducting junctions and several semiconductor devices.

43.1 Molecular Bonds

The bonding mechanisms in a molecule are fundamentally due to electric forces between atoms (or ions). Because the electric force is conservative, the forces between atoms in the system of a molecule are related to a potential energy function. A stable molecule is expected at a configuration for which the potential energy function for the molecule has its minimum value. (See Section 7.9.)

A potential energy function that can be used to model a molecule should account for two known features of molecular bonding:

1. The force between atoms is repulsive at very small separation distances. When two atoms are brought close to each other, some of their electron shells overlap, resulting in repulsion between the shells. This repulsion is partly electrostatic in origin and partly the result of the exclusion principle. Because all electrons must obey the exclusion principle, some electrons in the overlapping shells are forced into higher energy states and the system energy increases as if a repulsive force existed between the atoms.
2. At somewhat larger separations, the force between atoms is attractive. If that were not true, the atoms in a molecule would not be bound together.

Taking into account these two features, the potential energy for a system of two atoms can be represented by an expression of the form

$$U(r) = -\frac{A}{r^n} + \frac{B}{r^m} \tag{43.1}$$

where r is the internuclear separation distance between the two atoms and n and m are small integers. The parameter A is associated with the attractive force and B with the repulsive force. Example 7.9 gives one common model for such a potential energy function, the Lennard–Jones potential.

Potential energy versus internuclear separation distance for a two-atom system is graphed in Figure 43.1. At large separation distances between the two atoms, the slope of the curve is positive, corresponding to a net attractive force. At the equilibrium separation distance, the attractive and repulsive forces just balance. At this point, the potential energy has its minimum value and the slope of the curve is zero.

A complete description of the bonding mechanisms in molecules is highly complex because bonding involves the mutual interactions of many particles. In this section, we discuss only some simplified models.

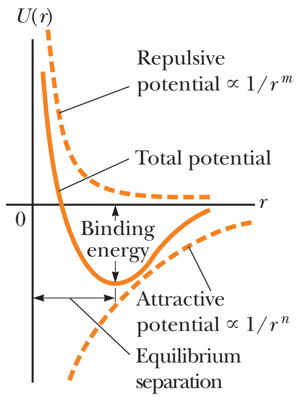


Figure 43.1 Total potential energy as a function of internuclear separation distance for a system of two atoms.

Ionic Bonding

When two atoms combine in such a way that one or more outer electrons are transferred from one atom to the other, the bond formed is called an **ionic bond.** Ionic bonds are fundamentally caused by the Coulomb attraction between oppositely charged ions.

A familiar example of an ionically bonded solid is sodium chloride, NaCl, which is common table salt. Sodium, which has the electronic configuration $1s^22s^22p^63s^1$, is ionized relatively easily, giving up its $3s$ electron to form a Na^+ ion. The energy required to ionize the atom to form Na^+ is 5.1 eV. Chlorine, which has the electronic configuration $1s^22s^22p^5$, is one electron short of the filled-shell structure of argon. If we compare the energy of a system of a free electron and a Cl atom with one in which the electron joins the atom to make the Cl^- ion, we find that the energy of the ion is lower. When the electron makes a transition from the $E = 0$ state to the negative energy state associated with the available shell in the atom, energy is released. This amount of energy is called the **electron affinity** of the atom. For chlorine, the electron affinity is 3.6 eV. Therefore, the energy required to form Na^+ and Cl^- from isolated atoms is $5.1 - 3.6 = 1.5$ eV. It costs 5.1 eV to remove

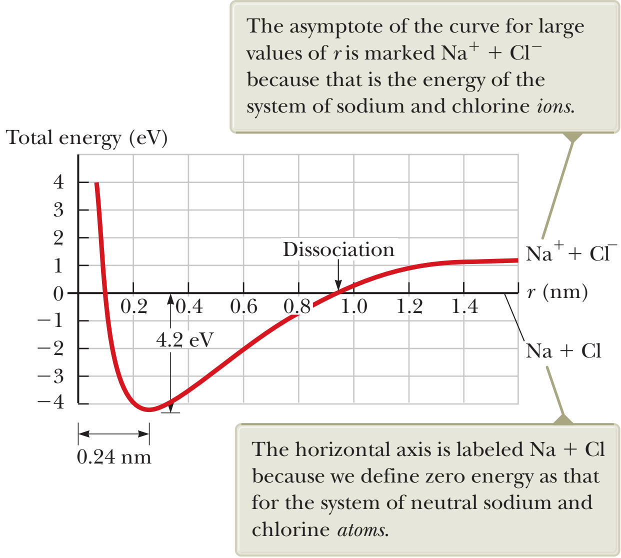


Figure 43.2 Total energy versus internuclear separation distance for Na^+ and Cl^- ions.

Pitfall Prevention 43.1

Ionic and Covalent Bonds In practice, these descriptions of ionic and covalent bonds represent extreme ends of a spectrum of bonds involving electron transfer. In a real bond, the electron may not be *completely* transferred as in an ionic bond or *equally* shared as in a covalent bond. Therefore, real bonds lie somewhere between these extremes.

the electron from the Na atom, but 3.6 eV of it is gained back when that electron is allowed to join with the Cl atom.

Now imagine that these two charged ions interact with one another to form a NaCl "molecule."[1] The total energy of the NaCl molecule versus internuclear separation distance is graphed in Figure 43.2. At very large separation distances, the energy of the system of ions is 1.5 eV as calculated above. The total energy has a minimum value of −4.2 eV at the equilibrium separation distance, which is approximately 0.24 nm. Hence, the energy required to break the Na^+–Cl^- bond and form neutral sodium and chlorine atoms, called the **dissociation energy,** is 4.2 eV. The energy of the molecule is lower than that of the system of two neutral atoms. Consequently, it is **energetically favorable** for the molecule to form: if a lower energy state of a system exists, the system tends to emit energy to achieve this lower energy state. The system of neutral sodium and chlorine atoms can reduce its total energy by transferring energy out of the system (by electromagnetic radiation, for example) and forming the NaCl molecule.

Covalent Bonding

A **covalent bond** between two atoms is one in which electrons supplied by either one or both atoms are shared by the two atoms. Many diatomic molecules—such as H_2, F_2, and CO—owe their stability to covalent bonds. The bond between two hydrogen atoms can be described by using atomic wave functions. The ground-state wave function for a hydrogen atom (Chapter 42) is

$$\psi_{1s}(r) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\pi a_0^{\,3}}}\, e^{-r/a_0}$$

This wave function is graphed in Figure 43.3a for two hydrogen atoms that are far apart. There is very little overlap of the wave functions $\psi_1(r)$ for atom 1, located at $r = 0$, and $\psi_2(r)$ for atom 2, located some distance away. Suppose now the two atoms are brought close together. As that happens, their wave functions overlap and form the compound wave function $\psi_1(r) + \psi_2(r)$ shown in Figure 43.3b. Notice that the probability amplitude is larger between the atoms than it is on either side of the combination of atoms. As a result, the probability is higher that the electrons associated with the atoms will be located between the atoms than on the outer regions

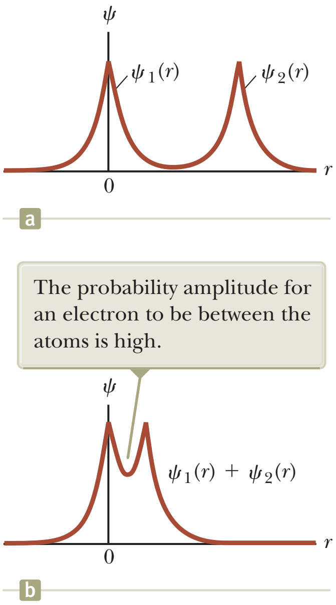


Figure 43.3 Ground-state wave functions $\psi_1(r)$ and $\psi_2(r)$ for two atoms making a covalent bond. (a) The atoms are far apart, and their wave functions overlap minimally. (b) The atoms are close together, forming a composite wave function $\psi_1(r) + \psi_2(r)$ for the system.

[1]NaCl does not tend to form as an isolated molecule at room temperature. In the solid state, NaCl forms a crystalline array of ions as described in Section 43.3. In the liquid state or in solution with water, the Na^+ and Cl^- ions dissociate and are free to move relative to each other.

of the system. Consequently, the average position of negative charge in the system is halfway between the atoms. This scenario can be modeled as if there were a fixed negative charge between the atoms, exerting attractive Coulomb forces on both nuclei. Therefore, there is an overall attractive force between the atoms, resulting in a covalent bond.

Because of the exclusion principle, the two electrons in the ground state of H_2 must have antiparallel spins. Also because of the exclusion principle, if a third H atom is brought near the H_2 molecule, the third electron would have to occupy a higher energy level, which is not an energetically favorable situation. For this reason, the H_3 molecule is not stable and does not form.

Van der Waals Bonding

Ionic and covalent bonds occur between atoms to form molecules or ionic solids, so they can be described as bonds *within* molecules. Two additional types of bonds, van der Waals bonds and hydrogen bonds, can occur *between* molecules.

You might think that two neutral molecules would not interact by means of the electric force because they each have zero net charge. They are attracted to each other, however, by weak electrostatic forces called **van der Waals forces.** Likewise, atoms that do not form ionic or covalent bonds are attracted to each other by van der Waals forces. Noble gas atoms, for example, because of their filled shell structure, do not generally form molecules or bond to each other to form a liquid. Because of van der Waals forces, however, at sufficiently low temperatures at which thermal excitations are negligible, noble gases first condense to liquids and then solidify. (The exception is helium, which does not solidify at atmospheric pressure.)

The van der Waals force results from the following situation. While being electrically neutral, a molecule has a charge distribution with positive and negative centers at different positions in the molecule. As a result, the molecule may act as an electric dipole. (See Section 23.4.) Because of the dipole electric fields, two molecules can interact such that there is an attractive force between them.

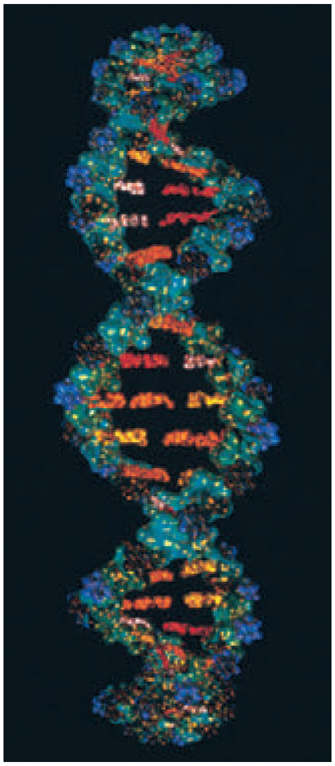
There are three types of van der Waals forces. The first type, called the *dipole–dipole force,* is an interaction between two molecules each having a permanent electric dipole moment. For example, polar molecules such as HCl have permanent electric dipole moments and attract other polar molecules.

The second type, the *dipole–induced dipole force,* results when a polar molecule having a permanent electric dipole moment induces a dipole moment in a nonpolar molecule. In this case, the electric field of the polar molecule creates the dipole moment in the nonpolar molecule, which then results in an attractive force between the molecules.

The third type is called the *dispersion force,* an attractive force that occurs between two nonpolar molecules. In this case, although the average dipole moment of a nonpolar molecule is zero, the average of the square of the dipole moment is nonzero because of charge fluctuations. Two nonpolar molecules near each other tend to have dipole moments that are correlated in time so as to produce an attractive van der Waals force.

Hydrogen Bonding

Because hydrogen has only one electron, it is expected to form a covalent bond with only one other atom within a molecule. A hydrogen atom in a given molecule can also form a second type of bond between molecules called a **hydrogen bond.** Let's use the water molecule H_2O as an example. In the two covalent bonds in this molecule, the electrons from the hydrogen atoms are more likely to be found near the oxygen atom than near the hydrogen atoms, leaving essentially bare protons at the positions of the hydrogen atoms. This unshielded positive charge can be attracted to the negative end of another polar molecule. Because the proton is unshielded by electrons, the negative end of the other molecule can come very close to the proton to form a bond strong enough to form a solid crystalline structure, such as



Douglas Struthers/Stone/Getty Images

Figure 43.4 DNA molecules are held together by hydrogen bonds.

that of ordinary ice. The bonds within a water molecule are covalent, but the bonds between water molecules in ice are hydrogen bonds.

The hydrogen bond is relatively weak compared with other chemical bonds and can be broken with an input energy of approximately 0.1 eV. Because of this weakness, ice melts at the low temperature of 0°C. Even though this bond is weak, however, hydrogen bonding is a critical mechanism responsible for the linking of biological molecules and polymers. For example, in the case of the DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) molecule, which has a double-helix structure (Fig. 43.4), hydrogen bonds form by the sharing of a proton between two atoms and create linkages between the turns of the helix.

Quick Quiz 43.1 For each of the following atoms or molecules, identify the most likely type of bonding that occurs between the atoms or between the molecules. Choose from the following list: ionic, covalent, van der Waals, hydrogen. **(a)** atoms of krypton **(b)** potassium and chlorine atoms **(c)** hydrogen fluoride (HF) molecules **(d)** chlorine and oxygen atoms in a hypochlorite ion (ClO^-)

43.2 Energy States and Spectra of Molecules

Consider an individual molecule in the gaseous phase of a substance. The energy E of the molecule can be divided into four categories: (1) electronic energy, due to the interactions between the molecule's electrons and nuclei; (2) translational energy, due to the motion of the molecule's center of mass through space; (3) rotational energy, due to the rotation of the molecule about its center of mass; and (4) vibrational energy, due to the vibration of the molecule's constituent atoms:

Total energy of a molecule

$$E = E_{\text{el}} + E_{\text{trans}} + E_{\text{rot}} + E_{\text{vib}}$$

We explored the roles of translational, rotational, and vibrational energy of molecules in determining the molar specific heats of gases in Sections 21.2 and 21.3. The translational energy is important in kinetic theory, but it is unrelated to internal structure of the molecule, so this molecular energy is unimportant in interpreting molecular spectra. The electronic energy of a molecule is very complex because it involves the interaction of many charged particles, but various techniques have been developed to approximate its values. Although the electronic energies can be studied, significant information about a molecule can be determined by analyzing its quantized rotational and vibrational energy states. Transitions between these states give spectral lines in the microwave and infrared regions of the electromagnetic spectrum, respectively.

Rotational Motion of Molecules

Let's consider the rotation of a molecule around its center of mass, confining our discussion to the diatomic molecule (Fig. 43.5a) but noting that the same ideas can be extended to polyatomic molecules. A diatomic molecule aligned along a y axis has only two rotational degrees of freedom, corresponding to rotations about the x and z axes passing through the molecule's center of mass. We discussed the rotation of such a molecule and its contribution to the specific heat of a gas in Section 21.3. If ω is the angular frequency of rotation about one of these axes, the rotational kinetic energy of the molecule about that axis can be expressed with Equation 10.24:

$$E_{\text{rot}} = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega^2 \qquad \textbf{(43.2)}$$

In this equation, I is the moment of inertia of the molecule about its center of mass, given by

Moment of inertia for a diatomic molecule

$$I = \left(\frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2}\right)r^2 = \mu r^2 \qquad \textbf{(43.3)}$$

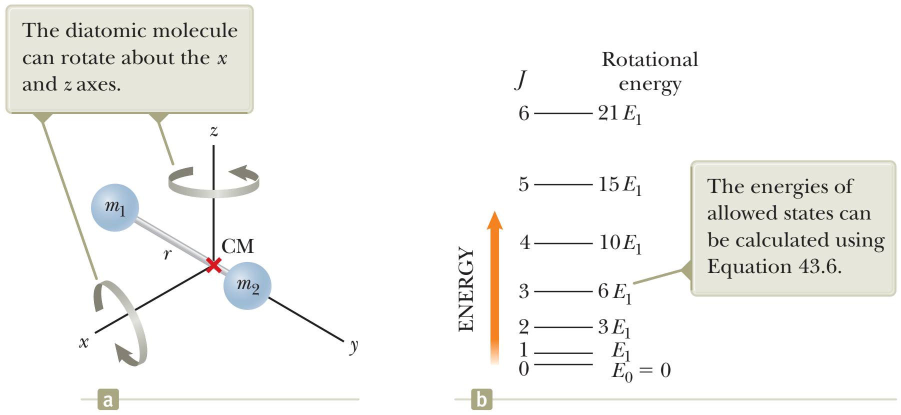


Figure 43.5 Rotation of a diatomic molecule around its center of mass. (a) A diatomic molecule oriented along the y axis. (b) Allowed rotational energies of a diatomic molecule expressed as multiples of $E_1 = \hbar^2/I$.

where m_1 and m_2 are the masses of the atoms that form the molecule, r is the atomic separation, and μ is the **reduced mass** of the molecule (see Example 41.5 and Problem 40 in Chapter 41):

$$\mu = \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2} \tag{43.4}$$

◀ **Reduced mass of a diatomic molecule**

The magnitude of the molecule's angular momentum about its center of mass is given by Equation 11.14, $L = I\omega$, which classically can have any value. Quantum mechanics, however, restricts the molecule to certain quantized rotational frequencies such that the angular momentum of the molecule has the values[2]

$$L = \sqrt{J(J+1)}\,\hbar \qquad J = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \tag{43.5}$$

◀ **Allowed values of rotational angular momentum**

where J is an integer called the **rotational quantum number.** Combining Equations 43.5 and 43.2, we obtain an expression for the allowed values of the rotational kinetic energy of the molecule:

$$E_{\text{rot}} = \tfrac{1}{2}I\omega^2 = \frac{1}{2I}(I\omega)^2 = \frac{L^2}{2I} = \frac{(\sqrt{J(J+1)}\,\hbar)^2}{2I}$$

$$\boxed{E_{\text{rot}} = E_J = \frac{\hbar^2}{2I}J(J+1) \qquad J = 0, 1, 2, \ldots} \tag{43.6}$$

◀ **Allowed values of rotational energy**

The allowed rotational energies of a diatomic molecule are plotted in Figure 43.5b. As the quantum number J goes up, the states become farther apart as displayed earlier for rotational energy levels in Figure 21.7.

For most molecules, transitions between adjacent rotational energy levels result in radiation that lies in the microwave range of frequencies ($f \sim 10^{11}$ Hz). When a molecule absorbs a microwave photon, the molecule jumps from a lower rotational energy level to a higher one. The allowed rotational transitions of linear molecules are regulated by the selection rule $\Delta J = \pm 1$. Given this selection rule, all absorption lines in the spectrum of a linear molecule correspond to energy separations equal to $E_J - E_{J-1}$, where $J = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$. From Equation 43.6, we see that the energies of the absorbed photons are given by

$$E_{\text{photon}} = \Delta E_{\text{rot}} = E_J - E_{J-1} = \frac{\hbar^2}{2I}[J(J+1) - (J-1)J]$$

$$E_{\text{photon}} = \frac{\hbar^2}{I}J = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 I}J \qquad J = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \tag{43.7}$$

◀ **Energy of a photon absorbed in a transition between adjacent rotational levels**

[2]Equation 43.5 is similar to Equation 42.27 for orbital angular momentum in an atom. The relationship between the magnitude of the angular momentum of a system and the associated quantum number is the same as it is in these equations for *any* system that exhibits rotation as long as the potential energy function for the system is spherically symmetric.

where J is the rotational quantum number of the higher energy state. Because $E_{\text{photon}} = hf$, where f is the frequency of the absorbed photon, we see that the allowed frequency for the transition $J = 0$ to $J = 1$ is $f_1 = h/4\pi^2 I$. The frequency corresponding to the $J = 1$ to $J = 2$ transition is $2f_1$, and so on. These predictions are in excellent agreement with the observed frequencies.

Quick Quiz 43.2 A gas of identical diatomic molecules absorbs electromagnetic radiation over a wide range of frequencies. Molecule 1 is in the $J = 0$ rotation state and makes a transition to the $J = 1$ state. Molecule 2 is in the $J = 2$ state and makes a transition to the $J = 3$ state. Is the ratio of the frequency of the photon that excited molecule 2 to that of the photon that excited molecule 1 equal to **(a)** 1, **(b)** 2, **(c)** 3, **(d)** 4, or **(e)** impossible to determine?

Example 43.1 Rotation of the CO Molecule

The $J = 0$ to $J = 1$ rotational transition of the CO molecule occurs at a frequency of 1.15×10^{11} Hz.

(A) Use this information to calculate the moment of inertia of the molecule.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine that the two atoms in Figure 43.5a are carbon and oxygen. The center of mass of the molecule is not midway between the atoms because of the difference in masses of the C and O atoms.

Categorize The statement of the problem tells us to categorize this example as one involving a quantum-mechanical treatment and to restrict our investigation to the rotational motion of a diatomic molecule.

Analyze Use Equation 43.7 to find the energy of a photon that excites the molecule from the $J = 0$ to the $J = 1$ rotational level:

$$E_{\text{photon}} = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 I}(1) = \frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 I}$$

Equate this energy to $E = hf$ for the absorbed photon and solve for I:

$$\frac{h^2}{4\pi^2 I} = hf \quad\rightarrow\quad I = \frac{h}{4\pi^2 f}$$

Substitute the frequency given in the problem statement:

$$I = \frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\ \text{J}\cdot\text{s}}{4\pi^2(1.15 \times 10^{11}\ \text{s}^{-1})} = \boxed{1.46 \times 10^{-46}\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2}$$

(B) Calculate the bond length of the molecule.

SOLUTION

Find the reduced mass μ of the CO molecule:

$$\mu = \frac{m_1 m_2}{m_1 + m_2} = \frac{(12\ \text{u})(16\ \text{u})}{12\ \text{u} + 16\ \text{u}} = 6.86\ \text{u}$$

$$= (6.86\ \text{u})\left(\frac{1.66 \times 10^{-27}\ \text{kg}}{1\ \text{u}}\right) = 1.14 \times 10^{-26}\ \text{kg}$$

Solve Equation 43.3 for r and substitute for the reduced mass and the moment of inertia from part (A):

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{I}{\mu}} = \sqrt{\frac{1.46 \times 10^{-46}\ \text{kg}\cdot\text{m}^2}{1.14 \times 10^{-26}\ \text{kg}}}$$

$$= 1.13 \times 10^{-10}\ \text{m} = \boxed{0.113\ \text{nm}}$$

Finalize The moment of inertia of the molecule and the separation distance between the atoms are both very small, as expected for a microscopic system.

WHAT IF? What if another photon of frequency 1.15×10^{11} Hz is incident on the CO molecule while that molecule is in the $J = 1$ state? What happens?

Answer Because the rotational quantum states are not equally spaced in energy, the $J = 1$ to $J = 2$ transition does not have the same energy as the $J = 0$ to $J = 1$ transition. Therefore, the molecule will *not* be excited to the $J = 2$ state. Two

43.1 continued

possibilities exist. The photon could pass by the molecule with no interaction, or the photon could induce a stimulated emission, similar to that for atoms and discussed in Section 42.9. In this case, the molecule makes a transition back to the $J = 0$ state and the original photon and a second identical photon leave the scene of the interaction.

Vibrational Motion of Molecules

If we consider a molecule to be a flexible structure in which the atoms are bonded together by "effective springs" as shown in Figure 43.6a, we can apply the particle in simple harmonic motion analysis model to the molecule as long as the atoms in the molecule are not too far from their equilibrium positions. Recall from Section 15.3 that the potential energy function for a simple harmonic oscillator is parabolic, varying as the square of the position of the particle relative to the equilibrium position. (See Eq. 15.20 and Fig. 15.9b.) Figure 43.6b shows a plot of potential energy versus atomic separation for a diatomic molecule, where r_0 is the equilibrium atomic separation. For separations close to r_0, the shape of the potential energy curve closely resembles the parabolic shape of the potential energy function in the particle in simple harmonic motion model.

According to classical mechanics, the frequency of vibration for the system shown in Figure 43.6a is given by Equation 15.14:

$$f = \frac{1}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{\mu}} \tag{43.8}$$

where k is the effective spring constant and μ is the reduced mass given by Equation 43.4. In Section 21.3, we studied the contribution of a molecule's vibration to the specific heats of gases.

Quantum mechanics predicts that a molecule vibrates in quantized states as described in Section 41.7. The vibrational motion and quantized vibrational energy can be altered if the molecule acquires energy of the proper value to cause a transition between quantized vibrational states. As discussed in Section 41.7, the allowed vibrational energies are

$$E_{\text{vib}} = \left(v + \tfrac{1}{2}\right)hf \qquad v = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \tag{43.9}$$

where v is an integer called the **vibrational quantum number.** (We used n in Section 41.7 for a general harmonic oscillator, but v is often used for the quantum number when discussing molecular vibrations.) If the system is in the lowest vibrational state, for which $v = 0$, its ground-state energy is $\frac{1}{2}hf$. In the first excited vibrational state, $v = 1$ and the energy is $\frac{3}{2}hf$, and so on.

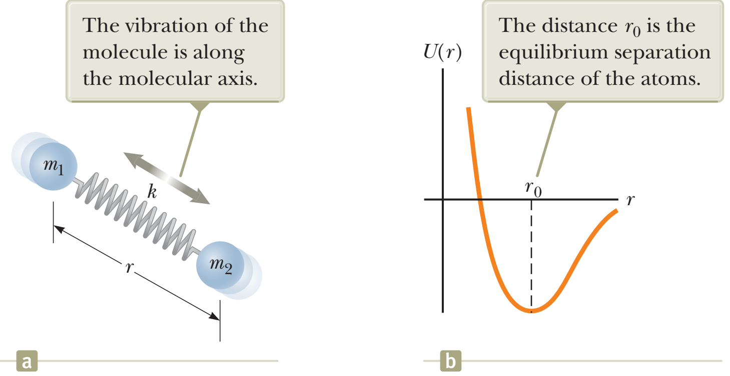


Figure 43.6 (a) Effective-spring model of a diatomic molecule. (b) Plot of the potential energy of a diatomic molecule versus atomic separation distance. Compare with Figure 15.11a.

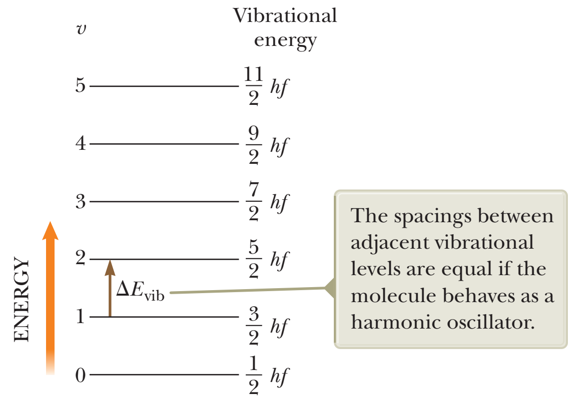


Figure 43.7 Allowed vibrational energies of a diatomic molecule, where f is the frequency of vibration of the molecule, given by Equation 43.8.

Substituting Equation 43.8 into Equation 43.9 gives the following expression for the allowed vibrational energies:

Allowed values of vibrational energy

$$E_{vib} = \left(v + \tfrac{1}{2}\right)\frac{h}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{\mu}} \qquad v = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \tag{43.10}$$

The selection rule for the allowed vibrational transitions is $\Delta v = \pm 1$. Transitions between vibrational levels are caused by absorption of photons in the infrared region of the spectrum. The energy of an absorbed photon is equal to the energy difference between any two successive vibrational levels. Therefore, the photon energy is given by

$$E_{photon} = \Delta E_{vib} = \frac{h}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{\mu}} \tag{43.11}$$

The vibrational energies of a diatomic molecule are plotted in Figure 43.7. At ordinary temperatures, most molecules have vibrational energies corresponding to the $v = 0$ state because the spacing between vibrational states is much greater than $k_B T$, where k_B is Boltzmann's constant and T is the temperature.

Quick Quiz 43.3 A gas of identical diatomic molecules absorbs electromagnetic radiation over a wide range of frequencies. Molecule 1, initially in the $v = 0$ vibrational state, makes a transition to the $v = 1$ state. Molecule 2, initially in the $v = 2$ state, makes a transition to the $v = 3$ state. What is the ratio of the frequency of the photon that excited molecule 2 to that of the photon that excited molecule 1? **(a)** 1 **(b)** 2 **(c)** 3 **(d)** 4 **(e)** impossible to determine

Example 43.2 Vibration of the CO Molecule AM

The frequency of the photon that causes the $v = 0$ to $v = 1$ transition in the CO molecule is 6.42×10^{13} Hz. We ignore any changes in the rotational energy for this example.

(A) Calculate the force constant k for this molecule.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine that the two atoms in Figure 43.6a are carbon and oxygen. As the molecule vibrates, a given point on the imaginary spring is at rest. This point is not midway between the atoms because of the difference in masses of the C and O atoms.

Categorize The statement of the problem tells us to categorize this example as one involving a quantum-mechanical treatment and to restrict our investigation to the vibrational motion of a diatomic molecule. The molecule is analyzed with portions of the *particle in simple harmonic motion* analysis model.

43.2 continued

Analyze Set Equation 43.11 equal to the photon energy hf and solve for the force constant:

$$\frac{h}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{\mu}} = hf \quad \rightarrow \quad k = 4\pi^2\mu f^2$$

Substitute the frequency given in the problem statement and the reduced mass from Example 43.1:

$$k = 4\pi^2(1.14 \times 10^{-26}\text{ kg})(6.42 \times 10^{13}\text{ s}^{-1})^2 = \boxed{1.85 \times 10^3\text{ N/m}}$$

(B) What is the classical amplitude A of vibration for this molecule in the $v = 0$ vibrational state?

SOLUTION

Equate the maximum elastic potential energy $\frac{1}{2}kA^2$ in the molecule (Eq. 15.21) to the vibrational energy given by Equation 43.10 with $v = 0$ and solve for A:

$$\tfrac{1}{2}kA^2 = \frac{h}{4\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{\mu}} \quad \rightarrow \quad A = \sqrt{\frac{h}{2\pi}}\left(\frac{1}{\mu k}\right)^{1/4}$$

Substitute the value for k from part (A) and the value for μ:

$$A = \sqrt{\frac{6.626 \times 10^{-34}\text{ J}\cdot\text{s}}{2\pi}}\left[\frac{1}{(1.14 \times 10^{-26}\text{ kg})(1.85 \times 10^3\text{ N/m})}\right]^{1/4}$$

$$= 4.79 \times 10^{-12}\text{ m} = \boxed{0.004\,79\text{ nm}}$$

Finalize Comparing this result with the bond length of 0.113 nm we calculated in Example 43.1 shows that the classical amplitude of vibration is approximately 4% of the bond length.

Molecular Spectra

In general, a molecule vibrates and rotates simultaneously. To a first approximation, these motions are independent of each other, so the total energy of the molecule for these motions is the sum of Equations 43.6 and 43.9:

$$E = (v + \tfrac{1}{2})hf + \frac{\hbar^2}{2I}J(J+1) \qquad \textbf{(43.12)}$$

The energy levels of any molecule can be calculated from this expression, and each level is indexed by the two quantum numbers v and J. From these calculations, an energy-level diagram like the one shown in Figure 43.8a (page 1350) can be constructed. For each allowed value of the vibrational quantum number v, there is a complete set of rotational levels corresponding to $J = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$. The energy separation between successive rotational levels is much smaller than the separation between successive vibrational levels. As noted earlier, most molecules at ordinary temperatures are in the $v = 0$ vibrational state; these molecules can be in various rotational states as Figure 43.8a shows.

When a molecule absorbs a photon with the appropriate energy, the vibrational quantum number v increases by one unit while the rotational quantum number J either increases or decreases by one unit as can be seen in Figure 43.8. Therefore, the molecular absorption spectrum in Figure 43.8b consists of two groups of lines: one group to the right of center and satisfying the selection rules $\Delta J = +1$ and $\Delta v = +1$, and the other group to the left of center and satisfying the selection rules $\Delta J = -1$ and $\Delta v = +1$.

The energies of the absorbed photons can be calculated from Equation 43.12:

$$E_{\text{photon}} = \Delta E = hf + \frac{\hbar^2}{I}(J+1) \qquad J = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \quad (\Delta J = +1) \qquad \textbf{(43.13)}$$

$$E_{\text{photon}} = \Delta E = hf - \frac{\hbar^2}{I}J \qquad J = 1, 2, 3, \ldots \quad (\Delta J = -1) \qquad \textbf{(43.14)}$$

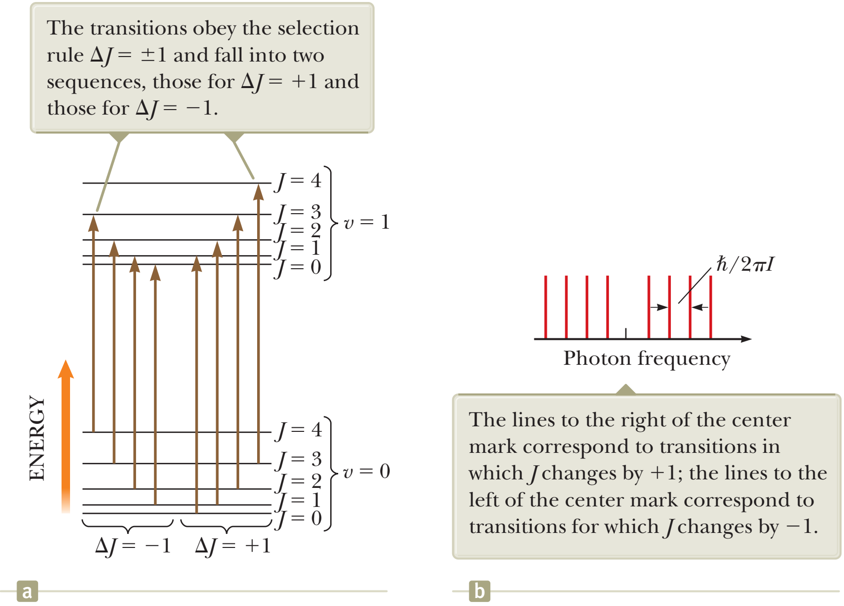


Figure 43.8 (a) Absorptive transitions between the $v = 0$ and $v = 1$ vibrational states of a diatomic molecule. Compare the energy levels in this figure with those in Figure 21.7. (b) Expected lines in the absorption spectrum of a molecule. These same lines appear in the emission spectrum.

where J is the rotational quantum number of the *initial* state. Equation 43.13 generates the series of equally spaced lines *higher* than the frequency f, whereas Equation 43.14 generates the series *lower* than this frequency. Adjacent lines are separated in frequency by the fundamental unit $\hbar/2\pi I$. Figure 43.8b shows the expected frequencies in the absorption spectrum of the molecule; these same frequencies appear in the emission spectrum.

The experimental absorption spectrum of the HCl molecule shown in Figure 43.9 follows this pattern very well and reinforces our model. One peculiarity is apparent, however: each line is split into a doublet. This doubling occurs because two chlorine isotopes (Cl-35 and Cl-37; see Section 44.1) were present in the sample used to obtain this spectrum. Because the isotopes have different masses, the two HCl molecules have different values of I.

The intensity of the spectral lines in Figure 43.9 follows an interesting pattern, rising first as one moves away from the central gap (located at about 8.65×10^{13} Hz, corresponding to the forbidden $J = 0$ to $J = 0$ transition) and then falling. This intensity is determined by a product of two functions of J. The first function corresponds to the number of available states for a given value of J. This function is $2J + 1$, corresponding to the number of values of m_J, the molecular rotation analog to m_ℓ for atomic states. For example, the $J = 2$ state has five substates with five values of m_J ($m_J = -2, -1, 0, 1, 2$), whereas the $J = 1$ state has only three substates ($m_J = -1, 0, 1$). Therefore, on average and without regard for the second function described below, five-thirds as many molecules make the transition from the $J = 2$ state as from the $J = 1$ state.

The second function determining the envelope of the intensity of the spectral lines is the Boltzmann factor, introduced in Section 21.5. The number of molecules in an excited rotational state is given by

$$n = n_0 e^{-\hbar^2 J(J+1)/(2Ik_B T)}$$

where n_0 is the number of molecules in the $J = 0$ state.

Multiplying these factors together indicates that the intensity of spectral lines should be described by a function of J as follows:

Intensity variation in the vibration–rotation spectrum of a molecule

$$I \propto (2J + 1)e^{-\hbar^2 J(J+1)/(2Ik_B T)} \qquad (43.15)$$

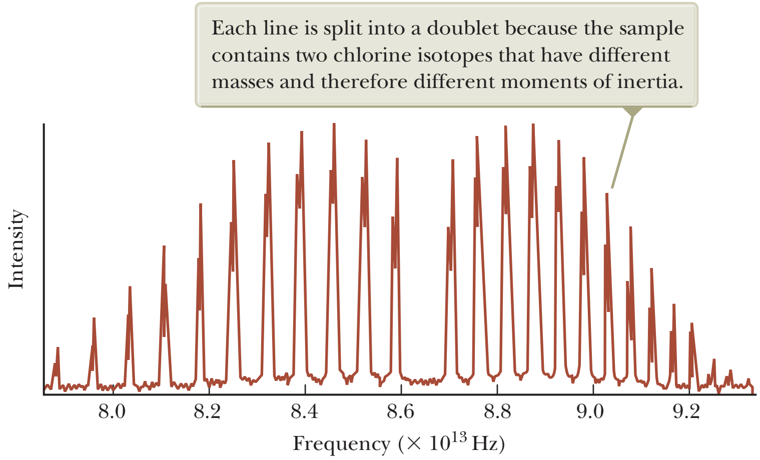


Figure 43.9 Experimental absorption spectrum of the HCl molecule.

The factor $(2J + 1)$ increases with J while the exponential second factor decreases. The product of the two factors gives a behavior that closely describes the envelope of the spectral lines in Figure 43.9.

The excitation of rotational and vibrational energy levels is an important consideration in current models of global warming. Most of the absorption lines for CO_2 are in the infrared portion of the spectrum. Therefore, visible light from the Sun is not absorbed by atmospheric CO_2 but instead strikes the Earth's surface, warming it. In turn, the surface of the Earth, being at a much lower temperature than the Sun, emits thermal radiation that peaks in the infrared portion of the electromagnetic spectrum (Section 40.1). This infrared radiation is absorbed by the CO_2 molecules in the air instead of radiating out into space. Atmospheric CO_2 acts like a one-way valve for energy from the Sun and is responsible, along with some other atmospheric molecules, for raising the temperature of the Earth's surface above its value in the absence of an atmosphere. This phenomenon is commonly called the "greenhouse effect." The burning of fossil fuels in today's industrialized society adds more CO_2 to the atmosphere. This addition of CO_2 increases the absorption of infrared radiation, raising the Earth's temperature further. In turn, this increase in temperature causes substantial climatic changes.

As seen in Figure 43.10, the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere has been steadily increasing since the middle of the 20th century. This graph shows hard data that indicate that the atmosphere is undergoing a distinct change, although not all scientists agree on the interpretation of what that change means in terms of global temperatures.

The Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) is a scientific body that assesses the available information related to global warming and associated effects

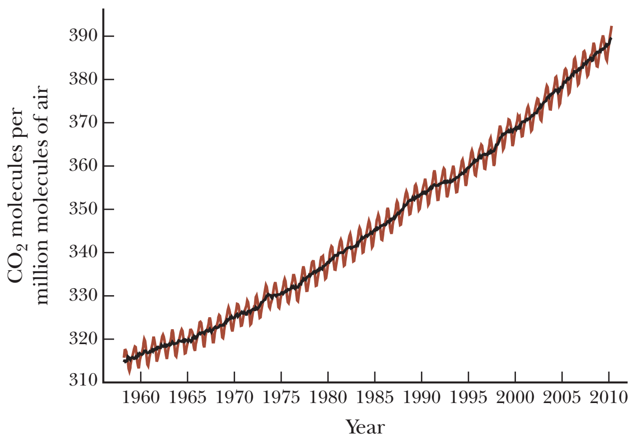


Figure 43.10 The concentration of atmospheric carbon dioxide in parts per million (ppm) of dry air as a function of time. These data were recorded at the Mauna Loa Observatory in Hawaii. The yearly variations (red-brown curve) coincide with growing seasons because vegetation absorbs carbon dioxide from the air. The steady increase in the average concentration (black curve) is of concern to scientists.

related to climate change. It was originally established in 1988 by two United Nations organizations, the World Meteorological Organization and the United Nations Environment Programme. The IPCC has published four assessment reports on climate change, the most recent in 2007, and a fifth report is scheduled to be released in 2014. The 2007 report concludes that there is a probability of greater than 90% that the increased global temperature measured by scientists is due to the placement of greenhouse gases such as carbon dioxide in the atmosphere by humans. The report also predicts a global temperature increase between 1°C and 6°C in the 21st century, a sea level rise from 18 cm to 59 cm, and very high probabilities of weather extremes, including heat waves, droughts, cyclones, and heavy rainfall.

In addition to its scientific aspects, global warming is a social issue with many facets. These facets encompass international politics and economics, because global warming is a worldwide problem. Changing our policies requires real costs to solve the problem. Global warming also has technological aspects, and new methods of manufacturing, transportation, and energy supply must be designed to slow down or reverse the increase in temperature.

Conceptual Example 43.3 Comparing Figures 43.8 and 43.9

In Figure 43.8a, the transitions indicated correspond to spectral lines that are equally spaced as shown in Figure 43.8b. The actual spectrum in Figure 43.9, however, shows lines that move closer together as the frequency increases. Why does the spacing of the actual spectral lines differ from the diagram in Figure 43.8?

SOLUTION

In Figure 43.8, we modeled the rotating diatomic molecule as a rigid object (Chapter 10). In reality, however, as the molecule rotates faster and faster, the effective spring in Figure 43.6a stretches and provides the increased force associated with the larger centripetal acceleration of each atom. As the molecule stretches along its length, its moment of inertia I increases. Therefore, the rotational part of the energy expression in Equation 43.12 has an extra dependence on J in the moment of inertia I. Because the increasing moment of inertia is in the denominator, as J increases, the energies do not increase as rapidly with J as indicated in Equation 43.12. With each higher energy level being lower than indicated by Equation 43.12, the energy associated with a transition to that level is smaller, as is the frequency of the absorbed photon, destroying the even spacing of the spectral lines and giving the spacing that decreases with increasing frequency seen in Figure 43.9.

43.3 Bonding in Solids

A crystalline solid consists of a large number of atoms arranged in a regular array, forming a periodic structure. The ions in the NaCl crystal are ionically bonded, as already noted, and the carbon atoms in diamond form covalent bonds with one another. The metallic bond described at the end of this section is responsible for the cohesion of copper, silver, sodium, and other solid metals.

Ionic Solids

Many crystals are formed by ionic bonding, in which the dominant interaction between ions is the Coulomb force. Consider a portion of the NaCl crystal shown in Figure 43.11a. The red spheres are sodium ions, and the blue spheres are chlorine ions. As shown in Figure 43.11b, each Na^+ ion has six nearest-neighbor Cl^- ions. Similarly, in Figure 43.11c, we see that each Cl^- ion has six nearest-neighbor Na^+ ions. Each Na^+ ion is attracted to its six Cl^- neighbors. The corresponding potential energy is $-6k_e e^2/r$, where k_e is the Coulomb constant and r is the separation distance between each Na^+ and Cl^-. In addition, there are 12 next-nearest-neighbor

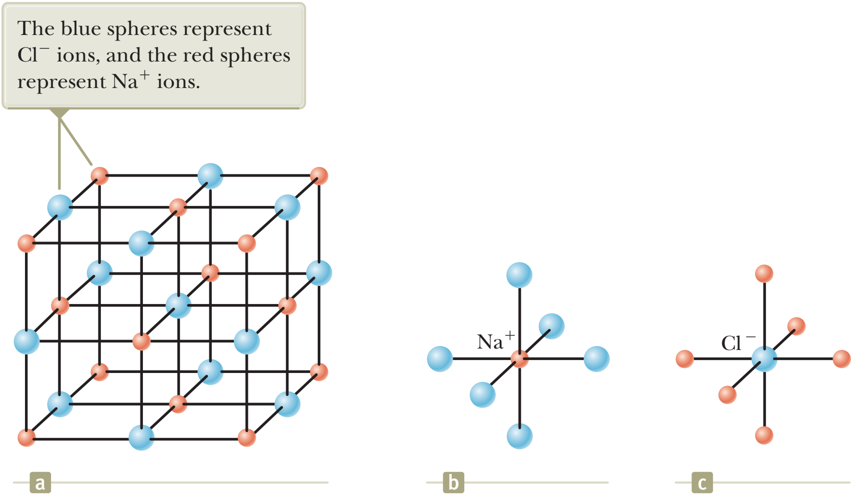


Figure 43.11 (a) Crystalline structure of NaCl. (b) Each positive sodium ion is surrounded by six negative chlorine ions. (c) Each chlorine ion is surrounded by six sodium ions.

Na^+ ions at a distance of $\sqrt{2}r$ from the Na^+ ion, and these 12 positive ions exert weaker repulsive forces on the central Na^+. Furthermore, beyond these 12 Na^+ ions are more Cl^- ions that exert an attractive force, and so on. The net effect of all these interactions is a resultant negative electric potential energy

$$U_{\text{attractive}} = -\alpha k_e \frac{e^2}{r} \qquad \textbf{(43.16)}$$

where α is a dimensionless number known as the **Madelung constant.** The value of α depends only on the particular crystalline structure of the solid. For example, $\alpha = 1.747\,6$ for the NaCl structure. When the constituent ions of a crystal are brought close together, a repulsive force exists because of electrostatic forces and the exclusion principle as discussed in Section 43.1. The potential energy term B/r^m in Equation 43.1 accounts for this repulsive force. We do not include neighbors other than nearest neighbors here because the repulsive forces occur only for ions that are very close together. (Electron shells must overlap for exclusion-principle effects to become important.) Therefore, we can express the total potential energy of the crystal as

$$U_{\text{total}} = -\alpha k_e \frac{e^2}{r} + \frac{B}{r^m} \qquad \textbf{(43.17)}$$

where m in this expression is some small integer.

A plot of total potential energy versus ion separation distance is shown in Figure 43.12. The potential energy has its minimum value U_0 at the equilibrium separation, when $r = r_0$. It is left as a problem (Problem 59) to show that

$$U_0 = -\alpha k_e \frac{e^2}{r_0}\left(1 - \frac{1}{m}\right) \qquad \textbf{(43.18)}$$

This minimum energy U_0 is called the **ionic cohesive energy** of the solid, and its absolute value represents the energy required to separate the solid into a collection of isolated positive and negative ions. Its value for NaCl is −7.84 eV per ion pair.

To calculate the **atomic cohesive energy,** which is the binding energy relative to the energy of the neutral atoms, 5.14 eV must be added to the ionic cohesive energy value to account for the transition from Na^+ to Na and 3.62 eV must be subtracted to account for the conversion of Cl^- to Cl. Therefore, the atomic cohesive energy of NaCl is

$$-7.84 \text{ eV} + 5.14 \text{ eV} - 3.62 \text{ eV} = -6.32 \text{ eV}$$

In other words, 6.32 eV of energy per ion pair is needed to separate the solid into isolated neutral atoms of Na and Cl.

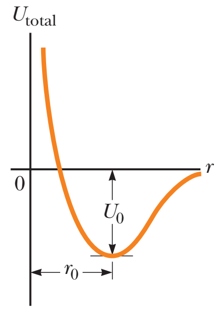


Figure 43.12 Total potential energy versus ion separation distance for an ionic solid, where U_0 is the ionic cohesive energy and r_0 is the equilibrium separation distance between ions.

Ionic crystals form relatively stable, hard crystals. They are poor electrical conductors because they contain no free electrons; each electron in the solid is bound tightly to one of the ions, so it is not sufficiently mobile to carry current. Ionic crystals have high melting points; for example, the melting point of NaCl is 801°C. Ionic crystals are transparent to visible radiation because the shells formed by the electrons in ionic solids are so tightly bound that visible radiation does not possess sufficient energy to promote electrons to the next allowed shell. Infrared radiation is absorbed strongly because the vibrations of the ions have natural resonant frequencies in the low-energy infrared region.

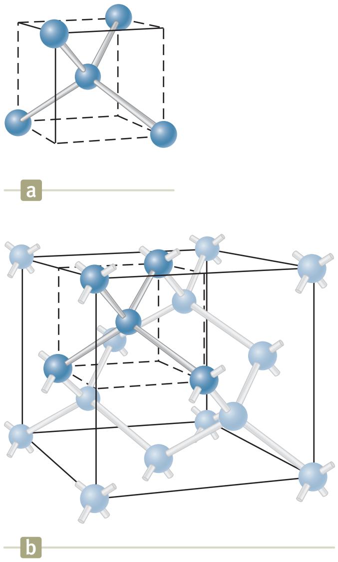


Figure 43.13 (a) Each carbon atom in a diamond crystal is covalently bonded to four other carbon atoms so that a tetrahedral structure is formed. (b) The crystal structure of diamond, showing the tetrahedral bond arrangement.

Covalent Solids

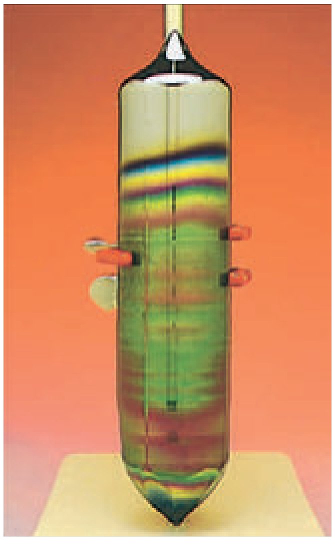
Solid carbon, in the form of diamond, is a crystal whose atoms are covalently bonded. Because atomic carbon has the electronic configuration $1s^2 2s^2 2p^2$, it is four electrons short of filling its $n = 2$ shell, which can accommodate eight electrons. Because of this electron structure, two carbon atoms have a strong attraction for each other, with a cohesive energy of 7.37 eV. In the diamond structure, each carbon atom is covalently bonded to four other carbon atoms located at four corners of a cube as shown in Figure 43.13a.

The crystalline structure of diamond is shown in Figure 43.13b. Notice that each carbon atom forms covalent bonds with four nearest-neighbor atoms. The basic structure of diamond is called tetrahedral (each carbon atom is at the center of a regular tetrahedron), and the angle between the bonds is 109.5°. Other crystals such as silicon and germanium have the same structure.

Carbon is interesting in that it can form several different types of structures. In addition to the diamond structure, it forms graphite, with completely different properties. In this form, the carbon atoms form flat layers with hexagonal arrays of atoms. A very weak interaction between the layers allows the layers to be removed easily under friction, as occurs in the graphite used in pencil lead.

Carbon atoms can also form a large hollow structure; in this case, the compound is called **buckminsterfullerene** after the famous architect R. Buckminster Fuller, who invented the geodesic dome. The unique shape of this molecule (Fig. 43.14) provides a "cage" to hold other atoms or molecules. Related structures, called "buckytubes" because of their long, narrow cylindrical arrangements of carbon atoms, may provide the basis for extremely strong, yet lightweight, materials.

A current area of active research is in the properties and applications of **graphene.** Graphene consists of a monolayer of carbon atoms, with the atoms arranged in hexagons so that the monolayer looks like chicken wire. Graphite flakes that are shed from a pencil while writing contain small fragments of graphene. Pioneers in graphene research include Andre Geim (b. 1958) and Konstantin Novoselov (b. 1974) of the University of Manchester, who received the Nobel Prize in Physics in 2010 for their experiments. Graphene has interesting electronic, thermal, and optical properties that are currently under investigation. Its mechanical properties include a breaking strength 200 times that of steel. Potential applications under



A cylinder of nearly pure crystalline silicon (Si), approximately 25 cm long. Such crystals are cut into wafers and processed to make various semiconductor devices.

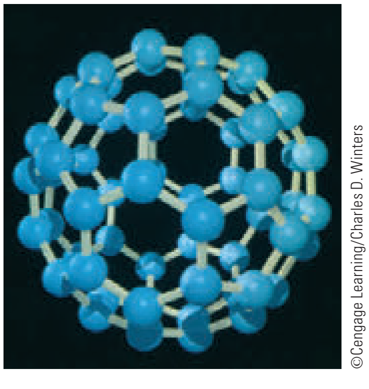


Figure 43.14 Computer rendering of a "buckyball," short for the molecule buckminsterfullerene. These nearly spherical molecular structures that look like soccer balls were named for the inventor of the geodesic dome. This form of carbon, C_{60}, was discovered by astrophysicists investigating the carbon gas that exists between stars. Scientists are actively studying the properties and potential uses of buckminsterfullerene and related molecules.

Table 43.1 Atomic Cohesive Energies of Some Covalent Solids

Solid	Cohesive Energy (eV per ion pair)
C (diamond)	7.37
Si	4.63
Ge	3.85
InAs	5.70
SiC	6.15
ZnS	6.32
CuCl	9.24

study include graphene nanoribbons, quantum dots, transistors, optical modulators, and integrated circuits.

The atomic cohesive energies of some covalent solids are given in Table 43.1. The large energies account for the hardness of covalent solids. Diamond is particularly hard and has an extremely high melting point (about 4 000 K). Covalently bonded solids usually have high bond energies and high melting points, and are good electrical insulators.

Metallic Solids

Metallic bonds are generally weaker than ionic or covalent bonds. The outer electrons in the atoms of a metal are relatively free to move throughout the material, and the number of such mobile electrons in a metal is large. The metallic structure can be viewed as a "sea" or a "gas" of nearly free electrons surrounding a lattice of positive ions (Fig. 43.15). The bonding mechanism in a metal is the attractive force between the entire collection of positive ions and the electron gas. Metals have a cohesive energy in the range of 1 to 3 eV per atom, which is less than the cohesive energies of ionic or covalent solids.

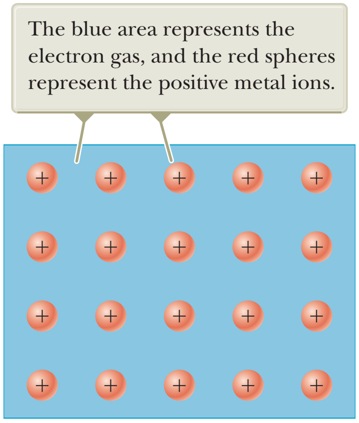


Figure 43.15 Highly schematic diagram of a metal.

Light interacts strongly with the free electrons in metals. Hence, visible light is absorbed and re-emitted quite close to the surface of a metal, which accounts for the shiny nature of metal surfaces. In addition to the high electrical conductivity of metals produced by the free electrons, the nondirectional nature of the metallic bond allows many different types of metal atoms to be dissolved in a host metal in varying amounts. The resulting *solid solutions,* or *alloys* (steel, bronze, brass, etc.), may be designed to have particular properties, such as tensile strength, ductility, electrical and thermal conductivity, and resistance to corrosion.

Because the bonding in metals is between all the electrons and all the positive ions, metals tend to bend when stressed. This bending is in contrast to nonmetallic solids, which tend to fracture when stressed. Fracturing results because bonding in nonmetallic solids is primarily with nearest-neighbor ions or atoms. When the distortion causes sufficient stress between some set of nearest neighbors, fracture occurs.

43.4 Free-Electron Theory of Metals

In Section 27.3, we described a classical free-electron theory of electrical conduction in metals, a structural model that led to Ohm's law. According to this theory, a metal is modeled as a classical gas of conduction electrons moving through a fixed lattice of ions. Although this theory predicts the correct functional form of Ohm's law, it does not predict the correct values of electrical and thermal conductivities.

A quantum-based free-electron theory of metals remedies the shortcomings of the classical model by taking into account the wave nature of the electrons. In this model, based on the quantum particle under boundary conditions analysis model, the outer-shell electrons are free to move through the metal but are trapped within a three-dimensional box formed by the metal surfaces. Therefore, each electron is represented as a particle in a box. As discussed in Section 41.2, particles in a box are restricted to quantized energy levels.

Statistical physics can be applied to a collection of particles in an effort to relate microscopic properties to macroscopic properties as we saw with kinetic theory of gases in Chapter 21. In the case of electrons, it is necessary to use *quantum statistics,* with the requirement that each state of the system can be occupied by only two electrons (one with spin up and the other with spin down) as a consequence of the exclusion principle. The probability that a particular state having energy E is occupied by one of the electrons in a solid is

Fermi–Dirac distribution function

$$f(E) = \frac{1}{e^{(E-E_F)/k_B T} + 1} \tag{43.19}$$

where $f(E)$ is called the **Fermi–Dirac distribution function** and E_F is called the **Fermi energy.** A plot of $f(E)$ versus E at $T = 0$ K is shown in Figure 43.16a. Notice that $f(E) = 1$ for $E < E_F$ and $f(E) = 0$ for $E > E_F$. That is, at 0 K, all states having energies less than the Fermi energy are occupied and all states having energies greater than the Fermi energy are vacant. A plot of $f(E)$ versus E at some temperature $T > 0$ K is shown in Figure 43.16b. This curve shows that as T increases, the distribution rounds off slightly. Because of thermal excitation, states near and below E_F lose population and states near and above E_F gain population. The Fermi energy E_F also depends on temperature, but the dependence is weak in metals.

Let's now follow up on our discussion of the particle in a box in Chapter 41 to generalize the results to a three-dimensional box. Recall that if a particle of mass m is confined to move in a one-dimensional box of length L, the allowed states have quantized energy levels given by Equation 41.14:

$$E_n = \left(\frac{h^2}{8mL^2}\right)n^2 = \left(\frac{\hbar^2\pi^2}{2mL^2}\right)n^2 \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$$

Now imagine a piece of metal in the shape of a solid cube of sides L and volume L^3 and focus on one electron that is free to move anywhere in this volume. Therefore, the electron is modeled as a particle in a three-dimensional box. In this model, we require that $\psi(x, y, z) = 0$ at the boundaries of the metal. It can be shown (see Problem 37) that the energy for such an electron is

$$E = \frac{\hbar^2\pi^2}{2m_e L^2}(n_x^{\,2} + n_y^{\,2} + n_z^{\,2}) \tag{43.20}$$

where m_e is the mass of the electron and n_x, n_y, and n_z are quantum numbers. As we expect, the energies are quantized, and each allowed value of the energy is characterized by this set of three quantum numbers (one for each degree of freedom) and the spin quantum number m_s. For example, the ground state, corresponding to

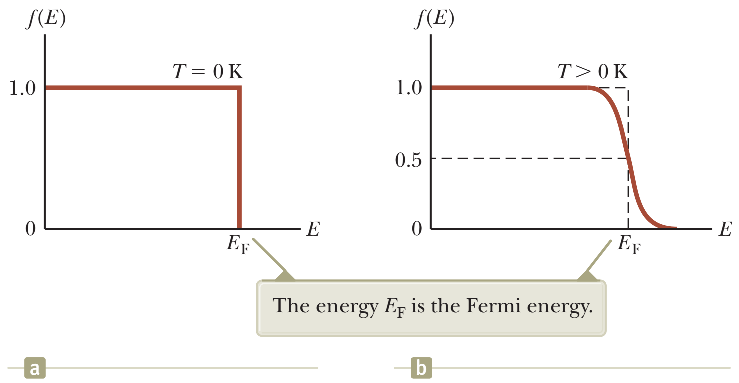


Figure 43.16 Plot of the Fermi–Dirac distribution function $f(E)$ versus energy at (a) $T = 0$ K and (b) $T > 0$ K.

$n_x = n_y = n_z = 1$, has an energy equal to $3\hbar^2\pi^2/2m_eL^2$ and can be occupied by two electrons, corresponding to spin up and spin down.

Because of the macroscopic size L of the box, the energy levels for the electrons are very close together. As a result, we can treat the quantum numbers as continuous variables. Under this assumption, the number of allowed states per unit volume that have energies between E and $E + dE$ is

$$g(E)\,dE = \frac{8\sqrt{2}\,\pi m_e^{3/2}}{h^3}\,E^{1/2}\,dE \qquad \textbf{(43.21)}$$

(See Example 43.5.) The function $g(E)$ is called the **density-of-states function.**

If a metal is in thermal equilibrium, the number of electrons per unit volume $N(E)\,dE$ that have energy between E and $E + dE$ is equal to the product of the number of allowed states per unit volume and the probability that a state is occupied; that is, $N(E)\,dE = g(E)f(E)\,dE$:

$$N(E)\,dE = \left(\frac{8\sqrt{2}\,\pi m_e^{3/2}}{h^3}\,E^{1/2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{e^{(E-E_F)/k_BT}+1}\right)dE \qquad \textbf{(43.22)}$$

Plots of $N(E)$ versus E for two temperatures are given in Figure 43.17.

If n_e is the total number of electrons per unit volume, we require that

$$n_e = \int_0^\infty N(E)\,dE = \frac{8\sqrt{2}\,\pi m_e^{3/2}}{h^3}\int_0^\infty \frac{E^{1/2}\,dE}{e^{(E-E_F)/k_BT}+1} \qquad \textbf{(43.23)}$$

We can use this condition to calculate the Fermi energy. At $T = 0$ K, the Fermi–Dirac distribution function $f(E) = 1$ for $E < E_F$ and $f(E) = 0$ for $E > E_F$. Therefore, at $T = 0$ K, Equation 43.23 becomes

$$n_e = \frac{8\sqrt{2}\,\pi m_e^{3/2}}{h^3}\int_0^{E_F} E^{1/2}\,dE = \tfrac{2}{3}\,\frac{8\sqrt{2}\,\pi m_e^{3/2}}{h^3}\,E_F^{3/2} \qquad \textbf{(43.24)}$$

Solving for the Fermi energy at 0 K gives

$$E_F(0) = \frac{h^2}{2m_e}\left(\frac{3n_e}{8\pi}\right)^{2/3} \qquad \textbf{(43.25)}$$

◀ **Fermi energy at $T = 0$ K**

The Fermi energies for metals are in the range of a few electron volts. Representative values for various metals are given in Table 43.2. It is left as a problem (Problem 39) to show that the average energy of a free electron in a metal at 0 K is

$$E_{avg} = \tfrac{3}{5}E_F \qquad \textbf{(43.26)}$$

In summary, we can consider a metal to be a system comprising a very large number of energy levels available to the free electrons. These electrons fill the levels in accordance with the Pauli exclusion principle, beginning with $E = 0$ and ending with E_F. At $T = 0$ K, all levels below the Fermi energy are filled and all levels above the Fermi energy are empty. At 300 K, a small fraction of the free electrons are excited above the Fermi energy.

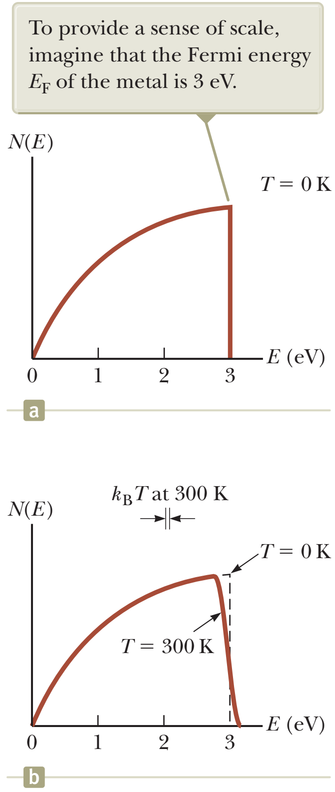


Figure 43.17 Plot of the electron distribution function versus energy in a metal at (a) $T = 0$ K and (b) $T = 300$ K.

Table 43.2 Calculated Values of the Fermi Energy for Metals at 300 K Based on the Free-Electron Theory

Metal	Electron Concentration (m^{-3})	Fermi Energy (eV)
Li	4.70×10^{28}	4.72
Na	2.65×10^{28}	3.23
K	1.40×10^{28}	2.12
Cu	8.46×10^{28}	7.05
Ag	5.85×10^{28}	5.48
Au	5.90×10^{28}	5.53

Example 43.4 The Fermi Energy of Gold

Each atom of gold (Au) contributes one free electron to the metal. Compute the Fermi energy for gold.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine electrons filling available levels at $T = 0$ K in gold until the solid is neutral. The highest energy filled is the Fermi energy.

Categorize We evaluate the result using a result from this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Substitute the concentration of free electrons in gold from Table 43.2 into Equation 43.25 to calculate the Fermi energy at 0 K:

$$E_F(0) = \frac{(6.626 \times 10^{-34}\,\text{J}\cdot\text{s})^2}{2(9.11 \times 10^{-31}\,\text{kg})}\left[\frac{3(5.90 \times 10^{28}\,\text{m}^{-3})}{8\pi}\right]^{2/3}$$

$$= 8.85 \times 10^{-19}\,\text{J} = \boxed{5.53\text{ eV}}$$

Example 43.5 Deriving Equation 43.21

Based on the allowed states of a particle in a three-dimensional box, derive Equation 43.21.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a particle confined to a three-dimensional box, subject to boundary conditions in three dimensions. Imagine also a three-dimensional *quantum number space* whose axes represent n_x, n_y, and n_z. The allowed states in this space can be represented as dots located at integral values of the three quantum numbers as in Figure 43.18. This space is not traditional space in which a location is specified by coordinates x, y, and z; rather, it is a space in which allowed states can be specified by coordinates representing the quantum numbers. The number of allowed states having energies between E and $E + dE$ corresponds to the number of dots in the spherical shell of radius n and thickness dn.

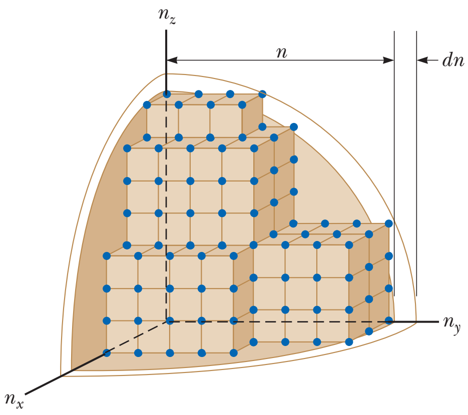


Figure 43.18 The dots representing the allowed states are located at integer values of n_x, n_y, and n_z and are therefore at the corners of cubes with sides of "length" 1.

Categorize We categorize this problem as that of a quantum system in which the energies of the particle are quantized. Furthermore, we can base the solution to the problem on our understanding of the particle in a one-dimensional box.

Analyze As noted previously, the allowed states of the particle in a three-dimensional box are described by three quantum numbers n_x, n_y, and n_z. For a macroscopic sample of metal, the number of allowed values of these quantum numbers is tremendous, so on a macroscopic scale, the allowed states in the number space can be modeled as continuous.

Defining $E_0 = \hbar^2\pi^2/2m_eL^2$ and $n = (E/E_0)^{1/2}$, rewrite Equation 43.20:

$$(1)\quad n_x^2 + n_y^2 + n_z^2 = \frac{2m_eL^2}{\hbar^2\pi^2}E = \frac{E}{E_0} = n^2$$

In the quantum number space, Equation (1) is the equation of a sphere of radius n. Therefore, the number of allowed states having energies between E and $E + dE$ is equal to the number of points in a spherical shell of radius n and thickness dn.

Find the "volume" of this shell, which represents the total number of states $G(E)\,dE$:

$$(2)\quad G(E)\,dE = \tfrac{1}{8}(4\pi n^2\,dn) = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi n^2\,dn$$

We have taken one-eighth of the total volume because we are restricted to the octant of a three-dimensional space in which all three quantum numbers are positive.

Replace n in Equation (2) with its equivalent in terms of E using the relation $n^2 = E/E_0$ from Equation (1):

$$G(E)\,dE = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\left(\frac{E}{E_0}\right)d\left[\left(\frac{E}{E_0}\right)^{1/2}\right] = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\,\frac{E}{(E_0)^{3/2}}\,d[(E)^{1/2}]$$

43.5 continued

Evaluate the differential:

$$G(E)\,dE = \tfrac{1}{2}\pi\left[\frac{E}{(E_0)^{3/2}}\right]\left(\tfrac{1}{2}E^{-1/2}\,dE\right) = \tfrac{1}{4}\pi E_0^{-3/2}E^{1/2}\,dE$$

Substitute for E_0 from its definition above:

$$G(E)\,dE = \tfrac{1}{4}\pi\left(\frac{\hbar^2\pi^2}{2m_eL^2}\right)^{-3/2}E^{1/2}\,dE$$

$$= \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\,\frac{m_e^{3/2}L^3}{\hbar^3\pi^2}\,E^{1/2}\,dE$$

Letting $g(E)$ represent the number of states per unit volume, where L^3 is the volume V of the cubical box in normal space, find $g(E) = G(E)/V$:

$$g(E)\,dE = \frac{G(E)}{V}\,dE = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}\,\frac{m_e^{3/2}}{\hbar^3\pi^2}\,E^{1/2}\,dE$$

Substitute $\hbar = h/2\pi$:

$$g(E)\,dE = \frac{4\sqrt{2}\,\pi m_e^{3/2}}{h^3}\,E^{1/2}\,dE$$

Multiply by 2 for the two possible spin states in each particle-in-a-box state:

$$g(E)\,dE = \frac{8\sqrt{2}\,\pi m_e^{3/2}}{h^3}\,E^{1/2}\,dE$$

Finalize This result is Equation 43.21, which is what we set out to derive.

43.5 Band Theory of Solids

In Section 43.4, the electrons in a metal were modeled as particles free to move around inside a three-dimensional box and we ignored the influence of the parent atoms. In this section, we make the model more sophisticated by incorporating the contribution of the parent atoms that form the crystal.

Recall from Section 41.1 that the probability density $|\psi|^2$ for a system is physically significant, but the probability amplitude ψ is not. Let's consider as an example an atom that has a single s electron outside of a closed shell. Both of the following wave functions are valid for such an atom with atomic number Z:

$$\psi_s^{+}(r) = +Af(r)e^{-Zr/na_0} \qquad \psi_s^{-}(r) = -Af(r)e^{-Zr/na_0}$$

where A is the normalization constant and $f(r)$ is a function[3] of r that varies with the value of n. Choosing either of these wave functions leads to the same value of $|\psi|^2$, so both choices are equivalent. A difference arises, however, when two atoms are combined.

If two identical atoms are very far apart, they do not interact and their electronic energy levels can be considered to be those of isolated atoms. Suppose the two atoms are sodium, each having a lone $3s$ electron that is in a well-defined quantum state. As the two sodium atoms are brought closer together, their wave functions begin to overlap as we discussed for covalent bonding in Section 43.1. The properties of the combined system differ depending on whether the two atoms are combined with wave functions $\psi_s^{+}(r)$ as in Figure 43.19a or whether they are combined with one having wave function $\psi_s^{+}(r)$ and the other $\psi_s^{-}(r)$ as in Figure 43.19b. The choice of two atoms with wave function $\psi_s^{-}(r)$ is physically equivalent to that with two positive wave functions, so we do not consider it separately. When two wave functions $\psi_s^{+}(r)$ are combined, the result is a composite wave function in which the probability amplitudes add between the atoms. If $\psi_s^{+}(r)$ combines with $\psi_s^{-}(r)$,

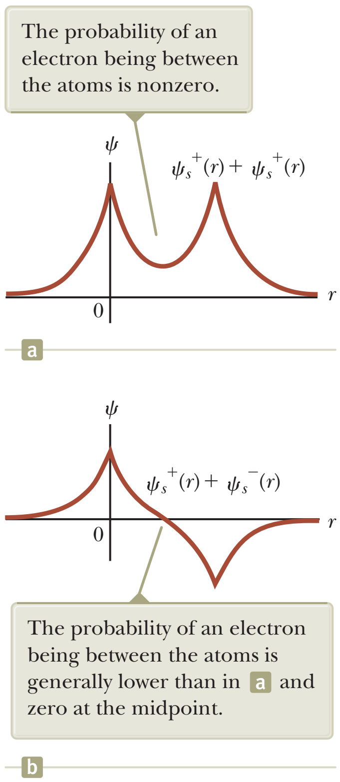


Figure 43.19 The wave functions of two atoms combine to form a composite wave function for the two-atom system when the atoms are close together. (a) Two atoms with wave functions $\psi_s^{+}(r)$ combine. (b) Two atoms with wave functions $\psi_s^{+}(r)$ and $\psi_s^{-}(r)$ combine.

[3]The functions $f(r)$ are called *Laguerre polynomials*. They can be found in the quantum treatment of the hydrogen atom in modern physics textbooks.

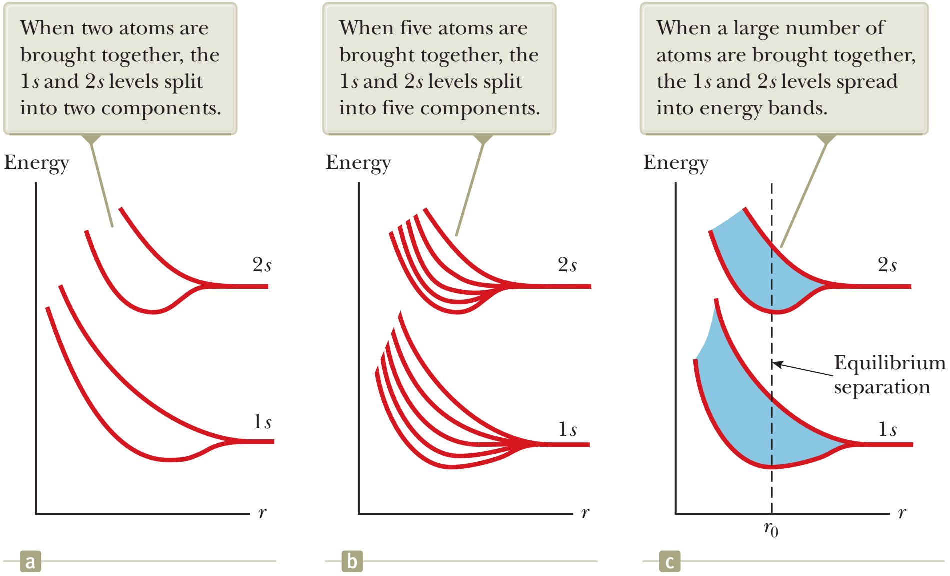


Figure 43.20 Energies of the 1s and 2s levels in sodium as a function of the separation distance r between atoms.

however, the wave functions between the nuclei subtract. Therefore, the composite probability amplitudes for the two possibilities are different. These two possible combinations of wave functions represent two possible states of the two-atom system. We interpret these curves as representing the probability amplitude of finding an electron. The positive–positive curve shows some probability of finding the electron at the midpoint between the atoms. The positive–negative function shows no such probability. A state with a high probability of an electron *between* two positive nuclei must have a different energy than a state with a high probability of the electron being elsewhere! Therefore, the states are *split* into two energy levels due to the two ways of combining the wave functions. The energy difference is relatively small, so the two states are close together on an energy scale.

Figure 43.20a shows this splitting effect as a function of separation distance. For large separations r, the electron clouds do not overlap and there is no splitting. As the atoms are brought closer so that r decreases, the electron clouds overlap and we need to consider the system of two atoms.

When a large number of atoms are brought together to form a solid, a similar phenomenon occurs. The individual wave functions can be brought together in various combinations of $\psi_s^+(r)$ and $\psi_s^-(r)$, each possible combination corresponding to a different energy. As the atoms are brought close together, the various isolated-atom energy levels split into multiple energy levels for the composite system. This splitting in levels for five atoms in close proximity is shown in Figure 43.20b. In this case, there are five energy levels corresponding to five different combinations of isolated-atom wave functions.

As the number of atoms grows, the number of combinations of wave functions grows, as does the number of possible energies. If we extend this argument to the large number of atoms found in solids (on the order of 10^{23} atoms per cubic centimeter), we obtain a huge number of levels of varying energy so closely spaced that they may be regarded as a continuous **band** of energy levels as shown in Figure 43.20c. In the case of sodium, it is customary to refer to the continuous distributions of allowed energy levels as *s* bands because the bands originate from the *s* levels of the individual sodium atoms.

Each energy level in the atom can spread into a band when the atoms are combined into a solid. Figure 43.21 shows the allowed energy bands of sodium at a fixed separation distance between the atoms. Notice that energy gaps, corresponding to *forbidden energies,* occur between the allowed bands. In addition, some bands exhibit sufficient spreading in energy that there is an overlap between bands arising from different quantum states (3s and 3p).

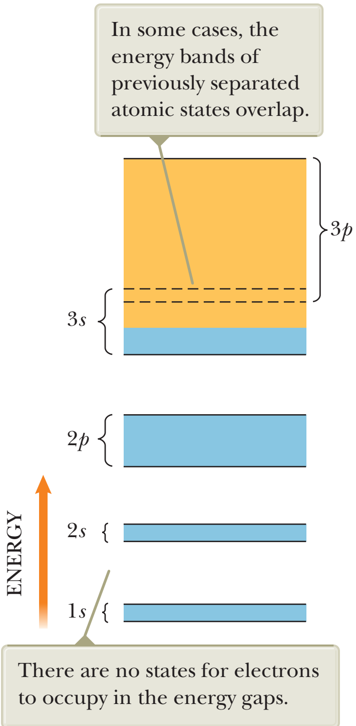


Figure 43.21 Energy bands of a sodium crystal. Blue represents energy bands occupied by the sodium electrons when the atom is in its ground state. Gold represents energy bands that are empty.

As indicated by the blue-shaded areas in Figure 43.21, the 1s, 2s, and 2p bands of sodium are each full of electrons because the 1s, 2s, and 2p states of each atom are full. An energy level in which the orbital angular momentum is ℓ can hold $2(2\ell + 1)$ electrons. The factor 2 arises from the two possible electron spin orientations, and the factor $2\ell + 1$ corresponds to the number of possible orientations of the orbital angular momentum. The capacity of each band for a system of N atoms is $2(2\ell + 1)N$ electrons. Therefore, the 1s and 2s bands each contain $2N$ electrons ($\ell = 0$), and the 2p band contains $6N$ electrons ($\ell = 1$). Because sodium has only one 3s electron and there are a total of N atoms in the solid, the 3s band contains only N electrons and is partially full as indicated by the blue coloring in Figure 43.21. The 3p band, which is the higher region of the overlapping bands, is completely empty (all gold in the figure).

Band theory allows us to build simple models to understand the behavior of conductors, insulators, and semiconductors as well as that of semiconductor devices, as we shall discuss in the following sections.

43.6 Electrical Conduction in Metals, Insulators, and Semiconductors

Good electrical conductors contain a high density of free charge carriers, and the density of free charge carriers in insulators is nearly zero. Semiconductors, first introduced in Section 23.2, are a class of technologically important materials in which charge-carrier densities are intermediate between those of insulators and those of conductors. In this section, we discuss the mechanisms of conduction in these three classes of materials in terms of a model based on energy bands.

Metals

If a material is to be a good electrical conductor, the charge carriers in the material must be free to move in response to an applied electric field. Let's consider the electrons in a metal as the charge carriers. The motion of the electrons in response to an electric field represents an increase in energy of the system (the metal lattice and the free electrons) corresponding to the additional kinetic energy of the moving electrons. The system is described by the nonisolated system model for energy. Equation 8.2 becomes $W = \Delta K$, where the work is done on the electrons by the electric field. Therefore, when an electric field is applied to a conductor, electrons must move upward to an available higher energy state on an energy-level diagram to represent the additional kinetic energy.

Figure 43.22 shows a half-filled band in a metal at $T = 0$ K, where the blue region represents levels filled with electrons. Because electrons obey Fermi–Dirac statistics, all levels below the Fermi energy are filled with electrons and all levels above the Fermi energy are empty. The Fermi energy lies in the band at the highest filled state. At temperatures slightly greater than 0 K, some electrons are thermally excited to levels above E_F, but overall there is little change from the 0 K case. If a potential difference is applied to the metal, however, electrons having energies near the Fermi energy require only a small amount of additional energy from the applied electric field to reach nearby empty energy states above the Fermi energy. Therefore, electrons in a metal experiencing only a weak applied electric field are free to move because many empty levels are available close to the occupied energy levels. The model of metals based on band theory demonstrates that metals are excellent electrical conductors.

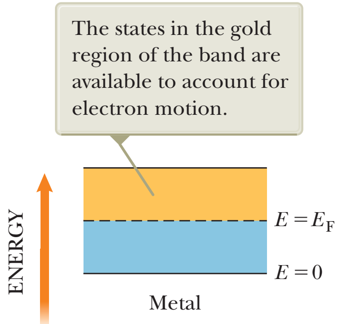


Figure 43.22 Half-filled band of a metal, an electrical conductor. At $T = 0$ K, the Fermi energy lies in the middle of the band.

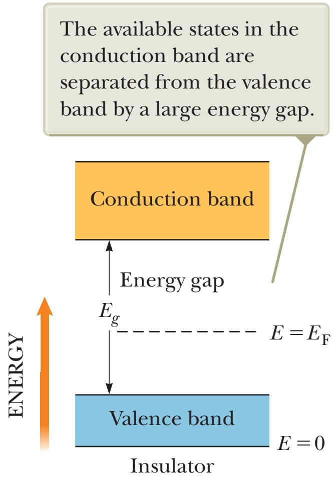


Figure 43.23 An electrical insulator at $T = 0$ K has a filled valence band and an empty conduction band. The Fermi level lies somewhere between these bands in the region known as the energy gap.

Insulators

Now consider the two outermost energy bands of a material in which the lower band is filled with electrons and the higher band is empty at 0 K (Fig. 43.23). The lower, filled band is called the **valence band,** and the upper, empty band is the **conduction band.** (The conduction band is the one that is partially filled in a metal.) It is common to refer to the energy separation between the valence and conduction bands as the **energy gap** E_g of the material. The Fermi energy lies somewhere in the energy gap[4] as shown in Figure 43.23.

Suppose a material has a relatively large energy gap of, for example, approximately 5 eV. At 300 K (room temperature), $k_BT = 0.025$ eV, which is much smaller than the energy gap. At such temperatures, the Fermi–Dirac distribution predicts that very few electrons are thermally excited into the conduction band. There are no available states that lie close in energy above the valence band and into which electrons can move upward to account for the extra kinetic energy associated with motion through the material in response to an electric field. Consequently, the electrons do not move; the material is an insulator. Although an insulator has many vacant states in its conduction band that can accept electrons, these states are separated from the filled states by a large energy gap. Only a few electrons occupy these states, so the overall electrical conductivity of insulators is very small.

Table 43.3 Energy-Gap Values for Some Semiconductors

Crystal	E_g (eV) 0 K	E_g (eV) 300 K
Si	1.17	1.14
Ge	0.74	0.67
InP	1.42	1.34
GaP	2.32	2.26
GaAs	1.52	1.42
CdS	2.58	2.42
CdTe	1.61	1.56
ZnO	3.44	3.2
ZnS	3.91	3.6

Semiconductors

Semiconductors have the same type of band structure as an insulator, but the energy gap is much smaller, on the order of 1 eV. Table 43.3 shows the energy gaps for some representative materials. The band structure of a semiconductor is shown in Figure 43.24. Because the Fermi level is located near the middle of the gap for a semiconductor and E_g is small, appreciable numbers of electrons are thermally excited from the valence band to the conduction band. Because of the many empty levels above the thermally filled levels in the conduction band, a small applied potential difference can easily raise the electrons in the conduction band into available energy states, resulting in a moderate current.

At $T = 0$ K, all electrons in these materials are in the valence band and no energy is available to excite them across the energy gap. Therefore, semiconductors are poor conductors at very low temperatures. Because the thermal excitation of electrons across the narrow gap is more probable at higher temperatures, the conductivity of semiconductors increases rapidly with temperature, contrasting sharply with the conductivity of metals, which decreases slowly with increasing temperature.

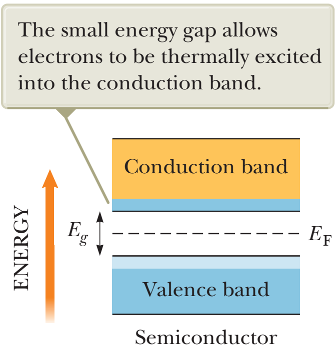


Figure 43.24 Band structure of a semiconductor at ordinary temperatures ($T \approx 300$ K). The energy gap is much smaller than in an insulator.

Charge carriers in a semiconductor can be negative, positive, or both. When an electron moves from the valence band into the conduction band, it leaves behind a vacant site, called a **hole,** in the otherwise filled valence band. This hole (electron-deficient site) acts as a charge carrier in the sense that a free electron from a nearby site can transfer into the hole. Whenever an electron does so, it creates a new hole at the site it abandoned. Therefore, the net effect can be viewed as the hole migrating through the material in the direction opposite the direction of electron movement. The hole behaves as if it were a particle with a positive charge $+e$.

A pure semiconductor crystal containing only one element or one compound is called an **intrinsic semiconductor.** In these semiconductors, there are equal numbers of conduction electrons and holes. Such combinations of charges are called **electron–hole pairs.** In the presence of an external electric field, the holes move in the direction of the field and the conduction electrons move in the direction opposite the field (Fig. 43.25). Because the electrons and holes have opposite signs, both motions correspond to a current in the same direction.

[4]We defined the Fermi energy as the energy of the highest filled state at $T = 0$, which might suggest that the Fermi energy should be at the top of the valence band in Figure 43.23. A more sophisticated general treatment of the Fermi energy, however, shows that it is located at that energy at which the probability of occupation is one-half (see Fig. 43.16b). According to this definition, the Fermi energy lies in the energy gap between the bands.

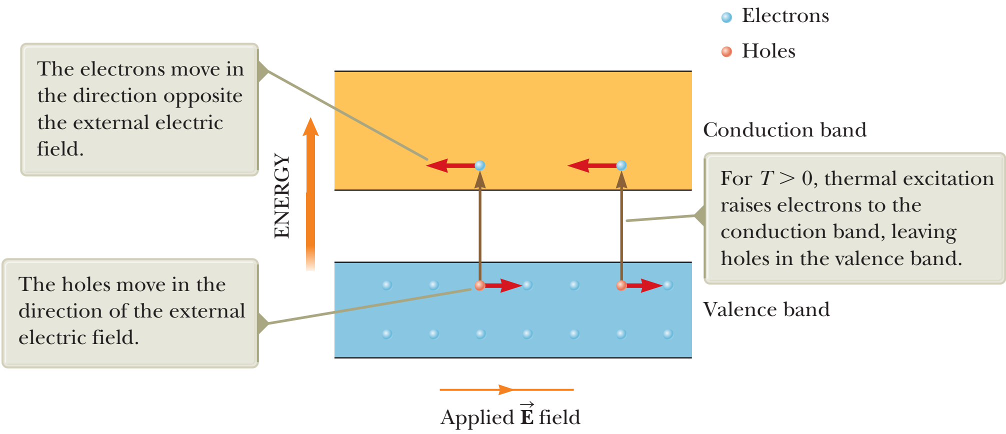


Figure 43.25 Movement of charges (holes and electrons) in an intrinsic semiconductor.

Quick Quiz 43.4 Consider the data on three materials given in the table.

Material	Conduction Band	E_g
A	Empty	1.2 eV
B	Half full	1.2 eV
C	Empty	8.0 eV

Identify each material as a conductor, an insulator, or a semiconductor.

Doped Semiconductors

When impurities are added to a semiconductor, both the band structure of the semiconductor and its resistivity are modified. The process of adding impurities, called **doping,** is important in controlling the conductivity of semiconductors. For example, when an atom containing five outer-shell electrons, such as arsenic, is added to a Group IV semiconductor, four of the electrons form covalent bonds with atoms of the semiconductor and one is left over (Fig. 43.26a). This extra electron is nearly free of its parent atom and can be modeled as having an energy level that lies in the energy gap, immediately below the conduction band (Fig. 43.26b). Such a pentavalent atom in effect donates an electron to the structure and hence is referred to as a **donor atom.** Because the spacing between the energy level of the electron of the donor atom and the bottom of the conduction band is very

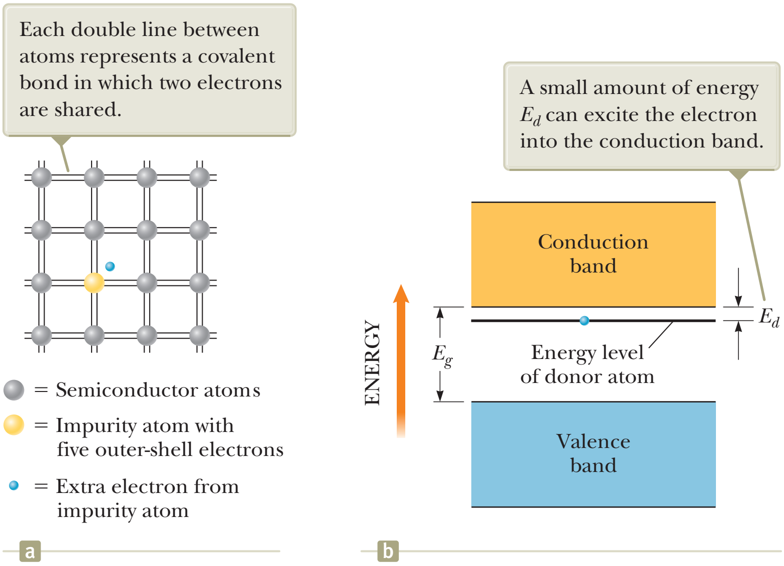


Figure 43.26 (a) Two-dimensional representation of a semiconductor consisting of Group IV atoms (gray) and an impurity atom (yellow) that has five outer-shell electrons. (b) Energy-band diagram for a semiconductor in which the nearly free electron of the impurity atom lies in the energy gap, immediately below the bottom of the conduction band.

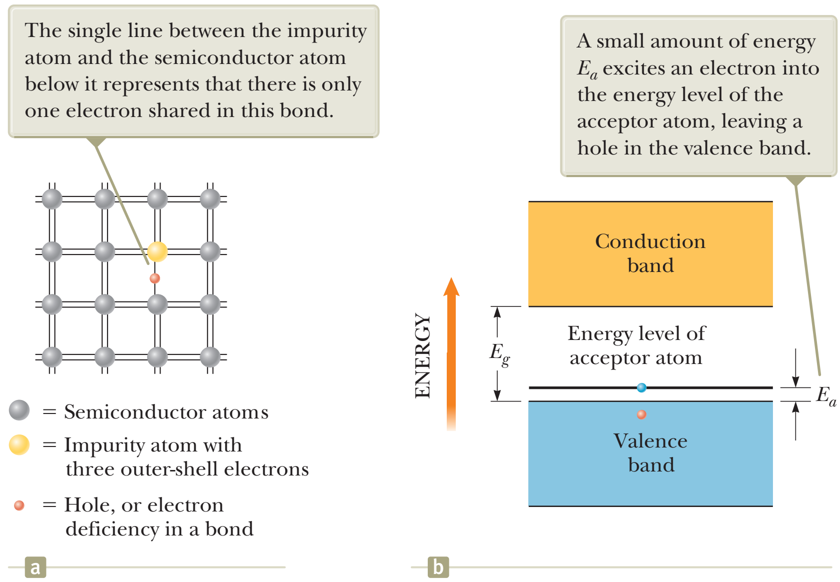


Figure 43.27 (a) Two-dimensional representation of a semiconductor consisting of Group IV atoms (gray) and an impurity atom (yellow) having three outer-shell electrons. (b) Energy-band diagram for a semiconductor in which the energy level associated with the trivalent impurity atom lies in the energy gap, immediately above the top of the valence band.

small (typically, approximately 0.05 eV), only a small amount of thermal excitation is needed to cause this electron to move into the conduction band. (Recall that the average energy of an electron at room temperature is approximately $k_BT \approx$ 0.025 eV.) Semiconductors doped with donor atoms are called ***n*-type semiconductors** because the majority of charge carriers are electrons, which are ***n***egatively charged.

If a Group IV semiconductor is doped with atoms containing three outer-shell electrons, such as indium and aluminum, the three electrons form covalent bonds with neighboring semiconductor atoms, leaving an electron deficiency—a hole—where the fourth bond would be if an impurity-atom electron were available to form it (Fig. 43.27a). This situation can be modeled by placing an energy level in the energy gap, immediately above the valence band, as in Figure 43.27b. An electron from the valence band has enough energy at room temperature to fill this impurity level, leaving behind a hole in the valence band. This hole can carry current in the presence of an electric field. Because a trivalent atom accepts an electron from the valence band, such impurities are referred to as **acceptor atoms.** A semiconductor doped with trivalent (acceptor) impurities is known as a ***p*-type semiconductor** because the majority of charge carriers are ***p***ositively charged holes.

When conduction in a semiconductor is the result of acceptor or donor impurities, the material is called an **extrinsic semiconductor.** The typical range of doping densities for extrinsic semiconductors is 10^{13} to 10^{19} cm^{-3}, whereas the electron density in a typical semiconductor is roughly 10^{21} cm^{-3}.

43.7 Semiconductor Devices

The electronics of the first half of the 20th century was based on vacuum tubes, in which electrons pass through empty space between a cathode and an anode. We have seen vacuum tube devices in Figure 29.6 (the television picture tube), Figure 29.10 (circular electron beam), Figure 29.15a (Thomson's apparatus for measuring e/m_e for the electron), and Figure 40.9 (photoelectric effect apparatus).

The transistor was invented in 1948, leading to a shift away from vacuum tubes and toward semiconductors as the basis of electronic devices. This phase of electronics has been under way for several decades. As discussed in Chapter 41, there may be a new phase of electronics in the near future using nanotechnological devices employing quantum dots and other nanoscale structures.

In this section, we discuss electronic devices based on semiconductors, which are still in wide use and will be for many years to come.

The Junction Diode

A fundamental unit of a semiconductor device is formed when a *p*-type semiconductor is joined to an *n*-type semiconductor to form a ***p–n* junction.** A **junction diode** is a device that is based on a single *p–n* junction. The role of a diode of any type is to pass current in one direction but not the other. Therefore, it acts as a one-way valve for current.

The *p–n* junction shown in Figure 43.28a consists of three distinct regions: a *p* region, an *n* region, and a small area that extends several micrometers to either side of the interface, called a *depletion region*.

The depletion region may be visualized as arising when the two halves of the junction are brought together. The mobile *n*-side donor electrons nearest the junction (deep-blue area in Fig. 43.28a) diffuse to the *p* side and fill holes located there, leaving behind immobile positive ions. While this process occurs, we can model the holes that are being filled as diffusing to the *n* side, leaving behind a region (brown area in Fig. 43.28a) of fixed negative ions.

Because the two sides of the depletion region each carry a net charge, an internal electric field on the order of 10^4 to 10^6 V/cm exists in the depletion region (see Fig. 43.28b). This field produces an electric force on any remaining mobile charge carriers that sweeps them out of the depletion region, so named because it is a region depleted of mobile charge carriers. This internal electric field creates an internal potential difference ΔV_0 that prevents further diffusion of holes and electrons across the junction and thereby ensures zero current in the junction when no potential difference is applied.

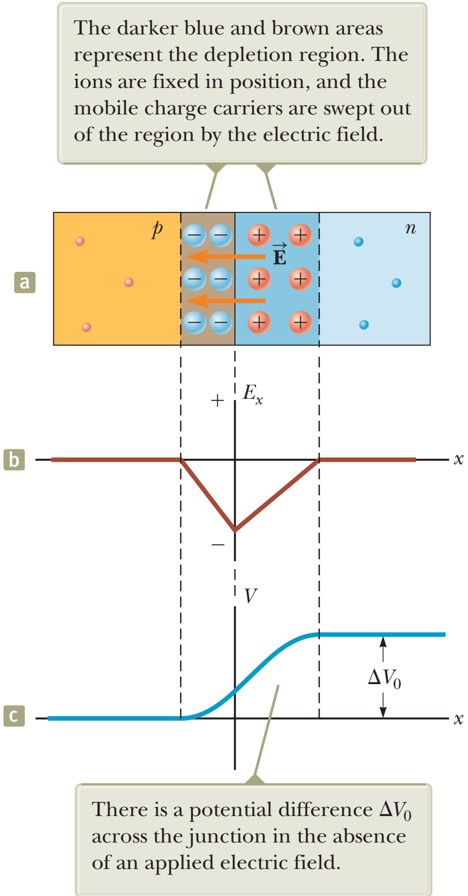


Figure 43.28 (a) Physical arrangement of a *p–n* junction. (b) Component E_x of the internal electric field versus x for the *p–n* junction. (c) Internal electric potential difference ΔV versus x for the *p–n* junction.

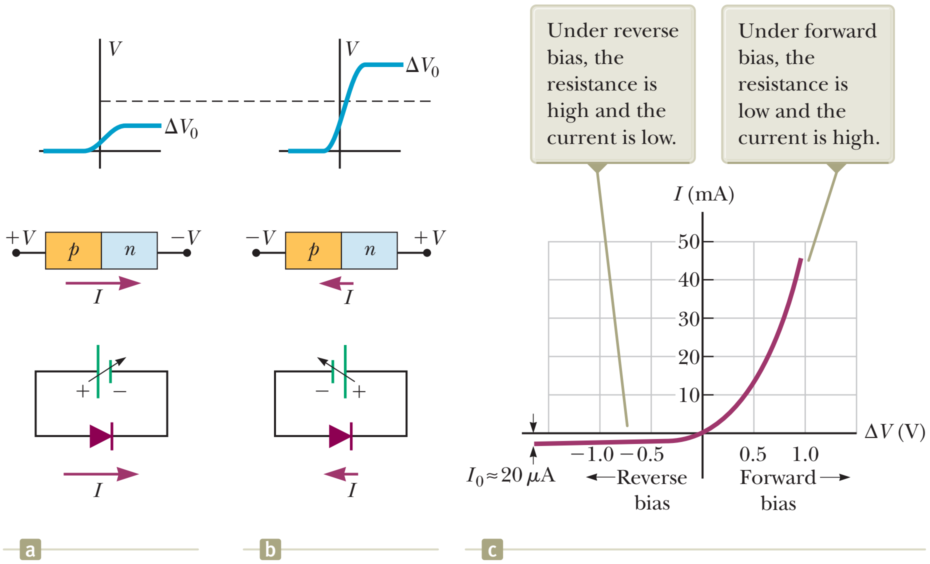


Figure 43.29 (a) A p–n junction under forward bias. The middle diagram shows the potentials applied at the ends of the junction. Below that is a circuit diagram showing a battery with an adjustable voltage. The upper diagram shows how the potential varies across the junction. The dashed line shows the potential difference across the unbiased junction. (b) When the battery is reversed and the p–n junction is under reverse bias, the current is very small. (c) The characteristic curve for a real p–n junction.

The operation of the junction as a diode is easiest to understand in terms of the potential difference graph shown in Figure 43.28c. If a voltage ΔV is applied to the junction such that the p side is connected to the positive terminal of a voltage source as shown in Figure 43.29a, the internal potential difference ΔV_0 across the junction decreases as shown at the top of the figure; the decrease results in a current that increases exponentially with increasing forward voltage, or *forward bias*. For *reverse bias* (where the n side of the junction is connected to the positive terminal of a voltage source), the internal potential difference ΔV_0 increases with increasing reverse bias as in Figure 43.29b; the increase results in a very small reverse current that quickly reaches a saturation value I_0. The current–voltage relationship for an ideal diode is

$$I = I_0\left(e^{e\,\Delta V/k_BT} - 1\right) \qquad \textbf{(43.27)}$$

where the first e is the base of the natural logarithm, the second e represents the magnitude of the electron charge, k_B is Boltzmann's constant, and T is the absolute temperature. Figure 43.29c shows an I–ΔV plot characteristic of a real p–n junction, demonstrating the diode behavior.

Light-Emitting and Light-Absorbing Diodes

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs) and semiconductor lasers are common examples of devices that depend on the behavior of semiconductors. LEDs are used in LCD television displays, household lighting, flashlights, and camera flash units. Semiconductor lasers are often used for pointers in presentations and in playback equipment for digitally recorded information.

Light emission and absorption in semiconductors is similar to light emission and absorption by gaseous atoms except that in the discussion of semiconductors we must incorporate the concept of energy bands rather than the discrete energy levels in single atoms. As shown in Figure 43.30a, an electron excited electrically into the conduction band can easily recombine with a hole (especially if the electron is injected into a p region). As this recombination takes place, a photon of energy E_g is emitted. With proper design of the semiconductor and the associated plastic envelope or mirrors, the light from a large number of these transitions serves as the source of an LED or a semiconductor laser.

Conversely, an electron in the valence band may absorb an incoming photon of light and be promoted to the conduction band, leaving a hole behind (Fig. 43.30b). This absorbed energy can be used to operate an electrical circuit.

One device that operates on this principle is the **photovoltaic solar cell,** which appears in many handheld calculators. An early large-scale application of arrays of

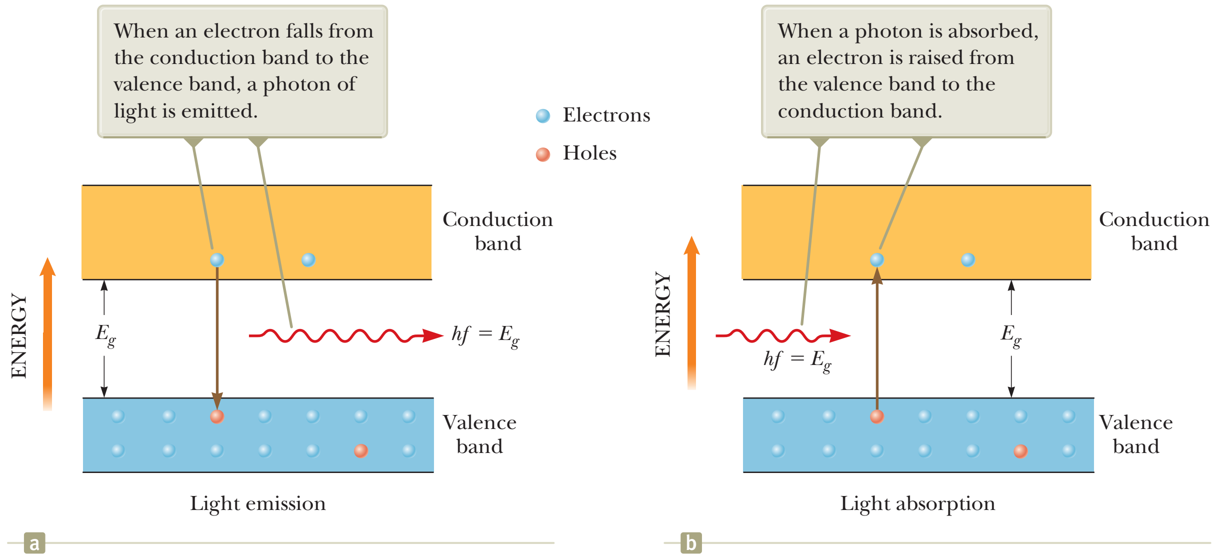


Figure 43.30 (a) Light emission from a semiconductor. (b) Light absorption by a semiconductor.

photovoltaic cells is the energy supply for orbiting spacecraft. The solar panels of the Hubble Space Telescope can be seen in the chapter-opening photograph for Chapter 38 on page 1160.

During the early years of the current century, application of photovoltaics for ground-based generation of electricity has been one of the world's fastest-growing energy technologies. At the time of this printing, the global generation of energy by means of photovoltaics is over 70 GW. A homeowner can install arrays of photovoltaic panels on the roof of his or her house and generate enough energy to operate the home as well as feed excess energy back into the electrical grid. Several photovoltaic power plants have recently been completed, including the Agua Caliente Solar Project in Arizona (200 MW completed in 2012, and 397 MW projected at completion), the Golmud Solar Park in China (200 MW), and the Charanka Solar Park in India (214 MW completed in 2012, and 500 MW projected at completion), the latter of which will be one location in the Gujarat Solar Park, a collection of several sites that is hoped to eventually supply close to 1 GW of power.

Example 43.6 Where's the Remote?

Estimate the band gap of the semiconductor in the infrared LED of a typical television remote control.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine electrons in Figure 43.30a falling from the conduction band to the valence band, emitting infrared photons in the process.

Categorize We use concepts discussed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

In Chapter 34, we learned that the wavelength of infrared light ranges from 700 nm to 1 mm. Let's pick a number that is easy to work with, such as 1 000 nm (which is not a bad estimate because remote controls typically operate in the range of 880 to 950 nm.)

Estimate the energy hf of the photons from the remote control:

$$E = hf = \frac{hc}{\lambda} = \frac{1\,240 \text{ eV}\cdot\text{nm}}{1\,000 \text{ nm}} = \boxed{1.2 \text{ eV}}$$

This value corresponds to an energy gap E_g of approximately 1.2 eV in the LED's semiconductor.

The Transistor

The invention of the transistor by John Bardeen (1908–1991), Walter Brattain (1902–1987), and William Shockley (1910–1989) in 1948 totally revolutionized the world of electronics. For this work, these three men shared the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1956. By 1960, the transistor had replaced the vacuum tube in many electronic applications. The advent of the transistor created a multitrillion-dollar industry that produces such popular devices as personal computers, wireless keyboards, smartphones, electronic book readers, and computer tablets.

A **junction transistor** consists of a semiconducting material in which a very narrow *n* region is sandwiched between two *p* regions or a *p* region is sandwiched between two *n* regions. In either case, the transistor is formed from two *p*–*n* junctions. These types of transistors were used widely in the early days of semiconductor electronics.

During the 1960s, the electronics industry converted many electronic applications from the junction transistor to the **field-effect transistor,** which is much easier to manufacture and just as effective. Figure 43.31a shows the structure of a very common device, the **MOSFET,** or **metal-oxide-semiconductor field-effect transistor.** You are likely using millions of MOSFET devices when you are working on your computer.

There are three metal connections (the M in MOSFET) to the transistor: the *source, drain,* and *gate*. The source and drain are connected to *n*-type semiconductor regions (the S in MOSFET) at either end of the structure. These regions are connected by a narrow channel of additional *n*-type material, the *n* channel. The source and drain regions and the *n* channel are embedded in a *p*-type substrate material, which forms a depletion region, as in the junction diode, along the bottom of the *n* channel. (Depletion regions also exist at the junctions underneath the source and drain regions, but we will ignore them because the operation of the device depends primarily on the behavior in the channel.)

The gate is separated from the *n* channel by a layer of insulating silicon dioxide (the O in MOSFET, for oxide). Therefore, it does not make electrical contact with the rest of the semiconducting material.

Imagine that a voltage source ΔV_{SD} is applied across the source and drain as shown in Figure 43.31b. In this situation, electrons flow through the upper region of the *n* channel. Electrons cannot flow through the depletion region in the lower part of the *n* channel because this region is depleted of charge carriers. Now a second voltage ΔV_{SG} is applied across the source and gate as in Figure 43.31c. The positive potential on the gate electrode results in an electric field below the gate that is directed downward in the *n* channel (the field in "field-effect"). This electric field exerts upward forces on electrons in the region below the gate, causing them to move into the *n* channel. Consequently, the depletion region becomes smaller,

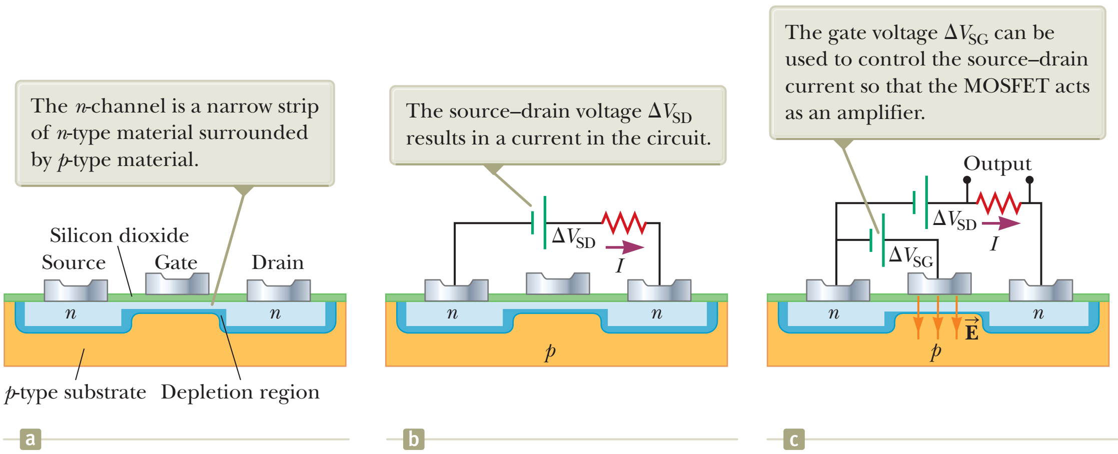


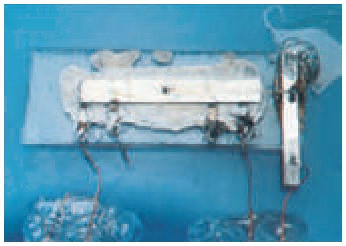
Figure 43.31 (a) The structure of a metal-oxide-semiconductor field-effect transistor (MOSFET). (b) A source–drain voltage is applied. (c) A gate voltage is applied.

widening the area through which there is current between the top of the n channel and the depletion region. As the area becomes wider, the current increases.

If a varying voltage, such as that generated from music stored in the memory of a smartphone, is applied to the gate, the area through which the source–drain current exists varies in size according to the varying gate voltage. A small variation in gate voltage results in a large variation in current and a correspondingly large voltage across the resistor in Figure 43.31c. Therefore, the MOSFET acts as a voltage amplifier. A circuit consisting of a chain of such transistors can result in a very small initial signal from a microphone being amplified enough to drive powerful speakers at an outdoor concert.

The Integrated Circuit

Invented independently by Jack Kilby (1923–2005, Nobel Prize in Physics, 2000) at Texas Instruments in late 1958 and by Robert Noyce (1927–1990) at Fairchild Camera and Instrument in early 1959, the integrated circuit has been justly called "the most remarkable technology ever to hit mankind." Kilby's first device is shown in Figure 43.32. Integrated circuits have indeed started a "second industrial revolution" and are found at the heart of computers, watches, cameras, automobiles, aircraft, robots, space vehicles, and all sorts of communication and switching networks.



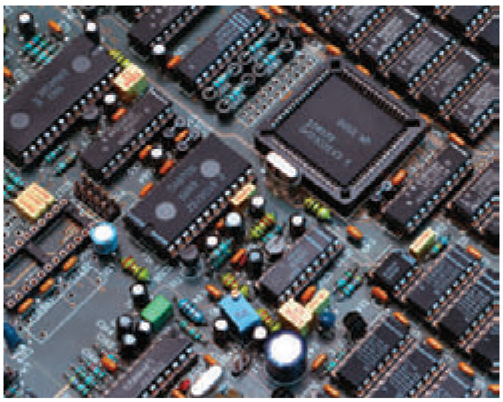
Courtesy of Texas Instruments, Inc.

Figure 43.32 Jack Kilby's first integrated circuit, tested on September 12, 1958.

In simplest terms, an **integrated circuit** is a collection of interconnected transistors, diodes, resistors, and capacitors fabricated on a single piece of silicon known as a *chip*. Contemporary electronic devices often contain many integrated circuits (Fig. 43.33). State-of-the-art chips easily contain several million components within a 1-cm^2 area, and the number of components per square inch has increased steadily since the integrated circuit was invented. The dramatic advances in chip technology can be seen by looking at microchips manufactured by Intel. The 4004 chip, introduced in 1971, contained 2 300 transistors. This number increased to 3.2 million 24 years later in 1995 with the Pentium processor. Sixteen years later, the Core i7 Sandy Bridge processor introduced in November 2011 contained 2 270 million transistors.

Integrated circuits were invented partly to solve the interconnection problem spawned by the transistor. In the era of vacuum tubes, power and size considerations of individual components set modest limits on the number of components that could be interconnected in a given circuit. With the advent of the tiny, low-power, highly reliable transistor, design limits on the number of components disappeared and were replaced by the problem of wiring together hundreds of thousands of components. The magnitude of this problem can be appreciated when we consider that second-generation computers (consisting of discrete transistors rather than integrated circuits) contained several hundred thousand components requiring more than a million joints that had to be hand-soldered and tested.

In addition to solving the interconnection problem, integrated circuits possess the advantages of miniaturization and fast response, two attributes critical for high-speed computers. Because the response time of a circuit depends on the time



Steve Allen/Brand X/Getty Images

Figure 43.33 Integrated circuits are prevalent in many electronic devices. All the flat circuit elements with black-topped surfaces in this photograph are integrated circuits.

interval required for electrical signals traveling at the speed of light to pass from one component to another, miniaturization and close packing of components result in fast response times.

43.8 Superconductivity

We learned in Section 27.5 that there is a class of metals and compounds known as **superconductors** whose electrical resistance decreases to virtually zero below a certain temperature T_c called the *critical temperature* (Table 27.3). Let's now look at these amazing materials in greater detail, using what we know about the properties of solids to help us understand the behavior of superconductors.

Let's start by examining the Meissner effect, introduced in Section 30.6 as the exclusion of magnetic flux from the interior of superconductors. The Meissner effect is illustrated in Figure 43.34 for a superconducting material in the shape of a long cylinder. Notice that the magnetic field penetrates the cylinder when its temperature is greater than T_c (Fig. 43.34a). As the temperature is lowered to below T_c, however, the field lines are spontaneously expelled from the interior of the superconductor (Fig. 43.34b). Therefore, a superconductor is more than a perfect conductor (resistivity $\rho = 0$); it is also a perfect diamagnet ($\vec{\mathbf{B}} = 0$). The property that $\vec{\mathbf{B}} = 0$ in the interior of a superconductor is as fundamental as the property of zero resistance. If the magnitude of the applied magnetic field exceeds a critical value B_c, defined as the value of B that destroys a material's superconducting properties, the field again penetrates the sample.

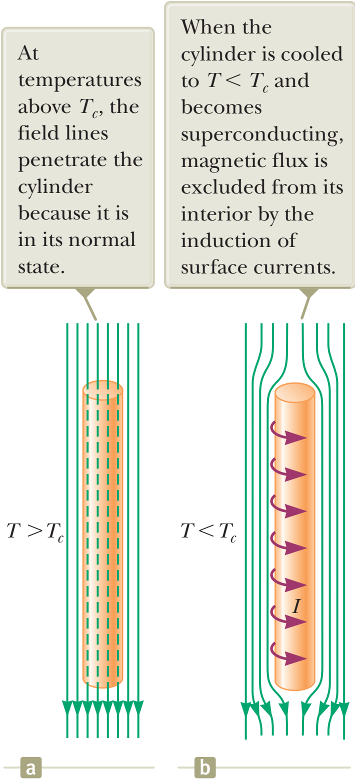


Figure 43.34 A superconductor in the form of a long cylinder in the presence of an external magnetic field.

Because a superconductor is a perfect diamagnet, it repels a permanent magnet. In fact, one can perform a demonstration of the Meissner effect by floating a small permanent magnet above a superconductor and achieving magnetic levitation as seen in Figure 30.27 in Section 30.6.

Recall from our study of electricity that a good conductor expels static electric fields by moving charges to its surface. In effect, the surface charges produce an electric field that exactly cancels the externally applied field inside the conductor. In a similar manner, a superconductor expels magnetic fields by forming surface currents. To see why that happens, consider again the superconductor shown in Figure 43.34. Let's assume the sample is initially at a temperature $T > T_c$ as illustrated in Figure 43.34a so that the magnetic field penetrates the cylinder. As the cylinder is cooled to a temperature $T < T_c$, the field is expelled as shown in Figure 43.34b. Surface currents induced on the superconductor's surface produce a magnetic field that exactly cancels the externally applied field inside the superconductor. As you would expect, the surface currents disappear when the external magnetic field is removed.

A successful theory for superconductivity in metals was published in 1957 by John Bardeen, L. N. Cooper (b. 1930), and J. R. Schrieffer (b. 1931); it is generally called BCS theory, based on the first letters of their last names. This theory led to a Nobel Prize in Physics for the three scientists in 1972. In this theory, two electrons can interact via distortions in the array of lattice ions so that there is a net attractive force between the electrons.[5] As a result, the two electrons are bound into an entity called a *Cooper pair,* which behaves like a particle with integral spin. Particles with integral spin are called *bosons.* (As noted in Pitfall Prevention 42.6, *fermions* make up another class of particles, those with half-integral spin.) An important feature of bosons is that they do not obey the Pauli exclusion principle. Consequently, at very low temperatures, it is possible for all bosons in a collection of such particles to be in the lowest quantum state. The entire collection of Cooper pairs in the metal is described by a single wave function. Above the energy level associated with this wave function is an energy gap equal to the binding energy of a Cooper pair. Under

[5]A highly simplified explanation of this attraction between electrons is as follows. The attractive Coulomb force between one electron and the surrounding positively charged lattice ions causes the ions to move inward slightly toward the electron. As a result, there is a higher concentration of positive charge in this region than elsewhere in the lattice. A second electron is attracted to the higher concentration of positive charge.

the action of an applied electric field, the Cooper pairs experience an electric force and move through the metal. A random scattering event of a Cooper pair from a lattice ion would represent resistance to the electric current. Such a collision would change the energy of the Cooper pair because some energy would be transferred to the lattice ion. There are no available energy levels below that of the Cooper pair (it is already in the lowest state), however, and none available above because of the energy gap. As a result, collisions do not occur and there is no resistance to the movement of Cooper pairs.

An important development in physics that elicited much excitement in the scientific community was the discovery of high-temperature copper oxide-based superconductors. The excitement began with a 1986 publication by J. Georg Bednorz (b. 1950) and K. Alex Müller (b. 1927), scientists at the IBM Zurich Research Laboratory in Switzerland. In their seminal paper,[6] Bednorz and Müller reported strong evidence for superconductivity at 30 K in an oxide of barium, lanthanum, and copper. They were awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1987 for their remarkable discovery. Shortly thereafter, a new family of compounds was open for investigation and research activity in the field of superconductivity proceeded vigorously. In early 1987, groups at the University of Alabama at Huntsville and the University of Houston announced superconductivity at approximately 92 K in an oxide of yttrium, barium, and copper ($YBa_2Cu_3O_7$). Later that year, teams of scientists from Japan and the United States reported superconductivity at 105 K in an oxide of bismuth, strontium, calcium, and copper. Superconductivity at temperatures as high as 150 K have been reported in an oxide containing mercury. In 2006, Japanese scientists discovered superconductivity for the first time in iron-based materials, beginning with LaFePO, with a critical temperature of 4 K. The highest critical temperature that has been reported so far in the iron-based materials is 55 K, a milestone held by fluorine-doped SmFeAsO. These newly discovered materials have rejuvenated the field of high-T_c superconductivity. Today, one cannot rule out the possibility of room-temperature superconductivity, and the mechanisms responsible for the behavior of high-temperature superconductors are still under investigation. The search for novel superconducting materials continues both for scientific reasons and because practical applications become more probable and widespread as the critical temperature is raised.

Although BCS theory was very successful in explaining superconductivity in metals, there is currently no widely accepted theory for high-temperature superconductivity. It remains an area of active research.

Summary

Concepts and Principles

Two or more atoms combine to form molecules because of a net attractive force between the atoms. The mechanisms responsible for molecular bonding can be classified as follows:

- **Ionic bonds** form primarily because of the Coulomb attraction between oppositely charged ions. Sodium chloride (NaCl) is one example.
- **Covalent bonds** form when the constituent atoms of a molecule share electrons. For example, the two electrons of the H_2 molecule are equally shared between the two nuclei.
- **Van der Waals bonds** are weak electrostatic bonds between molecules or between atoms that do not form ionic or covalent bonds. These bonds are responsible for the condensation of noble gas atoms and nonpolar molecules into the liquid phase.
- **Hydrogen bonds** form between the center of positive charge in a polar molecule that includes one or more hydrogen atoms and the center of negative charge in another polar molecule.

continued

[6]J. G. Bednorz and K. A. Müller, *Z. Phys. B* **64:**189, 1986.

The allowed values of the rotational energy of a diatomic molecule are

$$E_{\text{rot}} = E_J = \frac{\hbar^2}{2I} J(J+1) \quad J = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \quad \textbf{(43.6)}$$

where I is the moment of inertia of the molecule and J is an integer called the **rotational quantum number.** The selection rule for transitions between rotational states is $\Delta J = \pm 1$.

The allowed values of the vibrational energy of a diatomic molecule are

$$E_{\text{vib}} = \left(v + \tfrac{1}{2}\right)\frac{h}{2\pi}\sqrt{\frac{k}{\mu}} \quad v = 0, 1, 2, \ldots \quad \textbf{(43.10)}$$

where v is the **vibrational quantum number,** k is the force constant of the "effective spring" bonding the molecule, and μ is the **reduced mass** of the molecule. The selection rule for allowed vibrational transitions is $\Delta v = \pm 1$, and the energy difference between any two adjacent levels is the same, regardless of which two levels are involved.

Bonding mechanisms in solids can be classified in a manner similar to the schemes for molecules. For example, the Na^+ and Cl^- ions in NaCl form **ionic bonds,** whereas the carbon atoms in diamond form **covalent bonds.** The **metallic bond** is characterized by a net attractive force between positive ion cores and the mobile free electrons of a metal.

In the **free-electron theory of metals,** the free electrons fill the quantized levels in accordance with the Pauli exclusion principle. The number of states per unit volume available to the conduction electrons having energies between E and $E + dE$ is

$$N(E)\,dE = \left(\frac{8\sqrt{2}\,\pi m_e^{3/2}}{h^3}E^{1/2}\right)\left(\frac{1}{e^{(E-E_F)/k_BT}+1}\right)dE \quad \textbf{(43.22)}$$

where E_F is the **Fermi energy.** At $T = 0$ K, all levels below E_F are filled, all levels above E_F are empty, and

$$E_F(0) = \frac{h^2}{2m_e}\left(\frac{3n_e}{8\pi}\right)^{2/3} \quad \textbf{(43.25)}$$

where n_e is the total number of conduction electrons per unit volume. Only those electrons having energies near E_F can contribute to the electrical conductivity of the metal.

In a crystalline solid, the energy levels of the system form a set of **bands.** Electrons occupy the lowest energy states, with no more than one electron per state. Energy gaps are present between the bands of allowed states.

A **semiconductor** is a material having an energy gap of approximately 1 eV and a valence band that is filled at $T = 0$ K. Because of the small energy gap, a significant number of electrons can be thermally excited from the valence band into the conduction band. The band structures and electrical properties of a Group IV semiconductor can be modified by the addition of either donor atoms containing five outer-shell electrons or acceptor atoms containing three outer-shell electrons. A semiconductor **doped** with donor impurity atoms is called an ***n*-type semiconductor,** and one doped with acceptor impurity atoms is called a ***p*-type semiconductor.**

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. Is each one of the following statements true or false for a superconductor below its critical temperature? (a) It can carry infinite current. (b) It must carry some nonzero current. (c) Its interior electric field must be zero. (d) Its internal magnetic field must be zero. (e) No internal energy appears when it carries electric current.

2. An infrared absorption spectrum of a molecule is shown in Figure OQ43.2. Notice that the highest peak on either side of the gap is the third peak from the gap. After this spectrum is taken, the temperature of the sample of molecules is raised to a much higher value. Compared with Figure OQ43.2, in this new spectrum is the highest absorption peak (a) at the same frequency, (b) farther from the gap, or (c) closer to the gap?

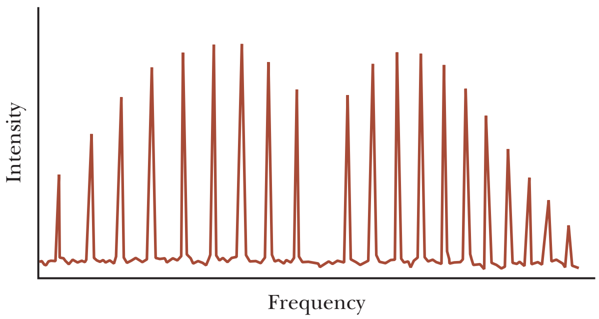


Figure OQ43.2

3. What kind of bonding likely holds the atoms together in the following solids (i), (ii), and (iii)? Choose your answers from these possibilities: (a) ionic bonding, (b) covalent bonding, and (c) metallic bonding. **(i)** The solid is opaque, shiny, flexible, and a good electric conductor. **(ii)** The crystal is transparent, brittle, and soluble in water. It is a poor conductor of electricity. **(iii)** The crystal is opaque, brittle, very hard, and a good electric insulator.

4. The Fermi energy for silver is 5.48 eV. In a piece of solid silver, free-electron energy levels are measured near 2 eV and near 6 eV. **(i)** Near which of these energies are the energy levels closer together? (a) 2 eV (b) 6 eV (c) The spacing is the same. **(ii)** Near which of these energies are more electrons occupying energy levels? (a) 2 eV (b) 6 eV (c) The number of electrons is the same.

5. As discussed in Chapter 27, the conductivity of metals decreases with increasing temperature due to electron collisions with vibrating atoms. In contrast, the conductivity of semiconductors increases with increasing temperature. What property of a semiconductor is responsible for this behavior? (a) Atomic vibrations decrease as temperature increases. (b) The number of conduction electrons and the number of holes increase steeply with increasing temperature. (c) The energy gap decreases with increasing temperature. (d) Electrons do not collide with atoms in a semiconductor.

6. **(i)** Should you expect an *n*-type doped semiconductor to have (a) higher, (b) lower, or (c) the same conductivity as an intrinsic (pure) semiconductor? **(ii)** Should you expect a *p*-type doped semiconductor to have (a) higher, (b) lower, or (c) the same conductivity as an intrinsic (pure) semiconductor?

7. Consider a typical material composed of covalently bonded diatomic molecules. Rank the following energies from the largest in magnitude to the smallest in magnitude. (a) the latent heat of fusion per molecule (b) the molecular binding energy (c) the energy of the first excited state of molecular rotation (d) the energy of the first excited state of molecular vibration

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

Conceptual Questions 5 and 6 in Chapter 27 can be assigned with this chapter.

1. The energies of photons of visible light range between the approximate values 1.8 eV and 3.1 eV. Explain why silicon, with an energy gap of 1.14 eV at room temperature (see Table 43.3), appears opaque, whereas diamond, with an energy gap of 5.47 eV, appears transparent.

2. Discuss the three major forms of excitation of a molecule (other than translational motion) and the relative energies associated with these three forms.

3. How can the analysis of the rotational spectrum of a molecule lead to an estimate of the size of that molecule?

4. Pentavalent atoms such as arsenic are donor atoms in a semiconductor such as silicon, whereas trivalent atoms such as indium are acceptors. Inspect the periodic table in Appendix C and determine what other elements might make good donors or acceptors.

5. When a photon is absorbed by a semiconductor, an electron–hole pair is created. Give a physical explanation of this statement using the energy-band model as the basis for your description.

6. (a) Discuss the differences in the band structures of metals, insulators, and semiconductors. (b) How does the band-structure model enable you to understand the electrical properties of these materials better?

7. (a) What essential assumptions are made in the free-electron theory of metals? (b) How does the energy-band model differ from the free-electron theory in describing the properties of metals?

8. How do the vibrational and rotational levels of heavy hydrogen (D_2) molecules compare with those of H_2 molecules?

9. Discuss models for the different types of bonds that form stable molecules.

10. Discuss the differences between crystalline solids, amorphous solids, and gases.

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 43.1 Molecular Bonds

1. A van der Waals dispersion force between helium atoms produces a very shallow potential well, with a depth on the order of 1 meV. At approximately what temperature would you expect helium to condense?

2. W **Review.** A K^+ ion and a Cl^- ion are separated by a distance of 5.00×10^{-10} m. Assuming the two ions act like charged particles, determine (a) the force each ion exerts on the other and (b) the potential energy of the two-ion system in electron volts.

3. Potassium chloride is an ionically bonded molecule that is sold as a salt substitute for use in a low-sodium diet. The electron affinity of chlorine is 3.6 eV. An energy input of 0.70 eV is required to form separate K^+ and Cl^- ions from separate K and Cl atoms. What is the ionization energy of K?

4. In the potassium iodide (KI) molecule, assume the K and I atoms bond ionically by the transfer of one electron from K to I. (a) The ionization energy of K is 4.34 eV, and the electron affinity of I is 3.06 eV. What energy is needed to transfer an electron from K to I, to form K^+ and I^- ions from neutral atoms? This quantity is sometimes called the activation energy E_a. (b) A model potential energy function for the KI molecule is the Lennard–Jones potential:

$$U(r) = 4\epsilon\left[\left(\frac{\sigma}{r}\right)^{12} - \left(\frac{\sigma}{r}\right)^{6}\right] + E_a$$

where r is the internuclear separation distance and ϵ and σ are adjustable parameters. The E_a term is added to ensure the correct asymptotic behavior at large r. At the equilibrium separation distance, $r = r_0 = 0.305$ nm, $U(r)$ is a minimum, and $dU/dr = 0$. In addition, $U(r_0)$ is the negative of the dissociation energy: $U(r_0) = -3.37$ eV. Find σ and ϵ. (c) Calculate the force needed to break up a KI molecule. (d) Calculate the force constant for small oscillations about $r = r_0$. *Suggestion:* Set $r = r_0 + s$, where $s/r_0 << 1$, and expand $U(r)$ in powers of s/r_0 up to second-order terms.

5. One description of the potential energy of a diatomic molecule is given by the Lennard–Jones potential,

$$U = \frac{A}{r^{12}} - \frac{B}{r^6}$$

where A and B are constants and r is the separation distance between the atoms. For the H_2 molecule, take $A = 0.124 \times 10^{-120}$ eV · m^{12} and $B = 1.488 \times 10^{-60}$ eV · m^6. Find (a) the separation distance r_0 at which the energy of the molecule is a minimum and (b) the energy E required to break up the H_2 molecule.

6. One description of the potential energy of a diatomic molecule is given by the Lennard–Jones potential,

$$U = \frac{A}{r^{12}} - \frac{B}{r^6}$$

where A and B are constants and r is the separation distance between the atoms. Find, in terms of A and B, (a) the value r_0 at which the energy is a minimum and (b) the energy E required to break up a diatomic molecule.

Section 43.2 Energy States and Spectra of Molecules

7. The CO molecule makes a transition from the $J = 1$ to the $J = 2$ rotational state when it absorbs a photon of frequency 2.30×10^{11} Hz. (a) Find the moment of inertia of this molecule from these data. (b) Compare your answer with that obtained in Example 43.1 and comment on the significance of the two results.

8. The cesium iodide (CsI) molecule has an atomic separation of 0.127 nm. (a) Determine the energy of the second excited rotational state, with $J = 2$. (b) Find the frequency of the photon absorbed in the $J = 1$ to $J = 2$ transition.

9. M An HCl molecule is excited to its second rotational energy level, corresponding to $J = 2$. If the distance between its nuclei is 0.127 5 nm, what is the angular speed of the molecule about its center of mass?

10. The photon frequency that would be absorbed by the NO molecule in a transition from vibration state $v = 0$ to $v = 1$, with no change in rotation state, is 56.3 THz. The bond between the atoms has an effective spring constant of 1 530 N/m. (a) Use this information to calculate the reduced mass of the NO molecule. (b) Compute a value for μ using Equation 43.4. (c) Compare your results to parts (a) and (b) and explain their difference, if any.

11. Assume the distance between the protons in the H_2 molecule is 0.750×10^{-10} m. (a) Find the energy of the first excited rotational state, with $J = 1$. (b) Find the wavelength of radiation emitted in the transition from $J = 1$ to $J = 0$.

12. *Why is the following situation impossible?* The effective force constant of a vibrating HCl molecule is $k = 480$ N/m. A beam of infrared radiation of wavelength 6.20×10^3 nm is directed through a gas of HCl molecules. As a result, the molecules are excited from the ground vibrational state to the first excited vibrational state.

13. AMT The effective spring constant describing the potential energy of the HI molecule is 320 N/m and that for the HF molecule is 970 N/m. Calculate the minimum amplitude of vibration for (a) the HI molecule and (b) the HF molecule.

14. The rotational spectrum of the HCl molecule contains lines with wavelengths of 0.060 4, 0.069 0, 0.080 4, 0.096 4, and 0.120 4 mm. What is the moment of inertia of the molecule?

15. The atoms of an NaCl molecule are separated by a distance $r = 0.280$ nm. Calculate (a) the reduced mass of an NaCl molecule, (b) the moment of inertia of an NaCl molecule, and (c) the wavelength of radiation emitted when an NaCl molecule undergoes a transition from the $J = 2$ state to the $J = 1$ state.

16. A diatomic molecule consists of two atoms having masses m_1 and m_2 separated by a distance r. Show that the moment of inertia about an axis through the center of mass of the molecule is given by Equation 43.3, $I = \mu r^2$.

17. The nuclei of the O_2 molecule are separated by a distance 1.20×10^{-10} m. The mass of each oxygen atom in the molecule is 2.66×10^{-26} kg. (a) Determine the rotational energies of an oxygen molecule in electron volts for the levels corresponding to $J = 0$, 1, and 2. (b) The effective force constant k between the atoms in the oxygen molecule is 1 177 N/m. Determine the vibrational energies (in electron volts) corresponding to $v = 0$, 1, and 2.

18. Figure P43.18 is a model of a benzene molecule. All atoms lie in a plane, and the carbon atoms ($m_C = 1.99 \times 10^{-26}$ kg) form a regular hexagon, as do the hydrogen atoms ($m_H = 1.67 \times 10^{-27}$ kg). The carbon atoms are 0.110 nm apart center to center, and the adjacent carbon and hydrogen atoms are 0.100 nm apart center to center. (a) Calculate the moment of inertia of the molecule about an axis perpendicular to the plane of the paper through the center point O. (b) Determine the allowed rotational energies about this axis.

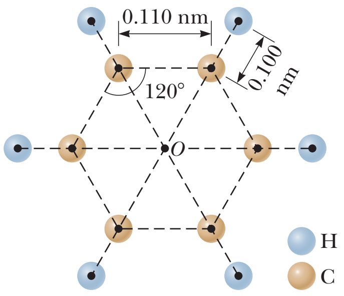


Figure P43.18

19. (a) In an HCl molecule, take the Cl atom to be the isotope ^{35}Cl. The equilibrium separation of the H and Cl atoms is 0.127 46 nm. The atomic mass of the H atom is 1.007 825 u and that of the ^{35}Cl atom is 34.968 853 u. Calculate the longest wavelength in the rotational spectrum of this molecule. (b) **What If?** Repeat the calculation in part (a), but take the Cl atom to be the isotope ^{37}Cl, which has atomic mass 36.965 903 u. The equilibrium separation distance is the same as in part (a). (c) Naturally occurring chlorine contains approximately three parts of ^{35}Cl to one part of ^{37}Cl. Because of the two different Cl masses, each line in the microwave rotational spectrum of HCl is split into a doublet as shown in Figure P43.19. Calculate the separation in wavelength between the doublet lines for the longest wavelength.

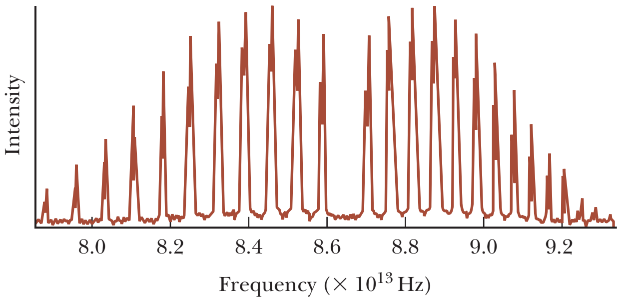


Figure P43.19 Problems 19 and 20.

20. Estimate the moment of inertia of an HCl molecule from its infrared absorption spectrum shown in Figure P43.19.

21. W An H_2 molecule is in its vibrational and rotational ground states. It absorbs a photon of wavelength 2.211 2 μm and makes a transition to the $v = 1$, $J = 1$ energy level. It then drops to the $v = 0$, $J = 2$ energy level while emitting a photon of wavelength 2.405 4 μm. Calculate (a) the moment of inertia of the H_2 molecule about an axis through its center of mass and perpendicular to the H–H bond, (b) the vibrational frequency of the H_2 molecule, and (c) the equilibrium separation distance for this molecule.

22. Photons of what frequencies can be spontaneously emitted by CO molecules in the state with $v = 1$ and $J = 0$?

23. Most of the mass of an atom is in its nucleus. Model the mass distribution in a diatomic molecule as two spheres of uniform density, each of radius 2.00×10^{-15} m and mass 1.00×10^{-26} kg, located at points along the y axis as in Figure 43.5a, and separated by 2.00×10^{-10} m. Rotation about the axis joining the nuclei in the diatomic molecule is ordinarily ignored because the first excited state would have an energy that is too high to access. To see why, calculate the ratio of the energy of the first excited state for rotation about the y axis to the energy of the first excited state for rotation about the x axis.

Section 43.3 Bonding in Solids

24. Use a magnifying glass to look at the grains of table salt that come out of a salt shaker. Compare what you see with Figure 43.11a. The distance between a sodium ion and a nearest-neighbor chlorine ion is 0.261 nm. (a) Make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the number N of atoms in a typical grain of salt. (b) **What If?** Suppose you had a number of grains of salt equal to this number N. What would be the volume of this quantity of salt?

25. Use Equation 43.18 to calculate the ionic cohesive energy for NaCl. Take $\alpha = 1.747\,6$, $r_0 = 0.281$ nm, and $m = 8$.

26. Consider a one-dimensional chain of alternating singly-ionized positive and negative ions. Show that the potential energy associated with one of the ions and its interactions with the rest of this hypothetical crystal is

$$U(r) = -\alpha k_e \frac{e^2}{r}$$

where the Madelung constant is $\alpha = 2 \ln 2$ and r is the distance between ions. *Suggestion:* Use the series expansion for $\ln(1 + x)$.

Section 43.4 Free-Electron Theory of Metals

Section 43.5 Band Theory of Solids

27. Calculate the energy of a conduction electron in silver at 800 K, assuming the probability of finding an electron in that state is 0.950. The Fermi energy of silver is 5.48 eV at this temperature.

28. (a) State what the Fermi energy depends on according to the free-electron theory of metals and how the Fermi energy depends on that quantity. (b) Show that Equation 43.25 can be expressed as $E_F = (3.65 \times 10^{-19})n_e^{2/3}$, where E_F is in electron volts when n_e is in electrons per cubic meter. (c) According to Table 43.2, by what factor does the free-electron concentration in copper exceed that in potassium? (d) Which of these metals has the larger Fermi energy? (e) By what factor is the Fermi energy larger? (f) Explain whether this behavior is predicted by Equation 43.25.

29. When solid silver starts to melt, what is the approximate fraction of the conduction electrons that are thermally excited above the Fermi level?

30. (a) Find the typical speed of a conduction electron in copper, taking its kinetic energy as equal to the Fermi energy, 7.05 eV. (b) Suppose the copper is a current-carrying wire. How does the speed found in part (a) compare with a typical drift speed (see Section 27.1) of electrons in the wire of 0.1 mm/s?

31. The Fermi energy of copper at 300 K is 7.05 eV. (a) What is the average energy of a conduction electron in copper at 300 K? (b) At what temperature would the average translational energy of a molecule in an ideal gas be equal to the energy calculated in part (a)?

32. W Consider a cube of gold 1.00 mm on an edge. Calculate the approximate number of conduction electrons in this cube whose energies lie in the range 4.000 to 4.025 eV.

33. M Sodium is a monovalent metal having a density of 0.971 g/cm^3 and a molar mass of 23.0 g/mol. Use this information to calculate (a) the density of charge carriers and (b) the Fermi energy of sodium.

34. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A hypothetical metal has the following properties: its Fermi energy is 5.48 eV, its density is 4.90×10^3 kg/m^3, its molar mass is 100 g/mol, and it has one free electron per atom.

35. For copper at 300 K, calculate the probability that a state with an energy equal to 99.0% of the Fermi energy is occupied.

36. For a metal at temperature T, calculate the probability that a state with an energy equal to βE_F is occupied where β is a fraction between 0 and 1.

37. **Review.** An electron moves in a three-dimensional box of edge length L and volume L^3. The wave function of the particle is $\psi = A \sin(k_x x) \sin(k_y y) \sin(k_z z)$. Show that its energy is given by Equation 43.20,

$$E = \frac{\hbar^2 \pi^2}{2 m_e L^2}(n_x^2 + n_y^2 + n_z^2)$$

where the quantum numbers (n_x, n_y, n_z) are integers ≥ 1. *Suggestion:* The Schrödinger equation in three dimensions may be written

$$\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\left(\frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2\psi}{\partial z^2}\right) = (U - E)\psi$$

38. M (a) Consider a system of electrons confined to a three-dimensional box. Calculate the ratio of the number of allowed energy levels at 8.50 eV to the number at 7.05 eV. (b) **What If?** Copper has a Fermi energy of 7.05 eV at 300 K. Calculate the ratio of the number of occupied levels in copper at an energy of 8.50 eV to the number at the Fermi energy. (c) How does your answer to part (b) compare with that obtained in part (a)?

39. Show that the average kinetic energy of a conduction electron in a metal at 0 K is $E_{avg} = \frac{3}{5}E_F$. *Suggestion:* In general, the average kinetic energy is

$$E_{avg} = \frac{1}{n_e}\int_0^\infty E N(E)\, dE$$

where n_e is the density of particles, $N(E)\,dE$ is given by Equation 43.22, and the integral is over all possible values of the energy.

Section 43.6 Electrical Conduction in Metals, Insulators, and Semiconductors

40. Most solar radiation has a wavelength of 1 μm or less. (a) What energy gap should the material in a solar cell have if it is to absorb this radiation? (b) Is silicon an appropriate solar cell material (see Table 43.3)? Explain your answer.

41. The energy gap for silicon at 300 K is 1.14 eV. (a) Find the lowest-frequency photon that can promote an electron from the valence band to the conduction band. (b) What is the wavelength of this photon?

42. Light from a hydrogen discharge tube is incident on a CdS crystal. (a) Which spectral lines from the Balmer series are absorbed and (b) which are transmitted?

43. A light-emitting diode (LED) made of the semiconductor GaAsP emits red light ($\lambda = 650$ nm). Determine the energy-band gap E_g for this semiconductor.

44. The longest wavelength of radiation absorbed by a certain semiconductor is 0.512 μm. Calculate the energy gap for this semiconductor.

45. You are asked to build a scientific instrument that is thermally isolated from its surroundings. The isolation container may be a calorimeter, but these design criteria could apply to other containers as well. You wish to use a laser external to the container to raise the temperature of a target inside the instrument. You decide to use a diamond window in the container. Diamond has an energy gap of 5.47 eV. What is the shortest laser wavelength you can use to warm the sample inside the instrument?

46. GP **Review.** When a phosphorus atom is substituted for a silicon atom in a crystal, four of the phosphorus valence electrons form bonds with neighboring atoms and the remaining electron is much more loosely bound. You can model the electron as free to move through the crystal lattice. The phosphorus nucleus has one more positive charge than does the silicon nucleus, however, so the extra electron provided by the phosphorus atom is attracted to this single nuclear charge $+e$. The energy levels of the extra electron are similar to those of the electron in the Bohr hydrogen atom with two important exceptions. First, the Coulomb attraction between the electron and the positive charge on the phosphorus nucleus is reduced by a factor of $1/\kappa$ from what it would be in free space (see Eq. 26.21), where κ is the dielectric constant of the crystal. As a result, the orbit radii are greatly increased over those of the hydrogen atom. Second, the influence of the periodic electric potential of the lattice causes the electron to move as if it had an effective mass m^*, which is quite different from the mass m_e of a free electron. You can use the Bohr model of hydrogen to obtain relatively accurate values for the allowed energy levels of the extra electron. We wish to find the typical energy of these donor states, which play an important role in semiconductor devices. Assume $\kappa = 11.7$ for silicon and $m^* = 0.220m_e$. (a) Find a symbolic expression for the smallest radius of the electron orbit in terms of a_0, the Bohr radius. (b) Substitute numerical values to find the numerical value of the smallest radius. (c) Find a symbolic expression for the energy levels E_n' of the electron in the Bohr orbits around the donor atom in terms of m_e, m^*, κ, and E_n, the energy of the hydrogen atom in the Bohr model. (d) Find the numerical value of the energy for the ground state of the electron.

Section 43.7 Semiconductor Devices

47. Assuming $T = 300$ K, (a) for what value of the bias voltage ΔV in Equation 43.27 does $I = 9.00I_0$? (b) **What If?** What if $I = -0.900I_0$?

48. A diode, a resistor, and a battery are connected in a series circuit. The diode is at a temperature for which $k_BT = 25.0$ meV, and the saturation value of the current is $I_0 = 1.00\ \mu$A. The resistance of the resistor is $R = 745\ \Omega$, and the battery maintains a constant potential difference of $\mathcal{E} = 2.42$ V between its terminals. (a) Use Kirchhoff's loop rule to show that

$$\mathcal{E} - \Delta V = I_0R(e^{e\Delta V/k_BT} - 1)$$

where ΔV is the voltage across the diode. (b) To solve this transcendental equation for the voltage ΔV, graph the left-hand side of the above equation and the right-hand side as functions of ΔV and find the value of ΔV at which the curves cross. (c) Find the current I in the circuit. (d) Find the ohmic resistance of the diode, defined as the ratio $\Delta V/I$, at the voltage in part (b). (e) Find the dynamic resistance of the diode, which is defined as the derivative $d(\Delta V)/dI$, at the voltage in part (b).

49. W You put a diode in a microelectronic circuit to protect the system in case an untrained person installs the battery backward. In the correct forward-bias situation, the current is 200 mA with a potential difference of 100 mV across the diode at room temperature (300 K). If the battery were reversed, so that the potential difference across the diode is still 100 mV but with the opposite sign, what would be the magnitude of the current in the diode?

50. M A diode is at room temperature so that $k_BT = 0.025\,0$ eV. Taking the applied voltages across the diode to be + 1.00 V (under forward bias) and −1.00 V (under reverse bias), calculate the ratio of the forward current to the reverse current if the diode is described by Equation 43.27.

Section 43.8 Superconductivity

Problem 30 in Chapter 30 and Problems 73 through 76 in Chapter 32 can also be assigned with this section.

51. A thin rod of superconducting material 2.50 cm long is placed into a 0.540-T magnetic field with its cylindrical axis along the magnetic field lines. (a) Sketch the directions of the applied field and the induced surface current. (b) Find the magnitude of the surface current on the curved surface of the rod.

52. A direct and relatively simple demonstration of zero DC resistance can be carried out using the four-point probe method. The probe shown in Figure P43.52 consists of a disk of $YBa_2Cu_3O_7$ (a high-T_c superconductor) to which four wires are attached. Current is maintained through the sample by applying a DC voltage between points a and b, and it is measured with a DC ammeter. The current can be varied with the variable resistance R. The potential difference ΔV_{cd} between c and d is measured with a digital voltmeter. When the probe is immersed in liquid nitrogen, the sample quickly cools

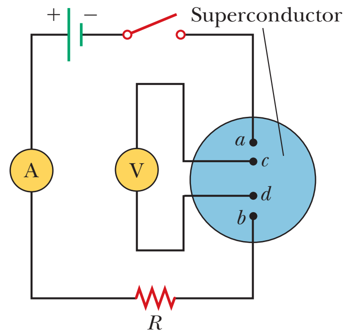


Figure P43.52

to 77 K, below the critical temperature of the material, 92 K. The current remains approximately constant, but ΔV_{cd} *drops abruptly to zero.* (a) Explain this observation on the basis of what you know about superconductors. (b) The data in the accompanying table represent actual values of ΔV_{cd} for different values of I taken on the sample at room temperature in the senior author's laboratory. A 6-V battery in series with a variable resistor R supplied the current. The values of R ranged from 10 Ω to 100 Ω. Make an I–ΔV plot of the data and determine whether the sample behaves in a linear manner. (c) From the data, obtain a value for the DC resistance of the sample at room temperature. (d) At room temperature, it was found that $\Delta V_{cd} = 2.234$ mV for $I = 100.3$ mA, but after the sample was cooled to 77 K, $\Delta V_{cd} = 0$ and $I = 98.1$ mA. What do you think might have caused the slight decrease in current?

Current Versus Potential Difference ΔV_{cd} Measured in a Bulk Ceramic Sample of $YBa_2Cu_3O_{7-\delta}$ at Room Temperature

I (mA)	ΔV_{cd} (mV)
57.8	1.356
61.5	1.441
68.3	1.602
76.8	1.802
87.5	2.053
102.2	2.398
123.7	2.904
155	3.61

53. A superconducting ring of niobium metal 2.00 cm in diameter is immersed in a uniform 0.020 0-T magnetic field directed perpendicular to the ring and carries no current. Determine the current generated in the ring when the magnetic field is suddenly decreased to zero. The inductance of the ring is 3.10×10^{-8} H.

Additional Problems

54. The effective spring constant associated with bonding in the N_2 molecule is 2 297 N/m. The nitrogen atoms each have a mass of 2.32×10^{-26} kg, and their nuclei are 0.120 nm apart. Assume the molecule is rigid. The first excited vibrational state of the molecule is above the vibrational ground state by an energy difference ΔE. Calculate the J value of the rotational state that is above the rotational ground state by the same energy difference ΔE.

55. The hydrogen molecule comes apart (dissociates) when it is excited internally by 4.48 eV. Assuming this molecule behaves like a harmonic oscillator having classical angular frequency $\omega = 8.28 \times 10^{14}$ rad/s, find the highest vibrational quantum number for a state below the 4.48-eV dissociation energy.

56. (a) Starting with Equation 43.17, show that the force exerted on an ion in an ionic solid can be written as

$$F = -\alpha k_e \frac{e^2}{r^2}\left[1 - \left(\frac{r_0}{r}\right)^{m-1}\right]$$

where α is the Madelung constant and r_0 is the equilibrium separation. (b) Imagine that an ion in the solid is displaced a small distance s from r_0. Show that the ion experiences a restoring force $F = -Ks$, where

$$K = \frac{\alpha k_e e^2}{r_0^3}(m - 1)$$

(c) Use the result of part (b) to find the frequency of vibration of a Na^+ ion in NaCl. Take $m = 8$ and use the value $\alpha = 1.747\ 6$.

57. Under pressure, liquid helium can solidify as each atom bonds with four others, and each bond has an average energy of 1.74×10^{-23} J. Find the latent heat of fusion for helium in joules per gram. (The molar mass of He is 4.00 g/mol.)

58. The dissociation energy of ground-state molecular hydrogen is 4.48 eV, but it only takes 3.96 eV to dissociate it when it starts in the first excited vibrational state with $J = 0$. Using this information, determine the depth of the H_2 molecular potential-energy function.

59. Starting with Equation 43.17, show that the ionic cohesive energy of an ionically bonded solid is given by Equation 43.18.

60. The Fermi–Dirac distribution function can be written as

$$f(E) = \frac{1}{e^{(E - E_F)/k_B T} + 1} = \frac{1}{e^{(E/E_F - 1)T_F/T} + 1}$$

where T_F is the *Fermi temperature,* defined according to

$$k_B T_F \equiv E_F$$

(a) Write a spreadsheet to calculate and plot $f(E)$ versus E/E_F at a fixed temperature T. (b) Describe the curves obtained for $T = 0.1T_F$, $0.2T_F$, and $0.5T_F$.

61. A particle moves in one-dimensional motion through a field for which the potential energy of the particle–field system is

$$U(x) = \frac{A}{x^3} - \frac{B}{x}$$

where $A = 0.150$ eV · nm³ and $B = 3.68$ eV · nm. The shape of this function is shown in Figure P43.61. (a) Find the equilibrium position x_0 of the particle. (b) Determine the depth U_0 of this potential well.

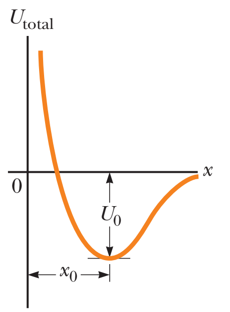


Figure P43.61 Problems 61 and 62.

(c) In moving along the x axis, what maximum force toward the negative x direction does the particle experience?

62. A particle of mass m moves in one-dimensional motion through a field for which the potential energy of the particle–field system is

$$U(x) = \frac{A}{x^3} - \frac{B}{x}$$

where A and B are constants. The general shape of this function is shown in Figure P43.61. (a) Find the equilibrium position x_0 of the particle in terms of m, A, and B. (b) Determine the depth U_0 of this potential well. (c) In moving along the x axis, what maximum force toward the negative x direction does the particle experience?

Challenge Problems

63. W As you will learn in Chapter 44, carbon-14 (^{14}C) is an unstable isotope of carbon. It has the same chemical properties and electronic structure as the much more abundant isotope carbon-12 (^{12}C), but it has different nuclear properties. Its mass is 14 u, greater than that of carbon-12 because of the two extra neutrons in the carbon-14 nucleus. Assume the CO molecular potential energy is the same for both isotopes of carbon and the examples in Section 43.2 contain accurate data and results for carbon monoxide with carbon-12 atoms. (a) What is the vibrational frequency of ^{14}CO? (b) What is the moment of inertia of ^{14}CO? (c) What wavelengths of light can be absorbed by ^{14}CO in the ($v = 0, J = 10$) state that cause it to end up in the $v = 1$ state?

64. As an alternative to Equation 43.1, another useful model for the potential energy of a diatomic molecule is the Morse potential

$$U(r) = B\left[e^{-a(r - r_0)} - 1\right]^2$$

where B, a, and r_0 are parameters used to adjust the shape of the potential and its depth. (a) What is the equilibrium separation of the nuclei? (b) What is the depth of the potential well, defined as the difference in energy between the potential's minimum value and its asymptote as r approaches infinity? (c) If μ is the reduced mass of the system of two nuclei and assuming the potential is nearly parabolic about the well minimum, what is the vibrational frequency of the diatomic molecule in its ground state? (d) What amount of energy needs to be supplied to the ground-state molecule to separate the two nuclei to infinity?

CHAPTER

44

Nuclear Structure

Ötzi the Iceman, a Copper Age man, was discovered by German tourists in the Italian Alps in 1991 when a glacier melted enough to expose his remains. Analysis of his corpse has exposed his last meal, illnesses he suffered, and places he lived. Radioactivity was used to determine that he lived in about 3300 BC. Ötzi can be seen today in the Südtiroler Archäologiemuseum (South Tyrol Museum of Archaeology) in Bolzano, Italy. *(©Vienna Report Agency/Sygma/Corbis)*

The year 1896 marks the birth of nuclear physics when French physicist Antoine-Henri Becquerel (1852–1908) discovered radioactivity in uranium compounds. This discovery prompted scientists to investigate the details of radioactivity and, ultimately, the structure of the nucleus. Pioneering work by Ernest Rutherford showed that the radiation emitted from radioactive substances is of three types—alpha, beta, and gamma rays—classified according to the nature of their electric charge and their ability to penetrate matter and ionize air. Later experiments showed that alpha rays are helium nuclei, beta rays are electrons, and gamma rays are high-energy photons.

In 1911, Rutherford, Hans Geiger, and Ernest Marsden performed the alpha-particle scattering experiments described in Section 42.2. These experiments established that the nucleus of an atom can be modeled as a point mass and point charge and that most of the atomic mass is contained in the nucleus. Subsequent studies revealed the presence of a new type of force, the short-range nuclear force, which is predominant at particle separation distances less than approximately 10^{-14} m and is zero for large distances.

In this chapter, we discuss the properties and structure of the atomic nucleus. We start by describing the basic properties of nuclei, followed by a discussion of nuclear forces and binding energy, nuclear models, and the phenomenon of radioactivity. Finally, we explore the various processes by which nuclei decay and the ways that nuclei can react with each other.

44.1 Some Properties of Nuclei

All nuclei are composed of two types of particles: protons and neutrons. The only exception is the ordinary hydrogen nucleus, which is a single proton. We describe the atomic nucleus by the number of protons and neutrons it contains, using the following quantities:

- the **atomic number** Z, which equals the number of protons in the nucleus (sometimes called the *charge number*)
- the **neutron number** N, which equals the number of neutrons in the nucleus
- the **mass number** $A = Z + N$, which equals the number of **nucleons** (neutrons plus protons) in the nucleus

A **nuclide** is a specific combination of atomic number and mass number that represents a nucleus. In representing nuclides, it is convenient to use the symbol ${}^{A}_{Z}\mathrm{X}$ to convey the numbers of protons and neutrons, where X represents the chemical symbol of the element. For example, ${}^{56}_{26}\mathrm{Fe}$ (iron) has mass number 56 and atomic number 26; therefore, it contains 26 protons and 30 neutrons. When no confusion is likely to arise, we omit the subscript Z because the chemical symbol can always be used to determine Z. Therefore, ${}^{56}_{26}\mathrm{Fe}$ is the same as ${}^{56}\mathrm{Fe}$ and can also be expressed as "iron-56" or "Fe-56."

The nuclei of all atoms of a particular element contain the same number of protons but often contain different numbers of neutrons. Nuclei related in this way are called **isotopes.** The isotopes of an element have the same Z value but different N and A values.

The natural abundance of isotopes can differ substantially. For example ${}^{11}_{6}\mathrm{C}$, ${}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$, ${}^{13}_{6}\mathrm{C}$, and ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ are four isotopes of carbon. The natural abundance of the ${}^{12}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ isotope is approximately 98.9%, whereas that of the ${}^{13}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ isotope is only about 1.1%. Some isotopes, such as ${}^{11}_{6}\mathrm{C}$ and ${}^{14}_{6}\mathrm{C}$, do not occur naturally but can be produced by nuclear reactions in the laboratory or by cosmic rays.

Even the simplest element, hydrogen, has isotopes: ${}^{1}_{1}\mathrm{H}$, the ordinary hydrogen nucleus; ${}^{2}_{1}\mathrm{H}$, deuterium; and ${}^{3}_{1}\mathrm{H}$, tritium.

Pitfall Prevention 44.1

Mass Number Is Not Atomic Mass The mass number A should not be confused with the atomic mass. Mass number is an integer specific to an isotope and has no units; it is simply a count of the number of nucleons. Atomic mass has units and is generally not an integer because it is an average of the masses of a given element's naturally occurring isotopes.

Quick Quiz 44.1 For each part of this Quick Quiz, choose from the following answers: (a) protons (b) neutrons (c) nucleons. **(i)** The three nuclei ${}^{12}\mathrm{C}$, ${}^{13}\mathrm{N}$, and ${}^{14}\mathrm{O}$ have the same number of what type of particle? **(ii)** The three nuclei ${}^{12}\mathrm{N}$, ${}^{13}\mathrm{N}$, and ${}^{14}\mathrm{N}$ have the same number of what type of particle? **(iii)** The three nuclei ${}^{14}\mathrm{C}$, ${}^{14}\mathrm{N}$, and ${}^{14}\mathrm{O}$ have the same number of what type of particle?

Charge and Mass

The proton carries a single positive charge e, equal in magnitude to the charge $-e$ on the electron ($e = 1.6 \times 10^{-19}$ C). The neutron is electrically neutral as its name implies. Because the neutron has no charge, it was difficult to detect with early experimental apparatus and techniques. Today, neutrons are easily detected with devices such as plastic scintillators.

Nuclear masses can be measured with great precision using a mass spectrometer (see Section 29.3) and by the analysis of nuclear reactions. The proton is approximately 1 836 times as massive as the electron, and the masses of the proton and the neutron are almost equal. The **atomic mass unit** u is defined in such a way that the mass of one atom of the isotope ${}^{12}\mathrm{C}$ is exactly 12 u, where 1 u is equal to $1.660\,539 \times 10^{-27}$ kg. According to this definition, the proton and neutron each have a mass of approximately 1 u and the electron has a mass that is only a small fraction of this value. The masses of these particles and others important to the phenomena discussed in this chapter are given in Table 44.1 (page 1382).

Table 44.1 Masses of Selected Particles in Various Units

Particle	Mass kg	Mass u	Mass MeV/c^2
Proton	$1.672\,62 \times 10^{-27}$	1.007 276	938.27
Neutron	$1.674\,93 \times 10^{-27}$	1.008 665	939.57
Electron (β particle)	$9.109\,38 \times 10^{-31}$	$5.485\,79 \times 10^{-4}$	0.510 999
${}^1_1$H atom	$1.673\,53 \times 10^{-27}$	1.007 825	938.783
${}^4_2$He nucleus (α particle)	$6.644\,66 \times 10^{-27}$	4.001 506	3 727.38
${}^4_2$He atom	$6.646\,48 \times 10^{-27}$	4.002 603	3 728.40
${}^{12}_6$C atom	$1.992\,65 \times 10^{-27}$	12.000 000	11 177.9

You might wonder how six protons and six neutrons, each having a mass larger than 1 u, can be combined with six electrons to form a carbon-12 atom having a mass of exactly 12 u. The bound system of ^{12}C has a lower rest energy (Section 39.8) than that of six separate protons and six separate neutrons. According to Equation 39.24, $E_R = mc^2$, this lower rest energy corresponds to a smaller mass for the bound system. The difference in mass accounts for the binding energy when the particles are combined to form the nucleus. We shall discuss this point in more detail in Section 44.2.

It is often convenient to express the atomic mass unit in terms of its *rest-energy equivalent*. For one atomic mass unit,

$$E_R = mc^2 = (1.660\,539 \times 10^{-27}\text{ kg})(2.997\,92 \times 10^8\text{ m/s})^2 = 931.494\text{ MeV}$$

where we have used the conversion 1 eV $= 1.602\,176 \times 10^{-19}$ J.

Based on the rest-energy expression in Equation 39.24, nuclear physicists often express mass in terms of the unit MeV/c^2.

Example 44.1 The Atomic Mass Unit

Use Avogadro's number to show that 1 u $= 1.66 \times 10^{-27}$ kg.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize From the definition of the mole given in Section 19.5, we know that exactly 12 g (= 1 mol) of ^{12}C contains Avogadro's number of atoms.

Categorize We evaluate the atomic mass unit that was introduced in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Find the mass m of one ^{12}C atom:

$$m = \frac{0.012\text{ kg}}{6.02 \times 10^{23}\text{ atoms}} = 1.99 \times 10^{-26}\text{ kg}$$

Because one atom of ^{12}C is defined to have a mass of 12.0 u, divide by 12.0 to find the mass equivalent to 1 u:

$$1\text{ u} = \frac{1.99 \times 10^{-26}\text{ kg}}{12.0} = 1.66 \times 10^{-27}\text{ kg}$$

The Size and Structure of Nuclei

In Rutherford's scattering experiments, positively charged nuclei of helium atoms (alpha particles) were directed at a thin piece of metallic foil. As the alpha particles moved through the foil, they often passed near a metal nucleus. Because of the positive charge on both the incident particles and the nuclei, the particles were deflected from their straight-line paths by the Coulomb repulsive force.

Rutherford used the isolated system (energy) analysis model to find an expression for the separation distance d at which an alpha particle approaching a nucleus head-on is turned around by Coulomb repulsion. In such a head-on collision, the mechanical energy of the nucleus–alpha particle system is conserved. The initial kinetic energy of the incoming particle is transformed completely to electric potential energy of the system when the alpha particle stops momentarily at the point of closest approach (the final configuration of the system) before moving back along the same path (Fig. 44.1). Applying Equation 8.2, the conservation of energy principle, to the system gives

$$\Delta K + \Delta U = 0$$

$$\left(0 - \tfrac{1}{2}mv^2\right) + \left(k_e \frac{q_1 q_2}{d} - 0\right) = 0$$

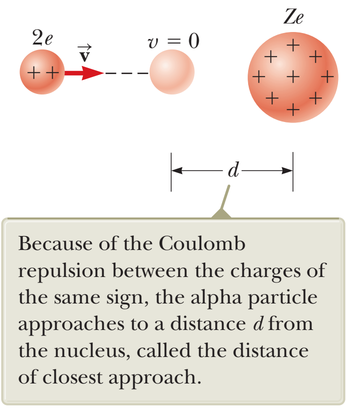


Figure 44.1 An alpha particle on a head-on collision course with a nucleus of charge Ze.

where m is the mass of the alpha particle and v is its initial speed. Solving for d gives

$$d = 2k_e \frac{q_1 q_2}{mv^2} = 2k_e \frac{(2e)(Ze)}{mv^2} = 4k_e \frac{Ze^2}{mv^2}$$

where Z is the atomic number of the target nucleus. From this expression, Rutherford found that the alpha particles approached nuclei to within 3.2×10^{-14} m when the foil was made of gold. Therefore, the radius of the gold nucleus must be less than this value. From the results of his scattering experiments, Rutherford concluded that the positive charge in an atom is concentrated in a small sphere, which he called the nucleus, whose radius is no greater than approximately 10^{-14} m.

Because such small lengths are common in nuclear physics, an often-used convenient length unit is the femtometer (fm), which is sometimes called the **fermi** and is defined as

$$1 \text{ fm} \equiv 10^{-15} \text{ m}$$

In the early 1920s, it was known that the nucleus of an atom contains Z protons and has a mass nearly equivalent to that of A protons, where on average $A \approx 2Z$ for lighter nuclei ($Z \leq 20$) and $A > 2Z$ for heavier nuclei. To account for the nuclear mass, Rutherford proposed that each nucleus must also contain $A - Z$ neutral particles that he called neutrons. In 1932, British physicist James Chadwick (1891–1974) discovered the neutron, and he was awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1935 for this important work.

Since the time of Rutherford's scattering experiments, a multitude of other experiments have shown that most nuclei are approximately spherical and have an average radius given by

Nuclear radius

$$r = aA^{1/3} \qquad \textbf{(44.1)}$$

where a is a constant equal to 1.2×10^{-15} m and A is the mass number. Because the volume of a sphere is proportional to the cube of its radius, it follows from Equation 44.1 that the volume of a nucleus (assumed to be spherical) is directly proportional to A, the total number of nucleons. This proportionality suggests that *all nuclei have nearly the same density*. When nucleons combine to form a nucleus, they combine as though they were tightly packed spheres (Fig. 44.2). This fact has led to an analogy between the nucleus and a drop of liquid, in which the density of the drop is independent of its size. We shall discuss the liquid-drop model of the nucleus in Section 44.3.

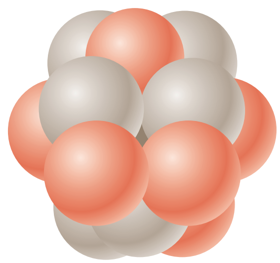


Figure 44.2 A nucleus can be modeled as a cluster of tightly packed spheres, where each sphere is a nucleon.

Example 44.2 The Volume and Density of a Nucleus

Consider a nucleus of mass number A.

(A) Find an approximate expression for the mass of the nucleus.

continued

44.2 continued

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the nucleus to be a collection of protons and neutrons as shown in Figure 44.2. The mass number A counts *both* protons and neutrons.

Categorize Let's assume A is large enough that we can imagine the nucleus to be spherical.

Analyze The mass of the proton is approximately equal to that of the neutron. Therefore, if the mass of one of these particles is m, the mass of the nucleus is approximately $\boxed{Am}$.

(B) Find an expression for the volume of this nucleus in terms of A.

SOLUTION

Assume the nucleus is spherical and use Equation 44.1:

$$(1)\quad V_{\text{nucleus}} = \tfrac{4}{3}\pi r^3 = \boxed{\tfrac{4}{3}\pi a^3 A}$$

(C) Find a numerical value for the density of this nucleus.

SOLUTION

Use Equation 1.1 and substitute Equation (1):

$$\rho = \frac{m_{\text{nucleus}}}{V_{\text{nucleus}}} = \frac{Am}{\frac{4}{3}\pi a^3 A} = \frac{3m}{4\pi a^3}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$\rho = \frac{3(1.67 \times 10^{-27}\text{ kg})}{4\pi(1.2 \times 10^{-15}\text{ m})^3} = \boxed{2.3 \times 10^{17}\text{ kg/m}^3}$$

Finalize The nuclear density is approximately 2.3×10^{14} times the density of water ($\rho_{\text{water}} = 1.0 \times 10^3\text{ kg/m}^3$).

WHAT IF? What if the Earth could be compressed until it had this density? How large would it be?

Answer Because this density is so large, we predict that an Earth of this density would be very small.

Use Equation 1.1 and the mass of the Earth to find the volume of the compressed Earth:

$$V = \frac{M_E}{\rho} = \frac{5.97 \times 10^{24}\text{ kg}}{2.3 \times 10^{17}\text{ kg/m}^3} = 2.6 \times 10^7\text{ m}^3$$

From this volume, find the radius:

$$V = \tfrac{4}{3}\pi r^3 \rightarrow r = \left(\frac{3V}{4\pi}\right)^{1/3} = \left[\frac{3(2.6 \times 10^7\text{ m}^3)}{4\pi}\right]^{1/3}$$

$$r = 1.8 \times 10^2\text{ m}$$

An Earth of this radius is indeed a small Earth!

Nuclear Stability

You might expect that the very large repulsive Coulomb forces between the close-packed protons in a nucleus should cause the nucleus to fly apart. Because that does not happen, there must be a counteracting attractive force. The **nuclear force** is a very short range (about 2 fm) attractive force that acts between all nuclear particles. The protons attract each other by means of the nuclear force, and, at the same time, they repel each other through the Coulomb force. The nuclear force also acts between pairs of neutrons and between neutrons and protons. The nuclear force dominates the Coulomb repulsive force within the nucleus (at short ranges), so stable nuclei can exist.

The nuclear force is independent of charge. In other words, the forces associated with the proton–proton, proton–neutron, and neutron–neutron interactions are the same, apart from the additional repulsive Coulomb force for the proton–proton interaction.

Evidence for the limited range of nuclear forces comes from scattering experiments and from studies of nuclear binding energies. The short range of the nuclear force is shown in the neutron–proton (n–p) potential energy plot of Figure 44.3a obtained by scattering neutrons from a target containing hydrogen. The depth of the n–p potential energy well is 40 to 50 MeV, and there is a strong repulsive component that prevents the nucleons from approaching much closer than 0.4 fm.

The nuclear force does not affect electrons, enabling energetic electrons to serve as point-like probes of nuclei. The charge independence of the nuclear force also means that the main difference between the n–p and p–p interactions is that the p–p potential energy consists of a *superposition* of nuclear and Coulomb interactions as shown in Figure 44.3b. At distances less than 2 fm, both p–p and n–p potential energies are nearly identical, but for distances of 2 fm or greater, the p–p potential has a positive energy barrier with a maximum at 4 fm.

The existence of the nuclear force results in approximately 270 stable nuclei; hundreds of other nuclei have been observed, but they are unstable. A plot of neutron number N versus atomic number Z for a number of stable nuclei is given in Figure 44.4. The stable nuclei are represented by the black dots, which lie in a narrow range called the *line of stability*. Notice that the light stable nuclei contain an equal number of protons and neutrons; that is, $N = Z$. Also notice that in heavy stable nuclei, the number of neutrons exceeds the number of protons: above $Z = 20$, the line of stability deviates upward from the line representing $N = Z$. This deviation can be understood by recognizing that as the number of protons increases, the strength of the Coulomb force increases, which tends to break the nucleus apart. As a result, more neutrons are needed to keep the nucleus stable because neutrons experience only the attractive nuclear force. Eventually, the repulsive Coulomb forces between protons cannot be compensated by the addition of more neutrons. This point occurs at $Z = 83$, meaning that elements that contain more than 83 protons do not have stable nuclei.

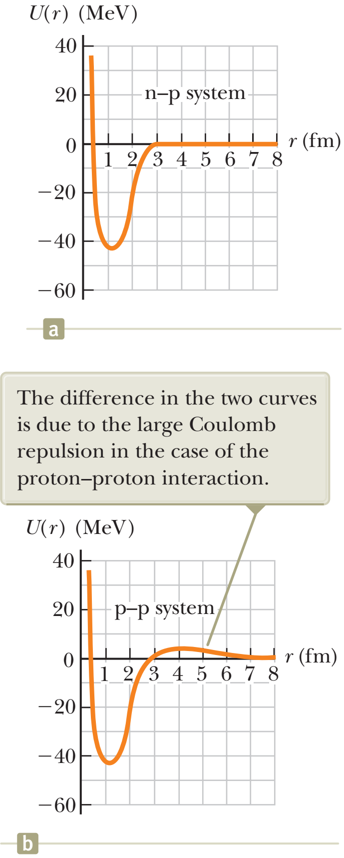


Figure 44.3 (a) Potential energy versus separation distance for a neutron–proton system. (b) Potential energy versus separation distance for a proton–proton system. To display the difference in the curves on this scale, the height of the peak for the proton–proton curve has been exaggerated by a factor of 10.

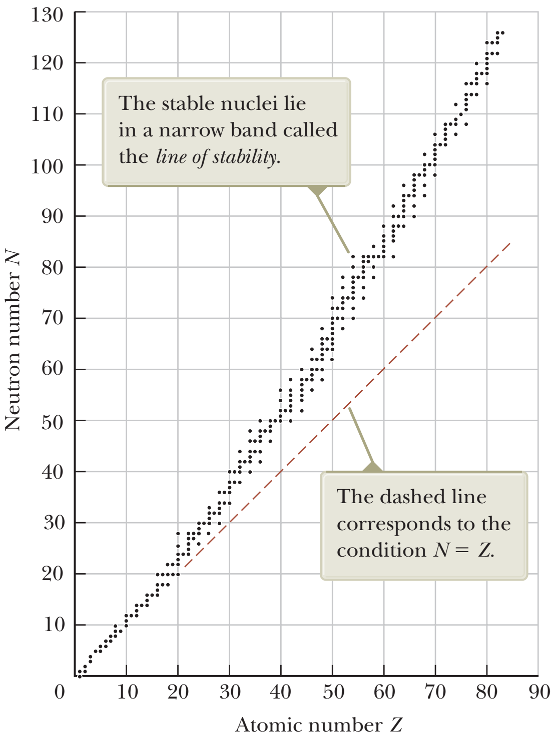


Figure 44.4 Neutron number N versus atomic number Z for stable nuclei (black dots).

44.2 Nuclear Binding Energy

As mentioned in the discussion of ^{12}C in Section 44.1, the total mass of a nucleus is less than the sum of the masses of its individual nucleons. Therefore, the rest energy of the bound system (the nucleus) is less than the combined rest energy of the separated nucleons. This difference in energy is called the **binding energy** of the nucleus and can be interpreted as the energy that must be added to a nucleus to break it apart into its components. Therefore, to separate a nucleus into protons and neutrons, energy must be delivered to the system.

Conservation of energy and the Einstein mass–energy equivalence relationship show that the binding energy E_b in MeV of any nucleus is

Binding energy of a nucleus

$$E_b = [ZM(\mathrm{H}) + Nm_n - M(^A_Z\mathrm{X})] \times 931.494 \text{ MeV/u} \tag{44.2}$$

where $M(\mathrm{H})$ is the atomic mass of the neutral hydrogen atom, m_n is the mass of the neutron, $M(^A_Z\mathrm{X})$ represents the atomic mass of an atom of the isotope $^A_Z\mathrm{X}$, and the masses are all in atomic mass units. The mass of the Z electrons included in $M(\mathrm{H})$ cancels with the mass of the Z electrons included in the term $M(^A_Z\mathrm{X})$ within a small difference associated with the atomic binding energy of the electrons. Because atomic binding energies are typically several electron volts and nuclear binding energies are several million electron volts, this difference is negligible.

Pitfall Prevention 44.2

Binding Energy When separate nucleons are combined to form a nucleus, the energy of the system is reduced. Therefore, the change in energy is negative. The absolute value of this change is called the binding energy. This difference in sign may be confusing. For example, an *increase* in binding energy corresponds to a *decrease* in the energy of the system.

A plot of binding energy per nucleon E_b/A as a function of mass number A for various stable nuclei is shown in Figure 44.5. Notice that the binding energy in Figure 44.5 peaks in the vicinity of $A = 60$. That is, nuclei having mass numbers either greater or less than 60 are not as strongly bound as those near the middle of the periodic table. The decrease in binding energy per nucleon for $A > 60$ implies that energy is released when a heavy nucleus splits, or *fissions,* into two lighter nuclei. Energy is released in fission because the nucleons in each product nucleus are more tightly bound to one another than are the nucleons in the original nucleus. The important process of fission and a second important process of *fusion,* in which energy is released as light nuclei combine, shall be considered in detail in Chapter 45.

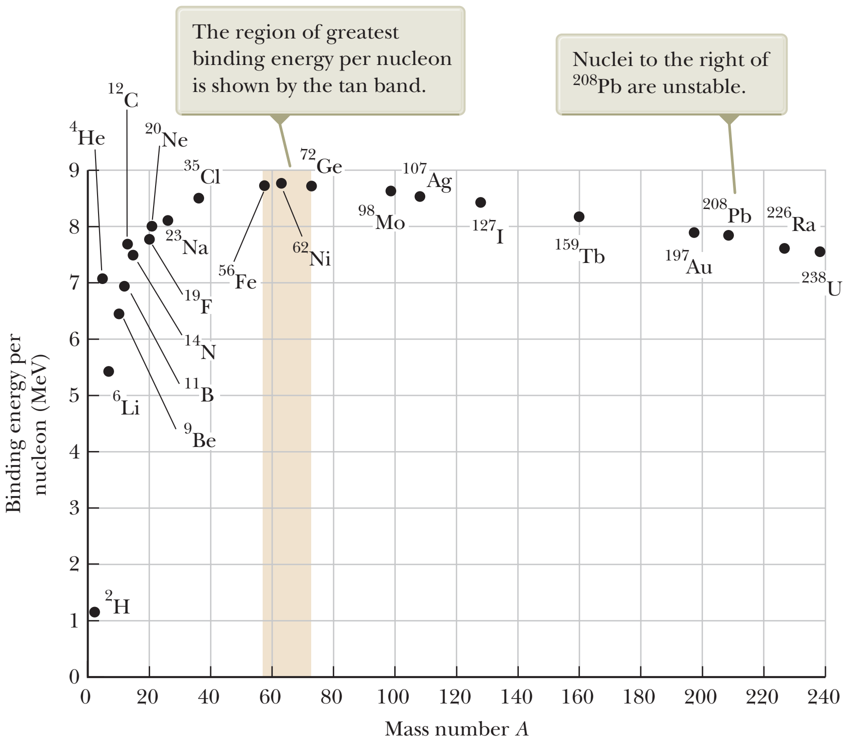


Figure 44.5 Binding energy per nucleon versus mass number for nuclides that lie along the line of stability in Figure 44.4. Some representative nuclides appear as black dots with labels.

Another important feature of Figure 44.5 is that the binding energy per nucleon is approximately constant at around 8 MeV per nucleon for all nuclei with $A > 50$. For these nuclei, the nuclear forces are said to be *saturated,* meaning that in the closely packed structure shown in Figure 44.2, a particular nucleon can form attractive bonds with only a limited number of other nucleons.

Figure 44.5 provides insight into fundamental questions about the origin of the chemical elements. In the early life of the Universe, the only elements that existed were hydrogen and helium. Clouds of cosmic gas coalesced under gravitational forces to form stars. As a star ages, it produces heavier elements from the lighter elements contained within it, beginning by fusing hydrogen atoms to form helium. This process continues as the star becomes older, generating atoms having larger and larger atomic numbers, up to the tan band shown in Figure 44.5.

The nucleus $^{63}_{28}\text{Ni}$ has the largest binding energy per nucleon of 8.794 5 MeV. It takes additional energy to create elements with mass numbers larger than 63 because of their lower binding energies per nucleon. This energy comes from the supernova explosion that occurs at the end of some large stars' lives. Therefore, all the heavy atoms in your body were produced from the explosions of ancient stars. You are literally made of stardust!

44.3 Nuclear Models

The details of the nuclear force are still an area of active research. Several nuclear models have been proposed that are useful in understanding general features of nuclear experimental data and the mechanisms responsible for binding energy. Two such models, the liquid-drop model and the shell model, are discussed below.

The Liquid-Drop Model

In 1936, Bohr proposed treating nucleons like molecules in a drop of liquid. In this **liquid-drop model,** the nucleons interact strongly with one another and undergo frequent collisions as they jiggle around within the nucleus. This jiggling motion is analogous to the thermally agitated motion of molecules in a drop of liquid.

Four major effects influence the binding energy of the nucleus in the liquid-drop model:

- **The volume effect.** Figure 44.5 shows that for $A > 50$, the binding energy per nucleon is approximately constant, which indicates that the nuclear force on a given nucleon is due only to a few nearest neighbors and not to all the other nucleons in the nucleus. On average, then, the binding energy associated with the nuclear force for each nucleon is the same in all nuclei: that associated with an interaction with a few neighbors. This property indicates that the total binding energy of the nucleus is proportional to A and therefore proportional to the nuclear volume. The contribution to the binding energy of the entire nucleus is C_1A, where C_1 is an adjustable constant that can be determined by fitting the prediction of the model to experimental results.
- **The surface effect.** Because nucleons on the surface of the drop have fewer neighbors than those in the interior, surface nucleons reduce the binding energy by an amount proportional to their number. Because the number of surface nucleons is proportional to the surface area $4\pi r^2$ of the nucleus (modeled as a sphere) and because $r^2 \propto A^{2/3}$ (Eq. 44.1), the surface term can be expressed as $-C_2A^{2/3}$, where C_2 is a second adjustable constant.
- **The Coulomb repulsion effect.** Each proton repels every other proton in the nucleus. The corresponding potential energy per pair of interacting protons is $k_e e^2/r$, where k_e is the Coulomb constant. The total electric potential energy is equivalent to the work required to assemble Z protons, initially infinitely far apart, into a sphere of volume V. This energy is proportional to the number

of proton pairs $Z(Z-1)/2$ and inversely proportional to the nuclear radius. Consequently, the reduction in binding energy that results from the Coulomb effect is $-C_3Z(Z-1)/A^{1/3}$, where C_3 is yet another adjustable constant.

- **The symmetry effect.** Another effect that lowers the binding energy is related to the symmetry of the nucleus in terms of values of N and Z. For small values of A, stable nuclei tend to have $N \approx Z$. Any large asymmetry between N and Z for light nuclei reduces the binding energy and makes the nucleus less stable. For larger A, the value of N for stable nuclei is naturally larger than Z. This effect can be described by a binding-energy term of the form $-C_4(N-Z)^2/A$, where C_4 is another adjustable constant.[1] For small A, any large asymmetry between values of N and Z makes this term relatively large and reduces the binding energy. For large A, this term is small and has little effect on the overall binding energy.

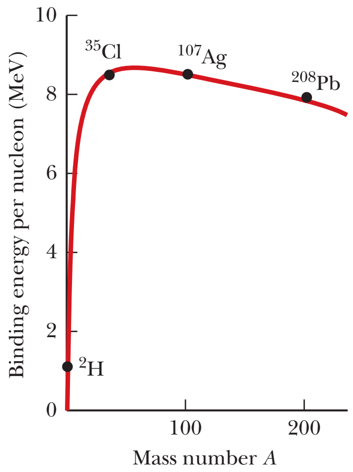


Figure 44.6 The binding-energy curve plotted by using the semiempirical binding-energy formula (red-brown). For comparison to the theoretical curve, experimental values for four sample nuclei are shown.

Adding these contributions gives the following expression for the total binding energy:

$$E_b = C_1A - C_2A^{2/3} - C_3\frac{Z(Z-1)}{A^{1/3}} - C_4\frac{(N-Z)^2}{A} \tag{44.3}$$

This equation, often referred to as the **semiempirical binding-energy formula,** contains four constants that are adjusted to fit the theoretical expression to experimental data. For nuclei having $A \geq 15$, the constants have the values

$$C_1 = 15.7 \text{ MeV} \qquad C_2 = 17.8 \text{ MeV}$$
$$C_3 = 0.71 \text{ MeV} \qquad C_4 = 23.6 \text{ MeV}$$

Equation 44.3, together with these constants, fits the known nuclear mass values very well as shown by the theoretical curve and sample experimental values in Figure 44.6. The liquid-drop model does not, however, account for some finer details of nuclear structure, such as stability rules and angular momentum. Equation 44.3 is a *theoretical* equation for the binding energy, based on the liquid-drop model, whereas binding energies calculated from Equation 44.2 are *experimental* values based on mass measurements.

Example 44.3 Applying the Semiempirical Binding-Energy Formula

The nucleus ^{64}Zn has a tabulated binding energy of 559.09 MeV. Use the semiempirical binding-energy formula to generate a theoretical estimate of the binding energy for this nucleus.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine bringing the separate protons and neutrons together to form a ^{64}Zn nucleus. The rest energy of the nucleus is smaller than the rest energy of the individual particles. The difference in rest energy is the binding energy.

Categorize From the text of the problem, we know to apply the liquid-drop model. This example is a substitution problem.

For the ^{64}Zn nucleus, $Z = 30$, $N = 34$, and $A = 64$. Evaluate the four terms of the semiempirical binding-energy formula:

$$C_1A = (15.7 \text{ MeV})(64) = 1\,005 \text{ MeV}$$

$$C_2A^{2/3} = (17.8 \text{ MeV})(64)^{2/3} = 285 \text{ MeV}$$

$$C_3\frac{Z(Z-1)}{A^{1/3}} = (0.71 \text{ MeV})\frac{(30)(29)}{(64)^{1/3}} = 154 \text{ MeV}$$

$$C_4\frac{(N-Z)^2}{A} = (23.6 \text{ MeV})\frac{(34-30)^2}{64} = 5.90 \text{ MeV}$$

[1]The liquid-drop model *describes* that heavy nuclei have $N > Z$. The shell model, as we shall see shortly, *explains* why that is true with a physical argument.

44.3 continued

Substitute these values into Equation 44.3: $E_b = 1\,005\text{ MeV} - 285\text{ MeV} - 154\text{ MeV} - 5.90\text{ MeV} = \boxed{560\text{ MeV}}$

This value differs from the tabulated value by less than 0.2%. Notice how the sizes of the terms decrease from the first to the fourth term. The fourth term is particularly small for this nucleus, which does not have an excessive number of neutrons.

The Shell Model

The liquid-drop model describes the general behavior of nuclear binding energies relatively well. When the binding energies are studied more closely, however, we find the following features:

- Most stable nuclei have an even value of A. Furthermore, only eight stable nuclei have odd values for both Z and N.
- Figure 44.7 shows a graph of the difference between the binding energy per nucleon calculated by Equation 44.3 and the measured binding energy. There is evidence for regularly spaced peaks in the data that are not described by the semiempirical binding-energy formula. The peaks occur at values of N or Z that have become known as **magic numbers:**

$$Z \text{ or } N = 2, 8, 20, 28, 50, 82 \tag{44.4}$$

Magic numbers

- High-precision studies of nuclear radii show deviations from the simple expression in Equation 44.1. Graphs of experimental data show peaks in the curve of radius versus N at values of N equal to the magic numbers.
- A group of *isotones* is a collection of nuclei having the same value of N and varying values of Z. When the number of stable isotones is graphed as function of N, there are peaks in the graph, again at the magic numbers in Equation 44.4.
- Several other nuclear measurements show anomalous behavior at the magic numbers.[2]

These peaks in graphs of experimental data are reminiscent of the peaks in Figure 42.20 for the ionization energy of atoms, which arose because of the shell structure of the atom. The **shell model** of the nucleus, also called the **independent-particle model,** was developed independently by two German scientists: Maria Goeppert-Mayer in 1949 and Hans Jensen (1907–1973) in 1950. Goeppert-Mayer and Jensen

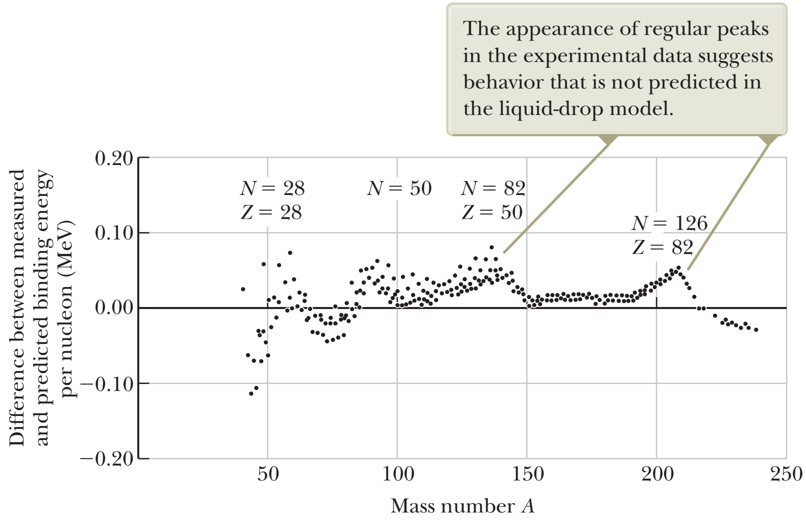


Figure 44.7 The difference between measured binding energies and those calculated from the liquid-drop model as a function of A. (Adapted from R. A. Dunlap, *The Physics of Nuclei and Particles,* Brooks/Cole, Belmont, CA, 2004.)

[2]For further details, see chapter 5 of R. A. Dunlap, *The Physics of Nuclei and Particles,* Brooks/Cole, Belmont, CA, 2004.

Maria Goeppert-Mayer
German Scientist (1906–1972)
Goeppert-Mayer was born and educated in Germany. She is best known for her development of the shell model (independent-particle model) of the nucleus, published in 1950. A similar model was simultaneously developed by Hans Jensen, another German scientist. Goeppert-Mayer and Jensen were awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1963 for their extraordinary work in understanding the structure of the nucleus.

shared the 1963 Nobel Prize in Physics for their work. In this model, each nucleon is assumed to exist in a shell, similar to an atomic shell for an electron. The nucleons exist in quantized energy states, and there are few collisions between nucleons. Obviously, the assumptions of this model differ greatly from those made in the liquid-drop model.

The quantized states occupied by the nucleons can be described by a set of quantum numbers. Because both the proton and the neutron have spin $\frac{1}{2}$, the exclusion principle can be applied to describe the allowed states (as it was for electrons in Chapter 42). That is, each state can contain only two protons (or two neutrons) having *opposite* spins (Fig. 44.8). The proton states differ from those of the neutrons because the two species move in different potential wells. The proton energy levels are farther apart than the neutron levels because the protons experience a superposition of the Coulomb force and the nuclear force, whereas the neutrons experience only the nuclear force.

One factor influencing the observed characteristics of nuclear ground states is *nuclear spin–orbit* effects. The atomic spin–orbit interaction between the spin of an electron and its orbital motion in an atom gives rise to the sodium doublet discussed in Section 42.6 and is magnetic in origin. In contrast, the nuclear spin–orbit effect for nucleons is due to the nuclear force. It is much stronger than in the atomic case, and it has opposite sign. When these effects are taken into account, the shell model is able to account for the observed magic numbers.

The shell model helps us understand why nuclei containing an even number of protons and neutrons are more stable than other nuclei. (There are 160 stable even–even isotopes.) Any particular state is filled when it contains two protons (or two neutrons) having opposite spins. An extra proton or neutron can be added to the nucleus only at the expense of increasing the energy of the nucleus. This increase in energy leads to a nucleus that is less stable than the original nucleus. A careful inspection of the stable nuclei shows that the majority have a special stability when their nucleons combine in pairs, which results in a total angular momentum of zero.

The shell model also helps us understand why nuclei tend to have more neutrons than protons. As in Figure 44.8, the proton energy levels are higher than those for neutrons due to the extra energy associated with Coulomb repulsion. This effect becomes more pronounced as Z increases. Consequently, as Z increases and higher states are filled, a proton level for a given quantum number will be much higher in energy than the neutron level for the same quantum number. In fact, it will be even higher in energy than neutron levels for higher quantum numbers. Hence, it is more energetically favorable for the nucleus to form with neutrons in the lower energy levels rather than protons in the higher energy levels, so the number of neutrons is greater than the number of protons.

More sophisticated models of the nucleus have been and continue to be developed. For example, the *collective model* combines features of the liquid-drop and shell models. The development of theoretical models of the nucleus continues to be an active area of research.

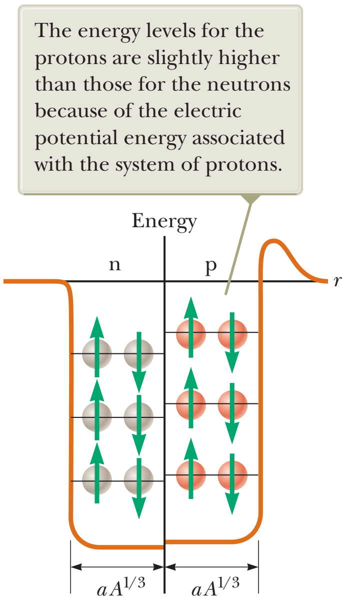


Figure 44.8 A square potential well containing 12 nucleons. The red spheres represent protons, and the gray spheres represent neutrons.

44.4 Radioactivity

In 1896, Becquerel accidentally discovered that uranyl potassium sulfate crystals emit an invisible radiation that can darken a photographic plate even though the plate is covered to exclude light. After a series of experiments, he concluded that the radiation emitted by the crystals was of a new type, one that requires no external stimulation and was so penetrating that it could darken protected photographic plates and ionize gases. This process of spontaneous emission of radiation by uranium was soon to be called **radioactivity.**

Subsequent experiments by other scientists showed that other substances were more powerfully radioactive. The most significant early investigations of this type were conducted by Marie and Pierre Curie (1859–1906). After several years of careful and laborious chemical separation processes on tons of pitchblende, a radioactive ore, the Curies reported the discovery of two previously unknown elements, both radioactive, named polonium and radium. Additional experiments, including Rutherford's famous work on alpha-particle scattering, suggested that radioactivity is the result of the *decay,* or disintegration, of unstable nuclei.

Three types of radioactive decay occur in radioactive substances: alpha (α) decay, in which the emitted particles are ^{4}He nuclei; beta (β) decay, in which the emitted particles are either electrons or positrons; and gamma (γ) decay, in which the emitted particles are high-energy photons. A **positron** is a particle like the electron in all respects except that the positron has a charge of $+e$. (The positron is the *antiparticle* of the electron; see Section 46.2.) The symbol e^- is used to designate an electron, and e^+ designates a positron.

We can distinguish among these three forms of radiation by using the scheme described in Figure 44.9. The radiation from radioactive samples that emit all three types of particles is directed into a region in which there is a magnetic field. Following the particle in a field (magnetic) analysis model, the radiation beam splits into three components, two bending in opposite directions and the third experiencing no change in direction. This simple observation shows that the radiation of the undeflected beam carries no charge (the gamma ray), the component deflected upward corresponds to positively charged particles (alpha particles), and the component deflected downward corresponds to negatively charged particles (e^-). If the beam includes a positron (e^+), it is deflected upward like the alpha particle, but it follows a different trajectory due to its smaller mass.

The three types of radiation have quite different penetrating powers. Alpha particles barely penetrate a sheet of paper, beta particles can penetrate a few millimeters of aluminum, and gamma rays can penetrate several centimeters of lead.

The decay process is probabilistic in nature and can be described with statistical calculations for a radioactive substance of macroscopic size containing a large number of radioactive nuclei. For such large numbers, the rate at which a particular decay process occurs in a sample is proportional to the number of radioactive nuclei present (that is, the number of nuclei that have not yet decayed). If N is the number of undecayed radioactive nuclei present at some instant, the rate of change of N with time is

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = -\lambda N \tag{44.5}$$

where λ, called the **decay constant,** is the probability of decay per nucleus per second. The negative sign indicates that dN/dt is negative; that is, N decreases in time.

Equation 44.5 can be written in the form

$$\frac{dN}{N} = -\lambda\, dt$$

Marie Curie
Polish Scientist (1867–1934)
In 1903, Marie Curie shared the Nobel Prize in Physics with her husband, Pierre, and with Becquerel for their studies of radioactive substances. In 1911, she was awarded a Nobel Prize in Chemistry for the discovery of radium and polonium.

Pitfall Prevention 44.3
Rays or Particles? Early in the history of nuclear physics, the term *radiation* was used to describe the emanations from radioactive nuclei. We now know that alpha radiation and beta radiation involve the emission of particles with nonzero rest energy. Even though they are not examples of electromagnetic radiation, the use of the term *radiation* for all three types of emission is deeply entrenched in our language and in the physics community.

Pitfall Prevention 44.4
Notation Warning In Section 44.1, we introduced the symbol N as an integer representing the number of neutrons in a nucleus. In this discussion, the symbol N represents the number of undecayed nuclei in a radioactive sample remaining after some time interval. As you read further, be sure to consider the context to determine the appropriate meaning for the symbol N.

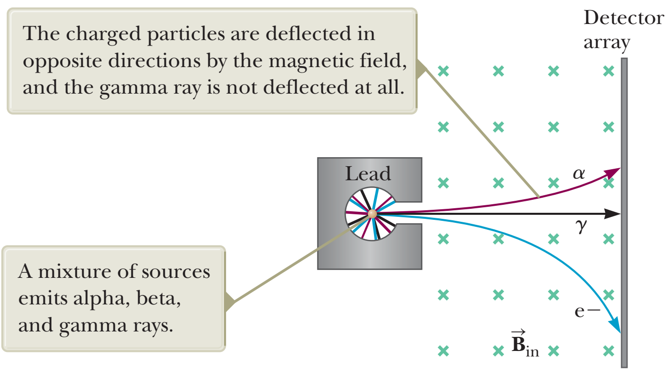


Figure 44.9 The radiation from radioactive sources can be separated into three components by using a magnetic field to deflect the charged particles. The detector array at the right records the events.

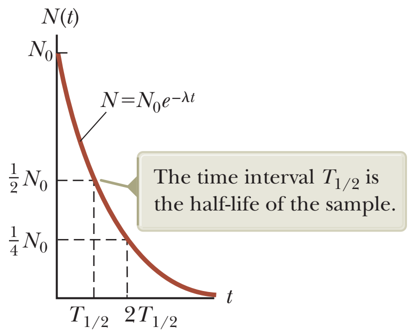


Figure 44.10 Plot of the exponential decay of radioactive nuclei. The vertical axis represents the number of undecayed radioactive nuclei present at any time t, and the horizontal axis is time.

which, upon integration, gives

Exponential behavior of the number of undecayed nuclei

$$N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t} \tag{44.6}$$

where the constant N_0 represents the number of undecayed radioactive nuclei at $t = 0$. Equation 44.6 shows that the number of undecayed radioactive nuclei in a sample decreases exponentially with time. The plot of N versus t shown in Figure 44.10 illustrates the exponential nature of the decay. The curve is similar to that for the time variation of electric charge on a discharging capacitor in an RC circuit, as studied in Section 28.4.

The **decay rate** R, which is the number of decays per second, can be obtained by combining Equations 44.5 and 44.6:

Exponential behavior of the decay rate

$$R = \left|\frac{dN}{dt}\right| = \lambda N = \lambda N_0 e^{-\lambda t} = R_0 e^{-\lambda t} \tag{44.7}$$

where $R_0 = \lambda N_0$ is the decay rate at $t = 0$. The decay rate R of a sample is often referred to as its **activity.** Note that both N and R decrease exponentially with time.

Another parameter useful in characterizing nuclear decay is the **half-life** $T_{1/2}$:

Pitfall Prevention 44.5

Half-life It is *not* true that all the original nuclei have decayed after two half-lives! In one half-life, half of the original nuclei will decay. In the second half-life, half of those remaining will decay, leaving $\frac{1}{4}$ of the original number.

The **half-life** of a radioactive substance is the time interval during which half of a given number of radioactive nuclei decay.

To find an expression for the half-life, we first set $N = N_0/2$ and $t = T_{1/2}$ in Equation 44.6 to give

$$\frac{N_0}{2} = N_0 e^{-\lambda T_{1/2}}$$

Canceling the N_0 factors and then taking the reciprocal of both sides, we obtain $e^{\lambda T_{1/2}} = 2$. Taking the natural logarithm of both sides gives

Half-life

$$T_{1/2} = \frac{\ln 2}{\lambda} = \frac{0.693}{\lambda} \tag{44.8}$$

After a time interval equal to one half-life, there are $N_0/2$ radioactive nuclei remaining (by definition); after two half-lives, half of these remaining nuclei have decayed and $N_0/4$ radioactive nuclei are left; after three half-lives, $N_0/8$ are left; and so on. In general, after n half-lives, the number of undecayed radioactive nuclei remaining is

$$N = N_0\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^n \tag{44.9}$$

where n can be an integer or a noninteger.

A frequently used unit of activity is the **curie** (Ci), defined as

The curie

$$1 \text{ Ci} \equiv 3.7 \times 10^{10} \text{ decays/s}$$

This value was originally selected because it is the approximate activity of 1 g of radium. The SI unit of activity is the **becquerel** (Bq):

The becquerel

$$1 \text{ Bq} \equiv 1 \text{ decay/s}$$

Therefore, 1 Ci $= 3.7 \times 10^{10}$ Bq. The curie is a rather large unit, and the more frequently used activity units are the millicurie and the microcurie.

Quick Quiz 44.2 On your birthday, you measure the activity of a sample of ^{210}Bi, which has a half-life of 5.01 days. The activity you measure is 1.000 μCi. What is the activity of this sample on your next birthday? **(a)** 1.000 μCi **(b)** 0 **(c)** $\sim$ 0.2 μCi **(d)** $\sim$ 0.01 μCi **(e)** $\sim 10^{-22}$ μCi

Example 44.4 How Many Nuclei Are Left?

The isotope carbon-14, $^{14}_{6}$C, is radioactive and has a half-life of 5 730 years. If you start with a sample of 1 000 carbon-14 nuclei, how many nuclei will still be undecayed in 25 000 years?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The time interval of 25 000 years is much longer than the half-life, so only a small fraction of the originally undecayed nuclei will remain.

Categorize The text of the problem allows us to categorize this example as a substitution problem involving radioactive decay.

Analyze Divide the time interval by the half-life to determine the number of half-lives:

$$n = \frac{25\,000 \text{ yr}}{5\,730 \text{ yr}} = 4.363$$

Determine how many undecayed nuclei are left after this many half-lives using Equation 44.9:

$$N = N_0\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^n = 1\,000\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^{4.363} = \boxed{49}$$

Finalize As we have mentioned, radioactive decay is a probabilistic process and accurate statistical predictions are possible only with a very large number of atoms. The original sample in this example contains only 1 000 nuclei, which is certainly not a very large number. Therefore, if you counted the number of undecayed nuclei remaining after 25 000 years, it might not be exactly 49.

Example 44.5 The Activity of Carbon

At time $t = 0$, a radioactive sample contains 3.50 μg of pure $^{11}_{6}$C, which has a half-life of 20.4 min.

(A) Determine the number N_0 of nuclei in the sample at $t = 0$.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The half-life is relatively short, so the number of undecayed nuclei drops rapidly. The molar mass of $^{11}_{6}$C is approximately 11.0 g/mol.

Categorize We evaluate results using equations developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Find the number of moles in 3.50 μg of pure $^{11}_{6}$C:

$$n = \frac{3.50 \times 10^{-6} \text{ g}}{11.0 \text{ g/mol}} = 3.18 \times 10^{-7} \text{ mol}$$

Find the number of undecayed nuclei in this amount of pure $^{11}_{6}$C:

$$N_0 = (3.18 \times 10^{-7} \text{ mol})(6.02 \times 10^{23} \text{ nuclei/mol}) = \boxed{1.92 \times 10^{17} \text{ nuclei}}$$

(B) What is the activity of the sample initially and after 8.00 h?

SOLUTION

Find the initial activity of the sample using Equations 44.7 and 44.8:

$$R_0 = \lambda N_0 = \frac{0.693}{T_{1/2}} N_0 = \frac{0.693}{20.4 \text{ min}}\left(\frac{1 \text{ min}}{60 \text{ s}}\right)(1.92 \times 10^{17})$$

$$= (5.66 \times 10^{-4} \text{ s}^{-1})(1.92 \times 10^{17}) = \boxed{1.09 \times 10^{14} \text{ Bq}}$$

continued

44.5 continued

Use Equation 44.7 to find the activity at $t = 8.00\ \text{h} = 2.88 \times 10^4\ \text{s}$:

$$R = R_0 e^{-\lambda t} = (1.09 \times 10^{14}\ \text{Bq})e^{-(5.66\times10^{-4}\ \text{s}^{-1})(2.88\times10^4\ \text{s})} = \boxed{8.96 \times 10^6\ \text{Bq}}$$

Example 44.6 A Radioactive Isotope of Iodine

A sample of the isotope ^{131}I, which has a half-life of 8.04 days, has an activity of 5.0 mCi at the time of shipment. Upon receipt of the sample at a medical laboratory, the activity is 2.1 mCi. How much time has elapsed between the two measurements?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The sample is continuously decaying as it is in transit. The decrease in the activity is 58% during the time interval between shipment and receipt, so we expect the elapsed time to be greater than the half-life of 8.04 d.

Categorize The stated activity corresponds to many decays per second, so N is large and we can categorize this problem as one in which we can use our statistical analysis of radioactivity.

Analyze Solve Equation 44.7 for the ratio of the final activity to the initial activity:

$$\frac{R}{R_0} = e^{-\lambda t}$$

Take the natural logarithm of both sides:

$$\ln\left(\frac{R}{R_0}\right) = -\lambda t$$

Solve for the time t:

$$(1)\quad t = -\frac{1}{\lambda}\ln\left(\frac{R}{R_0}\right)$$

Use Equation 44.8 to substitute for λ:

$$t = -\frac{T_{1/2}}{\ln 2}\ln\left(\frac{R}{R_0}\right)$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$t = -\frac{8.04\ \text{d}}{0.693}\ln\left(\frac{2.1\ \text{mCi}}{5.0\ \text{mCi}}\right) = \boxed{10\ \text{d}}$$

Finalize This result is indeed greater than the half-life, as expected. This example demonstrates the difficulty in shipping radioactive samples with short half-lives. If the shipment is delayed by several days, only a small fraction of the sample might remain upon receipt. This difficulty can be addressed by shipping a combination of isotopes in which the desired isotope is the product of a decay occurring within the sample. It is possible for the desired isotope to be in *equilibrium,* in which case it is created at the same rate as it decays. Therefore, the amount of the desired isotope remains constant during the shipping process and subsequent storage. When needed, the desired isotope can be separated from the rest of the sample; its decay from the initial activity begins at this point rather than upon shipment.

44.5 The Decay Processes

As we stated in Section 44.4, a radioactive nucleus spontaneously decays by one of three processes: alpha decay, beta decay, or gamma decay. Figure 44.11 shows a close-up view of a portion of Figure 44.4 from $Z = 65$ to $Z = 80$. The black circles are the stable nuclei seen in Figure 44.4. In addition, unstable nuclei above and below the line of stability for each value of Z are shown. Above the line of stability, the blue circles show unstable nuclei that are neutron-rich and undergo a beta decay process in which an electron is emitted. Below the black circles are red circles corresponding to proton-rich unstable nuclei that primarily undergo a beta-decay process in which a positron is emitted or a competing process called electron capture. Beta decay and electron capture are described in more detail below. Further below the line of stability (with a few exceptions) are tan circles that represent very proton-rich nuclei for which the primary decay mechanism is alpha decay, which we discuss first.

Alpha Decay

A nucleus emitting an alpha particle ($^4_2$He) loses two protons and two neutrons. Therefore, the atomic number Z decreases by 2, the mass number A decreases by 4, and the neutron number decreases by 2. The decay can be written

$$^A_Z\text{X} \rightarrow {}^{A-4}_{Z-2}\text{Y} + {}^4_2\text{He} \tag{44.10}$$

where X is called the **parent nucleus** and Y the **daughter nucleus.** As a general rule in any decay expression such as this one, (1) the sum of the mass numbers A must be the same on both sides of the decay and (2) the sum of the atomic numbers Z must be the same on both sides of the decay. As examples, ^{238}U and ^{226}Ra are both alpha emitters and decay according to the schemes

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{234}_{90}\text{Th} + {}^4_2\text{He} \tag{44.11}$$

$$^{226}_{88}\text{Ra} \rightarrow {}^{222}_{86}\text{Rn} + {}^4_2\text{He} \tag{44.12}$$

The decay of ^{226}Ra is shown in Figure 44.12.

When the nucleus of one element changes into the nucleus of another as happens in alpha decay, the process is called **spontaneous decay.** In any spontaneous decay, relativistic energy and momentum of the parent nucleus as an isolated system must be conserved. The final components of the system are the daughter nucleus and the alpha particle. If we call M_X the mass of the parent nucleus, M_Y the mass of the daughter nucleus, and M_α the mass of the alpha particle, we can define the **disintegration energy** Q of the system as

$$Q = (M_X - M_Y - M_\alpha)c^2 \tag{44.13}$$

The energy Q is in joules when the masses are in kilograms and c is the speed of light, 3.00×10^8 m/s. When the masses are expressed in atomic mass units u, however, Q can be calculated in MeV using the expression

$$Q = (M_X - M_Y - M_\alpha) \times 931.494 \text{ MeV/u} \tag{44.14}$$

Table 44.2 (page 1396) contains information on selected isotopes, including masses of neutral atoms that can be used in Equation 44.14 and similar equations.

The disintegration energy Q is the amount of rest energy transformed and appears in the form of kinetic energy in the daughter nucleus and the alpha particle and is sometimes referred to as the Q value of the nuclear decay. Consider the case of the ^{226}Ra decay described in Figure 44.12. If the parent nucleus is at rest before the decay, the total kinetic energy of the products is 4.87 MeV. (See Example 44.7.) Most of this kinetic energy is associated with the alpha particle because this particle is much less massive than the daughter nucleus ^{222}Rn. That is, because the system is also isolated in terms of momentum, the lighter alpha particle recoils with a much higher speed than does the daughter nucleus. Generally, less massive particles carry off most of the energy in nuclear decays.

Experimental observations of alpha-particle energies show a number of discrete energies rather than a single energy because the daughter nucleus may be left in an

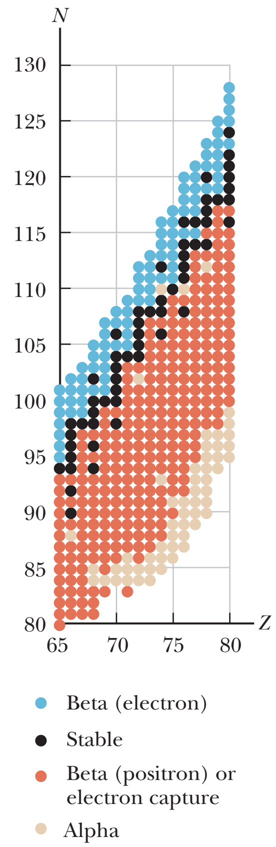


Figure 44.11 A close-up view of the line of stability in Figure 44.4 from $Z = 65$ to $Z = 80$. The black dots represent stable nuclei as in Figure 44.4. The other colored dots represent unstable isotopes above and below the line of stability, with the color of the dot indicating the primary means of decay.

Pitfall Prevention 44.6

Another Q We have seen the symbol Q before, but this use is a brand-new meaning for this symbol: the disintegration energy. In this context, it is not heat, charge, or quality factor for a resonance, for which we have used Q before.

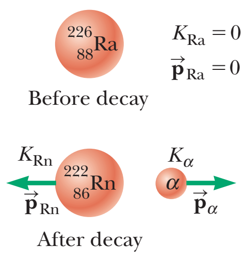


Figure 44.12 The alpha decay of radium-226. The radium nucleus is initially at rest. After the decay, the radon nucleus has kinetic energy K_{Rn} and momentum $\vec{p}_{Rn}$ and the alpha particle has kinetic energy K_α and momentum $\vec{p}_\alpha$.

Table 44.2 **Chemical and Nuclear Information for Selected Isotopes**

Atomic Number Z	Element	Chemical Symbol	Mass Number A (* means radioactive)	Mass of Neutral Atom (u)	Percent Abundance	Half-life, if Radioactive $T_{1/2}$
−1	electron	e^-	0	0.000 549		
0	neutron	n	1*	1.008 665		614 s
1	hydrogen	$^1H = p$	1	1.007 825	99.988 5	
	[deuterium	$^2H = D$]	2	2.014 102	0.011 5	
	[tritium	$^3H = T$]	3*	3.016 049		12.33 yr
2	helium	He	3	3.016 029	0.000 137	
	[alpha particle	$\alpha = {}^4He$]	4	4.002 603	99.999 863	
			6*	6.018 889		0.81 s
3	lithium	Li	6	6.015 123	7.5	
			7	7.016 005	92.5	
4	beryllium	Be	7*	7.016 930		53.3 d
			8*	8.005 305		10^{-17} s
			9	9.012 182	100	
5	boron	B	10	10.012 937	19.9	
			11	11.009 305	80.1	
6	carbon	C	11*	11.011 434		20.4 min
			12	12.000 000	98.93	
			13	13.003 355	1.07	
			14*	14.003 242		5 730 yr
7	nitrogen	N	13*	13.005 739		9.96 min
			14	14.003 074	99.632	
			15	15.000 109	0.368	
8	oxygen	O	14*	14.008 596		70.6 s
			15*	15.003 066		122 s
			16	15.994 915	99.757	
			17	16.999 132	0.038	
			18	17.999 161	0.205	
9	fluorine	F	18*	18.000 938		109.8 min
			19	18.998 403	100	
10	neon	Ne	20	19.992 440	90.48	
11	sodium	Na	23	22.989 769	100	
12	magnesium	Mg	23*	22.994 124		11.3 s
			24	23.985 042	78.99	
13	aluminum	Al	27	26.981 539	100	
14	silicon	Si	27*	26.986 705		4.2 s
15	phosphorus	P	30*	29.978 314		2.50 min
			31	30.973 762	100	
			32*	31.973 907		14.26 d
16	sulfur	S	32	31.972 071	94.93	
19	potassium	K	39	38.963 707	93.258 1	
			40*	39.963 998	0.011 7	1.28×10^9 yr
20	calcium	Ca	40	39.962 591	96.941	
			42	41.958 618	0.647	
			43	42.958 767	0.135	
25	manganese	Mn	55	54.938 045	100	
26	iron	Fe	56	55.934 938	91.754	
			57	56.935 394	2.119	

continued

Table 44.2 Chemical and Nuclear Information for Selected Isotopes *(continued)*

Atomic Number Z	Element	Chemical Symbol	Mass Number A (* means radioactive)	Mass of Neutral Atom (u)	Percent Abundance	Half-life, if Radioactive $T_{1/2}$
27	cobalt	Co	57*	56.936 291		272 d
			59	58.933 195	100	
			60*	59.933 817		5.27 yr
28	nickel	Ni	58	57.935 343	68.076 9	
			60	59.930 786	26.223 1	
29	copper	Cu	63	62.929 598	69.17	
			64*	63.929 764		12.7 h
			65	64.927 789	30.83	
30	zinc	Zn	64	63.929 142	48.63	
37	rubidium	Rb	87*	86.909 181	27.83	
38	strontium	Sr	87	86.908 877	7.00	
			88	87.905 612	82.58	
			90*	89.907 738		29.1 yr
41	niobium	Nb	93	92.906 378	100	
42	molybdenum	Mo	94	93.905 088	9.25	
44	ruthenium	Ru	98	97.905 287	1.87	
54	xenon	Xe	136*	135.907 219		2.4×10^{21} yr
55	cesium	Cs	137*	136.907 090		30 yr
56	barium	Ba	137	136.905 827	11.232	
58	cerium	Ce	140	139.905 439	88.450	
59	praseodymium	Pr	141	140.907 653	100	
60	neodymium	Nd	144*	143.910 087	23.8	2.3×10^{15} yr
61	promethium	Pm	145*	144.912 749		17.7 yr
79	gold	Au	197	196.966 569	100	
80	mercury	Hg	198	197.966 769	9.97	
			202	201.970 643	29.86	
82	lead	Pb	206	205.974 465	24.1	
			207	206.975 897	22.1	
			208	207.976 652	52.4	
			214*	213.999 805		26.8 min
83	bismuth	Bi	209	208.980 399	100	
84	polonium	Po	210*	209.982 874		138.38 d
			216*	216.001 915		0.145 s
			218*	218.008 973		3.10 min
86	radon	Rn	220*	220.011 394		55.6 s
			222*	222.017 578		3.823 d
88	radium	Ra	226*	226.025 410		1 600 yr
90	thorium	Th	232*	232.038 055	100	1.40×10^{10} yr
			234*	234.043 601		24.1 d
92	uranium	U	234*	234.040 952		2.45×10^{5} yr
			235*	235.043 930	0.720 0	7.04×10^{8} yr
			236*	236.045 568		2.34×10^{7} yr
			238*	238.050 788	99.274 5	4.47×10^{9} yr
93	neptunium	Np	236*	236.046 570		1.15×10^{5} yr
			237*	237.048 173		2.14×10^{6} yr
94	plutonium	Pu	239*	239.052 163		24 120 yr

Source: G. Audi, A. H. Wapstra, and C. Thibault, "The AME2003 Atomic Mass Evaluation," *Nuclear Physics A* **729:**337–676, 2003.

excited quantum state after the decay. As a result, not all the disintegration energy is available as kinetic energy of the alpha particle and daughter nucleus. The emission of an alpha particle is followed by one or more gamma-ray photons (discussed shortly) as the excited nucleus decays to the ground state. The observed discrete alpha-particle energies represent evidence of the quantized nature of the nucleus and allow a determination of the energies of the quantum states.

If one assumes ^{238}U (or any other alpha emitter) decays by emitting either a proton or a neutron, the mass of the decay products would exceed that of the parent nucleus, corresponding to a negative Q value. A negative Q value indicates that such a proposed decay does not occur spontaneously.

Quick Quiz 44.3 Which of the following is the correct daughter nucleus associated with the alpha decay of $^{157}_{72}$Hf? **(a)** $^{153}_{72}$Hf **(b)** $^{153}_{70}$Yb **(c)** $^{157}_{70}$Yb

Example 44.7 The Energy Liberated When Radium Decays AM

The ^{226}Ra nucleus undergoes alpha decay according to Equation 44.12.

(A) Calculate the Q value for this process. From Table 44.2, the masses are 226.025 410 u for ^{226}Ra, 222.017 578 u for ^{222}Rn, and 4.002 603 u for $^{4}_{2}$He.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Study Figure 44.12 to understand the process of alpha decay in this nucleus.

Categorize The parent nucleus is an *isolated system* that decays into an alpha particle and a daughter nucleus. The system is isolated in terms of both *energy* and *momentum*.

Analyze Evaluate Q using Equation 44.14:

$$Q = (M_X - M_Y - M_\alpha) \times 931.494 \text{ MeV/u}$$
$$= (226.025\,410 \text{ u} - 222.017\,578 \text{ u} - 4.002\,603 \text{ u}) \times 931.494 \text{ MeV/u}$$
$$= (0.005\,229 \text{ u}) \times 931.494 \text{ MeV/u} = \boxed{4.87 \text{ MeV}}$$

(B) What is the kinetic energy of the alpha particle after the decay?

Analyze The value of 4.87 MeV is the disintegration energy for the decay. It includes the kinetic energy of both the alpha particle and the daughter nucleus after the decay. Therefore, the kinetic energy of the alpha particle would be *less* than 4.87 MeV.

Set up a conservation of momentum equation, noting that the initial momentum of the system is zero:

$$(1)\quad 0 = M_Y v_Y - M_\alpha v_\alpha$$

Set the disintegration energy equal to the sum of the kinetic energies of the alpha particle and the daughter nucleus (assuming the daughter nucleus is left in the ground state):

$$(2)\quad Q = \tfrac{1}{2}M_\alpha v_\alpha^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}M_Y v_Y^2$$

Solve Equation (1) for v_Y and substitute into Equation (2):

$$Q = \tfrac{1}{2}M_\alpha v_\alpha^2 + \tfrac{1}{2}M_Y\left(\frac{M_\alpha v_\alpha}{M_Y}\right)^2 = \tfrac{1}{2}M_\alpha v_\alpha^2\left(1 + \frac{M_\alpha}{M_Y}\right)$$

$$Q = K_\alpha\left(\frac{M_Y + M_\alpha}{M_Y}\right)$$

Solve for the kinetic energy of the alpha particle:

$$K_\alpha = Q\left(\frac{M_Y}{M_Y + M_\alpha}\right)$$

Evaluate this kinetic energy for the specific decay of ^{226}Ra that we are exploring in this example:

$$K_\alpha = (4.87 \text{ MeV})\left(\frac{222}{222 + 4}\right) = \boxed{4.78 \text{ MeV}}$$

Finalize The kinetic energy of the alpha particle is indeed less than the disintegration energy, but notice that the alpha particle carries away *most* of the energy available in the decay.

To understand the mechanism of alpha decay, let's model the parent nucleus as a system consisting of (1) the alpha particle, already formed as an entity within the nucleus, and (2) the daughter nucleus that will result when the alpha particle is emitted. Figure 44.13 shows a plot of potential energy versus separation distance r between the alpha particle and the daughter nucleus, where the distance marked R is the range of the nuclear force. The curve represents the combined effects of (1) the repulsive Coulomb force, which gives the positive part of the curve for $r > R$, and (2) the attractive nuclear force, which causes the curve to be negative for $r < R$. As shown in Example 44.7, a typical disintegration energy Q is approximately 5 MeV, which is the approximate kinetic energy of the alpha particle, represented by the lower dashed line in Figure 44.13.

According to classical physics, the alpha particle is trapped in a potential well. How, then, does it ever escape from the nucleus? The answer to this question was first provided by George Gamow (1904–1968) in 1928 and independently by R. W. Gurney (1898–1953) and E. U. Condon (1902–1974) in 1929, using quantum mechanics. In the view of quantum mechanics, there is always some probability that a particle can tunnel through a barrier (Section 41.5). That is exactly how we can describe alpha decay: the alpha particle tunnels through the barrier in Figure 44.13, escaping the nucleus. Furthermore, this model agrees with the observation that higher-energy alpha particles come from nuclei with shorter half-lives. For higher-energy alpha particles in Figure 44.13, the barrier is narrower and the probability is higher that tunneling occurs. The higher probability translates to a shorter half-life.

As an example, consider the decays of ^{238}U and ^{226}Ra in Equations 44.11 and 44.12, along with the corresponding half-lives and alpha-particle energies:

$$^{238}\text{U}: \quad T_{1/2} = 4.47 \times 10^9 \text{ yr} \qquad K_\alpha = 4.20 \text{ MeV}$$

$$^{226}\text{Ra}: \quad T_{1/2} = 1.60 \times 10^3 \text{ yr} \qquad K_\alpha = 4.78 \text{ MeV}$$

Notice that a relatively small difference in alpha-particle energy is associated with a tremendous difference of six orders of magnitude in the half-life. The origin of this effect can be understood as follows. Figure 44.13 shows that the curve below an alpha-particle energy of 5 MeV has a slope with a relatively small magnitude. Therefore, a small difference in energy on the vertical axis has a relatively large effect on the width of the potential barrier. Second, recall Equation 41.22, which describes the exponential dependence of the probability of transmission on the barrier width. These two factors combine to give the very sensitive relationship between half-life and alpha-particle energy that the data above suggest.

A life-saving application of alpha decay is the household smoke detector, shown in Figure 44.14. The detector consists of an ionization chamber, a sensitive current detector, and an alarm. A weak radioactive source (usually $^{241}_{95}$Am) ionizes the air in the chamber of the detector, creating charged particles. A voltage is maintained between the plates inside the chamber, setting up a small but detectable current in the external circuit due to the ions acting as charge carriers between the plates. As long as the current is maintained, the alarm is deactivated. If smoke drifts into the chamber, however, the ions become attached to the smoke particles. These heavier particles do not drift as readily as do the lighter ions, which causes a decrease in the detector current. The external circuit senses this decrease in current and sets off the alarm.

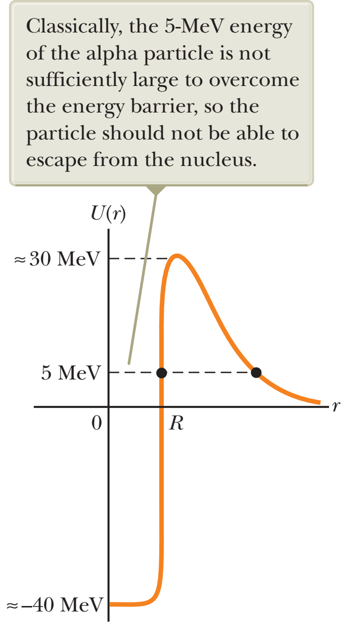
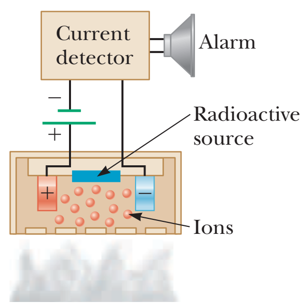


Figure 44.13 Potential energy versus separation distance for a system consisting of an alpha particle and a daughter nucleus. The alpha particle escapes by tunneling through the barrier.

© Michael Dalton/Fundamental Photographs, NYC

a



b

Figure 44.14 (a) A smoke detector uses alpha decay to determine whether smoke is in the air. The alpha source is in the black cylinder at the right. (b) Smoke entering the chamber reduces the detected current, causing the alarm to sound.

Beta Decay

When a radioactive nucleus undergoes beta decay, the daughter nucleus contains the same number of nucleons as the parent nucleus but the atomic number is changed by 1, which means that the number of protons changes:

$$^{A}_{Z}\text{X} \rightarrow \, ^{A}_{Z+1}\text{Y} + e^- \quad \text{(incomplete expression)} \tag{44.15}$$

$$^{A}_{Z}\text{X} \rightarrow \, ^{A}_{Z-1}\text{Y} + e^+ \quad \text{(incomplete expression)} \tag{44.16}$$

where, as mentioned in Section 44.4, e^- designates an electron and e^+ designates a positron, with *beta particle* being the general term referring to either. *Beta decay is not described completely by these expressions.* We shall give reasons for this statement shortly.

As with alpha decay, the nucleon number and total charge are both conserved in beta decays. Because A does not change but Z does, we conclude that in beta decay, either a neutron changes to a proton (Eq. 44.15) or a proton changes to a neutron (Eq. 44.16). Note that the electron or positron emitted in these decays is not present beforehand in the nucleus; it is created in the process of the decay from the rest energy of the decaying nucleus. Two typical beta-decay processes are

$$ {}^{14}_{6}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{14}_{7}\text{N} + e^- \quad \text{(incomplete expression)} \tag{44.17}$$

$$ {}^{12}_{7}\text{N} \rightarrow {}^{12}_{6}\text{C} + e^+ \quad \text{(incomplete expression)} \tag{44.18}$$

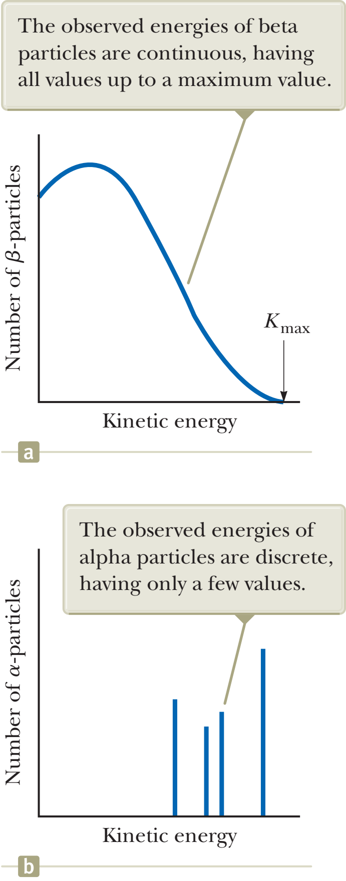


Figure 44.15 (a) Distribution of beta-particle energies in a typical beta decay. (b) Distribution of alpha-particle energies in a typical alpha decay.

Let's consider the energy of the system undergoing beta decay before and after the decay. As with alpha decay, energy of the isolated system must be conserved. Experimentally, it is found that beta particles from a single type of nucleus are emitted over a continuous range of energies (Fig. 44.15a), as opposed to alpha decay, in which the alpha particles are emitted with discrete energies (Fig. 44.15b). The kinetic energy of the system after the decay is equal to the decrease in rest energy of the system, that is, the Q value. Because all decaying nuclei in the sample have the same initial mass, however, *the Q value must be the same for each decay.* So, why do the emitted particles have the range of kinetic energies shown in Figure 44.15a? The isolated system model and the law of conservation of energy seem to be violated! It becomes worse: further analysis of the decay processes described by Equations 44.15 and 44.16 shows that the laws of conservation of angular momentum (spin) and linear momentum are also violated!

After a great deal of experimental and theoretical study, Pauli in 1930 proposed that a third particle must be present in the decay products to carry away the "missing" energy and momentum. Fermi later named this particle the **neutrino** (little neutral one) because it had to be electrically neutral and have little or no mass. Although it eluded detection for many years, the neutrino (symbol ν, Greek nu) was finally detected experimentally in 1956 by Frederick Reines (1918–1998), who received the Nobel Prize in Physics for this work in 1995. The neutrino has the following properties:

Properties of the neutrino

- It has zero electric charge.
- Its mass is either zero (in which case it travels at the speed of light) or very small; much recent persuasive experimental evidence suggests that the neutrino mass is not zero. Current experiments place the upper bound of the mass of the neutrino at approximately 7 eV/c^2.
- It has a spin of $\frac{1}{2}$, which allows the law of conservation of angular momentum to be satisfied in beta decay.
- It interacts very weakly with matter and is therefore very difficult to detect.

We can now write the beta-decay processes (Eqs. 44.15 and 44.16) in their correct and complete form:

Beta decay processes

$$ {}^{A}_{Z}\text{X} \rightarrow {}_{Z+1}^{\ \ A}\text{Y} + e^- + \bar{\nu} \quad \text{(complete expression)} \tag{44.19}$$

$$ {}^{A}_{Z}\text{X} \rightarrow {}_{Z-1}^{\ \ A}\text{Y} + e^+ + \nu \quad \text{(complete expression)} \tag{44.20}$$

as well as those for carbon-14 and nitrogen-12 (Eqs. 44.17 and 44.18):

$$ {}^{14}_{6}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{14}_{7}\text{N} + e^- + \bar{\nu} \quad \text{(complete expression)} \tag{44.21}$$

$$ {}^{12}_{7}\text{N} \rightarrow {}^{12}_{6}\text{C} + e^+ + \nu \quad \text{(complete expression)} \tag{44.22}$$

where the symbol $\bar{\nu}$ represents the **antineutrino,** the antiparticle to the neutrino. We shall discuss antiparticles further in Chapter 46. For now, it suffices to say that a neutrino is emitted in positron decay and an antineutrino is emitted in electron

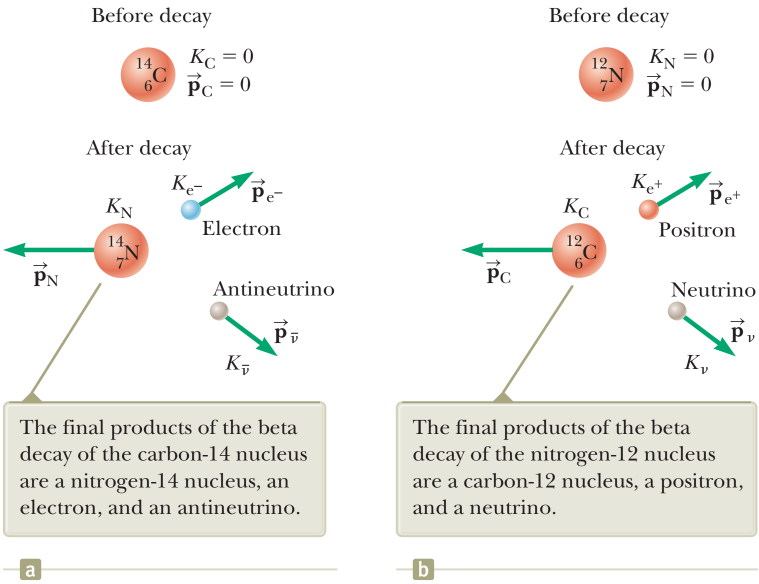


Figure 44.16 (a) The beta decay of carbon-14. (b) The beta decay of nitrogen-12.

decay. As with alpha decay, the decays listed above are analyzed by applying conservation laws, but relativistic expressions must be used for beta particles because their kinetic energy is large (typically 1 MeV) compared with their rest energy of 0.511 MeV. Figure 44.16 shows a pictorial representation of the decays described by Equations 44.21 and 44.22.

In Equation 44.19, the number of protons has increased by one and the number of neutrons has decreased by one. We can write the fundamental process of e^- decay in terms of a neutron changing into a proton as follows:

$$\text{n} \rightarrow p + e^- + \bar{\nu} \tag{44.23}$$

The electron and the antineutrino are ejected from the nucleus, with the net result that there is one more proton and one fewer neutron, consistent with the changes in Z and $A - Z$. A similar process occurs in e^+ decay, with a proton changing into a neutron, a positron, and a neutrino. This latter process can only occur within the nucleus, with the result that the nuclear mass decreases. It cannot occur for an isolated proton because its mass is less than that of the neutron.

A process that competes with e^+ decay is **electron capture,** which occurs when a parent nucleus captures one of its own orbital electrons and emits a neutrino. The final product after decay is a nucleus whose charge is $Z - 1$:

$$^{A}_{Z}\text{X} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e} \rightarrow {}_{Z-1}^{\;\;A}\text{Y} + \nu \tag{44.24}$$

◀ **Electron capture**

In most cases, it is a K-shell electron that is captured and the process is therefore referred to as **K capture.** One example is the capture of an electron by $^{7}_{4}$Be:

$$^{7}_{4}\text{Be} + {}^{0}_{-1}\text{e} \rightarrow {}^{7}_{3}\text{Li} + \nu$$

Because the neutrino is very difficult to detect, electron capture is usually observed by the x-rays given off as higher-shell electrons cascade downward to fill the vacancy created in the K shell.

Finally, we specify Q values for the beta-decay processes. The Q values for e^- decay and electron capture are given by $Q = (M_X - M_Y)c^2$, where M_X and M_Y are the masses of neutral atoms. In e^- decay, the parent nucleus experiences an increase in atomic number and, for the atom to become neutral, an electron must be absorbed by the atom. If the neutral parent atom and an electron (which will eventually combine with the daughter to form a neutral atom) is the initial system and the final system is the neutral daughter atom and the beta-ejected electron, the system contains a free electron both before and after the decay. Therefore, in subtracting the initial and final masses of the system, this electron mass cancels.

Pitfall Prevention 44.7

Mass Number of the Electron An alternative notation for an electron, as we see in Equation 44.24, is the symbol $^{0}_{-1}$e, which does not imply that the electron has zero rest energy. The mass of the electron is so much smaller than that of the lightest nucleon, however, that we approximate it as zero in the context of nuclear decays and reactions.

The Q values for e$^+$ decay are given by $Q = (M_X - M_Y - 2m_e)c^2$. The extra term $-2m_ec^2$ in this expression is necessary because the atomic number of the parent decreases by one when the daughter is formed. After it is formed by the decay, the daughter atom sheds one electron to form a neutral atom. Therefore, the final products are the daughter atom, the shed electron, and the ejected positron.

These relationships are useful in determining whether or not a process is energetically possible. For example, the Q value for proposed e$^+$ decay for a particular parent nucleus may turn out to be negative. In that case, this decay does not occur. The Q value for electron capture for this parent nucleus, however, may be a positive number, so electron capture can occur even though e$^+$ decay is not possible. Such is the case for the decay of ${}^{7}_{4}$Be shown above.

Quick Quiz 44.4 Which of the following is the correct daughter nucleus associated with the beta decay of ${}^{184}_{72}$Hf? **(a)** ${}^{183}_{72}$Hf **(b)** ${}^{183}_{73}$Ta **(c)** ${}^{184}_{73}$Ta

Carbon Dating

The beta decay of ^{14}C (Eq. 44.21) is commonly used to date organic samples. Cosmic rays in the upper atmosphere cause nuclear reactions (Section 44.7) that create ^{14}C. The ratio of ^{14}C to ^{12}C in the carbon dioxide molecules of our atmosphere has a constant value of approximately $r_0 = 1.3 \times 10^{-12}$. The carbon atoms in all living organisms have this same ^{14}C/^{12}C ratio r_0 because the organisms continuously exchange carbon dioxide with their surroundings. When an organism dies, however, it no longer absorbs ^{14}C from the atmosphere, and so the ^{14}C/^{12}C ratio decreases as the ^{14}C decays with a half-life of 5 730 yr. It is therefore possible to measure the age of a material by measuring its ^{14}C activity. Using this technique, scientists have been able to identify samples of wood, charcoal, bone, and shell as having lived from 1 000 to 25 000 years ago. This knowledge has helped us reconstruct the history of living organisms—including humans—during this time span.

A particularly interesting example is the dating of the Dead Sea Scrolls. This group of manuscripts was discovered by a shepherd in 1947. Translation showed them to be religious documents, including most of the books of the Old Testament. Because of their historical and religious significance, scholars wanted to know their age. Carbon dating applied to the material in which they were wrapped established their age at approximately 1 950 yr.

Conceptual Example 44.8 The Age of Iceman

In 1991, German tourists discovered the well-preserved remains of a man, now called "Ötzi the Iceman," trapped in a glacier in the Italian Alps. (See the photograph at the opening of this chapter.) Radioactive dating with ^{14}C revealed that this person was alive approximately 5 300 years ago. Why did scientists date a sample of Ötzi using ^{14}C rather than ^{11}C, which is a beta emitter having a half-life of 20.4 min?

SOLUTION

Because ^{14}C has a half-life of 5 730 yr, the fraction of ^{14}C nuclei remaining after thousands of years is high enough to allow accurate measurements of changes in the sample's activity. Because ^{11}C has a very short half-life, it is not useful; its activity decreases to a vanishingly small value over the age of the sample, making it impossible to detect.

An isotope used to date a sample must be present in a known amount in the sample when it is formed. As a general rule, the isotope chosen to date a sample should also have a half-life that is on the same order of magnitude as the age of the sample. If the half-life is much less than the age of the sample, there won't be enough activity left to measure because almost all the original radioactive nuclei will have decayed. If the half-life is much greater than the age of the sample, the amount of decay that has taken place since the sample died will be too small to measure. For example, if you have a specimen estimated

44.8 continued

to have died 50 years ago, neither ^{14}C (5 730 yr) nor ^{11}C (20 min) is suitable. If you know your sample contains hydrogen, however, you can measure the activity of ^{3}H (tritium), a beta emitter that has a half-life of 12.3 yr.

Example 44.9 Radioactive Dating

A piece of charcoal containing 25.0 g of carbon is found in some ruins of an ancient city. The sample shows a ^{14}C activity R of 250 decays/min. How long has the tree from which this charcoal came been dead?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because the charcoal was found in ancient ruins, we expect the current activity to be smaller than the initial activity. If we can determine the initial activity, we can find out how long the wood has been dead.

Categorize The text of the question helps us categorize this example as a carbon dating problem.

Analyze Solve Equation 44.7 for t:

$$(1)\quad t = -\frac{1}{\lambda}\ln\left(\frac{R}{R_0}\right)$$

Evaluate the ratio R/R_0 using Equation 44.7, the initial value of the $^{14}C/^{12}C$ ratio r_0, the number of moles n of carbon, and Avogadro's number N_A:

$$\frac{R}{R_0} = \frac{R}{\lambda N_0(^{14}C)} = \frac{R}{\lambda r_0 N_0(^{12}C)} = \frac{R}{\lambda r_0 n N_A}$$

Replace the number of moles in terms of the molar mass M of carbon and the mass m of the sample and substitute for the decay constant λ:

$$\frac{R}{R_0} = \frac{R}{(\ln 2/T_{1/2}) r_0 (m/M) N_A} = \frac{RMT_{1/2}}{r_0 m N_A \ln 2}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$\frac{R}{R_0} = \frac{(250\ \text{min}^{-1})(12.0\ \text{g/mol})(5\,730\ \text{yr})}{(1.3\times10^{-12})(25.0\ \text{g})(6.022\times10^{23}\ \text{mol}^{-1})\ln 2}\left(\frac{3.156\times10^{7}\ \text{s}}{1\ \text{yr}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \text{min}}{60\ \text{s}}\right)$$

$$= 0.667$$

Substitute this ratio into Equation (1) and substitute for the decay constant λ:

$$t = -\frac{1}{\lambda}\ln\left(\frac{R}{R_0}\right) = -\frac{T_{1/2}}{\ln 2}\ln\left(\frac{R}{R_0}\right)$$

$$= -\frac{5\,730\ \text{yr}}{\ln 2}\ln(0.667) = \boxed{3.4\times10^{3}\ \text{yr}}$$

Finalize Note that the time interval found here is on the same order of magnitude as the half-life, so ^{14}C is a valid isotope to use for this sample, as discussed in Conceptual Example 44.8.

Gamma Decay

Very often, a nucleus that undergoes radioactive decay is left in an excited energy state. The nucleus can then undergo a second decay to a lower-energy state, perhaps to the ground state, by emitting a high-energy photon:

$$^{A}_{Z}X^* \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}X + \gamma \qquad (44.25)$$

◀ **Gamma decay**

where X* indicates a nucleus in an excited state. The typical half-life of an excited nuclear state is 10^{-10} s. Photons emitted in such a de-excitation process are called gamma rays. Such photons have very high energy (1 MeV to 1 GeV) relative to the energy of visible light (approximately 1 eV). Recall from Section 42.3 that the energy of a photon emitted or absorbed by an atom equals the difference in energy

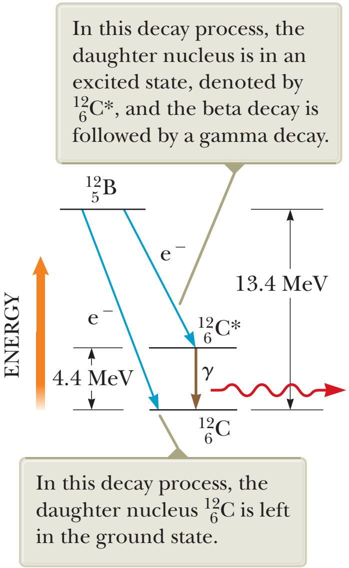


Figure 44.17 An energy-level diagram showing the initial nuclear state of a ^{12}B nucleus and two possible lower-energy states of the ^{12}C nucleus.

between the two electronic states involved in the transition. Similarly, a gamma-ray photon has an energy hf that equals the energy difference ΔE between two nuclear energy levels. When a nucleus decays by emitting a gamma ray, the only change in the nucleus is that it ends up in a lower-energy state. There are no changes in Z, N, or A.

A nucleus may reach an excited state as the result of a violent collision with another particle. More common, however, is for a nucleus to be in an excited state after it has undergone alpha or beta decay. The following sequence of events represents a typical situation in which gamma decay occurs:

$$^{12}_{5}\text{B} \rightarrow {}^{12}_{6}\text{C}^* + e^- + \bar{\nu} \tag{44.26}$$

$$^{12}_{6}\text{C}^* \rightarrow {}^{12}_{6}\text{C} + \gamma \tag{44.27}$$

Figure 44.17 shows the decay scheme for ^{12}B, which undergoes beta decay to either of two levels of ^{12}C. It can either (1) decay directly to the ground state of ^{12}C by emitting a 13.4-MeV electron or (2) undergo beta decay to an excited state of ^{12}C* followed by gamma decay to the ground state. The latter process results in the emission of a 9.0-MeV electron and a 4.4-MeV photon.

The various pathways by which a radioactive nucleus can undergo decay are summarized in Table 44.3.

44.6 Natural Radioactivity

Radioactive nuclei are generally classified into two groups: (1) unstable nuclei found in nature, which give rise to **natural radioactivity,** and (2) unstable nuclei produced in the laboratory through nuclear reactions, which exhibit **artificial radioactivity.**

As Table 44.4 shows, there are three series of naturally occurring radioactive nuclei. Each series starts with a specific long-lived radioactive isotope whose half-life exceeds that of any of its unstable descendants. The three natural series begin with the isotopes ^{238}U, ^{235}U, and ^{232}Th, and the corresponding stable end products are three isotopes of lead: ^{206}Pb, ^{207}Pb, and ^{208}Pb. The fourth series in Table 44.4 begins with ^{237}Np and has as its stable end product ^{209}Bi. The element ^{237}Np is a *transuranic* element (one having an atomic number greater than that of uranium) not found in nature. This element has a half-life of “only” 2.14×10^6 years.

Figure 44.18 shows the successive decays for the ^{232}Th series. First, ^{232}Th undergoes alpha decay to ^{228}Ra. Next, ^{228}Ra undergoes two successive beta decays to ^{228}Th. The series continues and finally branches when it reaches ^{212}Bi. At this point, there are two decay possibilities. The sequence shown in Figure 44.18 is characterized by a mass-number decrease of either 4 (for alpha decays) or 0 (for beta or gamma decays). The two uranium series are more complex than the ^{232}Th series. In addition, several naturally occurring radioactive isotopes, such as ^{14}C and ^{40}K, are not part of any decay series.

Because of these radioactive series, our environment is constantly replenished with radioactive elements that would otherwise have disappeared long ago. For example, because our solar system is approximately 5×10^9 years old, the supply of

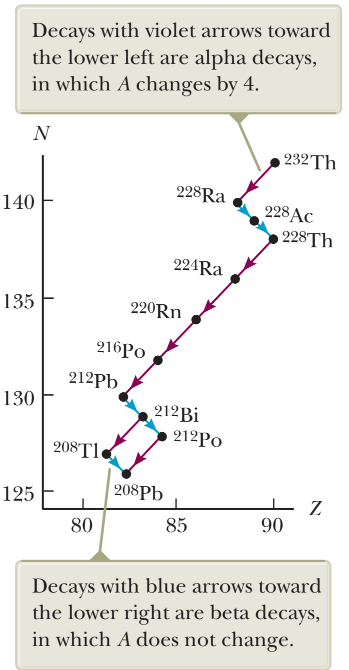


Figure 44.18 Successive decays for the ^{232}Th series.

Table 44.3 Various Decay Pathways

Alpha decay	$^{A}_{Z}\text{X} \rightarrow {}^{A-4}_{Z-2}\text{Y} + {}^{4}_{2}\text{He}$
Beta decay (e^-)	$^{A}_{Z}\text{X} \rightarrow {}_{Z+1}^{\ \ A}\text{Y} + e^- + \bar{\nu}$
Beta decay (e^+)	$^{A}_{Z}\text{X} \rightarrow {}_{Z-1}^{\ \ A}\text{Y} + e^+ + \nu$
Electron capture	$^{A}_{Z}\text{X} + e^- \rightarrow {}_{Z-1}^{\ \ A}\text{Y} + \nu$
Gamma decay	$^{A}_{Z}\text{X}^* \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\text{X} + \gamma$

Table 44.4 The Four Radioactive Series

Series		Starting Isotope	Half-life (years)	Stable End Product
Uranium	Natural	$^{238}_{92}$U	4.47×10^9	$^{206}_{82}$Pb
Actinium	Natural	$^{235}_{92}$U	7.04×10^8	$^{207}_{82}$Pb
Thorium	Natural	$^{232}_{90}$Th	1.41×10^{10}	$^{208}_{82}$Pb
Neptunium		$^{237}_{93}$Np	2.14×10^6	$^{209}_{83}$Bi

^{226}Ra (whose half-life is only 1 600 years) would have been depleted by radioactive decay long ago if it were not for the radioactive series starting with ^{238}U.

44.7 Nuclear Reactions

We have studied radioactivity, which is a spontaneous process in which the structure of a nucleus changes. It is also possible to stimulate changes in the structure of nuclei by bombarding them with energetic particles. Such collisions, which change the identity of the target nuclei, are called **nuclear reactions.** Rutherford was the first to observe them, in 1919, using naturally occurring radioactive sources for the bombarding particles. Since then, a wide variety of nuclear reactions has been observed following the development of charged-particle accelerators in the 1930s. With today's advanced technology in particle accelerators and particle detectors, the Large Hadron Collider (see Section 46.10) in Europe can achieve particle energies of 14 000 GeV = 14 TeV. These high-energy particles are used to create new particles whose properties are helping to solve the mysteries of the nucleus.

Consider a reaction in which a target nucleus X is bombarded by a particle a, resulting in a daughter nucleus Y and an outgoing particle b:

$$a + X \rightarrow Y + b \tag{44.28}$$

◀ **Nuclear reaction**

Sometimes this reaction is written in the more compact form

$$X(a, b)Y$$

In Section 44.5, the Q value, or disintegration energy, of a radioactive decay was defined as the rest energy transformed to kinetic energy as a result of the decay process. Likewise, we define the **reaction energy** Q associated with a nuclear reaction as *the difference between the initial and final rest energies resulting from the reaction:*

$$Q = (M_a + M_X - M_Y - M_b)c^2 \tag{44.29}$$

◀ **Reaction energy Q**

As an example, consider the reaction ^{7}Li(p, α)^{4}He. The notation p indicates a proton, which is a hydrogen nucleus. Therefore, we can write this reaction in the expanded form

$$^1_1\text{H} + ^7_3\text{Li} \rightarrow ^4_2\text{He} + ^4_2\text{He}$$

The Q value for this reaction is 17.3 MeV. A reaction such as this one, for which Q is positive, is called **exothermic.** A reaction for which Q is negative is called **endothermic.** To satisfy conservation of momentum for the isolated system, an endothermic reaction does not occur unless the bombarding particle has a kinetic energy greater than Q. (See Problem 74.) The minimum energy necessary for such a reaction to occur is called the **threshold energy.**

If particles a and b in a nuclear reaction are identical so that X and Y are also necessarily identical, the reaction is called a **scattering event.** If the kinetic energy of the system (a and X) before the event is the same as that of the system (b and Y) after the event, it is classified as *elastic scattering*. If the kinetic energy of the system after the event is less than that before the event, the reaction is described as *inelastic scattering*. In this case, the target nucleus has been raised to an excited state by the event, which accounts for the difference in energy. The final system now consists of b and an excited nucleus Y*, and eventually it will become b, Y, and γ, where γ is the gamma-ray photon that is emitted when the system returns to the ground state. This elastic and inelastic terminology is identical to that used in describing collisions between macroscopic objects as discussed in Section 9.4.

In addition to energy and momentum, the total charge and total number of nucleons must be conserved in any nuclear reaction. For example, consider the reaction $^{19}F(p, \alpha)^{16}O$, which has a Q value of 8.11 MeV. We can show this reaction more completely as

$$^1_1H + ^{19}_9F \rightarrow ^{16}_8O + ^4_2He \tag{44.30}$$

The total number of nucleons before the reaction $(1 + 19 = 20)$ is equal to the total number after the reaction $(16 + 4 = 20)$. Furthermore, the total charge is the same before $(1 + 9)$ and after $(8 + 2)$ the reaction.

44.8 Nuclear Magnetic Resonance and Magnetic Resonance Imaging

In this section, we describe an important application of nuclear physics in medicine called *magnetic resonance imaging*. To understand this application, we first discuss the spin angular momentum of the nucleus. This discussion has parallels with the discussion of spin for atomic electrons.

In Chapter 42, we discussed that the electron has an intrinsic angular momentum, called spin. Nuclei also have spin because their component particles—neutrons and protons—each have spin $\frac{1}{2}$ as well as orbital angular momentum within the nucleus. All types of angular momentum obey the quantum rules that were outlined for orbital and spin angular momentum in Chapter 42. In particular, two quantum numbers associated with the angular momentum determine the allowed values of the magnitude of the angular momentum vector and its direction in space. The magnitude of the nuclear angular momentum is $\sqrt{I(I+1)}\,\hbar$, where I is called the **nuclear spin quantum number** and may be an integer or a half-integer, depending on how the individual proton and neutron spins combine. The quantum number I is the analog to ℓ for the electron in an atom as discussed in Section 42.6. Furthermore, there is a quantum number m_I that is the analog to m_ℓ, in that the allowed projections of the nuclear spin angular momentum vector on the z axis are $m_I\hbar$. The values of m_I range from $-I$ to $+I$ in steps of 1. (In fact, for *any* type of spin with a quantum number S, there is a quantum number m_S that ranges in value from $-S$ to $+S$ in steps of 1.) Therefore, the maximum value of the z component of the spin angular momentum vector is $I\hbar$. Figure 44.19 is a vector model (see Section 42.6) illustrating the possible orientations of the nuclear spin vector and its projections along the z axis for the case in which $I = \frac{3}{2}$.

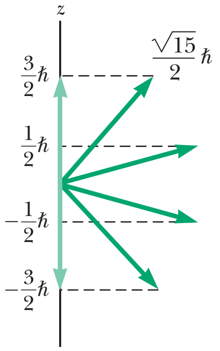


Figure 44.19 A vector model showing possible orientations of the nuclear spin angular momentum vector and its projections along the z axis for the case $I = \frac{3}{2}$.

Nuclear spin has an associated nuclear magnetic moment, similar to that of the electron. The spin magnetic moment of a nucleus is measured in terms of the **nuclear magneton** μ_n, a unit of moment defined as

Nuclear magneton ▶

$$\boxed{\mu_n \equiv \frac{e\hbar}{2m_p} = 5.05 \times 10^{-27}\ \mathrm{J/T}} \tag{44.31}$$

where m_p is the mass of the proton. This definition is analogous to that of the Bohr magneton μ_B, which corresponds to the spin magnetic moment of a free electron (see Section 42.6). Note that μ_n is smaller than μ_B $(= 9.274 \times 10^{-24}\ \mathrm{J/T})$ by a factor of 1 836 because of the large difference between the proton mass and the electron mass.

The magnetic moment of a free proton is $2.792\,8\mu_n$. Unfortunately, there is no general theory of nuclear magnetism that explains this value. The neutron also has a magnetic moment, which has a value of $-1.913\,5\mu_n$. The negative sign indicates that this moment is opposite the spin angular momentum of the neutron. The existence of a magnetic moment for the neutron is surprising in view of the neutron being uncharged. That suggests that the neutron is not a fundamental particle but rather has an underlying structure consisting of charged constituents. We shall explore this structure in Chapter 46.

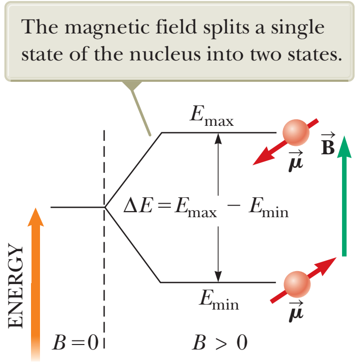


Figure 44.20 A nucleus with spin $\frac{1}{2}$ is placed in a magnetic field.

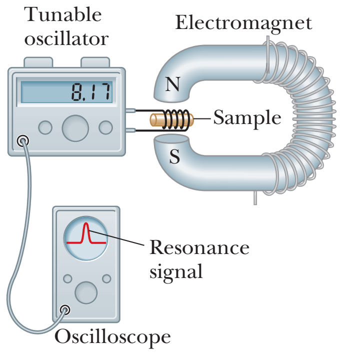


Figure 44.21 Experimental arrangement for nuclear magnetic resonance. The radio-frequency magnetic field created by the coil surrounding the sample and provided by the variable-frequency oscillator is perpendicular to the constant magnetic field created by the electromagnet. When the nuclei in the sample meet the resonance condition, the nuclei absorb energy from the radio-frequency field of the coil; this absorption changes the characteristics of the circuit in which the coil is included. Most modern NMR spectrometers use superconducting magnets at fixed field strengths and operate at frequencies of approximately 200 MHz.

The potential energy associated with a magnetic dipole moment $\vec{\mu}$ in an external magnetic field $\vec{B}$ is given by $-\vec{\mu} \cdot \vec{B}$ (Eq. 29.18). When the magnetic moment $\vec{\mu}$ is lined up with the field as closely as quantum physics allows, the potential energy of the dipole–field system has its minimum value E_{min}. When $\vec{\mu}$ is as antiparallel to the field as possible, the potential energy has its maximum value E_{max}. In general, there are other energy states between these values corresponding to the quantized directions of the magnetic moment with respect to the field. For a nucleus with spin $\frac{1}{2}$, there are only two allowed states, with energies E_{min} and E_{max}. These two energy states are shown in Figure 44.20.

It is possible to observe transitions between these two spin states using a technique called **NMR,** for **nuclear magnetic resonance.** A constant magnetic field ($\vec{B}$ in Fig. 44.20) is introduced to define a z axis and split the energies of the spin states. A second, weaker, oscillating magnetic field is then applied perpendicular to $\vec{B}$, creating a cloud of radio-frequency photons around the sample. When the frequency of the oscillating field is adjusted so that the photon energy matches the energy difference between the spin states, there is a net absorption of photons by the nuclei that can be detected electronically.

Figure 44.21 is a simplified diagram of the apparatus used in nuclear magnetic resonance. The energy absorbed by the nuclei is supplied by the tunable oscillator producing the oscillating magnetic field. Nuclear magnetic resonance and a related technique called *electron spin resonance* are extremely important methods for studying nuclear and atomic systems and the ways in which these systems interact with their surroundings.

A widely used medical diagnostic technique called **MRI,** for **magnetic resonance imaging,** is based on nuclear magnetic resonance. Because nearly two-thirds of the atoms in the human body are hydrogen (which gives a strong NMR signal), MRI works exceptionally well for viewing internal tissues. The patient is placed inside a large solenoid that supplies a magnetic field that is constant in time but whose magnitude varies spatially across the body. Because of the variation in the field, hydrogen atoms in different parts of the body have different energy splittings between spin states, so the resonance signal can be used to provide information about the positions of the protons. A computer is used to analyze the position information to provide data for constructing a final image. Contrast in the final image among different types of tissues is created by computer analysis of the time intervals for the nuclei to return to the lower-energy spin state between pulses of radio-frequency photons. Contrast can be enhanced with the use of contrast agents such as gadolinium compounds or iron oxide nanoparticles taken orally or injected intravenously. An MRI scan showing incredible detail in internal body structure is shown in Figure 44.22.

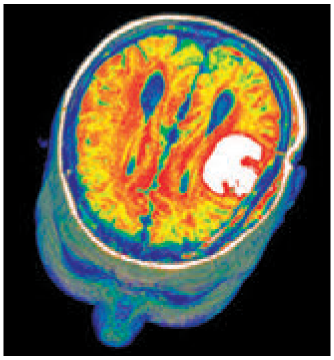


Figure 44.22 A color-enhanced MRI scan of a human brain, showing a tumor in white.

The main advantage of MRI over other imaging techniques is that it causes minimal cellular damage. The photons associated with the radio-frequency signals used in MRI have energies of only about 10^{-7} eV. Because molecular bond strengths are much larger (approximately 1 eV), the radio-frequency radiation causes little cellular damage. In comparison, x-rays have energies ranging from 10^4 to 10^6 eV and can cause considerable cellular damage. Therefore, despite some individuals' fears of the word *nuclear* associated with MRI, the radio-frequency radiation involved is overwhelmingly safer than the x-rays that these individuals might accept more readily. A disadvantage of MRI is that the equipment required to conduct the procedure is very expensive, so MRI images are costly.

The magnetic field produced by the solenoid is sufficient to lift a car, and the radio signal is about the same magnitude as that from a small commercial broadcasting station. Although MRI is inherently safe in normal use, the strong magnetic field of the solenoid requires diligent care to ensure that no ferromagnetic materials are located in the room near the MRI apparatus. Several accidents have occurred, such as a 2000 incident in which a gun pulled from a police officer's hand discharged upon striking the machine.

Summary

Definitions

A nucleus is represented by the symbol ${}^A_Z\mathrm{X}$, where A is the **mass number** (the total number of nucleons) and Z is the **atomic number** (the total number of protons). The total number of neutrons in a nucleus is the **neutron number** N, where $A = N + Z$. Nuclei having the same Z value but different A and N values are **isotopes** of each other.

The magnetic moment of a nucleus is measured in terms of the **nuclear magneton** μ_n, where

$$\mu_n \equiv \frac{e\hbar}{2m_p} = 5.05 \times 10^{-27}\ \mathrm{J/T} \qquad \textbf{(44.31)}$$

Concepts and Principles

Assuming nuclei are spherical, their radius is given by

$$r = aA^{1/3} \qquad \textbf{(44.1)}$$

where $a = 1.2$ fm.

Nuclei are stable because of the **nuclear force** between nucleons. This short-range force dominates the Coulomb repulsive force at distances of less than about 2 fm and is independent of charge. Light stable nuclei have equal numbers of protons and neutrons. Heavy stable nuclei have more neutrons than protons. The most stable nuclei have Z and N values that are both even.

The difference between the sum of the masses of a group of separate nucleons and the mass of the compound nucleus containing these nucleons, when multiplied by c^2, gives the **binding energy** E_b of the nucleus. The binding energy of a nucleus can be calculated in MeV using the expression

$$E_b = [ZM(\mathrm{H}) + Nm_n - M({}^A_Z\mathrm{X})] \times 931.494\ \mathrm{MeV/u} \qquad \textbf{(44.2)}$$

where $M(\mathrm{H})$ is the atomic mass of the neutral hydrogen atom, $M({}^A_Z\mathrm{X})$ represents the atomic mass of an atom of the isotope ${}^A_Z\mathrm{X}$, and m_n is the mass of the neutron.

The **liquid-drop model** of nuclear structure treats the nucleons as molecules in a drop of liquid. The four main contributions influencing binding energy are the volume effect, the surface effect, the Coulomb repulsion effect, and the symmetry effect. Summing such contributions results in the **semiempirical binding-energy formula:**

$$E_b = C_1A - C_2A^{2/3} - C_3\frac{Z(Z-1)}{A^{1/3}} - C_4\frac{(N-Z)^2}{A} \qquad \textbf{(44.3)}$$

The **shell model,** or **independent-particle model,** assumes each nucleon exists in a shell and can only have discrete energy values. The stability of certain nuclei can be explained with this model.

A radioactive substance decays by **alpha decay, beta decay,** or **gamma decay.** An alpha particle is the ^{4}He nucleus, a beta particle is either an electron (e^-) or a positron (e^+), and a gamma particle is a high-energy photon.

If a radioactive material contains N_0 radioactive nuclei at $t = 0$, the number N of nuclei remaining after a time t has elapsed is

$$N = N_0 e^{-\lambda t} \tag{44.6}$$

where λ is the **decay constant,** a number equal to the probability per second that a nucleus will decay. The **decay rate,** or **activity,** of a radioactive substance is

$$R = \left|\frac{dN}{dt}\right| = R_0 e^{-\lambda t} \tag{44.7}$$

where $R_0 = \lambda N_0$ is the activity at $t = 0$. The **half-life** $T_{1/2}$ is the time interval required for half of a given number of radioactive nuclei to decay, where

$$T_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{\lambda} \tag{44.8}$$

In alpha decay, a helium nucleus is ejected from the parent nucleus with a discrete set of kinetic energies. A nucleus undergoing beta decay emits either an electron (e^-) and an antineutrino ($\overline{\nu}$) or a positron (e^+) and a neutrino (ν). The electron or positron is ejected with a continuous range of energies. In **electron capture,** the nucleus of an atom absorbs one of its own electrons and emits a neutrino. In gamma decay, a nucleus in an excited state decays to its ground state and emits a gamma ray.

Nuclear reactions can occur when a target nucleus X is bombarded by a particle a, resulting in a daughter nucleus Y and an outgoing particle b:

$$\mathrm{a} + \mathrm{X} \rightarrow \mathrm{Y} + \mathrm{b} \tag{44.28}$$

The mass–energy conversion in such a reaction, called the **reaction energy** Q, is

$$Q = (M_\mathrm{a} + M_\mathrm{X} - M_\mathrm{Y} - M_\mathrm{b})c^2 \tag{44.29}$$

Objective Questions

$\boxed{1.}$ denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. In nuclear magnetic resonance, suppose we increase the value of the constant magnetic field. As a result, the frequency of the photons that are absorbed in a particular transition changes. How is the frequency of the photons absorbed related to the magnetic field? (a) The frequency is proportional to the square of the magnetic field. (b) The frequency is directly proportional to the magnetic field. (c) The frequency is independent of the magnetic field. (d) The frequency is inversely proportional to the magnetic field. (e) The frequency is proportional to the reciprocal of the square of the magnetic field.

2. When the $^{95}_{36}$Kr nucleus undergoes beta decay by emitting an electron and an antineutrino, does the daughter nucleus (Rb) contain (a) 58 neutrons and 37 protons, (b) 58 protons and 37 neutrons, (c) 54 neutrons and 41 protons, or (d) 55 neutrons and 40 protons?

3. When $^{32}_{15}$P decays to $^{32}_{16}$S, which of the following particles is emitted? (a) a proton (b) an alpha particle (c) an electron (d) a gamma ray (e) an antineutrino

4. The half-life of radium-224 is about 3.6 days. What approximate fraction of a sample remains undecayed after two weeks? (a) $\frac{1}{2}$ (b) $\frac{1}{4}$ (c) $\frac{1}{8}$ (d) $\frac{1}{16}$ (e) $\frac{1}{32}$

$\boxed{\textbf{5.}}$ Two samples of the same radioactive nuclide are prepared. Sample G has twice the initial activity of sample H. **(i)** How does the half-life of G compare with the half-life of H? (a) It is two times larger. (b) It is the same. (c) It is half as large. **(ii)** After each has passed through five half-lives, how do their activities compare? (a) G has more than twice the activity of H. (b) G has twice the activity of H. (c) G and H have the same activity. (d) G has lower activity than H.

6. If a radioactive nuclide ^A_ZX decays by emitting a gamma ray, what happens? (a) The resulting nuclide has a different Z value. (b) The resulting nuclide has the same A and Z values. (c) The resulting nuclide has a different A value. (d) Both A and Z decrease by one. (e) None of those statements is correct.

7. Does a nucleus designated as $^{40}_{18}$X contain (a) 20 neutrons and 20 protons, (b) 22 protons and 18 neutrons, (c) 18 protons and 22 neutrons, (d) 18 protons and 40 neutrons, or (e) 40 protons and 18 neutrons?

8. When $^{144}_{60}$Nd decays to $^{140}_{58}$Ce, identify the particle that is released. (a) a proton (b) an alpha particle (c) an electron (d) a neutron (e) a neutrino

9. What is the Q value for the reaction ^{9}Be + $\alpha \rightarrow {}^{12}$C + n? (a) 8.4 MeV (b) 7.3 MeV (c) 6.2 MeV (d) 5.7 MeV (e) 4.2 MeV

10. **(i)** To predict the behavior of a nucleus in a fission reaction, which model would be more appropriate,

(a) the liquid-drop model or (b) the shell model? **(ii)** Which model would be more successful in predicting the magnetic moment of a given nucleus? Choose from the same answers as in part (i). **(iii)** Which could better explain the gamma-ray spectrum of an excited nucleus? Choose from the same answers as in part (i).

11. A free neutron has a half-life of 614 s. It undergoes beta decay by emitting an electron. Can a free proton undergo a similar decay? (a) yes, the same decay (b) yes, but by emitting a positron (c) yes, but with a very different half-life (d) no

12. Which of the following quantities represents the reaction energy of a nuclear reaction? (a) (final mass − initial mass)/c^2 (b) (initial mass − final mass)/c^2 (c) (final mass − initial mass)c^2 (d) (initial mass − final mass)c^2 (e) none of those quantities

13. In the decay ${}^{234}_{90}\text{Th} \rightarrow {}^{A}_{Z}\text{Ra} + {}^{4}_{2}\text{He}$, identify the mass number and the atomic number of the Ra nucleus: (a) $A = 230$, $Z = 92$ (b) $A = 238$, $Z = 88$ (c) $A = 230$, $Z = 88$ (d) $A = 234$, $Z = 88$ (e) $A = 238$, $Z = 86$

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. If a nucleus such as ^{226}Ra initially at rest undergoes alpha decay, which has more kinetic energy after the decay, the alpha particle or the daughter nucleus? Explain your answer.

2. "If no more people were to be born, the law of population growth would strongly resemble the radioactive decay law." Discuss this statement.

3. A student claims that a heavy form of hydrogen decays by alpha emission. How do you respond?

4. In beta decay, the energy of the electron or positron emitted from the nucleus lies somewhere in a relatively large range of possibilities. In alpha decay, however, the alpha-particle energy can only have discrete values. Explain this difference.

5. Can carbon-14 dating be used to measure the age of a rock? Explain.

6. In positron decay, a proton in the nucleus becomes a neutron and its positive charge is carried away by the positron. A neutron, though, has a larger rest energy than a proton. How is that possible?

7. (a) How many values of I_z are possible for $I = \frac{5}{2}$? (b) For $I = 3$?

8. Why do nearly all the naturally occurring isotopes lie above the $N = Z$ line in Figure 44.4?

9. Why are very heavy nuclei unstable?

10. Explain why nuclei that are well off the line of stability in Figure 44.4 tend to be unstable.

11. Consider two heavy nuclei X and Y having similar mass numbers. If X has the higher binding energy, which nucleus tends to be more unstable? Explain your answer.

12. What fraction of a radioactive sample has decayed after two half-lives have elapsed?

13. Figure CQ44.13 shows a watch from the early 20th century. The numbers and the hands of the watch are painted with a paint that contains a small amount of natural radium ${}^{226}_{88}$Ra mixed with a phosphorescent material. The decay of the radium causes the phosphorescent material to glow continuously. The radioactive nuclide ${}^{226}_{88}$Ra has a half-life of approximately 1.60×10^3 years. Being that the solar system is approximately 5 billion years old, why was this isotope still available in the 20th century for use on this watch?

Figure CQ44.13

14. Can a nucleus emit alpha particles that have different energies? Explain.

15. In Rutherford's experiment, assume an alpha particle is headed directly toward the nucleus of an atom. Why doesn't the alpha particle make physical contact with the nucleus?

16. Suppose it could be shown that the cosmic-ray intensity at the Earth's surface was much greater 10 000 years ago. How would this difference affect what we accept as valid carbon-dated values of the age of ancient samples of once-living matter? Explain your answer.

17. Compare and contrast the properties of a photon and a neutrino.

Problems

The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 44.1 Some Properties of Nuclei

1. Find the nuclear radii of (a) ${}^{2}_{1}H$, (b) ${}^{60}_{27}Co$, (c) ${}^{197}_{79}Au$, and (d) ${}^{239}_{94}Pu$.

2. (a) Determine the mass number of a nucleus whose radius is approximately equal to two-thirds the radius of ${}^{230}_{88}Ra$. (b) Identify the element. (c) Are any other answers possible? Explain.

3. M (a) Use energy methods to calculate the distance of closest approach for a head-on collision between an alpha particle having an initial energy of 0.500 MeV and a gold nucleus (${}^{197}Au$) at rest. Assume the gold nucleus remains at rest during the collision. (b) What minimum initial speed must the alpha particle have to approach as close as 300 fm to the gold nucleus?

4. (a) What is the order of magnitude of the number of protons in your body? (b) Of the number of neutrons? (c) Of the number of electrons?

5. Consider the ${}^{65}_{29}Cu$ nucleus. Find approximate values for its (a) radius, (b) volume, and (c) density.

6. Using 2.30×10^{17} kg/m^3 as the density of nuclear matter, find the radius of a sphere of such matter that would have a mass equal to that of a baseball, 0.145 kg.

7. A star ending its life with a mass of four to eight times the Sun's mass is expected to collapse and then undergo a supernova event. In the remnant that is not carried away by the supernova explosion, protons and electrons combine to form a neutron star with approximately twice the mass of the Sun. Such a star can be thought of as a gigantic atomic nucleus. Assume $r = aA^{1/3}$ (Eq. 44.1). If a star of mass 3.98×10^{30} kg is composed entirely of neutrons ($m_n = 1.67 \times 10^{-27}$ kg), what would its radius be?

8. Figure P44.8 shows the potential energy for two protons as a function of separation distance. In the text, it was claimed that, to be visible on such a graph, the peak in the curve is exaggerated by a factor of ten. (a) Find the electric potential energy of a pair of protons separated by 4.00 fm. (b) Verify that the peak in Figure P44.8 is exaggerated by a factor of ten.

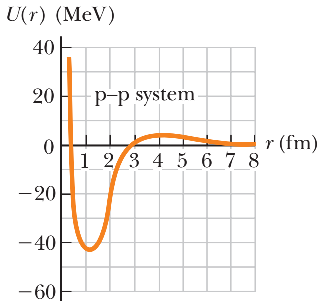


Figure P44.8

9. AMT **Review.** Singly ionized carbon is accelerated through 1 000 V and passed into a mass spectrometer to determine the isotopes present (see Chapter 29). The magnitude of the magnetic field in the spectrometer is 0.200 T. The orbit radius for a ${}^{12}C$ isotope as it passes through the field is $r = 7.89$ cm. Find the radius of the orbit of a ${}^{13}C$ isotope.

10. **Review.** Singly ionized carbon is accelerated through a potential difference ΔV and passed into a mass spectrometer to determine the isotopes present (see Chapter 29). The magnitude of the magnetic field in the spectrometer is B. The orbit radius for an isotope of mass m_1 as it passes through the field is r_1. Find the radius of the orbit of an isotope of mass m_2.

11. M An alpha particle ($Z = 2$, mass $= 6.64 \times 10^{-27}$ kg) approaches to within 1.00×10^{-14} m of a carbon nucleus ($Z = 6$). What are (a) the magnitude of the maximum Coulomb force on the alpha particle, (b) the magnitude of the acceleration of the alpha particle at the time of the maximum force, and (c) the potential energy of the system of the alpha particle and the carbon nucleus at this time?

12. In a Rutherford scattering experiment, alpha particles having kinetic energy of 7.70 MeV are fired toward a gold nucleus that remains at rest during the collision. The alpha particles come as close as 29.5 fm to the gold nucleus before turning around. (a) Calculate the de Broglie wavelength for the 7.70-MeV alpha particle and compare it with the distance of closest approach, 29.5 fm. (b) Based on this comparison, why is it proper to treat the alpha particle as a particle and not as a wave in the Rutherford scattering experiment?

13. **Review.** Two golf balls each have a 4.30-cm diameter and are 1.00 m apart. What would be the gravitational force exerted by each ball on the other if the balls were made of nuclear matter?

14. Assume a hydrogen atom is a sphere with diameter 0.100 nm and a hydrogen molecule consists of two such spheres in contact. (a) What fraction of the space in a tank of hydrogen gas at 0°C and 1.00 atm is occupied by the hydrogen molecules themselves? (b) What fraction of the space within one hydrogen atom is occupied by its nucleus, of radius 1.20 fm?

Section 44.2 Nuclear Binding Energy

15. Calculate the binding energy per nucleon for (a) ^{2}H, (b) ^{4}He, (c) ^{56}Fe, and (d) ^{238}U.

16. (a) Calculate the difference in binding energy per nucleon for the nuclei $^{23}_{11}$Na and $^{23}_{12}$Mg. (b) How do you account for the difference?

17. A pair of nuclei for which $Z_1 = N_2$ and $Z_2 = N_1$ are called *mirror isobars* (the atomic and neutron numbers are interchanged). Binding-energy measurements on these nuclei can be used to obtain evidence of the charge independence of nuclear forces (that is, proton–proton, proton–neutron, and neutron–neutron nuclear forces are equal). Calculate the difference in binding energy for the two mirror isobars $^{15}_{8}$O and $^{15}_{7}$N. The electric repulsion among eight protons rather than seven accounts for the difference.

18. The peak of the graph of nuclear binding energy per nucleon occurs near ^{56}Fe, which is why iron is prominent in the spectrum of the Sun and stars. Show that ^{56}Fe has a higher binding energy per nucleon than its neighbors ^{55}Mn and ^{59}Co.

19. Nuclei having the same mass numbers are called *isobars.* The isotope $^{139}_{57}$La is stable. A radioactive isobar, $^{139}_{59}$Pr, is located below the line of stable nuclei as shown in Figure P44.19 and decays by e^{+} emission. Another radioactive isobar of $^{139}_{57}$La, $^{139}_{55}$Cs, decays by e^{-} emission and is located above the line of stable nuclei in Figure P44.19. (a) Which of these three isobars has the highest neutron-to-proton ratio? (b) Which has the greatest binding energy per nucleon? (c) Which do you expect to be heavier, $^{139}_{59}$Pr or $^{139}_{55}$Cs?

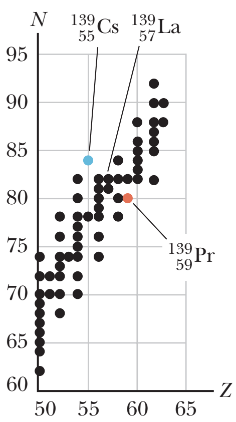


Figure P44.19

20. The energy required to construct a uniformly charged sphere of total charge Q and radius R is $U = 3k_eQ^2/5R$, where k_e is the Coulomb constant (see Problem 77). Assume a ^{40}Ca nucleus contains 20 protons uniformly distributed in a spherical volume. (a) How much energy is required to counter their electrical repulsion according to the above equation? (b) Calculate the binding energy of ^{40}Ca. (c) Explain what you can conclude from comparing the result of part (b) with that of part (a).

21. Calculate the minimum energy required to remove a neutron from the $^{43}_{20}$Ca nucleus.

Section 44.3 Nuclear Models

22. Using the graph in Figure 44.5, estimate how much energy is released when a nucleus of mass number 200 fissions into two nuclei each of mass number 100.

23. (a) Use the semiempirical binding-energy formula (Eq. 44.3) to compute the binding energy for $^{56}_{26}$Fe. (b) What percentage is contributed to the binding energy by each of the four terms?

24. (a) In the liquid-drop model of nuclear structure, why does the surface-effect term $-C_2A^{2/3}$ have a negative sign? (b) **What If?** The binding energy of the nucleus increases as the volume-to-surface area ratio increases. Calculate this ratio for both spherical and cubical shapes and explain which is more plausible for nuclei.

Section 44.4 Radioactivity

25. What time interval is required for the activity of a sample of the radioactive isotope $^{72}_{33}$As to decrease by 90.0% from its original value? The half-life of $^{72}_{33}$As is 26 h.

26. M A freshly prepared sample of a certain radioactive isotope has an activity of 10.0 mCi. After 4.00 h, its activity is 8.00 mCi. Find (a) the decay constant and (b) the half-life. (c) How many atoms of the isotope were contained in the freshly prepared sample? (d) What is the sample's activity 30.0 h after it is prepared?

27. A sample of radioactive material contains 1.00×10^{15} atoms and has an activity of 6.00×10^{11} Bq. What is its half-life?

28. From the equation expressing the law of radioactive decay, derive the following useful expressions for the decay constant and the half-life, in terms of the time interval Δt during which the decay rate decreases from R_0 to R:

$$\lambda = \frac{1}{\Delta t}\ln\left(\frac{R_0}{R}\right) \qquad T_{1/2} = \frac{(\ln 2)\,\Delta t}{\ln(R_0/R)}$$

29. M The radioactive isotope ^{198}Au has a half-life of 64.8 h. A sample containing this isotope has an initial activity ($t = 0$) of 40.0 μCi. Calculate the number of nuclei that decay in the time interval between $t_1 = 10.0$ h and $t_2 = 12.0$ h.

30. A radioactive nucleus has half-life $T_{1/2}$. A sample containing these nuclei has initial activity R_0 at $t = 0$. Calculate the number of nuclei that decay during the interval between the later times t_1 and t_2.

31. The half-life of ^{131}I is 8.04 days. (a) Calculate the decay constant for this nuclide. (b) Find the number of ^{131}I nuclei necessary to produce a sample with an activity of 6.40 mCi. (c) A sample of ^{131}I with this initial activity decays for 40.2 d. What is the activity at the end of that period?

32. Tritium has a half-life of 12.33 years. What fraction of the nuclei in a tritium sample will remain (a) after 5.00 yr? (b) After 10.0 yr? (c) After 123.3 yr? (d) According to Equation 44.6, an infinite amount of time is required for the entire sample to decay. Discuss whether that is realistic.

33. Consider a radioactive sample. Determine the ratio of the number of nuclei decaying during the first half of its half-life to the number of nuclei decaying during the second half of its half-life.

34. (a) The daughter nucleus formed in radioactive decay is often radioactive. Let N_{10} represent the number of parent nuclei at time $t = 0$, $N_1(t)$ the number of parent nuclei at time t, and λ_1 the decay constant of the parent. Suppose the number of daughter nuclei at time $t = 0$ is zero. Let $N_2(t)$ be the number of daughter nuclei at time t and let λ_2 be the decay constant of the daughter. Show that $N_2(t)$ satisfies the differential equation

$$\frac{dN_2}{dt} = \lambda_1 N_1 - \lambda_2 N_2$$

(b) Verify by substitution that this differential equation has the solution

$$N_2(t) = \frac{N_{10}\lambda_1}{\lambda_1 - \lambda_2}\left(e^{-\lambda_2 t} - e^{-\lambda_1 t}\right)$$

This equation is the law of successive radioactive decays. (c) ^{218}Po decays into ^{214}Pb with a half-life of 3.10 min, and ^{214}Pb decays into ^{214}Bi with a half-life of 26.8 min. On the same axes, plot graphs of $N_1(t)$ for ^{218}Po and $N_2(t)$ for ^{214}Pb. Let $N_{10} = 1\,000$ nuclei and choose values of t from 0 to 36 min in 2-min intervals. (d) The curve for ^{214}Pb obtained in part (c) at first rises to a maximum and then starts to decay. At what instant t_m is the number of ^{214}Pb nuclei a maximum? (e) By applying the condition for a maximum $dN_2/dt = 0$, derive a symbolic equation for t_m in terms of λ_1 and λ_2. (f) Explain whether the value obtained in part (c) agrees with this equation.

Section 44.5 The Decay Processes

35. Determine which decays can occur spontaneously. (a) $^{40}_{20}\text{Ca} \rightarrow e^+ + ^{40}_{19}\text{K}$ (b) $^{98}_{44}\text{Ru} \rightarrow ^{4}_{2}\text{He} + ^{94}_{42}\text{Mo}$ (c) $^{144}_{60}\text{Nd} \rightarrow ^{4}_{2}\text{He} + ^{140}_{58}\text{Ce}$

36. A ^{3}H nucleus beta decays into ^{3}He by creating an electron and an antineutrino according to the reaction

$$^{3}_{1}\text{H} \rightarrow ^{3}_{2}\text{He} + e^- + \bar{\nu}$$

Determine the total energy released in this decay.

37. The ^{14}C isotope undergoes beta decay according to the process given by Equation 44.21. Find the Q value for this process.

38. Identify the unknown nuclide or particle (X). (a) $X \rightarrow ^{65}_{28}\text{Ni} + \gamma$ (b) $^{215}_{84}\text{Po} \rightarrow X + \alpha$ (c) $X \rightarrow ^{55}_{26}\text{Fe} + e^+ + \nu$

39. Find the energy released in the alpha decay

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow ^{234}_{90}\text{Th} + ^{4}_{2}\text{He}$$

40. A sample consists of 1.00×10^6 radioactive nuclei with a half-life of 10.0 h. No other nuclei are present at time $t = 0$. The stable daughter nuclei accumulate in the sample as time goes on. (a) Derive an equation giving the number of daughter nuclei N_d as a function of time. (b) Sketch or describe a graph of the number of daughter nuclei as a function of time. (c) What are the maximum and minimum numbers of daughter nuclei, and when do they occur? (d) What are the maximum and minimum rates of change in the number of daughter nuclei, and when do they occur?

41. The nucleus $^{15}_{8}$O decays by electron capture. The nuclear reaction is written

$$^{15}_{8}\text{O} + e^- \rightarrow ^{15}_{7}\text{N} + \nu$$

(a) Write the process going on for a single particle within the nucleus. (b) Disregarding the daughter's recoil, determine the energy of the neutrino.

42. GP W A living specimen in equilibrium with the atmosphere contains one atom of ^{14}C (half-life = 5 730 yr) for every 7.70×10^{11} stable carbon atoms. An archeological sample of wood (cellulose, $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$) contains 21.0 mg of carbon. When the sample is placed inside a shielded beta counter with 88.0% counting efficiency, 837 counts are accumulated in one week. We wish to find the age of the sample. (a) Find the number of carbon atoms in the sample. (b) Find the number of carbon-14 atoms in the sample. (c) Find the decay constant for carbon-14 in inverse seconds. (d) Find the initial number of decays per week just after the specimen died. (e) Find the corrected number of decays per week from the current sample. (f) From the answers to parts (d) and (e), find the time interval in years since the specimen died.

Section 44.6 Natural Radioactivity

43. Uranium is naturally present in rock and soil. At one step in its series of radioactive decays, ^{238}U produces the chemically inert gas radon-222, with a half-life of 3.82 days. The radon seeps out of the ground to mix into the atmosphere, typically making open air radioactive with activity 0.3 pCi/L. In homes, ^{222}Rn can be a serious pollutant, accumulating to reach much higher activities in enclosed spaces, sometimes reaching 4.00 pCi/L. If the radon radioactivity exceeds 4.00 pCi/L, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency suggests taking action to reduce it such as by reducing infiltration of air from the ground. (a) Convert the activity 4.00 pCi/L to units of becquerels per cubic meter. (b) How many ^{222}Rn atoms are in 1 m^3 of air displaying this activity? (c) What fraction of the mass of the air does the radon constitute?

44. The most common isotope of radon is ^{222}Rn, which has half-life 3.82 days. (a) What fraction of the nuclei that were on the Earth one week ago are now undecayed? (b) Of those that existed one year ago? (c) In view of these results, explain why radon remains a problem, contributing significantly to our background radiation exposure.

45. Enter the correct nuclide symbol in each open tan rectangle in Figure P44.45, which shows the sequences of decays in the natural radioactive series starting with the long-lived isotope uranium-235 and ending with the stable nucleus lead-207.

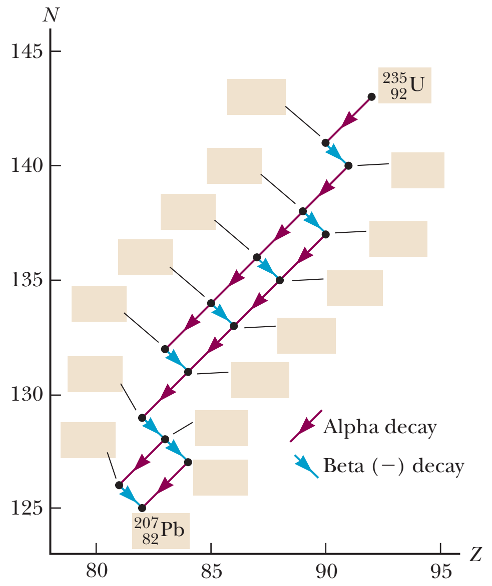


Figure P44.45

46. W A rock sample contains traces of ^{238}U, ^{235}U, ^{232}Th, ^{208}Pb, ^{207}Pb, and ^{206}Pb. Analysis shows that the ratio of the amount of ^{238}U to ^{206}Pb is 1.164. (a) Assuming the rock originally contained no lead, determine the age of the rock. (b) What should be the ratios of ^{235}U to ^{207}Pb and of ^{232}Th to ^{208}Pb so that they would yield the same age for the rock? Ignore the minute amounts of the intermediate decay products in the decay chains. *Note:* This form of multiple dating gives reliable geological dates.

Section 44.7 Nuclear Reactions

47. W A beam of 6.61-MeV protons is incident on a target of $^{27}_{13}$Al. Those that collide produce the reaction

$$p + {}^{27}_{13}\text{Al} \rightarrow {}^{27}_{14}\text{Si} + n$$

Ignoring any recoil of the product nucleus, determine the kinetic energy of the emerging neutrons.

48. (a) One method of producing neutrons for experimental use is bombardment of light nuclei with alpha particles. In the method used by James Chadwick in 1932, alpha particles emitted by polonium are incident on beryllium nuclei:

$${}^{4}_{2}\text{He} + {}^{9}_{4}\text{Be} \rightarrow {}^{12}_{6}\text{C} + {}^{1}_{0}\text{n}$$

What is the Q value of this reaction? (b) Neutrons are also often produced by small-particle accelerators. In one design, deuterons accelerated in a Van de Graaff generator bombard other deuterium nuclei and cause the reaction

$${}^{2}_{1}\text{H} + {}^{2}_{1}\text{H} \rightarrow {}^{3}_{2}\text{He} + {}^{1}_{0}\text{n}$$

Calculate the Q value of the reaction. (c) Is the reaction in part (b) exothermic or endothermic?

49. Identify the unknown nuclides and particles X and X′ in the nuclear reactions (a) $X + {}^{4}_{2}\text{He} \rightarrow {}^{24}_{12}\text{Mg} + {}^{1}_{0}\text{n}$, (b) ${}^{235}_{92}\text{U} + {}^{1}_{0}\text{n} \rightarrow {}^{90}_{38}\text{Sr} + X + 2({}^{1}_{0}\text{n})$, and (c) $2({}^{1}_{1}\text{H}) \rightarrow {}^{2}_{1}\text{H} + X + X'$.

50. Natural gold has only one isotope, $^{197}_{79}$Au. If natural gold is irradiated by a flux of slow neutrons, electrons are emitted. (a) Write the reaction equation. (b) Calculate the maximum energy of the emitted electrons.

51. The following reactions are observed:

$${}^{9}_{4}\text{Be} + \text{n} \rightarrow {}^{10}_{4}\text{Be} + \gamma \qquad Q = 6.812\ \text{MeV}$$
$${}^{9}_{4}\text{Be} + \gamma \rightarrow {}^{8}_{4}\text{Be} + \text{n} \qquad Q = -1.665\ \text{MeV}$$

Calculate the masses of ^{8}Be and ^{10}Be in unified mass units to four decimal places from these data.

Section 44.8 Nuclear Magnetic Resonance and Magnetic Resonance Imaging

52. Construct a diagram like that of Figure 44.19 for the cases when I equals (a) $\frac{5}{2}$ and (b) 4.

53. The radio frequency at which a nucleus having a magnetic moment of magnitude μ displays resonance absorption between spin states is called the Larmor frequency and is given by

$$f = \frac{\Delta E}{h} = \frac{2\mu B}{h}$$

Calculate the Larmor frequency for (a) free neutrons in a magnetic field of 1.00 T, (b) free protons in a magnetic field of 1.00 T, and (c) free protons in the Earth's magnetic field at a location where the magnitude of the field is 50.0 μT.

Additional Problems

54. M A wooden artifact is found in an ancient tomb. Its carbon-14 ($^{14}_{6}$C) activity is measured to be 60.0% of that in a fresh sample of wood from the same region.

Assuming the same amount of ^{14}C was initially present in the artifact as is now contained in the fresh sample, determine the age of the artifact.

55. M A 200.0-mCi sample of a radioactive isotope is purchased by a medical supply house. If the sample has a half-life of 14.0 days, how long will it be before its activity is reduced to 20.0 mCi?

56. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A ^{10}B nucleus is struck by an incoming alpha particle. As a result, a proton and a ^{12}C nucleus leave the site after the reaction.

57. (a) Find the radius of the $^{12}_{6}$C nucleus. (b) Find the force of repulsion between a proton at the surface of a $^{12}_{6}$C nucleus and the remaining five protons. (c) How much work (in MeV) has to be done to overcome this electric repulsion in transporting the last proton from a large distance up to the surface of the nucleus? (d) Repeat parts (a), (b), and (c) for $^{238}_{92}$U.

58. (a) Why is the beta decay $p \rightarrow n + e^+ + \nu$ forbidden for a free proton? (b) **What If?** Why is the same reaction possible if the proton is bound in a nucleus? For example, the following reaction occurs:

$$^{13}_{7}\text{N} \rightarrow \, ^{13}_{6}\text{C} + e^+ + \nu$$

(c) How much energy is released in the reaction given in part (b)?

59. **Review.** Consider the Bohr model of the hydrogen atom, with the electron in the ground state. The magnetic field at the nucleus produced by the orbiting electron has a value of 12.5 T. (See Problem 6 in Chapter 30.) The proton can have its magnetic moment aligned in either of two directions perpendicular to the plane of the electron's orbit. The interaction of the proton's magnetic moment with the electron's magnetic field causes a difference in energy between the states with the two different orientations of the proton's magnetic moment. Find that energy difference in electron volts.

60. Show that the ^{238}U isotope cannot spontaneously emit a proton by analyzing the hypothetical process

$$^{238}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow \, ^{237}_{91}\text{Pa} + \, ^{1}_{1}\text{H}$$

Note: The ^{237}Pa isotope has a mass of 237.051 144 u.

61. **Review.** (a) Is the mass of a hydrogen atom in its ground state larger or smaller than the sum of the masses of a proton and an electron? (b) What is the mass difference? (c) How large is the difference as a percentage of the total mass? (d) Is it large enough to affect the value of the atomic mass listed to six decimal places in Table 44.2?

62. *Why is the following situation impossible?* In an effort to study positronium, a scientist places ^{57}Co and ^{14}C in proximity. The ^{57}Co nuclei decay by e^+ emission, and the ^{14}C nuclei decay by e^- emission. Some of the positrons and electrons from these decays combine to form sufficient amounts of positronium for the scientist to gather data.

63. A by-product of some fission reactors is the isotope $^{239}_{94}$Pu, an alpha emitter having a half-life of 24 120 yr:

$$^{239}_{94}\text{Pu} \rightarrow \, ^{235}_{92}\text{U} + \alpha$$

Consider a sample of 1.00 kg of pure $^{239}_{94}$Pu at $t = 0$. Calculate (a) the number of $^{239}_{94}$Pu nuclei present at $t = 0$ and (b) the initial activity in the sample. (c) **What If?** For what time interval does the sample have to be stored if a "safe" activity level is 0.100 Bq?

64. After the sudden release of radioactivity from the Chernobyl nuclear reactor accident in 1986, the radioactivity of milk in Poland rose to 2 000 Bq/L due to iodine-131 present in the grass eaten by dairy cattle. Radioactive iodine, with half-life 8.04 days, is particularly hazardous because the thyroid gland concentrates iodine. The Chernobyl accident caused a measurable increase in thyroid cancers among children in Poland and many other Eastern European countries. (a) For comparison, find the activity of milk due to potassium. Assume 1.00 liter of milk contains 2.00 g of potassium, of which 0.011 7% is the isotope ^{40}K with half-life 1.28×10^9 yr. (b) After what elapsed time would the activity due to iodine fall below that due to potassium?

65. A theory of nuclear astrophysics proposes that all the elements heavier than iron are formed in supernova explosions ending the lives of massive stars. Assume equal amounts of ^{235}U and ^{238}U were created at the time of the explosion and the present ^{235}U/^{238}U ratio on the Earth is 0.007 25. The half-lives of ^{235}U and ^{238}U are 0.704×10^9 yr and 4.47×10^9 yr, respectively. How long ago did the star(s) explode that released the elements that formed the Earth?

66. The activity of a radioactive sample was measured over 12 h, with the net count rates shown in the accompanying table. (a) Plot the logarithm of the counting rate as a function of time. (b) Determine the decay constant and half-life of the radioactive nuclei in the sample. (c) What counting rate would you expect for the sample at $t = 0$? (d) Assuming the efficiency of the counting instrument is 10.0%, calculate the number of radioactive atoms in the sample at $t = 0$.

Time (h)	Counting Rate (counts/min)
1.00	3 100
2.00	2 450
4.00	1 480
6.00	910
8.00	545
10.0	330
12.0	200

67. When, after a reaction or disturbance of any kind, a nucleus is left in an excited state, it can return to its normal (ground) state by emission of a gamma-ray photon (or several photons). This process is illustrated by Equation 44.25. The emitting nucleus must recoil to conserve both energy and momentum. (a) Show that the recoil energy of the nucleus is

$$E_r = \frac{(\Delta E)^2}{2Mc^2}$$

where ΔE is the difference in energy between the excited and ground states of a nucleus of mass M. (b) Calculate the recoil energy of the ^{57}Fe nucleus when it decays by gamma emission from the 14.4-keV excited state. For this calculation, take the mass to be 57 u. *Suggestion:* Assume $hf << Mc^2$.

68. In a piece of rock from the Moon, the ^{87}Rb content is assayed to be 1.82×10^{10} atoms per gram of material and the ^{87}Sr content is found to be 1.07×10^9 atoms per gram. The relevant decay relating these nuclides is $^{87}\text{Rb} \rightarrow {}^{87}\text{Sr} + e^- + \bar{\nu}$. The half-life of the decay is 4.75×10^{10} yr. (a) Calculate the age of the rock. (b) **What If?** Could the material in the rock actually be much older? What assumption is implicit in using the radioactive dating method?

69. AMT M Free neutrons have a characteristic half-life of 10.4 min. What fraction of a group of free neutrons with kinetic energy 0.040 0 eV decays before traveling a distance of 10.0 km?

70. On July 4, 1054, a brilliant light appeared in the constellation Taurus the Bull. The supernova, which could be seen in daylight for some days, was recorded by Arab and Chinese astronomers. As it faded, it remained visible for years, dimming for a time with the 77.1-day half-life of the radioactive cobalt-56 that had been created in the explosion. (a) The remains of the star now form the Crab nebula (see the photograph opening Chapter 34). In it, the cobalt-56 has now decreased to what fraction of its original activity? (b) Suppose that an American, of the people called the Anasazi, made a charcoal drawing of the supernova. The carbon-14 in the charcoal has now decayed to what fraction of its original activity?

71. When a nucleus decays, it can leave the daughter nucleus in an excited state. The $^{93}_{43}$Tc nucleus (molar mass 92.910 2 g/mol) in the ground state decays by electron capture and e$^+$ emission to energy levels of the daughter (molar mass 92.906 8 g/mol in the ground state) at 2.44 MeV, 2.03 MeV, 1.48 MeV, and 1.35 MeV. (a) Identify the daughter nuclide. (b) To which of the listed levels of the daughter are electron capture and e$^+$ decay of $^{93}_{43}$Tc allowed?

72. The radioactive isotope ^{137}Ba has a relatively short half-life and can be easily extracted from a solution containing its parent ^{137}Cs. This barium isotope is commonly used in an undergraduate laboratory exercise for demonstrating the radioactive decay law. Undergraduate students using modest experimental equipment took the data presented in Figure P44.72. Determine the half-life for the decay of ^{137}Ba using their data.

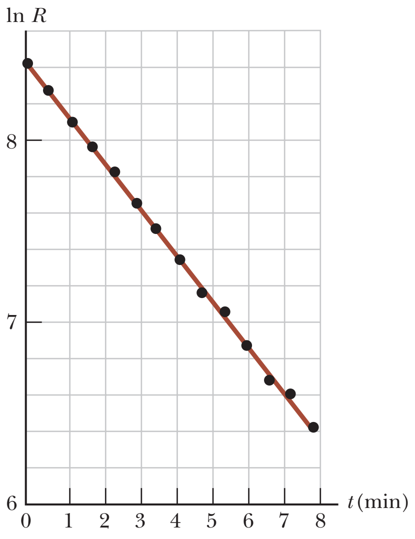


Figure P44.72

73. As part of his discovery of the neutron in 1932, James Chadwick determined the mass of the newly identified particle by firing a beam of fast neutrons, all having the same speed, at two different targets and measuring the maximum recoil speeds of the target nuclei. The maximum speeds arise when an elastic head-on collision occurs between a neutron and a stationary target nucleus. (a) Represent the masses and final speeds of the two target nuclei as m_1, v_1, m_2, and v_2 and assume Newtonian mechanics applies. Show that the neutron mass can be calculated from the equation

$$m_n = \frac{m_1 v_1 - m_2 v_2}{v_2 - v_1}$$

(b) Chadwick directed a beam of neutrons (produced from a nuclear reaction) on paraffin, which contains hydrogen. The maximum speed of the protons ejected was found to be 3.30×10^7 m/s. Because the velocity of the neutrons could not be determined directly, a second experiment was performed using neutrons from the same source and nitrogen nuclei as the target. The maximum recoil speed of the nitrogen nuclei was found to be 4.70×10^6 m/s. The masses of a proton and a nitrogen nucleus were taken as 1.00 u and 14.0 u, respectively. What was Chadwick's value for the neutron mass?

74. When the nuclear reaction represented by Equation 44.28 is endothermic, the reaction energy Q is negative. For the reaction to proceed, the incoming particle must have a minimum energy called the threshold energy, E_{th}. Some fraction of the energy of the incident particle is transferred to the compound nucleus to conserve momentum. Therefore, E_{th} must be greater than Q. (a) Show that

$$E_{th} = -Q\left(1 + \frac{M_a}{M_X}\right)$$

(b) Calculate the threshold energy of the incident alpha particle in the reaction

$$^{4}_{2}\text{He} + ^{14}_{7}\text{N} \rightarrow ^{17}_{8}\text{O} + ^{1}_{1}\text{H}$$

75. In an experiment on the transport of nutrients in a plant's root structure, two radioactive nuclides X and Y are used. Initially, 2.50 times more nuclei of type X are present than of type Y. At a time 3.00 d later, there are 4.20 times more nuclei of type X than of type Y. Isotope Y has a half-life of 1.60 d. What is the half-life of isotope X?

76. In an experiment on the transport of nutrients in a plant's root structure, two radioactive nuclides X and Y are used. Initially, the ratio of the number of nuclei of type X present to that of type Y is r_1. After a time interval Δt, the ratio of the number of nuclei of type X present to that of type Y is r_2. Isotope Y has a half-life of T_Y. What is the half-life of isotope X?

Challenge Problems

77. **Review.** Consider a model of the nucleus in which the positive charge (Ze) is uniformly distributed throughout a sphere of radius R. By integrating the energy density $\frac{1}{2}\epsilon_0 E^2$ over all space, show that the electric potential energy may be written

$$U = \frac{3Z^2e^2}{20\pi\epsilon_0 R} = \frac{3k_e Z^2 e^2}{5R}$$

Problem 72 in Chapter 25 derived the same result by a different method.

78. After determining that the Sun has existed for hundreds of millions of years, but before the discovery of nuclear physics, scientists could not explain why the Sun has continued to burn for such a long time interval. For example, if it were a coal fire, it would have burned up in about 3 000 yr. Assume the Sun, whose mass is equal to 1.99×10^{30} kg, originally consisted entirely of hydrogen and its total power output is 3.85×10^{26} W. (a) Assuming the energy-generating mechanism of the Sun is the fusion of hydrogen into helium via the net reaction

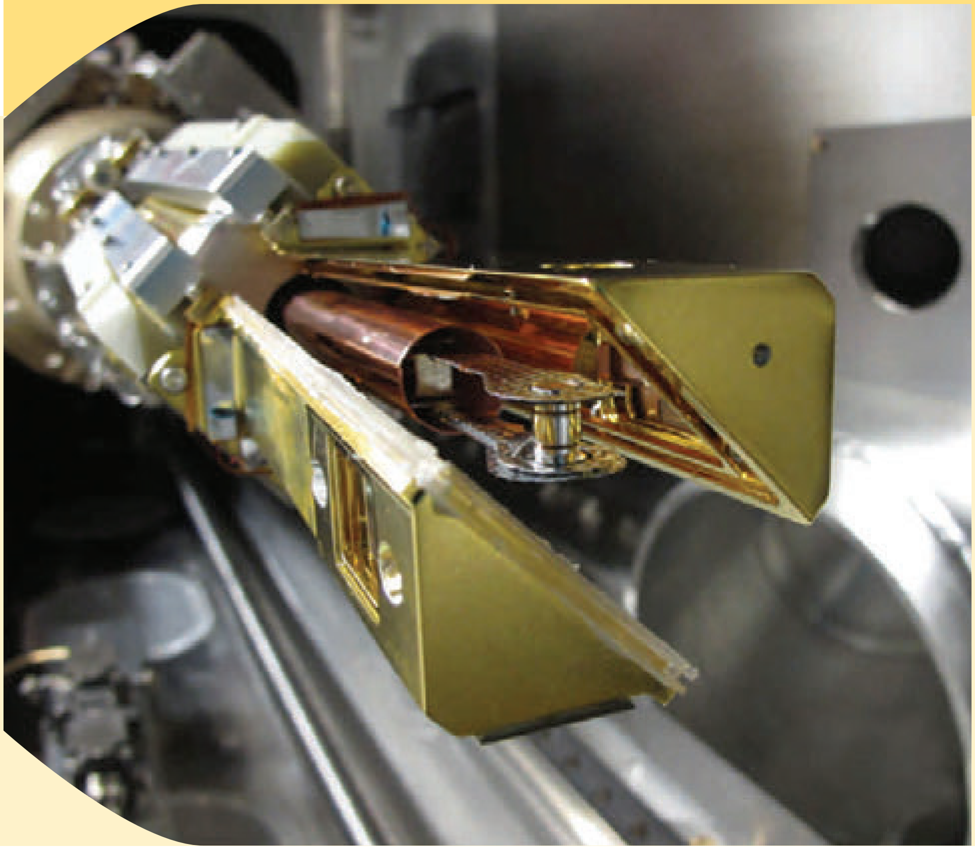
$$4(^{1}_{1}\text{H}) + 2(\text{e}^-) \rightarrow ^{4}_{2}\text{He} + 2\nu + \gamma$$

calculate the energy (in joules) given off by this reaction. (b) Take the mass of one hydrogen atom to be equal to 1.67×10^{-27} kg. Determine how many hydrogen atoms constitute the Sun. (c) If the total power output remains constant, after what time interval will all the hydrogen be converted into helium, making the Sun die? (d) How does your answer to part (c) compare with current estimates of the expected life of the Sun, which are 4 billion to 7 billion years?

CHAPTER

45

Applications of Nuclear Physics



In this chapter, we study both nuclear fission and nuclear fusion. The structure above is the target assembly for the inertial confinement procedure for initiating fusion by laser at the National Ignition Facility in Livermore, California. The triangle-shaped shrouds protect the fuel pellets and then open a few seconds before very powerful lasers bombard the target. *(Courtesy of Lawrence Livermore National Library)*

In this chapter, we study two means for deriving energy from nuclear reactions: fission, in which a large nucleus splits into two smaller nuclei, and fusion, in which two small nuclei fuse to form a larger one. In both cases, the released energy can be used either constructively (as in electric power plants) or destructively (as in nuclear weapons). We also examine the ways in which radiation interacts with matter and discuss the structure of fission and fusion reactors. The chapter concludes with a discussion of some industrial and biological applications of radiation.

45.1 Interactions Involving Neutrons

Nuclear fission is the process that occurs in present-day nuclear reactors and ultimately results in energy supplied to a community by electrical transmission. Nuclear fusion is an area of active research, but it has not yet been commercially developed for the supply of energy. We will discuss fission first and then explore fusion in Section 45.4.

To understand nuclear fission and the physics of nuclear reactors, we must first understand how neutrons interact with nuclei. Because of their charge neutrality, neutrons are not subject to Coulomb forces and as a result do not interact electrically with electrons or the nucleus. Therefore, neutrons can easily penetrate deep into an atom and collide with the nucleus.

A fast neutron (energy greater than approximately 1 MeV) traveling through matter undergoes many collisions with nuclei, giving up some of its kinetic energy in each collision. For fast neutrons in some materials, elastic collisions dominate. Materials for which that occurs are called **moderators** because they slow down (or moderate) the originally energetic neutrons very effectively. Moderator nuclei should be of low mass so that a large amount of kinetic energy is transferred to them when struck by neutrons. For this reason, materials that are abundant in hydrogen, such as paraffin and water, are good moderators for neutrons.

Eventually, most neutrons bombarding a moderator become **thermal neutrons,** which means they have given up so much of their energy that they are in thermal equilibrium with the moderator material. Their average kinetic energy at room temperature is, from Equation 21.19,

$$K_{\text{avg}} = \tfrac{3}{2}k_{\text{B}}T \approx \tfrac{3}{2}(1.38 \times 10^{-23}\text{ J/K})(300\text{ K}) = 6.21 \times 10^{-21}\text{ J} \approx 0.04\text{ eV}$$

which corresponds to a neutron root-mean-square speed of approximately 2 800 m/s. Thermal neutrons have a distribution of speeds, just as the molecules in a container of gas do (see Chapter 21). High-energy neutrons, those with energy of several MeV, *thermalize* (that is, their average energy reaches K_{avg}) in less than 1 ms when they are incident on a moderator.

Once the neutrons have thermalized and the energy of a particular neutron is sufficiently low, there is a high probability the neutron will be captured by a nucleus, an event that is accompanied by the emission of a gamma ray. This **neutron capture** reaction can be written

$${}^{1}_{0}\text{n} + {}^{A}_{Z}\text{X} \rightarrow {}^{A+1}_{Z}\text{X}^* \rightarrow {}^{A+1}_{Z}\text{X} + \gamma \qquad \textbf{(45.1)}$$

◀ **Neutron capture reaction**

Once the neutron is captured, the nucleus ${}^{A+1}_{Z}\text{X}^*$ is in an excited state for a very short time before it undergoes gamma decay. The product nucleus ${}^{A+1}_{Z}\text{X}$ is usually radioactive and decays by beta emission.

The neutron-capture rate for neutrons passing through any sample depends on the type of atoms in the sample and on the energy of the incident neutrons. The interaction of neutrons with matter increases with decreasing neutron energy because a slow neutron spends a larger time interval in the vicinity of target nuclei.

45.2 Nuclear Fission

As mentioned in Section 44.2, nuclear **fission** occurs when a heavy nucleus, such as ^{235}U, splits into two smaller nuclei. Fission is initiated when a heavy nucleus captures a thermal neutron as described by the first step in Equation 45.1. The absorption of the neutron creates a nucleus that is unstable and can change to a lower-energy configuration by splitting into two smaller nuclei. In such a reaction, the combined mass of the daughter nuclei is less than the mass of the parent nucleus, and the difference in mass is called the **mass defect.** Multiplying the mass defect by c^2 gives the numerical value of the released energy. This energy is in the form of kinetic energy associated with the motion of the neutrons and the daughter nuclei after the fission event. Energy is released because the binding energy per nucleon of the daughter nuclei is approximately 1 MeV greater than that of the parent nucleus (see Fig. 44.5).

Nuclear fission was first observed in 1938 by Otto Hahn (1879–1968) and Fritz Strassmann (1902–1980) following some basic studies by Fermi. After bombarding uranium with neutrons, Hahn and Strassmann discovered among the reaction products two medium-mass elements, barium and lanthanum. Shortly thereafter, Lise Meitner (1878–1968) and her nephew Otto Frisch (1904–1979) explained what had happened. After absorbing a neutron, the uranium nucleus had split into two

Pitfall Prevention 45.1

Binding Energy Reminder Remember from Chapter 44 that binding energy is the absolute value of the system energy and is related to the system mass. Therefore, when considering Figure 44.5, imagine flipping it upside down for a graph representing system mass. In a fission reaction, the system mass decreases. This decrease in mass appears in the system as kinetic energy of the fission products.

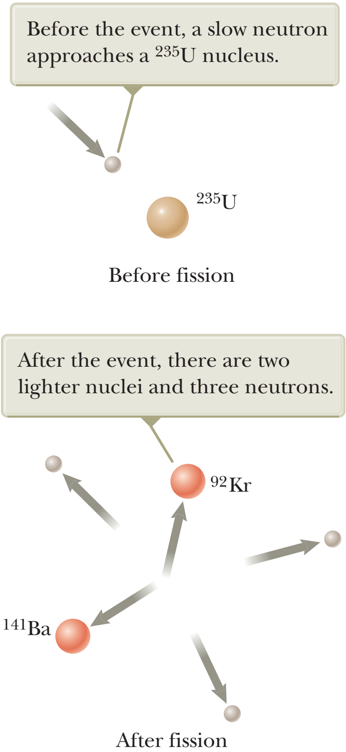


Figure 45.1 A nuclear fission event.

nearly equal fragments plus several neutrons. Such an occurrence was of considerable interest to physicists attempting to understand the nucleus, but it was to have even more far-reaching consequences. Measurements showed that approximately 200 MeV of energy was released in each fission event, and this fact was to affect the course of history in World War II.

The fission of ^{235}U by thermal neutrons can be represented by the reaction

$$ {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} + {}^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{236}_{92}\mathrm{U}^{*} \rightarrow \mathrm{X} + \mathrm{Y} + \text{neutrons} \tag{45.2} $$

where ^{236}U* is an intermediate excited state that lasts for approximately 10^{-12} s before splitting into medium-mass nuclei X and Y, which are called **fission fragments.** In any fission reaction, there are many combinations of X and Y that satisfy the requirements of conservation of energy and charge. In the case of uranium, for example, approximately 90 daughter nuclei can be formed.

Fission also results in the production of several neutrons, typically two or three. On average, approximately 2.5 neutrons are released per event. A typical fission reaction for uranium is

$$ {}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} + {}^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{141}_{56}\mathrm{Ba} + {}^{92}_{36}\mathrm{Kr} + 3({}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n}) \tag{45.3} $$

Figure 45.1 shows a pictorial representation of the fission event in Equation 45.3.

Figure 45.2 is a graph of the distribution of fission products versus mass number A. The most probable products have mass numbers $A \approx 95$ and $A \approx 140$. Suppose these products are ${}^{95}_{39}$Y (with 56 neutrons) and ${}^{140}_{53}$I (with 87 neutrons). If these nuclei are located on the graph of Figure 44.4, it is seen that both are well above the line of stability. Because these fragments are very unstable owing to their unusually high number of neutrons, they almost instantaneously release two or three neutrons.

Let's estimate the disintegration energy Q released in a typical fission process. From Figure 44.5, we see that the binding energy per nucleon is approximately 7.2 MeV for heavy nuclei ($A \approx 240$) and approximately 8.2 MeV for nuclei of intermediate mass. The amount of energy released is 8.2 MeV − 7.2 MeV = 1 MeV per nucleon. Because there are a total of 235 nucleons in ${}^{235}_{92}$U, the energy released per fission event is approximately 235 MeV, a large amount of energy relative to the amount released in chemical processes. For example, the energy released in the combustion of one molecule of octane used in gasoline engines is about one-millionth of the energy released in a single fission event!

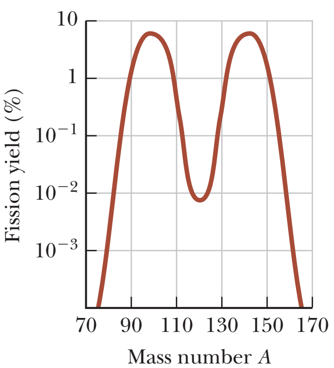


Figure 45.2 Distribution of fission products versus mass number for the fission of ^{235}U bombarded with thermal neutrons. Notice the vertical axis is logarithmic.

Quick Quiz 45.1 When a nucleus undergoes fission, the two daughter nuclei are generally radioactive. By which process are they most likely to decay? **(a)** alpha decay **(b)** beta decay (e^-) **(c)** beta decay (e^+)

Quick Quiz 45.2 Which of the following are possible fission reactions?

(a) ${}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} + {}^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{140}_{54}\mathrm{Xe} + {}^{94}_{38}\mathrm{Sr} + 2({}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n})$

(b) ${}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} + {}^{235}_{92}\mathrm{U} \rightarrow {}^{132}_{50}\mathrm{Sn} + {}^{101}_{42}\mathrm{Mo} + 3({}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n})$

(c) ${}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n} + {}^{239}_{94}\mathrm{Pu} \rightarrow {}^{137}_{53}\mathrm{I} + {}^{97}_{41}\mathrm{Nb} + 3({}^{1}_{0}\mathrm{n})$

Example 45.1 The Energy Released in the Fission of ^{235}U

Calculate the energy released when 1.00 kg of ^{235}U fissions, taking the disintegration energy per event to be Q = 208 MeV.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine a nucleus of ^{235}U absorbing a neutron and then splitting into two smaller nuclei and several neutrons as in Figure 45.1.

45.1 continued

Categorize The problem statement tells us to categorize this example as one involving an energy analysis of nuclear fission.

Analyze Because $A = 235$ for uranium, one mole of this isotope has a mass of $M = 235$ g.

Find the number of nuclei in our sample in terms of the number of moles n and Avogadro's number, and then in terms of the sample mass m and the molar mass M of ^{235}U:

$$N = nN_A = \frac{m}{M}N_A$$

Find the total energy released when all nuclei undergo fission:

$$E = NQ = \frac{m}{M}N_AQ = \frac{1.00 \times 10^3\ \text{g}}{235\ \text{g/mol}}(6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{mol}^{-1})(208\ \text{MeV})$$

$$= \boxed{5.33 \times 10^{26}\ \text{MeV}}$$

Finalize Convert this energy to kWh:

$$E = (5.33 \times 10^{26}\ \text{MeV})\left(\frac{1.60 \times 10^{-13}\ \text{J}}{1\ \text{MeV}}\right)\left(\frac{1\ \text{kWh}}{3.60 \times 10^6\ \text{J}}\right) = 2.37 \times 10^7\ \text{kWh}$$

which, if released slowly, is enough energy to keep a 100-W lightbulb operating for 30 000 years! If the available fission energy in 1 kg of ^{235}U were suddenly released, it would be equivalent to detonating about 20 000 tons of TNT.

45.3 Nuclear Reactors

In Section 45.2, we learned that when ^{235}U fissions, one incoming neutron results in an average of 2.5 neutrons emitted per event. These neutrons can trigger other nuclei to fission. Because more neutrons are produced by the event than are absorbed, there is the possibility of an ever-building chain reaction (Fig. 45.3). Experience shows that if the chain reaction is not controlled (that is, if it does not

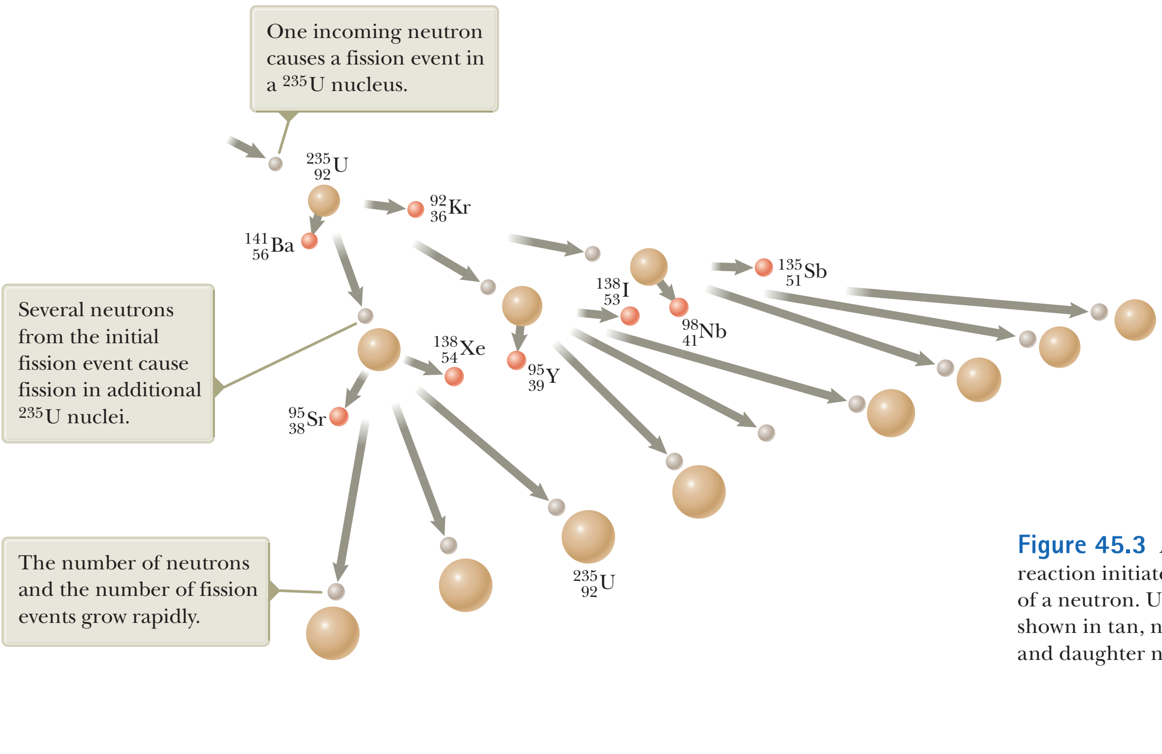


Figure 45.3 A nuclear chain reaction initiated by the capture of a neutron. Uranium nuclei are shown in tan, neutrons in gray, and daughter nuclei in orange.

Figure 45.4 Artist's rendition of the world's first nuclear reactor. Because of wartime secrecy, there are few photographs of the completed reactor, which was composed of layers of moderating graphite interspersed with uranium. A self-sustained chain reaction was first achieved on December 2, 1942. Word of the success was telephoned immediately to Washington, D.C., with this message: "The Italian navigator has landed in the New World and found the natives very friendly." The historic event took place in an improvised laboratory in the racquet court under the stands of the University of Chicago's Stagg Field, and the Italian navigator was Enrico Fermi.

proceed slowly), it can result in a violent explosion, with the sudden release of an enormous amount of energy. When the reaction is controlled, however, the energy released can be put to constructive use. In the United States, for example, nearly 20% of the electricity generated each year comes from nuclear power plants, and nuclear power is used extensively in many other countries, including France, Russia, and India.

A nuclear reactor is a system designed to maintain what is called a **self-sustained chain reaction.** This important process was first achieved in 1942 by Enrico Fermi and his team at the University of Chicago, using naturally occurring uranium as the fuel.[1] In the first nuclear reactor (Fig. 45.4), Fermi placed bricks of graphite (carbon) between the fuel elements. Carbon nuclei are about 12 times more massive than neutrons, but after several collisions with carbon nuclei, a neutron is slowed sufficiently to increase its likelihood of fission with ^{235}U. In this design, carbon is the moderator; most modern reactors use water as the moderator.

Most reactors in operation today also use uranium as fuel. Naturally occurring uranium contains only 0.7% of the ^{235}U isotope, however, with the remaining 99.3% being ^{238}U. This fact is important to the operation of a reactor because ^{238}U almost never fissions. Instead, it tends to absorb neutrons without a subsequent fission event, producing neptunium and plutonium. For this reason, reactor fuels must be artificially *enriched* to contain at least a few percent ^{235}U.

To achieve a self-sustained chain reaction, an average of one neutron emitted in each ^{235}U fission must be captured by another ^{235}U nucleus and cause that nucleus to undergo fission. A useful parameter for describing the level of reactor operation is the **reproduction constant** K, defined as **the average number of neutrons from each fission event that cause another fission event.** As we have seen, K has an average value of 2.5 in the uncontrolled fission of uranium.

A self-sustained and controlled chain reaction is achieved when $K = 1$. When in this condition, the reactor is said to be **critical.** When $K < 1$, the reactor is subcritical and the reaction dies out. When $K > 1$, the reactor is supercritical and a runaway reaction occurs. In a nuclear reactor used to furnish power to a utility company, it is necessary to maintain a value of K close to 1. If K rises above this value, the rest energy transformed to internal energy in the reaction could melt the reactor.

Several types of reactor systems allow the kinetic energy of fission fragments to be transformed to other types of energy and eventually transferred out of the

Enrico Fermi
Italian Physicist (1901–1954)
Fermi was awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1938 for producing transuranic elements by neutron irradiation and for his discovery of nuclear reactions brought about by thermal neutrons. He made many other outstanding contributions to physics, including his theory of beta decay, the free-electron theory of metals, and the development of the world's first fission reactor in 1942. Fermi was truly a gifted theoretical and experimental physicist. He was also well known for his ability to present physics in a clear and exciting manner.

[1]Although Fermi's reactor was the first manufactured nuclear reactor, there is evidence that a natural fission reaction may have sustained itself for perhaps hundreds of thousands of years in a deposit of uranium in Gabon, West Africa. See G. Cowan, "A Natural Fission Reactor," *Scientific American* **235**(5): 36, 1976.

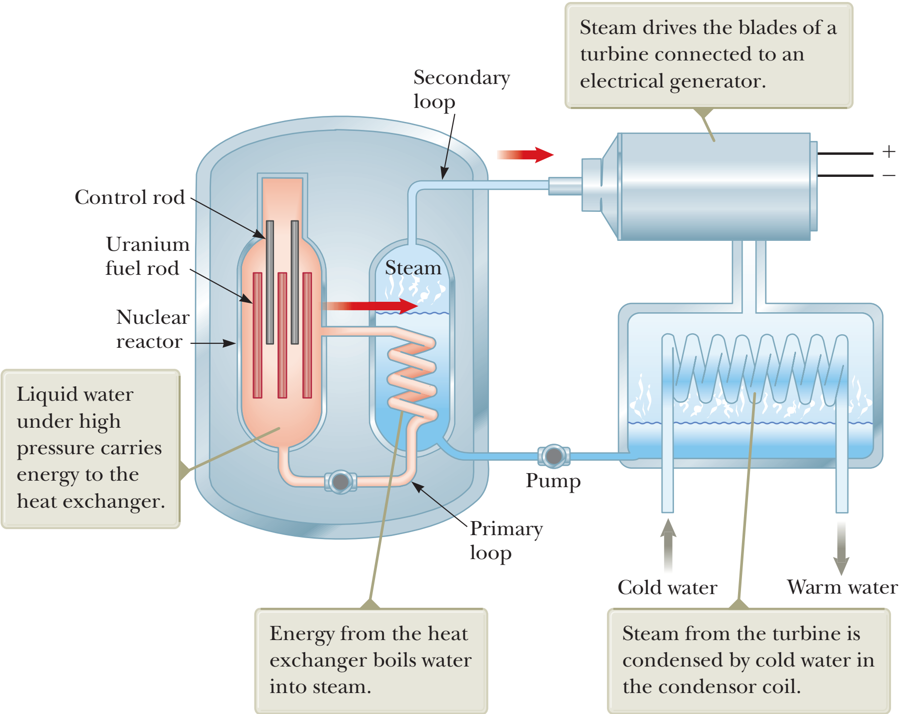


Figure 45.5 Main components of a pressurized-water nuclear reactor.

reactor plant by electrical transmission. The most common reactor in use in the United States is the pressurized-water reactor (Fig. 45.5). We shall examine this type because its main parts are common to all reactor designs. Fission events in the uranium **fuel elements** in the reactor core raise the temperature of the water contained in the primary loop, which is maintained at high pressure to keep the water from boiling. (This water also serves as the moderator to slow down the neutrons released in the fission events with energy of approximately 2 MeV.) The hot water is pumped through a heat exchanger, where the internal energy of the water is transferred by conduction to the water contained in the secondary loop. The hot water in the secondary loop is converted to steam, which does work to drive a turbine–generator system to create electric power. The water in the secondary loop is isolated from the water in the primary loop to avoid contamination of the secondary water and the steam by radioactive nuclei from the reactor core.

In any reactor, a fraction of the neutrons produced in fission leak out of the uranium fuel elements before inducing other fission events. If the fraction leaking out is too large, the reactor will not operate. The percentage lost is large if the fuel elements are very small because leakage is a function of the ratio of surface area to volume. Therefore, a critical feature of the reactor design is an optimal surface area–to–volume ratio of the fuel elements.

Control of Power Level

Safety is of critical importance in the operation of a nuclear reactor. The reproduction constant K must not be allowed to rise above 1, lest a runaway reaction occur. Consequently, reactor design must include a means of controlling the value of K.

The basic design of a nuclear reactor core is shown in Figure 45.6. The fuel elements consist of uranium that has been enriched in the ^{235}U isotope. To control the power level, **control rods** are inserted into the reactor core. These rods are made of materials such as cadmium that are very efficient in absorbing neutrons. By adjusting the number and position of the control rods in the reactor core, the K value

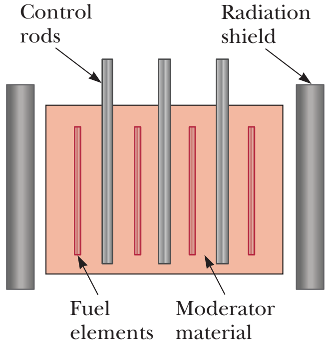


Figure 45.6 Cross section of a reactor core showing the control rods, fuel elements containing enriched fuel, and moderating material, all surrounded by a radiation shield.

can be varied and any power level within the design range of the reactor can be achieved.

Quick Quiz 45.3 To reduce the value of the reproduction constant K, do you **(a)** push the control rods deeper into the core or **(b)** pull the control rods farther out of the core?

Safety and Waste Disposal

The 1986 accident at the Chernobyl reactor in Ukraine and the 2011 nuclear disaster caused by the earthquake and tsunami in Japan rightfully focused attention on reactor safety. Unfortunately, at Chernobyl the activity of the materials released immediately after the accident totaled approximately 1.2×10^{19} Bq and resulted in the evacuation of 135 000 people. Thirty individuals died during the accident or shortly thereafter, and data from the Ukraine Radiological Institute suggest that more than 2 500 deaths could be attributed to the Chernobyl accident. In the period 1986–1997, there was a tenfold increase in the number of children contracting thyroid cancer from the ingestion of radioactive iodine in milk from cows that ate contaminated grass. One conclusion of an international conference studying the Ukraine accident was that the main causes of the Chernobyl accident were the coincidence of severe deficiencies in the reactor physical design and a violation of safety procedures. Most of these deficiencies have since been addressed at plants of similar design in Russia and neighboring countries of the former Soviet Union.

The March 2011 accident in Japan was caused by an unfortunate combination of a massive earthquake and subsequent tsunami. The most hard-hit power plant, Fukushima I, shut down automatically after the earthquake. Shutting down a nuclear power plant, however, is not an instantaneous process. Cooling water must continue to be circulated to carry the energy generated by beta decay of the fission by-products out of the reactor core. Unfortunately, the water from the tsunami broke the connection to the power grid, leaving the plant without outside electrical support for circulating the water. While the plant had emergency generators to take over in such a situation, the tsunami inundated the generator rooms, making the generators inoperable. Three of the six reactors at Fukushima experienced meltdown, and there were several explosions. Significant radiation was released into the environment. At the time of this printing, all 54 of Japan's nuclear power plants have been taken offline, and the Japanese public has expressed strong reluctance to continue with nuclear power.

Commercial reactors achieve safety through careful design and rigid operating protocol, and only when these variables are compromised do reactors pose a danger. Radiation exposure and the potential health risks associated with such exposure are controlled by three layers of containment. The fuel and radioactive fission products are contained inside the reactor vessel. Should this vessel rupture, the reactor building acts as a second containment structure to prevent radioactive material from contaminating the environment. Finally, the reactor facilities must be in a remote location to protect the general public from exposure should radiation escape the reactor building.

A continuing concern about nuclear fission reactors is the safe disposal of radioactive material when the reactor core is replaced. This waste material contains long-lived, highly radioactive isotopes and must be stored over long time intervals in such a way that there is no chance of environmental contamination. At present, sealing radioactive wastes in waterproof containers and burying them in deep geologic repositories seems to be the most promising solution.

Transport of reactor fuel and reactor wastes poses additional safety risks. Accidents during transport of nuclear fuel could expose the public to harmful levels of radiation. The U.S. Department of Energy requires stringent crash tests of all containers used to transport nuclear materials. Container manufacturers must demonstrate that their containers will not rupture even in high-speed collisions.

Despite these risks, there are advantages to the use of nuclear power to be weighed against the risks. For example, nuclear power plants do not produce air pollution and greenhouse gases as do fossil fuel plants, and the supply of uranium on the Earth is predicted to last longer than the supply of fossil fuels. For each source of energy—whether nuclear, hydroelectric, fossil fuel, wind, solar, or other—the risks must be weighed against the benefits and the availability of the energy source.

45.4 Nuclear Fusion

In Chapter 44, we found that the binding energy for light nuclei ($A < 20$) is much smaller than the binding energy for heavier nuclei, which suggests a process that is the reverse of fission. As mentioned in Section 39.8, when two light nuclei combine to form a heavier nucleus, the process is called nuclear **fusion.** Because the mass of the final nucleus is less than the combined masses of the original nuclei, there is a loss of mass accompanied by a release of energy.

Two examples of such energy-liberating fusion reactions are as follows:

$$
\begin{aligned}
{}^1_1\text{H} + {}^1_1\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^2_1\text{H} + \text{e}^+ + \nu \\
{}^1_1\text{H} + {}^2_1\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^3_2\text{He} + \gamma
\end{aligned}
$$

These reactions occur in the core of a star and are responsible for the outpouring of energy from the star. The second reaction is followed by either hydrogen–helium fusion or helium–helium fusion:

$$
\begin{aligned}
{}^1_1\text{H} + {}^3_2\text{He} &\rightarrow {}^4_2\text{He} + \text{e}^+ + \nu \\
{}^3_2\text{He} + {}^3_2\text{He} &\rightarrow {}^4_2\text{He} + {}^1_1\text{H} + {}^1_1\text{H}
\end{aligned}
$$

These fusion reactions are the basic reactions in the **proton–proton cycle,** believed to be one of the basic cycles by which energy is generated in the Sun and other stars that contain an abundance of hydrogen. Most of the energy production takes place in the Sun's interior, where the temperature is approximately 1.5×10^7 K. Because such high temperatures are required to drive these reactions, they are called **thermonuclear fusion reactions.** All the reactions in the proton–proton cycle are exothermic. An overview of the cycle is that four protons combine to generate an alpha particle, positrons, gamma rays, and neutrinos.

Pitfall Prevention 45.2

Fission and Fusion The words *fission* and *fusion* sound similar, but they correspond to different processes. Consider the binding-energy graph in Figure 44.5. There are two directions from which you can approach the peak of the graph so that energy is released: combining two light nuclei, or fusion, and separating a heavy nucleus into two lighter nuclei, or fission.

Quick Quiz 45.4 In the core of a star, hydrogen nuclei combine in fusion reactions. Once the hydrogen has been exhausted, fusion of helium nuclei can occur. If the star is sufficiently massive, fusion of heavier and heavier nuclei can occur once the helium is used up. Consider a fusion reaction involving two nuclei with the same value of A. For this reaction to be exothermic, which of the following values of A are impossible? **(a)** 12 **(b)** 20 **(c)** 28 **(d)** 64

Example 45.2 Energy Released in Fusion

Find the total energy released in the fusion reactions in the proton–proton cycle.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The net nuclear result of the proton–proton cycle is to fuse four protons to form an alpha particle. Study the reactions above for the proton–proton cycle to be sure you understand how four protons become an alpha particle.

Categorize We use concepts discussed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

continued

45.2 continued

Find the initial mass of the system using the atomic mass of hydrogen from Table 44.2: $4(1.007\,825\text{ u}) = 4.031\,300\text{ u}$

Find the change in mass of the system as this value minus the mass of a ^{4}He atom: $4.031\,300\text{ u} - 4.002\,603\text{ u} = 0.028\,697\text{ u}$

Convert this mass change into energy units: $E = 0.028\,697\text{ u} \times 931.494\text{ MeV/u} = \boxed{26.7\text{ MeV}}$

This energy is shared among the alpha particle and other particles such as positrons, gamma rays, and neutrinos.

Terrestrial Fusion Reactions

The enormous amount of energy released in fusion reactions suggests the possibility of harnessing this energy for useful purposes. A great deal of effort is currently under way to develop a sustained and controllable thermonuclear reactor, a fusion power reactor. Controlled fusion is often called the ultimate energy source because of the availability of its fuel source: water. For example, if deuterium were used as the fuel, 0.12 g of it could be extracted from 1 gal of water at a cost of about four cents. This amount of deuterium would release approximately 10^{10} J if all nuclei underwent fusion. By comparison, 1 gal of gasoline releases approximately 10^8 J upon burning and costs far more than four cents.

An additional advantage of fusion reactors is that comparatively few radioactive by-products are formed. For the proton–proton cycle, for instance, the end product is safe, nonradioactive helium. Unfortunately, a thermonuclear reactor that can deliver a net power output spread over a reasonable time interval is not yet a reality, and many difficulties must be resolved before a successful device is constructed.

The Sun's energy is based in part on a set of reactions in which hydrogen is converted to helium. The proton–proton interaction is not suitable for use in a fusion reactor, however, because the event requires very high temperatures and densities. The process works in the Sun only because of the extremely high density of protons in the Sun's interior.

The reactions that appear most promising for a fusion power reactor involve deuterium ($^2_1$H) and tritium ($^3_1$H):

$$\begin{aligned} {}^2_1\text{H} + {}^2_1\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^3_2\text{He} + {}^1_0\text{n} \qquad Q = 3.27\text{ MeV} \\ {}^2_1\text{H} + {}^2_1\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^3_1\text{H} + {}^1_1\text{H} \qquad Q = 4.03\text{ MeV} \\ {}^2_1\text{H} + {}^3_1\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^4_2\text{He} + {}^1_0\text{n} \qquad Q = 17.59\text{ MeV} \end{aligned} \tag{45.4}$$

As noted earlier, deuterium is available in almost unlimited quantities from our lakes and oceans and is very inexpensive to extract. Tritium, however, is radioactive ($T_{1/2} = 12.3$ yr) and undergoes beta decay to ^{3}He. For this reason, tritium does not occur naturally to any great extent and must be artificially produced.

One major problem in obtaining energy from nuclear fusion is that the Coulomb repulsive force between two nuclei, which carry positive charges, must be overcome before they can fuse. Figure 45.7 is a graph of potential energy as a function of the separation distance between two deuterons (deuterium nuclei, each having charge $+e$). The potential energy is positive in the region $r > R$, where the Coulomb repulsive force dominates ($R \approx 1$ fm), and negative in the region $r < R$, where the nuclear force dominates. The fundamental problem then is to give the two nuclei enough kinetic energy to overcome this repulsive force. This requirement can be accomplished by raising the fuel to extremely high temperatures (to approximately 10^8 K). At these high temperatures, the atoms are ionized and the system consists of a collection of electrons and nuclei, commonly referred to as a *plasma*.

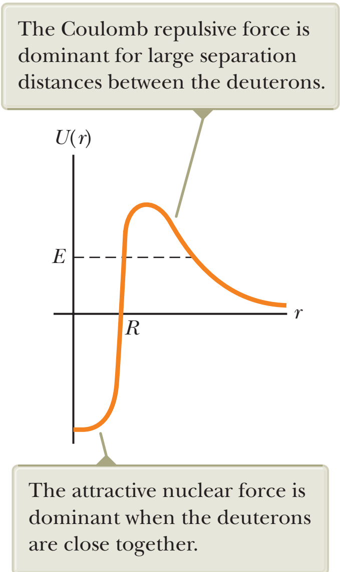


Figure 45.7 Potential energy as a function of separation distance between two deuterons. R is on the order of 1 fm. If we neglect tunneling, the two deuterons require an energy E greater than the height of the barrier to undergo fusion.

Example 45.3 The Fusion of Two Deuterons

For the nuclear force to overcome the repulsive Coulomb force, the separation distance between two deuterons must be approximately 1.0×10^{-14} m.

(A) Calculate the height of the potential barrier due to the repulsive force.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine moving two deuterons toward each other. As they move closer together, the Coulomb repulsion force becomes stronger. Work must be done on the system to push against this force, and this work appears in the system of two deuterons as electric potential energy.

Categorize We categorize this problem as one involving the electric potential energy of a system of two charged particles.

Analyze Evaluate the potential energy associated with two charges separated by a distance r (Eq. 25.13) for two deuterons:

$$U = k_e \frac{q_1 q_2}{r} = k_e \frac{(+e)^2}{r} = (8.99 \times 10^9 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}^2/\text{C}^2) \frac{(1.60 \times 10^{-19} \text{ C})^2}{1.0 \times 10^{-14} \text{ m}}$$

$$= 2.3 \times 10^{-14} \text{ J} = \boxed{0.14 \text{ MeV}}$$

(B) Estimate the temperature required for a deuteron to overcome the potential barrier, assuming an energy of $\frac{3}{2}k_B T$ per deuteron (where k_B is Boltzmann's constant).

SOLUTION

Because the total Coulomb energy of the pair is 0.14 MeV, the Coulomb energy per deuteron is equal to 0.07 MeV = 1.1×10^{-14} J.

Set this energy equal to the average energy per deuteron:

$$\tfrac{3}{2}k_B T = 1.1 \times 10^{-14} \text{ J}$$

Solve for T:

$$T = \frac{2(1.1 \times 10^{-14} \text{ J})}{3(1.38 \times 10^{-23} \text{ J/K})} = \boxed{5.6 \times 10^8 \text{ K}}$$

(C) Find the energy released in the deuterium–deuterium reaction

$$^2_1\text{H} + {}^2_1\text{H} \rightarrow {}^3_1\text{H} + {}^1_1\text{H}$$

SOLUTION

The mass of a single deuterium atom is equal to 2.014 102 u. Therefore, the total mass of the system before the reaction is 4.028 204 u.

Find the sum of the masses after the reaction:

$$3.016\,049 \text{ u} + 1.007\,825 \text{ u} = 4.023\,874 \text{ u}$$

Find the change in mass and convert to energy units:

$$4.028\,204 \text{ u} - 4.023\,874 \text{ u} = 0.004\,33 \text{ u}$$

$$= 0.004\,33 \text{ u} \times 931.494 \text{ MeV/u} = \boxed{4.03 \text{ MeV}}$$

Finalize The calculated temperature in part (B) is too high because the particles in the plasma have a Maxwellian speed distribution (Section 21.5) and therefore some fusion reactions are caused by particles in the high-energy tail of this distribution. Furthermore, even those particles that do not have enough energy to overcome the barrier have some probability of tunneling through (Section 41.5). When these effects are taken into account, a temperature of "only" 4×10^8 K appears adequate to fuse two deuterons in a plasma. In part (C), notice that the energy value is consistent with that already given in Equation 45.4.

WHAT IF? Suppose the tritium resulting from the reaction in part (C) reacts with another deuterium in the reaction

$$^2_1\text{H} + {}^3_1\text{H} \rightarrow {}^4_2\text{He} + {}^1_0\text{n}$$

How much energy is released in the sequence of two reactions?

continued

45.3 continued

Answer The overall effect of the sequence of two reactions is that three deuterium nuclei have combined to form a helium nucleus, a hydrogen nucleus, and a neutron. The initial mass is 3(2.014 102 u) = 6.042 306 u. After the reaction, the sum of the masses is 4.002 603 u + 1.007 825 u + 1.008 665 = 6.019 093 u. The excess mass is equal to 0.023 213 u, equivalent to an energy of 21.6 MeV. Notice that this value is the sum of the Q values for the second and third reactions in Equation 45.4.

The temperature at which the power generation rate in any fusion reaction exceeds the loss rate is called the **critical ignition temperature** T_{ignit}. This temperature for the deuterium–deuterium (D–D) reaction is 4×10^8 K. From the relationship $E \approx \frac{3}{2}k_B T$, the ignition temperature is equivalent to approximately 52 keV. The critical ignition temperature for the deuterium–tritium (D–T) reaction is approximately 4.5×10^7 K, or only 6 keV. A plot of the power P_{gen} generated by fusion versus temperature for the two reactions is shown in Figure 45.8. The straight green line represents the power P_{lost} lost via the radiation mechanism known as bremsstrahlung (Section 42.8). In this principal mechanism of energy loss, radiation (primarily x-rays) is emitted as the result of electron–ion collisions within the plasma. The intersections of the P_{lost} line with the P_{gen} curves give the critical ignition temperatures.

In addition to the high-temperature requirements, two other critical parameters determine whether or not a thermonuclear reactor is successful: the **ion density** n and **confinement time** τ, which is the time interval during which energy injected into the plasma remains within the plasma. British physicist J. D. Lawson (1923–2008) showed that both the ion density and confinement time must be large enough to ensure that more fusion energy is released than the amount required to raise the temperature of the plasma. For a given value of n, the probability of fusion between two particles increases as τ increases. For a given value of τ, the collision rate between nuclei increases as n increases. The product $n\tau$ is referred to as the **Lawson number** of a reaction. A graph of the value of $n\tau$ necessary to achieve a net energy output for the D–T and D–D reactions at different temperatures is shown in Figure 45.9. In particular, **Lawson's criterion** states that a net energy output is possible for values of $n\tau$ that meet the following conditions:

$$n\tau \geq 10^{14}\ \text{s/cm}^3 \quad \text{(D–T)} \tag{45.5}$$

$$n\tau \geq 10^{16}\ \text{s/cm}^3 \quad \text{(D–D)}$$

These values represent the minima of the curves in Figure 45.9.

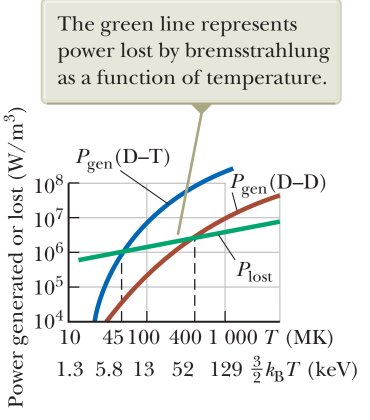


Figure 45.8 Power generated versus temperature for deuterium–deuterium (D–D) and deuterium–tritium (D–T) fusion. When the generation rate exceeds the loss rate, ignition takes place.

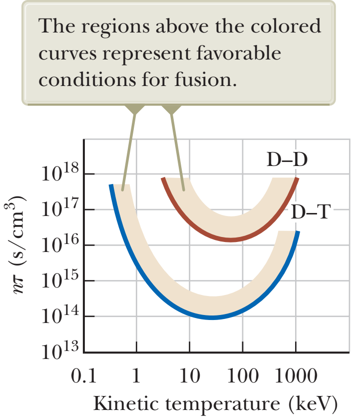
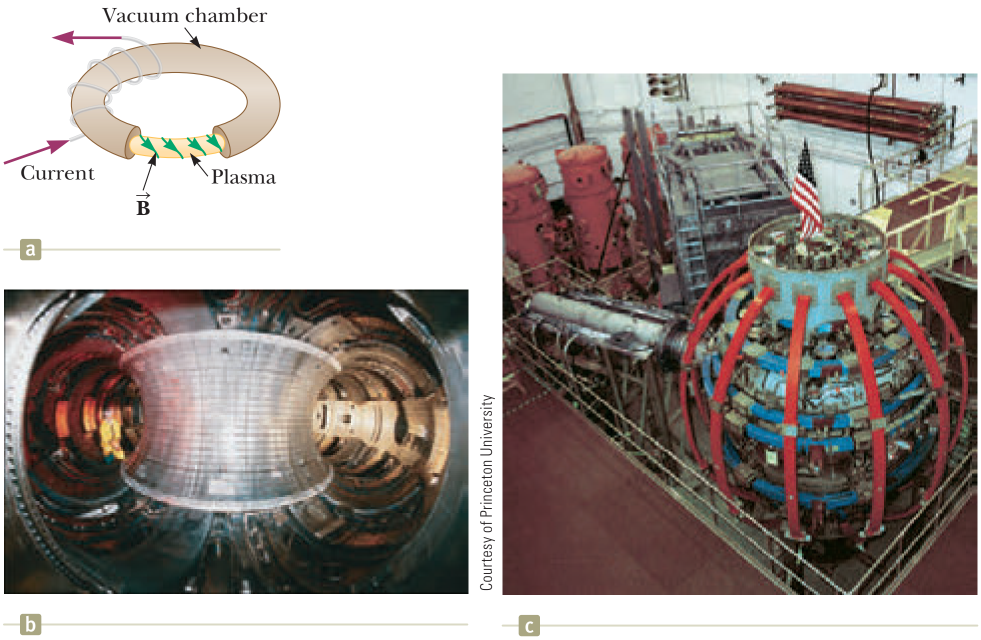


Figure 45.9 The Lawson number $n\tau$ at which net energy output is possible versus temperature for the D–T and D–D fusion reactions.



Courtesy of Princeton Plasma Physics Laboratory

Courtesy of Princeton University

Figure 45.10 (a) Diagram of a tokamak used in the magnetic confinement scheme. (b) Interior view of the closed Tokamak Fusion Test Reactor (TFTR) vacuum vessel at the Princeton Plasma Physics Laboratory. (c) The National Spherical Torus Experiment (NSTX) that began operation in March 1999.

Lawson's criterion was arrived at by comparing the energy required to raise the temperature of a given plasma with the energy generated by the fusion process.[2] The energy E_{in} required to raise the temperature of the plasma is proportional to the ion density n, which we can express as $E_{in} = C_1 n$, where C_1 is some constant. The energy generated by the fusion process is proportional to $n^2\tau$, or $E_{gen} = C_2 n^2 \tau$. This dependence may be understood by realizing that the fusion energy released is proportional to both the rate at which interacting ions collide ($\propto n^2$) and the confinement time τ. Net energy is produced when $E_{gen} > E_{in}$. When the constants C_1 and C_2 are calculated for different reactions, the condition that $E_{gen} \geq E_{in}$ leads to Lawson's criterion.

Current efforts are aimed at meeting Lawson's criterion at temperatures exceeding T_{ignit}. Although the minimum required plasma densities have been achieved, the problem of confinement time is more difficult. The two basic techniques under investigation for solving this problem are *magnetic confinement* and *inertial confinement*.

Magnetic Confinement

Many fusion-related plasma experiments use **magnetic confinement** to contain the plasma. A toroidal device called a **tokamak,** first developed in Russia, is shown in Figure 45.10a. A combination of two magnetic fields is used to confine and stabilize the plasma: (1) a strong toroidal field produced by the current in the toroidal windings surrounding a doughnut-shaped vacuum chamber and (2) a weaker "poloidal" field produced by the toroidal current. In addition to confining the plasma, the toroidal current is used to raise its temperature. The resultant helical magnetic field lines spiral around the plasma and keep it from touching the walls of the vacuum chamber. (If the plasma touches the walls, its temperature is reduced and heavy impurities sputtered from the walls "poison" it, leading to large power losses.)

One major breakthrough in magnetic confinement in the 1980s was in the area of auxiliary energy input to reach ignition temperatures. Experiments have shown

[2]Lawson's criterion neglects the energy needed to set up the strong magnetic field used to confine the hot plasma in a magnetic confinement approach. This energy is expected to be about 20 times greater than the energy required to raise the temperature of the plasma. It is therefore necessary either to have a magnetic energy recovery system or to use superconducting magnets.

that injecting a beam of energetic neutral particles into the plasma is a very efficient method of raising it to ignition temperatures. Radio-frequency energy input will probably be needed for reactor-size plasmas.

When it was in operation from 1982 to 1997, the Tokamak Fusion Test Reactor (TFTR, Fig. 45.10b) at Princeton University reported central ion temperatures of 510 million degrees Celsius, more than 30 times greater than the temperature at the center of the Sun. The $n\tau$ values in the TFTR for the D–T reaction were well above 10^{13} s/cm^3 and close to the value required by Lawson's criterion. In 1991, reaction rates of 6×10^{17} D–T fusions per second were reached in the Joint European Torus (JET) tokamak at Abington, England.

One of the new generation of fusion experiments is the National Spherical Torus Experiment (NSTX) at the Princeton Plasma Physics Laboratory and shown in Figure 45.10c. This reactor was brought on line in February 1999 and has been running fusion experiments since then. Rather than the doughnut-shaped plasma of a tokamak, the NSTX produces a spherical plasma that has a hole through its center. The major advantage of the spherical configuration is its ability to confine the plasma at a higher pressure in a given magnetic field. This approach could lead to development of smaller, more economical fusion reactors.

An international collaborative effort involving the United States, the European Union, Japan, China, South Korea, India, and Russia is currently under way to build a fusion reactor called ITER. This acronym stands for International Thermonuclear Experimental Reactor, although recently the emphasis has shifted to interpreting "iter" in terms of its Latin meaning, "the way." One reason proposed for this change is to avoid public misunderstanding and negative connotations toward the word *thermonuclear.* This facility will address the remaining technological and scientific issues concerning the feasibility of fusion power. The design is completed, and Cadarache, France, was chosen in June 2005 as the reactor site. Construction began in 2007 and will require about 10 years, with fusion operation projected to begin in 2019. If the planned device works as expected, the Lawson number for ITER will be about six times greater than the current record holder, the JT-60U tokamak in Japan. ITER is expected to produce ten times as much output power as input power, and the energy content of the alpha particles inside the reactor will be so intense that they will sustain the fusion reaction, allowing the auxiliary energy sources to be turned off once the reaction is initiated.

Example 45.4 Inside a Fusion Reactor

In 1998, the JT-60U tokamak in Japan operated with a D–T plasma density of 4.8×10^{13} cm^{-3} at a temperature (in energy units) of 24.1 keV. It confined this plasma inside a magnetic field for 1.1 s.

(A) Do these data meet Lawson's criterion?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize With the help of the third of Equations 45.4, imagine many such reactions occurring in a plasma of high temperature and high density.

Categorize We use the concept of the Lawson number discussed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate the Lawson number for the JT-60U:

$$n\tau = (4.8 \times 10^{13}\ \text{cm}^{-3})(1.1\ \text{s}) = 5.3 \times 10^{13}\ \text{s/cm}^3$$

This value is close to meeting Lawson's criterion of 10^{14} s/cm^3 for a D–T plasma given in Equation 45.5. In fact, scientists recorded a power gain of 1.25, indicating that the reactor operated slightly past the break-even point and produced more energy than it required to maintain the plasma.

(B) How does the plasma density compare with the density of atoms in an ideal gas when the gas is under standard conditions ($T = 0°$C and $P = 1$ atm)?

45.4 continued

SOLUTION

Find the density of atoms in a sample of ideal gas by evaluating N_A/V_{mol}, where N_A is Avogadro's number and V_{mol} is the molar volume of an ideal gas under standard conditions, $2.24 \times 10^{-2}\ m^3/mol$:

$$\frac{N_A}{V_{mol}} = \frac{6.02 \times 10^{23}\ \text{atoms/mol}}{2.24 \times 10^{-2}\ \text{m}^3/\text{mol}} = 2.7 \times 10^{25}\ \text{atoms/m}^3$$
$$= 2.7 \times 10^{19}\ \text{atoms/cm}^3$$

This value is more than 500 000 times greater than the plasma density in the reactor.

Inertial Confinement

The second technique for confining a plasma, called **inertial confinement,** makes use of a D–T target that has a very high particle density. In this scheme, the confinement time is very short (typically 10^{-11} to 10^{-9} s), and, because of their own inertia, the particles do not have a chance to move appreciably from their initial positions. Therefore, Lawson's criterion can be satisfied by combining a high particle density with a short confinement time.

Laser fusion is the most common form of inertial confinement. A small D–T pellet, approximately 1 mm in diameter, is struck simultaneously by several focused, high-intensity laser beams, resulting in a large pulse of input energy that causes the surface of the fuel pellet to evaporate (Fig. 45.11). The escaping particles exert a third-law reaction force on the core of the pellet, resulting in a strong, inwardly moving compressive shock wave. This shock wave increases the pressure and density of the core and produces a corresponding increase in temperature. When the temperature of the core reaches ignition temperature, fusion reactions occur.

One of the leading laser fusion laboratories in the United States is the Omega facility at the University of Rochester in New York. This facility focuses 24 laser beams on the target. Currently under operation at the Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory in Livermore, California, is the National Ignition Facility. The research apparatus there includes 192 laser beams that can be focused on a deuterium–tritium pellet. Construction was completed in early 2009, and a test firing of the lasers in March 2012 broke the record for lasers, delivering 1.87 MJ to a target. This energy is delivered in such a short time interval that the power is immense: 500 trillion watts, more than 1 000 times the power used in the United States at any moment.

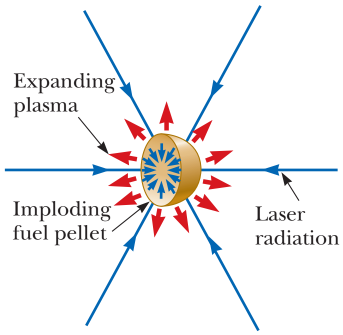


Figure 45.11 In inertial confinement, a D–T fuel pellet fuses when struck by several high-intensity laser beams simultaneously.

Fusion Reactor Design

In the D–T fusion reaction

$$^2_1\text{H} + ^3_1\text{H} \rightarrow ^4_2\text{He} + ^1_0\text{n} \qquad Q = 17.59\ \text{MeV}$$

the alpha particle carries 20% of the energy and the neutron carries 80%, or approximately 14 MeV. A diagram of the deuterium–tritium fusion reaction is shown in Figure 45.12. Because the alpha particles are charged, they are primarily absorbed by the plasma, causing the plasma's temperature to increase. In contrast, the 14-MeV neutrons, being electrically neutral, pass through the plasma and are absorbed by a surrounding blanket material, where their large kinetic energy is extracted and used to generate electric power.

One scheme is to use molten lithium metal as the neutron-absorbing material and to circulate the lithium in a closed heat-exchange loop, thereby producing steam and driving turbines as in a conventional power plant. Figure 45.13 (page 1432) shows a diagram of such a reactor. It is estimated that a blanket of lithium approximately 1 m thick will capture nearly 100% of the neutrons from the fusion of a small D–T pellet.

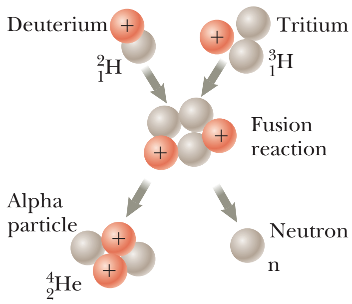


Figure 45.12 Deuterium–tritium fusion. Eighty percent of the energy released is in the 14-MeV neutron.

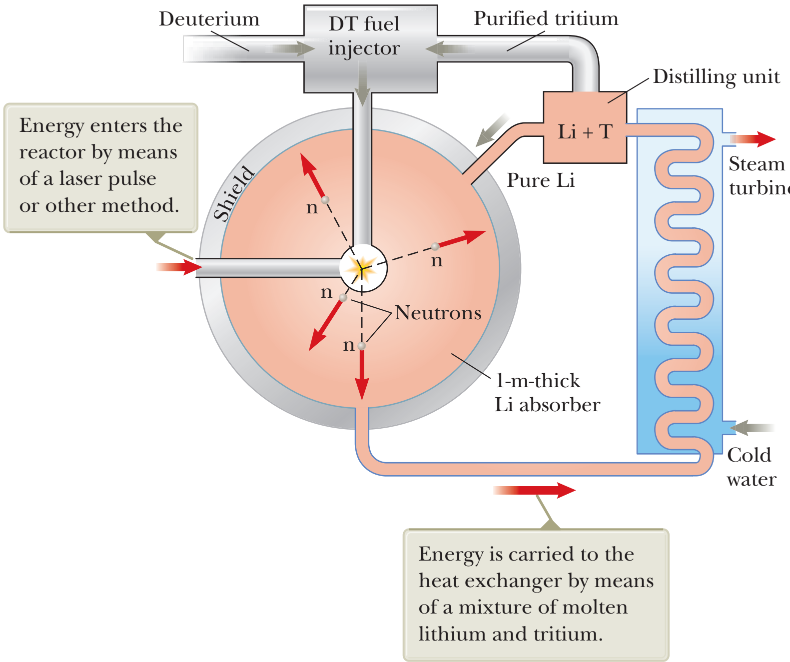


Figure 45.13 Diagram of a fusion reactor.

The capture of neutrons by lithium is described by the reaction

$$ {}^{1}_{0}\text{n} + {}^{6}_{3}\text{Li} \rightarrow {}^{3}_{1}\text{H} + {}^{4}_{2}\text{He} $$

where the kinetic energies of the charged tritium ${}^{3}_{1}\text{H}$ and alpha particle are transformed to internal energy in the molten lithium. An extra advantage of using lithium as the energy-transfer medium is that the tritium produced can be separated from the lithium and returned as fuel to the reactor.

Advantages and Problems of Fusion

If fusion power can ever be harnessed, it will offer several advantages over fission-generated power: (1) low cost and abundance of fuel (deuterium), (2) impossibility of runaway accidents, and (3) decreased radiation hazard. Some of the anticipated problems and disadvantages include (1) scarcity of lithium, (2) limited supply of helium, which is needed for cooling the superconducting magnets used to produce strong confining fields, and (3) structural damage and induced radioactivity caused by neutron bombardment. If such problems and the engineering design factors can be resolved, nuclear fusion may become a feasible source of energy in the twenty-first century.

45.5 Radiation Damage

In Chapter 34, we learned that electromagnetic radiation is all around us in the form of radio waves, microwaves, light waves, and so on. In this section, we describe forms of radiation that can cause severe damage as they pass through matter, such as radiation resulting from radioactive processes and radiation in the form of energetic particles such as neutrons and protons.

The degree and type of damage depend on several factors, including the type and energy of the radiation and the properties of the matter. The metals used in nuclear reactor structures can be severely weakened by high fluxes of energetic neutrons because these high fluxes often lead to metal fatigue. The damage in such situations is in the form of atomic displacements, often resulting in major alterations in the properties of the material.

Radiation damage in biological organisms is primarily due to ionization effects in cells. A cell's normal operation may be disrupted when highly reactive ions are formed as the result of ionizing radiation. For example, hydrogen and the hydroxyl radical OH^- produced from water molecules can induce chemical reactions that may break bonds in proteins and other vital molecules. Furthermore, the ionizing radiation may affect vital molecules directly by removing electrons from their structure. Large doses of radiation are especially dangerous because damage to a great number of molecules in a cell may cause the cell to die. Although the death of a single cell is usually not a problem, the death of many cells may result in irreversible damage to the organism. Cells that divide rapidly, such as those of the digestive tract, reproductive organs, and hair follicles, are especially susceptible. In addition, cells that survive the radiation may become defective. These defective cells can produce more defective cells and can lead to cancer.

In biological systems, it is common to separate radiation damage into two categories: somatic damage and genetic damage. *Somatic damage* is that associated with any body cell except the reproductive cells. Somatic damage can lead to cancer or can seriously alter the characteristics of specific organisms. *Genetic damage* affects only reproductive cells. Damage to the genes in reproductive cells can lead to defective offspring. It is important to be aware of the effect of diagnostic treatments, such as x-rays and other forms of radiation exposure, and to balance the significant benefits of treatment with the damaging effects.

Damage caused by radiation also depends on the radiation's penetrating power. Alpha particles cause extensive damage, but penetrate only to a shallow depth in a material due to the strong interaction with other charged particles. Neutrons do not interact via the electric force and hence penetrate deeper, causing significant damage. Gamma rays are high-energy photons that can cause severe damage, but often pass through matter without interaction.

Several units have been used historically to quantify the amount, or dose, of any radiation that interacts with a substance.

The **roentgen** (R) is that amount of ionizing radiation that produces an electric charge of 3.33×10^{-10} C in 1 cm^3 of air under standard conditions.

Equivalently, the roentgen is that amount of radiation that increases the energy of 1 kg of air by 8.76×10^{-3} J.

For most applications, the roentgen has been replaced by the rad (an acronym for *radiation absorbed dose*):

One **rad** is that amount of radiation that increases the energy of 1 kg of absorbing material by 1×10^{-2} J.

Although the rad is a perfectly good physical unit, it is not the best unit for measuring the degree of biological damage produced by radiation because damage depends not only on the dose but also on the type of the radiation. For example, a given dose of alpha particles causes about ten times more biological damage than an equal dose of x-rays. The **RBE** (relative biological effectiveness) factor for a given type of radiation is **the number of rads of x-radiation or gamma radiation that produces the same biological damage as 1 rad of the radiation being used.** The RBE factors for different types of radiation are given in Table 45.1 (page 1434). The values are only approximate because they vary with particle energy and with the form of the damage. The RBE factor should be considered only a first-approximation guide to the actual effects of radiation.

Finally, the **rem** (radiation equivalent in man) is the product of the dose in rad and the RBE factor:

$$\text{Dose in rem} \equiv \text{dose in rad} \times \text{RBE} \tag{45.6}$$

◀ **Radiation dose in rem**

Table 45.1 RBE Factors for Several Types of Radiation

Radiation	RBE Factor
X-rays and gamma rays	1.0
Beta particles	1.0–1.7
Alpha particles	10–20
Thermal neutrons	4–5
Fast neutrons and protons	10
Heavy ions	20

Note: RBE = relative biological effectiveness.

Table 45.2 Units for Radiation Dosage

Quantity	SI Unit	Symbol	Relations to Other SI Units	Older Unit	Conversion
Absorbed dose	gray	Gy	= 1 J/kg	rad	1 Gy = 100 rad
Dose equivalent	sievert	Sv	= 1 J/kg	rem	1 Sv = 100 rem

According to this definition, 1 rem of any two types of radiation produces the same amount of biological damage. Table 45.1 shows that a dose of 1 rad of fast neutrons represents an effective dose of 10 rem, but 1 rad of gamma radiation is equivalent to a dose of only 1 rem.

This discussion has focused on measurements of radiation dosage in units such as rads and rems because these units are still widely used. They have, however, been formally replaced with new SI units. The rad has been replaced with the *gray* (Gy), equal to 100 rad, and the rem has been replaced with the *sievert* (Sv), equal to 100 rem. Table 45.2 summarizes the older and the current SI units of radiation dosage.

Low-level radiation from natural sources such as cosmic rays and radioactive rocks and soil delivers to each of us a dose of approximately 2.4 mSv/yr. This radiation, called *background radiation,* varies with geography, with the main factors being altitude (exposure to cosmic rays) and geology (radon gas released by some rock formations, deposits of naturally radioactive minerals).

The upper limit of radiation dose rate recommended by the U.S. government (apart from background radiation) is approximately 5 mSv/yr. Many occupations involve much higher radiation exposures, so an upper limit of 50 mSv/yr has been set for combined whole-body exposure. Higher upper limits are permissible for certain parts of the body, such as the hands and the forearms. A dose of 4 to 5 Sv results in a mortality rate of approximately 50% (which means that half the people exposed to this radiation level die). The most dangerous form of exposure for most people is either ingestion or inhalation of radioactive isotopes, especially isotopes of those elements the body retains and concentrates, such as ^{90}Sr.

45.6 Uses of Radiation

Nuclear physics applications are extremely widespread in manufacturing, medicine, and biology. In this section, we present a few of these applications and the underlying theories supporting them.

Tracing

Radioactive tracers are used to track chemicals participating in various reactions. One of the most valuable uses of radioactive tracers is in medicine. For example, iodine, a nutrient needed by the human body, is obtained largely through the

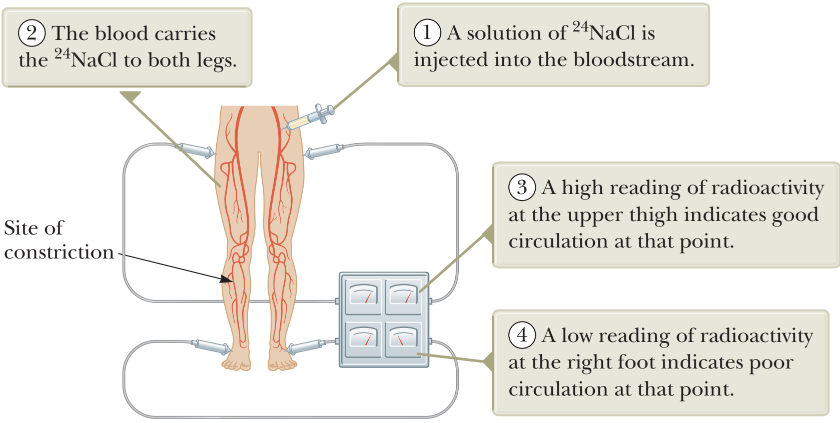


Figure 45.14 A tracer technique for determining the condition of the human circulatory system.

intake of iodized salt and seafood. To evaluate the performance of the thyroid, the patient drinks a very small amount of radioactive sodium iodide containing ^{131}I, an artificially produced isotope of iodine (the natural, nonradioactive isotope is ^{127}I). The amount of iodine in the thyroid gland is determined as a function of time by measuring the radiation intensity at the neck area. How much of the isotope ^{131}I remains in the thyroid is a measure of how well that gland is functioning.

A second medical application is indicated in Figure 45.14. A solution containing radioactive sodium is injected into a vein in the leg, and the time at which the radioisotope arrives at another part of the body is detected with a radiation counter. The elapsed time is a good indication of the presence or absence of constrictions in the circulatory system.

Tracers are also useful in agricultural research. Suppose the best method of fertilizing a plant is to be determined. A certain element in a fertilizer, such as nitrogen, can be *tagged* (identified) with one of its radioactive isotopes. The fertilizer is then sprayed on one group of plants, sprinkled on the ground for a second group, and raked into the soil for a third. A Geiger counter is then used to track the nitrogen through each of the three groups.

Tracing techniques are as wide ranging as human ingenuity can devise. Today, applications range from checking how teeth absorb fluoride to monitoring how cleansers contaminate food-processing equipment to studying deterioration inside an automobile engine. In this last case, a radioactive material is used in the manufacture of the car's piston rings and the oil is checked for radioactivity to determine the amount of wear on the rings.

Materials Analysis

For centuries, a standard method of identifying the elements in a sample of material has been chemical analysis, which involves determining how the material reacts with various chemicals. A second method is spectral analysis, which works because each element, when excited, emits its own characteristic set of electromagnetic wavelengths. These methods are now supplemented by a third technique, **neutron activation analysis.** A disadvantage of both chemical and spectral methods is that a fairly large sample of the material must be destroyed for the analysis. In addition, extremely small quantities of an element may go undetected by either method. Neutron activation analysis has an advantage over chemical analysis and spectral analysis in both respects.

When a material is irradiated with neutrons, nuclei in the material absorb the neutrons and are changed to different isotopes, most of which are radioactive. For example, ^{65}Cu absorbs a neutron to become ^{66}Cu, which undergoes beta decay:

$$^{1}_{0}\text{n} + {}^{65}_{29}\text{Cu} \rightarrow {}^{66}_{29}\text{Cu} \rightarrow {}^{66}_{30}\text{Zn} + \text{e}^{-} + \overline{\nu}$$

The presence of the copper can be deduced because it is known that ^{66}Cu has a half-life of 5.1 min and decays with the emission of beta particles having a maximum energy of 2.63 MeV. Also emitted in the decay of ^{66}Cu is a 1.04-MeV gamma ray. By examining the radiation emitted by a substance after it has been exposed to neutron irradiation, one can detect extremely small amounts of an element in that substance.

Neutron activation analysis is used routinely in a number of industries. In commercial aviation, for example, it is used to check airline luggage for hidden explosives. One nonroutine use is of historical interest. Napoleon died on the island of St. Helena in 1821, supposedly of natural causes. Over the years, suspicion has existed that his death was not all that natural. After his death, his head was shaved and locks of his hair were sold as souvenirs. In 1961, the amount of arsenic in a sample of this hair was measured by neutron activation analysis, and an unusually large quantity of arsenic was found. (Activation analysis is so sensitive that very small pieces of a single hair could be analyzed.) Results showed that the arsenic was fed to him irregularly. In fact, the arsenic concentration pattern corresponded to the fluctuations in the severity of Napoleon's illness as determined from historical records.

Art historians use neutron activation analysis to detect forgeries. The pigments used in paints have changed throughout history, and old and new pigments react differently to neutron activation. The method can even reveal hidden works of art behind existing paintings because an older, hidden layer of paint reacts differently than the surface layer to neutron activation.

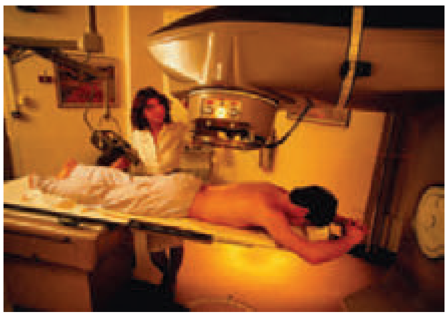
Radiation Therapy

Radiation causes much damage to rapidly dividing cells. Therefore, it is useful in cancer treatment because tumor cells divide extremely rapidly. Several mechanisms can be used to deliver radiation to a tumor. In Section 42.8, we discussed the use of high-energy x-rays in the treatment of cancerous tissue. Other treatment protocols include the use of narrow beams of radiation from a radioactive source. As an example, Figure 45.15 shows a machine that uses ^{60}Co as a source. The ^{60}Co isotope emits gamma rays with photon energies higher than 1 MeV.

In other situations, a technique called *brachytherapy* is used. In this treatment plan, thin radioactive needles called *seeds* are implanted in the cancerous tissue. The energy emitted from the seeds is delivered directly to the tumor, reducing the exposure of surrounding tissue to radiation damage. In the case of prostate cancer, the active isotopes used in brachytherapy include ^{125}I and ^{103}Pd.

Food Preservation

Radiation is finding increasing use as a means of preserving food because exposure to high levels of radiation can destroy or incapacitate bacteria and mold spores (Fig. 45.16). Techniques include exposing foods to gamma rays, high-energy electron beams, and x-rays. Food preserved by such exposure can be placed in a sealed container (to keep out new spoiling agents) and stored for long periods of time. There is little or no evidence of adverse effect on the taste or nutritional value of food



Martin Dohrn/Photo Researchers, Inc.

Figure 45.15 This large machine is being set to deliver a dose of radiation from ^{60}Co in an effort to destroy a cancerous tumor. Cancer cells are especially susceptible to this type of therapy because they tend to divide more often than cells of healthy tissue nearby.

Council for Agricultural Science & Technology

Figure 45.16 The strawberries on the left are untreated and have become moldy. The unspoiled strawberries on the right have been irradiated. The radiation has killed or incapacitated the mold spores that have spoiled the strawberries on the left.

from irradiation. The safety of irradiated foods has been endorsed by the World Health Organization, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the U.S. Department of Agriculture, and the Food and Drug Administration. Irradiation of food is presently permitted in more than 50 countries. Some estimates place the amount of irradiated food in the world as high as 500 000 metric tons each year.

Summary

Concepts and Principles

The probability that neutrons are captured as they move through matter generally increases with decreasing neutron energy. A **thermal neutron** is a slow-moving neutron that has a high probability of being captured by a nucleus in a **neutron capture event:**

$$ {}_0^1\text{n} + {}_Z^A\text{X} \rightarrow {}^{A+1}_{Z}\text{X}^* \rightarrow {}^{A+1}_{Z}\text{X} + \gamma \tag{45.1} $$

where ${}^{A+1}_{Z}\text{X}^*$ is an excited intermediate nucleus that rapidly emits a photon.

Nuclear fission occurs when a very heavy nucleus, such as ${}^{235}\text{U}$, splits into two smaller **fission fragments.** Thermal neutrons can create fission in ${}^{235}\text{U}$:

$$ {}_0^1\text{n} + {}^{235}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{236}_{92}\text{U}^* \rightarrow \text{X} + \text{Y} + \text{neutrons} \tag{45.2} $$

where ${}^{236}\text{U}^*$ is an intermediate excited state and X and Y are the fission fragments. On average, 2.5 neutrons are released per fission event. The fragments then undergo a series of beta and gamma decays to various stable isotopes. The energy released per fission event is approximately 200 MeV.

The **reproduction constant** K is the average number of neutrons released from each fission event that cause another event. In a fission reactor, it is necessary to maintain $K \approx 1$. The value of K is affected by such factors as reactor geometry, mean neutron energy, and probability of neutron capture.

In **nuclear fusion,** two light nuclei fuse to form a heavier nucleus and release energy. The major obstacle in obtaining useful energy from fusion is the large Coulomb repulsive force between the charged nuclei at small separation distances. The temperature required to produce fusion is on the order of 10^8 K, and at this temperature, all matter occurs as a plasma.

In a fusion reactor, the plasma temperature must reach the **critical ignition temperature,** the temperature at which the power generated by the fusion reactions exceeds the power lost in the system. The most promising fusion reaction is the D–T reaction, which has a critical ignition temperature of approximately 4.5×10^7 K. Two critical parameters in fusion reactor design are **ion density** n and **confinement time** τ, the time interval during which the interacting particles must be maintained at $T > T_{\text{ignit}}$. **Lawson's criterion** states that for the D–T reaction, $n\tau \geq 10^{14}\ \text{s/cm}^3$.

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. In a certain fission reaction, a ^{235}U nucleus captures a neutron. This process results in the creation of the products ^{137}I and ^{96}Y along with how many neutrons? (a) 1 (b) 2 (c) 3 (d) 4 (e) 5

2. Which particle is most likely to be captured by a ^{235}U nucleus and cause it to undergo fission? (a) an energetic proton (b) an energetic neutron (c) a slow-moving alpha particle (d) a slow-moving neutron (e) a fast-moving electron

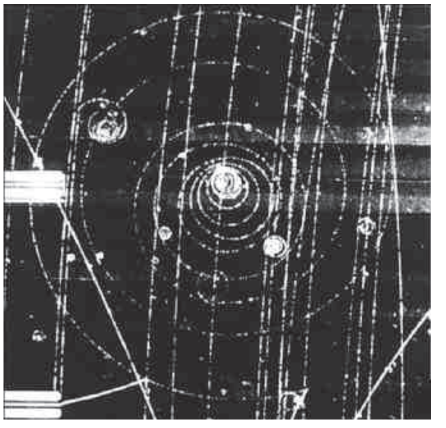
3. In the first nuclear weapon test carried out in New Mexico, the energy released was equivalent to approximately 17 kilotons of TNT. Estimate the mass decrease in the nuclear fuel representing the energy converted from rest energy into other forms in this event. *Note:* One ton of TNT has the energy equivalent of 4.2×10^9 J. (a) 1 μg (b) 1 mg (c) 1 g (d) 1 kg (e) 20 kg

4. Working with radioactive materials at a laboratory over one year, (a) Tom received 1 rem of alpha radiation, (b) Karen received 1 rad of fast neutrons, (c) Paul received 1 rad of thermal neutrons as a whole-body dose, and (d) Ingrid received 1 rad of thermal neutrons to her hands only. Rank these four doses according to the likely amount of biological damage from the greatest to the least, noting any cases of equality.

5. If the moderator were suddenly removed from a nuclear reactor in an electric generating station, what is the most likely consequence? (a) The reactor would go supercritical, and a runaway reaction would occur. (b) The nuclear reaction would proceed in the same way, but the reactor would overheat. (c) The reactor would become subcritical, and the reaction would die out. (d) No change would occur in the reactor's operation.

6. You may use Figure 44.5 to answer this question. Three nuclear reactions take place, each involving 108 nucleons: (1) eighteen ^{6}Li nuclei fuse in pairs to form nine ^{12}C nuclei, (2) four nuclei each with 27 nucleons fuse in pairs to form two nuclei with 54 nucleons, and (3) one nucleus with 108 nucleons fissions to form two nuclei with 54 nucleons. Rank these three reactions from the largest positive Q value (representing energy output) to the largest negative value (representing energy input). Also include $Q = 0$ in your ranking to make clear which of the reactions put out energy and which absorb energy. Note any cases of equality in your ranking.

7. A device called a *bubble chamber* uses a liquid (usually liquid hydrogen) maintained near its boiling point. Ions produced by incoming charged particles from nuclear decays leave bubble tracks, which can be photographed. Figure OQ45.7 shows particle tracks in a bubble chamber immersed in a magnetic field. The tracks are generally spirals rather than sections of circles. What is the primary reason for this shape? (a) The magnetic field is not perpendicular to the velocity of the particles. (b) The magnetic field is not uniform in space. (c) The forces on the particles increase with time. (d) The speeds of the particles decrease with time.



Courtesy Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, University of California, Photographic Services

Figure OQ45.7

8. If an alpha particle and an electron have the same kinetic energy, which undergoes the greater deflection when passed through a magnetic field? (a) The alpha particle does. (b) The electron does. (c) They undergo the same deflection. (d) Neither is deflected.

9. Which of the following fuel conditions is *not* necessary to operate a self-sustained controlled fusion reactor? (a) The fuel must be at a sufficiently high temperature. (b) The fuel must be radioactive. (c) The fuel must be at a sufficiently high density. (d) The fuel must be confined for a sufficiently long period of time. (e) Conditions (a) through (d) are all necessary.

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. What factors make a terrestrial fusion reaction difficult to achieve?

2. Lawson's criterion states that the product of ion density and confinement time must exceed a certain number before a break-even fusion reaction can occur. Why should these two parameters determine the outcome?

3. Why would a fusion reactor produce less radioactive waste than a fission reactor?

4. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of fission reactors from the point of view of safety, pollution, and resources. Make a comparison with power generated from the burning of fossil fuels.

5. Discuss the similarities and differences between fusion and fission.

6. If a nucleus captures a slow-moving neutron, the product is left in a highly excited state, with an energy approximately 8 MeV above the ground state. Explain the source of the excitation energy.

7. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of fusion power from the viewpoint of safety, pollution, and resources.

8. A scintillation crystal can be a detector of radiation when combined with a photomultiplier tube (Section 40.2). The scintillator is usually a solid or liquid material whose atoms are easily excited by radiation. The excited atoms then emit photons when they return to their ground state. The design of the radiation detector in Figure CQ45.8 might suggest that any number of dynodes may be used to amplify a weak signal. What factors do you suppose would limit the amplification in this device?

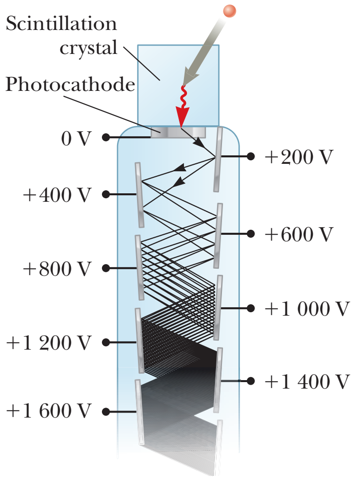


Figure CQ45.8

9. Why is water a better shield against neutrons than lead or steel?

Problems

WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 45.1 Interactions Involving Neutrons

Section 45.2 Nuclear Fission

Problem 57 in Chapter 25 and Problems 22 and 78 in Chapter 44 can be assigned with this chapter.

1. M If the average energy released in a fission event is 208 MeV, find the total number of fission events required to operate a 100-W lightbulb for 1.0 h.

2. Burning one metric ton (1 000 kg) of coal can yield an energy of 3.30×10^{10} J. Fission of one nucleus of uranium-235 yields an average of approximately 200 MeV. What mass of uranium produces the same energy in fission as burning one metric ton of coal?

3. Strontium-90 is a particularly dangerous fission product of ^{235}U because it is radioactive and it substitutes for calcium in bones. What other direct fission products would accompany it in the neutron-induced fission of ^{235}U? *Note:* This reaction may release two, three, or four free neutrons.

4. A typical nuclear fission power plant produces approximately 1.00 GW of electrical power. Assume the plant has an overall efficiency of 40.0% and each fission reaction produces 200 MeV of energy. Calculate the mass of ^{235}U consumed each day.

5. List the nuclear reactions required to produce ^{233}U from ^{232}Th under fast neutron bombardment.

6. The following fission reaction is typical of those occurring in a nuclear electric generating station:

$$^{1}_{0}\text{n} + {}^{235}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{141}_{56}\text{Ba} + {}^{92}_{36}\text{Kr} + 3(^{1}_{0}\text{n})$$

(a) Find the energy released in the reaction. The masses of the products are 140.914 411 u for $^{141}_{56}$Ba and 91.926 156 u for $^{92}_{36}$Kr. (b) What fraction of the initial rest energy of the system is transformed to other forms?

7. Find the energy released in the fission reaction

$$^{1}_{0}\text{n} + {}^{235}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{88}_{38}\text{Sr} + {}^{136}_{54}\text{Xe} + 12(^{1}_{0}\text{n})$$

8. A 2.00-MeV neutron is emitted in a fission reactor. If it loses half its kinetic energy in each collision with a moderator atom, how many collisions does it undergo as it becomes a thermal neutron, with energy 0.039 eV?

9. Find the energy released in the fission reaction

$$^{1}_{0}\text{n} + {}^{235}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow {}^{98}_{40}\text{Zr} + {}^{135}_{52}\text{Te} + 3(^{1}_{0}\text{n})$$

The atomic masses of the fission products are 97.912 735 u for $^{98}_{40}$Zr and 134.916 450 u for $^{135}_{52}$Te.

10. Seawater contains 3.00 mg of uranium per cubic meter. (a) Given that the average ocean depth is about 4.00 km and water covers two-thirds of the Earth's surface, estimate the amount of uranium dissolved in the ocean. (b) About 0.700% of naturally occurring uranium is the fissionable isotope ^{235}U. Estimate how long the uranium in the oceans could supply the world's energy needs at the current usage of 1.50×10^{13} J/s. (c) Where does the dissolved uranium come from? (d) Is it a renewable energy source?.

11. AMT M **Review.** Suppose seawater exerts an average frictional drag force of 1.00×10^5 N on a nuclear-powered ship. The fuel consists of enriched uranium containing 3.40% of the fissionable isotope $^{235}_{92}$U, and the ship's reactor has an efficiency of 20.0%. Assuming 200 MeV is released per fission event, how far can the ship travel per kilogram of fuel?

Section 45.3 Nuclear Reactors

12. M Assume ordinary soil contains natural uranium in an amount of 1 part per million by mass. (a) How much uranium is in the top 1.00 m of soil on a 1-acre (43 560-ft^2) plot of ground, assuming the specific gravity of soil is 4.00? (b) How much of the isotope ^{235}U, appropriate for nuclear reactor fuel, is in this soil? *Hint:* See Table 44.2 for the percent abundance of $^{235}_{92}$U.

13. If the reproduction constant is 1.000 25 for a chain reaction in a fission reactor and the average time interval between successive fissions is 1.20 ms, by what factor does the reaction rate increase in one minute?

14. To minimize neutron leakage from a reactor, the ratio of the surface area to the volume should be a minimum. For a given volume V, calculate this ratio for (a) a sphere, (b) a cube, and (c) a parallelepiped of dimensions $a \times a \times 2a$. (d) Which of these shapes would have minimum leakage? Which would have maximum leakage? Explain your answers.

15. The probability of a nuclear reaction increases dramatically when the incident particle is given energy above the "Coulomb barrier," which is the electric potential energy of the two nuclei when their surfaces barely touch. Compute the Coulomb barrier for the absorption of an alpha particle by a gold nucleus.

16. A large nuclear power reactor produces approximately 3 000 MW of power in its core. Three months after a reactor is shut down, the core power from radioactive by-products is 10.0 MW. Assuming each emission delivers 1.00 MeV of energy to the power, find the activity in becquerels three months after the reactor is shut down.

17. GP According to one estimate, there are 4.40×10^6 metric tons of world uranium reserves extractable at \$130/kg or less. We wish to determine if these reserves are sufficient to supply all the world's energy needs. About 0.700% of naturally occurring uranium is the fissionable isotope ^{235}U. (a) Calculate the mass of ^{235}U in the reserve in grams. (b) Find the number of moles of ^{235}U in the reserve. (c) Find the number of ^{235}U nuclei in the reserve. (d) Assuming 200 MeV is obtained from each fission reaction and all this energy is captured, calculate the total energy in joules that can be extracted from the reserve. (e) Assuming the rate of world power consumption remains constant at 1.5×10^{13} J/s, how many years could the uranium reserve provide for all the world's energy needs? (f) What conclusion can be drawn?

18. *Why is the following situation impossible?* An engineer working on nuclear power makes a breakthrough so that he is able to control what daughter nuclei are created in a fission reaction. By carefully controlling the process, he is able to restrict the fission reactions to just this single possibility: the uranium-235 nucleus absorbs a slow neutron and splits into lanthanum-141 and bromine-94. Using this breakthrough, he is able to design and build a successful nuclear reactor in which only this single process occurs.

19. M An all-electric home uses approximately 2 000 kWh of electric energy per month. How much uranium-235 would be required to provide this house with its energy needs for one year? Assume 100% conversion efficiency and 208 MeV released per fission.

20. A particle cannot generally be localized to distances much smaller than its de Broglie wavelength. This fact can be taken to mean that a slow neutron appears to be larger to a target particle than does a fast neutron in the sense that the slow neutron has probabilities of being found over a larger volume of space. For a thermal neutron at room temperature of 300 K, find (a) the linear momentum and (b) the de Broglie wavelength. (c) State how this effective size compares with both nuclear and atomic dimensions.

Section 45.4 Nuclear Fusion

21. When a star has exhausted its hydrogen fuel, it may fuse other nuclear fuels. At temperatures above 1.00×10^8 K, helium fusion can occur. Consider the following processes. (a) Two alpha particles fuse to produce a nucleus A and a gamma ray. What is nucleus A? (b) Nucleus A from part (a) absorbs an alpha particle to produce nucleus B and a gamma ray. What is nucleus B? (c) Find the total energy released in the sequence of reactions given in parts (a) and (b).

22. An all-electric home uses 2 000 kWh of electric energy per month. Assuming all energy released from fusion could be captured, how many fusion events described by the reaction $^2_1\text{H} + ^3_1\text{H} \rightarrow ^4_2\text{He} + ^1_0\text{n}$ would be required to keep this home running for one year?

23. Find the energy released in the fusion reaction

$$^1_1\text{H} + ^2_1\text{H} \rightarrow ^3_2\text{He} + \gamma$$

24. Two nuclei having atomic numbers Z_1 and Z_2 approach each other with a total energy E. (a) When they are far apart, they interact only by electric repulsion. If they approach to a distance of 1.00×10^{-14} m, the nuclear force suddenly takes over to make them fuse. Find the minimum value of E, in terms of Z_1 and Z_2, required to produce fusion. (b) State how E depends on the atomic numbers. (c) If $Z_1 + Z_2$ is to have a certain target value such as 60, would it be energetically favorable to take $Z_1 = 1$ and $Z_2 = 59$, or $Z_1 = Z_2 = 30$, or some other choice? Explain your answer. (d) Evaluate from your expression the minimum energy for fusion for the D–D and D–T reactions (the first and third reactions in Eq. 45.4).

25. (a) Consider a fusion generator built to create 3.00 GW of power. Determine the rate of fuel burning in grams per hour if the D–T reaction is used. (b) Do the same for the D–D reaction, assuming the reaction products are split evenly between (n, ^{3}He) and (p, ^{3}H).

26. **Review.** Consider the deuterium–tritium fusion reaction with the tritium nucleus at rest:

$$^2_1\text{H} + {}^3_1\text{H} \rightarrow {}^4_2\text{He} + {}^1_0\text{n}$$

(a) Suppose the reactant nuclei will spontaneously fuse if their surfaces touch. From Equation 44.1, determine the required distance of closest approach between their centers. (b) What is the electric potential energy (in electron volts) at this distance? (c) Suppose the deuteron is fired straight at an originally stationary tritium nucleus with just enough energy to reach the required distance of closest approach. What is the common speed of the deuterium and tritium nuclei, in terms of the initial deuteron speed v_i, as they touch? (d) Use energy methods to find the minimum initial deuteron energy required to achieve fusion. (e) Why does the fusion reaction actually occur at much lower deuteron energies than the energy calculated in part (d)?

27. Of all the hydrogen in the oceans, 0.030 0% of the mass is deuterium. The oceans have a volume of 317 million mi^3. (a) If nuclear fusion were controlled and all the deuterium in the oceans were fused to $^4_2$He, how many joules of energy would be released? (b) **What If?** World power consumption is approximately 1.50×10^{13} W. If consumption were 100 times greater, how many years would the energy calculated in part (a) last?

28. It has been suggested that fusion reactors are safe from explosion because the plasma never contains enough energy to do much damage. (a) In 1992, the TFTR reactor, with a plasma volume of approximately 50.0 m^3, achieved an ion temperature of 4.00×10^8 K, an ion density of 2.00×10^{13} cm^{-3}, and a confinement time of 1.40 s. Calculate the amount of energy stored in the plasma of the TFTR reactor. (b) How many kilograms of water at 27.0°C could be boiled away by this much energy?

29. M To understand why plasma containment is necessary, consider the rate at which an unconfined plasma would be lost. (a) Estimate the rms speed of deuterons in a plasma at a temperature of 4.00×10^8 K. (b) **What If?** Estimate the order of magnitude of the time interval during which such a plasma would remain in a 10.0-cm cube if no steps were taken to contain it.

30. Another series of nuclear reactions that can produce energy in the interior of stars is the carbon cycle first proposed by Hans Bethe in 1939, leading to his Nobel Prize in Physics in 1967. This cycle is most efficient when the central temperature in a star is above 1.6×10^7 K. Because the temperature at the center of the Sun is only 1.5×10^7 K, the following cycle produces less than 10% of the Sun's energy. (a) A high-energy proton is absorbed by ^{12}C. Another nucleus, A, is produced in the reaction, along with a gamma ray. Identify nucleus A. (b) Nucleus A decays through positron emission to form nucleus B. Identify nucleus B. (c) Nucleus B absorbs a proton to produce nucleus C and a gamma ray. Identify nucleus C. (d) Nucleus C absorbs a proton to produce nucleus D and a gamma ray. Identify nucleus D. (e) Nucleus D decays through positron emission to produce nucleus E. Identify nucleus E. (f) Nucleus E absorbs a proton to produce nucleus F plus an alpha particle. Identify nucleus F. (g) What is the significance of the final nucleus in the last step of the cycle outlined in part (f)?

31. **Review.** To confine a stable plasma, the magnetic energy density in the magnetic field (Eq. 32.14) must exceed the pressure $2nk_BT$ of the plasma by a factor of at least 10. In this problem, assume a confinement time $\tau = 1.00$ s. (a) Using Lawson's criterion, determine the ion density required for the D–T reaction. (b) From the ignition-temperature criterion, determine the required plasma pressure. (c) Determine the magnitude of the magnetic field required to contain the plasma.

Section 45.5 Radiation Damage

32. Assume an x-ray technician takes an average of eight x-rays per workday and receives a dose of 5.0 rem/yr as a result. (a) Estimate the dose in rem per x-ray taken. (b) Explain how the technician's exposure compares with low-level background radiation.

33. When gamma rays are incident on matter, the intensity of the gamma rays passing through the material varies with depth x as $I(x) = I_0e^{-\mu x}$, where I_0 is the intensity of the radiation at the surface of the material (at $x = 0$) and μ is the linear absorption coefficient. For 0.400-MeV gamma rays in lead, the linear absorption coefficient is 1.59 cm^{-1}. (a) Determine the "half-thickness" for lead, that is, the thickness of lead that would absorb half the incident gamma rays. (b) What thickness reduces the radiation by a factor of 10^4?

34. When gamma rays are incident on matter, the intensity of the gamma rays passing through the material varies with depth x as $I(x) = I_0e^{-\mu x}$, where I_0 is the intensity of the radiation at the surface of the material (at $x = 0$) and μ is the linear absorption coefficient. (a) Determine the "half-thickness" for a material with linear absorption coefficient μ, that is, the thickness of the material that would absorb half the incident gamma rays. (b) What thickness changes the radiation by a factor of f?

35. Review. A particular radioactive source produces 100 mrad of 2.00-MeV gamma rays per hour at a distance of 1.00 m from the source. (a) How long could a person stand at this distance before accumulating an intolerable dose of 1.00 rem? (b) **What If?** Assuming the radioactive source is a point source, at what distance would a person receive a dose of 10.0 mrad/h?

36. M A person whose mass is 75.0 kg is exposed to a whole-body dose of 0.250 Gy. How many joules of energy are deposited in the person's body?

37. Review. The danger to the body from a high dose of gamma rays is not due to the amount of energy absorbed; rather, it is due to the ionizing nature of the radiation. As an illustration, calculate the rise in body temperature that results if a "lethal" dose of 1 000 rad is absorbed strictly as internal energy. Take the specific heat of living tissue as 4 186 J/kg · °C.

38. Review. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A "clever" technician takes his 20-min coffee break and boils some water for his coffee with an x-ray machine. The machine produces 10.0 rad/s, and the temperature of the water in an insulated cup is initially 50.0°C.

39. W A small building has become accidentally contaminated with radioactivity. The longest-lived material in the building is strontium-90. ($^{90}_{38}$Sr has an atomic mass 89.907 7 u, and its half-life is 29.1 yr. It is particularly dangerous because it substitutes for calcium in bones.) Assume the building initially contained 5.00 kg of this substance uniformly distributed throughout the building and the safe level is defined as less than 10.0 decays/min (which is small compared with background radiation). How long will the building be unsafe?

40. Technetium-99 is used in certain medical diagnostic procedures. Assume 1.00×10^{-8} g of ^{99}Tc is injected into a 60.0-kg patient and half of the 0.140-MeV gamma rays are absorbed in the body. Determine the total radiation dose received by the patient.

41. W To destroy a cancerous tumor, a dose of gamma radiation with a total energy of 2.12 J is to be delivered in 30.0 days from implanted sealed capsules containing palladium-103. Assume this isotope has a half-life of 17.0 d and emits gamma rays of energy 21.0 keV, which are entirely absorbed within the tumor. (a) Find the initial activity of the set of capsules. (b) Find the total mass of radioactive palladium these "seeds" should contain.

42. Strontium-90 from the testing of nuclear bombs can still be found in the atmosphere. Each decay of ^{90}Sr releases 1.10 MeV of energy into the bones of a person who has had strontium replace his or her body's calcium. Assume a 70.0-kg person receives 1.00 ng of ^{90}Sr from contaminated milk. Take the half-life of ^{90}Sr to be 29.1 yr. Calculate the absorbed dose rate (in joules per kilogram) in one year.

Section 45.6 Uses of Radiation

43. M When gamma rays are incident on matter, the intensity of the gamma rays passing through the material varies with depth x as $I(x) = I_0 e^{-\mu x}$, where I_0 is the intensity of the radiation at the surface of the material (at $x = 0$) and μ is the linear absorption coefficient. For low-energy gamma rays in steel, take the absorption coefficient to be 0.720 mm^{-1}. (a) Determine the "half-thickness" for steel, that is, the thickness of steel that would absorb half the incident gamma rays. (b) In a steel mill, the thickness of sheet steel passing into a roller is measured by monitoring the intensity of gamma radiation reaching a detector below the rapidly moving metal from a small source immediately above the metal. If the thickness of the sheet changes from 0.800 mm to 0.700 mm, by what percentage does the gamma-ray intensity change?

44. A method called *neutron activation analysis* can be used for chemical analysis at the level of isotopes. When a sample is irradiated by neutrons, radioactive atoms are produced continuously and then decay according to their characteristic half-lives. (a) Assume one species of radioactive nuclei is produced at a constant rate R and its decay is described by the conventional radioactive decay law. Assuming irradiation begins at time $t = 0$, show that the number of radioactive atoms accumulated at time t is

$$N = \frac{R}{\lambda}(1 - e^{-\lambda t})$$

(b) What is the maximum number of radioactive atoms that can be produced?

45. You want to find out how many atoms of the isotope ^{65}Cu are in a small sample of material. You bombard the sample with neutrons to ensure that on the order of 1% of these copper nuclei absorb a neutron. After activation, you turn off the neutron flux and then use a highly efficient detector to monitor the gamma radiation that comes out of the sample. Assume half of the ^{66}Cu nuclei emit a 1.04-MeV gamma ray in their decay. (The other half of the activated nuclei decay directly to the ground state of ^{66}Ni.) If after 10 min (two half-lives) you have detected 1.00×10^4 MeV of photon energy at 1.04 MeV, (a) approximately how many ^{65}Cu atoms are in the sample? (b) Assume the sample contains natural copper. Refer to the isotopic abundances listed in Table 44.2 and estimate the total mass of copper in the sample.

Additional Problems

46. A fusion reaction that has been considered as a source of energy is the absorption of a proton by a boron-11 nucleus to produce three alpha particles:

$$^1_1\text{H} + {}^{11}_5\text{B} \rightarrow 3(^4_2\text{He})$$

This reaction is an attractive possibility because boron is easily obtained from the Earth's crust. A disadvantage is that the protons and boron nuclei must have large kinetic energies for the reaction to take place. This requirement contrasts with the initiation of uranium fission by slow neutrons. (a) How much energy is released in each reaction? (b) Why must the reactant particles have high kinetic energies?

47. **Review.** A very slow neutron (with speed approximately equal to zero) can initiate the reaction

$$ {}_0^1\text{n} + {}_5^{10}\text{B} \rightarrow {}_3^7\text{Li} + {}_2^4\text{He} $$

The alpha particle moves away with speed 9.25×10^6 m/s. Calculate the kinetic energy of the lithium nucleus. Use nonrelativistic equations.

48. **Review.** The first nuclear bomb was a fissioning mass of plutonium-239 that exploded in the Trinity test before dawn on July 16, 1945, at Alamogordo, New Mexico. Enrico Fermi was 14 km away, lying on the ground facing away from the bomb. After the whole sky had flashed with unbelievable brightness, Fermi stood up and began dropping bits of paper to the ground. They first fell at his feet in the calm and silent air. As the shock wave passed, about 40 s after the explosion, the paper then in flight jumped approximately 2.5 m away from ground zero. (a) Equation 17.10 describes the relationship between the pressure amplitude ΔP_{max} of a sinusoidal air compression wave and its displacement amplitude s_{max}. The compression pulse produced by the bomb explosion was not a sinusoidal wave, but let's use the same equation to compute an estimate for the pressure amplitude, taking $\omega \sim 1\ \text{s}^{-1}$ as an estimate for the angular frequency at which the pulse ramps up and down. (b) Find the change in volume ΔV of a sphere of radius 14 km when its radius increases by 2.5 m. (c) The energy carried by the blast wave is the work done by one layer of air on the next as the wave crest passes. An extension of the logic used to derive Equation 20.8 shows that this work is given by $(\Delta P_{\text{max}})(\Delta V)$. Compute an estimate for this energy. (d) Assume the blast wave carried on the order of one-tenth of the explosion's energy. Make an order-of-magnitude estimate of the bomb yield. (e) One ton of exploding TNT releases 4.2 GJ of energy. What was the order of magnitude of the energy of the Trinity test in equivalent tons of TNT? Fermi's immediate knowledge of the bomb yield agreed with that determined days later by analysis of elaborate measurements.

49. On August 6, 1945, the United States dropped on Hiroshima a nuclear bomb that released 5×10^{13} J of energy, equivalent to that from 12 000 tons of TNT. The fission of one ${}_{92}^{235}\text{U}$ nucleus releases an average of 208 MeV. Estimate (a) the number of nuclei fissioned and (b) the mass of this ${}_{92}^{235}\text{U}$.

50. (a) A student wishes to measure the half-life of a radioactive substance using a small sample. Consecutive clicks of her radiation counter are randomly spaced in time. The counter registers 372 counts during one 5.00-min interval and 337 counts during the next 5.00 min. The average background rate is 15 counts per minute. Find the most probable value for the half-life. (b) Estimate the uncertainty in the half-life determination in part (a). Explain your reasoning.

51. M In a Geiger–Mueller tube for detecting radiation (see Problem 68 in Chapter 25), the voltage between the electrodes is typically 1.00 kV and the current pulse discharges a 5.00-pF capacitor. (a) What is the energy amplification of this device for a 0.500-MeV electron? (b) How many electrons participate in the avalanche caused by the single initial electron?

52. **Review.** Consider a nucleus at rest, which then spontaneously splits into two fragments of masses m_1 and m_2. (a) Show that the fraction of the total kinetic energy carried by fragment m_1 is

$$ \frac{K_1}{K_{\text{tot}}} = \frac{m_2}{m_1 + m_2} $$

and the fraction carried by m_2 is

$$ \frac{K_2}{K_{\text{tot}}} = \frac{m_1}{m_1 + m_2} $$

assuming relativistic corrections can be ignored. A stationary ${}_{92}^{236}\text{U}$ nucleus fissions spontaneously into two primary fragments, ${}_{35}^{87}\text{Br}$ and ${}_{57}^{149}\text{La}$. (b) Calculate the disintegration energy. The required atomic masses are 86.920 711 u for ${}_{35}^{87}\text{Br}$, 148.934 370 u for ${}_{57}^{149}\text{La}$, and 236.045 562 u for ${}_{92}^{236}\text{U}$. (c) How is the disintegration energy split between the two primary fragments? (d) Calculate the speed of each fragment immediately after the fission.

53. Consider the carbon cycle in Problem 30. (a) Calculate the Q value for each of the six steps in the carbon cycle listed in Problem 30. (b) In the second and fifth steps of the cycle, the positron that is ejected combines with an electron to form two photons. The energies of these photons must be included in the energy released in the cycle. How much energy is released by these annihilations in each of the two steps? (c) What is the overall energy released in the carbon cycle? (d) Do you think that the energy carried off by the neutrinos is deposited in the star? Explain.

54. A fission reactor is hit by a missile, and 5.00×10^6 Ci of ${}^{90}\text{Sr}$, with half-life 29.1 yr, evaporates into the air. The strontium falls out over an area of $10^4\ \text{km}^2$. After what time interval will the activity of the ${}^{90}\text{Sr}$ reach the agriculturally "safe" level of 2.00 $\mu\text{Ci/m}^2$?

55. W The alpha-emitter plutonium-238 (${}_{94}^{238}\text{Pu}$, atomic mass 238.049 560 u, half-life 87.7 yr) was used in a nuclear energy source on the Apollo Lunar Surface Experiments Package (Fig. P45.55, page 1444). The energy source, called the Radioisotope Thermoelectric Generator, is the small gray object to the left of the gold-shrouded Central Station in the photograph. Assume the source contains 3.80 kg of ${}^{238}\text{Pu}$ and the efficiency for conversion of radioactive decay energy to energy transferred by electrical transmission is 3.20%. Determine the initial power output of the source.

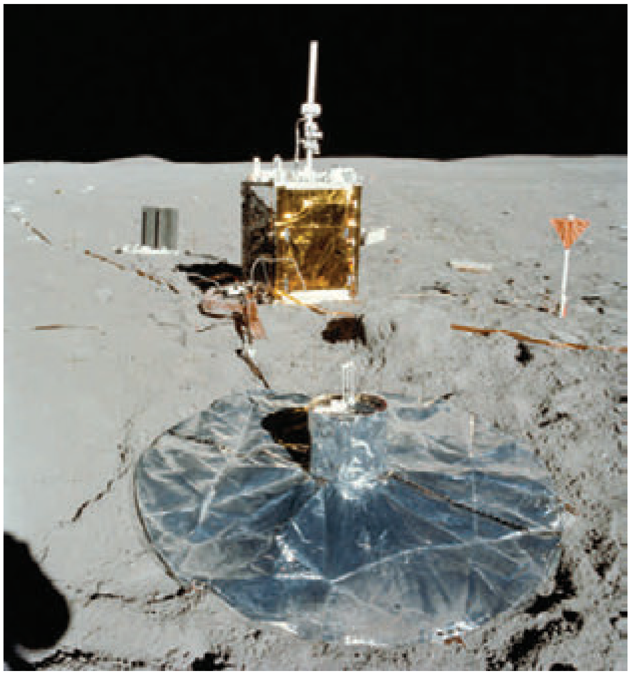


Figure P45.55

56. The half-life of tritium is 12.3 yr. (a) If the TFTR fusion reactor contained 50.0 m^3 of tritium at a density equal to 2.00×10^{14} ions/cm^3, how many curies of tritium were in the plasma? (b) State how this value compares with a fission inventory (the estimated supply of fissionable material) of 4.00×10^{10} Ci.

57. Review. A nuclear power plant operates by using the energy released in nuclear fission to convert 20°C water into 400°C steam. How much water could theoretically be converted to steam by the complete fissioning of 1.00 g of ^{235}U at 200 MeV/fission?

58. Review. A nuclear power plant operates by using the energy released in nuclear fission to convert liquid water at T_c into steam at T_h. How much water could theoretically be converted to steam by the complete fissioning of a mass m of ^{235}U if the energy released per fission event is E?

59. Consider the two nuclear reactions

$$\begin{aligned} A + B &\rightarrow C + E \\ C + D &\rightarrow F + G \end{aligned}$$

(a) Show that the net disintegration energy for these two reactions ($Q_{\text{net}} = Q_{\text{I}} + Q_{\text{II}}$) is identical to the disintegration energy for the net reaction

$$A + B + D \rightarrow E + F + G$$

(b) One chain of reactions in the proton–proton cycle in the Sun's core is

$$\begin{aligned} {}^1_1\text{H} + {}^1_1\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^2_1\text{H} + {}^0_1\text{e} + \nu \\ {}^0_1\text{e} + {}^{\ 0}_{-1}\text{e} &\rightarrow 2\gamma \\ {}^1_1\text{H} + {}^2_1\text{H} &\rightarrow {}^3_2\text{He} + \gamma \\ {}^1_1\text{H} + {}^3_2\text{He} &\rightarrow {}^4_2\text{He} + {}^0_1\text{e} + \nu \\ {}^0_1\text{e} + {}^{\ 0}_{-1}\text{e} &\rightarrow 2\gamma \end{aligned}$$

Based on part (a), what is Q_{net} for this sequence?

60. Natural uranium must be processed to produce uranium enriched in ^{235}U for weapons and power plants. The processing yields a large quantity of nearly pure ^{238}U as a by-product, called "depleted uranium." Because of its high mass density, ^{238}U is used in armor-piercing artillery shells. (a) Find the edge dimension of a 70.0-kg cube of ^{238}U ($\rho = 19.1 \times 10^3$ kg/m^3). (b) The isotope ^{238}U has a long half-life of 4.47×10^9 yr. As soon as one nucleus decays, a relatively rapid series of 14 steps begins that together constitute the net reaction

$${}^{238}_{92}\text{U} \rightarrow 8({}^4_2\text{He}) + 6({}^{\ 0}_{-1}\text{e}) + {}^{206}_{82}\text{Pb} + 6\bar{\nu} + Q_{\text{net}}$$

Find the net decay energy. (Refer to Table 44.2.) (c) Argue that a radioactive sample with decay rate R and decay energy Q has power output $P = QR$. (d) Consider an artillery shell with a jacket of 70.0 kg of ^{238}U. Find its power output due to the radioactivity of the uranium and its daughters. Assume the shell is old enough that the daughters have reached steady-state amounts. Express the power in joules per year. (e) **What If?** A 17-year-old soldier of mass 70.0 kg works in an arsenal where many such artillery shells are stored. Assume his radiation exposure is limited to 5.00 rem per year. Find the rate in joules per year at which he can absorb energy of radiation. Assume an average RBE factor of 1.10.

61. Suppose the target in a laser fusion reactor is a sphere of solid hydrogen that has a diameter of 1.50×10^{-4} m and a density of 0.200 g/cm^3. Assume half of the nuclei are ^{2}H and half are ^{3}H. (a) If 1.00% of a 200-kJ laser pulse is delivered to this sphere, what temperature does the sphere reach? (b) If all the hydrogen fuses according to the D–T reaction, how many joules of energy are released?

62. When photons pass through matter, the intensity I of the beam (measured in watts per square meter) decreases exponentially according to

$$I = I_0 e^{-\mu x}$$

where I is the intensity of the beam that just passed through a thickness x of material and I_0 is the intensity of the incident beam. The constant μ is known as the linear absorption coefficient, and its value depends on the absorbing material and the wavelength of the photon beam. This wavelength (or energy) dependence allows us to filter out unwanted wavelengths from a broad-spectrum x-ray beam. (a) Two x-ray beams of wavelengths λ_1 and λ_2 and equal incident intensities pass through the same metal plate. Show that the ratio of the emergent beam intensities is

$$\frac{I_2}{I_1} = e^{-(\mu_2 - \mu_1)x}$$

(b) Compute the ratio of intensities emerging from an aluminum plate 1.00 mm thick if the incident beam contains equal intensities of 50 pm and 100 pm x-rays. The values of μ for aluminum at these two wavelengths are $\mu_1 = 5.40 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ at 50 pm and $\mu_2 = 41.0 \text{ cm}^{-1}$ at 100 pm. (c) Repeat part (b) for an aluminum plate 10.0 mm thick.

63. Assume a deuteron and a triton are at rest when they fuse according to the reaction

$$^2_1\text{H} + {}^3_1\text{H} \rightarrow {}^4_2\text{He} + {}^1_0\text{n}$$

Determine the kinetic energy acquired by the neutron.

64. (a) Calculate the energy (in kilowatt-hours) released if 1.00 kg of ^{239}Pu undergoes complete fission and the energy released per fission event is 200 MeV. (b) Calculate the energy (in electron volts) released in the deuterium–tritium fusion reaction

$$^2_1\text{H} + {}^3_1\text{H} \rightarrow {}^4_2\text{He} + {}^1_0\text{n}$$

(c) Calculate the energy (in kilowatt-hours) released if 1.00 kg of deuterium undergoes fusion according to this reaction. (d) **What If?** Calculate the energy (in kilowatt-hours) released by the combustion of 1.00 kg of carbon in coal if each $C + O_2 \rightarrow CO_2$ reaction yields 4.20 eV. (e) List advantages and disadvantages of each of these methods of energy generation.

65. Consider a 1.00-kg sample of natural uranium composed primarily of ^{238}U, a smaller amount (0.720% by mass) of ^{235}U, and a trace (0.005 00%) of ^{234}U, which has a half-life of 2.44×10^5 yr. (a) Find the activity in curies due to each of the isotopes. (b) What fraction of the total activity is due to each isotope? (c) Explain whether the activity of this sample is dangerous.

66. Approximately 1 of every 3 300 water molecules contains one deuterium atom. (a) If all the deuterium nuclei in 1 L of water are fused in pairs according to the D–D fusion reaction $^2\text{H} + {}^2\text{H} \rightarrow {}^3\text{He} + \text{n} + 3.27$ MeV, how much energy in joules is liberated? (b) **What If?** Burning gasoline produces approximately 3.40×10^7 J/L. State how the energy obtainable from the fusion of the deuterium in 1 L of water compares with the energy liberated from the burning of 1 L of gasoline.

67. Carbon detonations are powerful nuclear reactions that temporarily tear apart the cores inside massive stars late in their lives. These blasts are produced by carbon fusion, which requires a temperature of approximately 6×10^8 K to overcome the strong Coulomb repulsion between carbon nuclei. (a) Estimate the repulsive energy barrier to fusion, using the temperature required for carbon fusion. (In other words, what is the average kinetic energy of a carbon nucleus at 6×10^8 K?) (b) Calculate the energy (in MeV) released in each of these "carbon-burning" reactions:

$$^{12}\text{C} + {}^{12}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{20}\text{Ne} + {}^4\text{He}$$
$$^{12}\text{C} + {}^{12}\text{C} \rightarrow {}^{24}\text{Mg} + \gamma$$

(c) Calculate the energy in kilowatt-hours given off when 2.00 kg of carbon completely fuse according to the first reaction.

68. A sealed capsule containing the radiopharmaceutical phosphorus-32, an e^- emitter, is implanted into a patient's tumor. The average kinetic energy of the beta particles is 700 keV. The initial activity is 5.22 MBq. Assume the beta particles are completely absorbed in 100 g of tissue. Determine the absorbed dose during a 10.0-day period.

69. A certain nuclear plant generates internal energy at a rate of 3.065 GW and transfers energy out of the plant by electrical transmission at a rate of 1.000 GW. Of the waste energy, 3.0% is ejected to the atmosphere and the remainder is passed into a river. A state law requires that the river water be warmed by no more than 3.50°C when it is returned to the river. (a) Determine the amount of cooling water necessary (in kilograms per hour and cubic meters per hour) to cool the plant. (b) Assume fission generates 7.80×10^{10} J/g of ^{235}U. Determine the rate of fuel burning (in kilograms per hour) of ^{235}U.

70. The Sun radiates energy at the rate of 3.85×10^{26} W. Suppose the net reaction $4({}^1_1\text{H}) + 2({}^{\ 0}_{-1}\text{e}) \rightarrow {}^4_2\text{He} + 2\nu + \gamma$ accounts for all the energy released. Calculate the number of protons fused per second.

Challenge Problems

71. During the manufacture of a steel engine component, radioactive iron (^{59}Fe) with a half-life of 45.1 d is included in the total mass of 0.200 kg. The component is placed in a test engine when the activity due to this isotope is 20.0 μCi. After a 1 000-h test period, some of the lubricating oil is removed from the engine and found to contain enough ^{59}Fe to produce 800 disintegrations/min/L of oil. The total volume of oil in the engine is 6.50 L. Calculate the total mass worn from the engine component per hour of operation.

72. (a) At time $t = 0$, a sample of uranium is exposed to a neutron source that causes N_0 nuclei to undergo fission. The sample is in a supercritical state, with a reproduction constant $K > 1$. A chain reaction occurs that proliferates fission throughout the mass of uranium. The chain reaction can be thought of as a succession of *generations*. The N_0 fissions produced initially are the zeroth generation of fissions. From this generation, N_0K neutrons go off to produce fission of new uranium nuclei. The N_0K fissions that occur subsequently are the first generation of fissions, and from this generation N_0K^2 neutrons go in search of uranium nuclei in which to cause fission. The subsequent N_0K^2 fissions are the second generation of fissions. This process can continue until all the uranium nuclei have fissioned. Show that the cumulative total of fissions N that have occurred up to and including the nth generation after the zeroth generation is given by

$$N = N_0\left(\frac{K^{n+1} - 1}{K - 1}\right)$$

(b) Consider a hypothetical uranium weapon made from 5.50 kg of isotopically pure ^{235}U. The chain reaction has a reproduction constant of 1.10 and starts with a zeroth generation of 1.00×10^{20} fissions. The average time interval between one fission generation and the next is 10.0 ns. How long after the zeroth generation does it take the uranium in this weapon to fission completely? (c) Assume the bulk modulus of uranium is 150 GPa. Find the speed of sound in uranium. You may ignore the density difference between ^{235}U and natural uranium. (d) Find the time interval required for a compressional wave to cross the radius of a 5.50-kg sphere of uranium. This time interval indicates how quickly the motion of explosion begins. (e) Fission must occur in a time interval that is short compared with that in part (d); otherwise, most of the uranium will disperse in small chunks without having fissioned. Can the weapon considered in part (b) release the explosive energy of all its uranium? If so, how much energy does it release in equivalent tons of TNT? Assume one ton of TNT releases 4.20 GJ and each uranium fission releases 200 MeV of energy.

73. Assume a photomultiplier tube for detecting radiation has seven dynodes with potentials of 100, 200, 300, . . . , 700 V as shown in Figure P45.73. The average energy required to free an electron from the dynode surface is 10.0 eV. Assume only one electron is incident and the tube functions with 100% efficiency. (a) How many electrons are freed at the first dynode at 100 V? (b) How many electrons are collected at the last dynode? (c) What is the energy available to the counter for all the electrons arriving at the last dynode?

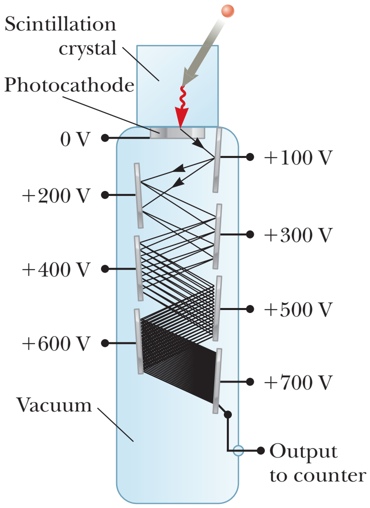
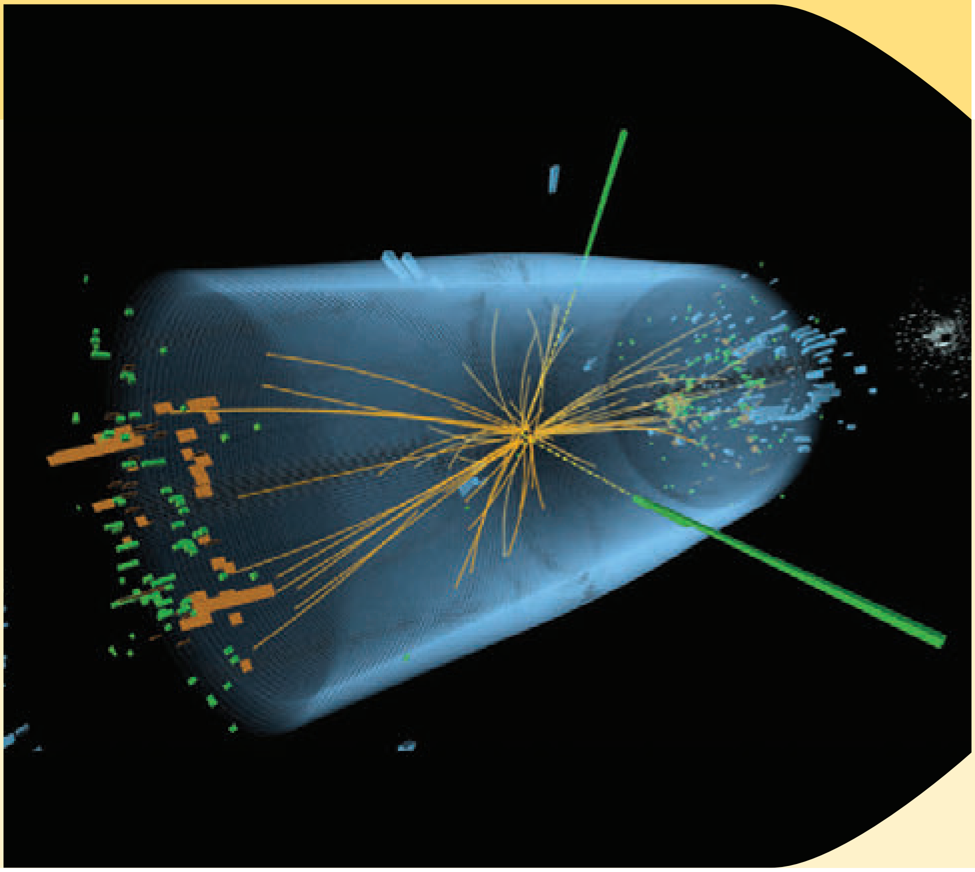


Figure P45.73

Particle Physics and Cosmology

CHAPTER

46



One of the most intense areas of current research is the hunt for the Higgs boson, discussed in Section 46.10. The photo shows an event recorded at the Large Hadron Collider in July 2012 that shows particles consistent with the creation of a Higgs boson. The data is not entirely conclusive, however, and the hunt continues. *(CERN)*

The word *atom* comes from the Greek *atomos,* which means "indivisible." The early Greeks believed that atoms were the indivisible constituents of matter; that is, they regarded them as elementary particles. After 1932, physicists viewed all matter as consisting of three constituent particles: electrons, protons, and neutrons. Beginning in the 1940s, many "new" particles were discovered in experiments involving high-energy collisions between known particles. The new particles are characteristically very unstable and have very short half-lives, ranging between 10^{-6} s and 10^{-23} s. So far, more than 300 of these particles have been catalogued.

Until the 1960s, physicists were bewildered by the great number and variety of subatomic particles that were being discovered. They wondered whether the particles had no systematic relationship connecting them or whether a pattern was emerging that would provide a better understanding of the elaborate structure in the subatomic world. For example, that the neutron has a magnetic moment despite having zero electric charge (Section 44.8) suggests an underlying structure to the neutron. The periodic table explains how more than 100 elements can be formed from three types of particles (electrons, protons, and neutrons), which suggests there is, perhaps, a means of forming more than 300 subatomic particles from a small number of basic building blocks.

Recall Figure 1.2, which illustrated the various levels of structure in matter. We studied the atomic structure of matter in Chapter 42. In Chapter 44, we investigated the substructure of the atom by describing the structure of the nucleus. As mentioned in Section 1.2, the protons and neutrons in the nucleus, and a host of other exotic particles, are now known to be composed of six different varieties of particles called *quarks.* In this concluding chapter, we examine the current theory of elementary particles, in which all matter is constructed from only two families of particles, quarks and leptons. We also discuss how clarifications of such models might help scientists understand the birth and evolution of the Universe.

46.1 The Fundamental Forces in Nature

As noted in Section 5.1, all natural phenomena can be described by four fundamental forces acting between particles. In order of decreasing strength, they are the nuclear force, the electromagnetic force, the weak force, and the gravitational force.

The nuclear force discussed in Chapter 44 is an attractive force between nucleons. It has a very short range and is negligible for separation distances between nucleons greater than approximately 10^{-15} m (about the size of the nucleus). The electromagnetic force, which binds atoms and molecules together to form ordinary matter, has a strength of approximately 10^{-2} times that of the nuclear force. This long-range force decreases in magnitude as the inverse square of the separation between interacting particles. The weak force is a short-range force that tends to produce instability in certain nuclei. It is responsible for decay processes, and its strength is only about 10^{-5} times that of the nuclear force. Finally, the gravitational force is a long-range force that has a strength of only about 10^{-39} times that of the nuclear force. Although this familiar interaction is the force that holds the planets, stars, and galaxies together, its effect on elementary particles is negligible.

In Section 13.3, we discussed the difficulty early scientists had with the notion of the gravitational force acting at a distance, with no physical contact between the interacting objects. To resolve this difficulty, the concept of the gravitational field was introduced. Similarly, in Chapter 23, we introduced the electric field to describe the electric force acting between charged objects, and we followed that with a discussion of the magnetic field in Chapter 29. For each of these types of fields, we developed a particle in a field analysis model. In modern physics, the nature of the interaction between particles is carried a step further. These interactions are described in terms of the exchange of entities called **field particles** or **exchange particles.** Field particles are also called **gauge bosons.**[1] The interacting particles continuously emit and absorb field particles. The emission of a field particle by one particle and its absorption by another manifests as a force between the two interacting particles. In the case of the electromagnetic interaction, for instance, the field particles are photons. In the language of modern physics, the electromagnetic force is said to be *mediated* by photons, and photons are the field particles of the electromagnetic field. Likewise, the nuclear force is mediated by field particles called *gluons.* The weak force is mediated by field particles called *W* and *Z bosons,* and the gravitational force is proposed to be mediated by field particles called *gravitons.* These interactions, their ranges, and their relative strengths are summarized in Table 46.1.

[1]The word *bosons* suggests that the field particles have integral spin as discussed in Section 43.8. The word *gauge* comes from *gauge theory,* which is a sophisticated mathematical analysis that is beyond the scope of this book.

Table 46.1 Particle Interactions

Interactions	Relative Strength	Range of Force	Mediating Field Particle	Mass of Field Particle (GeV/c^2)
Nuclear	1	Short ($\approx$ 1 fm)	Gluon	0
Electromagnetic	10^{-2}	∞	Photon	0
Weak	10^{-5}	Short ($\approx 10^{-3}$ fm)	$W^{\pm}$, Z^0 bosons	80.4, 80.4, 91.2
Gravitational	10^{-39}	∞	Graviton	0

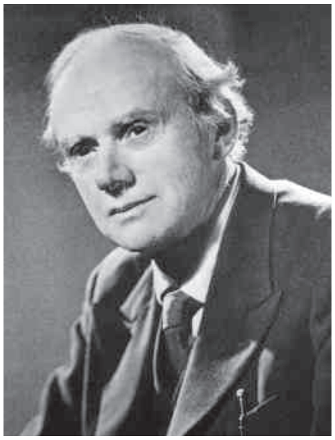
46.2 Positrons and Other Antiparticles

In the 1920s, Paul Dirac developed a relativistic quantum-mechanical description of the electron that successfully explained the origin of the electron's spin and its magnetic moment. His theory had one major problem, however: its relativistic wave equation required solutions corresponding to negative energy states, and if negative energy states existed, an electron in a state of positive energy would be expected to make a rapid transition to one of these states, emitting a photon in the process.

Dirac circumvented this difficulty by postulating that all negative energy states are filled. The electrons occupying these negative energy states are collectively called the *Dirac sea*. Electrons in the Dirac sea (the blue area in Fig. 46.1) are not directly observable because the Pauli exclusion principle does not allow them to react to external forces; there are no available states to which an electron can make a transition in response to an external force. Therefore, an electron in such a state acts as an isolated system unless an interaction with the environment is strong enough to excite the electron to a positive energy state. Such an excitation causes one of the negative energy states to be vacant as in Figure 46.1, leaving a hole in the sea of filled states. This process is described by the nonisolated system model: as energy enters the system by some transfer mechanism, the system energy increases and the electron is excited to a higher energy level. *The hole can react to external forces and is observable.* The hole reacts in a way similar to that of the electron except that it has a positive charge: it is the *antiparticle* to the electron.

This theory strongly suggested that *an antiparticle exists for every particle,* not only for fermions such as electrons but also for bosons. It has subsequently been verified that practically every known elementary particle has a distinct antiparticle. Among the exceptions are the photon and the neutral pion (π^0; see Section 46.3). Following the construction of high-energy accelerators in the 1950s, many other antiparticles were revealed. They included the antiproton, discovered by Emilio Segré (1905–1989) and Owen Chamberlain (1920–2006) in 1955, and the antineutron, discovered shortly thereafter. The antiparticle for a charged particle has the same mass as the particle but opposite charge.[2] For example, the electron's antiparticle (the *positron* mentioned in Section 44.4) has a rest energy of 0.511 MeV and a positive charge of $+1.60 \times 10^{-19}$ C.

Carl Anderson (1905–1991) observed the positron experimentally in 1932 and was awarded a Nobel Prize in Physics in 1936 for this achievement. Anderson discovered the positron while examining tracks created in a cloud chamber by electron-like particles of positive charge. (These early experiments used cosmic rays—mostly energetic protons passing through interstellar space—to initiate high-energy reactions on the order of several GeV.) To discriminate between positive and negative charges, Anderson placed the cloud chamber in a magnetic field,



Paul Adrien Maurice Dirac
British Physicist (1902–1984)
Dirac was instrumental in the understanding of antimatter and the unification of quantum mechanics and relativity. He made many contributions to the development of quantum physics and cosmology. In 1933, Dirac won a Nobel Prize in Physics.

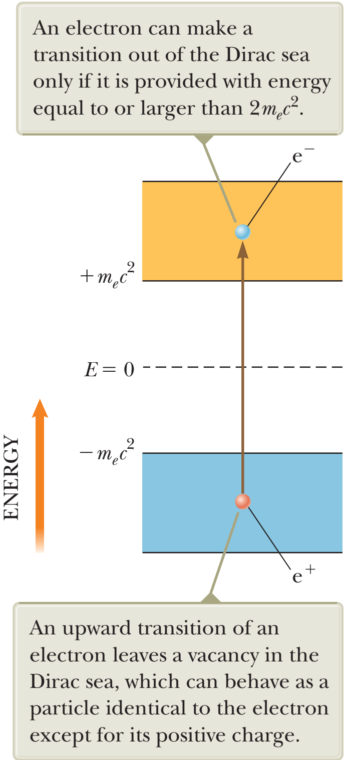


Figure 46.1 Dirac's model for the existence of antielectrons (positrons). The minimum energy for an electron to exist in the gold band is its rest energy m_ec^2. The blue band of negative energies is filled with electrons.

[2]Antiparticles for uncharged particles, such as the neutron, are a little more difficult to describe. One basic process that can detect the existence of an antiparticle is pair annihilation. For example, a neutron and an antineutron can annihilate to form two gamma rays. Because the photon and the neutral pion do not have distinct antiparticles, pair annihilation is not observed with either of these particles.

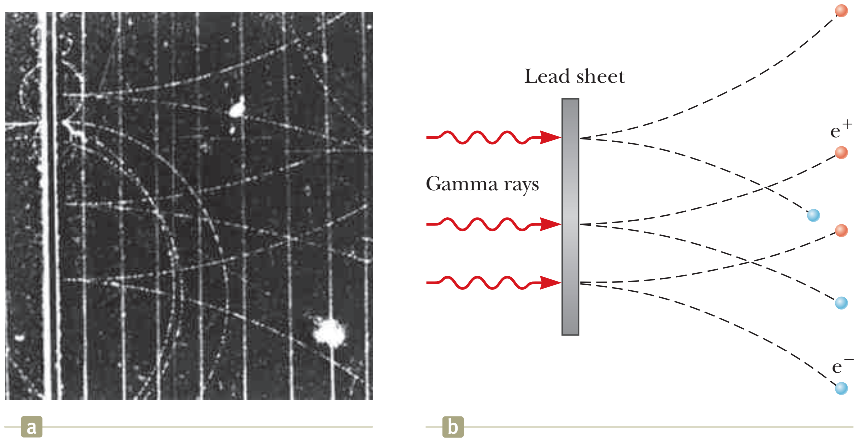


Figure 46.2 (a) Bubble-chamber tracks of electron–positron pairs produced by 300-MeV gamma rays striking a lead sheet from the left. (b) The pertinent pair-production events. The positrons deflect upward and the electrons downward in an applied magnetic field.

Courtesy Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, University of California, Photographic Services

Pitfall Prevention 46.1

Antiparticles An antiparticle is not identified solely on the basis of opposite charge; even neutral particles have antiparticles, which are defined in terms of other properties, such as spin.

causing moving charges to follow curved paths. He noted that some of the electron-like tracks deflected in a direction corresponding to a positively charged particle.

Since Anderson's discovery, positrons have been observed in a number of experiments. A common source of positrons is **pair production.** In this process, a gamma-ray photon with sufficiently high energy interacts with a nucleus and an electron–positron pair is created from the photon. (The presence of the nucleus allows the principle of conservation of momentum to be satisfied.) Because the total rest energy of the electron–positron pair is $2m_ec^2 = 1.02$ MeV (where m_e is the mass of the electron), the photon must have at least this much energy to create an electron–positron pair. The energy of a photon is converted to rest energy of the electron and positron in accordance with Einstein's relationship $E_R = mc^2$. If the gamma-ray photon has energy in excess of the rest energy of the electron–positron pair, the excess appears as kinetic energy of the two particles. Figure 46.2 shows early observations of tracks of electron–positron pairs in a bubble chamber created by 300-MeV gamma rays striking a lead sheet.

Quick Quiz 46.1 Given the identification of the particles in Figure 46.2b, is the direction of the external magnetic field in Figure 46.2a **(a)** into the page, **(b)** out of the page, or **(c)** impossible to determine?

The reverse process can also occur. Under the proper conditions, an electron and a positron can annihilate each other to produce two gamma-ray photons that have a combined energy of at least 1.02 MeV:

$$e^- + e^+ \rightarrow 2\gamma$$

Because the initial momentum of the electron–positron system is approximately zero, the two gamma rays travel in opposite directions after the annihilation, satisfying the principle of conservation of momentum for the isolated system.

Electron–positron annihilation is used in the medical diagnostic technique called *positron-emission tomography* (PET). The patient is injected with a glucose solution containing a radioactive substance that decays by positron emission, and the material is carried throughout the body by the blood. A positron emitted during a decay event in one of the radioactive nuclei in the glucose solution annihilates with an electron in the surrounding tissue, resulting in two gamma-ray photons emitted in opposite directions. A gamma detector surrounding the patient pinpoints the source of the photons and, with the assistance of a computer, displays an image of the sites at which the glucose accumulates. (Glucose metabolizes rapidly in cancerous tumors and accumulates at those sites, providing a strong signal for a PET detector system.) The images from a PET scan can indicate a wide variety of disorders in the brain, including Alzheimer's disease (Fig. 46.3). In addition, because glucose metabolizes more rapidly in active areas

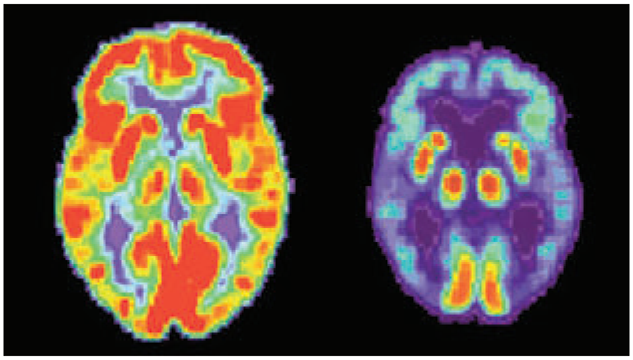


Figure 46.3 PET scans of the brain of a healthy older person *(left)* and that of a patient suffering from Alzheimer's disease *(right)*. Lighter regions contain higher concentrations of radioactive glucose, indicating higher metabolism rates and therefore increased brain activity.

of the brain, a PET scan can indicate areas of the brain involved in the activities in which the patient is engaging at the time of the scan, such as language use, music, and vision.

46.3 Mesons and the Beginning of Particle Physics

Physicists in the mid-1930s had a fairly simple view of the structure of matter. The building blocks were the proton, the electron, and the neutron. Three other particles were either known or postulated at the time: the photon, the neutrino, and the positron. Together these six particles were considered the fundamental constituents of matter. With this simple picture, however, no one was able to answer the following important question: the protons in any nucleus should strongly repel one another due to their charges of the same sign, so what is the nature of the force that holds the nucleus together? Scientists recognized that this mysterious force must be much stronger than anything encountered in nature up to that time. This force is the nuclear force discussed in Section 44.1 and examined in historical perspective in the following paragraphs.

The first theory to explain the nature of the nuclear force was proposed in 1935 by Japanese physicist Hideki Yukawa, an effort that earned him a Nobel Prize in Physics in 1949. To understand Yukawa's theory, recall the introduction of field particles in Section 46.1, which stated that each fundamental force is mediated by a field particle exchanged between the interacting particles. Yukawa used this idea to explain the nuclear force, proposing the existence of a new particle whose exchange between nucleons in the nucleus causes the nuclear force. He established that the range of the force is inversely proportional to the mass of this particle and predicted the mass to be approximately 200 times the mass of the electron. (Yukawa's predicted particle is *not* the gluon mentioned in Section 46.1, which is massless and is today considered to be the field particle for the nuclear force.) Because the new particle would have a mass between that of the electron and that of the proton, it was called a **meson** (from the Greek *meso,* "middle").

Hideki Yukawa
Japanese Physicist (1907–1981)
Yukawa was awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1949 for predicting the existence of mesons. This photograph of him at work was taken in 1950 in his office at Columbia University. Yukawa came to Columbia in 1949 after spending the early part of his career in Japan.

In efforts to substantiate Yukawa's predictions, physicists began experimental searches for the meson by studying cosmic rays entering the Earth's atmosphere. In 1937, Carl Anderson and his collaborators discovered a particle of mass 106 MeV/c^2, approximately 207 times the mass of the electron. This particle was thought to be Yukawa's meson. Subsequent experiments, however, showed that the particle interacted very weakly with matter and hence could not be the field particle for the nuclear force. That puzzling situation inspired several theoreticians to propose two mesons having slightly different masses equal to approximately 200 times that of the electron, one having been discovered by Anderson and the other, still undiscovered, predicted by Yukawa. This idea was confirmed in 1947 with the discovery of the **pi meson** (π), or simply **pion.** The particle discovered by Anderson in 1937, the one initially thought to be Yukawa's meson, is not really a

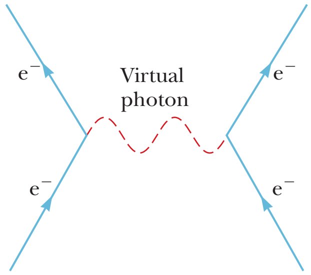


Figure 46.4 Feynman diagram representing a photon mediating the electromagnetic force between two electrons.

meson. (We shall discuss the characteristics of mesons in Section 46.4.) Instead, it takes part in the weak and electromagnetic interactions only and is now called the **muon** (μ).

The pion comes in three varieties, corresponding to three charge states: π^+, π^-, and π^0. The π^+ and π^- particles (π^- is the antiparticle of π^+) each have a mass of 139.6 MeV/c^2, and the π^0 mass is 135.0 MeV/c^2. Two muons exist: μ^- and its antiparticle μ^+.

Pions and muons are very unstable particles. For example, the π^-, which has a mean lifetime of 2.6×10^{-8} s, decays to a muon and an antineutrino.[3] The muon, which has a mean lifetime of 2.2 μs, then decays to an electron, a neutrino, and an antineutrino:

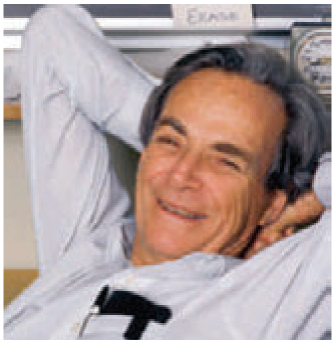
$$\begin{aligned} \pi^- &\rightarrow \mu^- + \bar{\nu} \\ \mu^- &\rightarrow e^- + \nu + \bar{\nu} \end{aligned} \qquad \textbf{(46.1)}$$

For chargeless particles (as well as some charged particles, such as the proton), a bar over the symbol indicates an antiparticle, as for the neutrino in beta decay (see Section 44.5). Other antiparticles, such as e^+ and μ^+, use a different notation.

The interaction between two particles can be represented in a simple diagram called a **Feynman diagram,** developed by American physicist Richard P. Feynman. Figure 46.4 is such a diagram for the electromagnetic interaction between two electrons. A Feynman diagram is a qualitative graph of time on the vertical axis versus space on the horizontal axis. It is qualitative in the sense that the actual values of time and space are not important, but the overall appearance of the graph provides a pictorial representation of the process.

In the simple case of the electron–electron interaction in Figure 46.4, a photon (the field particle) mediates the electromagnetic force between the electrons. Notice that the entire interaction is represented in the diagram as occurring at a single point in time. Therefore, the paths of the electrons appear to undergo a discontinuous change in direction at the moment of interaction. The electron paths shown in Figure 46.4 are different from the *actual* paths, which would be curved due to the continuous exchange of large numbers of field particles.

In the electron–electron interaction, the photon, which transfers energy and momentum from one electron to the other, is called a *virtual photon* because it vanishes during the interaction without having been detected. In Chapter 40, we discussed that a photon has energy $E = hf$, where f is its frequency. Consequently, for a system of two electrons initially at rest, the system has energy $2m_ec^2$ before a virtual photon is released and energy $2m_ec^2 + hf$ after the virtual photon is released (plus any kinetic energy of the electron resulting from the emission of the photon). Is that a violation of the law of conservation of energy for an isolated system? No; this process does *not* violate the law of conservation of energy because the virtual



Richard Feynman
American Physicist (1918–1988)
Inspired by Dirac, Feynman developed quantum electrodynamics, the theory of the interaction of light and matter on a relativistic and quantum basis. In 1965, Feynman won the Nobel Prize in Physics. The prize was shared by Feynman, Julian Schwinger, and Sin Itiro Tomonaga. Early in Feynman's career, he was a leading member of the team developing the first nuclear weapon in the Manhattan Project. Toward the end of his career, he worked on the commission investigating the 1986 *Challenger* tragedy and demonstrated the effects of cold temperatures on the rubber O-rings used in the space shuttle.

[3]The antineutrino is another zero-charge particle for which the identification of the antiparticle is more difficult than that for a charged particle. Although the details are beyond the scope of this book, the neutrino and antineutrino can be differentiated by means of the relationship between the linear momentum and the spin angular momentum of the particles.

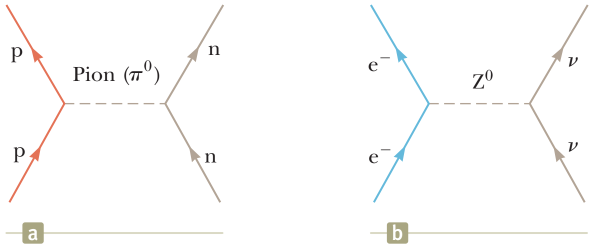


Figure 46.5 (a) Feynman diagram representing a proton and a neutron interacting via the nuclear force with a neutral pion mediating the force. (This model is *not* the current model for nucleon interaction.) (b) Feynman diagram for an electron and a neutrino interacting via the weak force, with a Z^0 boson mediating the force.

photon has a very short lifetime Δt that makes the uncertainty in the energy $\Delta E \approx \hbar/2\ \Delta t$ of the system greater than the photon energy. Therefore, within the constraints of the uncertainty principle, the energy of the system is conserved.

Now consider a pion exchange between a proton and a neutron according to Yukawa's model (Fig. 46.5a). The energy ΔE_R needed to create a pion of mass m_π is given by Einstein's equation $\Delta E_R = m_\pi c^2$. As with the photon in Figure 46.4, the very existence of the pion would appear to violate the law of conservation of energy if the particle existed for a time interval greater than $\Delta t \approx \hbar/2\ \Delta E_R$ (from the uncertainty principle), where Δt is the time interval required for the pion to transfer from one nucleon to the other. Therefore,

$$\Delta t \approx \frac{\hbar}{2\ \Delta E_R} = \frac{\hbar}{2 m_\pi c^2}$$

and the rest energy of the pion is

$$m_\pi c^2 = \frac{\hbar}{2\,\Delta t} \tag{46.2}$$

Because the pion cannot travel faster than the speed of light, the maximum distance d it can travel in a time interval Δt is $c\,\Delta t$. Therefore, using Equation 46.2 and $d = c\,\Delta t$, we find

$$m_\pi c^2 = \frac{\hbar c}{2d} \tag{46.3}$$

From Table 46.1, we know that the range of the nuclear force is on the order of 10^{-15} fm. Using this value for d in Equation 46.3, we estimate the rest energy of the pion to be

$$\begin{aligned} m_p c^2 &\approx \frac{(1.055 \times 10^{-34}\ \mathrm{J \cdot s})(3.00 \times 10^8\ \mathrm{m/s})}{2(1 \times 10^{-15}\ \mathrm{m})} \\ &= 1.6 \times 10^{-11}\ \mathrm{J} \approx 100\ \mathrm{MeV} \end{aligned}$$

which corresponds to a mass of 100 MeV/c^2 (approximately 200 times the mass of the electron). This value is in reasonable agreement with the observed pion mass.

The concept just described is quite revolutionary. In effect, it says that a system of two nucleons can change into two nucleons plus a pion as long as it returns to its original state in a very short time interval. (Remember that this description is the older historical model, which assumes the pion is the field particle for the nuclear force; the gluon is the actual field particle in current models.) Physicists often say that a nucleon undergoes *fluctuations* as it emits and absorbs field particles. These fluctuations are a consequence of a combination of quantum mechanics (through the uncertainty principle) and special relativity (through Einstein's energy–mass relationship $E_R = mc^2$).

Pitfall Prevention 46.2

The Nuclear Force and the Strong Force The nuclear force discussed in Chapter 44 was historically called the strong force. Once the quark theory (Section 46.8) was established, however, the phrase *strong force* was reserved for the force between quarks. We shall follow this convention: the strong force is between quarks or particles built from quarks, and the nuclear force is between nucleons in a nucleus. The nuclear force is a secondary result of the strong force as discussed in Section 46.9. It is sometimes called the *residual strong force*. Because of this historical development of the names for these forces, other books sometimes refer to the nuclear force as the strong force.

In this section, we discussed the field particles that were originally proposed to mediate the nuclear force (pions) and those that mediate the electromagnetic force (photons). The graviton, the field particle for the gravitational force, has yet to be observed. In 1983, $W^{\pm}$ and Z^0 particles, which mediate the weak force, were discovered by Italian physicist Carlo Rubbia (b. 1934) and his associates, using a proton–antiproton collider. Rubbia and Simon van der Meer (1925–2011), both at CERN,[4] shared the 1984 Nobel Prize in Physics for the discovery of the $W^{\pm}$ and Z^0 particles and the development of the proton–antiproton collider. Figure 46.5b shows a Feynman diagram for a weak interaction mediated by a Z^0 boson.

46.4 Classification of Particles

All particles other than field particles can be classified into two broad categories, *hadrons* and *leptons*. The criterion for separating these particles into categories is whether or not they interact via the strong force. The nuclear force between nucleons in a nucleus is a particular manifestation of the strong force, but we will use the term *strong force* to refer to any interaction between particles made up of quarks. (For more detail on quarks and the strong force, see Section 46.8.) Table 46.2 provides a summary of the properties of hadrons and leptons.

Table 46.2 Some Particles and Their Properties

Category	Particle Name	Symbol	Anti-particle	Mass (MeV/c^2)	B	L_e	L_μ	L_τ	S	Lifetime(s)	Spin
Leptons	Electron	e^-	e^+	0.511	0	+1	0	0	0	Stable	$\frac{1}{2}$
	Electron–neutrino	ν_e	$\bar{\nu}_e$	< 2 eV/c^2	0	+1	0	0	0	Stable	$\frac{1}{2}$
	Muon	μ^-	μ^+	105.7	0	0	+1	0	0	2.20×10^{-6}	$\frac{1}{2}$
	Muon–neutrino	ν_μ	$\bar{\nu}_\mu$	< 0.17	0	0	+1	0	0	Stable	$\frac{1}{2}$
	Tau	τ^-	τ^+	1 784	0	0	0	+1	0	$< 4 \times 10^{-13}$	$\frac{1}{2}$
	Tau–neutrino	ν_τ	$\bar{\nu}_\tau$	< 18	0	0	0	+1	0	Stable	$\frac{1}{2}$
Hadrons											
Mesons	Pion	π^+	π^-	139.6	0	0	0	0	0	2.60×10^{-8}	0
		π^0	Self	135.0	0	0	0	0	0	0.83×10^{-16}	0
	Kaon	K^+	K^-	493.7	0	0	0	0	+1	1.24×10^{-8}	0
		K^0_S	$\bar{K}^0_S$	497.7	0	0	0	0	+1	0.89×10^{-10}	0
		K^0_L	$\bar{K}^0_L$	497.7	0	0	0	0	+1	5.2×10^{-8}	0
	Eta	η	Self	548.8	0	0	0	0	0	$< 10^{-18}$	0
		η'	Self	958	0	0	0	0	0	2.2×10^{-21}	0
Baryons	Proton	p	$\bar{p}$	938.3	+1	0	0	0	0	Stable	$\frac{1}{2}$
	Neutron	n	$\bar{n}$	939.6	+1	0	0	0	0	614	$\frac{1}{2}$
	Lambda	Λ^0	$\bar{\Lambda}^0$	1 115.6	+1	0	0	0	−1	2.6×10^{-10}	$\frac{1}{2}$
	Sigma	Σ^+	$\bar{\Sigma}^-$	1 189.4	+1	0	0	0	−1	0.80×10^{-10}	$\frac{1}{2}$
		Σ^0	$\bar{\Sigma}^0$	1 192.5	+1	0	0	0	−1	6×10^{-20}	$\frac{1}{2}$
		Σ^-	$\bar{\Sigma}^+$	1 197.3	+1	0	0	0	−1	1.5×10^{-10}	$\frac{1}{2}$
	Delta	Δ^{++}	$\bar{\Delta}^{--}$	1 230	+1	0	0	0	0	6×10^{-24}	$\frac{3}{2}$
		Δ^+	$\bar{\Delta}^-$	1 231	+1	0	0	0	0	6×10^{-24}	$\frac{3}{2}$
		Δ^0	$\bar{\Delta}^0$	1 232	+1	0	0	0	0	6×10^{-24}	$\frac{3}{2}$
		Δ^-	$\bar{\Delta}^+$	1 234	+1	0	0	0	0	6×10^{-24}	$\frac{3}{2}$
	Xi	Ξ^0	$\bar{\Xi}^0$	1 315	+1	0	0	0	−2	2.9×10^{-10}	$\frac{1}{2}$
		Ξ^-	Ξ^+	1 321	+1	0	0	0	−2	1.64×10^{-10}	$\frac{1}{2}$
	Omega	Ω^-	Ω^+	1 672	+1	0	0	0	−3	0.82×10^{-10}	$\frac{3}{2}$

[4]CERN was originally the Conseil Européen pour la Recherche Nucléaire; the name has been altered to the European Organization for Nuclear Research, and the laboratory operated by CERN is called the European Laboratory for Particle Physics. The CERN acronym has been retained and is commonly used to refer to both the organization and the laboratory.

Hadrons

Particles that interact through the strong force (as well as through the other fundamental forces) are called **hadrons.** The two classes of hadrons, *mesons* and *baryons,* are distinguished by their masses and spins.

Mesons all have zero or integer spin (0 or 1). As indicated in Section 46.3, the name comes from the expectation that Yukawa's proposed meson mass would lie between the masses of the electron and the proton. Several meson masses do lie in this range, although mesons having masses greater than that of the proton have been found to exist.

All mesons decay finally into electrons, positrons, neutrinos, and photons. The pions are the lightest known mesons and have masses of approximately 1.4×10^2 MeV/c^2, and all three pions—π^+, π^-, and π^0—have a spin of 0. (This spin-0 characteristic indicates that the particle discovered by Anderson in 1937, the muon, is not a meson. The muon has spin $\frac{1}{2}$ and belongs in the *lepton* classification, described below.)

Baryons, the second class of hadrons, have masses equal to or greater than the proton mass (the name *baryon* means "heavy" in Greek), and their spin is always a half-integer value ($\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{3}{2}$, . . .). Protons and neutrons are baryons, as are many other particles. With the exception of the proton, all baryons decay in such a way that the end products include a proton. For example, the baryon called the Ξ^0 hyperon (Greek letter xi) decays to the Λ^0 baryon (Greek letter lambda) in approximately 10^{-10} s. The Λ^0 then decays to a proton and a π^- in approximately 3×10^{-10} s.

Today it is believed that hadrons are not elementary particles but instead are composed of more elementary units called quarks, per Section 46.8.

Leptons

Leptons (from the Greek *leptos,* meaning "small" or "light") are particles that do not interact by means of the strong force. All leptons have spin $\frac{1}{2}$. Unlike hadrons, which have size and structure, leptons appear to be truly elementary, meaning that they have no structure and are point-like.

Quite unlike the case with hadrons, the number of known leptons is small. Currently, scientists believe that only six leptons exist: the electron, the muon, the tau, and a neutrino associated with each: e^-, μ^-, τ^-, ν_e, ν_μ, and ν_τ. The tau lepton, discovered in 1975, has a mass about twice that of the proton. Direct experimental evidence for the neutrino associated with the tau was announced by the Fermi National Accelerator Laboratory (Fermilab) in July 2000. Each of the six leptons has an antiparticle.

Current studies indicate that neutrinos have a small but nonzero mass. If they do have mass, they cannot travel at the speed of light. In addition, because so many neutrinos exist, their combined mass may be sufficient to cause all the matter in the Universe to eventually collapse into a single point, which might then explode and create a completely new Universe! We shall discuss this possibility in more detail in Section 46.11.

46.5 Conservation Laws

The laws of conservation of energy, linear momentum, angular momentum, and electric charge for an isolated system provide us with a set of rules that all processes must follow. In Chapter 44, we learned that conservation laws are important for understanding why certain radioactive decays and nuclear reactions occur and others do not. In the study of elementary particles, a number of additional conservation laws are important. Although the two described here have no theoretical foundation, they are supported by abundant empirical evidence.

Baryon Number

Experimental results show that whenever a baryon is created in a decay or nuclear reaction, an antibaryon is also created. This scheme can be quantified by assigning every particle a quantum number, the **baryon number,** as follows: $B = +1$ for all baryons, $B = -1$ for all antibaryons, and $B = 0$ for all other particles. (See Table 46.2.) The **law of conservation of baryon number** states that

Conservation of baryon number

> whenever a nuclear reaction or decay occurs, the sum of the baryon numbers before the process must equal the sum of the baryon numbers after the process.

If baryon number is conserved, the proton must be absolutely stable. For example, a decay of the proton to a positron and a neutral pion would satisfy conservation of energy, momentum, and electric charge. Such a decay has never been observed, however. The law of conservation of baryon number would be consistent with the absence of this decay because the proposed decay would involve the loss of a baryon. Based on experimental observations as pointed out in Example 46.2, all we can say at present is that protons have a half-life of at least 10^{33} years (the estimated age of the Universe is only 10^{10} years). Some recent theories, however, predict that the proton is unstable. According to this theory, baryon number is not absolutely conserved.

Quick Quiz 46.2 Consider the decays **(i)** $n \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^- + \mu^+ + \mu^-$ and **(ii)** $n \rightarrow p + \pi^-$. From the following choices, which conservation laws are violated by each decay? (a) energy (b) electric charge (c) baryon number (d) angular momentum (e) no conservation laws

Example 46.1 Checking Baryon Numbers

Use the law of conservation of baryon number to determine whether each of the following reactions can occur:

(A) $p + n \rightarrow p + p + n + \overline{p}$

SOLUTION

Conceptualize The mass on the right is larger than the mass on the left. Therefore, one might be tempted to claim that the reaction violates energy conservation. The reaction can indeed occur, however, if the initial particles have sufficient kinetic energy to allow for the increase in rest energy of the system.

Categorize We use a conservation law developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate the total baryon number for the left side of the reaction: $1 + 1 = 2$

Evaluate the total baryon number for the right side of the reaction: $1 + 1 + 1 + (-1) = 2$

Therefore, baryon number is conserved and the reaction can occur.

(B) $p + n \rightarrow p + p + \overline{p}$

SOLUTION

Evaluate the total baryon number for the left side of the reaction: $1 + 1 = 2$

Evaluate the total baryon number for the right side of the reaction: $1 + 1 + (-1) = 1$

Because baryon number is not conserved, the reaction cannot occur.

Example 46.2 Detecting Proton Decay

Measurements taken at two neutrino detection facilities, the Irvine–Michigan–Brookhaven detector (Fig. 46.6) and the Super Kamiokande in Japan, indicate that the half-life of protons is at least 10^{33} yr.

(A) Estimate how long we would have to watch, on average, to see a proton in a glass of water decay.

Figure 46.6 (Example 46.2) A diver swims through ultrapure water in the Irvine–Michigan–Brookhaven neutrino detector. This detector holds almost 7 000 metric tons of water and is lined with over 2 000 photomultiplier tubes, many of which are visible in the photograph.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Imagine the number of protons in a glass of water. Although this number is huge, the probability of a single proton undergoing decay is small, so we would expect to wait for a long time interval before observing a decay.

Categorize Because a half-life is provided in the problem, we categorize this problem as one in which we can apply our statistical analysis techniques from Section 44.4.

Analyze Let's estimate that a drinking glass contains a number of moles n of water, with a mass of m = 250 g and a molar mass M = 18 g/mol.

Find the number of molecules of water in the glass:

$$N_{\text{molecules}} = nN_{\text{A}} = \frac{m}{M}N_{\text{A}}$$

Each water molecule contains one proton in each of its two hydrogen atoms plus eight protons in its oxygen atom, for a total of ten protons. Therefore, there are $N = 10N_{\text{molecules}}$ protons in the glass of water.

Find the activity of the protons from Equation 44.7:

$$(1)\quad R = \lambda N = \frac{\ln 2}{T_{1/2}}\left(10\,\frac{m}{M}N_{\text{A}}\right) = \frac{\ln 2}{10^{33}\text{ yr}}(10)\left(\frac{250\text{ g}}{18\text{ g/mol}}\right)(6.02 \times 10^{23}\text{ mol}^{-1})$$
$$= 5.8 \times 10^{-8}\text{ yr}^{-1}$$

Finalize The decay constant represents the probability that *one* proton decays in one year. The probability that *any* proton in our glass of water decays in the one-year interval is given by Equation (1). Therefore, we must watch our glass of water for $1/R \approx$ 17 million years! That indeed is a long time interval, as expected.

(B) The Super Kamiokande neutrino facility contains 50 000 metric tons of water. Estimate the average time interval between detected proton decays in this much water if the half-life of a proton is 10^{33} yr.

SOLUTION

Analyze The proton decay rate R in a sample of water is proportional to the number N of protons. Set up a ratio of the decay rate in the Super Kamiokande facility to that in a glass of water:

$$\frac{R_{\text{Kamiokande}}}{R_{\text{glass}}} = \frac{N_{\text{Kamiokande}}}{N_{\text{glass}}} \rightarrow R_{\text{Kamiokande}} = \frac{N_{\text{Kamiokande}}}{N_{\text{glass}}}R_{\text{glass}}$$

The number of protons is proportional to the mass of the sample, so express the decay rate in terms of mass:

$$R_{\text{Kamiokande}} = \frac{m_{\text{Kamiokande}}}{m_{\text{glass}}}R_{\text{glass}}$$

Substitute numerical values:

$$R_{\text{Kamiokande}} = \left(\frac{50\,000\text{ metric tons}}{0.250\text{ kg}}\right)\left(\frac{1\,000\text{ kg}}{1\text{ metric ton}}\right)(5.8 \times 10^{-8}\text{ yr}^{-1}) \approx 12\text{ yr}^{-1}$$

Finalize The average time interval between decays is about one-twelfth of a year, or approximately one month. That is much shorter than the time interval in part (A) due to the tremendous amount of water in the detector facility. Despite this rosy prediction of one proton decay per month, a proton decay has never been observed. This suggests that the half-life of the proton may be larger than 10^{33} years or that proton decay simply does not occur.

Lepton Number

There are three conservation laws involving lepton numbers, one for each variety of lepton. The **law of conservation of electron lepton number** states that

Conservation of electron lepton number

> whenever a nuclear reaction or decay occurs, the sum of the electron lepton numbers before the process must equal the sum of the electron lepton numbers after the process.

The electron and the electron neutrino are assigned an electron lepton number $L_e = +1$, and the antileptons e^+ and $\overline{\nu}_e$ are assigned an electron lepton number $L_e = -1$. All other particles have $L_e = 0$. For example, consider the decay of the neutron:

$$n \rightarrow p + e^- + \overline{\nu}_e$$

Before the decay, the electron lepton number is $L_e = 0$; after the decay, it is $0 + 1 + (-1) = 0$. Therefore, electron lepton number is conserved. (Baryon number must also be conserved, of course, and it is: before the decay, $B = +1$, and after the decay, $B = +1 + 0 + 0 = +1$.)

Similarly, when a decay involves muons, the muon lepton number L_μ is conserved. The μ^- and the ν_μ are assigned a muon lepton number $L_\mu = +1$, and the antimuons μ^+ and $\overline{\nu}_\mu$ are assigned a muon lepton number $L_\mu = -1$. All other particles have $L_\mu = 0$.

Finally, tau lepton number L_τ is conserved with similar assignments made for the tau lepton, its neutrino, and their two antiparticles.

Quick Quiz 46.3 Consider the following decay: $\pi^0 \rightarrow \mu^- + e^+ + \nu_\mu$. What conservation laws are violated by this decay? **(a)** energy **(b)** angular momentum **(c)** electric charge **(d)** baryon number **(e)** electron lepton number **(f)** muon lepton number **(g)** tau lepton number **(h)** no conservation laws

Quick Quiz 46.4 Suppose a claim is made that the decay of the neutron is given by $n \rightarrow p + e^-$. What conservation laws are violated by this decay? **(a)** energy **(b)** angular momentum **(c)** electric charge **(d)** baryon number **(e)** electron lepton number **(f)** muon lepton number **(g)** tau lepton number **(h)** no conservation laws

Example 46.3 Checking Lepton Numbers

Use the law of conservation of lepton numbers to determine whether each of the following decay schemes (A) and (B) can occur:

(A) $\mu^- \rightarrow e^- + \overline{\nu}_e + \nu_\mu$

SOLUTION

Conceptualize Because this decay involves a muon and an electron, L_μ and L_e must each be conserved separately if the decay is to occur.

Categorize We use a conservation law developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate the lepton numbers before the decay: $L_\mu = +1 \qquad L_e = 0$

Evaluate the total lepton numbers after the decay: $L_\mu = 0 + 0 + 1 = +1 \qquad L_e = +1 + (-1) + 0 = 0$

Therefore, both numbers are conserved and on this basis the decay is possible.

(B) $\pi^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu_\mu + \nu_e$

46.3 continued

SOLUTION

Evaluate the lepton numbers before the decay: $L_\mu = 0 \qquad L_e = 0$

Evaluate the total lepton numbers after the decay: $L_\mu = -1 + 1 + 0 = 0 \qquad L_e = 0 + 0 + 1 = 1$

Therefore, the decay is not possible because electron lepton number is not conserved.

46.6 Strange Particles and Strangeness

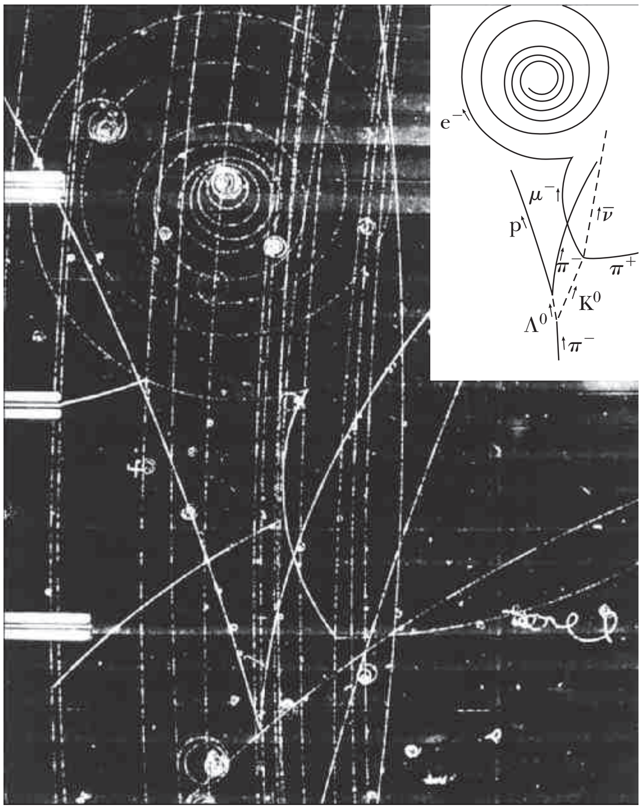
Many particles discovered in the 1950s were produced by the interaction of pions with protons and neutrons in the atmosphere. A group of these—the kaon (K), lambda (Λ), and sigma (Σ) particles—exhibited unusual properties both as they were created and as they decayed; hence, they were called *strange particles.*

One unusual property of strange particles is that they are always produced in pairs. For example, when a pion collides with a proton, a highly probable result is the production of two neutral strange particles (Fig. 46.7):

$$\pi^- + \mathrm{p} \rightarrow \mathrm{K}^0 + \Lambda^0$$

The reaction $\pi^- + \mathrm{p} \rightarrow \mathrm{K}^0 + \mathrm{n}$, where only one final particle is strange, never occurs, however, even though no previously known conservation laws would be violated and even though the energy of the pion is sufficient to initiate the reaction.

The second peculiar feature of strange particles is that although they are produced in reactions involving the strong interaction at a high rate, they do not decay into particles that interact via the strong force at a high rate. Instead, they decay very slowly, which is characteristic of the weak interaction. Their half-lives are in



Courtesy Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, University of California, Photographic Services

Figure 46.7 This bubble-chamber photograph shows many events, and the inset is a drawing of identified tracks. The strange particles Λ^0 and K^0 are formed at the bottom as a π^- particle interacts with a proton in the reaction $\pi^- + \mathrm{p} \rightarrow \mathrm{K}^0 + \Lambda^0$. (Notice that the neutral particles leave no tracks, as indicated by the dashed lines in the inset.) The Λ^0 then decays in the reaction $\Lambda^0 \rightarrow \pi^- + \mathrm{p}$ and the K^0 in the reaction $\mathrm{K}^0 \rightarrow \pi^+ + \mu^- + \bar{\nu}_\mu$.

the range 10^{-10} s to 10^{-8} s, whereas most other particles that interact via the strong force have much shorter lifetimes on the order of 10^{-23} s.

To explain these unusual properties of strange particles, a new quantum number S, called **strangeness,** was introduced, together with a conservation law. The strangeness numbers for some particles are given in Table 46.2. The production of strange particles in pairs is handled mathematically by assigning $S = +1$ to one of the particles, $S = -1$ to the other, and $S = 0$ to all nonstrange particles. The **law of conservation of strangeness** states that

Conservation of strangeness ▶

> in a nuclear reaction or decay that occurs via the strong force, strangeness is conserved; that is, the sum of the strangeness numbers before the process must equal the sum of the strangeness numbers after the process. In processes that occur via the weak interaction, strangeness may not be conserved.

The low decay rate of strange particles can be explained by assuming the strong and electromagnetic interactions obey the law of conservation of strangeness but the weak interaction does not. Because the decay of a strange particle involves the loss of one strange particle, it violates strangeness conservation and hence proceeds slowly via the weak interaction.

Example 46.4 Is Strangeness Conserved?

(A) Use the law of strangeness conservation to determine whether the reaction $\pi^0 + \text{n} \rightarrow \text{K}^+ + \Sigma^-$ occurs.

SOLUTION

Conceptualize We recognize that there are strange particles appearing in this reaction, so we see that we will need to investigate conservation of strangeness.

Categorize We use a conservation law developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Evaluate the strangeness for the left side of the reaction using Table 46.2: $S = 0 + 0 = 0$

Evaluate the strangeness for the right side of the reaction: $S = +1 - 1 = 0$

Therefore, strangeness is conserved and the reaction is allowed.

(B) Show that the reaction $\pi^- + \text{p} \rightarrow \pi^- + \Sigma^+$ does not conserve strangeness.

SOLUTION

Evaluate the strangeness for the left side of the reaction: $S = 0 + 0 = 0$

Evaluate the strangeness for the right side of the reaction: $S = 0 + (-1) = -1$

Therefore, strangeness is not conserved.

46.7 Finding Patterns in the Particles

One tool scientists use is the detection of patterns in data, patterns that contribute to our understanding of nature. For example, Table 21.2 shows a pattern of molar specific heats of gases that allows us to understand the differences among monatomic, diatomic, and polyatomic gases. Figure 42.20 shows a pattern of peaks in the ionization energy of atoms that relate to the quantized energy levels in the

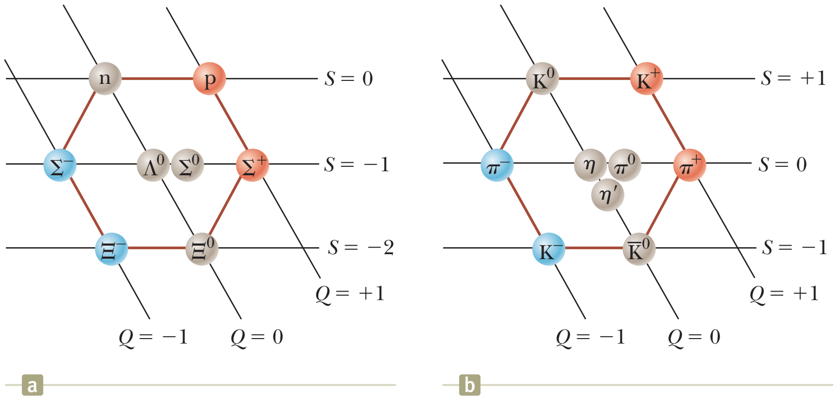


Figure 46.8 (a) The hexagonal eightfold-way pattern for the eight spin-$\frac{1}{2}$ baryons. This strangeness-versus-charge plot uses a sloping axis for charge number Q and a horizontal axis for strangeness S. (b) The eightfold-way pattern for the nine spin-zero mesons.

atoms. Figure 44.7 shows a pattern of peaks in the binding energy that suggest a shell structure within the nucleus. One of the best examples of this tool's use is the development of the periodic table, which provides a fundamental understanding of the chemical behavior of the elements. As mentioned in the introduction, the periodic table explains how more than 100 elements can be formed from three particles, the electron, the proton, and the neutron. The table of nuclides, part of which is shown in Table 44.2, contains hundreds of nuclides, but all can be built from protons and neutrons.

The number of particles observed by particle physicists is in the hundreds. Is it possible that a small number of entities exist from which all these particles can be built? Taking a hint from the success of the periodic table and the table of nuclides, let explore the historical search for patterns among the particles.

Many classification schemes have been proposed for grouping particles into families. Consider, for instance, the baryons listed in Table 46.2 that have spins of $\frac{1}{2}$: p, n, Λ^0, Σ^+, Σ^0, Σ^-, Ξ^0, and Ξ^-. If we plot strangeness versus charge for these baryons using a sloping coordinate system as in Figure 46.8a, a fascinating pattern is observed: six of the baryons form a hexagon, and the remaining two are at the hexagon's center.

As a second example, consider the following nine spin-zero mesons listed in Table 46.2: π^+, π^0, π^-, K^+, K^0, K^-, η, η', and the antiparticle $\overline{K}^0$. Figure 46.8b is a plot of strangeness versus charge for this family. Again, a hexagonal pattern emerges. In this case, each particle on the perimeter of the hexagon lies opposite its antiparticle and the remaining three (which form their own antiparticles) are at the center of the hexagon. These and related symmetric patterns were developed independently in 1961 by Murray Gell-Mann and Yuval Ne'eman (1925–2006). Gell-Mann called the patterns the **eightfold way,** after the eightfold path to nirvana in Buddhism.

Groups of baryons and mesons can be displayed in many other symmetric patterns within the framework of the eightfold way. For example, the family of spin-$\frac{3}{2}$ baryons known in 1961 contains nine particles arranged in a pattern like that of the pins in a bowling alley as in Figure 46.9. (The particles Σ^{*+}, Σ^{*0}, Σ^{*-}, Ξ^{*0},

Murray Gell-Mann
American Physicist (b. 1929)
In 1969, Murray Gell-Mann was awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics for his theoretical studies dealing with subatomic particles.

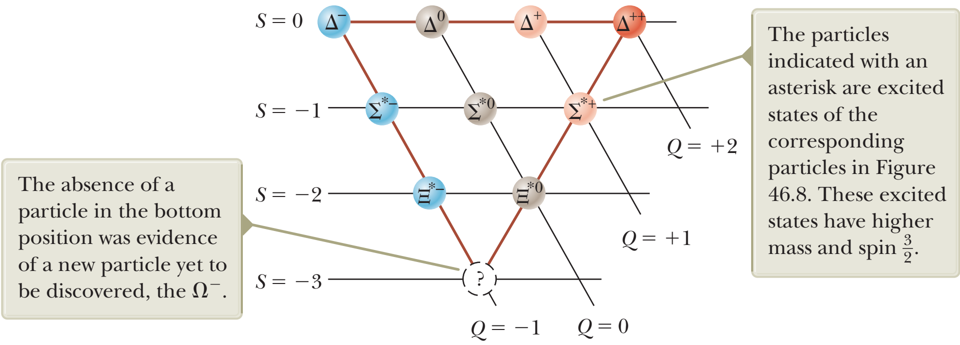


Figure 46.9 The pattern for the higher-mass, spin-$\frac{3}{2}$ baryons known at the time the pattern was proposed.

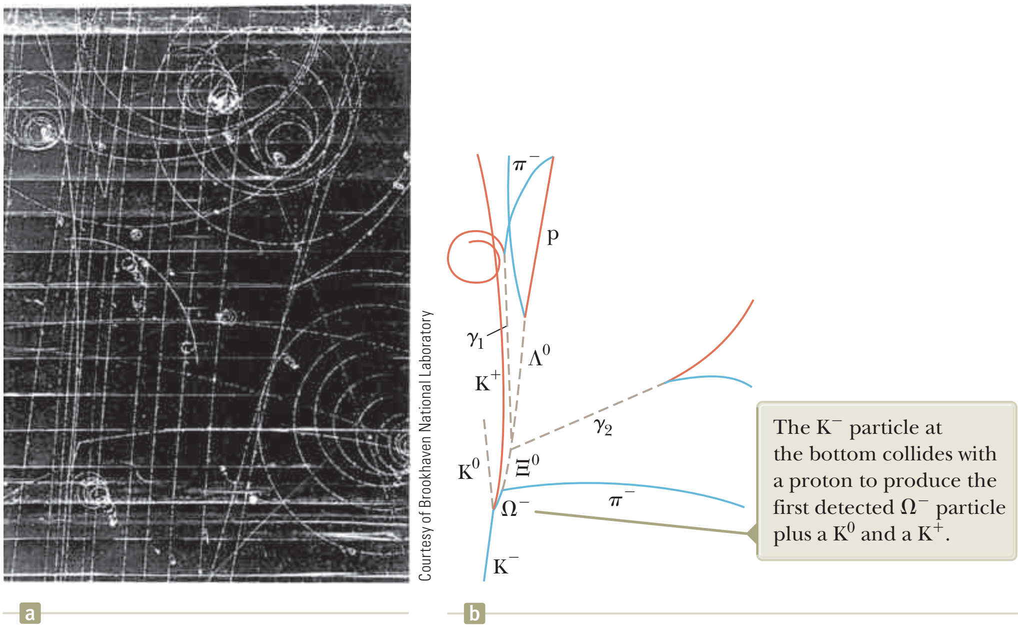


Figure 46.10 Discovery of the Ω^- particle. The photograph on the left shows the original bubble-chamber tracks. The drawing on the right isolates the tracks of the important events.

and Ξ^{*-} are excited states of the particles Σ^+, Σ^0, Σ^-, Ξ^0, and Ξ^-. In these higher-energy states, the spins of the three quarks—see Section 46.8—making up the particle are aligned so that the total spin of the particle is $\frac{3}{2}$.) When this pattern was proposed, an empty spot occurred in it (at the bottom position), corresponding to a particle that had never been observed. Gell-Mann predicted that the missing particle, which he called the omega minus (Ω^-), should have spin $\frac{3}{2}$, charge -1, strangeness -3, and rest energy of approximately 1 680 MeV. Shortly thereafter, in 1964, scientists at the Brookhaven National Laboratory found the missing particle through careful analyses of bubble-chamber photographs (Fig. 46.10) and confirmed all its predicted properties.

The prediction of the missing particle in the eightfold way has much in common with the prediction of missing elements in the periodic table. Whenever a vacancy occurs in an organized pattern of information, experimentalists have a guide for their investigations.

46.8 Quarks

As mentioned earlier, leptons appear to be truly elementary particles because there are only a few types of them, and experiments indicate that they have no measurable size or internal structure. Hadrons, on the other hand, are complex particles having size and structure. The existence of the strangeness–charge patterns of the eightfold way suggests that hadrons have substructure. Furthermore, hundreds of types of hadrons exist and many decay into other hadrons.

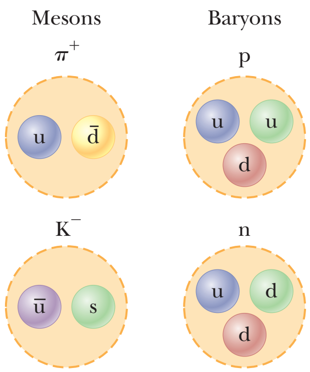


Figure 46.11 Quark composition of two mesons and two baryons.

The Original Quark Model

In 1963, Gell-Mann and George Zweig (b. 1937) independently proposed a model for the substructure of hadrons. According to their model, all hadrons are composed of two or three elementary constituents called **quarks.** (Gell-Mann borrowed the word *quark* from the passage "Three quarks for Muster Mark" in James Joyce's *Finnegans Wake.* In Zweig's model, he called the constituents "aces.") The model has three types of quarks, designated by the symbols u, d, and s, that are given the arbitrary names **up, down,** and **strange.** The various types of quarks are called **flavors.** Figure 46.11 is a pictorial representation of the quark compositions of several hadrons.

Table 46.3 Properties of Quarks and Antiquarks

Quarks

Name	Symbol	Spin	Charge	Baryon Number	Strangeness	Charm	Bottomness	Topness
Up	u	$\frac{1}{2}$	$+\frac{2}{3}e$	$\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	0	0
Down	d	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{3}e$	$\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	0	0
Strange	s	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{3}e$	$\frac{1}{3}$	−1	0	0	0
Charmed	c	$\frac{1}{2}$	$+\frac{2}{3}e$	$\frac{1}{3}$	0	+1	0	0
Bottom	b	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{3}e$	$\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	+1	0
Top	t	$\frac{1}{2}$	$+\frac{2}{3}e$	$\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	0	+1

Antiquarks

Name	Symbol	Spin	Charge	Baryon Number	Strangeness	Charm	Bottomness	Topness
Anti-up	$\overline{\mathrm{u}}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{2}{3}e$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	0	0
Anti-down	$\overline{\mathrm{d}}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$+\frac{1}{3}e$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	0	0
Anti-strange	$\overline{\mathrm{s}}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$+\frac{1}{3}e$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	+1	0	0	0
Anti-charmed	$\overline{\mathrm{c}}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{2}{3}e$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	−1	0	0
Anti-bottom	$\overline{\mathrm{b}}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$+\frac{1}{3}e$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	−1	0
Anti-top	$\overline{\mathrm{t}}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{2}{3}e$	$-\frac{1}{3}$	0	0	0	−1

An unusual property of quarks is that they carry a fractional electric charge. The u, d, and s quarks have charges of $+2e/3$, $-e/3$, and $-e/3$, respectively, where e is the elementary charge 1.60×10^{-19} C. These and other properties of quarks and antiquarks are given in Table 46.3. Quarks have spin $\frac{1}{2}$, which means that all quarks are fermions, defined as any particle having half-integral spin, as pointed out in Section 43.8. As Table 46.3 shows, associated with each quark is an antiquark of opposite charge, baryon number, and strangeness.

The compositions of all hadrons known when Gell-Mann and Zweig presented their model can be completely specified by three simple rules:

- A meson consists of one quark and one antiquark, giving it a baryon number of 0, as required.
- A baryon consists of three quarks.
- An antibaryon consists of three antiquarks.

The theory put forth by Gell-Mann and Zweig is referred to as the *original quark model.*

Quick Quiz 46.5 Using a coordinate system like that in Figure 46.8, draw an eightfold-way diagram for the three quarks in the original quark model.

Charm and Other Developments

Although the original quark model was highly successful in classifying particles into families, some discrepancies occurred between its predictions and certain experimental decay rates. Consequently, several physicists proposed a fourth quark flavor in 1967. They argued that if four types of leptons exist (as was thought at the time), there should also be four flavors of quarks because of an underlying symmetry in nature. The fourth quark, designated c, was assigned a property called **charm.** A *charmed* quark has charge $+2e/3$, just as the up quark does, but its charm distinguishes it from the other three quarks. This introduces a new quantum number C, representing charm. The new quark has charm $C = +1$, its antiquark has charm of $C = -1$, and all other quarks have $C = 0$. Charm, like strangeness, is conserved in strong and electromagnetic interactions but not in weak interactions.

Table 46.4 Quark Composition of Mesons

		Antiquarks									
		$\bar{b}$		$\bar{c}$		$\bar{s}$		$\bar{d}$		$\bar{u}$	
Quarks	**b**	Υ	($b\bar{b}$)	B_c^-	($\bar{c}b$)	$\bar{B}_s^0$	($\bar{s}b$)	$\bar{B}_d^0$	($\bar{d}b$)	B^-	($\bar{u}b$)
	c	B_c^+	($\bar{b}c$)	J/Ψ	($\bar{c}c$)	D_s^+	($\bar{s}c$)	D^+	($\bar{d}c$)	D^0	($\bar{u}c$)
	s	B_s^0	($\bar{b}s$)	D_s^-	($\bar{c}s$)	η, η'	($\bar{s}s$)	$\bar{K}^0$	($\bar{d}s$)	K^-	($\bar{u}s$)
	d	B_d^0	($\bar{b}d$)	D^-	($\bar{c}d$)	K^0	($\bar{s}d$)	π^0, η, η'	($\bar{d}d$)	π^-	($\bar{u}d$)
	u	B^+	($\bar{b}u$)	$\bar{D}^0$	($\bar{c}u$)	K^+	($\bar{s}u$)	π^+	($\bar{d}u$)	π^0, η, η'	($\bar{u}u$)

Note: The top quark does not form mesons because it decays too quickly.

Evidence that the charmed quark exists began to accumulate in 1974, when a heavy meson called the J/Ψ particle (or simply Ψ, Greek letter psi) was discovered independently by two groups, one led by Burton Richter (b. 1931) at the Stanford Linear Accelerator (SLAC), and the other led by Samuel Ting (b. 1936) at the Brookhaven National Laboratory. In 1976, Richter and Ting were awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics for this work. The J/Ψ particle does not fit into the three-quark model; instead, it has properties of a combination of the proposed charmed quark and its antiquark ($c\bar{c}$). It is much more massive than the other known mesons ($\sim$3 100 MeV/c^2), and its lifetime is much longer than the lifetimes of particles that interact via the strong force. Soon, related mesons were discovered, corresponding to such quark combinations as $\bar{c}d$ and $c\bar{d}$, all of which have great masses and long lifetimes. The existence of these new mesons provided firm evidence for the fourth quark flavor.

In 1975, researchers at Stanford University reported strong evidence for the tau (τ) lepton, mass 1 784 MeV/c^2. This fifth type of lepton led physicists to propose that more flavors of quarks might exist, on the basis of symmetry arguments similar to those leading to the proposal of the charmed quark. These proposals led to more elaborate quark models and the prediction of two new quarks, **top** (t) and **bottom** (b). (Some physicists prefer *truth* and *beauty*.) To distinguish these quarks from the others, quantum numbers called *topness* and *bottomness* (with allowed values +1, 0, −1) were assigned to all quarks and antiquarks (see Table 46.3). In 1977, researchers at the Fermi National Laboratory, under the direction of Leon Lederman (b. 1922), reported the discovery of a very massive new meson Υ (Greek letter upsilon), whose composition is considered to be $b\bar{b}$, providing evidence for the bottom quark. In March 1995, researchers at Fermilab announced the discovery of the top quark (supposedly the last of the quarks to be found), which has a mass of 173 GeV/c^2.

Table 46.4 lists the quark compositions of mesons formed from the up, down, strange, charmed, and bottom quarks. Table 46.5 shows the quark combinations for the baryons listed in Table 46.2. Notice that only two flavors of quarks, u and d, are contained in all hadrons encountered in ordinary matter (protons and neutrons).

Will the discoveries of elementary particles ever end? How many "building blocks" of matter actually exist? At present, physicists believe that the elementary particles in nature are six quarks and six leptons, together with their antiparticles, and the four field particles listed in Table 46.1. Table 46.6 lists the rest energies and charges of the quarks and leptons.

Despite extensive experimental effort, no isolated quark has ever been observed. Physicists now believe that at ordinary temperatures, quarks are permanently confined inside ordinary particles because of an exceptionally strong force that prevents them from escaping, called (appropriately) the **strong force**[5] (which we

[5]As a reminder, the original meaning of the term *strong force* was the short-range attractive force between nucleons, which we have called the *nuclear force*. The nuclear force between nucleons is a secondary effect of the strong force between quarks.

Table 46.5 Quark Composition of Several Baryons

Particle	Quark Composition
p	uud
n	udd
Λ^0	uds
Σ^+	uus
Σ^0	uds
Σ^-	dds
Δ^{++}	uuu
Δ^+	uud
Δ^0	udd
Δ^-	ddd
Ξ^0	uss
Ξ^-	dss
Ω^-	sss

Note: Some baryons have the same quark composition, such as the p and the Δ^+ and the n and the Δ^0. In these cases, the Δ particles are considered to be excited states of the proton and neutron.

Table 46.6 The Elementary Particles and Their Rest Energies and Charges

Particle	Approximate Rest Energy	Charge
Quarks		
u	2.4 MeV	$+\frac{2}{3}e$
d	4.8 MeV	$-\frac{1}{3}e$
s	104 MeV	$-\frac{1}{3}e$
c	1.27 GeV	$+\frac{2}{3}e$
b	4.2 GeV	$-\frac{1}{3}e$
t	173 GeV	$+\frac{2}{3}e$
Leptons		
e^-	511 keV	$-e$
μ^-	105.7 MeV	$-e$
τ^-	1.78 GeV	$-e$
ν_e	< 2 eV	0
ν_μ	< 0.17 MeV	0
ν_τ	< 18 MeV	0

introduced at the beginning of Section 46.4 and will discuss further in Section 46.10). This force increases with separation distance, similar to the force exerted by a stretched spring. Current efforts are under way to form a **quark–gluon plasma,** a state of matter in which the quarks are freed from neutrons and protons. In 2000, scientists at CERN announced evidence for a quark–gluon plasma formed by colliding lead nuclei. In 2005, experiments at the Relativistic Heavy Ion Collider (RHIC) at Brookhaven suggested the creation of a quark–gluon plasma. Neither laboratory has provided definitive data to verify the existence of a quark–gluon plasma. Experiments continue, and the ALICE project (A Large Ion Collider Experiment) at the Large Hadron Collider at CERN has joined the search.

Quick Quiz 46.6 Doubly charged baryons, such as the Δ^{++}, are known to exist. True or False: Doubly charged mesons also exist.

46.9 Multicolored Quarks

Shortly after the concept of quarks was proposed, scientists recognized that certain particles had quark compositions that violated the exclusion principle. In Section 42.7, we applied the exclusion principle to electrons in atoms. The principle is more general, however, and applies to all particles with half-integral spin ($\frac{1}{2}$, $\frac{3}{2}$, etc.), which are collectively called fermions. Because all quarks are fermions having spin $\frac{1}{2}$, they are expected to follow the exclusion principle. One example of a particle that appears to violate the exclusion principle is the Ω^- (sss) baryon, which contains three strange quarks having parallel spins, giving it a total spin of $\frac{3}{2}$. All three quarks have the same spin quantum number, in violation of the exclusion principle. Other examples of baryons made up of identical quarks having parallel spins are the Δ^{++} (uuu) and the Δ^- (ddd).

To resolve this problem, it was suggested that quarks possess an additional property called **color charge.** This property is similar in many respects to electric charge except that it occurs in six varieties rather than two. The colors assigned to quarks are red, green, and blue, and antiquarks have the colors antired, antigreen, and antiblue. Therefore, the colors red, green, and blue serve as the "quantum numbers" for the color of the quark. To satisfy the exclusion principle, the three quarks in any baryon must all have different colors. Look again at the quarks in the baryons in Figure 46.11 and notice the colors. The three colors "neutralize" to white.

Pitfall Prevention 46.3

Color Charge Is Not Really Color

The description of color for a quark has nothing to do with visual sensation from light. It is simply a convenient name for a property that is analogous to electric charge.

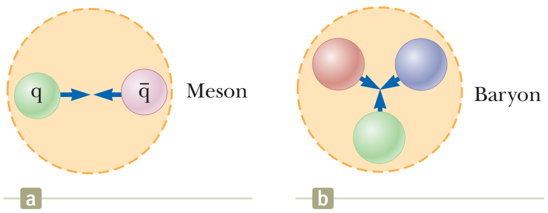


Figure 46.12 (a) A green quark is attracted to an antigreen quark. This forms a meson whose quark structure is $(q\bar{q})$. (b) Three quarks of different colors attract one another to form a baryon.

A quark and an antiquark in a meson must be of a color and the corresponding anticolor and will consequently neutralize to white, similar to the way electric charges + and − neutralize to zero net charge. (See the mesons in Fig. 46.11.) The apparent violation of the exclusion principle in the Ω^- baryon is removed because the three quarks in the particle have different colors.

The new property of color increases the number of quarks by a factor of 3 because each of the six quarks comes in three colors. Although the concept of color in the quark model was originally conceived to satisfy the exclusion principle, it also provided a better theory for explaining certain experimental results. For example, the modified theory correctly predicts the lifetime of the π^0 meson.

The theory of how quarks interact with each other is called **quantum chromodynamics,** or QCD, to parallel the name *quantum electrodynamics* (the theory of the electrical interaction between light and matter). In QCD, each quark is said to carry a color charge, in analogy to electric charge. The strong force between quarks is often called the **color force.** Therefore, the terms *strong force* and *color force* are used interchangeably.

In Section 46.1, we stated that the nuclear interaction between hadrons is mediated by massless field particles called **gluons.** As mentioned earlier, the nuclear force is actually a secondary effect of the strong force between quarks. The gluons are the mediators of the strong force. When a quark emits or absorbs a gluon, the quark's color may change. For example, a blue quark that emits a gluon may become a red quark and a red quark that absorbs this gluon becomes a blue quark.

The color force between quarks is analogous to the electric force between charges: particles with the same color repel, and those with opposite colors attract. Therefore, two green quarks repel each other, but a green quark is attracted to an antigreen quark. The attraction between quarks of opposite color to form a meson $(q\bar{q})$ is indicated in Figure 46.12a. Differently colored quarks also attract one another, although with less intensity than the oppositely colored quark and antiquark. For example, a cluster of red, blue, and green quarks all attract one another to form a baryon as in Figure 46.12b. Therefore, every baryon contains three quarks of three different colors.

Although the nuclear force between two colorless hadrons is negligible at large separations, the net strong force between their constituent quarks is not exactly zero at small separations. This residual strong force is the nuclear force that binds protons and neutrons to form nuclei. It is similar to the force between two electric dipoles. Each dipole is electrically neutral. An electric field surrounds the dipoles, however, because of the separation of the positive and negative charges (see Section 23.6). As a result, an electric interaction occurs between the dipoles that is weaker than the force between single charges. In Section 43.1, we explored how this interaction results in the Van der Waals force between neutral molecules.

According to QCD, a more basic explanation of the nuclear force can be given in terms of quarks and gluons. Figure 46.13a shows the nuclear interaction between a neutron and a proton by means of Yukawa's pion, in this case a π^-. This drawing differs from Figure 46.5a, in which the field particle is a π^0; there is no transfer of charge from one nucleon to the other in Figure 46.5a. In Figure 46.13a, the charged pion carries charge from one nucleon to the other, so the nucleons change identities, with the proton becoming a neutron and the neutron becoming a proton.

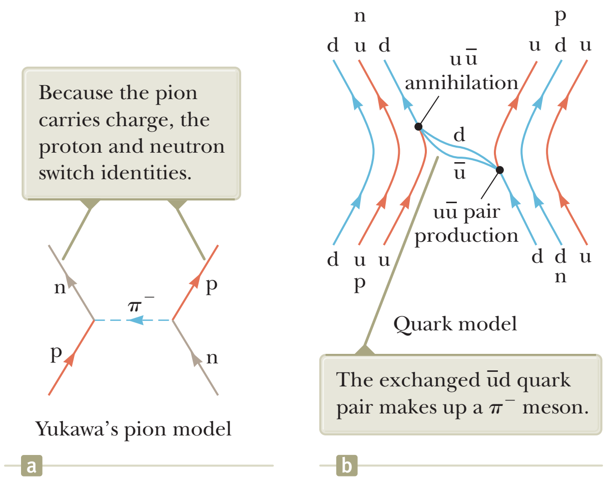


Figure 46.13 (a) A nuclear interaction between a proton and a neutron explained in terms of Yukawa's pion-exchange model. (b) The same interaction, explained in terms of quarks and gluons.

Let's look at the same interaction from the viewpoint of the quark model, shown in Figure 46.13b. In this Feynman diagram, the proton and neutron are represented by their quark constituents. Each quark in the neutron and proton is continuously emitting and absorbing gluons. The energy of a gluon can result in the creation of quark–antiquark pairs. This process is similar to the creation of electron–positron pairs in pair production, which we investigated in Section 46.2. When the neutron and proton approach to within 1 fm of each other, these gluons and quarks can be exchanged between the two nucleons, and such exchanges produce the nuclear force. Figure 46.13b depicts one possibility for the process shown in Figure 46.13a. A down quark in the neutron on the right emits a gluon. The energy of the gluon is then transformed to create a $u\bar{u}$ pair. The u quark stays within the nucleon (which has now changed to a proton), and the recoiling d quark and the $\bar{u}$ antiquark are transmitted to the proton on the left side of the diagram. Here the $\bar{u}$ annihilates a u quark within the proton and the d is captured. The net effect is to change a u quark to a d quark, and the proton on the left has changed to a neutron.

As the d quark and $\bar{u}$ antiquark in Figure 46.13b transfer between the nucleons, the d and $\bar{u}$ exchange gluons with each other and can be considered to be bound to each other by means of the strong force. Looking back at Table 46.4, we see that this combination is a π^-, or Yukawa's field particle! Therefore, the quark model of interactions between nucleons is consistent with the pion-exchange model.

46.10 The Standard Model

Scientists now believe there are three classifications of truly elementary particles: leptons, quarks, and field particles. These three types of particles are further classified as either fermions or bosons. Quarks and leptons have spin $\frac{1}{2}$ and hence are fermions, whereas the field particles have integral spin of 1 or higher and are bosons.

Recall from Section 46.1 that the weak force is believed to be mediated by the W^+, W^-, and Z^0 bosons. These particles are said to have *weak charge,* just as quarks have color charge. Therefore, each elementary particle can have mass, electric charge, color charge, and weak charge. Of course, one or more of these could be zero.

In 1979, Sheldon Glashow (b. 1932), Abdus Salam (1926–1996), and Steven Weinberg (b. 1933) won the Nobel Prize in Physics for developing a theory that unifies the electromagnetic and weak interactions. This **electroweak theory** postulates that the weak and electromagnetic interactions have the same strength when the particles involved have very high energies. The two interactions are viewed as different manifestations of a single unifying electroweak interaction. The theory makes many concrete predictions, but perhaps the most spectacular is the prediction of

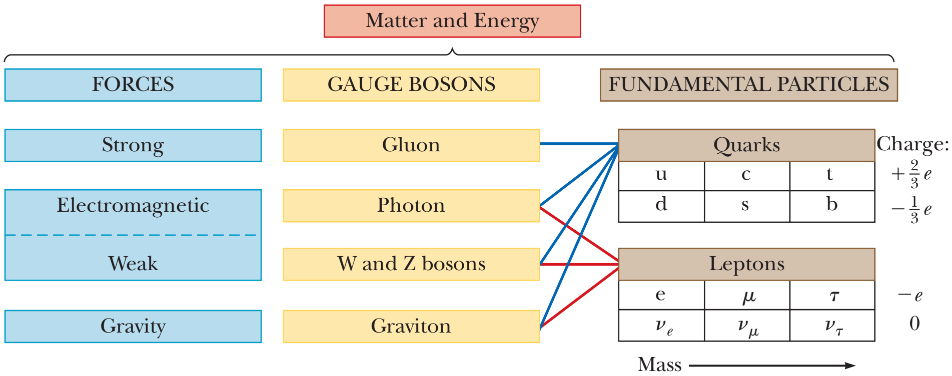


Figure 46.14 The Standard Model of particle physics.

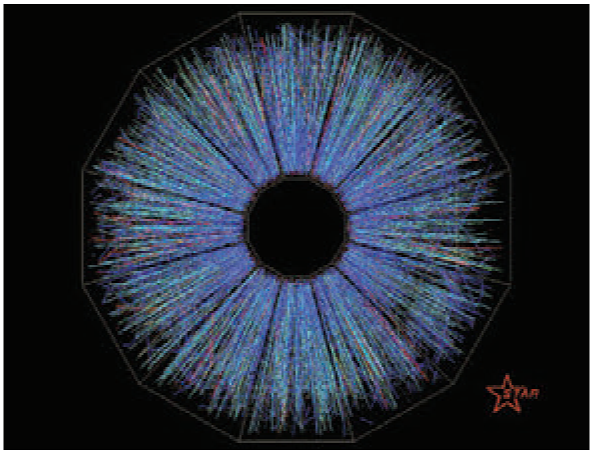
the masses of the W and Z particles at approximately 82 GeV/c^2 and 93 GeV/c^2, respectively. These predictions are close to the masses in Table 46.1 determined by experiment.

The combination of the electroweak theory and QCD for the strong interaction is referred to in high-energy physics as the **Standard Model.** Although the details of the Standard Model are complex, its essential ingredients can be summarized with the help of Fig. 46.14. (Although the Standard Model does not include the gravitational force at present, we include gravity in Fig. 46.14 because physicists hope to eventually incorporate this force into a unified theory.) This diagram shows that quarks participate in all the fundamental forces and that leptons participate in all except the strong force.

The Standard Model does not answer all questions. A major question still unanswered is why, of the two mediators of the electroweak interaction, the photon has no mass but the W and Z bosons do. Because of this mass difference, the electromagnetic and weak forces are quite distinct at low energies but become similar at very high energies, when the rest energy is negligible relative to the total energy. The behavior as one goes from high to low energies is called *symmetry breaking* because the forces are similar, or symmetric, at high energies but are very different at low energies. The nonzero rest energies of the W and Z bosons raise the question of the origin of particle masses. To resolve this problem, a hypothetical particle called the **Higgs boson,** which provides a mechanism for breaking the electroweak symmetry, has been proposed. The Standard Model modified to include the Higgs boson provides a logically consistent explanation of the massive nature of the W and Z bosons. In July 2012, announcements from the ATLAS (A Toroidal LHC Apparatus) and CMS (Compact Muon Solenoid) experiments at the Large Hadron Collider (LHC) at CERN claimed the discovery of a new particle having properties consistent with that of a Higgs boson. The mass of the particle is 125–127 GeV, within the range of predictions made from theoretical considerations using the Standard Model.

Because of the limited energy available in conventional accelerators using fixed targets, it is necessary to employ colliding-beam accelerators called **colliders.** The concept of colliders is straightforward. Particles that have equal masses and equal kinetic energies, traveling in opposite directions in an accelerator ring, collide head-on to produce the required reaction and form new particles. Because the total momentum of the interacting particles is zero, all their kinetic energy is available for the reaction.

Several colliders provided important data for understanding the Standard Model in the latter part of the 20th century and the first decade of the 21st century: the Large Electron–Positron (LEP) Collider and the Super Proton Synchrotron at CERN, the Stanford Linear Collider, and the Tevatron at the Fermi National Laboratory in Illinois. The Relativistic Heavy Ion Collider at Brookhaven National Laboratory is the sole remaining collider in operation in the United States. The Large Hadron Collider at CERN, which began collision operations in March 2010, has



Courtesy of Brookhaven National Laboratory

Figure 46.15 A shower of particle tracks from a head-on collision of gold nuclei, each moving with energy 100 GeV. This collision occurred at the Relativistic Heavy Ion Collider (RHIC) at Brookhaven National Laboratory and was recorded with the STAR (Solenoidal Tracker at RHIC) detector. The tracks represent many fundamental particles arising from the energy of the collision.

taken the lead in particle studies due to its extremely high energy capabilities. The expected upper limit for the LHC is a center-of-mass energy of 14 TeV. (See page 868 for a photo of a magnet used by the LHC.)

In addition to increasing energies in modern accelerators, detection techniques have become increasingly sophisticated. We saw simple bubble-chamber photographs earlier in this chapter that required hours of analysis by hand. Figure 46.15 shows a complex set of tracks from a collision of gold nuclei.

46.11 The Cosmic Connection

In this section, we describe one of the most fascinating theories in all science—the Big Bang theory of the creation of the Universe—and the experimental evidence that supports it. This theory of cosmology states that the Universe had a beginning and furthermore that the beginning was so cataclysmic that it is impossible to look back beyond it. According to this theory, the Universe erupted from an infinitely dense singularity about 14 billion years ago. The first few moments after the Big Bang saw such extremely high energy that it is believed that all four interactions of physics were unified and all matter was contained in a quark–gluon plasma.

The evolution of the four fundamental forces from the Big Bang to the present is shown in Figure 46.16 (page 1470). During the first 10^{-43} s (the ultrahot epoch, $T \sim 10^{32}$ K), it is presumed the strong, electroweak, and gravitational forces were joined to form a completely unified force. In the first 10^{-35} s following the Big Bang (the hot epoch, $T \sim 10^{29}$ K), symmetry breaking occurred for gravity while the strong and electroweak forces remained unified. It was a period when particle energies were so great ($> 10^{16}$ GeV) that very massive particles as well as quarks, leptons, and their antiparticles existed. Then, after 10^{-35} s, the Universe rapidly expanded and cooled (the warm epoch, $T \sim 10^{29}$ to 10^{15} K) and the strong and electroweak forces parted company. As the Universe continued to cool, the electroweak force split into the weak force and the electromagnetic force approximately 10^{-10} s after the Big Bang.

After a few minutes, protons and neutrons condensed out of the plasma. For half an hour, the Universe underwent thermonuclear fusion, exploding as a hydrogen bomb and producing most of the helium nuclei that now exist. The Universe continued to expand, and its temperature dropped. Until about 700 000 years after the Big Bang, the Universe was dominated by radiation. Energetic radiation prevented matter from forming single hydrogen atoms because photons would instantly ionize any atoms that happened to form. Photons experienced continuous Compton scattering from the vast numbers of free electrons, resulting in a Universe that was opaque to radiation. By the time the Universe was about 700 000 years old, it had

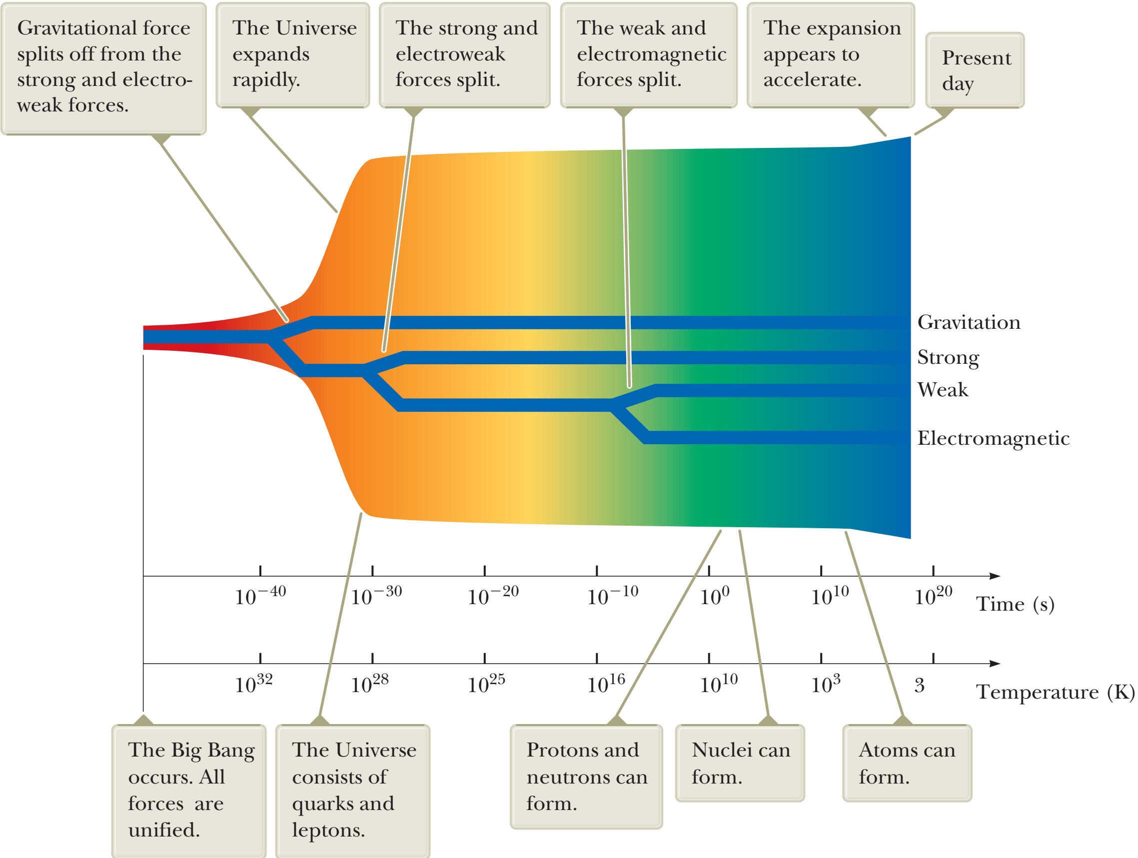


Figure 46.16 A brief history of the Universe from the Big Bang to the present. The four forces became distinguishable during the first nanosecond. Following that, all the quarks combined to form particles that interact via the nuclear force. The leptons, however, remained separate and to this day exist as individual, observable particles.

expanded and cooled to approximately 3 000 K and protons could bind to electrons to form neutral hydrogen atoms. Because of the quantized energies of the atoms, far more wavelengths of radiation were not absorbed by atoms than were absorbed, and the Universe suddenly became transparent to photons. Radiation no longer dominated the Universe, and clumps of neutral matter steadily grew: first atoms, then molecules, gas clouds, stars, and finally galaxies.

Observation of Radiation from the Primordial Fireball

In 1965, Arno A. Penzias (b. 1933) and Robert W. Wilson (b. 1936) of Bell Laboratories were testing a sensitive microwave receiver and made an amazing discovery. A pesky signal producing a faint background hiss was interfering with their satellite communications experiments. The microwave horn that served as their receiving antenna is shown in Figure 46.17. Evicting a flock of pigeons from the 20-ft horn and cooling the microwave detector both failed to remove the signal.

Figure 46.17 Robert W. Wilson *(left)* and Arno A. Penzias with the Bell Telephone Laboratories horn-reflector antenna.

The intensity of the detected signal remained unchanged as the antenna was pointed in different directions. That the radiation had equal strengths in all directions suggested that the entire Universe was the source of this radiation. Ultimately, it became clear that they were detecting microwave background radiation (at a wavelength of 7.35 cm), which represented the leftover "glow" from the Big Bang. Through a casual conversation, Penzias and Wilson discovered that a group at Princeton University had predicted the residual radiation from the Big Bang and were planning an experiment to attempt to confirm the theory. The excitement in the scientific community was high when Penzias and Wilson announced that they had already observed an excess microwave background compatible with a 3-K

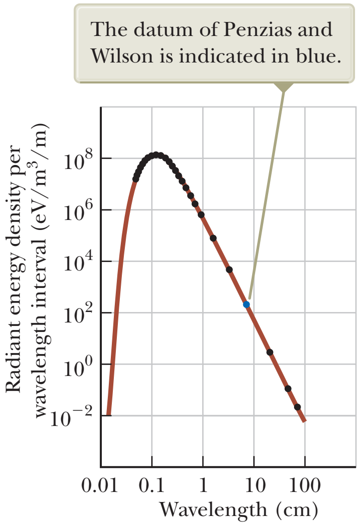


Figure 46.18 Theoretical blackbody (brown curve) and measured radiation spectra (black points) of the Big Bang. Most of the data were collected from the COsmic Background Explorer, or COBE, satellite.

blackbody source, which was consistent with the predicted temperature of the Universe at this time after the Big Bang.

Because Penzias and Wilson made their measurements at a single wavelength, they did not completely confirm the radiation as 3-K blackbody radiation. Subsequent experiments by other groups added intensity data at different wavelengths as shown in Figure 46.18. The results confirm that the radiation is that of a black body at 2.7 K. This figure is perhaps the most clear-cut evidence for the Big Bang theory. The 1978 Nobel Prize in Physics was awarded to Penzias and Wilson for this most important discovery.

In the years following Penzias and Wilson's discovery, other researchers made measurements at different wavelengths. In 1989, the COBE (COsmic Background Explorer) satellite was launched by NASA and added critical measurements at wavelengths below 0.1 cm. The results of these measurements led to a Nobel Prize in Physics for the principal investigators in 2006. Several data points from COBE are shown in Figure 46.18. The Wilkinson Microwave Anisotropy Probe, launched in June 2001, exhibits data that allow observation of temperature differences in the cosmos in the microkelvin range. Ongoing observations are also being made from Earth-based facilities, associated with projects such as QUaD, Qubic, and the South Pole Telescope. In addition, the Planck satellite was launched in May 2009 by the European Space Agency. This space-based observatory has been measuring the cosmic background radiation with higher sensitivity than the Wilkinson probe. The series of measurements taken since 1965 are consistent with thermal radiation associated with a temperature of 2.7 K. The whole story of the cosmic temperature is a remarkable example of science at work: building a model, making a prediction, taking measurements, and testing the measurements against the predictions.

Other Evidence for an Expanding Universe

The Big Bang theory of cosmology predicts that the Universe is expanding. Most of the key discoveries supporting the theory of an expanding Universe were made in the 20th century. Vesto Melvin Slipher (1875–1969), an American astronomer, reported in 1912 that most galaxies are receding from the Earth at speeds up to several million miles per hour. Slipher was one of the first scientists to use Doppler shifts (see Section 17.4) in spectral lines to measure galaxy velocities.

In the late 1920s, Edwin P. Hubble (1889–1953) made the bold assertion that the whole Universe is expanding. From 1928 to 1936, until they reached the limits of the 100-inch telescope, Hubble and Milton Humason (1891–1972) worked at Mount Wilson in California to prove this assertion. The results of that work and of its continuation with the use of a 200-inch telescope in the 1940s showed that the speeds at which galaxies are receding from the Earth increase in direct proportion to their distance R from us. This linear relationship, known as **Hubble's law,** may be written

Hubble's law ▶

$$v = HR \tag{46.4}$$

where H, called the **Hubble constant,** has the approximate value

$$H \approx 22 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m/(s} \cdot \text{ly)}$$

Example 46.5 Recession of a Quasar AM

A quasar is an object that appears similar to a star and is very distant from the Earth. Its speed can be determined from Doppler-shift measurements in the light it emits. A certain quasar recedes from the Earth at a speed of $0.55c$. How far away is it?

SOLUTION

Conceptualize A common mental representation for the Hubble law is that of raisin bread cooking in an oven. Imagine yourself at the center of the loaf of bread. As the entire loaf of bread expands upon heating, raisins near you move slowly with respect to you. Raisins far away from you on the edge of the loaf move at a higher speed.

Categorize We use a concept developed in this section, so we categorize this example as a substitution problem.

Find the distance through Hubble's law:

$$R = \frac{v}{H} = \frac{(0.55)(3.00 \times 10^8 \text{ m/s})}{22 \times 10^{-3} \text{ m/(s} \cdot \text{ly)}} = \boxed{7.5 \times 10^9 \text{ ly}}$$

WHAT IF? Suppose the quasar has moved at this speed ever since the Big Bang. With this assumption, estimate the age of the Universe.

Answer Let's approximate the distance from the Earth to the quasar as the distance the quasar has moved from the singularity since the Big Bang. We can then find the time interval from the *particle under constant speed* model: $\Delta t = d/v = R/v = 1/H \approx 14$ billion years, which is in approximate agreement with other calculations.

Will the Universe Expand Forever?

In the 1950s and 1960s, Allan R. Sandage (1926–2010) used the 200-inch telescope at Mount Palomar to measure the speeds of galaxies at distances of up to 6 billion light-years away from the Earth. These measurements showed that these very distant galaxies were moving approximately 10 000 km/s faster than Hubble's law predicted. According to this result, the Universe must have been expanding more rapidly 1 billion years ago, and consequently we conclude from these data that the expansion rate is slowing.[6] Today, astronomers and physicists are trying to determine the rate of expansion. If the average mass density of the Universe is less than some critical value ρ_c, the galaxies will slow in their outward rush but still escape to infinity. If the average density exceeds the critical value, the expansion will eventually stop and contraction will begin, possibly leading to a superdense state followed by another expansion. In this scenario, we have an oscillating Universe.

Example 46.6 The Critical Density of the Universe AM

(A) Starting from energy conservation, derive an expression for the critical mass density of the Universe ρ_c in terms of the Hubble constant H and the universal gravitational constant G.

[6]The data at large distances have large observational uncertainties and may be systematically in error from effects such as abnormal brightness in the most distant visible clusters.

SOLU IO

Conceptualize Figure 46.19 shows a large section of the Universe, contained within a sphere of radius *R*. The total mass in this volume is A galaxy of mass that has a speed at a distance from the center of the sphere escapes to infinity (at which its speed approaches zero) if the sum of its kinetic energy and the gravitational potential energy of the system is zero.

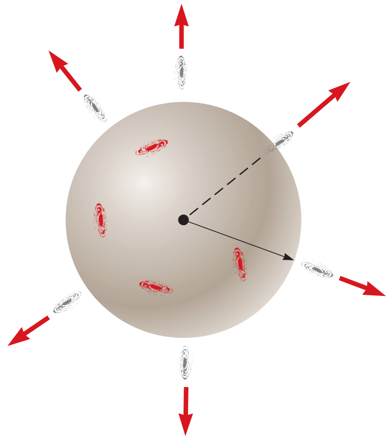


Figure 46.19 (Example 46.6) The galaxy marked with mass is escaping from a large cluster of galaxies contained within a spherical volume of radius . Only the mass within slows the escaping galaxy.

Categorize The Universe may be infinite in spatial extent, but Gauss's law for gravitation (an analog to Gauss's law for electric fields in Chapter 24) implies that only the mass inside the sphere contributes to the gravitational poten tial energy of the galaxy–sphere system. Therefore, we categorize this problem as one in which we apply Gauss's law for gravitation. We model the sphere in Figure 46.19 and the escaping galaxy as an *isolated system* for *energy*.

Analyze Write the appropriate reduction of Equation 8.2, assuming that the galaxy leaves the spherical volume while moving at the escape speed:

$$-mv \qquad \frac{GmM}{\quad}\Big)\Big]$$

Substitute for the mass contained within the sphere the product of the critical density and the volume of the sphere:

$$-mv \qquad \frac{Gm\ -}{\qquad}$$

Solve for the critical density:

$$\frac{\quad}{\quad}$$

From Hubble's law, substitute for the ratio

$$(1) \qquad \frac{\quad}{\quad} \quad - \quad \boxed{\frac{\quad}{\quad}}$$

(B) Estimate a numerical value for the critical density in grams per cubic centimeter.

SOLU IO

In Equation (1), substitute numerical values for and

$$\frac{\quad}{\quad} \quad \frac{22 \quad 10 \quad m \quad ly)]}{6.67 \quad 10^{11}\ N \quad kg} \quad 8.7 \quad 10\ kg \quad ly$$

Reconcile the units by converting light-years to meters:

$$8.7 \quad 10\ kg \quad ly \quad \frac{1\ ly}{9.46 \quad 10^{15}\ m}$$

$$9.7 \quad kg/m \quad \boxed{9.7 \quad 10^{30}\ g \quad cm}$$

Finalize Because the mass of a hydrogen atom is 1.67 ^{24} g, this value of corresponds to 6 hydrogen atoms per cubic centimeter or 6 atoms per cubic meter.

Missing Mass in the Universe?

The luminous matter in galaxies averages out to a Universe density of about g/cm . The radiation in the Universe has a mass equivalent of approxi mately 2% of the luminous matter. The total mass of all nonluminous matter (such as interstellar gas and black holes) may be estimated from the speeds of galaxies orbiting each other in a cluster. The higher the galaxy speeds, the more mass in the cluster. Measurements on the Coma cluster of galaxies indicate, surprisingly, that the amount of nonluminous matter is 20 to 30 times the amount of luminous matter present in stars and luminous gas clouds. Yet even this large, invisible component of *dark matter* (see Section 13.6), if extrapolated to the Universe as a whole, leaves the observed mass density a factor of 10 less than ρ_c calculated in Example 46.6. The deficit, called *missing mass,* has been the subject of intense theoretical and experimental work, with exotic particles such as axions, photinos, and superstring particles suggested as candidates for the missing mass. Some researchers have made the more mundane proposal that the missing mass is present in neutrinos. In fact, neutrinos are so abundant that a tiny neutrino rest energy on the order of only 20 eV would furnish the missing mass and "close" the Universe. Current experiments designed to measure the rest energy of the neutrino will have an effect on predictions for the future of the Universe.

Mysterious Energy in the Universe?

A surprising twist in the story of the Universe arose in 1998 with the observation of a class of supernovae that have a fixed absolute brightness. By combining the apparent brightness and the redshift of light from these explosions, their distance and speed of recession from the Earth can be determined. These observations led to the conclusion that the expansion of the Universe is not slowing down, but is accelerating! Observations by other groups also led to the same interpretation.

To explain this acceleration, physicists have proposed *dark energy,* which is energy possessed by the vacuum of space. In the early life of the Universe, gravity dominated over the dark energy. As the Universe expanded and the gravitational force between galaxies became smaller because of the great distances between them, the dark energy became more important. The dark energy results in an effective repulsive force that causes the expansion rate to increase.[7]

Although there is some degree of certainty about the beginning of the Universe, we are uncertain about how the story will end. Will the Universe keep on expanding forever, or will it someday collapse and then expand again, perhaps in an endless series of oscillations? Results and answers to these questions remain inconclusive, and the exciting controversy continues.

46.12 Problems and Perspectives

While particle physicists have been exploring the realm of the very small, cosmologists have been exploring cosmic history back to the first microsecond of the Big Bang. Observation of the events that occur when two particles collide in an accelerator is essential for reconstructing the early moments in cosmic history. For this reason, perhaps the key to understanding the early Universe is to first understand the world of elementary particles. Cosmologists and physicists now find that they have many common goals and are joining hands in an attempt to understand the physical world at its most fundamental level.

Our understanding of physics at short distances is far from complete. Particle physics is faced with many questions. Why does so little antimatter exist in the Universe? Is it possible to unify the strong and electroweak theories in a logical and consistent manner? Why do quarks and leptons form three similar but distinct families? Are muons the same as electrons apart from their difference in mass, or do they have other subtle differences that have not been detected? Why are some particles charged and others neutral? Why do quarks carry a fractional charge? What determines the masses of the elementary constituents of matter? Can isolated quarks exist? Why do electrons and protons have *exactly* the same magnitude of

[7]For an overview of dark energy, see S. Perlmutter, "Supernovae, Dark Energy, and the Accelerating Universe," *Physics Today* **56**(4): 53–60, April 2003.

charge when one is a truly fundamental particle and the other is built from smaller particles?

An important and obvious question that remains is whether leptons and quarks have an underlying structure. If they do, we can envision an infinite number of deeper structure levels. If leptons and quarks are indeed the ultimate constituents of matter, however, scientists hope to construct a final theory of the structure of matter, just as Einstein dreamed of doing. This theory, whimsically called the The ory of Everything, is a combination of the Standard Model and a quantum theory of gravity.

String Theory: A New Perspective

Let's briefly discuss one current effort at answering some of these questions by proposing a new perspective on particles. While reading this book, you may recall starting off with the *particle* model in Chapter 2 and doing quite a bit of physics with it. In Chapter 16, we introduced the *wave* model, and there was more physics to be investigated via the properties of waves. We used a *wave* model for light in Chapter 35; in Chapter 40, however, we saw the need to return to the *particle* model for light. Furthermore, we found that material particles had wave-like characteristics. The quantum particle model discussed in Chapter 40 allowed us to build particles out of waves, suggesting that a *wave* is the fundamental entity. In the current Chap ter 46, however, we introduced elementary *particles* as the fundamental entities. It seems as if we cannot make up our mind! In this final section, we discuss a current research effort to build particles out of waves and vibrations on strings!

String theory is an effort to unify the four fundamental forces by modeling all particles as various quantized vibrational modes of a single entity, an incredibly small string. The typical length of such a string is on the order of 10 m, called the **Planck length.** We have seen quantized modes before in the frequencies of vibrating guitar strings in Chapter 18 and the quantized energy levels of atoms in Chapter 42. In string theory, each quantized mode of vibration of the string cor responds to a different elementary particle in the Standard Model.

One complicating factor in string theory is that it requires space–time to have ten dimensions. Despite the theoretical and conceptual difficulties in dealing with ten dimensions, string theory holds promise in incorporating gravity with the other forces. Four of the ten dimensions—three space dimensions and one time dimen sion—are visible to us. The other six are said to be *compactified;* that is, the six dimen sions are curled up so tightly that they are not visible in the macroscopic world.

As an analogy, consider a soda straw. You can build a soda straw by cutting a rectangular piece of paper (Fig. 46.20a), which clearly has two dimensions, and rolling it into a small tube (Fig. 46.20b). From far away, the soda straw looks like a one-dimensional straight line. The second dimension has been curled up and is not visible. String theory claims that six space–time dimensions are curled up in an analogous way, with the curling being on the size of the Planck length and impos sible to see from our viewpoint.

Another complicating factor with string theory is that it is difficult for string theorists to guide experimentalists as to what to look for in an experiment. The

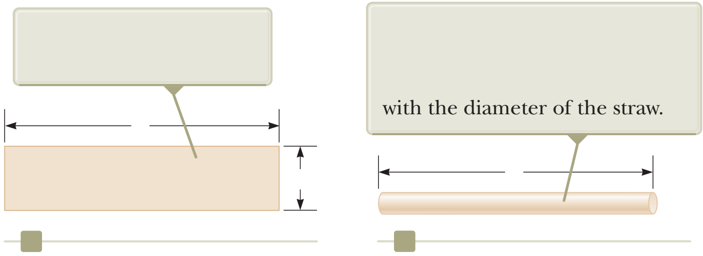


Figure 46.20 (a) A piece of paper is cut into a rectangular shape. (b) The paper is rolled up into a soda straw.

Planck length is so small that direct experimentation on strings is impossible. Until the theory has been further developed, string theorists are restricted to applying the theory to known results and testing for consistency.

One of the predictions of string theory, called **supersymmetry,** or SUSY, suggests that every elementary particle has a superpartner that has not yet been observed. It is believed that supersymmetry is a broken symmetry (like the broken electroweak symmetry at low energies) and the masses of the superpartners are above our current capabilities of detection by accelerators. Some theorists claim that the mass of superpartners is the missing mass discussed in Section 46.11. Keeping with the whimsical trend in naming particles and their properties, superpartners are given names such as the *squark* (the superpartner to a quark), the *selectron* (electron), and the *gluino* (gluon).

Other theorists are working on **M-theory,** which is an eleven-dimensional theory based on membranes rather than strings. In a way reminiscent of the correspondence principle, M-theory is claimed to reduce to string theory if one compactifies from eleven dimensions to ten dimensions.

The questions listed at the beginning of this section go on and on. Because of the rapid advances and new discoveries in the field of particle physics, many of these questions may be resolved in the next decade and other new questions may emerge.

Summary

Concepts and Principles

Before quark theory was developed, the four fundamental forces in nature were identified as nuclear, electromagnetic, weak, and gravitational. All the interactions in which these forces take part are mediated by **field particles.** The electromagnetic interaction is mediated by photons; the weak interaction is mediated by the $W^{\pm}$ and Z^0 bosons; the gravitational interaction is mediated by gravitons; and the nuclear interaction is mediated by gluons.

A charged particle and its **antiparticle** have the same mass but opposite charge, and other properties will have opposite values, such as lepton number and baryon number. It is possible to produce particle–antiparticle pairs in nuclear reactions if the available energy is greater than $2mc^2$, where m is the mass of the particle (or antiparticle).

Particles other than field particles are classified as hadrons or leptons. **Hadrons** interact via all four fundamental forces. They have size and structure and are not elementary particles. There are two types, **baryons** and **mesons.** Baryons, which generally are the most massive particles, have nonzero **baryon number** and a spin of $\frac{1}{2}$ or $\frac{3}{2}$. Mesons have baryon number zero and either zero or integral spin.

Leptons have no structure or size and are considered truly elementary. They interact only via the weak, gravitational, and electromagnetic forces. Six types of leptons exist: the electron e^-, the muon μ^-, and the tau τ^-, and their neutrinos ν_e, ν_μ, and ν_τ.

In all reactions and decays, quantities such as energy, linear momentum, angular momentum, electric charge, baryon number, and lepton number are strictly conserved. Certain particles have properties called **strangeness** and **charm.** These unusual properties are conserved in all decays and nuclear reactions except those that occur via the weak force.

Theorists in elementary particle physics have postulated that all hadrons are composed of smaller units known as **quarks,** and experimental evidence agrees with this model. Quarks have fractional electric charge and come in six **flavors:** up (u), down (d), strange (s), charmed (c), top (t), and bottom (b). Each baryon contains three quarks, and each meson contains one quark and one antiquark.

According to the theory of **quantum chromodynamics,** quarks have a property called **color;** the force between quarks is referred to as the **strong force** or the **color force.** The strong force is now considered to be a fundamental force. The nuclear force, which was originally considered to be fundamental, is now understood to be a secondary effect of the strong force due to gluon exchanges between hadrons.

The electromagnetic and weak forces are now considered to be manifestations of a single force called the **electroweak force.** The combination of quantum chromodynamics and the electroweak theory is called the **Standard Model.**

The background microwave radiation discovered by Penzias and Wilson strongly suggests that the Universe started with a Big Bang about 14 billion years ago. The background radiation is equivalent to that of a black body at 3 K. Various astronomical measurements strongly suggest that the Universe is expanding. According to **Hubble's law,** distant galaxies are receding from the Earth at a speed $v = HR$, where H is the **Hubble constant,** $H \approx 22 \times 10^{-3}$ m/(s · ly), and R is the distance from the Earth to the galaxy.

Objective Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. What interactions affect protons in an atomic nucleus? More than one answer may be correct. (a) the nuclear interaction (b) the weak interaction (c) the electromagnetic interaction (d) the gravitational interaction

2. In one experiment, two balls of clay of the same mass travel with the same speed v toward each other. They collide head-on and come to rest. In a second experiment, two clay balls of the same mass are again used. One ball hangs at rest, suspended from the ceiling by a thread. The second ball is fired toward the first at speed v, to collide, stick to the first ball, and continue to move forward. Is the kinetic energy that is transformed into internal energy in the first experiment (a) one-fourth as much as in the second experiment, (b) one-half as much as in the second experiment, (c) the same as in the second experiment, (d) twice as much as in the second experiment, or (e) four times as much as in the second experiment?

3. The Ω^- particle is a baryon with spin $\frac{3}{2}$. Does the Ω^- particle have (a) three possible spin states in a magnetic field, (b) four possible spin states, (c) three times the charge of a spin $-\frac{1}{2}$ particle, or (d) three times the mass of a spin $-\frac{1}{2}$ particle, or (e) are none of those choices correct?

4. Which of the following field particles mediates the strong force? (a) photon (b) gluon (c) graviton (d) $W^\pm$ and Z bosons (e) none of those field particles

5. An isolated stationary muon decays into an electron, an electron antineutrino, and a muon neutrino. Is the total kinetic energy of these three particles (a) zero, (b) small, or (c) large compared to their rest energies, or (d) none of those choices are possible?

6. Define the average density of the solar system ρ_{SS} as the total mass of the Sun, planets, satellites, rings, asteroids, icy outliers, and comets, divided by the volume of a sphere around the Sun large enough to contain all these objects. The sphere extends about halfway to the nearest star, with a radius of approximately 2×10^{16} m, about two light-years. How does this average density of the solar system compare with the critical density ρ_c required for the Universe to stop its Hubble's-law expansion? (a) ρ_{SS} is much greater than ρ_c. (b) ρ_{SS} is approximately or precisely equal to ρ_c. (c) ρ_{SS} is much less than ρ_c. (d) It is impossible to determine.

7. When an electron and a positron meet at low speed in empty space, they annihilate each other to produce two 0.511-MeV gamma rays. What law would be violated if they produced one gamma ray with an energy of 1.02 MeV? (a) conservation of energy (b) conservation of momentum (c) conservation of charge (d) conservation of baryon number (e) conservation of electron lepton number

8. Place the following events into the correct sequence from the earliest in the history of the Universe to the latest. (a) Neutral atoms form. (b) Protons and neutrons are no longer annihilated as fast as they form. (c) The Universe is a quark–gluon soup. (d) The Universe is like the core of a normal star today, forming helium by nuclear fusion. (e) The Universe is like the surface of a hot star today, consisting of a plasma of ionized atoms. (f) Polyatomic molecules form. (g) Solid materials form.

Conceptual Questions

1. denotes answer available in *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

1. The W and Z bosons were first produced at CERN in 1983 by causing a beam of protons and a beam of antiprotons to meet at high energy. Why was this discovery important?

2. What are the differences between hadrons and leptons?

3. Neutral atoms did not exist until hundreds of thousands of years after the Big Bang. Why?

4. Describe the properties of baryons and mesons and the important differences between them.

5. The Ξ^0 particle decays by the weak interaction according to the decay mode $\Xi^0 \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \pi^0$. Would you expect this decay to be fast or slow? Explain.

6. In the theory of quantum chromodynamics, quarks come in three colors. How would you justify the statement that "all baryons and mesons are colorless"?

7. An antibaryon interacts with a meson. Can a baryon be produced in such an interaction? Explain.

8. Describe the essential features of the Standard Model of particle physics.

9. How many quarks are in each of the following: (a) a baryon, (b) an antibaryon, (c) a meson, (d) an antimeson? (e) How do you explain that baryons have half-integral spins, whereas mesons have spins of 0 or 1?

10. Are the laws of conservation of baryon number, lepton number, and strangeness based on fundamental properties of nature (as are the laws of conservation of momentum and energy, for example)? Explain.

11. Name the four fundamental interactions and the field particle that mediates each.

12. How did Edwin Hubble determine in 1928 that the Universe is expanding?

13. Kaons all decay into final states that contain no protons or neutrons. What is the baryon number for kaons?

Problems

ENHANCED WebAssign The problems found in this chapter may be assigned online in Enhanced WebAssign

1. straightforward; **2.** intermediate; **3.** challenging

1. full solution available in the *Student Solutions Manual/Study Guide*

AMT Analysis Model tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

GP Guided Problem

M Master It tutorial available in Enhanced WebAssign

W Watch It video solution available in Enhanced WebAssign

Section 46.1 The Fundamental Forces in Nature

Section 46.2 Positrons and Other Antiparticles

1. Model a penny as 3.10 g of pure copper. Consider an anti-penny minted from 3.10 g of copper anti-atoms, each with 29 positrons in orbit around a nucleus comprising 29 antiprotons and 34 or 36 antineutrons. (a) Find the energy released if the two coins collide. (b) Find the value of this energy at the unit price of \$0.11/kWh, a representative retail rate for energy from the electric company.

2. Two photons are produced when a proton and an antiproton annihilate each other. In the reference frame in which the center of mass of the proton–antiproton system is stationary, what are (a) the minimum frequency and (b) the corresponding wavelength of each photon?

3. A photon produces a proton–antiproton pair according to the reaction $\gamma \rightarrow p + \bar{p}$. (a) What is the minimum possible frequency of the photon? (b) What is its wavelength?

4. At some time in your life, you may find yourself in a hospital to have a PET, or positron-emission tomography, scan. In the procedure, a radioactive element that undergoes e^+ decay is introduced into your body. The equipment detects the gamma rays that result from pair annihilation when the emitted positron encounters an electron in your body's tissue. During such a scan, suppose you receive an injection of glucose containing on the order of 10^{10} atoms of ^{14}O, with half-life 70.6 s. Assume the oxygen remaining after 5 min is uniformly distributed through 2 L of blood. What is then the order of magnitude of the oxygen atoms' activity in 1 cm^3 of the blood?

5. M A photon with an energy $E_\gamma = 2.09$ GeV creates a proton–antiproton pair in which the proton has a kinetic energy of 95.0 MeV. What is the kinetic energy of the antiproton? *Note:* $m_p c^2 = 938.3$ MeV.

Section 46.3 Mesons and the Beginning of Particle Physics

6. One mediator of the weak interaction is the Z^0 boson, with mass 91 GeV/c^2. Use this information to find the order of magnitude of the range of the weak interaction.

7. (a) Prove that the exchange of a virtual particle of mass m can be associated with a force with a range given by

$$d \approx \frac{1\,240}{4\pi mc^2} = \frac{98.7}{mc^2}$$

where d is in nanometers and mc^2 is in electron volts. (b) State the pattern of dependence of the range on the mass. (c) What is the range of the force that might be produced by the virtual exchange of a proton?

Section 46.4 Classification of Particles

Section 46.5 Conservation Laws

8. The first of the following two reactions can occur, but the second cannot. Explain.

$$K^0_S \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^- \quad \text{(can occur)}$$

$$\Lambda^0 \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^- \quad \text{(cannot occur)}$$

9. A neutral pion at rest decays into two photons according to $\pi^0 \rightarrow \gamma + \gamma$. Find the (a) energy, (b) momentum, and (c) frequency of each photon.

10. When a high-energy proton or pion traveling near the speed of light collides with a nucleus, it travels an average distance of 3×10^{-15} m before interacting. From this information, find the order of magnitude of the time interval required for the strong interaction to occur.

11. Each of the following reactions is forbidden. Determine what conservation laws are violated for each reaction.

(a) $p + \bar{p} \rightarrow \mu^+ + e^-$

(b) $\pi^- + p \rightarrow p + \pi^+$

(c) $p + p \rightarrow p + p + n$

(d) $\gamma + p \rightarrow n + \pi^0$

(e) $\nu_e + p \rightarrow n + e^+$

12. (a) Show that baryon number and charge are conserved in the following reactions of a pion with a proton:

$$(1) \quad \pi^+ + p \rightarrow K^+ + \Sigma^+$$

$$(2) \quad \pi^+ + p \rightarrow \pi^+ + \Sigma^+$$

(b) The first reaction is observed, but the second never occurs. Explain.

13. The following reactions or decays involve one or more neutrinos. In each case, supply the missing neutrino (ν_e, ν_μ, or ν_τ) or antineutrino.

(a) $\pi^- \rightarrow \mu^- + ?$ (b) $K^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + ?$

(c) $? + p \rightarrow n + e^+$ (d) $? + n \rightarrow p + e^-$

(e) $? + n \rightarrow p + \mu^-$ (f) $\mu^- \rightarrow e^- + ? + ?$

14. Determine the type of neutrino or antineutrino involved in each of the following processes.

(a) $\pi^+ \rightarrow \pi^0 + e^+ + ?$ (b) $? + p \rightarrow \mu^- + p + \pi^+$

(c) $\Lambda^0 \rightarrow p + \mu^- + ?$ (d) $\tau^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + ? + ?$

15. Determine which of the following reactions can occur. For those that cannot occur, determine the conservation law (or laws) violated.

(a) $p \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^0$ (b) $p + p \rightarrow p + p + \pi^0$

(c) $p + p \rightarrow p + \pi^+$ (d) $\pi^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + \nu_\mu$

(e) $n \rightarrow p + e^- + \bar{\nu}_e$ (f) $\pi^+ \rightarrow \mu^+ + n$

16. Occasionally, high-energy muons collide with electrons and produce two neutrinos according to the reaction $\mu^+ + e^- \rightarrow 2\nu$. What kind of neutrinos are they?

17. A K^0_S particle at rest decays into a π^+ and a π^-. The mass of the K^0_S is 497.7 MeV/c^2, and the mass of each π meson is 139.6 MeV/c^2. What is the speed of each pion?

18. (a) Show that the proton-decay $p \rightarrow e^+ + \gamma$ cannot occur because it violates the conservation of baryon number. (b) **What If?** Imagine that this reaction does occur and the proton is initially at rest. Determine the energies and magnitudes of the momentum of the positron and photon after the reaction. (c) Determine the speed of the positron after the reaction.

19. A Λ^0 particle at rest decays into a proton and a π^- meson. (a) Use the data in Table 46.2 to find the Q value for this decay in MeV. (b) What is the total kinetic energy shared by the proton and the π^- meson after the decay? (c) What is the total momentum shared by the proton and the π^- meson? (d) The proton and the π^- meson have momenta with the same magnitude after the decay. Do they have equal kinetic energies? Explain.

Section 46.6 Strange Particles and Strangeness

20. The neutral meson ρ^0 decays by the strong interaction into two pions:

$$\rho^0 \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^- \quad (T_{1/2} \sim 10^{-23}\text{ s})$$

The neutral kaon also decays into two pions:

$$K^0_S \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^- \quad (T_{1/2} \sim 10^{-10}\text{ s})$$

How do you explain the difference in half-lives?

21. Which of the following processes are allowed by the strong interaction, the electromagnetic interaction, the weak interaction, or no interaction at all?

(a) $\pi^- + p \rightarrow 2\eta$ (b) $K^- + n \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \pi^-$

(c) $K^- \rightarrow \pi^- + \pi^0$ (d) $\Omega^- \rightarrow \Xi^- + \pi^0$

(e) $\eta \rightarrow 2\gamma$

22. For each of the following forbidden decays, determine what conservation laws are violated.

(a) $\mu^- \rightarrow e^- + \gamma$ (b) $n \rightarrow p + e^- + \nu_e$

(c) $\Lambda^0 \rightarrow p + \pi^0$ (d) $p \rightarrow e^+ + \pi^0$

(e) $\Xi^0 \rightarrow n + \pi^0$

23. Fill in the missing particle. Assume reaction (a) occurs via the strong interaction and reactions (b) and (c) involve the weak interaction. Assume also the total strangeness changes by one unit if strangeness is not conserved.

(a) $K^+ + p \rightarrow ? + p$ (c) $K^+ \rightarrow ? + \mu^+ + \nu_\mu$

(b) $\Omega^- \rightarrow ? + \pi^-$

24. Identify the conserved quantities in the following processes.

(a) $\Xi^- \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \mu^- + \nu_\mu$ (b) $K_S^0 \rightarrow 2\pi^0$

(c) $K^- + p \rightarrow \Sigma^0 + n$ (d) $\Sigma^0 \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \gamma$

(e) $e^+ + e^- \rightarrow \mu^+ + \mu^-$ (f) $\overline{p} + n \rightarrow \overline{\Lambda^0} + \Sigma^-$

(g) Which reactions cannot occur? Why not?

25. Determine whether or not strangeness is conserved in the following decays and reactions.

(a) $\Lambda^0 \rightarrow p + \pi^-$ (b) $\pi^- + p \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + K^0$

(c) $\overline{p} + p \rightarrow \overline{\Lambda^0} + \Lambda^0$ (d) $\pi^- + p \rightarrow \pi^- + \Sigma^+$

(e) $\Xi^- \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \pi^-$ (f) $\Xi^0 \rightarrow p + \pi^-$

26. GP The particle decay $\Sigma^+ \rightarrow \pi^+ + n$ is observed in a bubble chamber. Figure P46.26 represents the curved tracks of the particles Σ^+ and π^+ and the invisible track of the neutron in the presence of a uniform magnetic field of 1.15 T directed out of the page. The measured radii of curvature are 1.99 m for the Σ^+ particle and 0.580 m for the π^+ particle. From this information, we wish to determine the mass of the Σ^+ particle. (a) Find the magnitudes of the momenta of the Σ^+ and the π^+ particles in units of MeV/c. (b) The angle between the momenta of the Σ^+ and the π^+ particles at the moment of decay is $\theta = 64.5°$. Find the magnitude of the momentum of the neutron. (c) Calculate the total energy of the π^+ particle and of the neutron from their known masses ($m_\pi = 139.6$ MeV/c^2, $m_n = 939.6$ MeV/c^2) and the relativistic energy–momentum relation. (d) What is the total energy of the Σ^+ particle? (e) Calculate the mass of the Σ^+ particle. (f) Compare the mass with the value in Table 46.2.

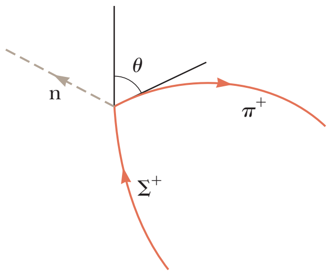


Figure P46.26

27. M If a K_S^0 meson at rest decays in 0.900×10^{-10} s, how far does a K_S^0 meson travel if it is moving at $0.960c$?

Section 46.7 Finding Patterns in the Particles

Section 46.8 Quarks

Section 46.9 Multicolored Quarks

Section 46.10 The Standard Model

Problem 89 in Chapter 39 can be assigned with Section 46.10.

28. The quark compositions of the K^0 and Λ^0 particles are $d\overline{s}$ and uds, respectively. Show that the charge, baryon number, and strangeness of these particles equal the sums of these numbers for the quark constituents.

29. The reaction $\pi^- + p \rightarrow K^0 + \Lambda^0$ occurs with high probability, whereas the reaction $\pi^- + p \rightarrow K^0 + n$ never occurs. Analyze these reactions at the quark level. Show that the first reaction conserves the total number of each type of quark and the second reaction does not.

30. Identify the particles corresponding to the quark states (a) suu, (b) $\overline{u}d$, (c) $\overline{s}d$, and (d) ssd.

31. The quark composition of the proton is uud, whereas that of the neutron is udd. Show that the charge, baryon number, and strangeness of these particles equal the sums of these numbers for their quark constituents.

32. Analyze each of the following reactions in terms of constituent quarks and show that each type of quark is conserved. (a) $\pi^+ + p \rightarrow K^+ + \Sigma^+$ (b) $K^- + p \rightarrow K^+ + K^0 + \Omega^-$ (c) Determine the quarks in the final particle for this reaction: $p + p \rightarrow K^0 + p + \pi^+ + ?$ (d) In the reaction in part (c), identify the mystery particle.

33. What is the electrical charge of the baryons with the quark compositions (a) $\overline{u}\,\overline{u}\,\overline{d}$ and (b) $\overline{u}\,\overline{d}\,\overline{d}$ (c) What are these baryons called?

34. M Find the number of electrons, and of each species of quark, in 1 L of water.

35. A Σ^0 particle traveling through matter strikes a proton; then a Σ^+ and a gamma ray as well as a third particle emerge. Use the quark model of each to determine the identity of the third particle.

36. **What If?** Imagine that binding energies could be ignored. Find the masses of the u and d quarks from the masses of the proton and neutron.

Section 46.11 The Cosmic Connection

Problem 21 in Chapter 39 can be assigned with this section.

37. **Review.** Refer to Section 39.4. Prove that the Doppler shift in wavelength of electromagnetic waves is described by

$$\lambda' = \lambda\sqrt{\frac{1 + v/c}{1 - v/c}}$$

where λ' is the wavelength measured by an observer moving at speed v away from a source radiating waves of wavelength λ.

38. Gravitation and other forces prevent Hubble's-law expansion from taking place except in systems larger than clusters of galaxies. **What If?** Imagine that these forces could be ignored and all distances expanded at a rate described by the Hubble constant of 22×10^{-3} m/(s · ly). (a) At what rate would the 1.85-m height of a basketball player be increasing? (b) At what rate would the distance between the Earth and the Moon be increasing?

39. **Review.** The cosmic background radiation is blackbody radiation from a source at a temperature of 2.73 K.

(a) Use Wien's law to determine the wavelength at which this radiation has its maximum intensity. (b) In what part of the electromagnetic spectrum is the peak of the distribution?

40. Assume dark matter exists throughout space with a uniform density of 6.00×10^{-28} kg/m^3. (a) Find the amount of such dark matter inside a sphere centered on the Sun, having the Earth's orbit as its equator. (b) Explain whether the gravitational field of this dark matter would have a measurable effect on the Earth's revolution.

41. The early Universe was dense with gamma-ray photons of energy $\sim k_B T$ and at such a high temperature that protons and antiprotons were created by the process $\gamma \rightarrow \text{p} + \overline{\text{p}}$ as rapidly as they annihilated each other. As the Universe cooled in adiabatic expansion, its temperature fell below a certain value and proton pair production became rare. At that time, slightly more protons than antiprotons existed, and essentially all the protons in the Universe today date from that time. (a) Estimate the order of magnitude of the temperature of the Universe when protons condensed out. (b) Estimate the order of magnitude of the temperature of the Universe when electrons condensed out.

42. If the average density of the Universe is small compared with the critical density, the expansion of the Universe described by Hubble's law proceeds with speeds that are nearly constant over time. (a) Prove that in this case the age of the Universe is given by the inverse of the Hubble constant. (b) Calculate $1/H$ and express it in years.

43. **Review.** A star moving away from the Earth at $0.280c$ emits radiation that we measure to be most intense at the wavelength 500 nm. Determine the surface temperature of this star.

44. **Review.** Use Stefan's law to find the intensity of the cosmic background radiation emitted by the fireball of the Big Bang at a temperature of 2.73 K.

45. M The first quasar to be identified and the brightest found to date, 3C 273 in the constellation Virgo, was observed to be moving away from the Earth at such high speed that the observed blue 434-nm H_γ line of hydrogen is Doppler-shifted to 510 nm, in the green portion of the spectrum. (a) How fast is the quasar receding? (b) Edwin Hubble discovered that all objects outside the local group of galaxies are moving away from us, with speeds v proportional to their distances R. Hubble's law is expressed as $v = HR$, where the Hubble constant has the approximate value $H \approx 22 \times 10^{-3}$ m/(s · ly). Determine the distance from the Earth to this quasar.

46. The various spectral lines observed in the light from a distant quasar have longer wavelengths λ'_n than the wavelengths λ_n measured in light from a stationary source. Here n is an index taking different values for different spectral lines. The fractional change in wavelength toward the red is the same for all spectral lines. That is, the Doppler redshift parameter Z defined by

$$Z = \frac{\lambda'_n - \lambda_n}{\lambda_n}$$

is common to all spectral lines for one object. In terms of Z, use Hubble's law to determine (a) the speed of recession of the quasar and (b) the distance from the Earth to this quasar.

47. W Using Hubble's law, find the wavelength of the 590-nm sodium line emitted from galaxies (a) 2.00×10^6 ly, (b) 2.00×10^8 ly, and (c) 2.00×10^9 ly away from the Earth.

48. The visible section of the Universe is a sphere centered on the bridge of your nose, with radius 13.7 billion light-years. (a) Explain why the visible Universe is getting larger, with its radius increasing by one light-year in every year. (b) Find the rate at which the volume of the visible section of the Universe is increasing.

49. In Section 13.6, we discussed dark matter along with one proposal for the origin of dark matter: WIMPs, or *weakly interacting massive particles.* Another proposal is that dark matter consists of large planet-sized objects, called MACHOs, or *massive astrophysical compact halo objects,* that drift through interstellar space and are not bound to a solar system. Whether WIMPs or MACHOs, suppose astronomers perform theoretical calculations and determine the average density of the observable Universe to be $1.20\rho_c$. If this value were correct, how many times larger will the Universe become before it begins to collapse? That is, by what factor will the distance between remote galaxies increase in the future?

Section 46.12 Problems and Perspectives

50. Classical general relativity views the structure of space–time as deterministic and well defined down to arbitrarily small distances. On the other hand, quantum general relativity forbids distances smaller than the Planck length given by $L = (\hbar G/c^3)^{1/2}$. (a) Calculate the value of the Planck length. The quantum limitation suggests that after the Big Bang, when all the presently observable section of the Universe was contained within a point-like singularity, nothing could be observed until that singularity grew larger than the Planck length. Because the size of the singularity grew at the speed of light, we can infer that no observations were possible during the time interval required for light to travel the Planck length. (b) Calculate this time interval, known as the Planck time T, and state how it compares with the ultrahot epoch mentioned in the text.

Additional Problems

51. For each of the following decays or reactions, name at least one conservation law that prevents it from occurring.

(a) $\pi^- + \text{p} \rightarrow \Sigma^+ + \pi^0$

(b) $\mu^- \rightarrow \pi^- + \nu_e$

(c) $\text{p} \rightarrow \pi^+ + \pi^+ + \pi^-$

52. Identify the unknown particle on the left side of the following reaction:

53. Assume that the half-life of free neutrons is 614 s. What fraction of a group of free thermal neutrons with kinetic energy 0.040 0 eV will decay before traveling a distance of 10.0 km?

54. *Why is the following situation impossible?* A gamma-ray photon with energy 1.05 MeV strikes a stationary elec tron, causing the following reaction to occur:

Assume all three final particles move with the same speed in the same direction after the reaction.

55. **Review.** Supernova Shelton 1987A, located approxi mately 170 000 ly from the Earth, is estimated to have emitted a burst of neutrinos carrying energy (Fig. P46.55). Suppose the average neutrino energy was 6 MeV and your mother's body presented cross-sectional area 5 000 cm . To an order of magnitude, how many of these neutrinos passed through her?

Australian Astronomical Observatory, photography by David Malin from AAT Plates

Figure P46.55 Problems 55 and 72.

The energy flux carried by neutrinos from the Sun is estimated to be on the order of 0.400 W/m at the Earth's surface. Estimate the fractional mass loss of the Sun over 10 yr due to the emission of neutrinos. The mass of the Sun is 1.989 kg. The Earth–Sun distance is equal to 1.496

57. Hubble's law can be stated in vector form as . Outside the local group of galaxies, all objects are moving away from us with velocities proportional to their positions relative to us. In this form, it sounds as if our location in the Universe is specially privileged. Prove that Hubble's law is equally true for an observer elsewhere in the Universe. Proceed as follows. Assume we are at the origin of coordinates, one galaxy cluster is at location and has velocity relative to us, and another galaxy cluster has position vector and velocity Suppose the speeds are nonrelativistic. Consider the frame of reference of an observer in the first of these galaxy clusters. (a) Show that our velocity relative to her, together with the posi tion vector of our galaxy cluster from hers, satisfies Hubble's law. (b) Show that the position and velocity of cluster 2 relative to cluster 1 satisfy Hubble's law.

58. meson at rest decays according to $\rightarrow$ $^{-}$. Assume the antineutrino has no mass and moves off with the speed of light. Take 139.6 MeV and 105.7 MeV. What is the energy carried off by the neutrino?

59. AMT An unstable particle, initially at rest, decays into a proton (rest energy 938.3 MeV) and a negative pion (rest energy 139.6 MeV). A uniform magnetic field of 0.250 T exists perpendicular to the velocities of the created particles. The radius of curvature of each track is found to be 1.33 m. What is the mass of the original unstable particle?

60. An unstable particle, initially at rest, decays into a pos itively charged particle of charge and rest energy and a negatively charged particle of charge and rest energy . A uniform magnetic field of magnitude exists perpendicular to the velocities of the created particles. The radius of curvature of each track is What is the mass of the original unstable particle?

61. (a) What processes are described by the Feynman dia grams in Figure P46.61? (b) What is the exchanged particle in each process?

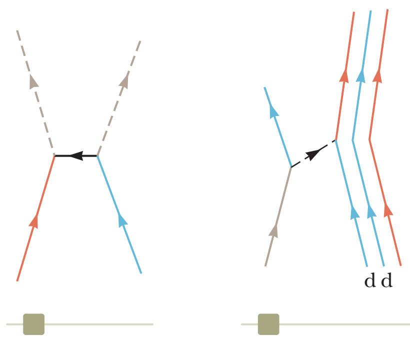


Figure P46.61

62. Identify the mediators for the two interactions described in the Feynman diagrams shown in Figure P46.62.

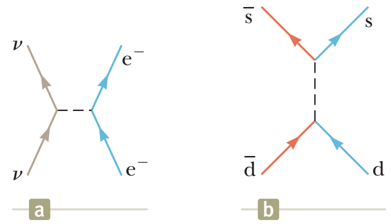


Figure P46.62

63. **Review.** The energy required to excite an atom is on the order of 1 eV. As the temperature of the Universe dropped below a threshold, neutral atoms could form from plasma and the Universe became transparent. Use the Boltzmann distribution function e^{-E/k_BT} to find the order of magnitude of the threshold temperature at which 1.00% of a population of photons has energy greater than 1.00 eV.

64. A Σ^0 particle at rest decays according to $\Sigma^0 \rightarrow \Lambda^0 + \gamma$. Find the gamma-ray energy.

65. Two protons approach each other head-on, each with 70.4 MeV of kinetic energy, and engage in a reaction in which a proton and positive pion emerge at rest. What third particle, obviously uncharged and therefore difficult to detect, must have been created?

66. Two protons approach each other with velocities of equal magnitude in opposite directions. What is the minimum kinetic energy of each proton if the two are to produce a π^+ meson at rest in the reaction $p + p \rightarrow p + n + \pi^+$?

Challenge Problems

67. Determine the kinetic energies of the proton and pion resulting from the decay of a Λ^0 at rest:

$$\Lambda^0 \rightarrow p + \pi^-$$

68. A particle of mass m_1 is fired at a stationary particle of mass m_2, and a reaction takes place in which new particles are created out of the incident kinetic energy. Taken together, the product particles have total mass m_3. The minimum kinetic energy the bombarding particle must have so as to induce the reaction is called the threshold energy. At this energy, the kinetic energy of the products is a minimum, so the fraction of the incident kinetic energy that is available to create new particles is a maximum. This condition is met when all the product particles have the same velocity and the particles have no kinetic energy of motion relative to one another. (a) By using conservation of relativistic energy and momentum and the relativistic energy–momentum relation, show that the threshold kinetic energy is

$$K_{\min} = \frac{[m_3{}^2 - (m_1 + m_2)^2]c^2}{2m_2}$$

Calculate the threshold kinetic energy for each of the following reactions: (b) $p + p \rightarrow p + p + p + \bar{p}$ (one of the initial protons is at rest, and antiprotons are produced); (c) $\pi^- + p \rightarrow K^0 + \Lambda^0$ (the proton is at rest, and strange particles are produced); (d) $p + p \rightarrow p + p + \pi^0$ (one of the initial protons is at rest, and pions are produced); and (e) $p + \bar{p} \rightarrow Z^0$ (one of the initial particles is at rest, and Z^0 particles of mass 91.2 GeV/c^2 are produced).

69. W A free neutron beta decays by creating a proton, an electron, and an antineutrino according to the reaction $n \rightarrow p + e^- + \bar{\nu}$. **What If?** Imagine that a free neutron were to decay by creating a proton and electron according to the reaction $n \rightarrow p + e^-$ and assume the neutron is initially at rest in the laboratory. (a) Determine the energy released in this reaction. (b) Energy and momentum are conserved in the reaction. Determine the speeds of the proton and the electron after the reaction. (c) Is either of these particles moving at a relativistic speed? Explain.

70. The cosmic rays of highest energy are mostly protons, accelerated by unknown sources. Their spectrum shows a cutoff at an energy on the order of 10^{20} eV. Above that energy, a proton interacts with a photon of cosmic microwave background radiation to produce mesons, for example, according to $p + \gamma \rightarrow p + \pi^0$. Demonstrate this fact by taking the following steps. (a) Find the minimum photon energy required to produce this reaction in the reference frame where the total momentum of the photon–proton system is zero. The reaction was observed experimentally in the 1950s with photons of a few hundred MeV. (b) Use Wien's displacement law to find the wavelength of a photon at the peak of the blackbody spectrum of the primordial microwave background radiation, with a temperature of 2.73 K. (c) Find the energy of this photon. (d) Consider the reaction in part (a) in a moving reference frame so that the photon is the same as that in part (c). Calculate the energy of the proton in this frame, which represents the Earth reference frame.

71. Assume the average density of the Universe is equal to the critical density. (a) Prove that the age of the Universe is given by $2/(3H)$. (b) Calculate $2/(3H)$ and express it in years.

72. The most recent naked-eye supernova was Supernova Shelton 1987A (Fig. P46.55). It was 170 000 ly away in the Large Magellanic Cloud, a satellite galaxy of the Milky Way. Approximately 3 h before its optical brightening was noticed, two neutrino detection experiments simultaneously registered the first neutrinos from an identified source other than the Sun. The Irvine–Michigan–Brookhaven experiment in a salt mine in Ohio registered eight neutrinos over a 6-s period, and the Kamiokande II experiment in a zinc mine in Japan counted eleven neutrinos in 13 s. (Because the supernova is far south in the sky, these neutrinos entered the detectors from below. They passed through the Earth before they were by chance absorbed by nuclei in the detectors.) The neutrino energies were between approximately 8 MeV and

40 MeV. If neutrinos have no mass, neutrinos of all energies should travel together at the speed of light, and the data are consistent with this possibility. The arrival times could vary simply because neutrinos were created at different moments as the core of the star collapsed into a neutron star. If neutrinos have nonzero mass, lower-energy neutrinos should move comparatively slowly. The data are consistent with a 10-MeV neutrino requiring at most approximately 10 s more than a photon would require to travel from the supernova to us. Find the upper limit that this observation sets on the mass of a neutrino. (Other evidence sets an even tighter limit.)

73. A rocket engine for space travel using photon drive and matter–antimatter annihilation has been suggested. Suppose the fuel for a short-duration burn consists of N protons and N antiprotons, each with mass m. (a) Assume all the fuel is annihilated to produce photons. When the photons are ejected from the rocket, what momentum can be imparted to it? (b) **What If?** If half the protons and antiprotons annihilate each other and the energy released is used to eject the remaining particles, what momentum could be given to the rocket? (c) Which scheme results in the greater change in speed for the rocket?

APPENDIX A

Tables

Table A.1 Conversion Factors

Length

	m	cm	km	in.	ft	mi
1 meter	1	10^{2}	10^{-3}	39.37	3.281	6.214×10^{-4}
1 centimeter	10^{-2}	1	10^{-5}	0.393 7	3.281×10^{-2}	6.214×10^{-6}
1 kilometer	10^{3}	10^{5}	1	3.937×10^{4}	3.281×10^{3}	0.621 4
1 inch	2.540×10^{-2}	2.540	2.540×10^{-5}	1	8.333×10^{-2}	1.578×10^{-5}
1 foot	0.304 8	30.48	3.048×10^{-4}	12	1	1.894×10^{-4}
1 mile	1 609	1.609×10^{5}	1.609	6.336×10^{4}	5 280	1

Mass

	kg	g	slug	u
1 kilogram	1	10^{3}	6.852×10^{-2}	6.024×10^{26}
1 gram	10^{-3}	1	6.852×10^{-5}	6.024×10^{23}
1 slug	14.59	1.459×10^{4}	1	8.789×10^{27}
1 atomic mass unit	1.660×10^{-27}	1.660×10^{-24}	1.137×10^{-28}	1

Note: 1 metric ton = 1 000 kg.

Time

	s	min	h	day	yr
1 second	1	1.667×10^{-2}	2.778×10^{-4}	1.157×10^{-5}	3.169×10^{-8}
1 minute	60	1	1.667×10^{-2}	6.994×10^{-4}	1.901×10^{-6}
1 hour	3 600	60	1	4.167×10^{-2}	1.141×10^{-4}
1 day	8.640×10^{4}	1 440	24	1	2.738×10^{-5}
1 year	3.156×10^{7}	5.259×10^{5}	8.766×10^{3}	365.2	1

Speed

	m/s	cm/s	ft/s	mi/h
1 meter per second	1	10^{2}	3.281	2.237
1 centimeter per second	10^{-2}	1	3.281×10^{-2}	2.237×10^{-2}
1 foot per second	0.304 8	30.48	1	0.681 8
1 mile per hour	0.447 0	44.70	1.467	1

Note: 1 mi/min = 60 mi/h = 88 ft/s.

Force

	N	lb
1 newton	1	0.224 8
1 pound	4.448	1

(Continued)

Table A.1 Conversion Factors *(continued)*

Energy, Energy Transfer

	J	ft · lb	eV
1 joule	1	0.737 6	6.242×10^{18}
1 foot-pound	1.356	1	8.464×10^{18}
1 electron volt	1.602×10^{-19}	1.182×10^{-19}	1
1 calorie	4.186	3.087	2.613×10^{19}
1 British thermal unit	1.055×10^{3}	7.779×10^{2}	6.585×10^{21}
1 kilowatt-hour	3.600×10^{6}	2.655×10^{6}	2.247×10^{25}

	cal	Btu	kWh
1 joule	0.238 9	9.481×10^{-4}	2.778×10^{-7}
1 foot-pound	0.323 9	1.285×10^{-3}	3.766×10^{-7}
1 electron volt	3.827×10^{-20}	1.519×10^{-22}	4.450×10^{-26}
1 calorie	1	3.968×10^{-3}	1.163×10^{-6}
1 British thermal unit	2.520×10^{2}	1	2.930×10^{-4}
1 kilowatt-hour	8.601×10^{5}	3.413×10^{2}	1

Pressure

	Pa	atm
1 pascal	1	9.869×10^{-6}
1 atmosphere	1.013×10^{5}	1
1 centimeter mercury[a]	1.333×10^{3}	1.316×10^{-2}
1 pound per square inch	6.895×10^{3}	6.805×10^{-2}
1 pound per square foot	47.88	4.725×10^{-4}

	cm Hg	lb/in.^{2}	lb/ft^2
1 pascal	7.501×10^{-4}	1.450×10^{-4}	2.089×10^{-2}
1 atmosphere	76	14.70	2.116×10^{3}
1 centimeter mercury[a]	1	0.194 3	27.85
1 pound per square inch	5.171	1	144
1 pound per square foot	3.591×10^{-2}	6.944×10^{-3}	1

[a]At 0°C and at a location where the free-fall acceleration has its "standard" value, 9.806 65 m/s^2.

Table A.2 Symbols, Dimensions, and Units of Physical Quantities

Quantity	Common Symbol	Unit[a]	Dimensions[b]	Unit in Terms of Base SI Units
Acceleration	$\vec{\mathbf{a}}$	m/s^2	L/T^2	m/s^2
Amount of substance	n	MOLE		mol
Angle	θ, ϕ	radian (rad)	1	
Angular acceleration	$\vec{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$	rad/s^2	T^{-2}	s^{-2}
Angular frequency	ω	rad/s	T^{-1}	s^{-1}
Angular momentum	$\vec{\mathbf{L}}$	kg · m^2/s	ML^2/T	kg · m^2/s
Angular velocity	$\vec{\boldsymbol{\omega}}$	rad/s	T^{-1}	s^{-1}
Area	A	m^2	L^2	m^2
Atomic number	Z			
Capacitance	C	farad (F)	Q^{2}T^2/ML^2	A^2 · s^4/kg · m^2
Charge	q, Q, e	coulomb (C)	Q	A · s

(Continued)

Table A.2 Symbols, Dimensions, and Units of Physical Quantities *(continued)*

Quantity	Common Symbol	Unit[a]	Dimensions[b]	Unit in Terms of Base SI Units
Charge density				
Line	λ	C/m	Q/L	A · s/m
Surface	σ	C/m^2	Q/L^2	A · s/m^2
Volume	ρ	C/m^3	Q/L^3	A · s/m^3
Conductivity	σ	1/Ω · m	Q^{2}T/ML^3	A^2 · s^3/kg · m^3
Current	I	AMPERE	Q/T	A
Current density	J	A/m^2	Q/TL^2	A/m^2
Density	ρ	kg/m^3	M/L^3	kg/m^3
Dielectric constant	κ			
Electric dipole moment	$\vec{\mathbf{p}}$	C · m	QL	A · s · m
Electric field	$\vec{\mathbf{E}}$	V/m	ML/QT^2	kg · m/A · s^3
Electric flux	Φ_E	V · m	ML^3/QT^2	kg · m^3/A · s^3
Electromotive force	$\mathcal{E}$	volt (V)	ML^2/QT^2	kg · m^2/A · s^3
Energy	E, U, K	joule (J)	ML^2/T^2	kg · m^2/s^2
Entropy	S	J/K	ML^2/T^{2}K	kg · m^2/s^2 · K
Force	$\vec{\mathbf{F}}$	newton (N)	ML/T^2	kg · m/s^2
Frequency	f	hertz (Hz)	T^{-1}	s^{-1}
Heat	Q	joule (J)	ML^2/T^2	kg · m^2/s^2
Inductance	L	henry (H)	ML^2/Q^2	kg · m^2/A^2 · s^2
Length	ℓ, L	METER	L	m
Displacement	$\Delta x, \Delta\vec{\mathbf{r}}$			
Distance	d, h			
Position	$x, y, z, \vec{\mathbf{r}}$			
Magnetic dipole moment	$\vec{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$	N · m/T	QL^2/T	A · m^2
Magnetic field	$\vec{\mathbf{B}}$	tesla (T) (= Wb/m^2)	M/QT	kg/A · s^2
Magnetic flux	Φ_B	weber (Wb)	ML^2/QT	kg · m^2/A · s^2
Mass	m, M	KILOGRAM	M	kg
Molar specific heat	C	J/mol · K		kg · m^2/s^2 · mol · K
Moment of inertia	I	kg · m^2	ML^2	kg · m^2
Momentum	$\vec{\mathbf{p}}$	kg · m/s	ML/T	kg · m/s
Period	T	s	T	s
Permeability of free space	μ_0	N/A^2 (= H/m)	ML/Q^2	kg · m/A^2 · s^2
Permittivity of free space	ϵ_0	C^2/N · m^2 (= F/m)	Q^{2}T^2/ML^3	A^2 · s^4/kg · m^3
Potential	V	volt (V)(= J/C)	ML^2/QT^2	kg · m^2/A · s^3
Power	P	watt (W)(= J/s)	ML^2/T^3	kg · m^2/s^3
Pressure	P	pascal (Pa)(= N/m^2)	M/LT^2	kg/m · s^2
Resistance	R	ohm (Ω)(= V/A)	ML^2/Q^{2}T	kg · m^2/A^2 · s^3
Specific heat	c	J/kg · K	L^2/T^{2}K	m^2/s^2 · K
Speed	v	m/s	L/T	m/s
Temperature	T	KELVIN	K	K
Time	t	SECOND	T	s
Torque	$\vec{\boldsymbol{\tau}}$	N · m	ML^2/T^2	kg · m^2/s^2
Velocity	$\vec{\mathbf{v}}$	m/s	L/T	m/s
Volume	V	m^3	L^3	m^3
Wavelength	λ	m	L	m
Work	W	joule (J)(= N · m)	ML^2/T^2	kg · m^2/s^2

[a]The base SI units are given in uppercase letters.

[b]The symbols M, L, T, K, and Q denote mass, length, time, temperature, and charge, respectively.

APPENDIX B

Mathematics Review

This appendix in mathematics is intended as a brief review of operations and methods. Early in this course, you should be totally familiar with basic algebraic techniques, analytic geometry, and trigonometry. The sections on differential and integral calculus are more detailed and are intended for students who have difficulty applying calculus concepts to physical situations.

B.1 Scientific Notation

Many quantities used by scientists often have very large or very small values. The speed of light, for example, is about 300 000 000 m/s, and the ink required to make the dot over an *i* in this textbook has a mass of about 0.000 000 001 kg. Obviously, it is very cumbersome to read, write, and keep track of such numbers. We avoid this problem by using a method incorporating powers of the number 10:

$$10^0 = 1$$
$$10^1 = 10$$
$$10^2 = 10 \times 10 = 100$$
$$10^3 = 10 \times 10 \times 10 = 1\,000$$
$$10^4 = 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 = 10\,000$$
$$10^5 = 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 = 100\,000$$

and so on. The number of zeros corresponds to the power to which ten is raised, called the **exponent** of ten. For example, the speed of light, 300 000 000 m/s, can be expressed as 3.00×10^8 m/s.

In this method, some representative numbers smaller than unity are the following:

$$10^{-1} = \frac{1}{10} = 0.1$$
$$10^{-2} = \frac{1}{10 \times 10} = 0.01$$
$$10^{-3} = \frac{1}{10 \times 10 \times 10} = 0.001$$
$$10^{-4} = \frac{1}{10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10} = 0.000\,1$$
$$10^{-5} = \frac{1}{10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10 \times 10} = 0.000\,01$$

In these cases, the number of places the decimal point is to the left of the digit 1 equals the value of the (negative) exponent. Numbers expressed as some power of ten multiplied by another number between one and ten are said to be in **scientific notation.** For example, the scientific notation for 5 943 000 000 is 5.943×10^9 and that for 0.000 083 2 is 8.32×10^{-5}.

When numbers expressed in scientific notation are being multiplied, the following general rule is very useful:

$$10^n \times 10^m = 10^{n+m} \tag{B.1}$$

where n and m can be *any* numbers (not necessarily integers). For example, $10^2 \times 10^5 = 10^7$. The rule also applies if one of the exponents is negative: $10^3 \times 10^{-8} = 10^{-5}$.

When dividing numbers expressed in scientific notation, note that

$$\frac{10^n}{10^m} = 10^n \times 10^{-m} = 10^{n-m} \tag{B.2}$$

Exercises

With help from the preceding rules, verify the answers to the following equations:

1. $86\,400 = 8.64 \times 10^4$
2. $9\,816\,762.5 = 9.816\,762\,5 \times 10^6$
3. $0.000\,000\,039\,8 = 3.98 \times 10^{-8}$
4. $(4.0 \times 10^8)(9.0 \times 10^9) = 3.6 \times 10^{18}$
5. $(3.0 \times 10^7)(6.0 \times 10^{-12}) = 1.8 \times 10^{-4}$
6. $\dfrac{75 \times 10^{-11}}{5.0 \times 10^{-3}} = 1.5 \times 10^{-7}$
7. $\dfrac{(3 \times 10^6)(8 \times 10^{-2})}{(2 \times 10^{17})(6 \times 10^5)} = 2 \times 10^{-18}$

B.2 Algebra

Some Basic Rules

When algebraic operations are performed, the laws of arithmetic apply. Symbols such as x, y, and z are usually used to represent unspecified quantities, called the **unknowns.**

First, consider the equation

$$8x = 32$$

If we wish to solve for x, we can divide (or multiply) each side of the equation by the same factor without destroying the equality. In this case, if we divide both sides by 8, we have

$$\frac{8x}{8} = \frac{32}{8}$$

$$x = 4$$

Next consider the equation

$$x + 2 = 8$$

In this type of expression, we can add or subtract the same quantity from each side. If we subtract 2 from each side, we have

$$x + 2 - 2 = 8 - 2$$

$$x = 6$$

In general, if $x + a = b$, then $x = b - a$.

Now consider the equation

$$\frac{x}{5} = 9$$

If we multiply each side by 5, we are left with x on the left by itself and 45 on the right:

$$\left(\frac{x}{5}\right)(5) = 9 \times 5$$
$$x = 45$$

In all cases, *whatever operation is performed on the left side of the equality must also be performed on the right side.*

The following rules for multiplying, dividing, adding, and subtracting fractions should be recalled, where a, b, c, and d are four numbers:

	Rule	Example
Multiplying	$\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)\left(\frac{c}{d}\right) = \frac{ac}{bd}$	$\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)\left(\frac{4}{5}\right) = \frac{8}{15}$
Dividing	$\frac{(a/b)}{(c/d)} = \frac{ad}{bc}$	$\frac{2/3}{4/5} = \frac{(2)(5)}{(4)(3)} = \frac{10}{12}$
Adding	$\frac{a}{b} \pm \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad \pm bc}{bd}$	$\frac{2}{3} - \frac{4}{5} = \frac{(2)(5) - (4)(3)}{(3)(5)} = -\frac{2}{15}$

Exercises

In the following exercises, solve for x.

	Answers
1. $a = \frac{1}{1 + x}$	$x = \frac{1 - a}{a}$
2. $3x - 5 = 13$	$x = 6$
3. $ax - 5 = bx + 2$	$x = \frac{7}{a - b}$
4. $\frac{5}{2x + 6} = \frac{3}{4x + 8}$	$x = -\frac{11}{7}$

Powers

When powers of a given quantity x are multiplied, the following rule applies:

$$x^n x^m = x^{n+m} \tag{B.3}$$

For example, $x^2x^4 = x^{2+4} = x^6$.

When dividing the powers of a given quantity, the rule is

$$\frac{x^n}{x^m} = x^{n-m} \tag{B.4}$$

For example, $x^8/x^2 = x^{8-2} = x^6$.

A power that is a fraction, such as $\frac{1}{3}$, corresponds to a root as follows:

$$x^{1/n} = \sqrt[n]{x} \tag{B.5}$$

For example, $4^{1/3} = \sqrt[3]{4} = 1.587\,4$. (A scientific calculator is useful for such calculations.)

Finally, any quantity x^n raised to the mth power is

$$(x^n)^m = x^{nm} \tag{B.6}$$

Table B.1 summarizes the rules of exponents.

Table B.1 Rules of Exponents

$$x^0 = 1$$
$$x^1 = x$$
$$x^n x^m = x^{n+m}$$
$$x^n/x^m = x^{n-m}$$
$$x^{1/n} = \sqrt[n]{x}$$
$$(x^n)^m = x^{nm}$$

Exercises

Verify the following equations:

1. $3^2 \times 3^3 = 243$

2. $x^5x^{-8} = x^{-3}$

3. $x^{10}/x^{-5} = x^{15}$

4. $5^{1/3} = 1.709\,976$ (Use your calculator.)

5. $60^{1/4} = 2.783\,158$ (Use your calculator.)

6. $(x^4)^3 = x^{12}$

Factoring

Some useful formulas for factoring an equation are the following:

$ax + ay + az = a(x + y + z)$ common factor

$a^2 + 2ab + b^2 = (a + b)^2$ perfect square

$a^2 - b^2 = (a + b)(a - b)$ differences of squares

Quadratic Equations

The general form of a quadratic equation is

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0 \tag{B.7}$$

where x is the unknown quantity and a, b, and c are numerical factors referred to as **coefficients** of the equation. This equation has two roots, given by

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} \tag{B.8}$$

If $b^2 \geq 4ac$, the roots are real.

Example B.1

The equation $x^2 + 5x + 4 = 0$ has the following roots corresponding to the two signs of the square-root term:

$$x = \frac{-5 \pm \sqrt{5^2 - (4)(1)(4)}}{2(1)} = \frac{-5 \pm \sqrt{9}}{2} = \frac{-5 \pm 3}{2}$$

$$x_+ = \frac{-5 + 3}{2} = \boxed{-1} \qquad x_- = \frac{-5 - 3}{2} = \boxed{-4}$$

where x_+ refers to the root corresponding to the positive sign and x_- refers to the root corresponding to the negative sign.

Exercises

Solve the following quadratic equations:

		Answers	
1.	$x^2 + 2x - 3 = 0$	$x_+ = 1$	$x_- = -3$
2.	$2x^2 - 5x + 2 = 0$	$x_+ = 2$	$x_- = \frac{1}{2}$
3.	$2x^2 - 4x - 9 = 0$	$x_+ = 1 + \sqrt{22}/2$	$x_- = 1 - \sqrt{22}/2$

Linear Equations

A linear equation has the general form

$$y = mx + b \tag{B.9}$$

where and are constants. This equation is referred to as linear because the graph of versus is a straight line as shown in Figure B.1. The constant , called the **-intercept,** represents the value of at which the straight line intersects the axis. The constant is equal to the **slope** of the straight line. If any two points on the straight line are specified by the coordinates ( ) and ( ) as in Figure B.1, the slope of the straight line can be expressed as

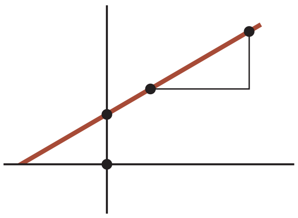


Figure B.1 A straight line graphed on an coordinate sys tem. The slope of the line is the ratio of to

Slope ———— —— **(B.10)**

Note that and can have either positive or negative values. If 0, the straight line has a *positive* slope as in Figure B.1. If 0, the straight line has a *negative* slope. In Figure B.1, both and are positive. Three other possible situations are shown in Figure B.2.

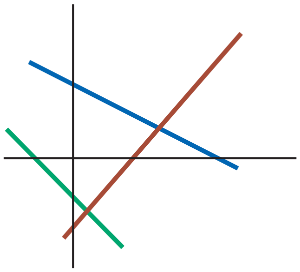


Figure B.2 The brown line has a positive slope and a negative intercept. The blue line has a negative slope and a positive -intercept. The green line has a negative slope and a negative -intercept.

Exercises

Draw graphs of the following straight lines: (a) 3 (b) (c)

2. Find the slopes of the straight lines described in Exercise 1.

Answers (a) 5 (b) 2 (c)

3. Find the slopes of the straight lines that pass through the following sets of points: (a) (0, 4) and (4, 2) (b) (0, 0) and (2, 5) (c) (5, 2) and (4,

Answers (a) (b) (c)

Solving Simultaneous Linear Equations

Consider the equation 3 = 15, which has two unknowns, and Such an equation does not have a unique solution. For example, (= 0, = 3), (= 5, 0), and 2,) are all solutions to this equation.

If a problem has two unknowns, a unique solution is possible only if we have *two* pieces of information. In most common cases, those two pieces of information are equations. In general, if a problem has unknowns, its solution requires equations. To solve two simultaneous equations involving two unknowns, and , we solve one of the equations for in terms of and substitute this expression into the other equation.

In some cases, the two pieces of information may be (1) one equation and (2) a condition on the solutions. For example, suppose we have the equation and the condition that and must be the smallest positive nonzero integers possible. Then, the single equation does not allow a unique solution, but the addition of the condition gives us that 1 and

Example B.2

Solve the two simultaneous equations

(1) $= -8$

(2) 4

SOLUTION

From Equation (2), 2. Substitution of this equation into Equation (1) gives

$$= -8$$

$$= -18$$

B.2

3

1

Alternative Solution Multiply each term in Equation (1) by the factor 2 and add the result to Equation (2):

$$10 \quad = -16$$
$$4$$
$$12 \quad = -12$$
$$1$$
$$3$$

Two linear equations containing two unknowns can also be solved by a graphi cal method. If the straight lines corresponding to the two equations are plotted in a conventional coordinate system, the intersection of the two lines represents the solution. For example, consider the two equations

$$2$$
$$= -1$$

These equations are plotted in Figure B.3. The intersection of the two lines has the coordinates 5 and = 3, which represents the solution to the equations. You should check this solution by the analytical technique discussed earlier.

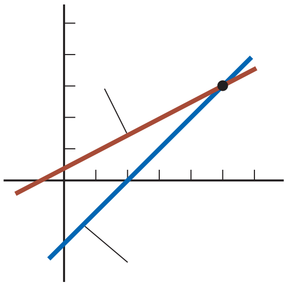


Figure B.3 A graphical solution for two linear equations.

Exercises

Solve the following pairs of simultaneous equations involving two unknowns:

	Answers
	5,
2.	65, 3.27
3.	2,

Logarithms

Suppose a quantity is expressed as a power of some quantity

(B.11)

The number is called the **base** number. The **logarithm** of with respect to the base is equal to the exponent to which the base must be raised to satisfy the expression

$$\log \qquad \textbf{(B.12)}$$

Conversely, the **antilogarithm** of is the number

$$\text{antilog} \qquad \textbf{(B.13)}$$

In practice, the two bases most often used are base 10, called the *common* loga rithm base, and base = 2.718 282, called Euler's constant or the *natural* logarithm base. When common logarithms are used,

$$\log_{10} \quad \text{or} \quad 10 \qquad \textbf{(B.14)}$$

When natural logarithms are used,

$$\ln \qquad \text{or} \tag{B.15}$$

For example, log = 1.716, so antilog 1.716 = $^{1.716}$ = 52. Likewise, ln 52 3.951, so antiln 3.951 $^{3.951}$52.

In general, note you can convert between base 10 and base with the equality

$$\ln \qquad 2.302\,585 \quad \log_{10} \tag{B.16}$$

Finally, some useful properties of logarithms are the following:

$$\begin{aligned} &\log\ ab \qquad \log \qquad \log \\ &\log \qquad\qquad \log \qquad \log \qquad \text{any base} \\ &\log \qquad\qquad \log \\ &\ln \\ &\ln \\ &\ln\ - \ = -\ln \end{aligned}$$

B.3 Geometry

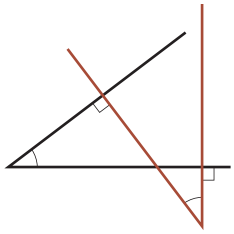


Figure B.4 The angles are equal because their sides are perpendicular.

The **distance** between two points having coordinates ( ) and ( ) is

$$\overline{\qquad\qquad\qquad} \tag{B.17}$$

Two angles are equal if their sides are perpendicular, right side to right side and left side to left side. For example, the two angles marked in Figure B.4 are the same because of the perpendicularity of the sides of the angles. To distinguish the left and right sides of an angle, imagine standing at the angle's apex and facing into the angle.

Radian measure: The arc length of a circular arc (Fig. B.5) is proportional to the radius for a fixed value of (in radians):

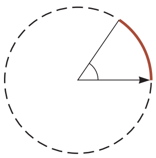


Figure B.5 The angle in radians is the ratio of the arc length to the radius of the circle.

$$\theta = - \tag{B.18}$$

Table B.2 gives the **areas** and **volumes** for several geometric shapes used throughout this text.

The equation of a **straight line** (Fig. B.6) is

$$mx \tag{B.19}$$

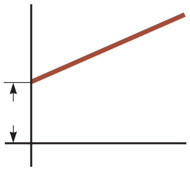


Figure B.6 A straight line with a slope of and a -intercept of

where is the -intercept and is the slope of the line.

The equation of a **circle** of radius centered at the origin is

$$\tag{B.20}$$

The equation of an **ellipse** having the origin at its center (Fig. B.7) is

$$\frac{}{} \quad \frac{}{} \tag{B.21}$$

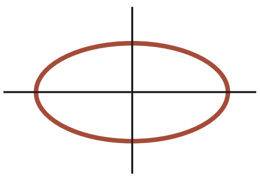


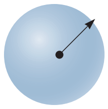
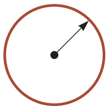
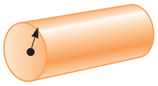
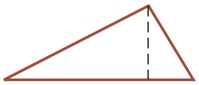
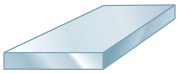
Figure B.7 An ellipse with semimajor axis and semiminor axis

where is the length of the semimajor axis (the longer one) and is the length of the semiminor axis (the shorter one).

The equation of a **parabola** the vertex of which is at (Fig. B.8) is

$$ax \tag{B.22}$$

Table B.2 **Useful Information for Geometry**

Shape	Area or Volume	Shape	Area or Volume
			Surface area Volume —
			Lateral surface Volume
 Triangle			Surface area Volume

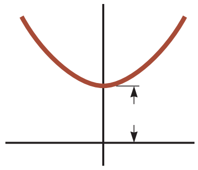


Figure B.8 A parabola with its vertex at

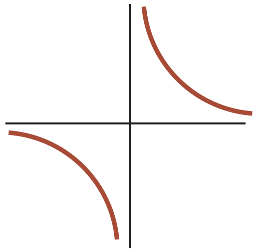


Figure B.9 A hyperbola.

The equation of a **rectangular hyperbola** (Fig. B.9) is

$$xy \quad \text{constant} \tag{B.23}$$

B.4 Trigonometry

That portion of mathematics based on the special properties of the right triangle is called trigonometry. By definition, a right triangle is a triangle containing a 90 angle. Consider the right triangle shown in Figure B.10, where side is opposite the angle , side is adjacent to the angle , and side is the hypotenuse of the triangle. The three basic trigonometric functions defined by such a triangle are the sine (sin), cosine (cos), and tangent (tan). In terms of the angle , these functions are defined as follows:

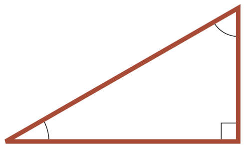


Figure B.10 A right triangle, used to define the basic functions of trigonometry.

$$\sin\theta = \frac{\text{side opposite}}{\text{hypotenuse}} \quad - \tag{B.24}$$

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\text{side adjacent to}}{\text{hypotenuse}} \quad - \tag{B.25}$$

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{side opposite}}{\text{side adjacent to}} \quad - \tag{B.26}$$

The Pythagorean theorem provides the following relationship among the sides of a right triangle:

$$\tag{B.27}$$

From the preceding definitions and the Pythagorean theorem, it follows that

$$\sin \ \theta + \cos \ \theta = 1$$

$$\tan\theta = \frac{\sin}{\cos}$$

The cosecant, secant, and cotangent functions are defined by

$$\csc\theta = \frac{}{\sin} \qquad \sec\theta = \frac{}{\cos} \qquad \cot\theta = \frac{}{\tan}$$

Table B.3 Some Trigonometric Identities

$\sin\ \theta + \cos\ \theta =$	$\csc\ \theta =$ cot
$\sec\ \theta =$ tan	sin – – cos
$\sin 2\theta = 2\sin\ \cos$	cos – – cos
$\cos 2\theta = \cos\ \theta - \sin$	$\cos\theta = 2\sin\ -$
$\tan 2\theta = \dfrac{2\tan}{\tan}$	$\tan -\ \dfrac{\overline{\cos}}{\cos}$

sin sin cos cos sin

cos cos cos sin sin

sin sin 2 sin –)] cos –)]

cos cos 2 cos –)] cos –)]

cos cos 2 sin –)] sin –)]

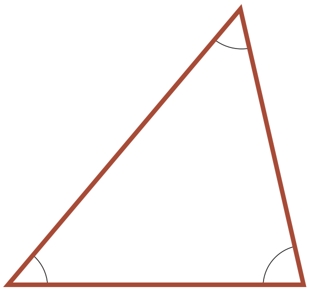


Figure B.11 An arbitrary, non-right triangle.

The following relationships are derived directly from the right triangle shown in Figure B.10:

$$\sin\theta = \cos\ \ 90° - \theta$$

$$\cos\theta = \sin\ \ 90° - \theta$$

$$\cot\theta = \tan\ \ 90° - \theta$$

Some properties of trigonometric functions are the following:

$$\sin\ \ -\theta\ \ = -\sin$$

$$\cos\ \ -\theta\ \ \cos$$

$$\tan\ \ -\theta\ \ = -\tan$$

The following relationships apply to *any* triangle as shown in Figure B.11:

$$\alpha + \beta + \gamma = 180$$

Law of cosines $bc\cos$ / $ac\cos$ / $ab\cos$

Law of sines $\overline{\ \ }$ sin $\overline{\ \ }$ sin $\overline{\ \ }$ sin

Table B.3 lists a number of useful trigonometric identities.

Example B.3

Consider the right triangle in Figure B.12 in which = 2.00, 5.00, and is unknown. From the Pythagorean theorem, we have

2.00 5.00 4.00 25.0 29.0

$\overline{29.0}$ 5.39

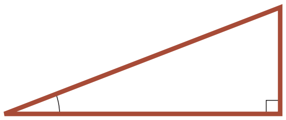


Figure B.12 (Example B.3)

To find the angle , note that

$$\tan\theta = -\ \frac{2.00}{5.00}\ \ 0.400$$

B.3

Using a calculator, we find that

$$\theta = \quad 0.400 \quad 21.8$$

where tan (0.400) is the notation for "angle whose tangent is 0.400," sometimes written as arctan (0.400).

Exercises

In Figure B.13, identify (a) the side opposite (b) the side adjacent to and then find (c) cos , (d) sin , and (e) tan

Answers (a) 3 (b) 3 (c) (d) (e)

2. In a certain right triangle, the two sides that are perpendicular to each other are 5.00 m and 7.00 m long. What is the length of the third side?

Answer 8.60 m

3. A right triangle has a hypotenuse of length 3.0 m, and one of its angles is 30 . (a) What is the length of the side opposite the 30 angle? (b) What is the side adjacent to the 30 angle?

Answers (a) 1.5 m (b) 2.6 m

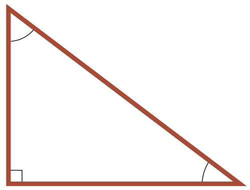


Figure B.13 (Exercise 1)

B.5 Series Expansions

$$nx$$

$$\ln \quad = \pm$$

$$\sin$$

$$\cos \qquad \text{in radians}$$

$$\tan \quad \frac{}{15}$$

For << 1, the following approximations can be used:

$$nx \qquad \sin$$

$$\cos$$

$$\ln \qquad \tan$$

B.6 Differential Calculus

In various branches of science, it is sometimes necessary to use the basic tools of calculus, invented by Newton, to describe physical phenomena. The use of calculus is fundamental in the treatment of various problems in Newtonian mechanics, electricity, and magnetism. In this section, we simply state some basic properties and "rules of thumb" that should be a useful review to the student.

The approximations for the functions sin , cos , and tan are for 0.1 rad.

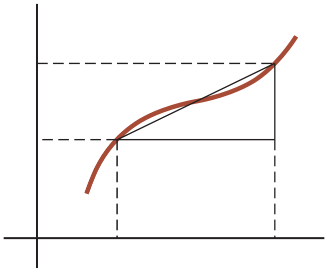


Figure B.14 The lengths and are used to define the derivative of this function at a point.

First, a **function** must be specified that relates one variable to another (e.g., a coordinate as a function of time). Suppose one of the variables is called (the dependent variable), and the other (the independent variable). We might have a function relationship such as

$$ax \quad bx \quad cx$$

If , and are specified constants, can be calculated for any value of We usually deal with continuous functions, that is, those for which varies "smoothly" with

The **derivative** of with respect to is defined as the limit as approaches zero of the slopes of chords drawn between two points on the versus curve. Mathematically, we write this definition as

$$\frac{dy}{dx} \quad \lim \frac{}{} \quad \lim \frac{+ \Delta}{} \tag{B.28}$$

where and are defined as $=$ $-$ and $=$ $-$ (Fig. B.14). Note that *dx does not* mean divided by , but rather is simply a notation of the limiting process of the derivative as defined by Equation B.28.

A useful expression to remember when $=$, where is a *constant* and is *any* positive or negative number (integer or fraction), is

$$\frac{dy}{dx} \quad nax \tag{B.29}$$

If) is a polynomial or algebraic function of , we apply Equation B.29 to *each* term in the polynomial and take [constant]/ = 0. In Examples B.4 through B.7, we evaluate the derivatives of several functions.

Special Properties of the Derivative

A. Derivative of the product of two functions If a function) is given by the product of two functions—say,) and)—the derivative of) is defined as

$$\frac{}{dx} \quad \frac{}{dx} \quad)] \quad \frac{dh}{dx} \quad \frac{dg}{dx} \tag{B.30}$$

B. Derivative of the sum of two functions If a function) is equal to the sum of two functions, the derivative of the sum is equal to the sum of the derivatives:

$$\frac{}{dx} \quad \frac{}{dx} \quad)] \quad \frac{dg}{dx} \quad \frac{dh}{dx} \tag{B.31}$$

C. Chain rule of differential calculus If) and), then can be written as the product of two derivatives:

$$\frac{dy}{dz} \quad \frac{dy}{dx}\,\frac{dx}{dz} \tag{B.32}$$

D. The second derivative The second derivative of with respect to is defined as the derivative of the function (the derivative of the derivative). It is usually written as

$$\frac{}{dx} \quad \frac{}{dx}\,\frac{dy}{dx} \tag{B.33}$$

Some of the more commonly used derivatives of functions are listed in Table B.4.

Table B.4 Derivative for Several Functions

$\frac{}{dx}$	
$\frac{}{dx}$ ax	nax
$\frac{}{dx}$ ^{ax}	ae^{ax}
$\frac{}{dx}$ sin ax	cos ax
$\frac{}{dx}$ cos ax	$= -$ sin ax
$\frac{}{dx}$ tan ax	sec ax
$\frac{}{dx}$ cot ax	$= -$ csc ax
$\frac{}{dx}$ sec	tan sec
$\frac{}{dx}$ csc	$= -$cot csc
$\frac{}{dx}$ ln ax	$-$
$\frac{}{dx}$ sin ax	
$\frac{}{dx}$ cos ax	
$\frac{}{dx}$ tan ax	

Note: The symbols and represent constants.

Example B.4

Suppose $y(x)$ (that is, y as a function of x) is given by

$$y(x) = ax^3 + bx + c$$

where a and b are constants. It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} y(x + \Delta x) &= a(x + \Delta x)^3 + b(x + \Delta x) + c \\ &= a(x^3 + 3x^2\,\Delta x + 3x\,\Delta x^2 + \Delta x^3) + b(x + \Delta x) + c \end{aligned}$$

so

$$\Delta y = y(x + \Delta x) - y(x) = a(3x^2\,\Delta x + 3x\,\Delta x^2 + \Delta x^3) + b\Delta x$$

Substituting this into Equation B.28 gives

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} \frac{\Delta y}{\Delta x} = \lim_{\Delta x \to 0} [3ax^2 + 3ax\,\Delta x + a\,\Delta x^2] + b$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \boxed{3ax^2 + b}$$

Example B.5

Find the derivative of

$$y(x) = 8x^5 + 4x^3 + 2x + 7$$

SOLUTION

Applying Equation B.29 to each term independently and remembering that d/dx (constant) $= 0$, we have

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 8(5)x^4 + 4(3)x^2 + 2(1)x^0 + 0$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \boxed{40x^4 + 12x^2 + 2}$$

Example B.6

Find the derivative of $y(x) = x^3/(x + 1)^2$ with respect to x.

SOLUTION

We can rewrite this function as $y(x) = x^3(x + 1)^{-2}$ and apply Equation B.30:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= (x + 1)^{-2}\,\frac{d}{dx}(x^3) + x^3\,\frac{d}{dx}(x + 1)^{-2} \\ &= (x + 1)^{-2}\,3x^2 + x^3\,(-2)(x + 1)^{-3} \end{aligned}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \boxed{\frac{3x^2}{(x + 1)^2} - \frac{2x^3}{(x + 1)^3}} = \boxed{\frac{x^2(x + 3)}{(x + 1)^3}}$$

Example B.7

A useful formula that follows from Equation B.30 is the derivative of the quotient of two functions. Show that

$$\frac{d}{dx}\left[\frac{g(x)}{h(x)}\right] = \frac{h\dfrac{dg}{dx} - g\dfrac{dh}{dx}}{h^2}$$

SOLUTION

We can write the quotient as gh^{-1} and then apply Equations B.29 and B.30:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{g}{h}\right) &= \frac{d}{dx}(gh^{-1}) = g\frac{d}{dx}(h^{-1}) + h^{-1}\frac{d}{dx}(g) \\ &= -gh^{-2}\frac{dh}{dx} + h^{-1}\frac{dg}{dx} \\ &= \frac{h\dfrac{dg}{dx} - g\dfrac{dh}{dx}}{h^2}\end{aligned}$$

B.7 Integral Calculus

We think of integration as the inverse of differentiation. As an example, consider the expression

$$f(x) = \frac{dy}{dx} = 3ax^2 + b \tag{B.34}$$

which was the result of differentiating the function

$$y(x) = ax^3 + bx + c$$

in Example B.4. We can write Equation B.34 as $dy = f(x)\,dx = (3ax^2 + b)\,dx$ and obtain $y(x)$ by "summing" over all values of x. Mathematically, we write this inverse operation as

$$y(x) = \int f(x)\,dx$$

For the function $f(x)$ given by Equation B.34, we have

$$y(x) = \int (3ax^2 + b)\,dx = ax^3 + bx + c$$

where c is a constant of the integration. This type of integral is called an *indefinite integral* because its value depends on the choice of c.

A general **indefinite integral** $I(x)$ is defined as

$$I(x) = \int f(x)\,dx \tag{B.35}$$

where $f(x)$ is called the *integrand* and $f(x) = dI(x)/dx$.

For a *general continuous* function $f(x)$, the integral can be interpreted geometrically as the area under the curve bounded by $f(x)$ and the x axis, between two specified values of x, say, x_1 and x_2, as in Figure B.15.

The area of the blue element in Figure B.15 is approximately $f(x_i)\,\Delta x_i$. If we sum all these area elements between x_1 and x_2 and take the limit of this sum as $\Delta x_i \to 0$,

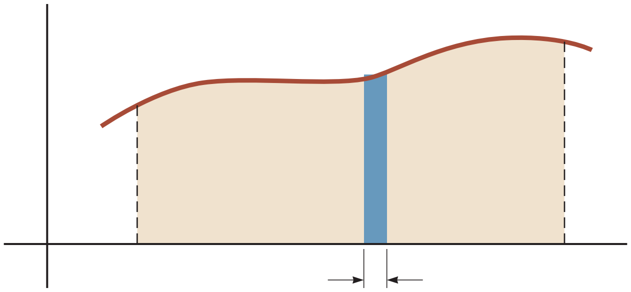


Figure B.15 The definite integral of a function is the area under the curve of the function between the limits and

we obtain the *true* area under the curve bounded by) and the axis, between the limits and

$$\text{Area} \quad \lim \qquad dx \tag{B.36}$$

Integrals of the type defined by Equation B.36 are called **definite integrals.**

One common integral that arises in practical situations has the form

$$dx \quad \frac{\quad}{\quad} \tag{B.37}$$

This result is obvious, being that differentiation of the right-hand side with respect to gives = directly. If the limits of the integration are known, this integral becomes a *definite integral* and is written

$$dx \quad \frac{\quad}{\quad} \qquad \frac{\qquad}{\qquad} \tag{B.38}$$

Examples

1. $dx \quad \frac{}{} \quad \frac{}{}$

2. $dx \quad \frac{}{} \quad -$

3. $dx \quad \frac{}{} \quad \frac{}{}$

Partial Integration

Sometimes it is useful to apply the method of *partial integration* (also called "inte grating by parts") to evaluate certain integrals. This method uses the property

$$dv \quad uv \qquad du \tag{B.39}$$

where and are *carefully* chosen so as to reduce a complex integral to a simpler one. In many cases, several reductions have to be made. Consider the function

$$dx$$

which can be evaluated by integrating by parts twice. First, if we choose = = , we obtain

$$dx \qquad\qquad dx$$

Now, in the second term, choose $u = x$, $v = e^x$, which gives

$$\int x^2\, e^x\, dx = x^2\, e^x - 2x\, e^x + 2\int e^x\, dx + c_1$$

or

$$\int x^2\, e^x\, dx = x^2\, e^x - 2xe^x + 2e^x + c_2$$

The Perfect Differential

Another useful method to remember is that of the *perfect differential,* in which we look for a change of variable such that the differential of the function is the differential of the independent variable appearing in the integrand. For example, consider the integral

$$I(x) = \int \cos^2 x \sin x\, dx$$

This integral becomes easy to evaluate if we rewrite the differential as $d(\cos x) = -\sin x\, dx$. The integral then becomes

$$\int \cos^2 x \sin x\, dx = -\int \cos^2 x\, d(\cos x)$$

If we now change variables, letting $y = \cos x$, we obtain

$$\int \cos^2 x \sin x\, dx = -\int y^2\, dy = -\frac{y^3}{3} + c = -\frac{\cos^3 x}{3} + c$$

Table B.5 lists some useful indefinite integrals. Table B.6 gives Gauss's probability integral and other definite integrals. A more complete list can be found in various handbooks, such as *The Handbook of Chemistry and Physics* (Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, published annually).

Table B.5 Some Indefinite Integrals (An arbitrary constant should be added to each of these integrals.)

$\int x^n\, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1}$ (provided $n \neq 1$)	$\int \ln ax\, dx = (x \ln ax) - x$
$\int \frac{dx}{x} = \int x^{-1}\, dx = \ln x$	$\int xe^{ax}\, dx = \frac{e^{ax}}{a^2}(ax - 1)$
$\int \frac{dx}{a + bx} = \frac{1}{b}\ln(a + bx)$	$\int \frac{dx}{a + be^{cx}} = \frac{x}{a} - \frac{1}{ac}\ln(a + be^{cx})$
$\int \frac{x\, dx}{a + bx} = \frac{x}{b} - \frac{a}{b^2}\ln(a + bx)$	$\int \sin ax\, dx = -\frac{1}{a}\cos ax$
$\int \frac{dx}{x(x + a)} = -\frac{1}{a}\ln\frac{x + a}{x}$	$\int \cos ax\, dx = \frac{1}{a}\sin ax$
$\int \frac{dx}{(a + bx)^2} = -\frac{1}{b(a + bx)}$	$\int \tan ax\, dx = -\frac{1}{a}\ln(\cos ax) = \frac{1}{a}\ln(\sec ax)$
$\int \frac{dx}{a^2 + x^2} = \frac{1}{a}\tan^{-1}\frac{x}{a}$	$\int \cot ax\, dx = \frac{1}{a}\ln(\sin ax)$
$\int \frac{dx}{a^2 - x^2} = \frac{1}{2a}\ln\frac{a + x}{a - x}$ $(a^2 - x^2 > 0)$	$\int \sec ax\, dx = \frac{1}{a}\ln(\sec ax + \tan ax) = \frac{1}{a}\ln\left[\tan\left(\frac{ax}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\right]$
$\int \frac{dx}{x^2 - a^2} = \frac{1}{2a}\ln\frac{x - a}{x + a}$ $(x^2 - a^2 > 0)$	$\int \csc ax\, dx = \frac{1}{a}\ln(\csc ax - \cot ax) = \frac{1}{a}\ln\left(\tan\frac{ax}{2}\right)$

(Continued)

Table B.5 Some Indefinite Integrals *(continued)*

$$\int \frac{x\,dx}{a^2 \pm x^2} = \pm\tfrac{1}{2}\ln(a^2 \pm x^2)$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \sin^{-1}\frac{x}{a} = -\cos^{-1}\frac{x}{a} \quad (a^2 - x^2 > 0)$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \ln\left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}\right)$$

$$\int \frac{x\,dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = -\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$$

$$\int \frac{x\,dx}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}} = \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}$$

$$\int \sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(x\sqrt{a^2 - x^2} + a^2\sin^{-1}\frac{x}{|a|}\right)$$

$$\int x\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}\,dx = -\tfrac{1}{3}(a^2 - x^2)^{3/2}$$

$$\int \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}\,dx = \tfrac{1}{2}\left[x\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2} \pm a^2\ln\left(x + \sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}\right)\right]$$

$$\int x\left(\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}\right)dx = \tfrac{1}{3}(x^2 \pm a^2)^{3/2}$$

$$\int e^{ax}\,dx = \frac{1}{a}e^{ax}$$

$$\int \sin^2 ax\,dx = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{\sin 2ax}{4a}$$

$$\int \cos^2 ax\,dx = \frac{x}{2} + \frac{\sin 2ax}{4a}$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\sin^2 ax} = -\frac{1}{a}\cot ax$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{\cos^2 ax} = \frac{1}{a}\tan ax$$

$$\int \tan^2 ax\,dx = \frac{1}{a}(\tan ax) - x$$

$$\int \cot^2 ax\,dx = -\frac{1}{a}(\cot ax) - x$$

$$\int \sin^{-1} ax\,dx = x(\sin^{-1} ax) + \frac{\sqrt{1 - a^2x^2}}{a}$$

$$\int \cos^{-1} ax\,dx = x(\cos^{-1} ax) - \frac{\sqrt{1 - a^2x^2}}{a}$$

$$\int \frac{dx}{(x^2 + a^2)^{3/2}} = \frac{x}{a^2\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}$$

$$\int \frac{x\,dx}{(x^2 + a^2)^{3/2}} = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}$$

Table B.6 Gauss's Probability Integral and Other Definite Integrals

$$\int_0^\infty x^n e^{-ax}\,dx = \frac{n!}{a^{n+1}}$$

$$I_0 = \int_0^\infty e^{-ax^2}\,dx = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}} \quad \text{(Gauss's probability integral)}$$

$$I_1 = \int_0^\infty x e^{-ax^2}\,dx = \frac{1}{2a}$$

$$I_2 = \int_0^\infty x^2 e^{-ax^2}\,dx = -\frac{dI_0}{da} = \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a^3}}$$

$$I_3 = \int_0^\infty x^3 e^{-ax^2}\,dx = -\frac{dI_1}{da} = \frac{1}{2a^2}$$

$$I_4 = \int_0^\infty x^4 e^{-ax^2}\,dx = \frac{d^2 I_0}{da^2} = \frac{3}{8}\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a^5}}$$

$$I_5 = \int_0^\infty x^5 e^{-ax^2}\,dx = \frac{d^2 I_1}{da^2} = \frac{1}{a^3}$$

$$\vdots$$

$$I_{2n} = (-1)^n \frac{d^n}{da^n} I_0$$

$$I_{2n+1} = (-1)^n \frac{d^n}{da^n} I_1$$

B.8 Propagation of Uncertainty

In laboratory experiments, a common activity is to take measurements that act as raw data. These measurements are of several types—length, time interval, temperature, voltage, and so on—and are taken by a variety of instruments. Regardless of the measurement and the quality of the instrumentation, **there is always uncertainty associated with a physical measurement.** This uncertainty is a combination of that associated with the instrument and that related to the system being measured. An example of the former is the inability to exactly determine the position of a length measurement between the lines on a meterstick. An example of uncertainty related to the system being measured is the variation of temperature within a sample of water so that a single temperature for the sample is difficult to determine.

Uncertainties can be expressed in two ways. **Absolute uncertainty** refers to an uncertainty expressed in the same units as the measurement. Therefore, the length of a computer disk label might be expressed as (5.5 ± 0.1) cm. The uncertainty of ± 0.1 cm by itself is not descriptive enough for some purposes, however. This uncertainty is large if the measurement is 1.0 cm, but it is small if the measurement is 100 m. To give a more descriptive account of the uncertainty, **fractional uncertainty** or **percent uncertainty** is used. In this type of description, the uncertainty is divided by the actual measurement. Therefore, the length of the computer disk label could be expressed as

$$\ell = 5.5 \text{ cm} \pm \frac{0.1 \text{ cm}}{5.5 \text{ cm}} = 5.5 \text{ cm} \pm 0.018 \quad \text{(fractional uncertainty)}$$

or as

$$\ell = 5.5 \text{ cm} \pm 1.8\% \quad \text{(percent uncertainty)}$$

When combining measurements in a calculation, the percent uncertainty in the final result is generally larger than the uncertainty in the individual measurements. This is called **propagation of uncertainty** and is one of the challenges of experimental physics.

Some simple rules can provide a reasonable estimate of the uncertainty in a calculated result:

Multiplication and division: When measurements with uncertainties are multiplied or divided, add the *percent uncertainties* to obtain the percent uncertainty in the result.

Example: The Area of a Rectangular Plate

$$\begin{aligned} A = \ell w &= (5.5 \text{ cm} \pm 1.8\%) \times (6.4 \text{ cm} \pm 1.6\%) = 35 \text{ cm}^2 \pm 3.4\% \\ &= (35 \pm 1) \text{ cm}^2 \end{aligned}$$

Addition and subtraction: When measurements with uncertainties are added or subtracted, add the *absolute uncertainties* to obtain the absolute uncertainty in the result.

Example: A Change in Temperature

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta T = T_2 - T_1 &= (99.2 \pm 1.5)^\circ\text{C} - (27.6 \pm 1.5)^\circ\text{C} = (71.6 \pm 3.0)^\circ\text{C} \\ &= 71.6^\circ\text{C} \pm 4.2\% \end{aligned}$$

Powers: If a measurement is taken to a power, the percent uncertainty is multiplied by that power to obtain the percent uncertainty in the result.

Example: The Volume of a Sphere

$$V = \tfrac{4}{3}\pi r^3 = \tfrac{4}{3}\pi(6.20 \text{ cm} \pm 2.0\%)^3 = 998 \text{ cm}^3 \pm 6.0\%$$
$$= (998 \pm 60) \text{ cm}^3$$

For complicated calculations, many uncertainties are added together, which can cause the uncertainty in the final result to be undesirably large. Experiments should be designed such that calculations are as simple as possible.

Notice that uncertainties in a calculation always add. As a result, an experiment involving a subtraction should be avoided if possible, especially if the measurements being subtracted are close together. The result of such a calculation is a small difference in the measurements and uncertainties that add together. It is possible that the uncertainty in the result could be larger than the result itself!

APPENDIX

C

Periodic Table of the Elements

Symbol — **Ca** 20 — Atomic number

Atomic mass† — 40.078

$4s^2$ — Electron configuration

Group I	Group II	Transition elements						
H 1 1.007 9 $1s$								
Li 3 6.941 $2s^1$	**Be** 4 9.0122 $2s^2$							
Na 11 22.990 $3s^1$	**Mg** 12 24.305 $3s^2$							
K 19 39.098 $4s^1$	**Ca** 20 40.078 $4s^2$	**Sc** 21 44.956 $3d^14s^2$	**Ti** 22 47.867 $3d^24s^2$	**V** 23 50.942 $3d^34s^2$	**Cr** 24 51.996 $3d^54s^1$	**Mn** 25 54.938 $3d^54s^2$	**Fe** 26 55.845 $3d^64s^2$	**Co** 27 58.933 $3d^74s^2$
Rb 37 85.468 $5s^1$	**Sr** 38 87.62 $5s^2$	**Y** 39 88.906 $4d^15s^2$	**Zr** 40 91.224 $4d^25s^2$	**Nb** 41 92.906 $4d^45s^1$	**Mo** 42 95.94 $4d^55s^1$	**Tc** 43 (98) $4d^55s^2$	**Ru** 44 101.07 $4d^75s^1$	**Rh** 45 102.91 $4d^85s^1$
Cs 55 132.91 $6s^1$	**Ba** 56 137.33 $6s^2$	57–71*	**Hf** 72 178.49 $5d^26s^2$	**Ta** 73 180.95 $5d^36s^2$	**W** 74 183.84 $5d^46s^2$	**Re** 75 186.21 $5d^56s^2$	**Os** 76 190.23 $5d^66s^2$	**Ir** 77 192.2 $5d^76s^2$
Fr 87 (223) $7s^1$	**Ra** 88 (226) $7s^2$	89–103**	**Rf** 104 (261) $6d^27s^2$	**Db** 105 (262) $6d^37s^2$	**Sg** 106 (266)	**Bh** 107 (264)	**Hs** 108 (277)	**Mt** 109 (268)

*Lanthanide series	**La** 57 138.91 $5d^16s^2$	**Ce** 58 140.12 $5d^14f^16s^2$	**Pr** 59 140.91 $4f^36s^2$	**Nd** 60 144.24 $4f^46s^2$	**Pm** 61 (145) $4f^56s^2$	**Sm** 62 150.36 $4f^66s^2$
**Actinide series	**Ac** 89 (227) $6d^17s^2$	**Th** 90 232.04 $6d^27s^2$	**Pa** 91 231.04 $5f^26d^17s^2$	**U** 92 238.03 $5f^36d^17s^2$	**Np** 93 (237) $5f^46d^17s^2$	**Pu** 94 (244) $5f^67s^2$

Note: Atomic mass values given are averaged over isotopes in the percentages in which they exist in nature.

† For an unstable element, mass number of the most stable known isotope is given in parentheses.

			Group III	Group IV	Group V	Group VI	Group VII	Group 0
							H 1 1.007 9 $1s^1$	**He** 2 4.002 6 $1s^2$
			B 5 10.811 $2p^1$	**C** 6 12.011 $2p^2$	**N** 7 14.007 $2p^3$	**O** 8 15.999 $2p^4$	**F** 9 18.998 $2p^5$	**Ne** 10 20.180 $2p^6$
			Al 13 26.982 $3p^1$	**Si** 14 28.086 $3p^2$	**P** 15 30.974 $3p^3$	**S** 16 32.066 $3p^4$	**Cl** 17 35.453 $3p^5$	**Ar** 18 39.948 $3p^6$
Ni 28 58.693 $3d^84s^2$	**Cu** 29 63.546 $3d^{10}4s^1$	**Zn** 30 65.41 $3d^{10}4s^2$	**Ga** 31 69.723 $4p^1$	**Ge** 32 72.64 $4p^2$	**As** 33 74.922 $4p^3$	**Se** 34 78.96 $4p^4$	**Br** 35 79.904 $4p^5$	**Kr** 36 83.80 $4p^6$
Pd 46 106.42 $4d^{10}$	**Ag** 47 107.87 $4d^{10}5s^1$	**Cd** 48 112.41 $4d^{10}5s^2$	**In** 49 114.82 $5p^1$	**Sn** 50 118.71 $5p^2$	**Sb** 51 121.76 $5p^3$	**Te** 52 127.60 $5p^4$	**I** 53 126.90 $5p^5$	**Xe** 54 131.29 $5p^6$
Pt 78 195.08 $5d^96s^1$	**Au** 79 196.97 $5d^{10}6s^1$	**Hg** 80 200.59 $5d^{10}6s^2$	**Tl** 81 204.38 $6p^1$	**Pb** 82 207.2 $6p^2$	**Bi** 83 208.98 $6p^3$	**Po** 84 (209) $6p^4$	**At** 85 (210) $6p^5$	**Rn** 86 (222) $6p^6$
Ds 110 (271)	**Rg** 111 (272)	**Cn** 112 (285)	113†† (284)	**Fl** 114 (289)	115†† (288)	**Lv** 116 (293)	117†† (294)	118†† (294)

Eu 63 151.96 $4f^76s^2$	**Gd** 64 157.25 $4f^75d^16s^2$	**Tb** 65 158.93 $4f^85d^16s^2$	**Dy** 66 162.50 $4f^{10}6s^2$	**Ho** 67 164.93 $4f^{11}6s^2$	**Er** 68 167.26 $4f^{12}6s^2$	**Tm** 69 168.93 $4f^{13}6s^2$	**Yb** 70 173.04 $4f^{14}6s^2$	**Lu** 71 174.97 $4f^{14}5d^16s^2$
Am 95 (243) $5f^77s^2$	**Cm** 96 (247) $5f^76d^17s^2$	**Bk** 97 (247) $5f^86d^17s^2$	**Cf** 98 (251) $5f^{10}7s^2$	**Es** 99 (252) $5f^{11}7s^2$	**Fm** 100 (257) $5f^{12}7s^2$	**Md** 101 (258) $5f^{13}7s^2$	**No** 102 (259) $5f^{14}7s^2$	**Lr** 103 (262) $5f^{14}6d^17s^2$

†† Elements 113, 115, 117, and 118 have not yet been officially named. Only small numbers of atoms of these elements have been observed.

Note: For a description of the atomic data, visit *physics.nist.gov/PhysRefData/Elements/per_text.html.*

APPENDIX D

SI Units

Table D.1 SI Units

Base Quantity	SI Base Unit Name	SI Base Unit Symbol
Length	meter	m
Mass	kilogram	kg
Time	second	s
Electric current	ampere	A
Temperature	kelvin	K
Amount of substance	mole	mol
Luminous intensity	candela	cd

Table D.2 Some Derived SI Units

Other Quantity	Name	Symbol	Expression in Terms of Base Units	Expression in Terms of SI Units
Plane angle	radian	rad	m/m	
Frequency	hertz	Hz	s^{-1}	
Force	newton	N	$kg \cdot m/s^2$	J/m
Pressure	pascal	Pa	$kg/m \cdot s^2$	N/m^2
Energy	joule	J	$kg \cdot m^2/s^2$	$N \cdot m$
Power	watt	W	$kg \cdot m^2/s^3$	J/s
Electric charge	coulomb	C	$A \cdot s$	
Electric potential	volt	V	$kg \cdot m^2/A \cdot s^3$	W/A
Capacitance	farad	F	$A^2 \cdot s^4/kg \cdot m^2$	C/V
Electric resistance	ohm	Ω	$kg \cdot m^2/A^2 \cdot s^3$	V/A
Magnetic flux	weber	Wb	$kg \cdot m^2/A \cdot s^2$	$V \cdot s$
Magnetic field	tesla	T	$kg/A \cdot s^2$	
Inductance	henry	H	$kg \cdot m^2/A^2 \cdot s^2$	$T \cdot m^2/A$

Answers to Quick Quizzes and Odd-Numbered Problems

Chapter 1

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(a)
2. False
3. (b)

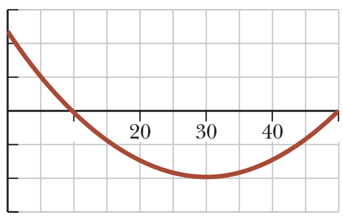
Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 5.52 kg/m (b) It is between the density of alu minum and that of iron and is greater than the densities of typical surface rocks.
3. 23.0 kg
5. 7.69 cm
0.141 nm
9. (b) only
11. (a) kg m/s (b) N · s
13. No.
15. 11.4 kg/m
17. 871 m
19. By measuring the pages, we find that each page has area 0.277 m 0.217 m 0.060 m . The room has wall area 37 m , requiring 616 sheets that would be counted as 232 pages. Volume 1 of this textbook contains only 784 pages.
21. 1.00
23. 4.05
25. 2.86 cm
27. 151
29. (a) 507 years (b) 2.48 bills
31. balls in a room 4 m by 4 m by 3 m
33. piano tuners
35. (209 4) cm
37. 31 556 926.0 s
39.
41. 8.80%
43.
45. (a) 6.71 m (b) 0.894 (c) 0.745
47. 48.6 kg
49. 3.46
51. Answers may vary somewhat due to variation in read ing precise numbers off the graph. (a) 0.015 g (b) 8% (c) 5.2 g/m (d) For shapes cut from this copy paper, the mass of the cutout is proportional to its area. The pro portionality constant is 5.2 g/m 8%, where the uncer tainty is estimated. (e) This result is to be expected if the paper has thickness and density that are uniform within the experimental uncertainty. (f) The slope is the areal density of the paper, its mass per unit area.
53. 5.2 m , 3%
55. 316 m
57. 5.0 m
59. 3.41 m
61. (a) aluminum, 2.75 g/cm ; copper, 9.36 g/cm ; brass, 8.91 g/cm ; tin, 7.68 g/cm ; iron, 7.88 g/cm
(b) The tabulated values are smaller by 2% for aluminum, by 5% for copper, by 6% for brass, by 5% for tin, and by 0.3% for iron.
63. gal/yr
65. Answers may vary. (a) prokaryotes (b)
67. (a) 2.70 g/cm 1.19 g/cm (b) 1.39 kg
69. 0.579 (1.19 , where is in cubic feet and is in seconds
71. (a) 0.529 cm/s (b) 11.5 cm/s
73. (a) 12.1 m (b) 135° (c) 25.2° (d) 135°

Chapter 2

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(c)
2. (b)
3. False. Your graph should look something like the one shown below. This graph shows that the maximum speed is about 5.0 m/s, which is 18 km/h (11 mi/h), so the driver was not speeding.

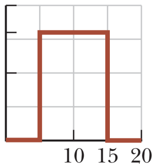


4. (b)
5. (c)
6. (a)–(e), (b)–(d), (c)–(f)
(i) (e) **(ii)** (d)

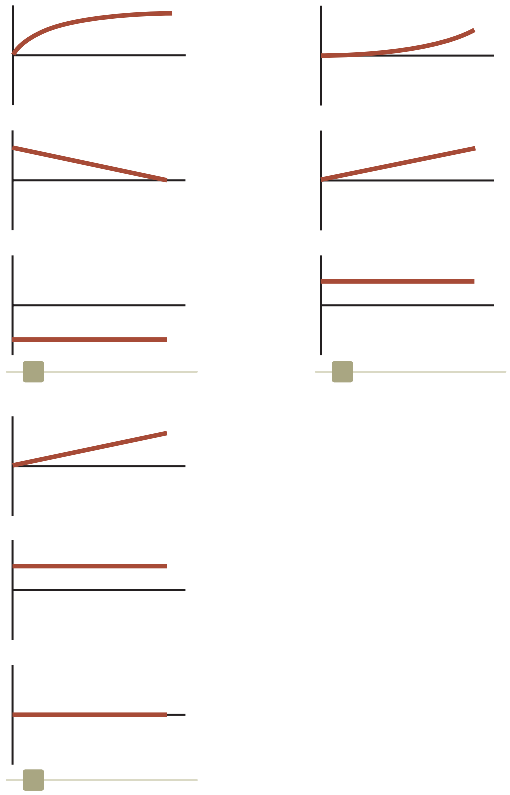
Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 5 m/s (b) 1.2 m/s (c) 2.5 m/s (d) 3.3 m/s (e) 0
3. (a) 3.75 m/s (b) 0

5. (a) 2.30 m/s (b) 16.1 m/s (c) 11.5 m/s
(a) 2.4 m/s (b) 3.8 m/s (c) 4.0 s
9. (a) 5.0 m/s (b) 2.5 m/s (c) 0 (d) 5.0 m/s
11. (a) 5.00 m (b) 4.88
13. (a) 2.80 h (b) 218 km
15. (a)



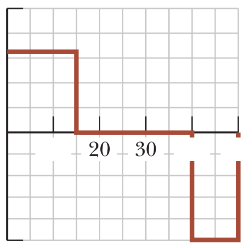
(b) 1.60 m/s (c) 0.800 m/s
17. (a) 1.3 m/s (b) 3 s, 2 m/s (c) 6 s, 10 s
(d) 1.5 m/s
19. (a) 20 m/s, 5 m/s (b) 263 m
21. (a) 2.00 m (b) 3.00 m/s (c) 2.00 m/s
23.



25. (a) 4.98 s (b) 1.20 m/s
27. (a) 9.00 m/s (b) 3.00 m/s (c) 17.0 m/s (d) The graph of velocity versus time is a straight line passing through 13 m/s at 10:05 a.m. and sloping downward, decreasing by 4 m/s for each second thereafter. (e) If and only if we know the object's velocity at one instant of time, knowing its acceleration tells us its velocity at every other moment as long as the acceleration is constant.
29. 16.0 cm/s
31. (a) 202 m/s (b) 198 m
33. (a) 35.0 s (b) 15.7 m/s
35. 3.10 m/s
37. (a)

(b) Particle under constant acceleration
(c)) (Equation 2.17)
(d) (e) 1.25 m/s (f) 8.00 s

39. (a) The idea is false unless the acceleration is zero. We define constant acceleration to mean that the velocity is changing steadily in time. So, the velocity cannot be changing steadily in space.
(b) This idea is true. Because the velocity is changing steadily in time, the velocity halfway through an interval is equal to the average of its initial and final values.
41. (a) 13.5 m (b) 13.5 m (c) 13.5 m (d) 22.5 m
43. (a) 1.88 km (b) 1.46 km
(c)



(d) 0 1.67 *ab* 50 375; 250 2.5 375 (In all three expressions, is in meters and is in seconds.) (e) 37.5 m/s
45. (a) 0.231 m (b) 0.364 m (c) 0.399 m (d) 0.175 m
47. David will be unsuccessful. The average human reaction time is about 0.2 s (research on the Internet) and a dollar bill is about 15.5 cm long, so David's fingers are about 8 cm from the end of the bill before it is dropped. The bill will fall about 20 cm before he can close his fingers.
49. (a) 510 m (b) 20.4 s
51. 1.79 s
53. (a) 10.0 m/s up (b) 4.68 m/s down
55. (a) 7.82 m (b) 0.782 s
57. (a)
59. (a) (10.0 3.00 (1.67 (1.50 (In these expressions, is in m/s is in meters, and is in seconds.) (b) 3.00 ms (c) 450 m/s (d) 0.900 m
61. (a) 4.00 m/s (b) 1.00 ms (c) 0.816 m
63. (a) 3.00 s (b) 15.3 m/s
(c) 31.4 m/s down and 34.8 m/s down
65. (a) 3.00 m/s (b) 6.00 s (c) −0.300 m/s (d) 2.05 m/s
67. (a) 2.83 s (b) It is exactly the same situation as in Example 2.8 except that this problem is in the vertical direction. The descending elevator plays the role of the speeding car, and the falling bolt plays the role of the accelerating trooper. Turn Figure 2.13 through 90° clockwise to visualize the elevator–bolt problem! (c) If each floor is 3 m high, the highest floor that can be reached is the 13th floor.
69. (a) From the graph, we see that the Acela is cruising at a constant positive velocity in the positive direction from about 50 s to 50 s. From 50 s to 200 s, the Acela accelerates in the positive direction reaching a top speed of about 170 mi/h. Around 200 s, the engineer applies the brakes, and the train, still traveling in the positive direction, slows down and then stops at 350 s. Just after

350 s, the train reverses direction (becomes negative) and steadily gains speed in the negative direction. (b) approximately 2.2 mi/h/s (c) approximately 6.7 mi

71. (a) Here, must be greater than and the distance between the leading athlete and the finish line must be great enough so that the trailing athlete has time to catch up.

(b) ——— (c) ———

73. (a) 5.46 s (b) 73.0 m
(c) $_{Stan}$ 22.6 m/s, $_{Kathy}$ 26.7 m/s

75. (a) (1/tan (b) The velocity starts off larger than for small values of and then decreases, approaching zero as approaches 90°.

77. (a) 15.0 s (b) 30.0 m/s (c) 225 m

79. 1.60 m/s

81. (a) 35.9 m (b) 4.04 s (c) 45.8 m (d) 22.6 m/s

83. (a) 5.32 m/s for Laura and 3.75 m/s for Healan
(b) 10.6 m/s for Laura and 11.2 m/s for Healan
(c) Laura, by 2.63 m (d) 4.47 m at 2.84 s

85. (a) 26.4 m (b) 6.8%

Chapter 3

Answers to Quick Quizzes

vectors: (b), (c); scalars: (a), (d), (e)

2. (c)

3. (b) and (c)

4. (b)

5. (c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

2.75, 4.76) m

3. (a) 8.60 m (b) 4.47 m, 63.4°; 4.24 m, 135°

5. (a) (3.56 cm, 2.40 cm) (b) (4.30 cm, 326°)
(c) (8.60 cm, 34.0°) (d) (12.9 cm, 146°)

70.0 m

9. This situation can *never* be true because the distance is the length of an arc of a circle between two points, whereas the magnitude of the displacement vector is a straight-line chord of the circle between the same points.

11. (a) 5.2 m at 60° (b) 3.0 m at 330° (c) 3.0 m at 150°
(d) 5.2 m at 300°

13. approximately 420 ft at

15. 47.2 units at 122°

17. (a) yes (b) The speed of the camper should be 28.3 m/s or more to satisfy this requirement.

19. (a) (11.1 6.40) m (b) (1.65 2.86) cm
(c) (18.0 12.6) in.

21. 358 m at 2.00° S of E

23. (a) 2.00 6.00 (b) 4.00 2.00 (c) 6.32 (d) 4.47
(e) 288°; 26.6°

25. 9.48 m at 166°

27. 4.64 m at 78.6° N of E

29. (a) 185 N at 77.8° from the positive axis
(b) (39.3 181

31. (a) 2.83 m at 315° (b) 13.4 m at 117°

33. (a) 8.00 12.0 4.00 (b) 2.00 3.00 1.00
(c) 24.0 36.0 12.0

35. (a) 3.00 2.00 (b) 3.61 at 146° (c) 3.00 6.00

37. (a) 5.00 and 7.00 (b) For vectors to be equal, all their components must be equal. A vector equation contains more information than a scalar equation.

39. 196 cm at 345°

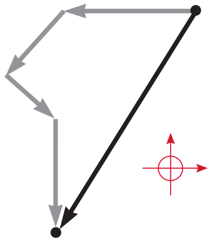
41. (a) 15.1 7.72 cm (b) 7.72 15.1 cm
(c) 7.72 15.1

43. (a) 20.5 35.5 m (b) 25.0 m
(c) 61.5 107 m (d) 37.5 m (e) 157 km

45. 1.43 m at 32.2° above the horizontal

47. (a) 10.4 cm (b) 35.5°

49. (a)



(b) 18.3 b (c) 12.4 b at 233° counterclockwise from east

51. 240 m at 237°

53. (a) 25.4 s (b) 15.0 km/h

55. (a) 0.079 8 N (b) 57.9° (c) 32.1°

57. (a) The , and components are, respectively, 2.00, 1.00, and 3.00. (b) 3.74 (c) 57.7°, 74.5°, 36.7°

59. 1.15°

61. (a) (10 000 9 600 sin $^{1/2}$ cm (b) 270°; 140 cm (c) 90°; 20.0 cm (d) They do make sense. The maximum value is attained when and are in the same direction, and it is 60 cm 80 cm. The minimum value is attained when and are in opposite directions, and it is 80 cm 60 cm.

63. (a) 2.00 m/s (b) its velocity vector

65. (a) (b) $^{1/2}$
(c)

67. (a) (10.0 m, 16.0 m) (b) This center of mass of the tree distribution is the same location whatever order we take the trees in. (We will study center of mass in Chapter 9.)

Chapter 4

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(a)

2. (i) (b) **(ii)** (a)

3. 15°, 30°, 45°, 60°, 75°

4. **(i)** (d) **(ii)** (b)

5. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (d)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 4.87 km at 209° from east (b) 23.3 m/s
(c) 13.5 m/s at 209°

3. (a) (1.00 0.750) m/s (b) (1.00 0.500) m/s, 1.12 m/s

5. (a) 18.0 4.00 4.90 , where is in meters and is in seconds
(b) 18.0 4.00 9.80 , where is in meters per second and is in seconds
(c) = −9.80
(d) 54.0 32.1 18.0 25.4 m s; = −9.80

7. (a) $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = -12.0t\,\hat{\mathbf{j}}$, where $\vec{\mathbf{v}}$ is in meters per second and t is in seconds (b) $\vec{\mathbf{a}} = -12.0\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ m/s^2 (c) $\vec{\mathbf{r}} = (3.00\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 6.00\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ m; $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = -12.0\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ m/s
9. (a) $(0.800\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 0.300\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ m/s^2 (b) 339° (c) $(360\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 72.7\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ m, −15.2°
11. 12.0 m/s
13. (a) 2.81 m/s horizontal (b) 60.2° below the horizontal
15. 53.1°
17. (a) 3.96 m/s horizontally forward (b) 9.6%
19. 67.8°
21. $d \tan \theta_i - \dfrac{gd^2}{2v_i^2 \cos^2 \theta_i}$
23. (a) The ball clears by 0.89 m. (b) while descending
25. (a) 18.1 m/s (b) 1.13 m (c) 2.79 m
27. 9.91 m/s
29. (a) (0, 50.0 m) (b) $v_{xi} = 18.0$ m/s; $v_{yi} = 0$ (c) Particle under constant acceleration (d) Particle under constant velocity (e) $v_{xf} = v_{xi}$; $v_{yf} = -gt$ (f) $x_f = v_{xi}t$; $y_f = y_i - \frac{1}{2}gt^2$ (g) 3.19 s (h) 36.1 m/s, −60.1°
31. 1.92 s
33. 377 m/s^2
35. 2.06×10^3 rev/min
37. 0.749 rev/s
39. 7.58×10^3 m/s, 5.80×10^3 s
41. 1.48 m/s^2 inward and 29.9° backward
43. (a) Yes. The particle can be either speeding up or slowing down, with a tangential component of acceleration of magnitude $\sqrt{6^2 - 4.5^2} = 3.97$ m/s^2. (b) No. The magnitude of the acceleration cannot be less than $v^2/r = 4.5$ m/s^2.
45. (a) 1.26 h (b) 1.13 h (c) 1.19 h
47. (a) 15.0 km/h east (b) 15.0 km/h west (c) 0.016 7 h = 60.0 s
49. (a) 9.80 m/s^2 down and 2.50 m/s^2 south (b) 9.80 m/s^2 down (c) The bolt moves on a parabola with its axis downward and tilting to the south. It lands south of the point directly below its starting point. (d) The bolt moves on a parabola with a vertical axis.
51. (a) $\dfrac{2d/c}{1 - v^2/c^2}$ (b) $\dfrac{2d}{c}$

(c) The trip in flowing water takes a longer time interval. The swimmer travels at the low upstream speed for a longer time interval, so his average speed is reduced below c. Mathematically, $1/(1 - v^2/c^2)$ is always greater than 1. In the extreme, as $v \to c$, the time interval becomes infinite. In that case, the student can never return to the starting point because he cannot swim fast enough to overcome the river current.
53. 15.3 m
55. 54.4 m/s^2
57. The relationship between the height h and the walking speed is $h = (4.16 \times 10^{-3})v_x^2$, where h is in meters and v_x is in meters per second. At a typical walking speed of 4 to 5 km/h, the ball would have to be dropped from a height of about 1 cm, clearly much too low for a person's hand. Even at Olympic-record speed for the 100-m run (confirm on the Internet), this situation would only occur if the ball is dropped from about 0.4 m, which is also below the hand of a normally proportioned person.
59. (a) 101 m/s (b) 3.27×10^4 ft (c) 20.6 s
61. (a) 26.9 m/s (b) 67.3 m (c) $(2.00\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 5.00\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ m/s^2
63. (a) $(7.62\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 6.48\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ cm (b) $(10.0\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 7.05\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ cm
65. (a) 1.52 km (b) 36.1 s (c) 4.05 km
67. The initial height of the ball when struck is 3.94 m, which is too high for the batter to hit the ball.
69. (a) 1.69 km/s (b) 1.80 h
71. (a) 46.5 m/s (b) −77.6° (c) 6.34 s
73. (a) $x = v_i(0.164\,3 + 0.002\,299v_i^2)^{1/2} + 0.047\,94v_i^2$, where x is in meters and v_i is in meters per second (b) 0.041 0 m (c) 961 m (d) $x \approx 0.405v_i$ (e) $x \approx 0.095\,9v_i^2$ (f) The graph of x versus v_i starts from the origin as a straight line with slope 0.405 s. Then it curves upward above this tangent line, becoming closer and closer to the parabola $x = 0.095\,9v_i^2$, where x is in meters and v_i is in meters per second.
75. (a) 6.80 km (b) 3.00 km vertically above the impact point (c) 66.2°
77. (a) 20.0 m/s (b) 5.00 s (c) $(16.0\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 27.1\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ m/s (d) 6.53 s (e) $24.5\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m
79. (a) 4.00 km/h (b) 4.00 km/h
81. (a) 43.2 m (b) $(9.66\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 25.6\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ m/s (c) Air resistance would ordinarily make the jump distance smaller and the final horizontal and vertical velocity components both somewhat smaller. If a skilled jumper shapes her body into an airfoil, however, she can deflect downward the air through which she passes so that it deflects her upward, giving her more time in the air and a longer jump.
83. (a) swim perpendicular to the banks (b) 133 m (c) 53.1° (d) 107 m
85. 33.5° below the horizontal
87. $\tan^{-1}\left(\dfrac{\sqrt{2gh}}{v}\right)$
89. Safe distances are less than 270 m or greater than 3.48×10^3 m from the western shore.

Chapter 5

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (d)
2. (a)
3. (d)
4. (b)
5. **(i)** (c) **(ii)** (a)
6. (b)
7. (b) Pulling up on the rope decreases the normal force, which, in turn, decreases the force of kinetic friction.

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. (a) 534 N (b) 54.5 kg
3. (a) $(6.00\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 15.0\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ N (b) 16.2 N
5. (a) $(2.50\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 5.00\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ N (b) 5.59 N
7. 2.58 N
9. (a) 1.53 m (b) 24.0 N forward and upward at 5.29° with the horizontal
11. (a) 3.64×10^{-18} N (b) 8.93×10^{-30} N is 408 billion times smaller
13. (a) force exerted by spring on hand, to the left; force exerted by spring on wall, to the right (b) force exerted

by wagon on handle, downward to the left; force exerted by wagon on planet, upward; force exerted by wagon on ground, downward (c) force exerted by football on player, downward to the right; force exerted by football on planet, upward (d) force exerted by small-mass object on large-mass object, to the left (e) force exerted by negative charge on positive charge, to the left (f) force exerted by iron on magnet, to the left

15. (a) 45.0 15.0 m/s (b) 162° from the + axis (c) 225 75.0 m (d) 227 79.0

17. (a) — (b) — (c) $\frac{Fh}{mg}$ (d)

19. (a) 5.00 m/s at 36.9° (b) 6.08 m/s at 25.3°

21. (a) 15.0 lb up (b) 5.00 lb up (c) 0

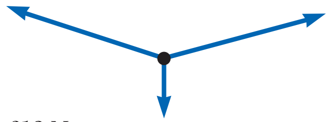
23. (a) 2.15 N forward (b) 645 N forward (c) 645 N toward the rear (d) 1.02 10 N at 74.1° below the horizontal and rearward

25. (a) 3.43 kN (b) 0.967 m/s horizontally forward

27. (a) cos 40° 0 and sin 40° 220 N 0; 342 N and 262 N (b) cos 40° (220 N) sin 40° 0 and sin 40 (220 N) cos 40° 0; 262 N and 342 N (c) The results agree. The methods are of the same level of difficulty. Each involves one equation in one unknown and one equation in two unknowns. If we are interested in finding without finding , method (b) is simpler.

29. (a) 7.0 m/s horizontal and to the right (b) 21 N (c) 14 N horizontal and to the right

31. (a)



(b) 613 N

33. 253 N, 165 N, 325 N

35. 100 N and 204 N

37. 8.66 N east

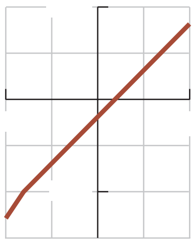
39. (a) tan (b) 4.16 m/s

41. (a) 646 N up (b) 646 N up (c) 627 N up (d) 589 N up

43. (a) 79.8 N, 39.9 N (b) 2.34 m/s

45. (a) 19.6 N (b) 78.4 N

(c)



47. 3.73 m

49. (a) 2.20 m/s (b) 27.4 N

51. (a) 706 N (b) 814 N (c) 706 N (d) 648 N

53. 1.76 kN to the left

55. a) 0.306 (b) 0.245

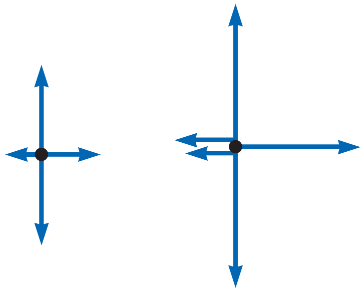
57. = 0.727, 0.577

59. (a) 1.11 s (b) 0.875 s

61. (a) 1.78 m/s (b) 0.368 (c) 9.37 N (d) 2.67 m/s

63. 37.8 N

65. (a)



(b) 1.29 m/s to the right (c) 27.2 N

67. 6.84 m

69. 0.060 0 m

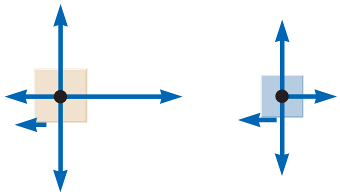
71. (a) 0.087 1 (b) 27.4 N

73. (a) Removing mass (b) 13.7 mi/h · s

75. (a) (b) ——

77. (a) 2.22 m (b) 8.74 m/s down the incline

79. (a)

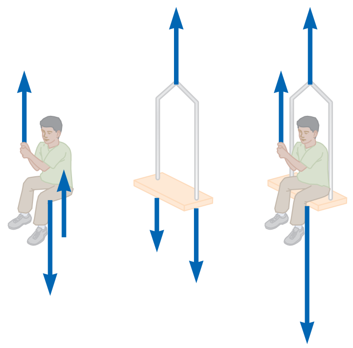


(b) (c) (d) (e)

(f) $\frac{-\mu \quad -\mu}{}$

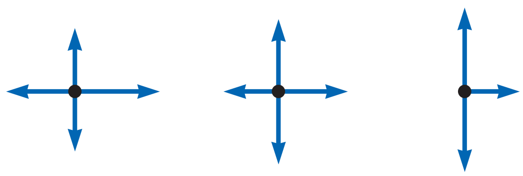
(g) —— $-\mu$

81. (a)



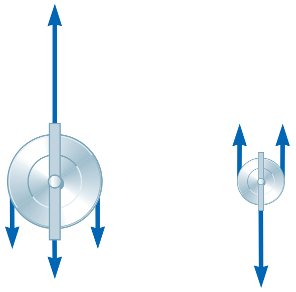
(b) 0.408 m/s (c) 83.3 N

83. (a)



(b) 2.00 m/s to the right (c) 4.00 N on , 6.00 N right on , 8.00 N right on (d) 14.0 N between and , 8.00 N between and (e) The block models the heavy block of wood. The contact force on your back is modeled by the force between the and the blocks, which is much less than the force . The difference between and this contact force is the net force causing the acceleration of the 5-kg pair of objects. The acceleration is real and nonzero, but it lasts for so short a time that it is never associated with a large velocity. The frame of the building and your legs exert forces, small in magnitude relative to the hammer blow, to bring the partition, block, and you to rest again over a time interval large relative to the hammer blow.

85. (a) *Upper pulley:* *Lower pulley:*



(b) /2, /2, /2, 3 /2, (c)

87. 0.287

89. (b) If is greater than tan (1/), motion is impossible.

91. (a) The net force on the cushion is in a fixed direction, downward and forward making angle tan) with the vertical. Starting from rest, it will move along this line with (b) increasing speed. Its velocity changes in magni tude. (c) 1.63 m (d) It will move along a parabola. The axis of the parabola is parallel to the line described in part (a). If the cushion is thrown in a direction above this line, its path will be concave downward, making its veloc ity become more and more nearly parallel to the line over time. If the cushion is thrown down more steeply, its path will be concave upward, again making its velocity turn toward the fixed direction of its acceleration.

95. (a) 30.7° (b) 0.843 N

97. 72.0 N

99. (a) 0.931 m/s (b) From a value of 0.625 m/s for large , the acceleration gradually increases, passes through a maximum, and then drops more rapidly, becoming nega tive and reaching 2.10 m/s at 0.
(c) 0.976 m/s at 25.0 cm (d) 6.10 cm

101. (a) 4.90 m/s (b) 3.13 m/s at 30.0° below the horizontal (c) 1.35 m (d) 1.14 s
(e) The mass of the block makes no difference.

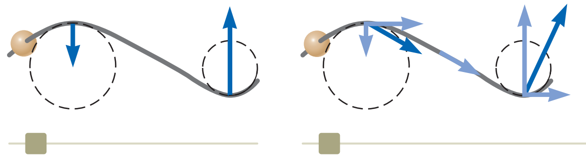
103. (a) 2.13 s (b) 1.66 m

Chapter 6

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(i) (a) **(ii)** (b)

(i) Because the speed is constant, the only direction the force can have is that of the centripetal acceleration. The force is larger at than at because the radius at is smaller. There is no force at because the wire is straight. **(ii)** In addition to the forces in the centripetal direction in part (a), there are now tangential forces to provide the tangential acceleration. The tangential force is the same at all three points because the tangential acceleration is constant.



3. (c)

4. (a)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

any speed up to 8.08 m/s
(a) 8.33 N toward the nucleus
(b) 9.15 m/s inward

5. 6.22
2.14 rev/min

9. (a) static friction (b) 0.085 0

11. 14.3 m/s

13. (a) 1.33 m/s (b) 1.79 m/s at 48.0° inward from the direc tion of the velocity

15. (a) (b) 2

17. (a) 8.62 m (b) , downward (c) 8.45 m/s (d) Calcu lation of the normal force shows it to be negative, which is impossible. We interpret it to mean that the normal force goes to zero at some point and the passengers will fall out of their seats near the top of the ride if they are not restrained in some way. We could arrive at this same result without calculating the normal force by noting that the acceleration in part (c) is smaller than that due to gravity. The teardrop shape has the advantage of a larger acceleration of the riders at the top of the arc for a path having the same height as the circular path, so the pas sengers stay in the cars.

19. No. The archeologist needs a vine of tensile strength equal to or greater than 1.38 kN to make it across.

21. (a) 17.0° (b) 5.12 N

23. (a) 491 N (b) 50.1 kg (c) 2.00 m/s

25. 0.527

27. 0.212 m/s , opposite the velocity vector

29. 3.01 N up

31. (a) 1.47 N s/m (b) 2.04 s (c) 2.94

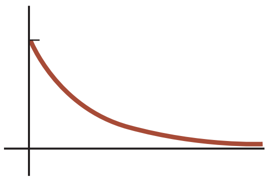
35. (a) 0.034 7 s (b) 2.50 m/s (c)

37. (a) At , the velocity is eastward and the acceleration is southward. (b) At , the velocity is southward and the acceleration is westward.

39. 781 N

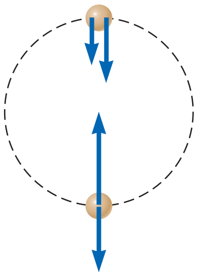
41. (a) mg $\frac{mv}{}$ (b) $\sqrt{gR}$

43. (a) $^{bt/}$ (b)



(c) In this model, the object keeps moving forever. (d) It travels a finite distance in an infinite time interval.

45. (a) the downward gravitational force and the tension force in the string, always directed toward the center of the path

(b)  (c) 6.05 N (d) 7.82 m/s

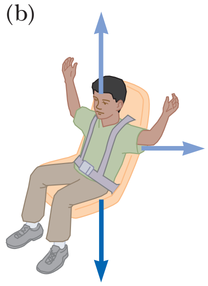
47. (a) 106 N up the incline (b) 0.396

49. (a) 0.016 2 kg/m (b) – (c) 0.778 (d) 1.5% (e) For nested coffee filters falling in air at terminal speed, the graph of air resistance force as a function of the square of speed demonstrates that the force is proportional to the speed squared, within the experimental uncertainty estimated as 2%. This proportionality agrees with the theoretical model of air resistance at high speeds. The drag coefficient of a coffee filter is 0.78 2%.

51. (cos tan sin

53. (a) The only horizontal force on the car is the force of friction, with a maximum value determined by the surface roughness (described by the coefficient of static friction) and the normal force (here equal to the gravitational force on the car). (b) 34.3 m (c) 68.6 m (d) Braking is better. You should not turn the wheel. If you used any of the available friction force to change the direction of the car, it would be unavailable to slow the car and the stopping distance would be greater. (e) The conclusion is true in general. The radius of the curve you can barely make is twice your minimum stopping distance.

55. (a) 735 N (b) 732 N (c) The gravitational force is larger. The normal force is smaller, just like it is when going over the top of a Ferris wheel.

57. (a) 5.19 m/s (b)  (c) 555 N

59. (b) The gravitational and friction forces remain constant, the normal force increases, and the person remains in motion with the wall. (c) The gravitational force remains constant, the normal and friction forces decrease, and the person slides relative to the wall and downward into the pit.

61. (a) $_{\text{min}} \dfrac{\tan\theta - \mu}{+ \mu \tan}$ $_{\text{max}} \dfrac{\tan\theta + \mu}{- \mu \tan}$

(b) tan

63. 12.8 N

65. (a) 78.3 m/s (b) 11.1 s (c) 121 m

67. (a) 8.04 s (b) 379 m/s (c) 1.19 m/s (d) 9.55 cm

69. (a) 0.013 2 m/s (b) 1.03 m/s (c) 6.87 m/s

Chapter 7

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(a)

2. (c), (a), (d), (b)

3. (d)

4. (a)

5. (b)

6. (c)

(i) (c) **(ii)** (a)

8. (d)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 1.59 J (b) smaller (c) the same

3. (a) 472 J (b) 2.76 kN

5. (a) 31.9 J (b) 0 (c) 0 (d) 31.9 J

9. 16.0

11. (a) 16.0 J (b) 36.9°

13. 7.05 m at 28.4°

15. (a) 7.50 J (b) 15.0 J (c) 7.50 J (d) 30.0 J

17. (a) 0.938 cm (b) 1.25 J

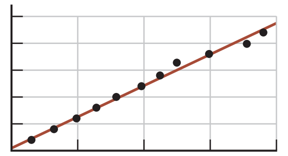
19. (a) 575 N/m (b) 46.0 J

21. (a) *mg* — — (b) — —

23. (a) Design the spring constant so that the weight of one tray removed from the pile causes an extension of the springs equal to the thickness of one tray. (b) 316 N/m (c) We do not need to know the length and width of the tray.

25. (b) *mgR*

27. (a)



(b) The slope of the line is 116 N/m. (c) We use all the points listed and also the origin. There is no visible evidence for a bend in the graph or nonlinearity near either end. (d) 116 N/m (e) 12.7 N

29. 50.0 J

31. (a) 60.0 J (b) 60.0 J

33. (a) 1.20 J (b) 5.00 m/s (c) 6.30 J

35. 878 kN up

37. (a) 4.56 kJ (b) 4.56 kJ (c) 6.34 kN (d) 422 km/s (e) 6.34 kN (f) The two theories agree.

39. (a) 97.8 J (b) 4.31 31.6 N (c) 8.73 m/s

41. (a) 2.5 J (b) 9.8 J (c) 12 J

43. (a) 196 J (b) 196 J (c) 196 J (d) The gravitational force is conservative.

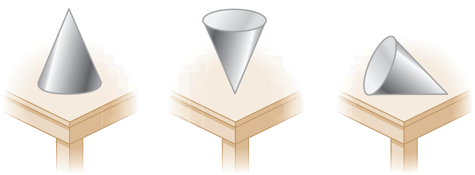
45. (a) 125 J (b) 50.0 J (c) 66.7 J (d) nonconservative (e) The work done on the particle depends on the path followed by the particle.

47. away from the other particle

49.

51. (a) 40.0 J (b) 40.0 J (c) 62.5 J

53.



55. 90.0 J

57. (a) 8 N/m (b) It lasts for a time interval. If the interaction occupied no time interval, the force exerted by each ball on the other would be infinite, and that can not happen. (c) 0.8 J (d) 0.15 mm (e) 10

59. 0.299 m/s

61. (a) 20.5 14.3 N 36.4 21.0 N
(b) 15.9 35.3 N
(c) 3.18 7.07 m
(d) 5.54 23.7 m
(e) 2.30 39.3 m (f) 1.48 kJ (g) 1.48 kJ
(h) The work–kinetic energy theorem is consistent with Newton's second law.

63. 0.131 m

65. (a) (b) The force must be conservative because the work the force does on the particle on which it acts depends only on the original and final positions of the particle, not on the path between them.

67. (a) 3.62 /(4.30 23.4), where is in meters and is in kilograms (b) 0.095 1 m (c) 0.492 m (d) 6.85 m (e) The situation is impossible. (f) The extension is directly proportional to when is only a few grams. Then it grows faster and faster, diverging to infinity for 0.184 kg.

Chapter 8

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(a) For the television set, energy enters by electrical transmission (through the power cord). Energy leaves by heat (from hot surfaces into the air), mechanical waves (sound from the speaker), and electromagnetic radia tion (from the screen). (b) For the gasoline-powered lawn mower, energy enters by matter transfer (gasoline). Energy leaves by work (on the blades of grass), mechani cal waves (sound), and heat (from hot surfaces into the air). (c) For the hand-cranked pencil sharpener, energy enters by work (from your hand turning the crank). Energy leaves by work (done on the pencil), mechanical waves (sound), and heat due to the temperature increase from friction.

2. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (b) **(iii)** (a)

3. (a)

4.

5. (c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) $_{\text{int}}$ $_{\text{ER}}$
(b) $_{\text{int}}$
(c) (d) 0 $_{\text{ER}}$

3. 10.2 m

5. (a) $^{1/2}$ (b) 0.098 0 N down

(a) 4.43 m/s (b) 5.00 m

9. 5.49 m/s

11. $\frac{gh}{15}$

13. ——

15. (a) 0.791 m/s (b) 0.531 m/s

17. (a) 5.60 J (b) 2.29 rev

19. (a) 168 J

21. (a) 1.40 m/s (b) 4.60 cm after release (c) 1.79 m/s

23. (a) 160 J (b) 73.5 J (c) 28.8 N (d) 0.679

25. (a) 4.12 m (b) 3.35 m

27. (a) Isolated. The only external influence on the system is the normal force from the slide, but this force is always perpendicular to its displacement so it performs no work on the system. (b) No, the slide is frictionless.
(c) $_{\text{system}}$ mgh (d) $_{\text{system}}$ $-mgh$ –
(e) $_{\text{system}}$ mgy $_{\text{max}}$ –
(f) $\frac{gh}{}$ (g) $_{\text{max}}$ – cos) (h) If friction is present, mechanical energy of the system would *not* be conserved, so the child's kinetic energy at all points after leaving the top of the waterslide would be reduced when compared with the frictionless case. Consequently, her launch speed and maximum height would be reduced as well.

29. 1.23 kW

31. 4.5

33. $145

35.

37. (a) 423 mi/gal (b) 776 mi/gal

39. 236 s or 3.93 min

41. (a) 10.2 kW (b) 10.6 kW (c) 5.82 MJ

43. (a) 0.588 J (b) 0.588 J (c) 2.42 m/s
(d) 0.196 J, 0.392 J

45. ——

47. (a) , where is in seconds and is in joules (b) 12 and 48 , where is in seconds, is in m/s , and is in newtons (c) P 48 288 , where is in seconds and is in watts (d) 1.25

49. (a) 11.1 m/s (b) 1.00 J (c) 1.35 m

51. (a) 6.08 J (b) 4.59 J (c) 4.59

53. (a) 4.0 mm (b) 1.0 cm

55. (a) 2.17 kW (b) 58.6 kW

57. (a) 1.38 J (b) 5.51
(c) The value in part (b) represents only energy that leaves the engine and is transformed to kinetic energy of the car. Additional energy leaves the energy by sound and heat. More energy leaves the engine to do work against friction forces and air resistance.

59. (a) 1.53 J at 6.00 cm, 0 J at 0 (b) 1.75 m/s (c) 1.51 m/s (d) The answer to part (c) is not half the answer to part (b) because the equation for the speed of an oscillator is not linear in position

61. (a) 100 J (b) 0.410 m (c) 2.84 m/s (d) 9.80 mm (e) 2.85 m/s

63. 0.328

65. (a) 0.400 m (b) 4.10 m/s (c) The block stays on the track.

67. 33.4 kW

69.

71. 2.92 m/s
75. (b) 0.342
77. (a) 14.1 m/s (b) 800 N (c) 771 N (d) 1.57 kN up
79. (a) $-\mu_k gx/L$ (b) $(\mu_k gL)^{1/2}$
81. (a) 6.15 m/s (b) 9.87 m/s
83. less dangerous
85. (a) 25.8 m (b) 27.1 m/s^2

Chapter 9

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (d)
2. (b), (c), (a)
3. **(i)** (c), (e) **(ii)** (b), (d)
4. (a) All three are the same. (b) dashboard, seat belt, air bag
5. (a)
6. (b)
7. (b)
8. **(i)** (a) **(ii)** (b)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. (b) $p = \sqrt{2mK}$
3. 7.00 N
5. $\vec{\mathbf{F}}_{\text{on bat}} = (+3.26\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 3.99\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ kN
7. (a) $\vec{\mathbf{v}}_{pi} = -\left(\dfrac{m_g}{m_g + m_p}\right)v_{gp}\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ (b) $\vec{\mathbf{v}}_{gi} = \left(\dfrac{m_p}{m_g + m_p}\right)v_{gp}\hat{\mathbf{i}}$
9. 40.5 g
11. (a) $-6.00\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s (b) 8.40 J (c) The original energy is in the spring. (d) A force had to be exerted over a displacement to compress the spring, transferring energy into it by work. The cord exerts force, but over no displacement. (e) System momentum is conserved with the value zero. (f) The forces on the two blocks are internal forces, which cannot change the momentum of the system; the system is isolated. (g) Even though there is motion afterward, the final momenta are of equal magnitude in opposite directions, so the final momentum of the system is still zero.
13. (a) 13.5 N · s (b) 9.00 kN
15. (c) no difference
17. (a) 9.60×10^{-2} s (b) 3.65×10^5 N (c) 26.6g
19. (a) $12.0\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ N · s (b) $4.80\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s (c) $2.80\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s (d) $2.40\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ N
21. 16.5 N
23. 301 m/s
25. (a) 2.50 m/s (b) 37.5 kJ
27. (a) 0.284 (b) 1.15×10^{-13} J and 4.54×10^{-14} J
29. (a) 4.85 m/s (b) 8.41 m
31. 91.2 m/s
33. 0.556 m
35. (a) 1.07 m/s at $-29.7°$ (b) $\dfrac{\Delta K}{K_i} = -0.318$
37. $(3.00\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 1.20\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ m/s
39. $v_O = v_i \cos\theta$, $v_Y = v_i \sin\theta$
41. 2.50 m/s at $-60.0°$
43. (a) $(-9.33\hat{\mathbf{i}} - 8.33\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ Mm/s (b) 439 fJ
45. $\vec{\mathbf{r}}_{\text{CM}} = (0\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 1.00\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ m
47. 3.57×10^8 J
49. (a) 15.9 g (b) 0.153 m
51. (a) $(1.40\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 2.40\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ m/s (b) $(7.00\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 12.0\hat{\mathbf{j}})$ kg · m/s
53. 0.700 m
55. (a) $\vec{\mathbf{v}}_{1f} = -0.780\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s, $\vec{\mathbf{v}}_{2f} = 1.12\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s (b) $\vec{\mathbf{v}}_{\text{CM}} = 0.360\,\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s before and after the collision
57. (b) The bumper continues to exert a force to the left until the particle has swung down to its lowest point.
59. (a) $\sqrt{\dfrac{F(2d - \ell)}{2m}}$ (b) $\dfrac{F\ell}{2}$
61. 15.0 N in the direction of the initial velocity of the exiting water stream.
63. (a) 442 metric tons (b) 19.2 metric tons (c) It is much less than the suggested value of 442/2.50. Mathematically, the logarithm in the rocket propulsion equation is not a linear function. Physically, a higher exhaust speed has an extra-large cumulative effect on the rocket body's final speed by counting again and again in the speed the body attains second after second during its burn.
65. (a) zero (b) $\dfrac{mv_i}{\sqrt{2}}$ upward
67. 260 N normal to the wall
69. (a) $1.33\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s (b) $-235\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ N (c) 0.680 s (d) $-160\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ N · s and $+160\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ N · s (e) 1.81 m (f) 0.454 m (g) -427 J (h) $+107$ J (i) The change in kinetic energy of one member of the system, according to Equation 8.2, will be equal to the negative of the change in internal energy for that member: $\Delta K = -\Delta E_{\text{int}}$. The change in internal energy, in turn, is the product of the friction force and the distance through which the member moves. Equal friction forces act on the person and the cart, but the forces move through different distances, as we see in parts (e) and (f). Therefore, there are different changes in internal energy for the person and the cart and, in turn, different changes in kinetic energy. The total change in kinetic energy of the system, -320 J, becomes $+320$ J of extra internal energy in the entire system in this perfectly inelastic collision.
71. (a) Momentum of the bullet–block system is conserved in the collision, so you can relate the speed of the block and bullet immediately after the collision to the initial speed of the bullet. Then, you can use conservation of mechanical energy for the bullet–block–Earth system to relate the speed after the collision to the maximum height. (b) 521 m/s upward
73. $2v_i$ for the particle with mass m and 0 for the particle with mass $3m$.
75. (a) $\dfrac{m_1v_1 + m_2v_2}{m_1 + m_2}$ (b) $(v_1 - v_2)\sqrt{\dfrac{m_1m_2}{k(m_1 + m_2)}}$
(c) $v_{1f} = \dfrac{(m_1 - m_2)v_1 + 2m_2v_2}{m_1 + m_2}$,
$v_{2f} = \dfrac{2m_1v_1 + (m_2 - m_1)v_2}{m_1 + m_2}$
77. m_1: 13.9 m m_2: 0.556 m
79. 0.960 m
81. 143 m/s
83. (a) 0; inelastic (b) $(-0.250\,\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 0.75\,\hat{\mathbf{j}} - 2.00\,\hat{\mathbf{k}})$ m/s; perfectly inelastic (c) either $a = -6.74$ with $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = -0.419\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ m/s or $a = 2.74$ with $\vec{\mathbf{v}} = -3.58\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ m/s
85. 0.403
87. (a) $-0.256\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s and $0.128\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s (b) $-0.064\,2\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s and 0 (c) 0 and 0
89. (a) 100 m/s (b) 374 J

91. (a) 2.67 m/s (incident particle), 10.7 m/s (target particle) (b) −5.33 m/s (incident particle), 2.67 m/s (target particle) (c) 7.11×10^{-3} J in case (a) and 2.84×10^{-2} J in case (b). The incident particle loses more kinetic energy in case (a), in which the target mass is 1.00 g.
93. (a) particle of mass m: $\sqrt{2}v_i$; particle of mass $3m$: $\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}v_i$ (b) 35.3°
95. (a) $v_{\text{CM}} = \sqrt{\dfrac{F}{2m}(x_1 + x_2)}$
(b) $\theta = \cos^{-1}\left[1 - \dfrac{F}{2mgL}(x_1 - x_2)\right]$

Chapter 10

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. **(i)** (c) **(ii)** (b)
2. (b)
3. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (a)
4. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (a)
5. (b)
6. (a)
7. (b)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. (a) 7.27×10^{-5} rad/s (b) Because of its angular speed, the Earth bulges at the equator.
3. (a) 5.00 rad, 10.0 rad/s, 4.00 rad/s^2 (b) 53.0 rad, 22.0 rad/s, 4.00 rad/s^2
5. (a) 4.00 rad/s^2 (b) 18.0 rad
7. (a) 5.24 s (b) 27.4 rad
9. (a) 8.21×10^2 rad/s^2 (b) 4.21×10^3 rad
11. 13.7 rad/s^2
13. 3.10 rad/s
15. (a) 0.180 rad/s (b) 8.10 m/s^2 radially inward
17. (a) 25.0 rad/s (b) 39.8 rad/s^2 (c) 0.628 s
19. (a) 8.00 rad/s (b) 8.00 m/s (c) 64.1 m/s^2 at an angle 3.58° from the radial line to point P (d) 9.00 rad
21. (a) 126 rad/s (b) 3.77 m/s (c) 1.26 km/s^2 (d) 20.1 m
23. 0.572
25. (a) 3.47 rad/s (b) 1.74 m/s (c) 2.78 s (d) 1.02 rotations
27. −3.55 N · m
29. 21.5 N
31. 177 N
33. (a) 24.0 N · m (b) 0.035 6 rad/s^2 (c) 1.07 m/s^2
35. (a) 21.6 kg · m^2 (b) 3.60 N · m (c) 52.5 rev
37. 0.312
39. (a) 5.80 kg · m^2 (b) Yes, knowing the height of the door is unnecessary.
41. 1.28 kg · m^2
43. $\frac{11}{12}mL^2$
45. (a) 143 kg · m^2 (b) 2.57 kJ
47. (a) 24.5 m/s (b) no (c) no (d) no (e) no (f) yes
49. 1.03×10^{-3} J
51. 149 rad/s
53. (a) 1.59 m/s (b) 53.1 rad/s
55. (a) 11.4 N (b) 7.57 m/s^2 (c) 9.53 m/s (d) 9.53 m/s
57. (a) $2(Rg/3)^{1/2}$ (b) $4(Rg/3)^{1/2}$ (c) $(Rg)^{1/2}$
59. (a) 500 J (b) 250 J (c) 750 J
61. (a) $\frac{2}{3}g\sin\theta$ (b) The acceleration of $\frac{1}{2}g\sin\theta$ for the hoop is smaller than that for the disk. (c) $\frac{1}{3}\tan\theta$
63. (a) The disk (b) disk: $\sqrt{\frac{4}{3}gh}$; hoop: $\sqrt{gh}$
65. (a) 1.21×10^{-4} kg · m^2 (b) Knowing the height of the can is unnecessary. (c) The mass is not uniformly distributed; the density of the metal can is larger than that of the soup.
67. (a) 4.00 J (b) 1.60 s (c) 0.80 m
69. (a) 12.5 rad/s (b) 128 rad
71. (a) 0.496 W (b) 413 W
73. (a) $(3g/L)^{1/2}$ (b) $3g/2L$ (c) $-\frac{3}{2}g\,\hat{\mathbf{i}} - \frac{3}{4}g\,\hat{\mathbf{j}}$ (d) $-\frac{3}{2}Mg\,\hat{\mathbf{i}} + \frac{1}{4}Mg\,\hat{\mathbf{j}}$
75. $\dfrac{g(h_2 - h_1)}{2\pi R^2}$
77. (a) Particle under a net force (b) Rigid object under a net torque (c) 118 N (d) 156 N (e) $\dfrac{r^2}{a}(T_2 - T_1)$ (f) 1.17 kg · m^2
79. $\omega = \sqrt{\dfrac{2mgd\sin\theta + kd^2}{I + mR^2}}$
81. $\sqrt{\dfrac{10}{7}\left[\dfrac{g(R-r)(1-\cos\theta)}{r^2}\right]}$
83. (a) $2.70R$ (b) $F_x = -20mg/7$, $F_y = -mg$
85. (a) $\sqrt{\frac{3}{4}gh}$ (b) $\sqrt{\frac{3}{4}gh}$
87. (a) 0.800 m/s^2 (b) 0.400 m/s^2 (c) 0.600 N, 0.200 N forward
89. (a) $\sigma = 0.060\,2\ \text{s}^{-1}$, $\omega_0 = 3.50$ rad/s (b) $\alpha = -0.176$ rad/s^2 (c) 1.29 rev (d) 9.26 rev
91. (b) to the left
93. (a) 2.88 s (b) 12.8 s

Chapter 11

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (d)
2. **(i)** (a) **(ii)** (c)
3. (b)
4. (a)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. $\hat{\mathbf{i}} + 8.00\,\hat{\mathbf{j}} + 22.0\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$
3. (a) $7.00\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ (b) 60.3°
5. (a) 30 N · m (counterclockwise) (b) 36 N · m (counterclockwise)
7. 45.0°
9. (a) $F_3 = F_1 + F_2$ (b) no
11. $17.5\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ kg · m^2/s
13. $m(xv_y - yv_x)\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$
15. (a) zero (b) $(-mv_i^3 \sin^2\theta\cos\theta/2g)\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ (c) $(-2mv_i^3\sin^2\theta\cos\theta/g)\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ (d) The downward gravitational force exerts a torque on the projectile in the negative z direction.
17. $mvR[\cos(vt/R) + 1]\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$
19. $60.0\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ kg · m^2/s
21. (a) $-m\ell gt\cos\theta\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ (b) The Earth exerts a gravitational torque on the ball. (c) $-mg\ell\cos\theta\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$
23. 1.20 kg · m^2/s
25. (a) 0.360 kg · m^2/s (b) 0.540 kg · m^2/s
27. (a) 0.433 kg · m^2/s (b) 1.73 kg · m^2/s
29. (a) 1.57×10^8 kg · m^2/s (b) 6.26×10^3 s = 1.74 h
31. 7.14 rev/min

33. (a) The mechanical energy of the system is not constant. Some chemical energy is converted into mechanical energy. (b) The momentum of the system is not constant. The turntable bearing exerts an external northward force on the axle. (c) The angular momentum of the system is constant. (d) 0.360 rad/s counterclockwise (e) 99.9 J

35. (a) 11.1 rad/s counterclockwise (b) No; 507 J is trans formed into internal energy. (c) No; the turntable bear ing promptly imparts impulse 44.9 kg m/s north into the turntable–clay system and thereafter keeps changing the system momentum.

37. (a) down (b) /(

39. (a) (b) No; some mechanical energy of the system changes into internal energy. (c) The momentum of the system is not constant. The axle exerts a backward force on the cylinder when the clay strikes.

41. (a) yes (b) 4.50 kg /s (c) No. In the perfectly inelastic collision, kinetic energy is transformed to internal energy. (d) 0.749 rad/s (e) The total energy of the system *must* be the same before and after the collision, assuming we ignore the energy leaving by mechanical waves (sound) and heat (from the newly-warmer door to the cooler air). The kinetic energies are as follows: 2.50 J; 1.69 J. Most of the initial kinetic energy is transformed to internal energy in the collision.

43. 5.46

45. 0.910 km/s

47. 7.50

49. (a) 7 /3 (b) *mgd* (c) 3 counterclockwise (d) 2 /7 upward (e) *mgd* (f) (g) 14*gd* (h) *gd* 21

51. (a) isolated system (angular momentum) (b) /2 (c) 12 (d) 12 (e) *mv* (f) −*mv* (g) (h)

53. (a) (b) ((c) −*mv*

55. (a) 3 750 kg m /s (b) 1.88 kJ (c) 3 750 kg m /s (d) 10.0 m/s (e) 7.50 kJ (f) 5.62 kJ

57. (a) 2 (b) 2 /3 (c) 4 /3 (d) 4 (e) (f) 26 /27 (g) No horizontal forces act on the bola from outside after release, so the horizontal momentum stays constant. Its center of mass moves steadily with the horizontal velocity it had at release. No torques about its axis of rotation act on the bola, so the angular momen tum stays constant. Internal forces cannot affect momen tum conservation and angular momentum conservation, but they can affect mechanical energy.

59. an increase of 6.368 % or 0.550 s, which is not significant

61. (a) (b) (c) (d) 18

63. −*ga*

Chapter 12

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(a)

2. (b)

3. (b)

4. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (a) **(iii)** (c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

0, 0, cos sin 0.5 cos

3. (3.85 cm, 6.85 cm)

5. 0.750 m

(2.54 m, 4.75 m)

9. 177 kg

11. Sam exerts an upward force of 176 N, and Joe exerts an upward force of 274 N.

13. (a) 268 N, 1 300 N (b) 0.324

15. (a) 29.9 N (b) 22.2 N

17. (a) 1.04 kN at 60.0° upward and to the right (b) 370 910 N

19. (a) 27.7 kN (b) 11.5 kN (c) 4.19 kN

21. (a) 859 N (b) 1.04 kN at 36.9° to the left and upward

23. 2.81 m

25. 501 N, 672 N, 384 N

27. (a) 0.053 (b) 1.09 kg/m (c) With only a 5% change in volume in this extreme case, liquid water is indeed nearly incompressible in bio logical and student laboratory situations.

29. 23.8

31. (a) 3.14 N (b) 6.28

33. 4.90 mm

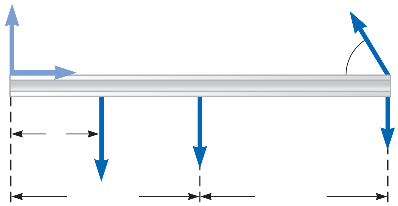
35. 0.029 2 mm

37. 5.98 N, 4.80

39. 0.896 m

41. 724 N, 716 N

43. (a)



(b) 343 N, 171 N to the right, 683 N up (c) 5.14 m

45. (a))/[sin (2)] (b)) cot /(2); /(2

47. 6.47 10 1.27 10 N, 6.47 10 N

49. (a) 5.08 kN (b) 4.77 kN (c) 8.26 kN

51. (a) − $\dfrac{\sin\theta - \cos}{\cos\theta - \mu \sin}$ (b) $+ \mu$ (c) $+ \mu$

53. (a) 9.28 kN (b) The moment arm of the force is no longer 70 cm from the shoulder joint but only 49.5 cm, therefore reducing to 6.56 kN.

55. (a) 66.7 N (b) increasing at 0.125 N/s

57. (a) 15 *mgd* (b) *mg* *mgd* (c) 15 *mgd* *mgd* (to the right and down ward on the right half of the ladder)

59. (a) 1.67 N, 3.33 N (b) 2.36 N

61. 5.73 rad/s
63. (a) 443 N (b) 221 N (to the right), 217 N (upward)
65. 9.00 ft
67. $3F_g/8$

Chapter 13

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (e)
2. (c)
3. (a)
4. (a) Perihelion (b) Aphelion (c) Perihelion (d) All points

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. 7.41×10^{-10} N
3. (a) 2.50×10^{-7} N toward the 500-kg object (b) between the objects and 2.45 m from the 500-kg object
5. 2.67×10^{-7} m/s^2
7. 2.97 nN
9. 2.00 kg and 3.00 kg
11. 0.614 m/s^2, toward Earth
13. (a) 7.61 cm/s^2 (b) 363 s (c) 3.08 km (d) 28.9 m/s at 72.9° below the horizontal
15. $\frac{GM}{\ell^2}(\frac{1}{2} + \sqrt{2})$ at 45° to the positive x axis
17. 1.50 h or 90.0 min
19. (a) 0.71 yr (b) The departure must be timed so that the spacecraft arrives at the aphelion when the target planet is there.
21. 1.26×10^{32} kg
23. 35.1 AU
25. 4.99 days
27. 8.92×10^7 m
29. (a) yes (b) 3.93 yr
31. 2.82×10^9 J
33. (a) 1.84×10^9 kg/m^3 (b) 3.27×10^6 m/s^2 (c) -2.08×10^{13} J
35. (a) -1.67×10^{-14} J (b) The particles collide at the center of the triangle.
37. 1.58×10^{10} J
39. (a) 4.69×10^8 J (b) -4.69×10^8 J (c) 9.38×10^8 J
41. 1.78×10^3 m
43. (a) 850 MJ (b) 2.71×10^9 J
45. (a) 5.30×10^3 s (b) 7.79 km/s (c) 6.43×10^9 J
47. (a) same size force (b) 15.6 km/s
49. 2.52×10^7 m
51. $\omega = 0.057\,2$ rad/s or 1 rev in 110 s
53. (a) 2.43 h (b) 6.59 km/s (c) 4.74 m/s^2 toward the Earth
55. 2.25×10^{-7}
57. (a) 1.00×10^7 m (b) 1.00×10^4 m/s
59. (a) 15.3 km (b) 1.66×10^{16} kg (c) 1.13×10^4 s (d) No; its mass is so large compared with yours that you would have a negligible effect on its rotation.
61. (a) $v_1 = m_2\sqrt{\frac{2G}{d(m_1 + m_2)}}$, $v_2 = m_1\sqrt{\frac{2G}{d(m_1 + m_2)}}$, $v_{\text{rel}} = \sqrt{\frac{2G(m_1 + m_2)}{d}}$ (b) 1.07×10^{32} J and 2.67×10^{31} J
63. (a) -7.04×10^4 J (b) -1.57×10^5 J (c) 13.2 m/s
65. 7.79×10^{14} kg
67. (a) 2×10^8 yr (b) ~ 10^{41} kg (c) 10^{11}
69. (a) 2.93×10^4 m/s (b) $K = 2.74 \times 10^{33}$ J, $U = -5.39 \times 10^{33}$ J (c) $K = 2.56 \times 10^{33}$ J, $U = -5.21 \times 10^{33}$ J (d) Yes; $E = -2.65 \times 10^{33}$ J at both aphelion and perihelion.
71. 119 km
73. $\sqrt{\frac{GM}{4R_E}}$
75. $(800 + 1.73 \times 10^{-4})\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s and $(800 - 1.73 \times 10^{-4})\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s
77. 18.2 ms
79. (a) -3.67×10^7 J (b) 9.24×10^{10} kg · m^2/s (c) $v = 5.58$ km/s, $r = 1.04 \times 10^7$ m (d) 8.69×10^6 m (e) 134 min

Chapter 14

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (a)
2. (a)
3. (c)
4. (b) or (c)
5. (a)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. 2.96×10^6 Pa
3. (a) 6.24 MPa (b) Yes; this pressure could puncture the vinyl flooring.
5. 24.8 kg
7. 8.46 m
9. 7.74×10^{-3} m^2
11. (a) 3.71×10^5 Pa (b) 3.57×10^4 N
13. 2.71×10^5 N
15. (a) 2.94×10^4 N (b) 1.63×10^4 N · m
17. 2.31 lb
19. 98.6 kPa
21. (a) 10.5 m (b) No. The vacuum is not as good because some alcohol and water will evaporate. The equilibrium vapor pressures of alcohol and water are higher than the vapor pressure of mercury.
23. (a) 116 kPa (b) 52.0 Pa
25. 0.258 N down
27. (a) 4.9 N down, 16.7 N up (b) 86.2 N (c) By either method of evaluation, the buoyant force is 11.8 N up.
29. (a) 7.00 cm (b) 2.80 kg
31. (a) 1 250 kg/m^3 (b) 500 kg/m^3
33. (a) 408 kg/m^3 (b) When m is less than 0.310 kg, the wooden block will be only partially submerged in the water. (c) When m is greater than 0.310 kg, the wooden block and steel object will sink.
35. (a) 3.82×10^3 N (b) 1.04×10^3 N; the balloon rises because the net force is positive: the upward buoyant force is greater than the downward gravitational force. (c) 106 kg
37. (a) 11.6 cm (b) 0.963 g/cm^3 (c) No; the density ρ is not linear in h.
39. 1.52×10^3 m^3
41. (a) 17.7 m/s (b) 1.73 mm
43. 0.247 cm
45. (a) 2.28 N toward Holland (b) 1.74×10^6 s
47. (a) 15.1 MPa (b) 2.95 m/s

49. (a) 1.91 m/s (b) 8.65×10^{-4} m^3/s
51. 347 m/s
53. (a) 4.43 m/s (b) 10.1 m
55. 12.6 m/s
57. (a) 1.02×10^7 Pa (b) 6.61×10^5 N
59. (a) 6.70 cm (b) 5.74 cm
61. 2.25 m
63. 455 kPa
65. 0.556 m
67. 160 kg/m^3
69. (a) 8.01 km (b) yes
71. upper scale: 17.3 N; lower scale: 31.7 N
73. 91.64%
75. 27 N · m
77. 758 Pa
79. 4.43 m/s
81. (a) 1.25 cm (b) 14.3 m/s
85. (a) 18.3 mm (b) 14.3 mm (c) 8.56 mm

Chapter 15

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (d)
2. (f)
3. (a)
4. (b)
5. (c)
6. **(i)** (a) **(ii)** (a)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. (a) 17 N to the left (b) 28 m/s^2 to the left
3. 0.63 s
5. (a) 1.50 Hz (b) 0.667 s (c) 4.00 m (d) π rad (e) 2.83 m
7. 0.628 m/s
9. 40.9 N/m
11. 12.0 Hz
13. (a) −2.34 m (b) −1.30 m/s (c) −0.076 3 m (d) 0.315 m/s
15. (a) $x = 2.00 \cos (3.00\pi t - 90°)$ or $x = 2.00 \sin (3.00\pi t)$ where x is in centimeters and t is in seconds (b) 18.8 cm/s (c) 0.333 s (d) 178 cm/s^2 (e) 0.500 s (f) 12.0 cm
17. (a) 20 cm (b) 94.2 cm/s as the particle passes through equilibrium (c) ± 17.8 m/s^2 at maximum excursion from equilibrium
19. (a) 40.0 cm/s (b) 160 cm/s^2 (c) 32.0 cm/s (d) −96.0 cm/s^2 (e) 0.232 s
21. 2.23 m/s
23. (a) 0.542 kg (b) 1.81 s (c) 1.20 m/s^2
25. 2.60 cm and −2.60 cm
27. (a) 28.0 mJ (b) 1.02 m/s (c) 12.2 mJ (d) 15.8 mJ
29. (a) $\frac{8}{9}E$ (b) $\frac{1}{9}E$ (c) $x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}A$ (d) No; the maximum potential energy is equal to the total energy of the system. Because the total energy must remain constant, the kinetic energy can never be greater than the maximum potential energy.
31. (a) 4.58 N (b) 0.125 J (c) 18.3 m/s^2 (d) 1.00 m/s (e) smaller (f) the coefficient of kinetic friction between the block and surface (g) 0.934
33. (b) 0.628 s
35. (a) 1.50 s (b) 0.559 m
37. 0.944 kg · m^2
39. 1.42 s, 0.499 m
41. (a) 0.820 m/s (b) 2.57 rad/s^2 (c) 0.641 N (d) $v_{\max} = 0.817$ m/s, $\alpha_{\max} = 2.54$ rad/s^2, $F_{\max} = 0.634$ N (e) The answers are close but not exactly the same. The answers computed from conservation of energy and from Newton's second law are more precise.
43. (a) 3.65 s (b) 6.41 s (c) 4.24 s
45. (a) 5.00×10^{-7} kg · m^2 (b) 3.16×10^{-4} N · m/rad
47. (a) 7.00 Hz (b) 2.00% (c) 10.6 s
51. 11.0 cm
53. (a) 3.16 s^{-1} (b) 6.28 s^{-1} (c) 5.09 cm
55. 0.641 Hz or 1.31 Hz
57. (a) 2.09 s (b) 0.477 Hz (c) 36.0 cm/s (d) $E = 0.064\,8m$, where E is in joules and m is in kilograms (e) $k = 9.00m$, where k is in newtons/meter and m is in kilograms (f) Period, frequency, and maximum speed are all independent of mass in this situation. The energy and the force constant are directly proportional to mass.
59. (a) $2Mg$ (b) $Mg\left(1 + \frac{y}{L}\right)$ (c) $\frac{4\pi}{3}\sqrt{\frac{2L}{g}}$ (d) 2.68 s
61. 1.56×10^{-2} m
63. (a) $L_{\text{Earth}} = 25$ cm (b) $L_{\text{Mars}} = 9.4$ cm (c) $m_{\text{Earth}} = 0.25$ kg (d) $m_{\text{Mars}} = 0.25$ kg
65. 6.62 cm
67. $\frac{1}{2\pi L}\sqrt{gL + \frac{kh^2}{M}}$
69. 7.75 s^{-1}
71. (a) 1.26 m (b) 1.58 (c) The energy decreases by 120 J. (d) Mechanical energy is transformed into internal energy in the perfectly inelastic collision.
73. (a) $\omega = \sqrt{\frac{200}{0.400 + M}}$, where ω is in s^{-1} and M is in kilograms (b) 22.4 s^{-1} (c) 22.4 s^{-1}
75. (a) 3.00 s (b) 14.3 J (c) $\theta = 25.5°$
77. (b) 1.46 s
79. (a) $x = 2 \cos\left(10t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ (b) ± 1.73 m (c) 0.105 s = 105 ms (d) 0.098 0 m
81. (b) $T = \frac{2}{r}\sqrt{\frac{\pi M}{\rho g}}$
83. 9.12×10^{-5} s
85. (a) 0.500 m/s (b) 8.56 cm
87. (a) $\frac{1}{2}(M + \frac{1}{3}m)v^2$ (b) $2\pi\sqrt{\frac{M + \frac{1}{3}m}{k}}$
89. (a) $\frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{g}}\sqrt{L_i + \frac{1}{2\rho a^2}\left(\frac{dM}{dt}\right)t}$ (b) $2\pi\sqrt{\frac{L_i}{g}}$

Chapter 16

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (a)
2. **(i)** (c) **(ii)** (b) **(iii)** (d)
3. (c)
4. (f) and (h)
5. (d)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. 184 km
3. $y = \dfrac{6.00}{(x - 4.50t)^2 + 3.00}$ where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds
5. (a) 2.00 cm (b) 2.98 m (c) 0.576 Hz (d) 1.72 m/s
7. 0.319 m
9. (a) $3.33\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ m/s (b) −5.48 cm (c) 0.667 m (d) 5.00 Hz (e) 11.0 m/s
11. (a) 31.4 rad/s (b) 1.57 rad/m (c) $y = 0.120 \sin (1.57x - 31.4t)$, where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds (d) 3.77 m/s (e) 118 m/s^2
13. (a) 0.500 Hz (b) 3.14 rad/s (c) 3.14 rad/m (d) $0.100 \sin (\pi x - \pi t)$ (e) $0.100 \sin (-\pi t)$ (f) $0.100 \sin (4.71 - \pi t)$ (g) 0.314 m/s
15. (a) −1.51 m/s (b) 0 (c) 16.0 m (d) 0.500 s (e) 32.0 m/s
17. (a) 0.250 m (b) 40.0 rad/s (c) 0.300 rad/m (d) 20.9 m (e) 133 m/s (f) positive x direction
19. (a) $y = 0.080\,0 \sin (2.5\pi x + 6\pi t)$ (b) $y = 0.080\,0 \sin (2.5\pi x + 6\pi t - 0.25\pi)$
21. 185 m/s
23. 13.5 N
25. 80.0 N
27. 0.329 s
29. (a) 0.051 0 kg/m (b) 19.6 m/s
31. 631 N
33. (a) 1 (b) 1 (c) 1 (d) increased by a factor of 4
35. (a) 62.5 m/s (b) 7.85 m (c) 7.96 Hz (d) 21.1 W
37. (a) $y = 0.075 \sin (4.19x - 314t)$, where x and y are in meters and t is in seconds (b) 625 W
39. (a) 15.1 W (b) 3.02 J
45. 0.456 m/s
47. 14.7 kg
49. (a) 39.2 N (b) 0.892 m (c) 83.6 m/s
51. (a) 21.0 ms (b) 1.68 m
53. $\sqrt{\dfrac{mL}{Mg \sin \theta}}$
55. 0.084 3 rad
57. $\dfrac{1}{\omega}\sqrt{\dfrac{m}{M}}$
59. (a) $v = \sqrt{\dfrac{T}{\rho(1.00 \times 10^{-5}\, x + 1.00 \times 10^{-6})}}$, where v is in meters per second, T is in newtons, ρ is in kilograms per meter cubed, and x is in meters (b) $v(0) = 94.3$ m/s, $v(10.0\text{ m}) = 9.38$ m/s
61. (a) $\dfrac{\mu\omega^3}{2k} A_0^2 e^{-2bx}$ (b) $\dfrac{\mu\omega^3}{2k} A_0^2$ (c) e^{-2bx}
63. 3.86×10^{-4}
65. (a) $(0.707)(2\sqrt{L/g})$ (b) $L/4$
67. (a) μv_0^2 (b) v_0 (c) clockwise: 4π; counterclockwise: 0

Chapter 17

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (c)
2. (b)
3. (b)
4. (e)
5. (e)
6. (b)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. (a) 2.00 μm (b) 40.0 cm (c) 54.6 m/s (d) −0.433 μm (e) 1.72 mm/s
3. $\Delta P = 0.200 \sin (20\pi x - 6\,860\pi t)$ where ΔP is in pascals, x is in meters, and t is in seconds
5. 0.103 Pa
7. 0.196 s
9. (a) 0.625 mm (b) 1.50 mm to 75.0 μm
11. (a) 5.56 km (b) No. The speed of light is much greater than the speed of sound, so the time interval required for the light to reach you is negligible compared to the time interval for the sound.
13. 7.82 m
15. (a) 27.2 s (b) 25.7 s; the time interval in part (a) is longer.
17. (a) the pulse that travels through the rail (b) 23.4 ms
19. 66.0 dB
21. (a) 3.75 W/m^2 (b) 0.600 W/m^2
23. 3.0×10^{-8} W/m^2
25. (a) 0.691 m (b) 691 km
27. (a) 1.3×10^2 W (b) 96 dB
29. (a) 2.34 m (b) 0.390 m (c) 0.161 Pa (d) 0.161 Pa (e) 4.25×10^{-7} m (f) 7.09×10^{-8} m
31. (a) 1.32×10^{-4} W/m^2 (b) 81.2 dB
33. 68.3 dB
35. (a) 30.0 m (b) 9.49×10^5 m
37. (a) 475 Hz (b) 430 Hz
39. (a) 3.04 kHz (b) 2.08 kHz (c) 2.62 kHz; 2.40 kHz
41. (a) 441 Hz (b) 439 Hz (c) 54.0 dB
43. (a) 0.021 7 m/s (b) 28.9 Hz (c) 57.8 Hz
45. 26.4 m/s
47. (a) 56.3 s (b) 56.6 km farther along
49. 0.883 cm
51. (a) 0.515 trucks per minute (b) 0.614 trucks per minute
53. 67.0 dB
55. (a) 4.16 m (b) 0.455 μs (c) 0.157 mm
57. It is unreasonable, implying a sound level of 123 dB. Nearly all the decrease in mechanical energy becomes internal energy in the latch.
59. (a) 5.04×10^3 m/s (b) 1.59×10^{-4} s (c) 1.90×10^{-3} m (d) 2.38×10^{-3} (e) 4.76×10^8 N/m^2 (f) $\dfrac{\sigma_y}{\sqrt{\rho Y}}$
61. (a) 55.8 m/s (b) 2 500 Hz
63. (a) 3.29 m/s (b) The bat will be able to catch the insect because the bat is traveling at a higher speed in the same direction as the insect.
65. (a) 0.343 m (b) 0.303 m (c) 0.383 m (d) 1.03 kHz
67. (a) 0.983° (b) 4.40°
69. 1.34×10^4 N
71. (a) 531 Hz (b) 466 Hz to 539 Hz (c) 568 Hz

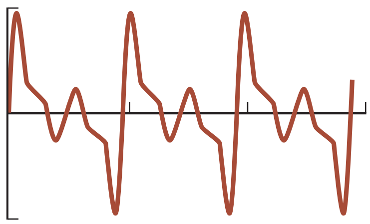
Chapter 18

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (c)
2. **(i)** (a) **(ii)** (d)
3. (d)
4. (b)
5. (c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

5.66 cm
3. (a) 1.65 cm (b) 6.02 cm (c) 1.15 cm
5. 91.3°
(a) : positive direction; : negative direction
(b) 0.750 s (c) 1.00 m
9. (a) 9.24 m (b) 600 Hz
11. (a) 156° (b) 0.058 4 cm
13. (c) Yes; the limiting form of the path is two straight lines through the origin with slope 0.75.
15. (a) 15.7 m (b) 31.8 Hz (c) 500 m/s
17. (a) 4.24 cm (b) 6.00 cm (c) 6.00 cm (d) 0.500 cm, 1.50 cm, 2.50 cm
19. at 0.089 1 m, 0.303 m, 0.518 m, 0.732 m, 0.947 m, and 1.16 m from one speaker
21. 19.6 Hz
23. (a) 163 N (b) 660 Hz
25. (a) second harmonic (b) 74.0 cm (c) 3
27. (a) 350 Hz (b) 400 kg
29. 1.86 g
31. (a) 3.8 cm (b) 3.85%
33. (a) three loops (b) 16.7 Hz (c) one loop
35. (a) 3.66 m/s (b) 0.200 Hz
37. 57.9 Hz
39. (a) 0.357 m (b) 0.715 m
41. (a) 0.656 m (b) 1.64 m
43. (a) 349 m/s (b) 1.14 m
45. (a) 0.195 m (b) 841 Hz
47. (0.252 m) with 1, 2, 3, . . .
49. 158 s
51. (a) 50.0 Hz (b) 1.72 m
53. (a) 21.5 m (b) seven
55. (a) 1.59 kHz (b) odd-numbered harmonics (c) 1.11 kHz
57. 5.64 beats/s
59. (a) 1.99 beats/s (b) 3.38 m/s
61. The following coefficients are approximate: 100, 156, 62, 104, 52, 29, 25.



63. 31.1 N
65. 800 m
67. 1.27 cm
69. 262 kHz
71. (a) 45.0 or 55.0 Hz (b) 162 or 242 N
73. (a) 0.078 2 — (b) 3 (c) 0.078 2 m
(d) The sphere floats on the water.
75. (a) 34.8 m/s (b) 0.986 m
77. 3.85 m/s away from the station or 3.77 m/s toward the station
79. 283 Hz
81. 407 cycles
83. (b) 11.2 m, 63.4°
85. (a) 78.9 N (b) 211 Hz
87. $\overline{15Mg}$

Chapter 19

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(c)
2. (c)
3. (c)
4. (c)
5. (a)
6. (b)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

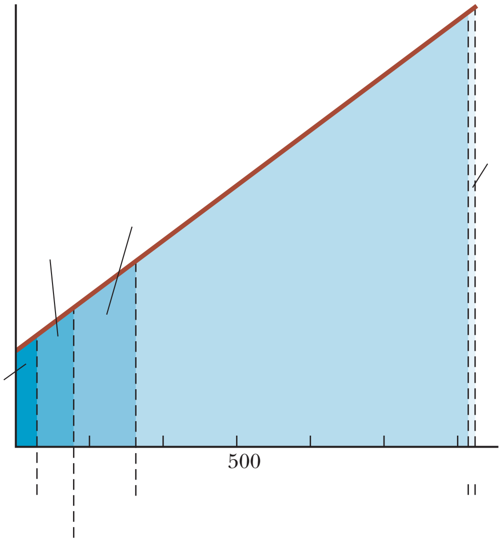
(a) 106.7°F (b) Yes; the normal body temperature is 98.6°F, so the patient has a high fever and needs immedi ate attention.
3. (a) 109°F, 195 K (b) 98.6°F, 310 K
5. (a) 320°F (b) 77.3 K
(a) 270°C (b) 1.27 atm, 1.74 atm
9. (a) 0.176 mm (b) 8.78 m (c) 0.093 0 cm
11. 3.27 cm
13. 1.54 km. The pipeline can be supported on rollers. -shaped loops can be built between straight sections. They bend as the steel changes length.
15. (a) 0.109 cm (b) increase
17. (a) 437°C (b) 2.1 °C (c) No; aluminum melts at 660°C (Table 20.2). Also, although it is not in Table 20.2, Internet research shows that brass (an alloy of copper and zinc) melts at about 900°C.
19. (a) 99.8 mL (b) It lies below the mark. The acetone has reduced in volume, and the flask has increased in volume.
21. (a) 99.4 mL (b) 2.01 L (c) 0.998 cm
23. (a) 11.2 kg/m (b) 20.0 kg
25. 1.02 gallons
27. 4.28 atm
29. (a) 2.99 mol (b) 1.80 molecules
31. 1.50 molecules
33. (a) 41.6 mol (b) 1.20 kg (c) This value is in agreement with the tabulated density.
35. 3.55 L
37. (a) 3.95 atm 400 kPa (b) 4.43 atm 449 kPa
39. 473 K
41. 3.68 cm
43. 1.89 MPa
45. 6.57
47. (a) 2.542 cm (b) 300°C
49. 1.12 atm
51. 3.37 cm
53. 0.094 2 Hz
55. (a) 94.97 cm (b) 95.03 cm
57. (b) As the temperature increases, the density decreases (assuming is positive). (c) 5 (°C)
(d) 2.5 (°C)
59. (a) 9.5 s (b) It loses 57.5 s.
61. (b) It assumes is much less than 1.
63. (a) yes, as long as the coefficients of expansion remain constant (b) The lengths and at 0°C need to sat isfy 17 . Then the steel rod must be longer. With 5.00 cm, the only possibility is 14.2 cm and 9.17 cm.

65. (a) 0.34% (b) 0.48% (c) All the moments of inertia have the same mathematical form: the product of a con stant, the mass, and a length squared.
67. 2.74 m
69. (a) $\frac{gP}{+ \rho\ gh}$ (b) decrease (c) — 10.3 m
73. (a) 6.17 kg/m (b) 632 N (c) 580 N (d) 192 Hz
75. No; steel would need to be 2.30 times stronger.
77. (a) (b) (2.00)% (c) 59.4% (d) With this approach, 102 mL of turpentine spills, 2.01 L remains in the cylinder at 80.0°C, and the turpentine level at 20.0°C is 0.969 cm below the cylinder's rim.
79. 4.54 m

Chapter 20

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(i) iron, glass, water **(ii)** water, glass, iron
2. The figure below shows a graphical representation of the internal energy of the system as a function of energy added. Notice that this graph looks quite different from Figure 20.3 in that it doesn't have the flat portions dur ing the phase changes. Regardless of how the tempera ture is varying in Figure 20.3, the internal energy of the system simply increases linearly with energy input; the line in the graph below has a slope of 1.



3.

Situation	System	Q	W	int
(a) Rapidly pumping up a bicycle tire	Air in the pump	0	+	+
(b) Pan of room-temperature water sitting on a hot stove	Water in the pan			
(c) Air quickly leaking out of a balloon	Air originally in the balloon		−	−

4. Path A is isovolumetric, path B is adiabatic, path C is iso thermal, and path D is isobaric.
5. (b)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 2.26 J (b) 2.80 steps (c) 6.99 steps
3. 23.6°C
5. 0.845 kg
1.78
9. 88.2 W
11. 29.6°C
13. (a) 1 822 J/kg °C (b) We cannot make a definite iden tification. It might be beryllium. (c) The material might be an unknown alloy or a material not listed in the table.
15. (a) 380 K (b) 2.04 atm
17. 2.27 km
19. 16.3°C
21. (a) 10.0 g of ice melts, 40.4°C (b) 8.04 g of ice melts, 0°C
23. (a) 0°C (b) 114 g
25. 466 J
27. (a) (b) According to nRV, it is pro portional to the square of the volume.
29. 1.18 MJ
31.

Process			int

33. 720 J
35. (a) 0.041 0 m (b) 5.48 kJ (c) 5.48 kJ
37. (a) 7.50 kJ (b) 900 K
39. (a) 0.048 6 J (b) 16.2 kJ (c) 16.2 kJ
41. (a) 9.08 kJ (b) 9.08 kJ
43. (a) 6.45 W (b) 5.57
45. 74.8 kJ
47. 3.49
49. (a) 1.19 (b) a factor of 1.19
51. 8.99 cm
53. (a) 1.85 ft °F h/Btu (b) a factor of 1.78
55. 51.2°C
57. (a) W (b) K/s
59. (a) 6.08 J (b) 4.56
61. (a) 17.2 L (b) 0.351 L/s
63. 1.90 J/kg
65. (a) 9.31 J (b) 8.47 J (c) 8.38
67. (a) 13.0°C (b) 0.532°C/s
69. (a) 2 000 W (b) 4.46°C
71. 2.35 kg
73. (5.87)°C
75. (a) 3.16 W (b) 3.17 (c) It is 0.408% larger. (d) 5.78
77. 3.76 m/s
79. 1.44 kg
81. (a) 4.19 mm/s (b) 12.6 mm/s
83. 3.66 10.2 h

Chapter 21

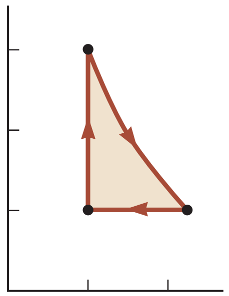
Answers to Quick Quizzes

(i) (b) **(ii)** (a)
2. **(i)** (a) **(ii)** (c)
3. (d)
4. (c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 3.54 atoms (b) 6.07 [21] J (c) 1.35 km/s
3. (a) 0.943 N (b) 1.57 Pa
5. 3.32 mol

5.05 21
9. (a) 4.00 u 6.64 27 kg (b) 55.9 u 9.28 kg (c) 207 u 3.44
11. (a) 2.28 kJ (b) 6.21 −21
13. 17.4 kPa
15. 13.5
17. (a) 3.46 kJ (b) 2.45 kJ (c) 1.01 kJ
19. 74.8 J
21. (a) 5.66 J (b) 1.12 kg
23. 2.32 21
25. (a) 41.6 J/K (b) 58.2 J/K (c) 58.2 J/K, 74.8 J/K
27. (a) a factor of 0.118 (b) a factor of 2.35 (c) 0 (d) 135 J (e) 135 J
29. 227 K
31. 25.0 kW
33. (a)



(b) 8.77 L (c) 900 K (d) 300 K (e) 336 J
35. 132 m/s
37. (a) 2.00 163 0 atoms (b) 2.70 atoms
39. (a) 2.37 K (b) 1.06
41. (b) 0.278
43. (b) 8.31 km
45. (a) 1.69 h (b) 1.00
47. (a) 367 K (b) The rms speed of nitrogen would be higher because the molar mass of nitrogen is less than that of oxygen. (c) 572 m/s
49. 5.74 Pa 56.6 atm
51. **(i)** (a) 100 kPa (b) 66.5 L (c) 400 K (d) 5.82 kJ (e) 7.48 kJ (f) 1.66 kJ; **(ii)** (a) 133 kPa (b) 49.9 L (c) 400 K (d) 5.82 kJ (e) 5.82 kJ (f) 0; **(iii)** (a) 120 kPa (b) 41.6 L (c) 300 K (d) 0 (e) 909 J (f) 909 J; **(iv)** (a) 120 kPa (b) 43.3 L (c) 312 K (d) 722 J (e) 0 (f) 722 J
53. 0.623
55. (a) 0.514 m (b) 2.06 m (c) 2.38 10 K (d) 480 kJ (e) 2.28 MJ
57. (a) 3.65 (b) 3.99 (c) 3.00 (d) $\frac{106}{\quad}$ (e) 7.98
59. (a) 300 K (b) 1.00 atm
61. (a) $_{\text{rms}}$ (18 $^{1/2}$ (4.81 $^{3/2}$, where $_{\text{rms}}$ is in meters per second and is in meters (b) (2.08 10 $^{5/2}$, where is in seconds and is in meters (c) 0.926 mm/s and 3.24 ms (d) 1.32 m/s and 3.88
63. 0.480°C
65. (a) 0.203 mol (b) 900 K (c) 900 K (d) 15.0 L (e) : Lock the piston in place and put the cylinder into an oven at 900 K. : Keep the gas in the oven while gradually letting the gas expand to lift the piston as far as it can. : Move the cylinder from the oven back to the 300-K room and let the gas cool and contract.

(f, g)

		,	int
	1.52		1.52
	1.67	1.67	
	2.53	1.01	1.52
ABCA	0.656	0.656	

67. (a) 1.09 (b) 2.69 (c) 0.529 (d) 1.00 (e) 0.199 (f) 1.01 (g) 1.25 1 082
71. (a) 3.34 molecules (b) during the 27th day (c) 2.53
73. (a) 0.510 m/s (b) 20 ms
75. 510 K and 290 K

Chapter 22

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(i) (c) **(ii)** (b)
2. (d)
3. C, B, A
4. (a) one (b) six
5. (a)
6. false (The adiabatic process must be *reversible* for the entropy change to be equal to zero.)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 10.7 kJ (b) 0.533 s
3. (a) 6.94% (b) 335 J
5. (a) 0.294 (or 29.4%) (b) 500 J (c) 1.67 kW
55.4%
9. (a) 75.0 kJ (b) 7.33
11. 77.8 W
13. (a) 4.51 J (b) 2.84 J (c) 68.1 kg
15. (a) 67.2% (b) 58.8 kW
17. (a) 8.70 J (b) 3.30
19. 9.00
21. 11.8
23. 1.86
25. (a) 564°C (b) No; a real engine will always have an efficiency *less* than the Carnot efficiency because it operates in an irreversible manner.
27. (a) 741 J (b) 459 J
29. (a) 9.10 kW (b) 11.9 kJ
31. (a) 564 K (b) 212 kW (c) 47.5%
33. (a) — 1.40 $\frac{0.5 \quad 383}{383}$ where is in megawatts and is in kelvins (b) The exhaust power decreases as the firebox temperature increases. (c) 1.87 MW (d) 3.84 K (e) No answer exists. The energy exhaust cannot be that small.
35. 1.17
37. (a) 244 kPa (b) 192 J
39. (a)

Macrostate	Microstates	Number of ways to draw
All R	RRR	
2 R, 1 G	GRR, RGR, RRG	
1 R, 2 G	GGR, GRG, RGG	
All G	GGG	

(b)

Macrostate	Microstates	Number of ways to draw
All R	RRRR	
4R, 1G	GRRRR, RGRRR, RRGRR, RRRGR, RRRRG	
3R, 2G	GGRRR, GRGRR, GRRGR, GRRRG, RGGRR, RGRGR, RGRRG, RRGGR, RRGRG, RRRGG	10
2R, 3G	RRGGG, RGRGG, RGGRG, RGGGR, GRRGG, GRGRG, GRGGR, GGRRG, GGRGR, GGGRR	10
1R, 4G	RGGGG, GRGGG, GGRGG, GGGRG, GGGGR	
All G		

41. (a) one (b) six
43. 143 J/K
45. 1.02 kJ/K
47. 57.2 J/K
49. 0.507 J/K
51. 195 J/K
53. (a) 3.45 J/K (b) 8.06 J/K (c) 4.62 J/K
55. 3.28 J/K
57. 32.9 kJ
59. (a) – (b) –
61. 0.440 44.0%
63. (a) 5.00 kW (b) 763 W
65. (a) 0.390 (b) 0.545
67. (a) $3nRT$ (b) $3nRT$ ln 2 (c) nRT (d) nRT ln 2 (e) $3nRT$ (1 ln 2) (f) 2 nRT ln 2 (g) 0.273
69. (a) 39.4 J (b) 65.4 rad/s 625 rev/min (c) 293 rad/s 2.79 rev/min
71. 5.97 kg/s
73. (a) 4.10 J (b) 1.42 J (c) 1.01 J (d) 28.8% (e) Because 80.0%, the efficiency of the cycle is much lower than that of a Carnot engine operating between the same temperature extremes.
75. (a) 0.476 J/K (b) 417 J
77. ln 3
79. (b) yes (c) No; the second law refers to an engine operating in a cycle, whereas this problem involves only a single process.
81. (a) 25.0 atm, 1.97 4.13 atm, 1.19 10 m 1.00 atm, 3.28 10 m 6.05 atm, 5.43 (b) 2.99

Chapter 23

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(a), (c), (e)
2. (e)
3. (b)
4. (a)
5.

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 1.60 C, 1.67 27 kg
(b) 1.60 C, 3.82 kg
(c) 1.60 C, 5.89 kg
(d) 3.20 C, 6.65 kg
(e) 4.80 C, 2.33 kg
(f) 6.40 C, 2.33 kg
(g) 1.12 C, 2.33 kg
(h) 1.60 C, 2.99
3. 57.5 N
5. 3.60 N downward
2.25 N/m
9. (a) 8.74 N (b) repulsive
11. (a) 1.38 N (b) 77.5° below the negative axis
13. (a) 0.951 m (b) yes, if the third bead has positive charge
15. 0.872 N at 330°
17. (a) 8.24 N (b) 2.19 m/s

19.

21. (a) 2.16 N toward the other
(b) 8.99 N away from the other
23. (a) 5.58 10 11 N (b) 1.02 10 N

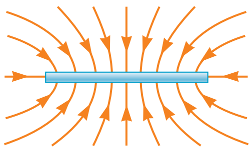
25. (a) 3.06 5.06 (b) 3.06 5.06

27. (a) [(
(b) [(

29. 1.82 m to the left of the 2.50- C charge
31. (a) 1.80 N/C to the right
(b) 8.98 N to the left
33. 5.25
35. (a) 0.599 2.70 kN (b) 3.00 13.5
37. (a) 1.59 N/C (b) toward the rod
39. (a) 6.64 N/C away from the center of the ring
(b) 2.41 N/C away from the center of the ring
(c) 6.39 N/C away from the center of the ring
(d) 6.64 N/C away from the center of the ring
41. (a) 9.35 N/C (b) 1.04 N/C (about 11% higher)
(c) 5.15 N/C (d) 5.19 N/C (about 0.7% higher)

43. (a) (b) to the left

45. (a) 2.16 N/C (b) to the left
47.



49. (a) – (b) is negative, and is positive.
51. (a) 6.13 m/s (b) 1.96 s (c) 11.7 m
(d) 1.20
53. 4.38 m/s for the electron; 2.39 m/s for the proton

55. (a) $\frac{}{ed}$ (b) in the direction of the velocity of the electron
57. (a) 111 ns (b) 5.68 mm (c) 450 102 km/s

59.

61. (a) $\frac{mg}{}$ sin (b) 3.19 N/C down the incline

63. ——

65. (a) 2.18 m (b) 2.43 cm
67. (a) 1.09 C (b) 5.44
69. (a) 24.2 N (b) 4.21 8.42
71. 0.706
73. 25.9 cm
75. 1.67
77. 1.98
79. 1.14 C on one sphere and 5.69 C on the other
81. (a)
83. (a) 0.307 s (b) Yes; the downward gravitational force is not negligible in this situation, so the tension in the string depends on both the gravitational force and the electric force.

85. (a) 1.90 — (b) 3.29 —

(c) away from the origin

89. 1.36 1.96 kN

91. (a) $\frac{935}{0.0625}$ where is in newtons per coulomb and is in meters (b) 4.00 kN
(c) 0.016 8 m and 0.916 m
(d) nowhere is the field as large as 16 000 N/C

Chapter 24

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(e)
2. (b) and (d)
3. (a)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 1.98 /C (b) 0
3. 4.14 MN/C
5. (a) 858 N /C (b) 0 (c) 657 N
28.2 N
9. (a) 6.89 MN /C (b) less than
11. for ; 0 for for ; 0 for
13. 1.77 C/m ; positive
15. (a) 339 N m /C (b) No. The electric field is not uniform on this surface. Gauss's law is only practical to use when all portions of the surface satisfy one or more of the conditions listed in Section 24.3.

17. (a) 0 (b) —

19. 18.8 kN

21. (a) — (b) —

23. 3.50 kN
25. 2.48 C/m
27. 508 kN/C up
29. (a) 0 (b) 7.19 MN/C away from the center
31. (a) 51.4 kN/C outward (b) 645 N

33. $= \rho$ away from the axis
35. (a) 0 (b) 3.65 N/C (c) 1.46 N/C
(d) 6.49 N/C

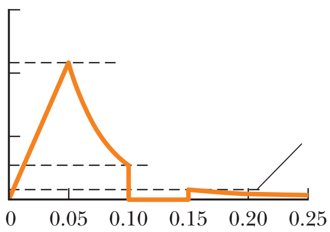
37. (a) 0 (b) 5.39 N/C outward (c) 539 N/C outward
39. —

41. glass
43. 2.00 N
45. (a) (b) (c) — radially outward

47. (a) 0 (b) 7.99 N/C (outward)
(c) 0 (d) 7.34 N/C (outward)
49. 0.438 N
51. 8.27

53. (a) — (b) — (c) —

55.



57. (a) 4.01 nC (b) 9.57 nC (c) 4.01 nC (d) 5.56 nC

59. — radially outward

61. (a) $\frac{Cd}{24}$ to the right for /2 and to the left for /2 (b) $\frac{Cx}{}$

63. (a) 0.269 N /C (b) 2.38

65. — radially outward

67. (a) — — (b) — —

Chapter 25

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(i) (b) **(ii)** (a)
2. to to to to
3. **(i)** (c) **(ii)** (a)
4. **(i)** (a) **(ii)** (a)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 1.13 N/C (b) 1.80 $^{-14}$ N (c) 4.37 $^{-17}$
3. (a) 1.52 m/s (b) 6.49 m/s
5. 260 V
(a) 38.9 V (b) the origin
9. 0.300 m/s
11. (a) 0.400 m/s (b) It is the same. Each bit of the rod feels a force of the same size as before.
13. (a) 2.12 V (b) 1.21

15. 6.93 —

17. (a) 45.0 V (b) 34.6 km/s
19. (a) 0 (b) 0 (c) 44.9 kV

21. (a) — — (b) — $\frac{qQ}{}$

23. (a) 4.83 m (b) 0.667 m and 2.00 m
25. (a) 32.2 kV (b) 0.096 5 J

27. 8.94 J

29. —

31. (a) 10.8 m/s and 1.55 m/s (b) They would be greater. The conducting spheres will polarize each other, with most of the positive charge of one and the negative charge of the other on their inside faces. Immediately before the spheres collide, their centers of charge will be closer than their geometric centers, so they will have less electric potential energy and more kinetic energy.

33. 22.8 —

35. 2.74 27.4 fm

37. (a) 10.0 V, 11.0 V, 32.0 V
(b) 7.00 N/C in the positive direction

39. (a) *xy* *yz*
(b) 7.07 N/C

41. (a) 0 (b) —

43. 0.553 —

45. (a) — (b) ln —)]

47. 2 ln 3)

49. 1.56

51. (a) 1.35 V (b) larger sphere: 2.25 V/m (away from the center); smaller sphere: 6.74 V/m (away from the center)

53. Because is not an integer, this is not possible. Therefore, the energy given cannot be possible for an allowed state of the atom.

55. (a) 6.00 m/s (b) 3.64 m (c) 9.00 m/s (d) 12.0 m/s

57. 253 MeV

59. (a) 30.0 cm (b) 6.67 nC (c) 29.1 cm or 3.44 cm
(d) 6.79 nC or 804 pC
(e) No; two answers exist for each part.

61. 702 J

63. 4.00 nC at (1.00 m, 0) and 5.01 nC at (0, 2.00 m)

65. —— ln —

67. ln ——

69. (a) 4.07 kV/m (b) 488 V (c) 7.82 J (d) 306 km/s
(e) 3.89 m/s toward the negative plate
(f) 6.51 N toward the negative plate
(g) 4.07 kV/m (h) They are the same.

71. (b) cos —— sin —— (c) yes (d) no
(e) *py* ——
(f) *pxy* —— ——

73. ln ——)]

75. (a) — ln ——
(b) —
dh ln ——)]

Chapter 26

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(d)
2. (a)
3. (a)
4. (b)
5. (a)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 9.00 V (b) 12.0 V

3. (a) 48.0 C (b) 6.00

5. (a) 2.69 nF (b) 3.02 kV

4.43

9. (a) 11.1 kV/m toward the negative plate (b) 98.4 nC/m (c) 3.74 pF (d) 74.8 pC

11. (a) 1.33 C/m (b) 13.4 pF

13. (a) 17.0 F (b) 9.00 V (c) 45.0 C on 5 F, 108 C on 12

15. (a) 2.81 F (b) 12.7

17. (a) in series (b) 398 F (c) in parallel; 2.20

19. (a) 3.33 F (b) 180 C on the 3.00- F and 6.00- capacitors; 120 C on the 2.00- F and 4.00- F capacitors (c) 60.0 V across the 3.00- F and 2.00- F capacitors; 30.0 V across the 6.00- F and 4.00- F capacitors

21. ten

23. (a) 5.96 F (b) 89.5 C on 20 F, 63.2 C on 6 F, and 26.3 C on 15 F and 3

25. 12.9

27. 6.00 pF and 3.00 pF

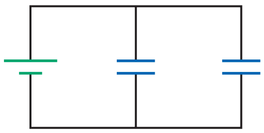
29. 19.8

31. 3.24

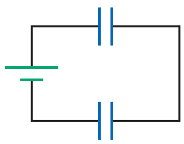
33. (a) 1.50 C (b) 1.83 kV

35. (a) 2.50 J (b) 66.7 V (c) 3.33 J (d) Positive work is done by the agent pulling the plates apart.

37. (a)



(b) 0.150 J (c) 268 V
(d)



39. 9.79 kg

41. (a) 400 C (b) 2.5 kN/m

43. (a) 13.3 nC (b) 272 nC

45. (a) 81.3 pF (b) 2.40 kV

47. (a) 369 pC (b) 1.2 F, 3.1 V (c) 45.5 nJ

49. (a) 40.0 J (b) 500 V

51. 9.43 10 N

55. (a) 11.2 pF (b) 134 pC (c) 16.7 pF (d) 67.0 pC
57. 2.51×10^{-3} m^3 = 2.51 L
59. 0.188 m^2
61. (a) volume 9.09×10^{-16} m^3, area 4.54×10^{-10} m^2 (b) 2.01×10^{-13} F (c) 2.01×10^{-14} C; 1.26×10^5 electronic charges
63. 23.3 V across the 5.00-μF capacitor, 26.7 V across the 10.0-μF capacitor
65. (a) $\dfrac{Q_0^2 d(\ell - x)}{2\epsilon_0 \ell^3}$ (b) $\dfrac{Q_0^2 d}{2\epsilon_0 \ell^3}$ to the right (c) $\dfrac{Q_0^2}{2\epsilon_0 \ell^4}$ (d) $\dfrac{Q_0^2}{2\epsilon_0 \ell^4}$ (e) They are precisely the same.
67. 4.29 μF
69. 750 μC on C_1, 250 μC on C_2
71. (a) One capacitor cannot be used by itself—it would burn out. The technician can use two capacitors in series, connected in parallel to another two capacitors in series. Another possibility is two capacitors in parallel, connected in series to another two capacitors in parallel. In either case, one capacitor will be left over: upper and lower (b) Each of the four capacitors will be exposed to a maximum voltage of 45 V.
73. $\dfrac{C_0}{2}(\sqrt{3} - 1)$
75. $\frac{4}{3}C$
77. 3.00 μF

Chapter 27

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (a) > (b) = (c) > (d)
2. (b)
3. (b)
4. (a)
5. $I_a = I_b > I_c = I_d > I_e = I_f$

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. 27.0 yr
3. 0.129 mm/s
5. 1.79×10^{16} protons
7. (a) $0.632 I_0 \tau$ (b) $0.999\,95 I_0 \tau$ (c) $I_0 \tau$
9. (a) 17.0 A (b) 85.0 kA/m^2
11. (a) 2.55 A/m^2 (b) 5.30×10^{10} m^{-3} (c) 1.21×10^{10} s
13. 3.64 h
15. silver ($\rho = 1.59 \times 10^{-8}\ \Omega \cdot$ m)
17. 8.89 Ω
19. (a) 1.82 m (b) 280 μm
21. (a) 13.0 Ω (b) 255 m
23. $6.00 \times 10^{-15} (\Omega \cdot \text{m})^{-1}$
25. 0.18 V/m
27. 0.12
29. 6.32 Ω
31. (a) 3.0 A (b) 2.9 A
33. (a) 31.5 nΩ · m (b) 6.35 MA/m^2 (c) 49.9 mA (d) 658 μm/s (e) 0.400 V
35. 227°C
37. 448 A
39. (a) 8.33 A (b) 14.4 Ω
41. 2.1 W
43. 36.1%
45. (a) 0.660 kWh (b) \$0.072 6
47. \$0.494/day
49. (a) 3.98 V/m (b) 49.7 W (c) 44.1 W
51. (a) 4.75 m (b) 340 W
53. (a) 184 W (b) 461°C
55. 672 s
57. 1.1 km
59. 15.0 h
61. 50.0 MW
63. (a) $\dfrac{Q}{4C}$ (b) $\dfrac{Q}{4}$ on C, $\dfrac{3Q}{4}$ on $3C$ (c) $\dfrac{Q^2}{32C}$ in C, $\dfrac{3Q^2}{32C}$ in $3C$ (d) $\dfrac{3Q^2}{8C}$
65. 0.478 kg/s
67. (a) 8.00 V/m in the positive x direction (b) 0.637 Ω (c) 6.28 A in the positive x direction (d) 200 MA/m^2
69. (a) 116 V (b) 12.8 kW (c) 436 W
71. (a) $\dfrac{\rho}{2\pi L} \ln\left(\dfrac{r_b}{r_a}\right)$ (b) $\dfrac{2\pi L\,\Delta V}{I \ln(r_b/r_a)}$
73. 4.1×10^{-3} (°C)$^{-1}$
75. 1.418 Ω
77. (a) $\dfrac{\epsilon_0 \ell}{2d}(\ell + 2x + \kappa\ell - 2\kappa x)$ (b) $\dfrac{\epsilon_0 \ell v\,\Delta V(\kappa - 1)}{d}$ clockwise
79. 2.71 MΩ
81. (2.02×10^3)°C

Chapter 28

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (a)
2. (b)
3. (a)
4. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (a) **(iii)** (a) **(iv)** (b)
5. **(i)** (c) **(ii)** (d)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. (a) 6.73 Ω (b) 1.97 Ω
3. (a) 12.4 V (b) 9.65 V
5. (a) 75.0 V (b) 25.0 W, 6.25 W, and 6.25 W (c) 37.5 W
7. $\frac{7}{3}R$
9. (a) 227 mA (b) 5.68 V
11. (a) 1.00 kΩ (b) 2.00 kΩ (c) 3.00 kΩ
13. (a) 17.1 Ω (b) 1.99 A for 4.00 Ω and 9.00 Ω, 1.17 A for 7.00 Ω, 0.818 A for 10.0 Ω
15. 470 Ω and 220 Ω
17. (a) 11.7 Ω (b) 1.00 A in the 12.0-Ω and 8.00-Ω resistors, 2.00 A in the 6.00-Ω and 4.00-Ω resistors, 3.00 A in the 5.00-Ω resistor
19. 14.2 W to 2.00 Ω, 28.4 W to 4.00 Ω, 1.33 W to 3.00 Ω, 4.00 W to 1.00 Ω
21. (a) 4.12 V (b) 1.38 A
23. (a) 0.846 A down in the 8.00-Ω resistor, 0.462 A down in the middle branch, 1.31 A up in the right-hand branch (b) −222 J by the 4.00-V battery, 1.88 kJ by the 12.0-V battery (c) 687 J to 8.00 Ω, 128 J to 5.00 Ω, 25.6 J to the 1.00-Ω resistor in the center branch, 616 J to 3.00 Ω, 205 J to the 1.00-Ω resistor in the right branch

(d) Chemical energy in the 12.0-V battery is transformed into internal energy in the resistors. The 4.00-V battery is being charged, so its chemical potential energy is increasing at the expense of some of the chemical potential energy in the 12.0-V battery. (e) 1.66 kJ

25. (a) 0.395 A (b) 1.50 V

27. 50.0 mA from to

29. (a) 0.714 A (b) 1.29 A (c) 12.6 V

31. (a) 0.385 mA, 3.08 mA, 2.69 mA (b) 69.2 V, with at the higher potential

33. (a) 0.492 A; 0.148 A; 0.639 A (b) $_{28.0}$ 6.77 W, $_{12.0}$ 0.261 W, $_{16.0}$ 6.54 W

35. 3.05 V, 4.57 V, 7.38 V, 1.62 V

37. (a) 2.00 ms (b) 1.80 C (c) 1.14

39. (a) 61.6 mA (b) 0.235 C (c) 1.96 A

41. (a) 1.50 s (b) 1.00 s (c) 200 100 , where is in microamperes and is in seconds

43. (a) 6.00 V (b) 8.29

45. (a) 0.432 s (b) 6.00

47. (a) 6.25 A (b) 750 W

49. (a) — (b) — (c) parallel

51. 2.22 h

53. (a) 1.02 A down (b) 0.364 A down (c) 1.38 A up (d) 0 (e) 66.0

55. (a) 2.00 k (b) 15.0 V (c) 9.00 V

57. (a) 4.00 V (b) Point is at the higher potential.

59. 87.3%

61. 6.00 , 3.00

63. (a) 24.1 C (b) 16.1 C (c) 16.1 mA

65. (a) 240(1 (b) 360(1), where in both answers, is in microcoulombs and is in milliseconds

67. (a) 9.93 C (b) 33.7 nA (c) 335 nW (d) 337 nW

69. (a) 470 W (b) 1.60 mm or more (c) 2.93 mm or more

71. (a) 222 C (b) 444

73. (a) 5.00 (b) 2.40 A

75. (a) 0 in 3 k , 333 A in 12 k and 15 k (b) 50.0 (c) 278 $^{/0.180}$, where is in microamperes and is in seconds (d) 290 ms

77. (a) – (b) No; 2.75 , so the station is inadequately grounded.

79. (a) – (b) 3

81. (a) 3.91 s (b) 782

83. 20.0 or 98.1

Chapter 29

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(e)

2. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (a)

3. (c)

4. **(i)** (c), (b), (a) **(ii)** (a) (b) (c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

Gravitational force: 8.93 N down, electric force: 1.60 N up, and magnetic force: 4.80 down.

3. (a) into the page (b) toward the right (c) toward the bottom of the page

5. (a) the negative direction (b) the positive direction (c) The magnetic force is zero in this case.

(a) 7.91 N (b) zero

9. (a) 1.25 N (b) 7.50 m/s

11. 20.9

13. (a) 4.27 cm (b) 1.79

15. (a) (b)

17. 115 keV

19. (a) 5.00 cm (b) 8.79 m/s

21. 7.88

23. 8.00

25. 0.278 m

27. (a) 7.66 (b) 2.68 m/s (c) 3.75 MeV (d) 3.13 revolutions (e) 2.57

29. 244 kV/m

31. 70.0 mT

33. (a) 8.00 T (b) in the positive direction

35. 2.88

37. 1.07 m/s

39. (a) east (b) 0.245 T

41. (a) 5.78 N (b) toward the west (into the page)

43. 2.98 N west

45. (a) 4.0 m (b) 6.9

47. (a) north at 48.0° below the horizontal (b) south at 48.0° above the horizontal (c) 1.07

49. 9.05 m, tending to make the left-hand side of the loop move toward you and the right-hand side move away.

51. (a) 9.98 N m (b) clockwise as seen looking down from a position on the positive axis

53. (a) 118 m (b) 118 118

55. 43.2

57. (a) 9.27 (b) away from observer

59. (a) 3.52 1.60 10 ^{18} N (b) 24.4°

61. 0.588 T

63.

65. 39.2 mT

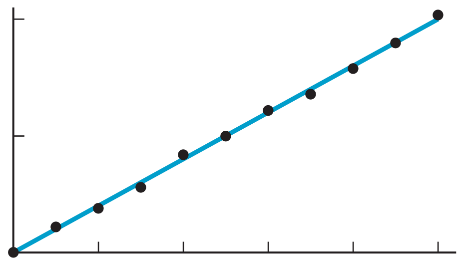
67. (a) the positive direction (b) 0.696 m (c) 1.09 m (d) 54.7 ns

69. (a) 0.713 A counterclockwise as seen from above

71. (a) *mg/NIw* (b) The magnetic field exerts forces of equal magnitude and opposite directions on the two sides of the coils, so the forces cancel each other and do not affect the balance of the system. Hence, the vertical dimension of the coil is not needed. (c) 0.261 T

73. (a) 1.04 m (b) 1.89

75. (a) (1.00 , where is in volts and is in teslas



(b) 0.125 mm

77. 3.71

79. (a) 0.128 T (b) 78.7° below the horizontal

Chapter 30

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. $B > C > A$
2. (a)
3. $c > a > d > b$
4. $a = c = d > b = 0$
5. (c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. (a) 21.5 mA (b) 4.51 V (c) 96.7 mW
3. 1.60×10^{-6} T
5. (a) 28.3 μT into the page (b) 24.7 μT into the page
7. 5.52 μT into the page
9. (a) $2I_1$ out of the page (b) $6I_1$ into the page
11. $\dfrac{\mu_0 I}{2r}\left(\dfrac{1}{\pi} + \dfrac{1}{4}\right)$
13. 262 nT into the page
15. (a) 53.3 μT toward the bottom of the page (b) 20.0 μT toward the bottom of the page (c) zero
17. $\dfrac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi ad}\left(\sqrt{d^2 + a^2} - d\right)$ into the page
19. (a) 40.0 μT into the page (b) 5.00 μT out of the page (c) 1.67 μT out of the page
21. (a) 10 μT (b) 80 μN toward the other wire (c) 16 μT (d) 80 μN toward the other wire
23. (a) 3.00×10^{-5} N/m (b) attractive
25. $-27.0\hat{\mathbf{i}}$ μN
27. 0.333 m
29. (a) opposite directions (b) 67.8 A (c) It would be smaller. A smaller gravitational force would be pulling down on the wires, requiring less magnetic force to raise the wires to the same angle and therefore less current.
31. (a) 200 μT toward the top of the page (b) 133 μT toward the bottom of the page
33. 5.40 cm
35. (a) 4.00 m (b) 7.50 nT (c) 1.26 m (d) zero
37. (a) zero (b) $\dfrac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi R}$ tangent to the wall (c) $\dfrac{\mu_0 I^2}{(2\pi R)^2}$ inward
39. 20.0 μT toward the bottom of the page
41. 31.8 mA
43. (a) 226 μN away from the center of the loop (b) zero
45. (a) 920 turns (b) 12 cm
47. (a) 3.13 mWb (b) 0
49. (a) 8.63×10^{45} electrons (b) 4.01×10^{20} kg
51. 3.18 A
53. (a) $\sim 10^{-5}$ T (b) It is $\sim 10^{-1}$ as large as the Earth's magnetic field.
55. 143 pT
57. $\dfrac{\mu_0 I}{2\pi w} \ln\left(1 + \dfrac{w}{b}\right)\hat{\mathbf{k}}$
59. (a) $\mu_0 \sigma v$ into the page (b) zero (c) $\frac{1}{2}\mu_0 \sigma^2 v^2$ up toward the top of the page (d) $\dfrac{1}{\sqrt{\mu_0 \epsilon_0}}$; we will find out in Chapter 34 that this speed is the speed of light. We will also find out in Chapter 39 that this speed is not possible for the capacitor plates.
61. 1.80 mT
63. 3.89 μT parallel to the xy plane and at 59.0° clockwise from the positive x direction
65. (b) 3.20×10^{-13} T (c) 1.03×10^{-24} N (d) 2.31×10^{-22} N
67. $B = 4.36 \times 10^{-4}\, I$, where B is in teslas and I is in amperes
69. (a) $\dfrac{\mu_0 IN}{2\ell}\left[\dfrac{\ell - x}{\sqrt{(\ell - x)^2 + a^2}} + \dfrac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + a^2}}\right]$
71. $-0.012\,0\,\hat{\mathbf{k}}$ N
73. (b) $\dfrac{\mu_0 I}{4\pi}(1 - e^{-2\pi})$ out of the page
75. (a) $\dfrac{\mu_0 I(2r^2 - a^2)}{\pi r(4r^2 - a^2)}$ to the left (b) $\dfrac{\mu_0 I(2r^2 + a^2)}{\pi r(4r^2 + a^2)}$ toward the top of the page
77. (b) 5.92×10^{-8} N

Chapter 31

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (c)
2. (c)
3. (b)
4. (a)
5. (b)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. 0.800 mA
3. (a) 101 μV tending to produce clockwise current as seen from above (b) It is twice as large in magnitude and in the opposite sense.
5. 33.9 mV
7. 10.2 μV
9. 61.8 mV
11. (a) 1.60 A counterclockwise (b) 20.1 μT (c) left
13. (a) $\dfrac{\mu_0 IL}{2\pi} \ln\left(1 + \dfrac{w}{h}\right)$ (b) 4.80 μV (c) counterclockwise
15. (a) 1.88×10^{-7} T · m² (b) 6.28×10^{-8} V
17. 272 m
19. $\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}} = 0.422 \cos 120\pi t$, where $\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}}$ is in volts and t is in seconds
21. 2.83 mV
23. 13.1 mV
25. (a) 39.9 μV (b) The west end is positive.
27. (a) 3.00 N to the right (b) 6.00 W
29. (a) 0.500 A (b) 2.00 W (c) 2.00 W
31. 2.80 m/s
33. 24.1 V with the outer contact negative
35. (a) 233 Hz (b) 1.98 mV
37. 145 μA upward in the picture
39. (a) 8.01×10^{-21} N (b) clockwise (c) $t = 0$ or $t = 1.33$ s
41. (a) $E = 9.87 \cos 100\pi t$, where E is in millivolts per meter and t is in seconds (b) clockwise
43. 13.3 V
45. (a) $\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}} = 19.6 \sin 100\pi t$, where $\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}}$ is in volts and t is in seconds (b) 19.6 V
47. $\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}} = 28.6 \sin 4.00\pi t$, where $\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}}$ is in millivolts and t is in seconds
49. (a) $\Phi_B = 8.00 \times 10^{-3} \cos 120\pi t$, where Φ_B is in T · m² and t is in seconds (b) $\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}} = 3.02 \sin 120\pi t$, where $\boldsymbol{\mathcal{E}}$ is in volts and t is in seconds (c) $I = 3.02 \sin 120\pi t$, where I is in amperes and t is in seconds (d) $P = 9.10 \sin^2 120\pi t$, where P is in watts and t is in seconds (e) $\tau = 0.024\,1 \sin^2 120\pi t$, where τ is in newton meters and t is in seconds
51. (a) 113 V (b) 300 V/m

53. 8.80 A
55. 3.79 mV
57. (a) 43.8 A (b) 38.3 W
59. 7.22 cos 1 046 , where is in millivolts and is in seconds
61. 283 A upward
63. (a) 3.50 A up in 2.00 and 1.40 A up in 5.00 (b) 34.3 W (c) 4.29 N
65. 2.29
67. (a) 0.125 V clockwise (b) 0.020 0 A clockwise
69. (a) 97.4 nV (b) clockwise
71. (a) 36.0 V (b) 0.600 Wb/s (c) 35.9 V (d) 4.32 N · m
73. (a) NB (b) $\frac{NB}{\ }$ (c) (d) (e) clockwise (f) directed to the left.
75. 6.00 A
77. 87.1 cos (200), where is in millivolts and is in seconds
79. 0.062 3 A in 6.00 , 0.860 A in 5.00 , and 0.923 A in 3.00
81. $\frac{\ }{Bd}$ mR
83. $\frac{MgR}{\ }$

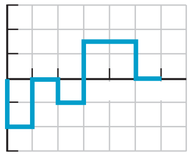
Chapter 32

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(c), (f)
2. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (a)
3. (a), (d)
4. (a)
5. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

19.5 mV
3. 100 V
5. 19.2
4.00 mH
9. (a) 360 mV (b) 180 mV (c) 3.00 s
11. $\frac{\ }{Lk}$
13. 18.8 cos 120 , where is in volts and is in seconds
15. (a) 0.469 mH (b) 0.188 ms
17. (a) 1.00 k (b) 3.00 ms
19. (a) 1.29 k (b) 72.0 mA
21. (a) 20.0% (b) 4.00%
23. 92.8 V
25. (a) 0.500(1 $^{10.0}$), where is in amperes and is in seconds (b) 1.50 0.250 $^{10.0}$, where is in amperes and is in seconds
27. (a) 0.800 (b) 0
29. (a) 6.67 A/s (b) 0.332 A/s
31. (a) 5.66 ms (b) 1.22 A (c) 58.1 ms
33. 2.44
35. (a) 44.3 nJ/m (b) 995 J/m
37. (a) 18.0 J (b) 7.20 J
39. (a) 8.06 MJ/m (b) 6.32 kJ
41. 1.00 V
43. (a) 18.0 mH (b) 34.3 mH (c) 9.00 mV
45. 781 pH
47. 281 mH
49. 400 mA
51. 20.0 V
53. (a) 503 Hz (b) 12.0 C (c) 37.9 mA (d) 72.0
55. (a) 135 Hz (b) 119 C (c) 114 mA
57. (a) 2.51 kHz (b) 69.9
59. (a) 0.693 (b) 0.347
61. (a) 20.0 mV (b) 10.0 , where is in megavolts and is in seconds (c) 63.2
63.
65. (a) 4.00 H (b) 3.50
67. (a) (b) 10 H (c) 10
69.



71. 91.2
73. (a) 6.25 J (b) 2.00 N/m
75. (a) 50.0 mT (b) 20.0 mT (c) 2.29 MJ (d) 318 Pa
79. (a) (b) 2.70
81. 300
83.

Chapter 33

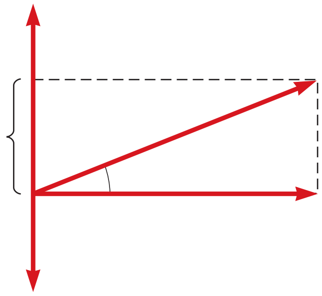
Answers to Quick Quizzes

(i) (c) **(ii)** (b)
2. (b)
3. (a)
4. (b)
5. (a) (b) (c)
6. (c)
(c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 96.0 V (b) 136 V (c) 11.3 A (d) 768 W
3. (a) 2.95 A (b) 70.7 V
5. 14.6 Hz
3.38 W
9. 3.14 A
11. 5.60 A
13. (a) 12.6 (b) 6.21 A (c) 8.78 A
15. 0.450 Wb
17. 32.0 A
19. (a) 41.3 Hz (b) 87.5
21. 100 mA
23. (a) 141 mA (b) 235 mA

25.



27. (a) 47.1 (b) 637 (c) 2.40 k (d) 2.33 k
(e) 14.2°
29. (a) 17.4° (b) the voltage
31. (a) 194 V (b) The current leads by 49.9°.
33.
35. 353 W
37. 88.0 W
39. (a) 16.0 (b) 12.0

41. $\frac{11 \quad {}_{\text{rms}}}{14}$

43. 1.82 pF
45. 242 mJ
47. (a) 0.633 pF (b) 8.46 mm (c) 25.1
49. 687 V
51. 87.5
53. 0.756
55. (a) 34% (b) 5.3 W (c) $3.9
57. (a) 1.60 turns (b) 30.0 A (c) 25.3 A
59. (a) 22.4 V (b) 26.6° (c) 0.267 A (d) 83.9 (e) 47.2
(f) 0.249 H (g) 2.67 W
61. 2.6 cm
63. (a) could be 53.8 or it could be 1.35 k Ω (b) capacitive reactance is 53.8 (c) must be 1.43 k
65. (b) 31.6
67. (a) 19.7 cm at 35.0° (b) 19.7 cm at 35.0°
(c) The answers are identical. (d) 9.36 cm at 169°
69. (a) Tension and separation must be related by 274 , where is in newtons and is in meters.
(b) One possibility is 10.9 N and 0.200 m.
71. (a) 0.225 A (b) 0.450 A
73. (a) 78.5 (b) 1.59 k (c) 1.52 k (d) 138 mA
(e) 84.3° (f) 0.098 7 (g) 1.43 W
75. 56.7 W
77. (a) 580 H (b) 54.6 F (c) 1.00 (d) 894 Hz (e) At 200 Hz, 60.0° ($_{\text{out}}$ leads); at $_{\text{out}}$ is in phase with); and at 4.00 Hz, 60.0° $_{\text{out}}$ lags). (f) At 200 Hz and at 4.00 Hz, 1.56 W; and at 6.25 W. (g) 0.408
79. (a) 224 s (b) 500 W (c) 221 s and 226 s
81. 58.7 Hz or 35.9 Hz. The circuit can be either above or below resonance.

Chapter 34

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(i) (b) **(ii)** (c)
2. (c)
3. (c)
4. (b)
5. (a)
6. (c)
(a)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) out of the page (b) 1.85
3. (a) 11.3 GV m/s (b) 0.100 A
5. 2.87 5.75 10 m
(a) 0.690 wavelengths (b) 58.9 wavelengths
9. (a) 681 yr (b) 8.32 min (c) 2.56 s
11. 74.9 MHz
13. 2.25 m/s
15. (a) 6.00 MHz (b) 73.4 nT
(c) $= -73.4 \cos$ 0.126 3.77 10 , where is in nT, is in meters, and is in seconds
17. 2.9 m/s
19. (a) 0.333 T (b) 0.628 m (c) 4.77
21. 3.34 J/m
23. 3.33
25. (a) 1.19 W/m (b) 2.35
27. (a) 2.33 mT (b) 650 MW/m (c) 511 W
29. 307 W/m
31. 49.5 mV
33. (a) 332 kW/m radially inward (b) 1.88 kV/m and 222
35. 5.31 N/m
37. (a) 1.90 kN/C (b) 50.0 pJ (c) 1.67 kg m/s
39. 4.09°
41. (a) 1.60 kg each second (b) 1.60
(c) The answers are the same. Force is the time rate of momentum transfer.
43. (a) 5.48 N (b) 913 m/s away from the Sun (c) 10.6 days
45. (a) 134 m (b) 46.8 m
47. 56.2 m
49. (a) away along the perpendicular bisector of the line segment joining the antennas (b) along the extensions of the line segment joining the antennas
51. (a) 6.00 pm (b) 7.49 cm
53. (a) 4.16 m to 4.54 m (b) 3.41 m to 3.66 m
(c) 1.61 m to 1.67 m
55. (a) 3.85 W (b) 1.02 kV/m and 3.39
57. 5.50
59. (a) 3.21 W (b) 0.639 W/m
(c) 0.513% of that from the noon Sun in January
61.
63. 378 nm
65. (a) 6.67 T (b) 5.31 W/m
(c) 1.67 W (d) 5.56
67. (a) 625 kW/m (b) 21.7 kV/m (c) 72.4 T (d) 17.8 min
69. (a) 388 K (b) 363 K
71. (a) 3.92 W/m (b) 308 W
73. (a) 0.161 m (b) 0.163 m (c) 76.8 W (d) 470 W/m
(e) 595 V/m (f) 1.98 T (g) 119 W
75. (a) The projected area is , where is the radius of the planet. (b) The radiating area is 4 . (c) 1.61
77. (a) 584 nT (b) 419 m (c) 1.26
(d) vibrates in the plane. (e) 40.6
(f) 271 nPa (g) 407 nm
79. (a) 22.6 h (b) 30.6 s

Chapter 35

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. (d)
2. Beams ② and ④ are reflected; beams ③ and ⑤ are refracted.
3. (c)
4. (c)
5. **(i)** (b) **(ii)** (b)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

1. (a) 2.07×10^3 eV (b) 4.14 eV
3. 114 rad/s
5. (a) 4.74×10^{14} Hz (b) 422 nm (c) 2.00×10^8 m/s
7. 22.5°
9. (a) 1.81×10^8 m/s (b) 2.25×10^8 m/s (c) 1.36×10^8 m/s
11. (a) 29.0° (b) 25.8° (c) 32.0°
13. 86.8°
15. 158 Mm/s
17. (a) $\theta_{1i} = 30°$, $\theta_{1r} = 19°$, $\theta_{2i} = 41°$, $\theta_{2r} = 77°$ (b) First surface: $\theta_{\text{reflection}} = 30°$; second surface: $\theta_{\text{reflection}} = 41°$
19. $\sim 10^{-11}$ s, $\sim 10^3$ wavelengths
21. (a) 1.94 m (b) 50.0° above the horizontal
23. 27.1 ns
25. (a) 2.0×10^8 m/s (b) 4.74×10^{14} Hz (c) 4.2×10^{-7} m
27. 3.39 m
29. (a) 41.5° (b) 18.5° (c) 27.5° (d) 42.5°
31. 23.1°
33. 1.22
35. $\tan^{-1}(n_g)$
37. 0.314°
39. 4.61°
41. 62.5°
43. 27.9°
45. 67.1°
47. 1.000 07
49. (a) $\dfrac{nd}{n-1}$ (b) $R_{\min} \to 0$. Yes; for very small d, the light strikes the interface at very large angles of incidence. (c) $R_{\min}$ decreases. Yes; as n increases, the critical angle becomes smaller. (d) $R_{\min} \to \infty$. Yes; as $n \to 1$, the critical angle becomes close to 90° and any bend will allow the light to escape. (e) 350 μm
51. 48.5°
53. 2.27 m
55. 25.7°
57. (a) 0.042 6 or 4.26% (b) no difference
59. (a) 334 μs (b) 0.014 6%
61. 77.5°
63. 2.00 m
65. 27.5°
67. 3.79 m
69. 7.93°
71. $\sin^{-1}\left[\dfrac{L}{R^2}\left(\sqrt{n^2R^2 - L^2} - \sqrt{R^2 - L^2}\right)\right]$ or $\sin^{-1}\left[n \sin\left(\sin^{-1}\dfrac{L}{R} - \sin^{-1}\dfrac{L}{nR}\right)\right]$
73. (a) 38.5° (b) 1.44
75. (a) 53.1° (b) $\theta_1 \geq 38.7°$
77. (a) 1.20 (b) 3.40 ns
79. (a) 0.172 mm/s (b) 0.345 mm/s (c) and (d) northward and downward at 50.0° below the horizontal.
81. 62.2%
83. (a) $\left(\dfrac{4x^2 + L^2}{L}\right)\omega$ (b) 0 (c) $L\omega$ (d) $2L\omega$ (e) $\dfrac{\pi}{8\omega}$
87. 70.6%

Chapter 36

Answers to Quick Quizzes

1. false
2. (b)
3. (b)
4. (d)
5. (a)
6. (b)
7. (a)
8. (c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

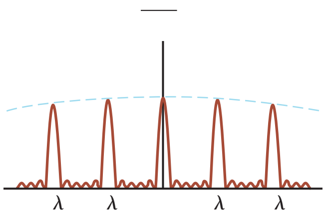
1. 89.0 cm
3. (a) younger (b) $\sim 10^{-9}$ s younger
5. (a) $p_1 + h$, behind the lower mirror (b) virtual (c) upright (d) 1.00 (e) no
7. (a) 1.00 m behind the nearest mirror (b) the palm (c) 5.00 m behind the nearest mirror (d) the back of her hand (e) 7.00 m behind the nearest mirror (f) the palm (g) All are virtual images.
9. **(i)** (a) 13.3 cm (b) real (c) inverted (d) -0.333 **(ii)** (a) 20.0 cm (b) real (c) inverted (d) -1.00 **(iii)** (a) ∞ (b) no image formed (c) no image formed (d) no image formed
11. (a) -12.0 cm; 0.400 (b) -15.0 cm; 0.250 (c) both upright
13. (a) -7.50 cm (b) upright (c) 0.500 cm
15. 3.33 m from the deepest point in the niche
17. 0.790 cm
19. (a) 0.160 m (b) -0.400 m
21. (a) convex (b) at the 30.0-cm mark (c) -20.0 cm
23. (a) 15.0 cm (b) 60.0 cm
25. (a) concave (b) 2.08 m (c) 1.25 m from the object
27. (a) 25.6 m (b) 0.058 7 rad (c) 2.51 m (d) 0.023 9 rad (e) 62.8 m
29. (a) 45.1 cm (b) -89.6 cm (c) -6.00 cm
31. (a) 1.50 m (b) 1.75 m
33. 4.82 cm
35. 8.57 cm
37. 1.50 cm/s
39. (a) 6.40 cm (b) -0.250 (c) converging
41. (a) 39.0 mm (b) 39.5 mm
43. 20.0 cm
45. (a) 20.0 cm from the lens on the front side (b) 12.5 cm from the lens on the front side (c) 6.67 cm from the lens on the front side (d) 8.33 cm from the lens on the front side
47. 2.84 cm
49. (a) 16.4 cm (b) 16.4 cm
51. (a) 1.16 mm/s (b) toward the lens
53. 7.47 cm in front of the second lens, 1.07 cm, virtual, upright
55. 21.3 cm

57. 2.18 mm away from the CCD
59. (a) 42.9 cm (b) 2.33 diopters
61. 23.2 cm
63. (a) −0.67 diopters (b) 0.67 diopters
65. (a) Yes, if the lenses are bifocal.
(b) 56.3 cm, 1.78 diopters (c) 1.18 diopters
67. 575
69. 3.38 min
71. (a) 267 cm (b) 79.0 cm
73. 40.0 cm
75. (a) 1.50 (b) 1.90
77. (a) 160 cm to the left of the lens (b) 0.800 (c) inverted
79. (a) 32.1 cm to the right of the second surface (b) real
81. (a) 25.3 cm to the right of the mirror (b) virtual (c) upright (d) 8.05
83. (a) 1.40 kW/m (b) 6.91 mW/m (c) 0.164 cm (d) 58.1 W/m
87. 8.00 cm
89. 11.7 cm
91. (a) 1.50 m in front of the mirror (b) 1.40 cm
(a) 0.334 m or larger (b) 0.025 5 or larger
95. (a) 1.99 (b) 10.0 cm to the left of the lens (c) 2.50 (d) inverted
97. and

Chapter 37

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(c)
2. The graph is shown here. The width of the primary maxima is slightly narrower than the 5 primary width but wider than the 10 primary width. Because 6, the secondary maxima are $\frac{}{36}$ as intense as the primary maxima.



3. (a)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

641
3. 632 nm
5. 1.54 mm
2.40
9. (a) 2.62 mm (b) 2.62 mm
11. Maxima at 0°, 29.1°, and 76.3°; minima at 14.1° and 46.8°
13. (a) 55.7 m (b) 124 m
15. 0.318 m/s
17. 148 m
21. (a) 1.93 m (b) 3.00
(c) It corresponds to a maximum. The path difference is an integer multiple of the wavelength.
23. 0.968
25. 48.0
27. (a) 1.29 rad (b) 99.6 nm
29. (a) 7.95 rad (b) 0.453
31. 512 nm
33. 0.500 cm
35. 290 nm
37. 8.70
39. 1.31
41. 1.20 mm
43. 1.001
45. 1.25 m
47. 1.62 cm
49. 78.4
51. $\frac{}{48}$ 650, where and are in nanometers and 0, 1, 1, 2, 2, 3, 3, .
53.
55. 5.00 5.00 km
57. 2.50 mm
59. 113
61. (a) 72.0 m (b) 36.0 m
63. (a) 70.6 m (b) 136 m
65. (a) 14.7 m (b) 1.53 cm (c) 16.0 m
67. 0.505 mm
69. 3.58°
71. 115 nm
73. (a) $\frac{}{-\lambda}$ (b) 266 nm
75. 0.498 mm

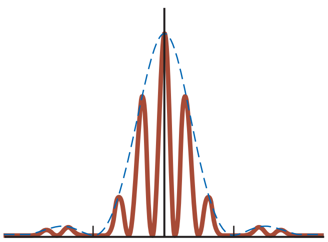
Chapter 38

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(a)
2. (i)
3. (b)
4. (a)
5. (c)
6. (b)
(c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 1.1 m (b) 1.7 mm
3. (a) four (b) 28.7°, 73.6°
5. 91.2 cm
2.30
9.



11. 1.62
13. 462 nm
15. 2.10 m
17. 0.284 m
19. 30.5 m
21. 0.40 rad
23. 16.4 m

25. 1.81
27. (a) three (b) 0°, 45.2°, 45.2°
29. 74.2 grooves/mm
31.
33. 514 nm
35. (a) 3.53 rulings/cm (b) 11
37. (a) 5.23 m (b) 4.58
39. 0.093 4 nm
41. (a) 0.109 nm (b) four
43. (a) 54.7° (b) 63.4° (c) 71.6°
45. 0.375
47. (a) six (b) 7.50°
49. 60.5°
51. 6.89 units
53. (a) 0.045 0 (b) 0.016 2
55. 5.51 m, 2.76 m, 1.84 m
57. 632.8 nm
59. (a) 7.26 rad, 1.50 arc seconds (b) 0.189 ly (c) 50.8 rad (d) 1.52 mm
61. (a) 25.6° (b) 18.9°
63. 545 nm
65. 13.7°
67. 15.4
69. (b) 3.77 nm/cm
71. (a) 4.49 compared with the prediction from the approximation of 1.5 4.71 (b) 7.73 compared with the prediction from the approximation of 2.5 7.85
73. (b) 0.001 90 rad 0.109°
75. (b) 15.3
77. (a) 41.8° (b) 0.592 (c) 0.262 m

Chapter 39

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(c)
2. (d)
3. (d)
4. (a)
5. (a)
6. (c)
(d)
8. **(i)** (c) **(ii)** (a)
9. (a) (b) (c)

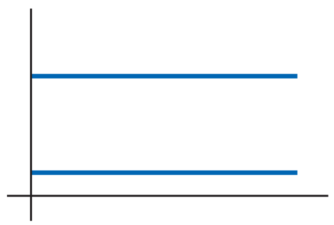
Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

10.0 m/s toward the left in Figure P39.1
3. 5.70 degrees or 9.94 rad
5. 0.917
0.866
9. 0.866
11. 0.220
13. 5.00 s
15. The trackside observer measures the length to be 31.2 m, so the supertrain is measured to fit in the tunnel, with 18.8 m to spare.
17. (a) 25.0 yr (b) 15.0 yr (c) 12.0 ly
19. 0.800
21. (b) 0.050 4
23. (c) 2.00 kHz (d) 0.075 m/s 0.17 mi/h
25. 1.55 ns
27. (a) 2.50 m/s (b) 4.98 m (c) 1.33
29. (a) 17.4 m (b) 3.30°
31. Event B occurs first, 444 ns earlier than A
33. 0.357
35. 0.998 toward the right
37. (a) 0.943 2.83 m/s
(b) The result would be the same.
39. (a) 929 MeV/ (b) 6.58 MeV/ (c) No
41. 4.51
43. 0.285
45. (a) 3.07 MeV (b) 0.986
47. (a) 938 MeV (b) 3.00 GeV (c) 2.07 GeV
49. (a) 5.37 335 MeV
(b) 1.33 8.31 GeV
51. 1.63 MeV/
53. (a) smaller (b) 3.18 kg
(c) It is too small a fraction of 9.00 g to be measured.
55. 4.28 kg/s
57. (a) 8.63 J (b) 9.61
59. (a) 0.979 (b) 0.065 2 (c) 15.0
(d) 0.999 999 97 ; 0.948 ; 1.06
61. (a) 4.08 MeV (b) 29.6 MeV
63. 2.97
65. (a) 2.66 m (b) 3.87 km/s (c) 8.35
(d) 5.29 (e) 4.46
67. 0.712%
69. (a) 13.4 m/s toward the station and 13.4 m/s away from the station. (b) 0.056 7 rad/s
71. (a) 1.12 (b) 6.00 27
(c) $2.17
73. (a) 21.0 yr (b) 14.7 ly (c) 10.5 ly (d) 35.7 yr
75. (a) 6.67 (b) 1.97 h
77. (a) or 10 s (b)
79. (a) 0.905 MeV (b) 0.394 MeV
(c) 0.747 MeV/ 3.99 kg m/s (d) 65.4°
81. (b) 1.48 km
83. (a) 0.946 (b) 0.160 ly (c) 0.114 yr (d) 7.49
85. (a) 229 s (b) 174 s
87. 1.83
91. (a) 0.800 (b) 7.51 s (c) 1.44 m (d) 0.385
(e) 4.88

Chapter 40

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(b)
2. Sodium light, microwaves, FM radio, AM radio.
3. (c)
4. The classical expectation (which did not match the experiment) yields a graph like the following drawing:



5. (d)
6. (c)

(b)
8. (a)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

6.85 m, which is in the infrared region of the spectrum
3. (a) lightning: m; explosion: m (b) lightning: ultraviolet; explosion: x-ray and gamma ray
5. 5.71 photons/s
(a) 2.99 K (b) 2.00
9. 5.18
11. 1.30 photons/s
13. (a) 0.263 kg (b) 1.81 W (c) 0.015 3°C/s 0.919°C/min (d) 9.89 m (e) 2.01 J (f) 8.99 photon/s
15. 1.34 31
17. (a) 295 nm, 1.02 PHz (b) 2.69 V
19. (a) 1.89 eV (b) 0.216 V
21. (a) 1.38 eV (b) 3.34
23. 8.34
25. 1.04
27. 22.1 keV/ = 478 eV
29. 70.0°
31. (a) 43.0° (b) 0.601 MeV; 0.601 MeV/ 3.21 kg m/s (c) 0.279 MeV; 0.279 MeV/ 3.21 kg m/s
33. (a) 4.89 nm (b) 268 keV (c) 31.8 keV
35. (a) 0.101 nm (b) 80.8°
37. To have photon energy 10 eV or greater, according to this definition, ionizing radiation is the ultraviolet light, x-rays, and rays with wavelength shorter than 124 nm; that is, with frequency higher than 2.42 Hz.
39. (a) 1.66 27 kg m/s (b) 1.82 km/s
41. (a) 14.8 keV or, ignoring relativistic correction, 15.1 keV (b) 124 keV
43. 0.218 nm
45. (a) 3.91 10 (b) 20.0 GeV/ 1.07 10 kg m/s (c) 6.20 m (d) The wavelength is two orders of magnitude smaller than the size of the nucleus.
47. (a) $\frac{}{\gamma -}$ where $\gamma =$ (b) 1.60
(c) no change (d) 2.00 (e) 1 (f)
49. (a) $_{\text{phase}}$
(b) This is different from the speed at which the particle transports mass, energy, and momentum.
51. (a) 989 nm (b) 4.94 mm (c) No; there is no way to identify the slit through which the neutron passed. Even if one neutron at a time is incident on the pair of slits, an interference pattern still develops on the detector array. Therefore, each neutron in effect passes through both slits.
53. 105 V
55. within 1.16 mm for the electron, 5.28 m for the bullet
57.
61. 1.36 eV
63. (a) 19.8 m (b) 0.333 m
65. (a) 1.7 eV (b) 4.2 s (c) 7.3
67. (a) 2.82 m (b) 1.06 J (c) 2.87
69. (a) 8.72 10^{16} $\frac{\text{electrons}}{\text{cm}}$ (b) 14.0 mA/cm
(c) The actual current will be lower than that in part (b).
71. (a) 0.143 nm (b) This is the same order of magnitude as the spacing between atoms in a crystal
(c) Because the wavelength is about the same as the spacing, diffraction effects should occur.
73. (a) The Doppler shift increases the apparent frequency of the incident light. (b) 3.86 eV (c) 8.76 eV

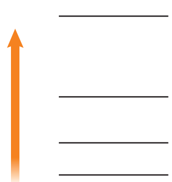
Chapter 41

Answers to Quick Quizzes

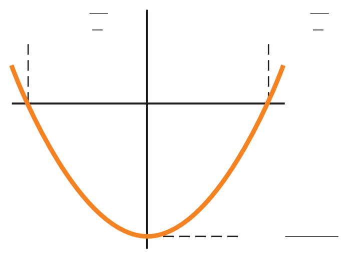
(d)
2. **(i)** (a) **(ii)** (d)
3. (c)
4. (a), (c), (f)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

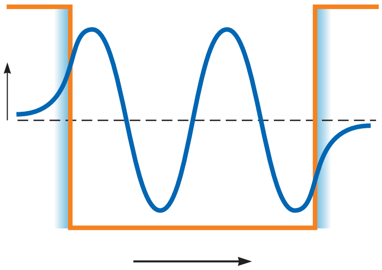
(a) 126 pm (b) 5.27 kg m/s (c) 95.3 eV
3. (a) (b) 0.037 0 (c) 0.750
5. (a) 0.511 MeV, 2.05 MeV, 4.60 MeV
(b) They do; the MeV is the natural unit for energy radiated by an atomic nucleus.
(a)



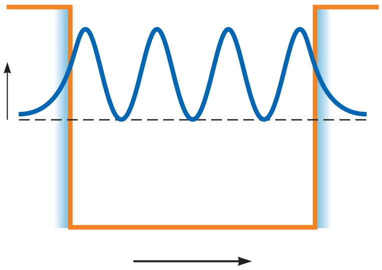
(b) 2.20 nm, 2.75 nm, 4.12 nm, 4.71 nm, 6.59 nm, 11.0 nm
9. 0.795 nm
11. (a) 6.14 MeV (b) 202 fm (c) gamma ray
13. (a) 0.434 nm (b) 6.00 eV
15. (a) (15 1/2 (b) 1.25
17. (a) (b) 0.409
19. (a) (b) 5.26 (c) 3.99
(d) In the 2 graph in the text's Figure 41.4b, it is more probable to find the particle either near /4 or /4 than at the center, where the probability density is zero. Nevertheless, the symmetry of the distribution means that the average position is /2.
21. (a) 0.196 (b) The classical probability is 0.333, which is significantly larger.
(c) 0.333 for both classical and quantum models
23. (a) 0.196 (b) 0.609
25. (b)
27. (a) $\frac{}{mL}$
(b)



29. (a)



(b)



31. (a) 0.010 3 (b) 0.990
33. 85.9
35. 3.92%
37. 600 nm

39. (a) (b)

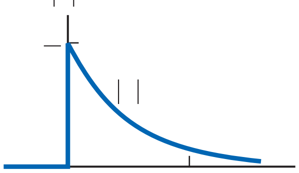
43. (a) 2.00 m (b) 3.31 kg m/s (c) 0.171 eV
45. 0.250
47. (a) 0.903 (b) 0.359 (c) 0.417 (d) $10^{6.59}$
49. (a) 435 THz (b) 689 nm (c) 165 peV or more

51. (a) (b)

53. (a) nhc mc mc (b) 4.68

(c) 28.6% larger

55. (a)



(b) 0 (d) 0.865

57. (a) 0 (b) 0 (c)

59. (b) 0.092 0 (c) 0.908
61. (a) 0.200 (b) 0.351 (c) 0.376 eV (d) 1.50 eV

63. (a) (b) 0 (c) = ± (d)

(e) 0 (f)

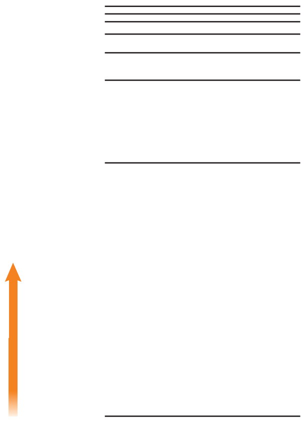
Chapter 42

Answers to Quick Quizzes

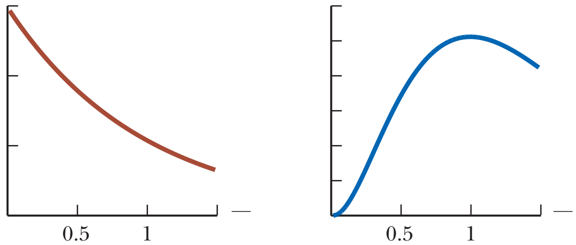
(c)
2. (a)
3. (b)
4. (a) five (b) nine
5. (c)
6. true

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 121.5 nm, 102.5 nm, 97.20 nm (b) ultraviolet
3. 1.94
5. (a) 5 (b) no (c) no
(a) 5.69 m (b) 11.3 N
9. (a) 13.6 eV (b) 1.51 eV
11. (a) 0.968 eV (b) 1.28 m (c) 2.34
13. (a) 2.19 m/s (b) 13.6 eV (c) 27.2 eV
15. (a) 2.89 kg · m /s (b) 2.74 (c) 7.30
17. (a) 0.476 nm (b) 0.997 nm
19. (a) 3 (b) 520 km/s
21. (a) 54.4 eV/ for 1, 2, 3, .



(b) 54.4 eV
23. (b) 0.179 nm
25.



27.
29. 797
31.
33. (a) 2.58 10^{34} J
(b) 3.65 10^{34} J

35.
37. – 2.58 10 ^{34} J
39. 3; 2; 2, 1, 0, 1, or 2; 1; 1, 0, or 1, for a total of 15 states
41. (a) 1
(b) ℓ ℓ

43. aluminum
45. (a) 30 (b) 36
47. 18.4 T
49. 17.7 kV
51. (a) 14 keV (b) 8.8
53. (a) If 2, then 2, 1, 0, 1, 2; if 1, then 1, 0, 1; if 0, then 0. (b) 6.05 eV
55. 0.068 nm
57. gallium
59. (a) 28.3 THz (b) 10.6 m (c) infrared
61. 3.49 photons
63. (a) 4.24 W/m (b) 1.20
65. (a) 3.40 eV (b) 0.136 eV
67. (a) 1.57 $^{3/2}$ (b) 2.47 ^{28}
(c) 8.69
69. 9.80 GHz
71. between 10 K and 10 K; use Equation 21.19 and set the kinetic energy equal to typical ionization energies
73. —, no
75. (a) 609 eV (b) 6.9 eV (c) 147 GHz (d) 2.04 mm
77. 0.866
79. (a) 486 nm (b) 0.815 m/s
81. (a)
(b)
(c) 0, , and (d)
(e) where 0.191
83. (a) 4.20 mm (b) 1.05 photons
(c) 8.84
85. mL
87. 0.125
89. (a) 0.106 , where is in nanometers and 1, 2, 3, . . (b) $= -\frac{6.80}{}$ where is in electron volts and 1, 2, 3, .
91. The classical frequency is 4

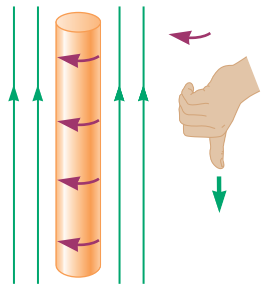
Chapter 43

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(a) van der Waals (b) ionic (c) hydrogen (d) covalent
2. (c)
3. (a)
4. A: semiconductor; B: conductor; C: insulator

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

10 K
3. 4.3 eV
5. (a) 74.2 pm (b) 4.46 eV
(a) 1.46 10 ^{46} kg m (b) The results are the same, suggesting that the molecule's bond length does not change measurably between the two transitions.
9. 9.77 rad/s
11. (a) 0.014 7 eV (b) 84.1
13. (a) 12.0 pm (b) 9.22 pm
15. (a) 2.32 kg (b) 1.82 kg (c) 1.62 cm
17. (a) 0, 3.62 eV, 1.09 eV
(b) 0.097 9 eV, 0.294 eV, 0.490 eV
19. (a) 472 m (b) 473 m (c) 0.715
21. (a) 4.60 kg (b) 1.32 Hz (c) 0.074 1 nm
23. 6.25
25. 7.83 eV
27. 5.28 eV
29.
31. (a) 4.23 eV (b) 3.27
33. (a) 2.54 ^{28} (b) 3.15 eV
35. 0.939
41. (a) 276 THz (b) 1.09
43. 1.91 eV
45. 227 nm
47. (a) 59.5 mV (b) 59.5 mV
49. 4.18 mA
51. (a)



(b) 10.7 kA
53. 203 A to produce a magnetic field in the direction of the original field
55.

57. 5.24 J/g
61. (a) 0.350 nm (b) 7.02 eV (c) 1.20
63. (a) 6.15 Hz (b) 1.59 ^{46} kg
(c) 4.78 m or 4.96

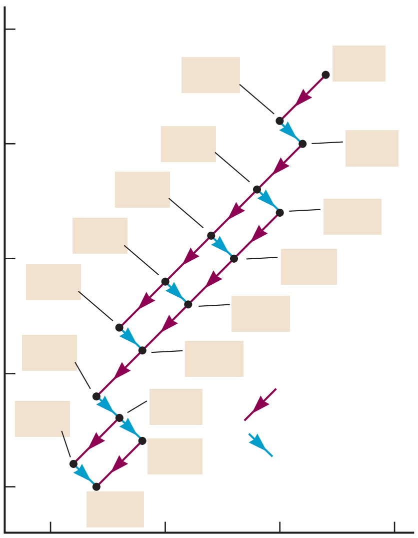
Chapter 44

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(i) (b) **(ii)** (a) **(iii)** (c)
2. (e)
3. (b)
4. (c)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 1.5 fm (b) 4.7 fm (c) 7.0 fm (d) 7.4 fm
3. (a) 455 fm (b) 6.05 m/s
5. (a) 4.8 fm (b) 4.7 (c) 2.3 kg/m
16 km
9. 8.21 cm
11. (a) 27.6 N (b) 4.16 ^{27} m/s (c) 1.73 MeV
13. 6.1 N toward each other
15. (a) 1.11 MeV (b) 7.07 MeV (c) 8.79 MeV (d) 7.57 MeV
17. greater for N by 3.54 MeV
19. (a) ^{139}Cs (b) ^{139}La (c) ^{139}
21. 7.93 MeV
23. (a) 491 MeV (b) term 1: 179%; term 2: 53.0%; term 3: 24.6%; term 4: 1.37%
25. 86.4 h
27. 1.16
29. 9.47 nuclei
31. (a) 0.086 2 d 3.59 9.98
(b) 2.37 nuclei (c) 0.200 mCi
33. 1.41
35. (a) cannot occur (b) cannot occur (c) can occur
37. 0.156 MeV
39. 4.27 MeV
41. (a) e (b) 2.75 MeV
43. (a) 148 Bq/m (b) 7.05 atoms/m (c) 2.17
45.



47. 1.02 MeV
49. (a) ^{21}Ne (b) ^{144}Xe (c) e
51. 8.005 3 u; 10.013 5 u
53. (a) 29.2 MHz (b) 42.6 MHz (c) 2.13 kHz
55. 46.5 d
57. (a) 2.7 fm (b) 1.5 N (c) 2.6 MeV
(d) 7.4 fm; 3.8 N; 18 MeV
59. 2.20
61. (a) smaller (b) 1.46 u (c) 1.45 % (d) no
63. (a) 2.52 (b) 2.29 Bq (c) 1.07
65. 5.94 Gyr
67. (b) 1.95
69. 0.401%
71. (a) Mo (b) electron capture: all levels; e emission: only 2.03 MeV, 1.48 MeV, and 1.35 MeV
73. (b) 1.16 u
75. 2.66 d

Chapter 45

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(b)
2. (a), (b)
3. (a)
4. (d)

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

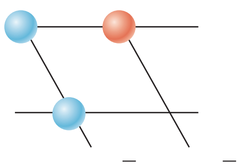
1.1 fissions
3. ^{144}Xe, ^{143}Xe, and ^{142}
5. ^{232}Th Th; Th Pa
Pa
126 MeV
9. 184 MeV
11. 5.58
13. 2.68
15. 26 MeV
17. (a) 3.08 g (b) 1.31 mol (c) 7.89 ^{31} nuclei
(d) 2.53 ^{21} J (e) 5.34 yr (f) Fission is not sufficient to supply the entire world with energy at a price of $130 or less per kilogram of uranium.
19. 1.01 g
21. (a) Be (b) C (c) 7.27 MeV
23. 5.49 MeV
25. (a) 31.9 g/h (b) 123 g/h
27. (a) 2.61 ^{31} J (b) 5.50
29. (a) 2.23 m/s (b)
31. (a) 10 (b) 1.2 J/m (c) 1.8 T
33. (a) 0.436 cm (b) 5.79 cm
35. (a) 10.0 h (b) 3.16 m
37. 2.39 °C, which is negligible
39. 1.66
41. (a) 421 MBq (b) 153 ng
43. (a) 0.963 mm (b) It increases by 7.47%.
45. (a) atoms (b)
47. 1.01 MeV
49. (a) 1.5 nuclei (b) 0.6 kg
51. (a) 3.12 (b) 3.12 electrons
53. (a) 1.94 MeV, 1.20 MeV, 7.55 MeV, 7.30 MeV, 1.73 MeV, 4.97 MeV (b) 1.02 MeV (c) 26.7 MeV
(d) Most of the neutrinos leave the star directly after their creation, without interacting with any other particles.
55. 69.0 W
57. 2.57
59. (b) 26.7 MeV

61. (a) 5.67 K (b) 120 kJ
63. 14.0 MeV or, ignoring relativistic correction, 14.1 MeV
65. (a) 3.4 Ci, 16 Ci, 3.1 Ci (b) 50%, 2.3%, 47% (c) It is dangerous, notably if the material is inhaled as a powder. With precautions to minimize human con tact, however, microcurie sources are routinely used in laboratories.
67. (a) 8 eV (b) 4.62 MeV and 13.9 MeV (c) 1.03 kWh
69. (a) 4.92 kg/h → 4.92 /h (b) 0.141 kg/h
71. 4.44 kg/h
73. (a) 10 electrons (b) 10 (c) 10

Chapter 46

Answers to Quick Quizzes

(a)
2. **(i)** (c), (d) **(ii)** (a)
3. (b), (e), (f)
4. (b), (e)
5. 0



6. false

Answers to Odd-Numbered Problems

(a) 5.57 J (b) $1.70
3. (a) 4.54 Hz (b) 6.61
5. 118 MeV
(b) The range is inversely proportional to the mass of the field particle. (c)
9. (a) 67.5 MeV (b) 67.5 MeV/ (c) 1.63
11. (a) muon lepton number and electron lepton number (b) charge (c) angular momentum and baryon number (d) charge (e) electron lepton number
13. (a) $^-$ (b) (c) $^-$ (d) (e) (f) $^-$ + ν
15. (a) It cannot occur because it violates baryon number conservation. (b) It can occur. (c) It cannot occur because it violates baryon number conservation. (d) It can occur. (e) It can occur. (f) It cannot occur because it violates baryon number conservation, muon lepton number conservation, and energy conservation.
17. 0.828
19. (a) 37.7 MeV (b) 37.7 MeV (c) 0 (d) No. The mass of the meson is much less than that of the proton, so it carries much more kinetic energy. The correct analy sis using relativistic energy conservation shows that the kinetic energy of the proton is 5.35 MeV, while that of the meson is 32.3 MeV.
21. (a) It is not allowed because neither baryon number nor angular momentum is conserved. (b) strong interaction (c) weak interaction (d) weak interaction (e) electromagnetic interaction
23. (a) K (scattering event) (b) (c)
25. (a) Strangeness is not conserved. (b) Strangeness is conserved. (c) Strangeness is conserved. (d) Strange ness is not conserved. (e) Strangeness is not conserved. (f) Strangeness is not conserved.
27. 9.25 cm
33. (a) (b) 0 (c) antiproton; antineutron
35. The unknown particle is a neutron, udd.
39. (a) 1.06 mm (b) microwave
41. (a) K (b)
43. 7.73
45. (a) 0.160 (b) 2.18
47. (a) 590.09 nm (b) 599 nm (c) 684 nm
49. 6.00
51. (a) Charge is not conserved. (b) Energy, muon lepton number, and electron lepton number are not conserved. (c) Baryon number is not conserved.
53. 0.407%
55.
59. 1.12 GeV/
61. (a) electron–positron annihilation; e (b) A neutrino col lides with a neutron, producing a proton and a muon; W
63.
65. neutron
67. 5.35 MeV and 32.3 MeV
69. (a) 0.782 MeV (b) 0.919 382 km/s (c) The electron is relativistic; the proton is not.
71. (b) 9.08 Gyr
73. (a) 2*Nmc* (b) $^-$*Nmc* (c) method (a)

Index

Locator note: **boldface** indicates a definition; *italics* indicates a figure; *t* indicates a table

Conversions

Length

1 in. = 2.54 cm (exact)
1 m = 39.37 in. = 3.281 ft
1 ft = 0.304 8 m
12 in. = 1 ft
3 ft = 1 yd
1 yd = 0.914 4 m
1 km = 0.621 mi
1 mi = 1.609 km
1 mi = 5 280 ft
1 μm = 10^{-6} m = 10^3 nm
1 light-year = 9.461×10^{15} m

Area

1 m^2 = 10^4 cm^2 = 10.76 ft^2
1 ft^2 = 0.092 9 m^2 = 144 $in.^2$
1 $in.^2$ = 6.452 cm^2

Volume

1 m^3 = 10^6 cm^3 = 6.102×10^4 $in.^3$
1 ft^3 = 1 728 $in.^3$ = 2.83×10^{-2} m^3
1 L = 1 000 cm^3 = 1.057 6 qt = 0.035 3 ft^3
1 ft^3 = 7.481 gal = 28.32 L = 2.832×10^{-2} m^3
1 gal = 3.786 L = 231 $in.^3$

Mass

1 000 kg = 1 t (metric ton)
1 slug = 14.59 kg
1 u = 1.66×10^{-27} kg = 931.5 MeV/c^2

Force

1 N = 0.224 8 lb
1 lb = 4.448 N

Velocity

1 mi/h = 1.47 ft/s = 0.447 m/s = 1.61 km/h
1 m/s = 100 cm/s = 3.281 ft/s
1 mi/min = 60 mi/h = 88 ft/s

Acceleration

1 m/s^2 = 3.28 ft/s^2 = 100 cm/s^2
1 ft/s^2 = 0.304 8 m/s^2 = 30.48 cm/s^2

Pressure

1 bar = 10^5 N/m^2 = 14.50 lb/$in.^2$
1 atm = 760 mm Hg = 76.0 cm Hg
1 atm = 14.7 lb/$in.^2$ = 1.013×10^5 N/m^2
1 Pa = 1 N/m^2 = 1.45×10^{-4} lb/$in.^2$

Time

1 yr = 365 days = 3.16×10^7 s
1 day = 24 h = 1.44×10^3 min = 8.64×10^4 s

Energy

1 J = 0.738 ft · lb
1 cal = 4.186 J
1 Btu = 252 cal = 1.054×10^3 J
1 eV = 1.602×10^{-19} J
1 kWh = 3.60×10^6 J

Power

1 hp = 550 ft · lb/s = 0.746 kW
1 W = 1 J/s = 0.738 ft · lb/s
1 Btu/h = 0.293 W

Some Approximations Useful for Estimation Problems

1 m ≈ 1 yd
1 kg ≈ 2 lb
1 N ≈ $\frac{1}{4}$ lb
1 L ≈ $\frac{1}{4}$ gal
1 m/s ≈ 2 mi/h
1 yr ≈ $\pi \times 10^7$ s
60 mi/h ≈ 100 ft/s
1 km ≈ $\frac{1}{2}$ mi

Note: See Table A.1 of Appendix A for a more complete list.

The Greek Alphabet

Alpha	A	α	Iota	I	ι	Rho	P	ρ
Beta	B	β	Kappa	K	κ	Sigma	Σ	σ
Gamma	Γ	γ	Lambda	Λ	λ	Tau	T	τ
Delta	Δ	δ	Mu	M	μ	Upsilon	Υ	υ
Epsilon	E	ϵ	Nu	N	ν	Phi	Φ	ϕ
Zeta	Z	ζ	Xi	Ξ	ξ	Chi	X	χ
Eta	H	η	Omicron	O	o	Psi	Ψ	ψ
Theta	Θ	θ	Pi	Π	π	Omega	Ω	ω

Standard Abbreviations and Symbols for Units

Symbol	Unit	Symbol	Unit
A	ampere	K	kelvin
u	atomic mass unit	kg	kilogram
atm	atmosphere	kmol	kilomole
Btu	British thermal unit	L	liter
C	coulomb	lb	pound
°C	degree Celsius	ly	light-year
cal	calorie	m	meter
d	day	min	minute
eV	electron volt	mol	mole
°F	degree Fahrenheit	N	newton
F	farad	Pa	pascal
ft	foot	rad	radian
G	gauss	rev	revolution
g	gram	s	second
H	henry	T	tesla
h	hour	V	volt
hp	horsepower	W	watt
Hz	hertz	Wb	weber
in.	inch	yr	year
J	joule	Ω	ohm

Mathematical Symbols Used in the Text and Their Meaning

Symbol	Meaning
$=$	is equal to
$\equiv$	is defined as
$\neq$	is not equal to
$\propto$	is proportional to
$\sim$	is on the order of
$>$	is greater than
$<$	is less than
$\gg (\ll)$	is much greater (less) than
$\approx$	is approximately equal to
Δx	the change in x
$\sum_{i=1}^{N} x_i$	the sum of all quantities x_i from $i = 1$ to $i = N$
$\|x\|$	the absolute value of x (always a nonnegative quantity)
$\Delta x \to 0$	Δx approaches zero
$\frac{dx}{dt}$	the derivative of x with respect to t
$\frac{\partial x}{\partial t}$	the partial derivative of x with respect to t
$\int$	integral